

**DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
CONSTRUCTION SERVICES**

**Project Manual**

**VOLUME 2 OF 2**

**CSP 207837**

**Org 054 – Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy - Renovation**



**A/E FIRM  
SBLM Architects**

**MEP: Campos Engineering  
Technology: TLC Engineering**

**Civil: RLG Consulting Engineers  
Structural: Giesler Partners Consulting  
Engineers**

**12/05/2024**

**DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
CONSTRUCTION SERVICES**

**Project Manual**  
VOLUME 2 OF 2

**CSP 207837**

**Org 054 – Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy - Renovation**



**A/E FIRM  
SBLM Architects**

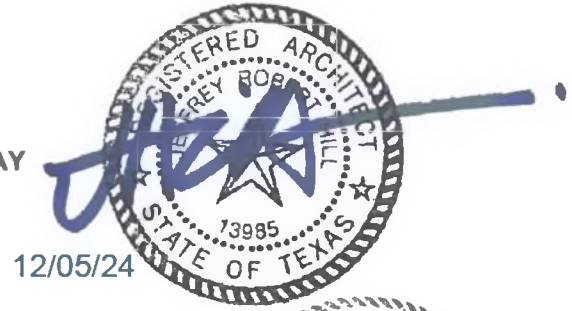
**12/05/2024**

ARCHITECT AND CONSULTANTS SEALS PAGE

ARCHITECT:

SBLM ARCHITECTS

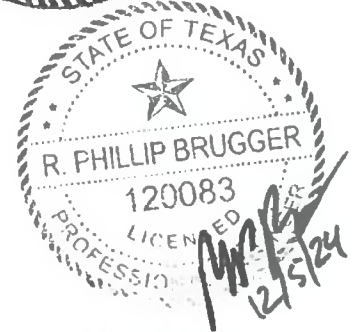
JEFFREY HILL, AIA  
16910 DALLAS PARKWAY  
SUITE 216  
DALLAS, TX 75248  
(469)554-7770



CIVIL ENGINEER:

RLG CONSULTING ENGINEERS

R. PHILLIP BRUGER, PE  
12001 N. CENTRAL EXPRESSWAY  
SUITE 300  
DALLAS, TX 75201  
(214)739-8100



STRUCTURAL ENGINEER:

GEISLER PARTNERS

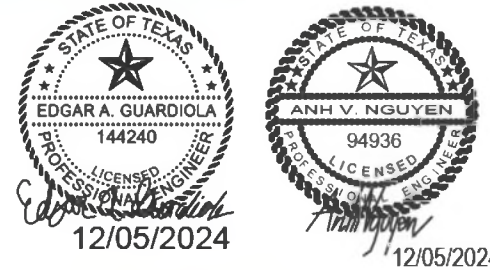
KRISTINA F. GEISLER-NORDHOLM, PE  
12001 N. CENTRAL EXPRESSWAY  
SUITE 301  
DALLAS, TX 75201  
(469)404-7404



MEP ENGINEER:

CAMPOS ENGINEERING

EDGAR A. GUARDIOLA – MECHANICAL & PLUMBING  
ANH NGUYEN - ELECTRICAL  
1331 RIVER BEND DRIVE  
DALLAS, TX 75247  
(214)696-6291



TECHNOLOGY ENGINEER:

TLC ENGINEERING SOLUTIONS

AMBER SMITH  
1255 CORPORATE DRIVE, SUITE 100  
IRVING, TX 75038  
(972)887-5566



## SECTION 00 01 10 – TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

### VOLUME 1

#### Division 0

00 01 00	Project Manual Cover
00 01 01	Project Title Page
00 01 07	Seals Page
00 01 10	Table of Contents
00 01 15	List of Drawing Sheets
00 11 13	Advertisement for CSP

#### **Proposal Requirements**

00 11 17	Intention to Propose Form
00 21 13	Instructions to Proposers

#### **Project Information**

00 31 00	Available Project Information
00 31 18	School Operation Parameters Statement

#### **Proposal Documents**

00 41 10	Overall Proposal Packaging Checklist
00 41 11 (a)	Materials Escalation Price Reconciliation Form
00 41 11	Proposal Form – Base Bid (Part 1-A of the CSP)
00 41 12	Proposal Form – Alternates and Unit Pricing (Part 1-C of the CSP)
00 41 13	Technical Proposal (Part 1-B of the CSP)
00 43 13	Proposal Guarantee Bond (Part 1-A of the CSP)
00 45 00	DISD Required forms combined (Part 1-A of the CSP)
00 45 20	Certificate of Non-Discrimination (Part 1-A of the CSP)
00 45 22	Notification of Hazardous Materials Affidavit (Part 1-A of the CSP)
00 45 23	Family Conflict of Interest Questionnaire (Part 1-A of the CSP)
00 45 39	MWBE Compliance Guidelines and Forms (Part 2 of the CSP)

#### **Contract Forms**

00 43 43	Prevailing Wage Rates Schedule
00 52 10	Standard form of Agreement between Owner and Contractor
00 52 11	General Conditions of the Contract for Construction
00 55 00	Notice to Proceed Forms
00 61 13	Performance Bond Form
00 61 16	Payment Bond Form
00 73 19	Dallas Independent School District Construction Minimum Safety Program Guidelines Manual

#### Division 1

#### **General Requirements**

01 10 00	Summary of Work
01 21 00	Allowances
01 22 00	Unit Prices
01 23 00	Alternates
01 25 00	Substitution Procedures
01 29 00	Payment Procedures
01 29 73	Schedule of Values
01 31 00	Project Management and Coordination
01 32 00	Construction Progress Documentation
01 32 16	Construction Progress Schedule
01 32 33	Photographic Documentation
01 33 00	Submittal Procedures
01 35 43	EPA Lead-Based Paint Renovation, Repair, and Painting Program

## SECTION 00 01 10 – TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

01 40 00	Quality Requirements
01 42 00	References
01 42 19	Reference Standards
01 45 23	Testing Adjusting and Balancing for HVAC – (updated 1-28-2020 Final)
01 50 00	Temporary Facilities and Controls
01 52 14	Temporary Facilities for Students
01 60 00	Product Requirements
01 73 00	Execution
01 77 00	Closeout Procedures & Checklist
01 78 23	Operation and Maintenance Data
01 78 39	Project As-Builts & Record Documents
01 79 00	Demonstration and Training
01 91 00	General Cx Requirements (1-28-20 Final)
01 92 00	Hazmat Report
01 93 00	Geotechnical Report

### **VOLUME 2**

#### **Division 2**

##### **Existing Conditions**

02 41 13	Selective Site Demolition
02 41 19	Selective Demolition
02 41 19.27	Selective Demolition of Existing Communication Systems

#### **Division 3**

##### **Concrete**

03 20 00	Concrete Reinforcement
03 30 00	Cast in Place Concrete

#### **Division 4**

##### **Masonry**

04 01 10	Masonry Cleaning
04 01 20.63	Brick Masonry Repair
04 01 20.64	Brick Masonry Repointing
04 22 00	Concrete Masonry Units
04 26 13	Masonry Veneer

#### **Division 5**

##### **Metals**

05 12 00	Structural Steel
05 50 00	Metal Fabrications

#### **Division 6**

##### **Wood, Plastics and Composites**

06 10 00	Rough Carpentry
06 10 53	Miscellaneous Carpentry

## SECTION 00 01 10 – TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

### Division 7

#### Thermal and Moisture Protection

07 92 00 Sealant Joints

### Division 8

#### Openings

08 11 13 Hollow Metal Doors and Frames  
08 14 16 Flush Wood Doors  
08 51 13 Aluminum Windows  
08 71 00 Door Hardware  
08 80 00 Glazing

### Division 9

#### Finishes

09 29 00 Gypsum Board  
09 30 13 Ceramic Tile  
09 51 23 Acoustical Tile Ceilings  
09 65 19 Resilient Tile Flooring  
09 91 13 Exterior Painting  
09 91 23 Interior Painting

### Division 10

#### Specialties

10 26 00 Wall and Door Protection  
10 28 00 Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories

### Division 11 through 20 - Not Used

### Division 21

#### Fire Suppression

21 05 00 Common Work Results for Fire Suppression  
21 08 00 Commissioning of Fire Protection Systems

### Division 22

#### Plumbing

22 05 17 Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping  
22 05 23 General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping  
22 05 29 Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment  
22 05 53 Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment  
22 07 19 Plumbing Piping Insulation  
22 10 05 Plumbing Piping  
22 10 06 Plumbing Piping Specialties  
22 11 16 Domestic Water Piping  
22 11 23 Domestic Water Pumps  
22 30 00 Plumbing Equipment  
22 40 00 Plumbing Fixtures

## SECTION 00 01 10 – TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

### Division 23

#### Heating, Ventilating, And Air-Conditioning (HVAC)

23 00 10	Basic Mechanical Requirements
23 05 13	Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment
23 05 19	Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping
23 05 23	General Duty Valves for HVAC Piping
23 05 29	Hangers and Support for HVAC Equipment
23 05 53	Mechanical Identification
23 05 93	Testing, Adjusting and Balancing for HVAC
23 07 19	HVAC Piping Insulation
23 08 00	Commissioning of HVAC
23 09 00	Instrumentation and Control for HVAC
23 09 23	Energy Management Control System (Bacnet Ip/Tridium)
23 09 25	Variable Frequency Drives
23 21 13	Hydronic Piping
23 21 23	Hydronic Pumps
23 23 00	Refrigerant Piping
23 25 00	HVAC Water Treatment
23 31 00	HVAC Ducts and Casings
23 33 00	Air Duct Accessories
23 34 23	HVAC Power Ventilators
23 37 00	Air Outlets and Inlets
23 65 13	Forced Draft Cooling Towers
23 73 13	Central-Station Air-Handling Units
23 74 13	Packaged Outdoor Central-Station Air-Handling Units
23 81 19	Self Contained Air Conditioners
23 81 26.13	Small Capacity Split-System Air Conditioners

### Division 24 through 25 - Not Used

### Division 26

#### Electrical

26 05 05	Selective Demolition for Electrical
26 05 13	Medium-Voltage Cables
26 05 19	Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables
26 05 26	Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems
26 05 29	Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems
26 05 33.13	Conduit for Electrical Systems
26 05 53	Identification for Electrical Systems
26 05 73	Power System Studies
26 08 00	Commissioning of Electrical Systems
26 09 23	Lighting Control Devices
26 27 26	Wiring Devices
26 28 13	Fuses
26 28 16.13	Enclosed Circuit Breakers
26 28 16.16	Enclosed Switches
26 29 13	Enclosed Controllers
26 43 00	Surge Protective Devices
26 51 00	Interior Lighting
26 56 00	Exterior Lighting

## SECTION 00 01 10 – TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

### Division 27

#### Communications

27 05 00	Common Work Results for Communications
27 05 26	Grounding and Bonding Communication Systems
27 05 28	Pathways for Communications Systems
27 15 00	Communications Horizontal Cabling
27 41 16	Audio Video Systems
27 51 13	Paging System

### Division 28

#### Electronic Safety and Security

28 46 00	Fire Detection and Alarm
28 51 00	In Building Two Way Emergency Responder Communication Enhancement System (BDA or Fiber DAS System)
28 55 00	RF Survey for In Building Two Way Emergency Responder Communication Enhancement System

### Division 29 through 30 - Not Used

### Division 31

#### Earthwork

31 10 00	Site Clearing
31 20 00	Earth Moving
31 22 00	Grading
31 23 33	Trenching and Backfilling
31 25 00	Erosion and Sedimentation Controls

### Division 32

#### Exterior Improvements

32 01 13	Pavement Sealing
32 13 13	Concrete Paving

### Division 33

#### Utilities

33 10 00	Water Utilities
33 30 00	Sanitary Sewerage Utilities

END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS



**SECTION 02 41 13**  
**SELECTIVE SITE DEMOLITION**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

- 1.1 RELATED CONDITIONS
  - A. Provisions established within the 00 72 00 General Conditions and 00 73 00 Supplementary Conditions, Division 1 - General Requirements, and the Drawings are collectively applicable to this Section.
- 1.2 SECTION INCLUDES
  - A. Demolition of all structures indicated.
  - B. Removal of all demolition debris.
  - C. Protection of construction to remain, including:
    - 1. Existing sidewalks and paving.
    - 2. Utilities to remain.
    - 3. Other items indicated.
  - D. Other work as shown on the drawings and specified herein.
- 1.3 QUALITY CONTROL
  - A. Conduct all demolition work in accordance with OSHA and EPA requirements.
  - B. Use only firms or individual trades qualified to perform work required under this section.
- 1.4 JOB CONDITIONS
  - A. Perform preliminary investigations as required to ascertain extent of work.
  - B. Before start of work, obtain and pay for all permits required by all authorities having jurisdiction and notify all interested utilities companies.
  - C. Obtain approval of authorities having jurisdiction for work which affects existing exit ways, exit stairs, means of egress, or access to, or exit from, areas.
    - 1. Review with and obtain approval of authorities for any temporary construction which affects such areas.
    - 2. Obtain approval of fire authorities.
- 1.5 SUBMITTALS
  - A. Details of proposed methods and operations.
  - B. Schedule of coordination for shut-off, capping and continuation of utility services.
  - C. Detailed sequence of demolition and removal work to ensure uninterrupted progress of Owner's operations.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

- 2.1 PATCHING MATERIALS
  - A. Use materials as required to repair and match existing items.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 POLLUTION CONTROLS
  - A. Use water sprinkling, temporary enclosures, and other methods necessary to limit spread of dust, dirt and air pollution.
  - B. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of all dust, dirt, and debris caused by demolition operations.
  - C. Return areas to conditions existing prior to start of work.
- 3.2 ITEMS SALVAGED FOR CONTRACTOR'S USE
  - A. Items of salvage value to Contractor may be removed from structure as work progresses.
  - B. Transport salvaged items from site as they are removed.
  - C. Storage or sale of removed items not permitted on site.
- 3.3 ITEMS TO BE REMOVED FOR RE-INSTALLATION IN PROJECT
  - A. Remove items as noted on drawings for re-use:
    - 1. Clean, condition, tag, protect from damage, and deliver to locations designated.
- 3.4 DEMOLITION PROCEDURES – GENERAL

- A. Start and complete work as established by approved schedule; operational procedures and sequence of work are optional provided schedule is maintained.
  - B. Protect property to remain:
    - 1. Promptly repair damage caused by demolition, as directed at no cost to Owner.
    - 2. Conduct operations to prevent damage by falling debris or other cause to adjacent buildings, structures, and or other facilities as well as persons.
    - 3. Provide interior and exterior shoring, bracing, or support to prevent movement, settlement or collapse of structures.
  - C. Conduct operations to insure minimum interference with roads, walks, entrances, exits, and other adjacent occupied facilities.
    - 1. Do not close or obstruct private drives, walks or other occupied or used facilities unless approved in writing.
    - 2. Do not close or obstruct public thoroughfares or walks unless approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
    - 3. Do not obstruct exits from facilities without approval of authorities having jurisdiction.
    - 4. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways.
  - D. Provide covered passageways where necessary to ensure safe passage of persons in or near areas of work.
  - E. Provide barricades and safety lights as required.
  - F. Do not use explosives.
  - G. Maintain existing utilities that are indicated to remain, keep in service, and protect against damage during demolition.
    - 1. Do not interrupt existing utilities serving occupied or use facilities, except when authorized by Engineer.
    - 2. Provide temporary services during interruptions to existing utilities, as acceptable to Architect.
    - 3. Disconnect and seal utilities before starting demolition.
- 3.5 CLEAN-UP DISPOSAL OF DEMOLITION MATERIALS
- A. Remove all debris, rubbish, and materials resulting from demolition operations.
    - 1. Remove demolition debris from site; legally dispose off site.
    - 2. Do not burn materials on site.
  - B. Dispose of all items and materials not designated for Owner's salvage or reuse.
    - 1. Promptly remove from site.
    - 2. Do not store or sell Contractor salvaged items or materials on site.
  - C. Clean up all other debris resulting from this work.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 02 41 19 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Demolition and removal of selected portions of building or structure.
2. Demolition and removal of selected site elements.
3. Salvage of existing items to be reused or recycled.

#### 1.2 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste becomes property of Contractor.

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Pre-demolition Conference: Conduct conference at Project site 4528 Rusk Ave, Dallas, TX 75204 .

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Schedule of selective demolition activities with starting and ending dates for each activity.
- B. Pre-demolition photographs or video.
- C. Statement of Refrigerant Recovery: Signed by refrigerant recovery technician.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Inventory of items that have been removed and salvaged.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Refrigerant Recovery Technician Qualifications: Certified by an EPA-approved certification program.

#### 1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Owner will occupy portions of building immediately adjacent to selective demolition area. Conduct selective demolition so Owner's operations will not be disrupted.

- B. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
  - 1. Before selective demolition, GC will remove the following items:
    - a. GC to coordinate with Owner and school custodial services on items to be removed.
- C. Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with selective demolition.
- D. Hazardous Materials: It is not expected that hazardous materials will be encountered in the Work.
  - 1. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner before start of the Work.
  - 2. If suspected hazardous materials are encountered, do not disturb; immediately notify Architect and Owner. Hazardous materials will be removed by Owner under a separate contract.
- E. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.
- F. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
  - 1. Maintain fire-protection facilities in service during selective demolition operations.
- G. Arrange selective demolition schedule so as not to interfere with Owner's operations.

## 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during selective demolition, by methods and with materials and using approved contractors so as not to void existing warranties.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Standards: Comply with ANSI/ASSP A10.6 and NFPA 241.
- C. Reference drawings for materials that need to be salvaged and reused as part of this scope of work.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that utilities have been disconnected and capped before starting selective demolition operations.
- B. Inventory and record the condition of items to be removed and salvaged.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Refrigerant: Before starting demolition, remove refrigerant from mechanical equipment according to 40 CFR 82 and regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

### 3.3 UTILITY SERVICES AND MECHANICAL/ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

- A. Existing Services/Systems to Remain: Maintain services/systems indicated to remain and protect them against damage.
- B. Existing Services/Systems to Be Removed, Relocated, or Abandoned: Locate, identify, disconnect, and seal or cap off utility services and mechanical/electrical systems serving areas to be selectively demolished.
  - 1. Arrange to shut off utilities with utility companies.
  - 2. If services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, provide temporary services/systems that bypass area of selective demolition and that maintain continuity of services/systems to other parts of building.
  - 3. Disconnect, demolish, and remove fire-suppression systems, plumbing, and HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated on Drawings to be removed.
    - a. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
    - b. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
    - c. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Protection: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
- B. Temporary Shoring: Design, provide, and maintain shoring, bracing, and structural supports as required to preserve stability and prevent movement, settlement, or collapse of construction and finishes to remain, and to prevent unexpected or uncontrolled movement or collapse of construction being demolished.
- C. Remove temporary barricades and protections where hazards no longer exist.

### 3.5 SELECTIVE DEMOLITION

- A. General: Demolish and remove existing construction only to the extent required by new construction and as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
1. Neatly cut openings and holes plumb, square, and true to dimensions required. Use cutting methods least likely to damage construction to remain or adjoining construction. Use hand tools or small power tools designed for sawing or grinding, not hammering and chopping. Temporarily cover openings to remain.
  2. Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces to avoid marring existing finished surfaces.
  3. Do not use cutting torches until work area is cleared of flammable materials. At concealed spaces, such as duct and pipe interiors, verify condition and contents of hidden space before starting flame-cutting operations. Maintain portable fire-suppression devices during flame-cutting operations.
  4. Maintain fire watch during and for at least half hour (30 min) hours after flame-cutting operations.
  5. Locate selective demolition equipment and remove debris and materials so as not to impose excessive loads on supporting walls, floors, or framing.
  6. Dispose of demolished items and materials promptly. Comply with requirements in Section 01 74 19 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."
- B. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct selective demolition and debris-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
- C. Removed and Salvaged Items:
1. Clean salvaged items.
- D. Removed and Reinstalled Items:
1. Clean and repair items to functional condition adequate for intended reuse.
  2. Pack or crate items after cleaning and repairing. Identify contents of containers.
  3. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
  4. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials necessary to make item functional for use indicated.

### 3.6 CLEANING

- A. Remove demolition waste materials from Project site and recycle or dispose of them according to Section 01 73 00 "Execution."
1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
  2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.
  3. Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent.

4. Comply with requirements specified in Section 01 73 00 "Execution."
- B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.
- C. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by selective demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

END OF SECTION 02 41 19

## SECTION 02 41 19.27 - SELECTIVE DEMOLITION OF EXISTING COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.01 SUMMARY

- A. This section includes the minimum requirements for the selective demolition of existing communications systems at Thomas Marsh Middle School.
- B. Because Thomas Marsh Middle School will continue to remain in operation during the construction project, some if not all work must be performed during off-peak hours in order to minimize interference with existing operations. The work schedule must be coordinated with, and approved by, the Owner's Authorized Representative (OAR).
- C. The following activities must be completed prior to the commencement of asbestos abatement and primary demolition activities.
  - 1. Identification and labeling of selected existing communications backbone cabling.
  - 2. Completing a cabling spreadsheet
- D. The following activities are to be performed during the course of general demolition.
  - 1. Demolition and removal of abandoned communications cabling
  - 2. Salvaging existing items to be reused or recycled

#### 1.02 DEFINITIONS AND TERMS

- A. Backbone Cabling: Cabling (either copper or fiber optic) that interconnects telecommunications spaces such as MCRs, CRs, telephone termination closets, etc.
- B. Remove: Detach items from existing construction and legally dispose of them off-site unless indicated to be removed and salvaged or removed and reinstalled.
- C. Remove and Salvage: Carefully detach from existing construction, in a manner to prevent damage, and deliver to Owner.
- D. Remove and Reinstall: Detach items from existing construction, prepare for reuse, and reinstall where indicated.
- E. Existing to Remain: Existing items of construction that are not to be permanently removed, and that are not otherwise indicated to be removed, removed and salvaged, or removed and reinstalled.
- F. Owner's Authorized Representative (OAR): Individual designated and possessing the authority to act on behalf of the Owner. The Owner's Authorized Representative may be the Owner, the Architect, the Design Consultant, or other designated individuals.

#### 1.03 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, demolition waste, including communications cabling, becomes the property of Contractor. Any demolition waste suitable for recycling shall be recycled through a properly licensed facility.



- B. Drawings may indicate the removal of items other than cabling. Please refer to Key Notes for the disposition of these items.
  - C. Historic items, relics, antiques, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, and other items of interest or value to Owner that may be uncovered during demolition remain the property of Owner.
    - 1. Carefully salvage in a manner to prevent damage and promptly return to Owner.
- 1.04 COORDINATION OF WORK
- A. Project Kickoff: A project kickoff meeting will be required and scheduled by the OAR.
  - B. Meeting must be coordinated and scheduled with the OAR.
  - C. The following attendees are required:
    - 1. Contractor
    - 2. DISD I.T
    - 3. OAR
  - D. Required meeting agenda items:
    - 1. Review progress reporting requirements.
    - 2. Review of work schedule and acceptable working hours.
    - 3. Review communications infrastructure labeling requirements.
    - 4. Review and finalize selective demolition schedule and verify availability of materials, demolition personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
    - 5. Review requirements of work performed by other trades that affect labeling and selective cable demolition operations.
  - E. Pre-Activity Meetings: A pre-activity meeting must take place prior to the commencement of each phase of field work outlined in this scope.
    - 1. The following attendees are required:
      - a. Contractor
      - b. DISD IT
      - c. OAR
    - 2. Required meeting agenda items:
      - a. Identify areas work will be performed in.
      - b. Identify working hours.
      - c. Identify potential outages.
      - d. Identify any scheduled and coordinated outages.
      - e. Identify onsite contact person name and telephone number.
      - f. Report on any accidents or unplanned outages that occurred in the previous work period.
    - 3. In the event that a power outage or network disruption must be performed, a completed Power Outage Request form must be submit to

DISD I.T and the OAR at least 7 days in advance of the requested utility disruption.

4. Other projects: OAR may require the contractor to attend project meetings for any projects that are running concurrently or may impact the labeling and selective cable demo activities outlined in this scope.

#### 1.05 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Unless otherwise agreed to by OAR, all informational submittals must be reviewed and accepted prior to commencement of work.
- B. A work plan must be submitted to the OAR each week prior to commencement of any work. Work plan must include the following:
  1. Identify areas work will be performed in.
  2. Identify working hours.
  3. Identify potential outages.
  4. Identify any scheduled and coordinated outages.
  5. Identify onsite contact person name and telephone number.
  6. Report on any accidents or unplanned outages that occurred in the previous work period.
- C. Qualification Data: All labeling and selective demolition work must be performed under the direct (on-site) supervision of a qualified communications technician. This technician must possess detailed knowledge of the building and existing conditions within each work area. Submit a report detailing Communications Technician overall industry experience and experience and familiarity with each work area within scope for this project.
- D. Proposed Protection Measures: Submit report, including drawings, that indicates the measures proposed for protecting individuals and property, for environmental protection, for dust control and noise control. Indicate proposed locations and construction of barriers.
- E. Schedule of Selective Demolition Activities: Indicate the following:
  1. Detailed sequence of selective demolition and removal work, with starting and ending dates for each activity. Ensure Owner's on-site operations are uninterrupted.
  2. Interruption of utility services. Indicate how long utility services will be interrupted.
  3. Coordination for shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
  4. Use of elevator and stairs.
  5. Coordination of Owner's continuing occupancy of portions of existing building and of Owner's partial occupancy of completed Work.
- F. Pre-demolition Photographs or Video: Submit before Work begins.

#### 1.06 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Inventory: Submit a list of any items such as equipment racks, enclosures, ladder rack, etc. that have been removed and returned to the owner.

- B. Complete Cabling List: Submit completed "CIRCUIT IDENTIFICATION" spreadsheet upon completion of each phase of the project. This spreadsheet catalogs the circuit identification assigned to each backbone cable that was labeled during this project.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. This project must be supervised by an experienced telecom technician who demonstrates:
  - 1. Proven and verifiable knowledge of telecom industry practices.
  - 2. Detailed knowledge of DISD systems

1.08 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. This is an operational school. Conduct labeling and selective cable demolition, so Owner's operations will not be disrupted.
- B. Some if not all work must be performed during off-peak hours in order to minimize interference with school operations. Work schedule must be coordinated with and approved by the Owner's Authorized Representative (OAR).
- C. Conditions existing at time of inspection for bidding purpose will be maintained by Owner as far as practical.
  - 1. Before selective demolition, Owner will remove the following items:
    - a. Network electronics to be removed by Owner.
- D. Notify OAR of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with labeling and selective cable demolition.
- E. Hazardous Materials: Hazardous materials are present in buildings and structures to be selectively demolished. A report on the presence of hazardous materials is on file for review and use. Examine report to become aware of locations where hazardous materials are present.
- F. Storage or sale of removed items or materials on-site is not permitted.
- G. Utility Service: Maintain existing utilities indicated to remain in service and protect them against damage during selective demolition operations.
  - 1. Maintain fire-protection facilities in service during selective demolition operations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning selective demolition. Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Standards:
  - 1. NEC 2002, Article 770.3(B) and 800.52(B)

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Review record documents of existing construction provided by Owner. Owner does not guarantee that existing conditions are same as those indicated in record documents.
- B. Survey existing conditions and correlate with requirements indicated to determine extent of communications conduit and cabling labeling.
- C. Survey existing conditions and correlate with requirements indicated to determine extent of selective cable demolition required.
- D. When unanticipated conditions occur or structural elements that conflict with intended labeling or selective cable demolition are encountered, investigate and measure the nature and extent of conflict. Promptly submit a written report with recommendation for resolution to OAR.

### PART 4 - PREPARATION

- A. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct backbone cable labeling and selective cable-removal operations to ensure minimum interference with school operations including roads, corridors, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
- B. Temporary Facilities: Provide temporary barricades and other protection required to prevent injury to people and damage to adjacent buildings and facilities to remain.
  - 1. Provide protection to ensure safe passage of people around selective demolition area and to and from occupied portions of building.
  - 2. Protect walls, ceilings, floors, and other existing finish work that are to remain or that are exposed during selective demolition operations.
  - 3. Cover and protect furniture, furnishings, and equipment that have not been removed.

#### 4.02 SELECTIVE CABLE REMOVAL, GENERAL

- A. General: Demolish and remove existing abandoned communications cabling as indicated. Use methods required to complete the Work within limitations of governing regulations and as follows:
  - 1. Remove raceway where possible to make way for hazardous materials abatement.
  - 2. Remove and dispose of demolished items and materials promptly.
  - 3. It is the contractor's responsibility to verify that cabling is not in use prior to its removal.
  - 4. Each work area must be returned to its pre-work condition at the conclusion of each work day.
  - 5. When disturbing building elements such as ceiling tile or fire stopping in a fire rated enclosure/space during the course of labeling or selective cable removal these elements must be replaced/returned to a condition that maintains the fire rating for that space. This must be done at the end of each work day.

6. Proceed with selective cable removal systematically, from higher level to lower level. Complete work above each floor or tier before disturbing cabling systems on the next lower level.
- B. Outages: If active cabling is cut, damaged, or otherwise rendered inoperable it is the contractor's responsibility to IMMEDIATELY NOTIFY the emergency contacts listed below. The cable owner will instruct the contractor on next steps.
1. DISD I.T
  2. Contractor Emergency Contact:
  3. Superintendent
  4. Cable Owner:
- C. Mitigation:
1. Contractor is responsible to repair or replace damaged cable in a manner which meets or exceeds cable owner's requirements within the following parameters:
    - a. Cable owner determines type of repair that is acceptable:
      - (1) Generally, if damaged cable is permanent, backbone cable splicing will not be accepted and new cable must be installed per owner's requirements.
      - (2) Generally, if damaged cable is temporary, splicing will be permissible.
- D. Removed and Salvaged Items:
1. Pack or crate items after removal. Identify contents of containers.
  2. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
  3. Transport items to Owner's storage area as designated by OAR.
  4. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
- E. Existing Items to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling during selective demolition. When permitted by OAR, items may be removed to a suitable, protected storage location during selective demolition, cleaned and reinstalled in their original locations after selective demolition operations are complete.

#### 4.03 SELECTIVE ABANDONED CABLE REMOVAL PROCEDURES

- A. General: The general scope includes removal of only clearly abandoned cable that is obviously not in use. It is common to encounter bundles of cable that have been cut at one end and left in the cable trays or left coiled up in plenum spaces. A more exhaustive cable demolition effort will be pursued under a different work package.
- B. Optical Fiber: Once contractor has verified that the optical fiber is abandoned and should be removed it is up the contractor to remove optical fiber with care as not to damage any other active cabling system components. Contractor should begin on termination end and work back to point of origin cutting 3-to-5-foot sections of cable at a time until cable has been demolished back to the point of origin.
- C. Copper Cabling: Once contractor has verified that the copper communications cabling is abandoned and should be removed it is up the contractor to remove the copper cabling with care as not to damage any other active cabling. If there is any

question as to the status of cabling the contractor should consult with the OAR prior to its removal. Contractor should begin on termination end and work back to point of origin cutting 3-to-5-foot sections of cable at a time until cable has been demolished back to the point of origin.

- D. Raceway: Contractor should remove raceway (conduit or cable tray) that is abandoned taking care not to damage raceway that is to remain in service. If there is any question as to the intent to reuse raceway the OAR should be consulted prior to its removal.
- E. Active Communications Rooms: If abandoned cable originates or terminates in an active communications room contractor should demo all cables back to room location and coordinate access to active room with appropriate party (DFW ITS or American Airlines). Contractor should make every effort to minimize need for access to active rooms.

#### 4.04 DISPOSAL OF DEMOLISHED MATERIALS

- A. General: Except for items or materials indicated to be recycled, reused, salvaged, reinstalled, or otherwise indicated to remain Owner's property, remove demolished materials from Project site.
  - 1. Do not allow demolished materials to accumulate on-site.
  - 2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent damage to adjacent surfaces and areas.
  - 3. Remove debris from elevated portions of building by chute, hoist, or other device that will convey debris to grade level in a controlled descent. Removal method must be approved by the construction manager.
- B. Burning: Do not burn demolished materials.
- C. Disposal: Transport demolished materials off Owner's property and legally dispose of them.

#### 4.05 CLEANING

- A. Clean adjacent structures and improvements of dust, dirt, and debris caused by labeling and selective cable demolition operations. Return adjacent areas to condition existing before selective demolition operations began.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 03 20 00**

**CONCRETE REINFORCING**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

- 1.1 DESCRIPTION
  - A. Provide steel reinforcement for cast-in-place concrete.
  - B. Work, items and requirements specified elsewhere that apply and/or relate to this Section include:
    - 1. Quality Control – Division 1
    - 2. Cast-in-place concrete - Section 03300.
- 1.2 SUBMITTALS
  - A. Shop Drawings: Submit in accordance with Division 1. Indicate complete reinforcing for each concrete member including materials, sizes, bends, dimensions, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, and placing details.
- 1.3 DELIVERY AND STORAGE
  - A. Stack reinforcing steel in tiers and mark so that each length, size, shape and location can be readily determined. Exercise care to maintain reinforcement free of dirt, mud, paint, rust, grease or oil.
- 1.4 RELATED SPECIFICATIONS
  - A. ACI 318 "Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete", Latest Edition.
  - B. CRSI "Manual of Standard Practice" Latest Edition.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

- 2.1 MATERIALS
  - A. Reinforcing Bars:
    - 1. Standard or Typical: ASTM A 615, Grade 60 deformed.
  - B. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:
    - 1. For concrete surfaces exposed to view where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic or plastic-protected steel wire or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.
- 2.2 FABRICATION
  - A. Fabricate reinforcing steel to sizes, shapes, and lengths detailed in accordance with requirements of ACI 318, and CRSI Manual of Standard Practice.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 INSTALLATION
  - A. Accurately place reinforcing steel of sizes, shapes, lengths, spacing and other dimensions in accordance with approved Shop Drawings and CRSI Manual of Standard Practice. Before placing, thoroughly clean reinforcement of any coating which would reduce bonding. Do not heat, cut, or bend bars without Architect's approval. Do not splice reinforcement at points of maximum stress. Stagger splices in adjacent bars and provide a minimum overlap of 30-bar diameters at splices unless specifically noted otherwise on Drawings.
  - B. Securely tie at intersections with black annealed wire. Rigidly secure reinforcement in place during concrete placing. Provide concrete coverage for reinforcing as shown on Drawings.
  - C. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcement: Repair cut and damaged epoxy coatings with epoxy repair coating according to ASTM D 3963/D 3963M. Use epoxy-coated steel wire ties to fasten epoxy-coated steel reinforcement.
- 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL
  - A. The General Contractor shall perform a visual inspection of all reinforcing steel for correctness of placement, sizes, quantities, grades and supports, prior to the inspections performed by the Testing Agency.
  - B. The Contractor shall provide sufficient time between completion of placement of reinforcing steel and beginning of concreting to allow complete inspection by the Testing Agency and correction of all errors. Placement of reinforcing steel shall be complete prior to inspection by the Testing Agency. The Contractor shall give the Testing Agency at least 24 hours notice of when their services will be required.
  - C. The designated Testing and Inspection Agency shall perform the following reviews and inspections:
    - 1. The steel supplier shall furnish mill certificate reports (written in English) for the Testing Agencies' review.

SBLM Architects

Project No: 023569.00

2. Prior to placement, visually inspect and report on size, type, grade and quality of materials.
3. Observe and report on placement of reinforcement, including size, quantity, vertical location, horizontal location and spacing, correctness of bends, splices and clearances between bars and forms, firmness of installation, and security of supports and ties, immediately prior to concreting.
4. Observe and report on placement of embedded items, including size, vertical location, horizontal spacing, correctness of fabrication, and firmness of installation immediately prior to concreting.
5. Report to the Contractor, Architect, and Engineer all items that deviate from the Contract Documents and/or require clarification prior to concreting. Re-inspect these items after the Contractor has completed the correct installation, just prior to concreting.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 03 30 00**

**CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

- 1.1 SCOPE
- A. Provide reinforced Cast-in-Place concrete work as indicated by the Contract Documents including:
1. Structural concrete.
- 1.2 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE
- A. Testing Laboratory Services: Division 1
- B. Concrete Reinforcing: Section 03 20 00
- 1.3 SUBMITTAL
- A. Design of Concrete Mixes: Proposed mix designs shall be prepared and/or reviewed and approved for conformance to the Contract Documents by an independent testing laboratory. Submit the proposed mix designs and the testing laboratory's report to the Architect. Mix design methods shall be in accordance with ACI 318-Latest Edition.
- 1.4 COORDINATION
- Notify responsible trades of schedules of concrete pours to allow adequate time for installation of their work.
- 1.5 RELATED SPECIFICATIONS
- The specifications of the American Society for Testing Materials and ACI Standard 318-Latest Edition, "Building Code Requirements for Structural Concrete" are declared a part of this specification except as modified herein.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

- 2.1 MATERIALS
- A. Portland cement: ASTM C-150, Type I, or Type II.
- B. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, Class F (Class C and C/F blends will not be allowed). Maximum 20% of cementitious material by weight. Fly ash shall not be used in architecturally exposed concrete without expressed approval of the Architect.
- C. Normal Weight Aggregate: ASTM C-33. Provide aggregate from a single source. Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
1. Fine Aggregate: Clean, hard durable, uncoated natural sand, free from silt, loam or clay.
  2. Coarse Aggregate: Hard, durable, uncoated crushed limestone.
- D. Lightweight Aggregate: Expanded clay or shale coarse aggregate conforming to ASTM C-330. Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- E. Water: Potable.
- F. Admixtures: The following admixtures may be used with approval from the Architect/Engineer (Do not use admixtures containing chloride ions):
1. ASTM C-494 Type A (water-reducing)
  2. ASTM C-494 Type D (water-reducing and retarding)
  3. ASTM C-494 Type E (water-reducing and accelerating)
  4. ASTM C-494 Type F (high range water reducing (HRWR))
  5. ASTM C-260 Air-entraining
- G. Vapor Retarder: 15 mil polyethylene sheet, type recommended for below-grade application and compatible waterproof tape.
- H. Curing/Sealing Compounds: Non-yellowing clear acrylic, ASTM C-309. Verify compatibility with flooring materials and finishes.
- 2.2 PROPORTIONS AND MIXING
- A. Proportions and Design:
1. In accordance with approved mix design for each type of concrete scheduled.
  2. Admixtures: Introduce admixtures in quantities and according to methods recommended by admixture manufacturer. Add air-entraining agent to concrete type mixtures where required. Admixtures shall not be used except as specified in the approved mixed design.
  3. Strength:
    - a. The strength of the concrete for each portion of the structure shall be as designated on the

project drawings. Strength requirements shall be based on 28-day compressive strengths, unless high early strength is specified in which case required strengths shall be obtained at 7 days.

4. Slump:  
 a. Slump of concrete of normal weight as determined by "Method of Test for Slump of Portland Cement Concrete" (ASTM C-143), shall be as follows:  
SLUMP (INCHES)\*

<u>TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION</u>	<u>MAX.</u>	<u>MIN.</u>
Slabs on Metal Deck	4"	2"
Drilled Piers	7"	5"
Concrete Containing HRWR	10"	
All Other Concrete	5"	2"

\* For Concrete to be vibrated

- B. Mixing: Ready mixed concrete in accordance with ASTM C-94. Do not transport or use concrete after one and a half hours have elapsed from time of initial mixing. Supplier of transit-mixed concrete shall have a plant of sufficient capacity, and adequate transportation facilities to assure continuous delivery at required rate, so as to provide for continuous concrete placement throughout a pour.

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspection and testing as specified in Division 1.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

3.1 INSPECTION

- A. Inspect foundations, forms, reinforcing steel, pipes, conduits, sleeves, hangers, anchors, inserts, damp-proofing and other work required to be built into concrete. Notify Architect at least one working day in advance of scheduled pour to allow time for adequate observations.  
 B. Correct unsatisfactory work prior to pouring concrete.  
 C. Remove ice and excess water from excavations and formwork.

3.2 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Placing Concrete:  
 1. Convey and place concrete in accordance with ACI 304, latest edition, and in such a manner that there will be no separation of ingredients and as specified below.  
 B. Consolidation:  
 1. Use mechanical vibrating equipment for consolidation.  
 2. Vertically insert and remove hand-held vibrators at 18" on center.  
 3. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete in forms.  
 4. Provide vibrators with minimum speed of 8000 RPM and with sufficient amplitude to consolidate concrete and work around reinforcement, embedded items and into corners of forms. Thoroughly consolidate layers of concrete with previous layers.  
 C. Construction Joints: Unless otherwise shown on Drawings, each footing, pier, column, beam, wall and slab shall be considered as a single unit of operation and shall be monolithic in construction. Where construction joints are absolutely unavoidable, locate joints at or near midpoints of spans where approved by Architect. Provide appropriate keys in construction joints, plumb level, whether horizontal or vertical. Place construction joints in exposed concrete work at detailed joints or rustications as approved by Architect.  
 D. Expansion Joint Fillers: Place premolded expansion joint fillers at location as detailed. Refer to Drawings for required joint dimensions.  
 E. Cold Weather Placement: Do not place concrete when temperature is below 40°F unless cold weather concrete procedures are followed as specified in ACI 306. Calcium chloride or admixtures containing chloride ions shall not be used except where specifically approved by the Architect.  
 F. Hot Weather Placement: Exercise special care in accordance with ACI 305 to prevent high temperature in fresh concrete during hot weather. Use water-reducing/set-retarding admixtures in such quantities as especially recommended by the manufacturer to assure that concrete remains workable and lift lines will not be visible. Concrete having a temperature in excess of 95°F will not be permitted without containing a high range water reducing admixture and written certification from the concrete supplier of a successful record of the proposed mix design (Submit mix design with HRWR with a record indicating a maximum tested temperature for Architect/Engineer review prior to use). Cooling of water and/or aggregates will be required

if concrete temperatures rise above this limit. When necessary, arrangements for installation of wind breaks, shading, fog spraying, sprinkling, ponding, or wet covering of a light color shall be made in advance of placement, and such protective measures shall be taken as quickly as concrete hardening and finishing operations will allow.

G. Finishes:

1. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraighening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
2. Coordinate location of finishes with Architectural finish schedule or as indicated on Architectural drawings.
3. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraighening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
  - a. Apply float finish to surfaces indicated.
4. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
  - a. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces indicated.
  - b. Finish surfaces to the following tolerances, according to ASTM E 1155 (ASTM E 1155M), for a randomly trafficked floor surface:
    - i. Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 25; and of levelness, F(L) 20; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 17; and of levelness, F(L) 15.
5. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.
  - a. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.
8. Patch defective areas which do not match approved finish samples. Chip and patch with a mixture of cement and aggregate to match color of adjacent areas. After surface water has evaporated from the area to be patched, the bond coat shall be well brushed into the surface. When the bond coat begins to lose the water sheen, the premixed patching mortar shall be applied. The mortar shall be thoroughly consolidated into place and struck off to leave the patch slightly higher than the surrounding surface. To permit initial shrinkage, it shall be left undisturbed for at least one (1) hour before being finally finished. The patched area shall be kept damp for seven (7) days. Metal tools shall not be used in finishing a patch in a formed wall which will be exposed.

H. Curing and Protection:

1. Freshly deposited concrete shall be protected from premature drying and excessively hot or cold temperatures. Maintain concrete at a relatively constant temperature without drying for the period of time necessary for the hydration of the cement and proper hardening of the concrete.
2. Curing shall immediately follow the finishing operation. Concrete shall be kept continuously wet by the method of sprinkling or curing compound for a period of not less than 6 days after placing.
3. During curing period, maintain above 70° F. for at least 3 days, or above 50° F. for at least 5 days. Spray compound on surfaces using two coats, applying second at right angle to first, at rate of 400 sq. ft. per gallon or as recommended by manufacturer. Restrict traffic on surfaces during cure to protect tracking off of protective film.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Routine testing of materials, of proposed mix designs and of resulting concrete for compliance with technical requirements of the specifications shall be the duty of the testing agency.
- B. Testing required because of changes in materials or proportions of the mix requested by the Contractor, as well as any extra testing of concrete or materials occasioned by their failure to meet specification requirements, shall be at the Contractor's expense.
- C. Contractor shall provide a secure and protected area for temporary on-site storage of concrete cylinders for initial curing.
  1. On-site storage area shall meet the requirement of ASTM C31.
    - a. The storage area shall shield all specimens from direct sunlight.
    - b. The storage temperature shall be monitored and controlled as necessary to meet the temperature range specified in ASTM C31.
- D. The Designated testing agency shall:
  1. Test the Contractor's proposed materials for compliance with the Specifications.
  2. Review and check the Contractor's proposed mix design.

3. Secure production samples of materials at plants or stockpiles during the course of the work and test for compliance with the Specifications.
  4. Check batching and mixing operations to the extent deemed necessary to assure compliance with the Specifications.
  5. Check slump consistency and uniformity of concrete to the extent deemed necessary to assure compliance with the Specifications.
  6. Conduct strength test of the concrete in accordance with the following procedures.
    - a. Secure composite samples in accordance with "Method of Sampling Fresh Concrete" (ASTM C-172). Each sample shall be obtained from a different batch of concrete on a representative, truly random basis. To be representative, the choice of times of sampling, or the batches of concrete to be sampled are to be made on the basis of chance alone, within the period of placement. Batches should not be sampled on the basis of appearance, convenience, or other possibly biased criteria. When pumping or pneumatic equipment is used, samples shall be taken at the discharge end. Water shall not be added to the concrete after the sample has been taken.
    - b. Mold specimens from each sample in accordance with "Practice for Making and Curing Concrete Test Specimens in the Field" (ASTM C-31). Concrete for [drilled piers, grade beams and pier caps] [foundations, pedestals, pilasters and walls] shall be field cured under field conditions per ASTM C-31. The remainder may be laboratory cured under standard moisture and temperature conditions in accordance ASTM C-31.
    - c. Per ACI 318, each strength test shall consist of the average of strengths of at least two 6x12 cylinders or at least three 4x8 cylinders. When using 6x12 cylinders, mold five specimens from each sample. When using 4x8 cylinders, mold eight specimens from each sample. The size and number of specimens shall remain constant for each class of concrete.
    - d. Test specimens in accordance with "Methods of Test for Compressive Strength of Molded Concrete Cylinders" (ASTM C-39).
      - i) When using 6x12 cylinders, test two specimens at 7 days and two at 28 days. Hold one cylinder for testing at Owner's discretion. The 7-day and 28-day test results shall be the averages of the strengths of the two specimens taken on that date.
      - ii) When using 4x8 cylinders, test three specimens at 7 days and three at 28 days. Hold two cylinders for testing at Owner's discretion. The 7-day and 28-day test results shall be the averages of the strengths of the three specimens taken on that date.
      - iii) When early high strength concrete is required, additional specimens shall be taken and tested on the early date (two 6x12 specimens or three 4x8 specimens).
    - e. Samples for strength tests of each class of concrete (each mix design) placed each day shall be taken not less than once a day, nor less than once for each 100 cu. yd. of concrete, nor less than once for each 5,000 sq. ft. of surface area for slabs or walls.
    - f. If the total volume of concrete is such that the frequency of testing required above would produce less than five strength tests for a given class of concrete (mix design), tests shall be made from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five batches are used.
    - g. Low strength test results will be investigated in accordance with ACI 318 methods. Acceptance of 56-day strength tests shall be at the Engineer's discretion and may not eliminate the need for other testing methods.
  7. Determine air content of normal weight concrete on a regular and frequent basis in accordance with either ASTM test method.
  8. Determine air content and unit weight of lightweight concrete on a regular and frequent basis in accordance with "Method of Test for Air Content of Freshly Mixed Concrete by the Volumetric Method" (ASTM C-173) for air content and "Method of Test for Weight per Cubic Foot, Yield, and Air Content (Gravimetric) for Concrete (ASTM C-138) for unit weight.
  9. Report temperature of concrete at the time of placing on a regular and frequent basis.
  10. Report total water quantity added to batches, including that added after departure of concrete trucks from batch plant.
  11. Report all test results to the Architect/Engineer and the Contractor on the same day that test results are made.
- E. Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness according to ASTM E1155 within 24 hours after placement, and report to the Architect and Owner as soon as possible, but no later than 72 hours after placement. Tests for acceptance shall be performed before stressing post-tensioning tendons (if any), and before forms and shoring have been removed. As a practical matter, measurements may need to be made within a few hours after placement to avoid conflicts with staging and sequencing.

SBLM Architects

Project No: 023569.00

3.4 AUTHORITY AND DUTIES OF TESTING AGENCY

- A. Technicians representing the testing agency shall inspect the materials and the manufacture of concrete and shall report their findings to the Architect/Engineer and the Contractor. When it appears that the material or work performed by the Contractor fails to fulfill specification requirements, the technician shall direct the attention of the Architect/Engineer and the Contractor to such failure.
- B. The technician shall not act as foreman or perform other duties for the Contractor. Work will be checked as it progresses, but failure to detect any defective work or materials shall not in any way prevent later rejection when such is discovered, nor shall it obligate the Architect/Engineer for final acceptance. Technicians are not authorized to revoke, alter, relax, enlarge, or replace any requirements of the plans and specifications, nor to approve or accept any portion of the work.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 04 01 10 - MASONRY CLEANING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes cleaning the following:

1. Unit masonry surfaces.
2. Stone surfaces.

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Low-Pressure Spray: 100 to 400 psi ; 4 to 6 gpm or As required by cleaning solution manufacturer.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Mockups: Prepare mockups of cleaning on existing surfaces to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Cleaning: Clean an area approximately 25 sq. ft. location as indicated on the drawings for each type of masonry and surface condition.
  - a. Test cleaners and methods on samples of adjacent materials for possible adverse reactions. Do not test cleaners and methods known to have deleterious effect.
  - b. Allow a waiting period of not less than seven days after completion of sample cleaning to permit a study of sample panels for negative reactions.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 CLEANING MATERIALS

A. Water: Potable.

B. Hot Water: Water heated to a temperature of 140 to 160 deg F .

C. Detergent Solution, Job Mixed: Solution prepared by mixing 2 cups of tetrasodium pyrophosphate (TSPP), 1/2 cup of laundry detergent, and 20 quarts of hot water for every 5 gal. of solution required.

- D. Mold, Mildew, and Algae Remover, Job Mixed: Solution prepared by mixing 2 cups of tetrasodium pyrophosphate (TSPP), 5 quarts of 5 percent sodium hypochlorite (bleach), and 15 quarts of hot water for every of solution required.
- E. Nonacidic Liquid Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard mildly alkaline liquid cleaner formulated for removing mold, mildew, and other organic soiling from ordinary building materials, including polished stone, brick, aluminum, plastics, and wood.
  - 1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide PROSOCO, Inc; as recommended by manufacturer for the existing building age and condition or approved comparable product.

## 2.2 CHEMICAL CLEANING SOLUTIONS

- A. Dilute chemical cleaners with water to produce solutions not exceeding concentration recommended in writing by chemical-cleaner manufacturer.
- B. Nonacidic Liquid Chemical Cleaning: As recommended by manufacturer for the existing building age and condition.
- C. EXECUTION

## 2.3 PROTECTION

- A. Comply with each manufacturer's written instructions for protecting building and other surfaces against damage from exposure to its products. Prevent paint removers and chemical cleaning solutions from coming into contact with people, motor vehicles, landscaping, buildings, and other surfaces that could be harmed by such contact.
  - 1. Cover adjacent surfaces with materials that are proven to resist paint removers and chemical cleaners used unless products being used will not damage adjacent surfaces. Use protective materials that are waterproof and UV resistant. Apply masking agents according to manufacturer's written instructions. Do not apply liquid strippable masking agent to painted or porous surfaces. When no longer needed, promptly remove masking to prevent adhesive staining.

## 2.4 CLEANING MASONRY, GENERAL

- A. Cleaning Appearance Standard: Cleaned surfaces are to have a uniform appearance as viewed from 10 feet away by Architect.
- B. Proceed with cleaning in an orderly manner; work from top to bottom of each scaffold width and from one end of each elevation to the other. Ensure that dirty residues and rinse water do not wash over dry, cleaned surfaces.
- C. Use only those cleaning methods indicated for each masonry material and location.
  - 1. Brushes: Do not use wire brushes or brushes that are not resistant to chemical cleaner being used.

2. Spray Equipment: Use spray equipment that provides controlled application at volume and pressure indicated, measured at nozzle. Adjust pressure and volume to ensure that cleaning methods do not damage surfaces, including joints.
  - a. Equip units with pressure gages.
  - b. For chemical-cleaner spray application, use low-pressure tank or chemical pump suitable for chemical cleaner indicated, equipped with nozzle having a cone-shaped spray.
  - c. For water-spray application, use fan-shaped spray that disperses water at an angle of 25 to 50 degrees.
  - d. For heated water-spray application, use equipment capable of maintaining temperature between 140 and 160 deg F at flow rates indicated.
- D. Perform each cleaning method indicated in a manner that results in uniform coverage of all surfaces, including corners, moldings, and interstices, and that produces an even effect without streaking or damaging masonry surfaces. Keep wall wet below area being cleaned to prevent streaking from runoff.
- E. Perform additional general cleaning, paint and stain removal, and spot cleaning of small areas that are noticeably different when viewed according to the "Cleaning Appearance Standard" Paragraph, so that cleaned surfaces blend smoothly into surrounding areas.
- F. Water-Spray Application Method: Unless otherwise indicated, hold spray nozzle at least 6 inches from masonry surface and apply water in horizontal back-and-forth sweeping motion, overlapping previous strokes to produce uniform coverage.
- G. Chemical-Cleaner Application Methods: Apply chemical cleaners to masonry surfaces according to chemical-cleaner manufacturer's written instructions; use brush or spray application. Do not spray apply at pressures exceeding 50 psi . Do not allow chemicals to remain on surface for periods longer than those indicated or recommended in writing by manufacturer.
- H. Rinse off chemical residue and soil by working upward from bottom to top of each treated area at each stage or scaffold setting. Periodically during each rinse, test pH of rinse water running off of cleaned area to determine that chemical cleaner is completely removed.
  1. Apply neutralizing agent and repeat rinse if necessary to produce tested pH of between 6.7 and 7.5.

## 2.5 PRELIMINARY CLEANING

- A. Preliminary Cleaning: Before beginning general cleaning, remove extraneous substances that are resistant to planned cleaning methods. Extraneous substances include paint, calking, asphalt, and tar.
  1. Carefully remove heavy accumulations of rigid materials from masonry surface with sharp chisel. Do not scratch or chip masonry surface.



## 2.6 CLEANING MASONRY

### A. Detergent Cleaning:

1. Wet surface with cold hot water applied by low-pressure spray.
2. Scrub surface with detergent solution using medium-soft brushes until soil is thoroughly dislodged and can be removed by rinsing. Use small brushes to remove soil from mortar joints and crevices. Dip brush in solution often to ensure that adequate fresh detergent is used and that surface remains wet.
3. Rinse with cold hot water applied by low -pressure spray to remove detergent solution and soil.
4. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup.

### B. Mold, Mildew, and Algae Removal:

1. Wet surface with cold hot water applied by low-pressure spray.
2. Apply mold, mildew, and algae remover by brush or low-pressure spray.
3. Scrub surface with medium-soft brushes until mold, mildew, and algae are thoroughly dislodged and can be removed by rinsing. Use small brushes for mortar joints and crevices. Dip brush in mold, mildew, and algae remover often to ensure that adequate fresh cleaner is used and that surface remains wet.
4. Rinse with cold hot water applied by low -pressure spray to remove mold, mildew, and algae remover and soil.
5. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup.

### C. Nonacidic Liquid Chemical Cleaning:

1. Wet surface with cold hot water applied by low-pressure spray.
2. Apply cleaner to surface in two applications by brush or low-pressure spray.
3. Let cleaner remain on surface for period recommended in writing by chemical-cleaner manufacturer .Do not let cleaner dry on surface. .
4. Rinse with cold hot water applied by low -pressure spray to remove chemicals and soil.
5. Repeat cleaning procedure above where required to produce cleaning effect established by mockup. Do not repeat more than once. If additional cleaning is required, use steam cleaning.

END OF SECTION 04 01 10

## SECTION 04 01 20.63 - BRICK MASONRY REPAIR

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes repairing brick masonry.

#### 1.2 UNIT PRICES

- A. Work of this Section is affected by unit prices specified in Section 01 22 00 "Unit Prices."

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Rebuilding (Setting) Mortar: Mortar used to set and anchor masonry in a structure, distinct from pointing mortar installed after masonry is set in place.

#### 1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and locations of replacement bricks on the structure.
  - 2. Show provisions for expansion joints or other sealant joints.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

#### 1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Brick Masonry Repair Specialist Qualifications: Engage an experienced brick masonry repair firm to perform work of this Section. Firm shall have completed work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project with a record of successful in-service performance. Experience in only installing masonry is insufficient experience for masonry repair work.

- B. Mockups: Prepare mockups of brick masonry repair to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution and for fabrication and installation.
  - 1. Masonry Repair: Prepare sample areas for each type of masonry repair work performed. If not otherwise indicated, size each mockup not smaller than two adjacent whole units or approximately 48 inches in least dimension. Construct sample areas in locations in existing walls where directed by Architect unless otherwise indicated. Demonstrate quality of materials, workmanship, and blending with existing work.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MASONRY MATERIALS

- A. Building Brick: ASTM C 62, Grade SW where in contact with earth or Grade SW, MW, or NW for concealed backup; and of same vertical dimension as face brick, for masonry work concealed from view.
- B. Clay Face Brick: Facing brick complying with ASTM C216 or hollow brick complying with ASTM C652, Class H40V (void areas between 25 and 40 percent of gross cross-sectional area) , Grade MW or Grade SW , Type FBS or Type HBS .

Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:

Acme Brick Company.

Color: Match existing brick color. Submit colors for approval.

### 2.2 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I or Type II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction; white where required for color matching of mortar.
  - 1. Provide cement containing not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C 114.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- C. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91/C 91M.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Holcim (US) Inc.
    - b. Lafarge North America Inc.
    - c. Lehigh Hanson; HeidelbergCement Group.
- D. Mortar Sand: ASTM C 144.

1. Exposed Mortar: Match size, texture, and gradation of existing mortar sand as closely as possible. Blend several sands if necessary to achieve suitable match.
2. Colored Mortar: Natural sand or ground marble, granite, or other sound stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.

E. Water: Potable.

## 2.3 MANUFACTURED REPAIR MATERIALS

## 2.4 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

A. Other Products: Select materials and methods of use based on the following, subject to approval of a mockup:

1. Previous effectiveness in performing the work involved.
2. Minimal possibility of damaging exposed surfaces.
3. Consistency of each application.
4. Uniformity of the resulting overall appearance.
5. Do not use products or tools that could leave residue on surfaces.

## 2.5 MORTAR MIXES

A. Measurement and Mixing: Measure cementitious materials and sand in a dry condition by volume or equivalent weight. Do not measure by shovel; use known measure. Mix materials in a clean, mechanical batch mixer.

B. Colored Mortar: Produce mortar of color required by using specified ingredients. Do not alter specified proportions without Architect's approval.

1. Mortar Pigments: Where mortar pigments are indicated, do not add pigment exceeding 10 percent by weight of the cementitious or binder materials, except for carbon black which is limited to 2 percent.

C. Do not use admixtures in mortar unless otherwise indicated.

D. Mixes: Mix mortar materials in the following proportions:

1. Rebuilding (Setting) Mortar by Type: ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification, Type N unless otherwise indicated; with cementitious material limited to portland cement and lime masonry cement or mortar cement.
2. Pigmented, Colored Mortar: Add mortar pigments to produce exposed, setting (rebuilding) mortar of colors required.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PROTECTION

- A. Remove downspouts adjacent to masonry and store during masonry repair. Reinstall when repairs are complete.
  - 1. Provide temporary rain drainage during work to direct water away from building.

### 3.2 BRICK REMOVAL AND REPLACEMENT

- A. At locations indicated, remove bricks that are damaged, spalled, or deteriorated. Carefully remove entire units from joint to joint, without damaging surrounding masonry, in a manner that permits replacement with full-size units.
- B. Support and protect remaining masonry that surrounds removal area.
- C. Maintain flashing, reinforcement, lintels, and adjoining construction in an undamaged condition.
- D. Notify Architect of unforeseen detrimental conditions including voids, cracks, bulges, and loose units in existing masonry backup, rotted wood, rusted metal, and other deteriorated items.
- E. Remove in an undamaged condition as many whole bricks as possible.
  - 1. Remove mortar, loose particles, and soil from brick by cleaning with hand chisels, brushes, and water.
  - 2. Remove sealants by cutting close to brick with utility knife and cleaning with solvents.
- F. Clean masonry surrounding removal areas by removing mortar, dust, and loose particles in preparation for brick replacement.
- G. Replace removed damaged brick with other removed brick in good condition, where possible, matching existing brick. Do not use broken units unless they can be cut to usable size.
- H. Install replacement brick into bonding and coursing pattern of existing brick. If cutting is required, use a motor-driven saw designed to cut masonry with clean, sharp, unchipped edges.
  - 1. Maintain joint width for replacement units to match existing joints.
  - 2. Use setting buttons or shims to set units accurately spaced with uniform joints.
- I. Lay replacement brick with rebuilding (setting) mortar and with completely filled bed, head, and collar joints. Butter ends with enough mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Wet both replacement and surrounding bricks that have ASTM C 67 initial rates of absorption (suction) of more than 30 g/30 sq. in. per min. Use wetting methods that ensure that units are nearly saturated but surface is dry when laid.

1. Tool exposed mortar joints in repaired areas to match joints of surrounding existing brickwork.
  2. When mortar is hard enough to support units, remove shims and other devices interfering with pointing of joints.
- J. Curing: Cure mortar by maintaining in thoroughly damp condition for at least 72 consecutive hours, including weekends and holidays.
1. Hairline cracking within the mortar or mortar separation at edge of a joint is unacceptable. Completely remove such mortar and repoint.

### 3.3 BRICK MASONRY PATCHING

#### A. Patching Bricks:

1. Remove loose material from masonry surface. Carefully remove additional material so patch does not have feathered edges but has square or slightly undercut edges on area to be patched and is at least 1/4 inch thick, but not less than recommended in writing by patching compound manufacturer.
2. Mask adjacent mortar joint or rake out for repointing if patch extends to edge of brick.
3. Mix patching compound in individual batches to match each unit being patched. Combine one or more colors of patching compound, as needed, to produce exact match.
4. Rinse surface to be patched and leave damp, but without standing water.
5. Brush-coat surfaces with slurry coat of patching compound according to manufacturer's written instructions.
6. Place patching compound in layers as recommended in writing by patching compound manufacturer, but not less than 1/4 inch or more than 2 inches thick. Roughen surface of each layer to provide a key for next layer.
7. Trowel, scrape, or carve surface of patch to match texture and surrounding surface plane or contour of brick. Shape and finish surface before or after curing, as determined by testing, to best match existing brick.
8. Keep each layer damp for 72 hours or until patching compound has set.

### 3.4 FINAL CLEANING

- A. After mortar has fully hardened, thoroughly clean exposed masonry surfaces of excess mortar and foreign matter; use wood scrapers, stiff-nylon or -fiber brushes, and clean water, applied by low pressure spray.
1. Do not use metal scrapers or brushes.
  2. Do not use acidic or alkaline cleaners.

END OF SECTION 04 01 20.63

## SECTION 04 01 20.64 - BRICK MASONRY REPOINTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes repointing joints with mortar.

#### 1.2 UNIT PRICES

- A. Work of this Section is affected by unit prices specified in Section 01 22 00 "Unit Prices."

#### 1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site 4528 Rusk Ave, Dallas, TX 75204 .

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Brick Masonry Repointing Specialist Qualifications: Engage an experienced brick masonry repointing firm to perform work of this Section. Firm shall have completed work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project with a record of successful in-service performance. Experience in only installing masonry is insufficient experience for masonry repointing work.
- B. Mockups: Prepare mockups of brick masonry repointing to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.
  - 1. Repointing: Rake out joints in two separate areas, each approximately 36 inches high by 48 inches wide, unless otherwise indicated, for each type of repointing required, and repoint one of the areas.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I or Type II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction; white or gray, or both where required for color matching of mortar.
  - 1. Provide cement containing not more than 0.60 percent total alkali when tested according to ASTM C 114.
- B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
- C. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91/C 91M.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Holcim (US) Inc.
    - b. Lafarge North America Inc.
    - c. Lehigh Hanson; HeidelbergCement Group.
- D. Mortar Cement: ASTM C 1329/C 1329M.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Lafarge North America Inc.
- E. Mortar Sand: ASTM C 144.
  - 1. Match size, texture, and gradation of existing mortar sand as closely as possible. Blend several sands if necessary to achieve suitable match.
  - 2. Color: Provide natural sand or ground marble, granite, or other sound stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
- F. Water: Potable.

### 2.2 MORTAR MIXES

- A. Measurement and Mixing: Measure cementitious materials and sand in a dry condition by volume or equivalent weight. Do not measure by shovel; use known measure. Mix materials in a clean, mechanical batch mixer.
  - 1. Mixing Pointing Mortar: Thoroughly mix cementitious materials and sand together before adding any water. Then mix again, adding only enough water to produce a damp, unworkable mix that retains its form when pressed into a ball. Maintain mortar in this dampened condition for 15 to 30 minutes. Add remaining water in small portions until mortar reaches desired consistency. Use mortar within one hour of final mixing; do not retemper or use partially hardened material.



- B. Colored Mortar: Produce mortar of color required by using specified ingredients. Do not alter specified proportions without Architect's approval.
  - 1. Mortar Pigments: Where mortar pigments are indicated, do not add pigment exceeding 10 percent by weight of the cementitious or binder materials, except for carbon black which is limited to 2 percent.
- C. Do not use admixtures in mortar unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Mixes: Mix mortar materials in the following proportions:
  - 1. Pointing Mortar by Type: ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification, Type N unless otherwise indicated; with cementitious material limited to portland cement and lime masonry cement or mortar cement .

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 PROTECTION

- A. Remove downspouts and associated hardware adjacent to masonry and store during masonry repointing. Reinstall when repointing is complete.
  - 1. Provide temporary rain drainage during work to direct water away from building.

#### 3.2 REPOINTING

- A. Rake out and repoint joints to the following extent:
  - 1. All joints in areas indicated.
  - 2. Joints at locations of the following defects:
    - a. Holes and missing mortar.
    - b. Cracks that can be penetrated 1/4 inch or more by a knife blade 0.027 inch thick.
    - c. Cracks 1/8 inch or more in width and of any depth.
    - d. Hollow-sounding joints when tapped by metal object.
    - e. Eroded surfaces 1/4 inch or more deep.
    - f. Deterioration to point that mortar can be easily removed by hand, without tools.
    - g. Joints filled with substances other than mortar.
- B. Do not rake out and repoint joints where not required.
- C. Rake out joints as follows, according to procedures demonstrated in approved mockup:
  - 1. Remove mortar from joints to depth of 2-1/2 times joint width and not less than that required to expose sound, unweathered mortar . Do not remove unsound mortar more than 2 inches deep; consult Architect for direction.

2. Remove mortar from brick and other masonry surfaces within raked-out joints to provide reveals with square backs and to expose masonry for contact with pointing mortar. Brush, vacuum, or flush joints to remove dirt and loose debris.
  3. Do not spall edges of brick or other masonry units or widen joints. Replace or patch damaged brick or other masonry units as directed by Architect.
- D. Notify Architect of unforeseen detrimental conditions including voids in mortar joints, cracks, loose masonry units, rotted wood, rusted metal, and other deteriorated items.
- E. Pointing with Mortar:
1. Rinse joint surfaces with water to remove dust and mortar particles. Time rinsing application so, at time of pointing, joint surfaces are damp but free of standing water. If rinse water dries, dampen joint surfaces before pointing.
  2. Apply pointing mortar first to areas where existing mortar was removed to depths greater than surrounding areas. Apply in layers not greater than 3/8 inch until a uniform depth is formed. Fully compact each layer, and allow it to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer.
  3. After deep areas have been filled to same depth as remaining joints, point joints by placing mortar in layers not greater than 3/8 inch . Fully compact each layer and allow to become thumbprint hard before applying next layer. Where existing masonry units have worn or rounded edges, slightly recess finished mortar surface below face of masonry to avoid widened joint faces. Take care not to spread mortar beyond joint edges onto exposed masonry surfaces or to featheredge the mortar.
  4. When mortar is thumbprint hard, tool joints to match original appearance of joints as demonstrated in approved mockup. Remove excess mortar from edge of joint by brushing.
  5. Cure mortar by maintaining in thoroughly damp condition for at least 72 consecutive hours, including weekends and holidays.
  6. Hairline cracking within mortar or mortar separation at edge of a joint is unacceptable. Completely remove such mortar and repoint.
- F. Where repointing work precedes cleaning of existing masonry, allow mortar to harden at least 30 days before beginning cleaning work.

### 3.3 FINAL CLEANING

- A. After mortar has fully hardened, thoroughly clean exposed masonry surfaces of excess mortar and foreign matter; use wood scrapers, stiff-nylon or -fiber brushes, and clean water, applied by low pressure spray.
1. Do not use metal scrapers or brushes.
  2. Do not use acidic or alkaline cleaners.

END OF SECTION 04 01 20.64

## SECTION 04 22 00 – CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

### PART 1 GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Exterior Wall Concrete Masonry Units.
  - 2. Loose Fill Masonry Insulation.
  - 3. Block and Mortar Admixture Integral Water Repellent.
  
- B. Related Documents:
  - 1. The Contract Documents, as defined in General Conditions and modifications thereto, apply to the Work of this Section. Additional requirements and information necessary to complete the Work of this Section may be found in other documents.
  
- C. Related Sections:
  - 3. Section 04 2111 - Brick Veneer: Veneer Wall ties installed in CMU walls.
  - 4. Section 05 5000 - Metal Fabrications: Steel items built into masonry work.

#### 1.2 REFERENCES

- A. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
  - 1. ASTM A 82 - Standard Specification for Steel Wire, Plain, for Concrete Reinforcement.
  - 2. ASTM A 153 - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware.
  - 3. ASTM A 615 - Standard Specification for Deformed and Plain Billet-Steel Bars for Concrete Reinforcement.
  - 4. ASTM C 90 - Standard Specification for Loadbearing Concrete Masonry Units.
  - 5. ASTM C 144 - Standard Specification for Aggregate for Masonry Mortar.
  - 6. ASTM C 150 - Standard Specification for Portland Cement.
  - 7. ASTM C 207 - Standard Specification for Hydrated Lime for Masonry Purposes.
  - 8. ASTM C 270 - Standard Specification for Mortar for Unit Masonry.
  - 9. ASTM C 404 - Standard Specification for Aggregates for Masonry Grout.
  - 10. ASTM C 476 - Standard Specification for Grout for Masonry.
  - 11. ASTM C 516 - Standard Specification for Vermiculite Loose Fill Insulation.
  - 12. ASTM C 780 - Standard Test Method for Preconstruction and Construction Evaluation of Mortars for Plan and Reinforced Unit Masonry.
  - 13. ASTM C 1019 - Standard Test Method for Sampling and Testing Grout.

#### 1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittal Procedures: Requirements for submittals.
  
- B. Product Data:
  - 1. Data for concrete masonry units, sizes, shapes and details. Include test data indicating block conformance to specified ASTM specification.

2. Data for joint reinforcement.
  3. Data for block admixture integral water repellent.
  5. Data for loose fill insulation product characteristics, performance criteria and limitations.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate reinforcing bar sizes, spacings, reinforcement quantities, bending and cutting schedules, reinforcement supporting and spacing devices, and accessories.
- D. Samples for Selection: Submit complete set of manufacturers color samples for unit masonry and mortar to illustrate color, texture and extremes of color range.
- D. Samples for Verification: Submit set of unit masonry and mortar color samples to illustrate color, texture and extremes of color range for comparison with existing construction.
- E. Assurance/Control Submittals:
1. Test and Inspection Reports: Submit the following test and inspection reports
    - a. Masonry, reinforcing and grouting inspections.
    - b. Mortar and grout testing.
  2. Qualification Documentation: Upon request, submit documentation of experience and Regulatory Requirements indicating compliance with specified qualification requirements.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Company specializing in Work of this Section with minimum five (5) years documented experience.

#### 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Product Options: Transport, handle, store and protect Products.
- B. Accept Products on site in manufacturer's packaging. Inspect for damage. Return damaged Products and replace with undamaged Products.
- C. Project Field Superintendent shall inspect Products immediately upon delivery to Project Site, determine Product conformance with specified requirements and reject Products not complying with specifications. Project Field Superintendent shall direct that non-complying Products be removed from Project Site immediately.
- D. Maintain packaged materials clean, dry and protected against dampness, freezing and foreign matter.

#### 1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Requirements:
1. Cold Weather Requirements: Comply with recommendations of IMIAWC (CW).
  2. Hot Weather Requirements: Comply with IMIAWC (HW).

## 1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate Work with other trades in advance and make provisions for the installation of their work as masonry units are installed to avoid cutting and patching.
- B. Coordinate masonry unit work with wall mounted lighting fixtures, plumbing items, openings and chases for heating ducts, plumbing pipes, electrical conduit and mechanical louvers or vents. Build into Work as construction progresses.
- C. Provide for installation of bolts, toggles, flashing, beams, anchors, hangers, attachment strips, wall plugs and frames as required for support of structure and miscellaneous appliances.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 EXTERIOR WALL CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

- A. Concrete Block: ASTM C 90, Grade N, Type 1, normal weight, load bearing, hollow block.
  - 1. Integral block admixture water repellent added during block manufacture.
  - 2. Integral color admixture pigment added during block manufacture to produce a uniformly colored surface.
- B. Exposed Face Texture: Smooth face.
- C. Exposed Face Texture: Smooth face.
  - 1. Single score.
- D. Exposed Face Texture: Split Face.
  - 1. Masonry unit texture with characteristics of rough quarried stone produced by mechanically splitting one large unit block.
  - 1. Masonry unit texture with characteristics of rough quarried stone produced by mechanically splitting one large unit block.
  - 1. Single score.
- E. Exposed Face Texture: Match existing concrete block veneer. Field verify.
- F. Color: Manufacturer's standard grey.
- G. Color: Selected by Architect.
- H. Color: Match existing concrete masonry color. Field verify.
- I. Size and Shape: 16 inches x 8 inches and nominal depth of 8 inches.
- J. Size and Shape: Locations indicated on Drawings.
  - 1. 16 inches x 8 inches and nominal depth of 8 inches.

2. 16 inches x 8 inches and nominal depth of 12 inches.
- K. Size and Shape: Match existing. Field verify.
- L. Section 01700 - Product Options: Product options and substitutions. Substitutions: Permitted.

## 2.4 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I; non-staining. Masonry cement not permitted.
  1. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.
  2. Mortar Aggregate: ASTM C 144, free of clay or organic matter.
  3. Grout Aggregate: ASTM C 404.
- B. Water: Clean and potable.
- C. Exterior Exposed Wall Mortar Color: Selected by Architect.
  1. Integral mortar admixture water repellent added during mixing.
- D. Exterior Exposed Wall Mortar Color: Match existing. Field verifies.
  1. Integral mortar admixture water repellent added during mixing.
- B. More than one (1) mortar color maybe necessary for project.
  1. Mortar color(s) shall be as selected by Architect.
    - a. Mortar Color A: [INSERT]
    - b. Mortar Color B: [INSERT]

## 2.5 REINFORCEMENT AND ANCHORAGE

- A. Reinforcing Steel: ASTM A 615 Grade 60.
  1. Deformed billet-steel bars.
  2. Unfinished.
- B. Single Wythe Joint Reinforcement - Truss type, ASTM A 82 steel wire, hot dipped galvanized after fabrication to ASTM A 153, Class B.
  1. 0.1483 inch side rods and cross rods.
  2. Width as required to provide not more than 1 inch and not less than 1/2 inch of mortar coverage on each exposure.
  3. Manufacturer:
    - a. Holman & Barnard: [www.h-b.com](http://www.h-b.com).
    - b. Masonry Reinforcing Corporation of America: [www.wirebond.com](http://www.wirebond.com).
    - c. Southern Construction Products: [www.scponline.com](http://www.scponline.com).
    - d. Section 01620 - Product Options: Product options and substitutions. Substitutions: Permitted.
- C. Brick Veneer Wall Ties: Specified in Section - Brick Veneer.

## 2.6 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

- A. Mortar for Unit Masonry: During preconstruction and construction evaluations, use test methods defined by ASTM C 780 for established specific and overall performance characteristics of mortar system used following ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification method.
  - 1. Type S, 1900 psi at 28 days, slump 9 inches plus or minus 1 inch.
- B. Grout: ASTM C 476, Portland cement, sand, pea gravel and water, 3000 psi at 28 days, slump 9 inches plus or minus 1 inch. Consistency required to fill completely volumes indicated for grouting; fine grout for spaces with smallest horizontal dimension of 2 inches or less; coarse grout for spaces with smallest horizontal dimension greater than 2 inches.
- C. Mixing:
  - 1. Mix mortar in accordance with ASTM C 270 in quantities needed for immediate use.
  - 2. Mix grout in accordance with ASTM C 476 in quantities needed for immediate use.
  - 3. Use mechanical batch mixer and comply with referenced standards.
  - 4. Do not use anti-freeze compounds to lower the freezing point of mortar or grout.
  - 5. Mix integral water repellent admixture per manufacturer's published instructions.
  - 6. Control batching procedure to ensure proper proportions by measuring materials by volume. Measurement by shovel not permitted.

## 2.7 LOOSE FILL MASONRY INSULATION

- A. ASTM C 516, vermiculite type, water repellent, fire resistant.

## 2.8 BLOCK AND MORTAR ADMIXTURE INTEGRAL WATER-REPELLENT

- A. Manufacturer: BASF Master Builders [www.basf-admixtures.com](http://www.basf-admixtures.com).
- B. Integral Block Water-Repellent Admixture:
  - 1. Product: RHEOPEL WR.
  - 2. Description: Integral polymeric admixture, blended, high molecular weight, polymer emulsion that provides resistance to water penetration, efflorescence control and improves and maintains color integrity.
- C. Integral Mortar Water-Repellent Admixture:
  - 1. Product: RHEOPEL Mortar Admixture.
  - 2. Description: Specially blended polymeric admixture for resistance of water penetration and efflorescence control.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Execution: Verification of existing conditions before starting work.
- B. Verification of Conditions: Verify that field measurements, surfaces, substrates and conditions are as required, and ready to receive Work.
  - 1. Verify that field conditions are acceptable and are ready to receive masonry.
  - 2. Verify that related items provided under other sections are properly sized and located.
  - 3. Verify that built-in items are in proper location, and ready for roughing into masonry work.
- C. Report in writing to Architect prevailing conditions that will adversely affect satisfactory execution of the Work of this Section. Do not proceed with Work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- D. By beginning Work, Contractor accepts conditions and assumes responsibility for correcting unsuitable conditions encountered at no additional cost to the Owner.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Direct and coordinate placement of metal anchors supplied for installation under other sections.
- B. Provide temporary bracing during installation of masonry work. Maintain in place until building structure provides permanent bracing.
- C. Clean glass units of substances that may impair bond with mortar.
- D. Verify that panel anchors are provided at head and jambs.
- E. Verify holes and openings have been sealed to prevent escape of insulation.

### 3.3 COURSING

- A. Establish lines, levels, and coursing indicated. Protect from displacement.
- B. Maintain masonry courses to uniform dimension. Form vertical and horizontal joints of uniform thickness.
- C. Concrete Masonry Units:
  - 1. Bond: Running.
  - 2. Coursing: One unit and one mortar joint to equal 8 inches.
  - 3. Mortar Joints: Concave.
  - 4. Mortar Joints
    - a. Where Brick Veneer is Installed: Flush for application of liquid applied air/vapor barrier and rigid insulation.
    - b. Where Waterproofing is Applied: Flush for application of sheet or liquid applied waterproofing.
    - c. Building Interior and All Other Areas: Concave.
  - 4. Saw Cut Joints: Saw cut Joints within masonry work shall be tuck pointed to match appearance of adjacent bond joints.



### 3.4 PLACING AND BONDING

- A. Lay hollow masonry units with face shell bedding on head and bed joints.
- B. Buttering corners of joints or excessive furrowing of mortar joints is not permitted.
- C. Remove excess mortar as work progresses.
- D. Interlock intersections and external corners.
- E. Do not shift or tap masonry units after mortar has achieved initial set. Where adjustment must be made, remove mortar and replace.
- F. Perform job site cutting of masonry units with proper tools to provide straight, clean, unchipped edges. Prevent broken masonry unit corners or edges.
- G. Cut mortar joints flush where wall tile is scheduled, resilient base is scheduled or bituminous waterproofing is applied.
- H. Isolate masonry partitions from vertical structural framing members.

### 3.5 CONTROL JOINTS

- A. Keep joints free of mortar by inserting continuous wood or metal temporary strips.
- B. Construct joints where indicated on Drawings and at following intersections.
  - 1. Changes in thickness, height and direction.
  - 2. Within 8 foot 0 inches of corners or offsets.
  - 3. At control and expansion joints in structure.
  - 4. At each side of openings greater than 24 inches wide.
  - 5. At foundation walls, shelf angles, setbacks and materials expanding at different ratios.
- D. Concrete Masonry Units:
  - 1. Space joints maximum 30 feet 0 inches on center in uninterrupted walls.
  - 2. Provide continuous vertical control joints through bond beams except at lintels above openings.
  - 3. Offset control joints to ends of lintels.
- D. Install joint sealer as specified in Section 07920 - Joint Sealers (Building).

### 3.7 REINFORCEMENT AND ANCHORAGE

- A. Reinforcement Bars: Secure at locations indicated and to avoid displacement during grouting.
  - 1. Maintain position within 1/2 inch of dimensioned position.
  - 2. Minimum spacing between bars or to masonry surfaces shall be one bar diameter.

3. Lap splices minimum 24 bar diameters.
  4. Welding of splices not permitted.
- B. Joint Reinforcement: Install horizontal joint reinforcement 16 inches on center.
1. Place masonry joint reinforcement in first and second horizontal joints above and below openings. Extend minimum 16 inches each side of opening.
  2. Place continuous joint reinforcement in first and second joint below top of walls.
  3. Lap joint reinforcement ends minimum 6 inches.
  4. Bend or weld at offsets or special conditions.
- C. Reinforced Hollow Unit Masonry: Keep vertical cores to be grouted clear of mortar, including bed area of first course.
1. Bond Beams: At bond beams or other locations for horizontally reinforced masonry, provide special masonry units or saw to accommodate reinforcement.

### 3.8 MORTAR AND GROUTING

- A. Place mortar in accordance with ASTM C 270.
- B. Place grout in accordance with ASTM C 476.
- C. Provide protection for metal building frames and girts during placement of mortar and grout. Do not permit mortar or grout in contact with metal building frames and girts.
- D. Low-Lift Grouting:
1. Limit height of pours to 16 inches.
  2. Limit height of masonry to 16 inches above each pour.
  3. Pour grout only after vertical reinforcing is in place; place horizontal reinforcing as grout is poured. Prevent displacement of bars as grout is poured.
  4. Place grout for each pour continuously and consolidate immediately; do not interrupt pours for more than 1-1/2 hours.
- E. Remove excess mortar from grout spaces.

### 3.9 LOOSE FILL INSULATION PLACEMENT

- A. Place insulation in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions.
- B. Place after masonry wall has sufficiently dried and attained optimum moisture content. Place prior to covering cores with bond beams or lintels.
- C. Place as wall is erected. Completely fill spaces and voids.
- D. Place in lifts. Do not exceed 6 feet pouring height.

### 3.10 LINTELS

- A. Provide steel lintels over openings as indicated on Drawings and specified in Section 05500 - Metal Fabrications.
- B. Maintain minimum 8 inch bearing on each side of opening.

### 3.11 BOND BEAMS

- A. Provide concrete masonry unit bond beams at top of concrete masonry unit walls and at lintels above openings.
- B. Reinforce bond beams with minimum two (2) reinforcing bars. Support and secure reinforcing bars from displacement.
- C. Place and consolidate grout fill without displacing reinforcing.
- D. Discontinue bond beams at expansion and control joints.
- E. At bearing locations, fill masonry cores with grout for minimum 16 inches either side of opening.

### 3.12 BUILT-IN WORK

- A. As work progresses, install built-in metal door frames, window frames, fabricated metal frames, mechanical louvers, plates and anchor bolts, and other items to be built into the work and furnished under other sections.
- B. Install built-in items plumb, level, and true to line.
- C. Where electric conduit, outlet, switch and other boxes occur, grind and cut units before building-in services. Coordinate work with electrical installer.
- D. Bed anchors of metal door frames in adjacent mortar joints.
  - 1. Fill frame voids solid with grout.
  - 2. Fill adjacent masonry cores with grout minimum 12 inches for framed openings.
- E. Do not build into masonry construction organic materials that are subject to deterioration.
- F. Where recessed fire extinguisher cabinets, recessed drinking fountains, electric conduit, outlet, switch and other boxes occur, grind and cut units before building-in services. Coordinate with item installer.

### 3.13 CONSTRUCTION

- A. Site Tolerances:
  - 1. Maximum Variation for Unit to Adjacent Unit: 1/16 inch.
  - 2. Maximum Variation from Plane of Wall: 1/4 inch in 10 feet and 1/2 inch in 20 feet.

3. Maximum Variation from Level Coursing: 1/8 inch in 3 feet and 1/4 inch in 10 feet.
4. Maximum Variation of Joint Thickness: 1/8 inch in 3 feet.
5. Maximum Variation from Cross Sectional Thickness of Walls: 1/4 inch.

### 3.14 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Quality Control: Contractor Quality Control Representative shall perform contractor quality control inspections.
  1. Inspect concrete masonry unit erection, color, texture, coursing, joints, placement and type of reinforcing, reinforcing splicing, mortar and grout mixing, and grouting.
  3. Inspect loose fill insulation placement. Ensure all cores are filled.
  4. Document preparatory, initial and follow-up inspection in Contractor's Test and Inspection Reports.
  5. Test and Inspection Reports shall be available to Architect upon request.
- B. Testing and Inspection Services: Perform the following inspections.
  1. Perform the following inspections for conformance compliance with Contract Documents.

### 3.15 CLEANING

- A. Clean work.
- B. Remove excess mortar and mortar smears as work progresses.
- C. Replace defective mortar. Match adjacent work.
- D. Clean soiled surfaces with cleaning solution.
- E. Use non-metallic tools in cleaning operations.

### 3.16 PROTECTION OF FINISHED WORK

- A. Protect finished Work.
- B. Without damaging completed work, provide protective boards at external corners which may be damaged by construction activities.

END OF SECTION 04 22 00

## SECTION 04 26 13 - MASONRY VENEER

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Brick.
2. Concrete masonry units.
3. Mortar materials.
4. Ties and anchors.
5. Embedded flashing.
6. Accessories.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Samples: For each type and color of brick **[and]** colored mortar.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

#### 1.4 FIELD CONDITIONS

- A. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602.
- B. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 UNIT MASONRY, GENERAL

- A. Masonry Standard: Comply with TMS 602, except as modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.
- B. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated. Do not use units where such defects will be exposed in the completed Work [ **and will be within 20 ft. vertically and horizontally of a walking surface**].

### 2.2 BRICK

- A. General: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching finish and color of exposed faces of adjacent units.
  - 1. For ends of sills and caps and for similar applications that would otherwise expose unfinished brick surfaces, provide units without cores or frogs and with exposed surfaces finished.
  - 2. Provide special shapes for applications where shapes produced by sawing would result in sawed surfaces being exposed to view.
- B. Clay Face Brick: [**Facing brick complying with ASTM C216**] [or] [**hollow brick complying with ASTM C652, Class H40V (void areas between 25 and 40 percent of gross cross-sectional area)**] , [Grade SW] [Grade MW or Grade SW] , [Type FBX] [Type FBS] [Type FBA] [or] [Type HBX] [Type HBS] [Type HBA].
  - 1. Initial Rate of Absorption: Less than **30 g/30 sq. in.** per minute when tested in accordance with ASTM C67/C67M.
  - 2. Efflorescence: Provide brick that has been tested in accordance with ASTM C67/C67M and is rated "not effloresced."
  - 3. Surface Coating: Brick with colors or textures produced by application of coatings withstand 50 cycles of freezing and thawing in accordance with ASTM C67/C67M with no observable difference in the applied finish when viewed from **10 ft.** [ **or have a history of successful use in Project's area**].
  - 4. Size (Actual Dimensions): [**2-3/4 inches**] [**3 inches**] [**3-1/2 inches**] [**3-5/8 inches**] <Insert dimension> wide by [**2-1/4 inches**] [**2-3/4 inches**] [**2-5/8 inches**] [**2-13/16 inches**] [**3-1/2 inches**] [**3-5/8 inches**] [**7-1/2 inches**] [**7-5/8 inches**] <Insert dimension> high by [**7-1/2 inches**] [**7-5/8 inches**] [**8 inches**] [**9-5/8 inches**] [**11-1/2 inches**] [**11-5/8 inches**] <Insert dimension> long.
  - 5. Color and Texture: [**Medium brown, wire cut**] [**Full-range red, sand molded**] [**Buff, velour**] [**Match Architect's samples**] [**As selected by Architect**].

## 2.3 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

- A. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching exposed faces of adjacent units unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
- B. Integral Water Repellent: Provide units made with integral water repellent [**for exposed units**] [**and**] [**where indicated**].
  - 1. Integral Water Repellent: Liquid polymeric, integral water-repellent admixture that does not reduce flexural bond strength. Units made with integral water repellent, when tested in accordance with ASTM E514/E514M as a wall assembly made with mortar containing integral water-repellent manufacturer's mortar additive, with test period extended to 24 hours, will show no visible water or leaks on the back of test specimen.

## 2.4 MORTAR MATERIALS

- A. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.
- B. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.
- C. Masonry Cement: ASTM C91/C91M.
- D. Mortar Pigments: Natural and synthetic iron oxides and chromium oxides, compounded for use in mortar mixes and complying with ASTM C979/C979M. Use only pigments with a record of satisfactory performance in masonry mortar.
- E. Colored Cement Products: Packaged blend made from portland cement and hydrated lime [**or**] masonry cement and mortar pigments, all complying with specified requirements, and containing no other ingredients.
  - 1. Colored Portland Cement-Lime Mix:
  - 2. Colored Masonry Cement:
- F. Preblended Dry Mortar Mix: Packaged blend made from portland cement and hydrated lime [**or**] masonry cement, sand, mortar pigments, and admixtures and complying with ASTM C1714/C1714M.

1. Preblended Dry Portland Cement Mortar Mix:
- G. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C144.
  1. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
  2. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.
- H. Water: Potable.

## 2.5 TIES AND ANCHORS

- A. General: Ties and anchors extend at least **1-1/2 inches** into veneer but with at least a **5/8-inch** cover on outside face.
- B. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in this article that are made from materials that comply with the following unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A1064/A1064M, with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B-2 coating.
  2. Stainless Steel Wire: ASTM A580/A580M, **[Type 304] [Type 316]**.
  3. Steel Sheet, Galvanized after Fabrication: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel, with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B coating.
- C. Adjustable Anchors for Connecting to Structural Steel Framing: Provide anchors that allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall.
  1. Anchor Section for Welding to Steel Frame: Crimped **1/4-inch-** diameter, **[hot-dip galvanized steel] [stainless steel]** wire.
  2. Tie Section: Triangular-shaped wire tie made from **[0.187-inch-] [0.25-inch-]** diameter, **[hot-dip galvanized steel] [stainless steel]** wire.
- D. Adjustable Anchors for Connecting to Concrete: Provide anchors that allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall.
  1. Connector Section: **[Dovetail] [Channel]** tabs for inserting into **[dovetail] [channel]** slots in concrete and attached to tie section; formed from **[0.060-inch-thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication] [0.105-inch- thick, steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication] [0.062-inch- thick, stainless steel sheet] [0.109-inch- thick, stainless steel sheet]**.
  2. Tie Section: Triangular-shaped wire tie made from **[0.187-inch-] [0.25-inch-]** diameter, **[hot-dip galvanized steel] [stainless steel]** wire. **[ Mill-galvanized wire may be used at interior walls unless otherwise indicated.]**
  3. Corrugated-Metal Ties: Metal strips not less than **7/8 inch** wide with corrugations having a wavelength of **0.3 to 0.5 inch** and an amplitude of **0.06 to 0.10 inch** made



from [0.0635-inch- thick steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication] [0.0785-inch-thick steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication] [0.1084-inch- thick steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication] [0.0625-inch- thick, stainless steel sheet] [0.0781-inch- thick, stainless steel sheet] [0.1094-inch- thick, stainless steel sheet] with [dovetail] [channel] tabs for inserting into dovetail slots in concrete.

E. Adjustable Masonry-Veneer Anchors:

1. General: Provide anchors that allow vertical adjustment but resist a 100 lbf load in both tension and compression perpendicular to plane of wall without deforming or developing play in excess of 1/16 inch.
2. Fabricate sheet metal anchor sections and other sheet metal parts from [0.0785-inch- thick steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication] [0.1084-inch- thick steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication] [0.0781-inch- thick, stainless steel sheet] [0.1094-inch- thick, stainless steel sheet].
3. Fabricate wire ties from [0.187-inch-] [0.25-inch-] diameter, [hot-dip galvanized steel] [stainless steel] wire unless otherwise indicated.
4. Masonry-Veneer Anchors; Vertical Slotted L-Plate: Rib-stiffened, sheet metal anchor section with screw holes at top and bottom, projecting vertical leg with slotted hole for wire tie [ and washer at face of insulation].
5. Masonry-Veneer Anchors; Double-Pintle Plate: Rib-stiffened, sheet metal anchor section with screw holes at top and bottom, projecting horizontal leg with slots for vertical legs of double pintle wire tie. [ Provide with seismic tie, clip, and continuous wire in veneer.]
6. Masonry-Veneer Anchors; Slotted Plate: Sheet metal anchor section, with screw holes at top and bottom; and raised rib-stiffened strap, stamped into center to provide a slot between strap and base for wire tie. [ Use self-adhering tape to seal penetration behind anchor plate.]
7. Masonry-Veneer Anchors; Slotted Plate with Prongs: Sheet metal anchor section, with screw holes at top and bottom; top and bottom ends bent to form pronged legs of length to match thickness of insulation; and raised rib-stiffened strap, stamped into center to provide a slot between strap and base for wire tie. [ Use self-adhering tape to seal penetration behind anchor plate.]
8. Masonry-Veneer Anchors; Single-Barrel Screw: Self-drilling, single-barrel screw designed to receive wire tie. Screw has a smooth barrel the same thickness as insulation [ with factory-installed gasketed washer to seal at face of insulation and sheathing] [ and a coating to reduce thermal conductivity] . [ Provide with seismic tie, clip, and continuous wire in veneer.]
9. Masonry-Veneer Anchors; Single-Barrel Screw with Double-Pintle Wingnut: Self-drilling, single-barrel screw with [wingnut head] [thermally resistant wingnut head] [thermally resistant clip] designed to receive double-pintle wire tie. Screw has a smooth barrel the same thickness as insulation [ with factory-installed gasketed washer to seal at face of insulation and sheathing] [ and a coating to reduce thermal conductivity] . [ Provide with seismic tie, clip, and continuous wire in veneer.]
10. Masonry-Veneer Anchors; Seismic-Pintle Plate: Rib-stiffened, sheet metal anchor section with screw holes at top and bottom, projecting leg with slotted hole for vertical leg of seismic pintle tie. Tie is rib-stiffened, sheet metal bent plate with down-turned leg to fit in anchor slot and with integral tabs to hold continuous wire in veneer.

11. Polymer-Coated, Steel Drill Screws for Steel Studs: ASTM C954 except manufactured with hex washer head and neoprene or EPDM washer, **No. 10** diameter by length required to penetrate steel stud flange with not less than three exposed threads, and with organic polymer coating with salt-spray resistance to red rust of more than 800 hours in accordance with ASTM B117.
12. Stainless Steel Drill Screws for Steel Studs: ASTM C954 except manufactured with hex washer head and neoprene or EPDM washer, **No. 10** diameter by length required to penetrate steel stud flange with not less than three exposed threads; either made from Type 410 stainless steel or made with a carbon-steel drill point and 300 Series stainless steel shank.

## 2.6 EMBEDDED FLASHING

- A. Metal Flashing: Provide metal flashing complying with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and as follows:
  1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, [**Type 304**] [**Type 316**], **0.016 inch** thick.
  2. Fabricate continuous flashings in sections **96 inches** long minimum, but not exceeding **12 ft.**. Provide splice plates at joints of formed, smooth metal flashing.
  3. Fabricate metal drip edges from stainless steel. Extend at least **3 inches** into wall and **1/2 inch** out from wall, with outer edge bent down 30 degrees [**and hemmed**].
  4. Fabricate metal sealant stops from stainless steel. Extend at least **3 inches** into wall and out to exterior face of wall. At exterior face of wall, bend metal back on itself for **3/4 inch** and down into joint **1/4 inch** to form a stop for retaining sealant backer rod.
- B. Flexible Flashing: Use [**one of**] the following unless otherwise indicated:
  1. Copper Fabric Flashing: [**3 oz./sq. ft.**] [**5 oz./sq. ft.**] [**7 oz./sq. ft.**] [**self-adhesive**] copper sheet bonded between two layers of glass-fiber cloth. Use only where flashing is fully concealed in masonry.
  2. Stainless Steel Fabric Flashing: Composite, flashing product consisting of **2 mil** of [**Type 304**] [**Type 316**] stainless steel sheet, bonded to a layer of polymeric fabric, to produce an overall thickness of **40 mil**.
  3. Self-Adhering, Stainless Steel Fabric Flashing: Composite, flashing product consisting of **2 mil** of [**Type 304**] [**Type 316**] stainless steel sheet, bonded to a layer of polymeric fabric with a [**butyl adhesive**] [**permanent, clear adhesive**], to produce an overall thickness of [**10 mil**] [**40 mil**].
    - a. Applications: Use **10-mil-** thick flashing at windows, doors, and small wall penetrations; not at base of walls. [**Use 40-mil- thick flashing at base of walls.**]
  4. Rubberized-Asphalt Flashing: Composite flashing product consisting of a pliable, adhesive rubberized-asphalt compound, bonded to a high-density, cross-

- laminated polyethylene film to produce an overall thickness of not less than **[30 mil] [40 mil] [60 mil]**.
5. Butyl Rubber Flashing: Composite, self-adhesive, flashing product consisting of a pliable, butyl rubber compound, bonded to a high-density polyethylene film, aluminum foil, or spunbonded polyolefin to produce an overall thickness of not less than **[35 mil] [40 mil]**.
    - a.
  6. Elastomeric Thermoplastic Flashing: Composite flashing product consisting of a polyester-reinforced ethylene interpolymer alloy.
    - a. Monolithic Sheet: Elastomeric thermoplastic flashing, **40 mil** thick.
    - b. Self-Adhesive Sheet: Elastomeric thermoplastic flashing, **25 mil** thick, with a **15-mil-** thick coating of adhesive.
      - 1) Color: **[Gray] [White] [Tan/buff] [Black]**.
  7. EPDM Flashing: Sheet flashing product made from ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer, complying with ASTM D4637/D4637M, **40 mil** thick.
- C. Drainage Plane Flashing: Fabricate from **[stainless steel] [copper] [rubberized asphalt] [elastomeric membrane]** and drainage membrane to shapes indicated **[, including weep tabs, termination bar and drip edge]**. Provide flashing materials as follows:
1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, **[Type 304] [Type 316]**, **0.016 inch** thick.
  2. Copper:
  3. Rubberized Asphalt:
  4. Elastomeric Membrane: **[EPDM complying with ASTM D4637/D4637M] [PVC] [PVC with Elvaloy Kee] [TPO]** ,
  5. Fabricate continuous flashings in sections **60 inches** long, minimum.
- D. Solder and Sealants for Sheet Metal Flashings: As specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."
- E. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other and to substrates.
- F. Termination Bars for Flexible Flashing: **[Aluminum] [Stainless steel] [Rigid PVC]** steel bars
- G. Termination Bars for Flexible Flashing, Flanged: with a **3/8-inch** flange at top **[and bottom]**.

## 2.7 ACCESSORIES

- A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from **[neoprene] [urethane] [or] [PVC]**.
- B. Weep/Vent Products: Use **[ one of]** the following unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Mesh Weep/Vent: Free-draining mesh; made from polyethylene strands, full height and width of head joint and depth **1/8 inch** less than depth of outer wythe; in color selected from manufacturer's standard.
  - 2. Vinyl Weep Hole/Vent: Units made from flexible PVC, designed to fit into a head joint and consisting of a louvered vertical leg, flexible wings to seal against ends of masonry units, and a top flap to keep mortar out of the head joint; in color selected by Architect.
- C. Cavity Drainage Material: Free-draining mesh, made from polymer strands that will not degrade within the wall cavity.
  - 1. Mortar Deflector: Strips, **[full depth of cavity]**, with **[dovetail-shaped notches] [dimpled surface]** that prevent clogging with mortar droppings.
  - 2. Rainscreen Drainage Mat: Sheets or strips not less than **[full depth of cavity]** thick and installed to full height of cavity, **[with additional strips 4 inches high at weep holes and thick enough to fill entire depth of cavity]** to prevent weep holes from clogging with mortar.

## 2.8 MORTAR MIXES

- A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
  - 2. Use **[portland cement-lime] [or] [masonry cement]** mortar unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.
- B. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.
- C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C270, Proportion Specification. Use Type N unless another type is indicated.

- D. Pigmented Mortar: Use colored cement product [ **or select and proportion pigments with other ingredients to produce color required. Do not add pigments to colored cement products**].
1. Pigments do not exceed 10 percent of portland cement by weight.
  2. Pigments do not exceed 5 percent of masonry cement by weight.
  3. Application: Use pigmented mortar for exposed mortar joints.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.
- B. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures. Mix units from several pallets or cubes as they are placed.
- C. Wetting of Brick: Wet brick before laying if initial rate of absorption exceeds **30 g/30 sq. in.** per minute when tested in accordance with ASTM C67/C67M. Allow units to absorb water so they are damp but not wet at time of laying.

### 3.2 TOLERANCES

- A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:
1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation, do not vary by more than plus **1/2 inch** or minus **1/4 inch**.
  2. For location of elements in plan, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus **1/2 inch**.
  3. For location of elements in elevation, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus **1/4 inch** in a story height or **1/2 inch** total.
- B. Lines and Levels:
1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls, do not vary from level by more than **1/4 inch in 10 ft.**, or **1/2-inch** maximum.

2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than **1/8 inch in 10 ft.**, **1/4 inch in 20 ft.**, or **1/2-inch** maximum.
3. For vertical lines and surfaces, do not vary from plumb by more than **1/4 inch in 10 ft.**, **3/8 inch in 20 ft.**, or **1/2-inch** maximum.
4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than **1/8 inch in 10 ft.**, **1/4 inch in 20 ft.**, or **1/2-inch** maximum.
5. For lines and surfaces, do not vary from straight by more than **1/4 inch in 10 ft.**, **3/8 inch in 20 ft.**, or **1/2-inch** maximum.

C. Joints:

1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus **1/8 inch**, with a maximum thickness limited to **1/2 inch**.
2. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus **1/8 inch**. [**Do not vary from adjacent bed-joint and head-joint thicknesses by more than 1/8 inch .**]

### 3.3 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

- A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.
- B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in [**running bond**] [**stack bond**] [**one-third running bond**] [**Flemish bond**] [**English bond**] [**bond pattern indicated on Drawings**]; do not use units with less-than-nominal **4-inch** horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.
- C. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.4 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

- A. Lay masonry units with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.
- B. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.5 ANCHORED MASONRY VENEERS

- A. Anchor masonry veneers to **[wall framing] [and] [concrete and masonry backup]** with **[ seismic]** masonry-veneer anchors to comply with the following requirements:
1. Fasten **[screw-attached] [and] [seismic]** anchors **[through sheathing to wall framing] [and] [to concrete and masonry backup]** with metal fasteners of type indicated. Use two fasteners unless anchor design only uses one fastener.
  2. Embed **[tie sections] [connector sections and continuous wire]** in masonry joints.
  3. Locate anchor sections to allow maximum vertical differential movement of ties up and down.
  4. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than **18 inches** o.c. vertically and **24 inches** o.c. horizontally, with not less than one anchor for each **2 sq. ft.** of wall area. Install additional anchors within **12 inches** of openings and at intervals, not exceeding **8 inches**, around perimeter.
  5. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than **16 inches** o.c. vertically and **25 inches** o.c. horizontally. Install additional anchors within **12 inches** of openings and at intervals, not exceeding **36 inches**, around perimeter.
  6. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than **18 inches** o.c. vertically and horizontally. Install additional anchors within **12 inches** of openings and at intervals, not exceeding **24 inches**, around perimeter.
- B. Provide airspace between back of masonry veneer and face of **[sheathing] [insulation]**.

### 3.6 ANCHORING MASONRY TO STRUCTURAL STEEL AND CONCRETE

- A. Anchor masonry to structural steel and concrete, where masonry abuts or faces structural steel or concrete to comply with the following:
1. Provide an open space between masonry and structural steel or concrete unless otherwise indicated. Keep open space free of mortar and other rigid materials.
  2. Anchor masonry with anchors embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure.
  3. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than **24 inches** o.c. vertically and **36 inches** o.c. horizontally.

### 3.7 FLASHING, WEEP HOLES, AND VENTS

- A. General: Install embedded flashing and weep holes in masonry at shelf angles, lintels, ledges, other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall, and where indicated. **[ Install vents at shelf angles, ledges, and other obstructions to upward flow of air in cavities, and where indicated.]**

- B. Install flashing as follows unless otherwise indicated:
1. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape [ **as recommended by flashing manufacturer**].
  2. Extend flashing through veneer, across airspace behind veneer, and up face of sheathing at least **8 inches**; with upper edge tucked under [ **water-resistive barrier**] [ **air barrier**], lapping at least **4 inches**.
  3. At lintels and shelf angles, extend flashing **6 inches** minimum [, **to edge of next full unit**] at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing **6 inches** minimum [, **to edge of next full unit**] and turn ends up not less than **2 inches** to form end dams.
  4. Install metal drip edges beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing **1/2 inch** back from outside face of wall, and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal drip edge.
  5. Install metal flashing termination beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing **1/2 inch** back from outside face of wall, and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal flashing termination.
- C. Install weep holes in veneers in head joints of first course of masonry immediately above embedded flashing.
1. Use [ **specified weep/cavity vent products**] [ **or**] [ **open-head joints**] to form weep holes.
  2. Space weep holes **24 inches** o.c. unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Place cavity drainage material in airspace behind veneers to comply with configuration requirements for cavity drainage material in "Accessories" Article.
- E. Install vents in head joints in exterior wythes at spacing indicated. Use [ **specified weep/cavity vent products**] [ **or**] [ **open-head joints**] to form vents.
1. Close cavities off vertically and horizontally with blocking in manner indicated. Install through-wall flashing and weep holes above horizontal blocking.

### 3.8 CLEANING

- A. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.
- B. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:



1. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
2. Protect adjacent stone and nonmasonry surfaces from contact with cleaner by covering them with liquid strippable masking agent or polyethylene film and waterproof masking tape.
3. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
4. Clean brick by bucket-and-brush hand-cleaning method described in BIA Technical Notes 20.
5. Clean masonry with a proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.9 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

- A. Waste Disposal as Fill Material: Dispose of clean masonry waste, including excess or soil-contaminated sand, waste mortar, and broken masonry units, by crushing and mixing with fill material as fill is placed.
  1. Do not dispose of masonry waste as fill within **18 inches** of finished grade.
- B. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above or recycled, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 04 26 13

## SECTION 05 12 00 STRUCTURAL STEEL

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 DESCRIPTION OF THE WORK

A. Work Included: This section covers furnishing all labor, materials, equipment, and services in connection with the furnishings, fabrication and erection of all structural steel work complete including:

1. Steel columns
2. Steel beams and purlins
3. Shelf angles
4. Bolts
5. Angle frames and openings
6. Leveling plates and anchor plates not cast in concrete or masonry.
7. Shop painting

B. Include all supplementary parts and members necessary to complete the structural steel frame, regardless of whether all such parts are definitely shown or specified, and furnish all such bolts, gussets, plates, etc., as may be required for the proper assembly of all items. Workmanship shall be of the best quality known to the trade, and all work shall be carefully assembled, fabricated and erected true to the lines, elevations and designs shown on the Drawings.

C. Related work specified in other sections:

1. Quality Requirements: Section 01 41 00
2. Metal Roof Deck: Section 05 30 00
3. Embedded metal assemblies: Section 03 30 00
4. Metal Fabrications: Section 05 50 00
5. Painting: Section 09 90 00
6. Grouting structural steel: Section 03 30 00

#### 1.2 REFERENCES

A. American Institute of Steel Construction (AISC):

1. Specifications for Structural Steel Building - Latest Edition, with commentary.
2. Code of Standard Practices for Steel Buildings and Bridges - Latest Edition, with commentary.

B. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)/American Welding Society (AWS):

1. ANSI/AWS D1.1-81 Structural Welding Code

C. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):

1. ASTM A 36 Structural Steel
2. ASTM A 325 High-Strength Bolts for Structural Steel Joints.
3. ASTM A 490 Quenched and Tempered Alloy Steel Bolts for Structural Steel Joints.
4. ASTM A 500 Cold-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing in Rounds and Shapes.
5. ASTM A 501 Hot-Formed Welded and Seamless Carbon Steel Structural Tubing.
6. ASTM A 992 Standard Specification for Structural Steel Shapes.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Shop drawings: Submit in accordance with Section 01 33 00.

1. Contractor shall be responsible for fabrication and erection omissions and errors and for conformance with the drawings and specifications relative to the various details.
2. Architect's review will cover member sizes, methods of connections and general arrangements but not dimensions or quantities. The strength of the connections shall be the responsibility of the Structural Steel Fabricator, unless otherwise shown on sections and details.
3. Shop drawings shall indicate shop and erection details, including cuts, copes, connections, holes, thread fasteners and welds. A sealed letter from a Registered Professional Engineer in the State of Texas shall be submitted by the Fabricator certifying that the shop drawings, including the design of all connections, have been produced under his direct supervision. Shop drawings submitted without the Fabricator's PE letter will not be reviewed.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Bolts and other anchorage devices to be embedded in concrete and masonry shall be delivered to the site before the start of concrete and masonry work. Furnish setting drawings and templates for the installation of anchor bolts.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Structural Steel:

1. ASTM A36 FY=36 ksi, plates, bars, and channels.

2. ASTM A992 FY=50 ksi, wide flange and tee shapes.

- B. Structural tubing: ASTM A 500, Grade C FY=50 ksi, cold-formed welded steel structural tubing.
- C. Pipe columns: ASTM A 500, Grade C FY=46 ksi, cold-formed welded steel structural tubing.
- D. High-strength threaded fasteners: ASTM A325, Bearing Type bolts, nuts and plain hardened washers. Minimum bolt diameter shall be 3/4".
- E. Stud anchors: Headed stud anchors with a smooth shank, or carbon steel with a minimum tensile strength of 65000 psi, and as manufactured by Nelson Stud Welding Div. or KSM Welding Systems Div. F. Shop Paint:
  - 1. Typical: Fed. Spec. TT-P-86G. Provide Tnemec 10-99, modified alkyd, rust inhibitive metal primer with solids content not less than 55% by weight.
  - 2. Exterior Exposed: Tnemec series 394 Periprime or approved equal, applied per manufacturer's recommendations.

2.2 FABRICATION

- A. General: Fabricate structural steel in accordance with referenced specifications.
  - 1. Drawings indicate the design, sections and weight of members. Make no substitutes except with the written permission of the Architect. Dimensions scaled from the drawings shall not be used for fabrication. Contractor shall, when necessary, measure and determine actual dimensions at the building. All existing building dimensions that might offset the fabrication of steel members shall be verified by the Contractor prior to fabrication.
  - 2. Workmanship shall conform to the best practice in structural steel shops. Materials shall be clean and straight. Shop kinks will not be permitted.
- B. Connections shall conform to the standard specifications of the American Institute of Steel Construction. All bolted connections shall be "snug tight" type.
- C. Punching: Shop-punch steel members for bolts and hanger rods needed to support wood nailers and other items.
- D. Marking: Components of high strength steel required to have a yield stress greater than 36 kips/sq. in. shall be clearly marked with the ASTM designation over any shop coat prior to shipment from the fabricator's plant. E. Shop Painting:
  - 1. Steel to be encased in concrete or sprayed with fireproofing and steel surface to be welded shall not be painted. Clean this steelwork of oil and grease with solvent cleaner and remove dirt and other foreign matter by sweeping with brushes or with compressed air.
  - 2. Steelwork shall be given one coat shop paint to a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Clean this steelwork of loose mill scale, rust, weld, slag, dirt and

other foreign matter. Clean welds of spatter, smoke and iron oxide film. Remove oil and grease with solvent cleaner.

3. Apply shop paint to dry surfaces thoroughly and evenly by brush, spray, roller coating or dipping at the election of the fabricator.

F. Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel (AESS)

1. Fabrication of all structural steel designated AESS shall meet the requirements for AESS 1 & 2, as described in the AISC Code of Standard Practice, Chapter 10.
2. All AESS shall have surface preparation meeting or exceeding SSPC-SP6, Commercial Blast Cleaning.
3. All exterior exposed AESS shall be provided with a zinc rich primer; see section 2.1.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 ERECTION

- A. Erection of structural metal shall comply with the requirements of referenced codes and standards.

1. The use of a cutting torch for field connection of fabricating errors will be permitted only with the approval of the Architect. For each fabrication error the Contractor shall submit a drawing of existing conditions and the proposed correction for the Architect's review.
2. Set column base plates to correct elevations and support temporarily on shims until the columns have been plumbed and grouted.
3. Make field connections by electric arc welding or with "snug tight" type bolted connection with high strength bolts.

- B. Make high strength bolted connections in conformance with "Specifications for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A490 Bolts" as approved by the Research Council on Riveted and Bolted Structural Joints, August 14, 1980.

1. Prior to installation, clean bolts, nuts and washers, if required. Dirt and noticeable rust on bolts, nuts and washers will not be allowed.
2. Where long slotted holes are used, provide plate washers or bars in conformance with Article 3, paragraph (a) 3. of the above-mentioned specification.

- C. Erect steel framing true and plumb and brace temporarily where necessary to handle all loads to which the structure may be subjected. Such bracing shall be left in place as long as required for safety, and finally shall be removed by the Contractor as part of his equipment. Securely connect all work to take care of dead load, wind and erection stresses.

- D. Immediately after erection, clean field welds, field connections and abraded areas of shop paint. Apply paint to exposed areas using same materials as used shop painting. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils, equal to that of the original shop coat.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform the following testing and inspection: (Prior to placement of steel deck).
  - 1. Check temporary bracing of steel frame.
  - 2. Check location and condition of anchor bolts.
  - 3. Check plumbness and tolerance of steel frame.
  - 4. Visually inspect common bolts.
  - 5. Inspection of high-strength bolting:
    - (a) Visually inspect connections.
    - (b) Check tightness of at least 33% of connections.
    - (c) Check at least two bolts of each girder to column connection.
  - 6. Visually inspect field and shop welds.
  - 7. Ultrasonic or X-ray testing of full penetration welds.
  - 8. Re-inspect corrective measures required at expense of Contractor.
  - 9. Verify that no members are damaged.
  - 10. Certify that materials and installation are according to Contract Documents and industry standards.
- B. Correction: The fabricator or erector shall correct deficiencies in structural steel work which inspection and test reports have indicated to be not in compliance with the specified requirements. Perform all additional tests required to reconfirm non-compliance of the original work and to show compliance of corrected work.
- C. Verify that all welders employed during erection of structural steel are certified for type of base materials and positions encountered. Certification testing to be performed at Contractor's expense.

END OF SECTION 05 12 00

## SECTION 05 50 00 - METAL FABRICATIONS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal bollards.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Metal bollards.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

#### 2.2 METALS

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.
- B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.
- C. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A786/A786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A36/A36M or ASTM A283/A283M, Grade C or D.
- D. Rolled-Stainless Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A793.
- E. Steel Tubing: ASTM A500/A500M, cold-formed steel tubing.
- F. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Standard Weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.

#### 2.3 FASTENERS

A.General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 stainless steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.

## 2.4 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.
- C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- G. Fabricate seams and other connections that are exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- H. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, not less than 8 inches from ends and corners of units and 24 inches o.c.

## 2.5 METAL BOLLARDS

- A. Fabricate metal bollards from Schedule 80 steel pipe.
  - 1. Cap bollards with dome cap.



- B. Fabricate bollards with 3/8-inch- thick, steel baseplates for bolting to concrete slab. Drill baseplates at all four corners for 3/4-inch anchor bolts.
- C. Prime steel bollards with zinc-rich primer.
- D. Provide bollard covers.

Manufacturer: Ideal Shield or approved equal.  
Color: Red (Pantone 187C) with silver reflective tape.  
Size: To fit 4" pipe diameter.

## 2.6 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

- A. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.

## 2.7 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A153/A153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A123/A123M for other steel and iron products.
  - 1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:
  - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.

- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.
- E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF METAL BOLLARDS

- A. Fill metal-capped bollards solidly with concrete and allow concrete to cure seven days before installing.
- B. Anchor bollards to existing construction with anchor bolts. Provide four **3/4-inch** bolts at each bollard unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Embed anchor bolts at least 4 inches in concrete.
- C. Anchor bollards in concrete in formed or core-drilled holes not less than 42 inches deep and 3/4 inch larger than OD of bollard. Fill annular space around bollard solidly with shrinkage-resistant grout; mixed and placed to comply with grout manufacturer's written instructions. Slope grout up approximately 1/8 inch toward bollard.
- D. Fill bollards solidly with concrete, mounding top surface to shed water.

### 3.3 REPAIRS

- A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

END OF SECTION 05 50 00

## SECTION 06 10 00 - ROUGH CARPENTRY

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Wood blocking , cants, and nailers.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. For each type of process and factory-fabricated product.
2. For preservative-treated wood products.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Material Certificates:

1. For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
2. For preservative-treated wood products. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: Comply with DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Grade lumber by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.

1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece or omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
3. Dress lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Maximum Moisture Content:
  - 1. Boards: 15 percent.
  - 2. Dimension Lumber: 15 percent for 2-inch nominal thickness or less; 19 percent for more than 2-inch nominal thickness unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Engineered Wood Products: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and for which current model code research or evaluation reports exist that show compliance with building code in effect for Project.
  - 1. Allowable design stresses, as published by manufacturer, are to meet or exceed those indicated. Manufacturer's published values are to be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.

## 2.2 PRESERVATIVE TREATMENT

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWWPA U1; Use Category UC2 for interior construction not in contact with ground, Use Category UC3b for exterior construction not in contact with ground, and Use Category UC4a for items in contact with ground.
  - 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or that does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.

## 2.3 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
  - 1. Blocking.
  - 2. Nailers.
- B. Dimension Lumber Items: Construction or No. 2 grade lumber of any species.
- C. Concealed Boards: 15 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
  - 1. Mixed southern pine or southern pine; No. 2 grade; SPIB.
  - 2. Eastern softwoods; No. 2 Common grade; NeLMA.
  - 3. Northern species; No. 2 Common grade; NLGA.
  - 4. Western woods; Construction or No. 2 Common grade; WCLIB or WWPA.

## 2.4 FASTENERS

- A. General: Fasteners are to be of size and type indicated and comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture. Provide nails or screws, in sufficient length, to penetrate not less than 1-1/2 inches into wood substrate.
  - 1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A153/A153M .
- B. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.

## 2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's WCD 1, "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Framing with Engineered Wood Products: Install engineered wood products to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Set work to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry accurately to other construction. Locate nailers, blocking, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- D. Install shear wall panels to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Install metal framing anchors to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install fasteners through each fastener hole.
- F. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
- H. Where wood-preservative-treated lumber is installed adjacent to metal decking, install continuous flexible flashing separator between wood and metal decking.
- I. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
  - 1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code (IBC).
  - 2. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.

3. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.

### 3.2 PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- B. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 06 10 00

## SECTION 06 10 53 MISCELLANEOUS CARPENTRY

### PART 1 – GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:

1. Wood blocking and nailers.
2. Wood furring and grounds.
3. Sheathing.
4. Interior wood trim.
5. Wood shelving and clothes rods.
6. Plywood backing panels.
7. Thermal Breaks
8. Plywood Wall Guards.

- B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 6 Section "Interior Architectural Woodwork" for interior woodwork not specified in this Section.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:

1. NeLMA - Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers Association.
2. NHLA: National Hardwood Lumber Association
3. NLGA - National Lumber Grades Authority.
4. SPIB - Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
5. WCLIB - West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
6. WWPA - Western Wood Products Association.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.

1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used, net amount of preservative retained, and chemical treatment manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, installing, and finishing treated material.

2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
3. For fire-retardant treatments specified to be High-Temperature (HT) type include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5664.
4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
5. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.

B. Research/Evaluation Reports: For the following, showing compliance with building code in effect for Project:

1. Preservative-treated wood.
2. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
3. Power-driven fasteners.
4. Powder-actuated fasteners.
5. Expansion anchors.
6. Metal framing anchors.

C. Samples: submit samples of all finishes applied to wood products to be installed open to view. Finishes shall be applied to the actual material being used and are to be not less than 12" in length.

## 1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack lumber, plywood, and other panels; place spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.
- B. Deliver interior wood materials that are to be exposed to view only after building is enclosed and weatherproof, wet work other than painting is dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and humidity at occupancy levels.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of lumber grading agencies certified by the American Lumber Standards Committee Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.
  1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
  2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece, or omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
  3. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20



for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.

4. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.
5. Provide dry lumber with 19 percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness or less, unless otherwise indicated.
6. Provide dry lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content at time of dressing for 2-inch nominal (38-mm actual) thickness or less, unless otherwise indicated.
7. All lumber shall be either pressure-treated or fire-retardant treated in accordance with all codes having jurisdiction over the project, if applicable, or with best standard practices otherwise.

## 2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWWA C2 (lumber) and [AWPA C9 (plywood), except that lumber that is not in contact with the ground and is continuously protected from liquid water may be treated according to AWWA C31 with inorganic boron (SBX).
  1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
  2. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- B. Kiln-dry material after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent for lumber and 12 percent for plywood. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark each treated item with the treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the American Lumber Standards Committee Board of Review.
  1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece, or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.
- D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
  1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
  2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
  3. Wood framing and furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.
  4. Wood framing members less than 18 inches (460 mm) above the ground in crawl spaces or unexcavated areas.
  5. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.

## 2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with performance requirements in AWPA C20 (lumber) and AWPA C27 (plywood).
  - 1. Use treatment for which chemical manufacturer publishes physical properties of treated wood after exposure to elevated temperatures, when tested by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D 5664, for lumber and ASTM D 5516, for plywood.
  - 2. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
  - 3. Use Exterior type for exterior locations and where indicated.
  - 4. Use Interior Type A High Temperature (HT), unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of UL, U.S. Testing, Timber Products Inspection, or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece.
- C. For exposed items indicated to be painted, use chemical formulations that do not bleed through, contain colorants, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- D. Application: Treat all miscellaneous carpentry, unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.4 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
  - 1. Blocking - 2" x 8" minimum.
  - 2. Nailers - 1" x 3" in 8' or 12' lengths.
  - 3. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
  - 4. Furring.
  - 5. Grounds.
- B. For items of dimension lumber size, provide Construction Standard, grade lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content of any of the following species:
  - 1. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
  - 2. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
  - 3. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
  - 4. Hem-fir, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  - 5. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  - 6. Western woods; WCLIB or WWPA.
  - 7. Northern species; NLGA.
  - 8. Eastern softwoods; NeLMA.
- C. For exposed boards, provide lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades unless noted otherwise:

1. Eastern white pine, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, or sugar pine; D Select (Quality) grade; NELMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  2. Mixed southern pine B & B Finish grade; SPIB.
- D. For concealed boards, provide lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
1. Mixed southern pine, No. 2 grade; SPIB.
  2. Hem-fir or Hem-fir (north), Construction or 2 Common grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  3. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or Spruce-pine-fir, Construction or 2 Common grade; NELMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  4. Eastern softwoods, No. 2 Common grade; NELMA.
  5. Northern species, No. 2 Common grade; NLGA.
  6. Western woods, Construction or No. 2 Common grade; WCLIB or WWPA.

## 2.5 INTERIOR WOOD TRIM

- A. General: Provide kiln-dried finished (surfaced) material without finger-jointing, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Softwood Lumber Trim for Transparent (Stain or Clear) Finish: Provide one of the following species and grades unless indicated otherwise:
1. Grade C Select eastern white pine; NeLMA or NLGA.
  2. Grade C Select (Choice) Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, or sugar pine; NLGA or WWPA.
  3. Grade Superior or C & Btr Finish Douglas fir-larch or Douglas fir-south; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
  4. Clear Heart western red cedar; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
- C. Hardwood Lumber Trim for Transparent Finish (Stain or Clear) Finish: Clear, kiln-dried, Maple (S4S), selected for compatible grain and color.
- D. Lumber Trim for Opaque (Painted) Finish: Finished lumber (S4S), either finger-jointed or solid lumber, of one of the following species and grades:
1. Grade D Select eastern white pine; NeLMA or NLGA.
  2. Grade D Select (Quality) Idaho white, lodge pole, ponderosa, or sugar pine; NLGA or WWPA.
  3. Grade A Finish alder, aspen, basswood, cottonwood, gum, magnolia, soft maple, sycamore, tupelo, or yellow poplar; NHLA.
- E. Moldings: Made to patterns included in WMMPA WM 7. Wood moldings made from kiln-dried stock and graded according to WMMPA WM 4.
1. Moldings for Transparent (Stain or Clear) Finish: N-grade eastern white, Idaho white, lodge pole, ponderosa, or sugar pine, selected for compatible grain and color.

2. Moldings for Opaque (Painted) Finish: P-grade eastern white, Idaho white, lodge pole, ponderosa, or sugar pine.

## 2.6 PLYWOOD PANELS

- A. Miscellaneous Concealed Plywood: Exposure 1 sheathing, span rating to suit framing in each location, and thickness as indicated but not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm).
- B. Miscellaneous Exposed Plywood: DOC PS 1, A-D Interior, thickness as indicated but not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) unless noted otherwise.
- C. Telephone and Electrical Equipment Backing Panels: DOC PS 1, Exposure 1, C-D Plugged, fire-retardant treated, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 1/2 inch (13-mm) nominal thickness.
- D. Plywood Wall Guards: Provide APA 3/4" B-B Marine Grade 4X8 panels.

## 2.7 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and manufacture.
  1. Provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- B. Nails, Wire, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
- D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
- E. Screws for Fastening to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: ASTM C 954, except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.
- F. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1. (ASME B18.2.3.8M).
- G. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.
- H. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
  1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
  2. Material: Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 (ASTM F 738M and ASTM F 836M, Grade A1 or A4).

## 2.8 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS

- A. General: Provide galvanized steel framing anchors of structural capacity, type, and size indicated and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Galvanized Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180) coating designation.

## 2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Adhesives for Gluing Furring and Sleepers to Concrete or Masonry: Formulation complying with ASTM D 3498 that is approved for use indicated by adhesive manufacturer.
  - 1. Use adhesives that have a VOC content of 70 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Discard units of material with defects that impair quality of carpentry and that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- B. Set carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit. Locate nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- C. Apply field treatment complying with AWPA M4 to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber and plywood.
- D. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Metal Framing Anchors: Install metal framing to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Do not splice structural members between supports, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
  - 1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches (406 mm) o.c.
- H. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics will not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.

- I. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
  - 1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
  - 2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
- J. Securely attach carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated and according to applicable codes and recognized standards.
- K. Countersink fastener heads on exposed carpentry work and fill holes with wood filler.
- L. Use common wire nails, unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Pre-drill members when necessary to install fasteners without splitting wood; do not countersink nail heads, unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.2 WOOD SLEEPER, BLOCKING, AND NAILER INSTALLATION

- A. Install where indicated and where required for screeding or attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

### 3.3 WOOD FURRING INSTALLATION

- A. Install level and plumb with closure strips at edges and openings. Shim with wood as required for tolerance of finish work.
  - 1. Fire block furred spaces of walls, at each floor level and at ceiling, with wood blocking or noncombustible materials accurately fitted to close furred spaces.
- B. Furring to Receive Plywood or Hardboard Paneling: Install 1-by-3-inch nominal- (19-by-63- mm actual-) size furring horizontally at 24 inches (610 mm) o.c.
- C. Furring to Receive Gypsum Board: Install 1-by-2-inch nominal- (19-by-38-mm actual-) size furring vertically at 16 inches (406 mm) o.c. Furring to Receive Gypsum Board: Install 1-by-2- inch nominal- (19-by-38-mm actual-) size

### 3.4 PRELAMINATED ACRYLIC/PVC PROTECTIVE PANELS

- A. Panels shall be fire-rated particleboard, 3/8" thick, with .060" thick acrylic/PVC sheet, factory bonded to fire-rated particleboard and shall be "Kydex" as manufactured by Nudo Products, Inc., Springfield, IL 62703, Tel: (800) 826-4132, or equal. Finish shall be P-3 Velour Matte in color as selected by the Architect from manufacturer's standard color range. Include all splines, moldings, trim pieces and caulking as required for a complete installation. Panels shall have grooved edges to accept hidden dividers.

- B. Install panels in strict accordance with manufacturer's comprehensive printed installation guide.

### 3.5 PANEL PRODUCT INSTALLATION

- A. Wood Structural Panels: Comply with applicable recommendations contained in APA Form No. E30K, "APA Design/Construction Guide: Residential & Commercial," for types of structural-use panels and applications indicated.

- 1. Comply with "Code Plus" provisions in above-referenced guide.

### 3.6 WOOD TRIM INSTALLATION

- A. Install with minimum number of joints practical, using full-length pieces from maximum lengths of lumber available. Do not use pieces less than 24 inches (610 mm) long except where necessary. Stagger joints in adjacent and related standing and running trim. Cope at returns and miter at corners to produce tight-fitting joints with full-surface contact throughout length of joint. Use scarf joints for end-to-end joints.

- 1. Match color and grain pattern across joints.
  - 2. Install trim after gypsum board joint-finishing operations are completed.
  - 3. Drill pilot holes in hardwood before fastening to prevent splitting. Fasten to prevent movement or warping. Countersink fastener heads and fill holes.
  - 4. Install to tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches (3 mm in 2438 mm) for level and plumb. Install adjoining finish carpentry with 1/32-inch (0.8-mm) maximum offset for flush installation and 1/16-inch (1.6-mm) maximum offset for reveal installation.

### 3.7 PRELAMINATED ACRYLIC/PVC PROTECTIVE PANELS

- A. Panels shall be fire-rated particleboard, 3/8" thick, with .060" thick acrylic/PVC sheet, factory bonded to fire-rated particleboard and shall be "Kydex" as manufactured by Nudo Products, Inc., Springfield, IL 62703, Tel: (800) 826-4132, or equal. Finish shall be P-3 Velour Matte in color as selected by the Architect from manufacturer's standard color range. Include all splines, moldings, trim pieces and caulking as required for a complete installation. Panels shall have grooved edges to accept hidden dividers.

- B. Install panels in strict accordance with manufacturer's comprehensive printed installation guide.

### 3.8 WIRE MESH

- A. Turkey wire mesh for partitions, ceilings (where required) and doors shall be 16-gage galvanized steel 1" x 2" or 1/2" x 1/2" as noted on drawings. Mesh shall be as supplied by Gilbert & Bennett, or Wickwire Brothers or approved equal.

### 3.9 PROTECTION

- A. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

SBLM Architects  
Project No: 023569

END OF SECTION 06 10 53



## SECTION 07 92 00 - JOINT SEALANTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Non staining silicone joint sealants.
2. Urethane joint sealants.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product data.
- B. Joint-sealant schedule.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Field Quality-Control Reports: For field-adhesion-test reports, for each sealant application tested.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Warranty Documentation:
1. Manufacturers' special warranties.
  2. Installer's special warranties.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
- B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified in accordance with ASTM C1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

#### 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
- B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

### 2.2 NONSTAINING SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Non staining Joint Sealants: No staining of substrates when tested in accordance with ASTM C1248.
- B. Silicone, Non staining, S, NS, 100/50, T, NT: Non staining, single-component, non-sag, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. The Dow Chemical Company.
    - b. Pecora Corporation

### 2.3 URETHANE JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Urethane, S, NS, 100/50, T, NT: Single-component, non-sag, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Sika USA
    - b. Pecora Corporation

### 2.4 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

- A. Sealant Backing Material, General: Non staining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Construction Foam Products; a division of Nomaco, Inc.
    - b. Master Builders Solutions.

- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin) or any of the preceding types, as approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer for joint application indicated, and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
  - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
  - 2. Clean, porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
    - a. Concrete.
    - b. Masonry.
    - c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
    - d. Exterior insulation and finish systems.
  - 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
  - 4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
    - a. Metal.
    - b. Glass.
    - c. Porcelain enamel.
    - d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Install sealant backings of type indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
  - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
  - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
  - 3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:
  - 1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
  - 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
  - 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- F. Tooling of Non-sag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
  - 1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
  - 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
  - 3. Provide concave joint profile in accordance with Figure 8A in ASTM C1193 unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Provide flush joint profile at in accordance with Figure 8B in ASTM C1193.
  - 5. Provide recessed joint configuration of recess depth and at in accordance with Figure 8C in ASTM C1193.
    - a. Use masking tape to protect surfaces adjacent to recessed tooled joints.
- G. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.
- H. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair

damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:
  - a. Extent of Testing: Test completed and cured sealant joints as follows:
    - 1) Perform 10 tests for the first 1000 ft. of joint length for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
    - 2) Perform one test for each 1000 ft. of joint length thereafter or one test per each floor per elevation.
  - b. Test Method: Test joint sealants in accordance with Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C1521.
    - 1) For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
  - c. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:
    - 1) Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.
    - 2) Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
    - 3) Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion complies with sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.
  - d. Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant material, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.
  - e. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.
2. Evaluation of Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 07 92 00

## SECTION 08 11 13 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:

1. Interior standard steel doors and frames.
2. Exterior standard steel doors and frames.
3. Interior custom hollow-metal doors and frames.
4. Exterior custom hollow-metal doors and frames.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: Include the following:

1. Elevations of each door type.
2. Details of doors, including vertical- and horizontal-edge details and metal thicknesses.
3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.

C. Product Schedule: For hollow-metal doors and frames, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with final door hardware schedule.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product test reports.

B. Field quality control reports.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Documents: For fire-rated doors, list of door numbers and applicable room name and number to which door accesses.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Rated Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality control inspections of fire-rated door assemblies is to meet the qualifications set forth in NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1 and the following:
  - 1. Door and Hardware Institute Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certification.
- B. Egress Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality control inspections of egress door assemblies is to meet the qualifications set forth in NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.4 and the following:
  - 1. Door and Hardware Institute Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certification.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- 1) Ceco Door Products; an Assa Abloy Group company.
- 2) Curries Company; an Assa Abloy Group company.
- 3) Fleming Door Products Ltd.; an Assa Abloy Group company.
- 4) Or equal.

#### 2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for fire-protection ratings and temperature-rise limits indicated on Drawings, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.
  - 1. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Listed and labeled for smoke and draft control by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on testing according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.
  - 2. Temperature-Rise Limit: At vertical exit enclosures and exit passageways, provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than 450 deg F above ambient after 30 minutes of standard fire-test exposure.

- B. Thermally Rated Door Assemblies: Provide door assemblies with U-factor of not more than 0.38 deg Btu/F x h x sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM C518.

### 2.3 INTERIOR STANDARD STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Construct hollow-metal doors and frames to comply with standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.
  
- B. Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8, Level 2; ANSI/SDI A250.4, Level B. **At locations indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.**
  - 1. Doors:
    - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
    - b. Thickness: **1-3/4 inches.**
    - c. Face: **Metallic-coated**, steel sheet, minimum thickness of **0.053 inch.**
    - d. Edge Construction: Continuously welded with no visible seam..
    - e. Core: **Manufacturer's standard.**
    - f. Fire-Rated Core: Manufacturer's standard core for fire-rated and temperature-rise-rated doors.
  - 2. Frames:
    - a. Materials: **Metallic-coated**, steel sheet, minimum thickness of **0.053 inch.**
    - b. Side lite and Transom Frames: Fabricated from same thickness material as adjacent door frame.

### 2.4 INTERIOR CUSTOM HOLLOW-METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

- A. Hollow-Metal Doors and Frames: NAAMM-HMMA 860; ANSI/SDI A250.4, Physical Performance Level A. **At locations indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.**
  - 1. Doors:
    - a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
    - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
    - c. Face: **Metallic-coated**, steel sheet.
    - d. Edge Construction: Continuously welded with no visible seam.
    - e. Core: Steel stiffened.
    - f. Fire-Rated Core: Manufacturer's standard core for fire-rated and temperature-rise-rated doors.
  - 2. Frames:
    - a. Materials: **Metallic-coated**, steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch.
    - b. Side lite and Transom Frames: Fabricated from same thickness material as adjacent door frame.
    - c. Construction: Manufacturer's standard.
  
- B. Commercial Doors and Frames: NAAMM-HMMA 861; ANSI/SDI A250.4, Physical Performance Level A. **At locations indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.**
  - 1. Doors:



- a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
  - b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
  - c. Face: **Metallic-coated**, steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch.
  - d. Edge Construction: Continuously welded with no visible seam.
  - e. Core: Steel stiffened.
  - f. Fire-Rated Core: Manufacturer's standard core for fire-rated and temperature-rise-rated doors.
2. Frames:
- a. Materials: **Metallic-coated**, steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch, except 0.067 inch for openings exceeding 4 feet wide.
  - b. Side lite and Transom Frames: Fabricated from same material as adjacent door frame.
  - c. Construction: Manufacturer's standard.

## 2.5 BORROWED LITES

- A. Fabricate of **metallic-coated**, steel sheet.
- B. Construction: Manufacturer's standard.
- C. Fabricate in one piece except where handling and shipping limitations require multiple sections. Where frames are fabricated in sections due to shipping or handling limitations, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of metal of same or greater thickness as metal as frames.
- D. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.6 FRAME ANCHORS

- A. Jamb Anchors:
  1. Type: Anchors of minimum size and type required by applicable door and frame standard, and suitable for performance level indicated.
  2. Quantity: Minimum of three anchors per jamb, with one additional anchor for frames with no floor anchor. Provide one additional anchor for each 24 inches of frame height above 7 feet.
  3. Post installed Expansion Anchor: Minimum 3/8-inch- diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts, with manufacturer's standard pipe spacer.
- B. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor.

- C. Floor Anchors for Concrete Slabs with Underlayment: Adjustable-type anchors with extension clips, allowing not less than 2-inch height adjustment. Terminate bottom of frames at top of underlayment.
- D. Material: ASTM A879/A879M, Commercial Steel (CS), 04Z coating designation; mill phosphatized.
  - 1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A1008/A1008M or ASTM A1011/A1011M; hot-dip galvanized in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B.

## 2.7 MATERIALS

- A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.
- B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1011/A1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.
- C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.
- D. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M.
- E. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow-metal frames of type indicated.
- F. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers manufactured from slag or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E136 for combustion characteristics.
- G. Glazing: Comply with requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."

## 2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Door Astragals: Provide overlapping astragal on one leaf of pairs of doors where required by NFPA 80 for fire-performance rating or where indicated. Extend minimum 3/4 inch beyond edge of door on which astragal is mounted or as required to comply with published listing of qualified testing agency.

- B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Fabricate in one piece except where handling and shipping limitations require multiple sections. Where frames are fabricated in sections, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of metal of same or greater thickness as frames.
1. Side lite and Transom Bar Frames: Provide closed tubular members with no visible face seams or joints, fabricated from same material as door frame. Fasten members at crossings and to jambs by welding **or by rigid mechanical anchors**.
  2. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped frames, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction.
    - a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.
    - b. Double-Door Frames: Drill stop in head jamb to receive two door silencers.
- C. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow-metal doors and frames to receive templated mortised hardware, and electrical wiring; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping in accordance with ANSI/SDI A250.6, the Door Hardware Schedule, and templates.
1. Reinforce doors and frames to receive non-templated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.
  2. Comply with BHMA A156.115 for preparing hollow-metal doors and frames for hardware.
- D. Glazed Lites: Provide stops and moldings around glazed lites where indicated. Form corners of stops and moldings with butted or mitered hairline joints.
1. Provide stops and moldings flush with face of door, and with beveled or square stops unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Multiple Glazed Lites: Provide fixed and removable stops and moldings so that each glazed lite is capable of being removed independently.
  3. Provide fixed frame moldings on outside of exterior and on secure side of interior doors and frames. Provide loose stops and moldings on inside of hollow-metal doors and frames.
  4. Coordinate rabbet width between fixed and removable stops with glazing and installation types indicated.
  5. Provide stops for installation with countersunk flat- or oval-head machine screws spaced uniformly not more than **9 inches** o.c. and not more than **2 inches** o.c. from each corner.

## 2.9 STEEL FINISHES

- A. Prime Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard primer.
1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with ANSI/SDI A250.10; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch up factory-applied finishes where spreaders are removed.
- B. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive non-templated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Hollow-Metal Frames: Comply with **ANSI/SDI A250.11** and **NAAMM-HMMA 840**.
  - 1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces without damage to completed Work.
    - a. Where frames are fabricated in sections, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch-up finishes.
    - b. Install frames with removable stops located on secure side of opening.
  - 2. Fire-Rated Openings: Install frames in accordance with NFPA 80.
  - 3. Floor Anchors: Secure with post installed expansion anchors.
    - a. Floor anchors may be set with power-actuated fasteners instead of post installed expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.
  - 4. Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation inside frames.
  - 5. Masonry Walls: Coordinate installation of frames to allow for solidly filling space between frames and masonry with grout or mortar.
  - 6. In-Place Concrete or Masonry Construction: Secure frames in place with post installed expansion anchors. **Countersink anchors, and fill and make smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces.**
  - 7. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow-metal frames to the following tolerances:
    - a. Squareness: Plus, or minus 1/16 inch, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
    - b. Alignment: Plus, or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
    - c. Twist: Plus, or minus 1/16 inch, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
    - d. Plumbness: Plus, or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs at floor.
- B. Hollow-Metal Doors: Fit and adjust hollow-metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below.

1. Non-Fire-Rated Steel Doors: Comply with **ANSI/SDI A250.8 and NAAMM-HMMA 841 and NAAMM-HMMA guide specifications.**
  2. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances in accordance with NFPA 80.
  3. Smoke-Control Doors: Install doors in accordance with NFPA 105.
- C. Glazing: Comply with installation requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing" and with hollow-metal manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspections:
1. Fire-Rated Door Inspections: Inspect each fire-rated door in accordance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.
  2. Egress Door Inspections: Inspect each door equipped with panic hardware, each door equipped with fire exit hardware, each door located in an exit enclosure, each electrically controlled egress door, and each door equipped with special locking arrangements in accordance with NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.
- B. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- C. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.
- D. Prepare and submit separate inspection report for each fire-rated door assembly indicating compliance with each item listed in **NFPA 80 and NFPA 101.**

### 3.4 REPAIR

- A. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.
- B. Metallic-Coated Surface Touchup: Clean abraded areas and repair with galvanizing repair paint according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of abraded areas of paint are specified in painting Sections.

SBLM Architects  
Project No: 023569

END OF SECTION 08 11 13

## SECTION 08 14 16 - FLUSH WOOD DOORS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Five-ply flush wood veneer-faced doors for transparent finish.
2. Five-ply flush wood doors for opaque finish.
3. Solid-core flush wood doors with plastic-laminate-faces.
4. Hollow-core flush wood veneer-faced doors for transparent finish.
5. Hollow-core flush wood doors for opaque finish.
6. Hollow-core flush wood doors with plastic-laminate faces.
7. Fire-rated wood door frames.
8. Factory [**priming**] [**finishing**] flush wood doors [ **and frames**].
9. Factory fitting flush wood doors to frames and factory machining for hardware.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product Data: For each type of product, including the following:

1. Door core materials and construction.
2. Door edge construction
3. Door face type and characteristics.
4. Door louvers.
5. Door trim for openings.
6. Door frame construction.
7. Factory-machining criteria.
8. Factory- [**priming**] [**finishing**] specifications.

##### B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

##### C. Shop Drawings: Indicate location, size, and hand of each door; elevation of each type of door; construction details not covered in Product Data; and the following:

1. Door schedule indicating door [ **and frame**] location, type, size, fire protection rating, and swing.
2. Door elevations, dimension and locations of hardware, lite and louver cutouts, and glazing thicknesses.
3. Details of frame for each frame type, including dimensions and profile.

4. Details of electrical raceway and preparation for electrified hardware, access control systems, and security systems.
5. Dimensions and locations of blocking for hardware attachment.
6. Clearances and undercuts.
7. Requirements for veneer matching.
8. Apply **AWI Quality Certification & WI Certified Compliance** Program label to Shop Drawings.

D. Samples: For all doors being submitted.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For door inspector.

1. Fire-Rated Door Inspector: Submit documentation of compliance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1.
2. Egress Door Inspector: Submit documentation of compliance with NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.4.
3. Submit copy of DHI's Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certificate.

B. Field quality-control reports.

### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Quality Standard Compliance Certificates: **AWI Quality Certification & WI Certified Compliance** Program certificates.

B. Record Documents: For fire-rated doors, list of door numbers and applicable room name and number to which door accesses.

### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer's Certification: Licensed participant in **AWI's Quality Certification Program & WI's Certified Compliance Program**.

B. Fire-Rated Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality-control inspections of fire-rated door assemblies complies with qualifications set forth in NFPA 80, Section 5.2.3.1 and the following:

1. DHI's Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certification.



- C. Egress Door Inspector Qualifications: Inspector for field quality-control inspections of egress door assemblies complies with qualifications set forth in NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.4 and the following:
1. DHI's Fire and Egress Door Assembly Inspector (FDAI) certification.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Fire-Rated Wood Door **and Frame** Assemblies: Assemblies complying with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire-protection ratings **and temperature-rise limits** indicated on Drawings, based on testing at positive pressure in accordance with **UL 10C or NFPA 252**.
1. Oversize Fire-Rated Door Assemblies: For units exceeding sizes of tested assemblies, provide certification by a qualified testing agency that doors comply with standard construction requirements for tested and labeled fire-rated door assemblies except for size.
  2. Temperature-Rise Limit: **Where indicated on Drawings and/or at vertical exit enclosures and exit passageways**, provide doors that have a maximum transmitted temperature end point of not more than **450 deg F** above ambient after 30 minutes of standard fire-test exposure.
- B. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Listed and labeled for smoke and draft control by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on testing in accordance with UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.

### 2.2 FLUSH WOOD DOORS AND FRAMES GENERAL

### 2.3 SOLID-CORE, FIVE-PLY FLUSH WOOD VENEER-FACED DOORS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

- A. Exterior Doors, Solid-Core Five-Ply Veneer-Faced as indicated in the drawings:
1. Performance Grade: ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A **Extra Heavy Duty**.
  2. **Architectural Woodwork Standards - ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A** Grade: **Premium**.
  3. Faces: Single-ply wood veneer not less than 1/50 inch thick.
    - a. Species: **Walnut or as per DISD design criteria**.
    - b. Cut: **Quarter sliced or as per DISD design criteria..**

- c. Match between Veneer Leaves: **Book match or as per DISD design criteria.**
  - d. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: **Center-balance match or as per DISD design criteria.**
  - e. Pair and Set Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening **or separated only by mullions.**
  4. Exposed Vertical [ **and Top**] Edges: **Same species as faces - Architectural Woodwork Standards edge Type A or as per DISD design criteria.**
  5. Core:
    - a. ANSI A208.1, **Grade LD-1** particleboard.
    - b. Glued wood stave.
    - c. WDMA I.S. 10 structural composite lumber.
      - 1) Screw Withdrawal, Door Face:
      - 2) Screw Withdrawal, Vertical Edge:
    - d. Either glued wood stave or WDMA I.S. 10 structural composite lumber.
  6. Construction: Five plies, hot-pressed bonded (vertical and horizontal edging is bonded to core), with entire unit abrasive planed before veneering.
  7. Adhesives: Type I in accordance with WDMA T.M. 6.
- B. Interior Doors, Solid-Core Five-Ply Veneer-Faced
1. Performance Grade: ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Extra Heavy Duty or Heavy Duty as indicated on Drawings.
  2. Performance Grade by Location:
    - a. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Extra Heavy Duty: **Classrooms, public toilets, janitor's closets, assembly spaces, exits and where indicated on Drawings.**
    - b. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Heavy Duty: **Closets, (not including janitor's closets), private toilets and where indicated on Drawings.**
  3. **Architectural Woodwork Standards - ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A** Grade: **Premium.**
  4. Faces: Single-ply wood veneer not less than 1/50 inch thick.
    - a. Species: **Walnut or as per DISD design criteria.**
    - b. Cut: **Quarter sliced or as per DISD design criteria.**
    - c. Match between Veneer Leaves: **Book match or as per DISD design criteria.**
    - d. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: **Center-balance match or as per DISD design criteria.**
    - e. Pair and Set Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening [ **or separated only by mullions**].
    - f. Room Match:
      - 1) Match door faces within each separate room or area of building.
      - 2) Provide door faces of compatible color and grain within each separate room or area of building.
    - g. Blueprint Match: Where indicated, provide doors with faces produced from same flitches as adjacent wood paneling and arranged to provide blueprint match with wood paneling. Comply with requirements in Section 064216 "Flush Wood Paneling."
  5. Exposed Vertical [ **and Top**] Edges: **Same species as faces - Architectural Woodwork Standards edge Type A or as per DISD design criteria.**

- a. Fire-Rated Single Doors: Provide edge construction with intumescent seals concealed by outer stile. Comply with specified requirements for exposed vertical edges.
  - b. Fire-Rated Pairs of Doors:
    - 1) Provide fire-retardant stiles that are listed and labeled for applications indicated without formed-steel edges and astragals. Provide stiles with concealed intumescent seals. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
    - 2) Provide formed-steel edges and astragals with intumescent seals.
      - a) Finish steel edges and astragals with baked enamel **same color as doors.**
      - b) Finish steel edges and astragals to match door hardware (locksets or exit devices).
  - c. Mineral-Core Doors: At hinge stiles, provide laminated-edge construction with improved screw-holding capability and split resistance. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
6. Core for Non-Fire-Rated Doors:
- a. ANSI A208.1, **Grade LD-1** particleboard.
    - 1) Blocking: Provide wood blocking in particleboard-core doors as **needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware.**
      - a) 5-inch top-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have closers.
      - b) 5-inch bottom-rail blocking, in exterior doors and doors indicated to have kick, mop, or armor plates.
      - c) 5-inch mid-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have exit devices.
    - 2) Provide doors with **glued-wood-stave or WDMA I.S. 10 structural-composite-lumber** cores instead of particleboard cores for doors scheduled to receive exit devices in **Section 087100 "Door Hardware."**
  - b. Glued wood stave.
  - c. WDMA I.S. 10 structural composite lumber.
    - 1) Screw Withdrawal, Face:
    - 2) Screw Withdrawal, Edge:
  - d. Either glued wood stave or WDMA I.S. 10 structural composite lumber.
7. Core for Fire-Rated Doors: As required to achieve fire-protection rating indicated on Drawings.
- a. Blocking for Mineral-Core Doors: Provide composite blocking with improved screw-holding capability approved for use in doors of fire-protection ratings indicated on Drawings as **needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware.**
    - 1) 5-inch top-rail blocking.
    - 2) 5-inch bottom-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have protection plates.
    - 3) 5-inch mid-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have armor plates.
    - 4) **5-inch mid-rail blocking** in doors indicated to have exit devices.
8. Construction: Five plies, hot-pressed bonded (vertical and horizontal edging is bonded to core), with entire unit abrasive planed before veneering.

## 2.4 SOLID-CORE FIVE-PLY FLUSH WOOD DOORS FOR OPAQUE FINISH

### A. Exterior Doors, Solid-Core Five-Ply:

1. Performance Grade: ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A **Extra Heavy Duty or Heavy Duty as indicated on Drawings.**
2. **Architectural Woodwork Standards - ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Grade: Premium.**
3. Faces: **MDO - Any closed-grain hardwood of mill option.**
  - a. Apply MDO to **standard-thickness, closed-grain, hardwood face veneers or directly to high-density hardboard crossbands.**
4. Exposed Vertical [ **and Top**] Edges: Any closed-grain hardwood.
5. Core:
  - a. ANSI A208.1, **Grade LD-1** particleboard.
  - b. Glued wood stave.
  - c. WDMA I.S. 10 structural composite lumber.
    - 1) Screw Withdrawal, Face:
    - 2) Screw Withdrawal, Edge:
  - d. Either glued wood stave or WDMA I.S. 10 structural composite lumber.
6. Construction: Five plies, hot-pressed, bonded (vertical and horizontal edging is bonded to core), with entire unit abrasive planed before veneering.
7. Adhesives: Type I in accordance with WDMA T.M. 6.

### B. Interior Doors, Solid-Core Five-Ply:

1. Performance Grade: ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A **Extra Heavy Duty or Heavy Duty as indicated on Drawings.**
2. Performance Grade by Location:
  - a. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Extra Heavy Duty: **Classrooms, public toilets, janitor's closets, assembly spaces, exit doors and where indicated on Drawings.**
  - b. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Heavy Duty: **Closets, (not including janitor's closets), private toilets and where indicated on Drawings.**
3. **Architectural Woodwork Standards - ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Grade: Premium.**
4. Faces: **MDO - Any closed-grain hardwood of mill option - Hardboard or MDF.**
  - a. Apply MDO to **standard-thickness, closed-grain, hardwood face veneers or directly to high-density hardboard crossbands.**
  - b. Hardboard Faces: ANSI A135.4, Class 1 (tempered) or Class 2 (standard).
  - c. MDF Faces: ANSI A208.2, Grade 150 or Grade 160.
5. Exposed Vertical [ **and Top**] Edges: Any closed-grain hardwood.
  - a. Fire-Rated Single Doors: Provide edge construction with intumescent seals concealed by outer stile. Comply with specified requirements for exposed vertical edges.
  - b. Fire-Rated Pairs of Doors:
    - 1) Provide fire-retardant stiles that are listed and labeled for applications indicated without formed-steel edges and astragals. Provide stiles with concealed intumescent seals. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
    - 2) Provide formed-steel edges and astragals with intumescent seals.

- a) Finish steel edges and astragals with baked enamel **same color as doors.**
  - b) Finish steel edges and astragals to match door hardware (locksets or exit devices).
  - c. Mineral-Core Doors: At hinge stiles, provide laminated-edge construction with improved screw-holding capability and split resistance. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
6. Core for Non-Fire-Rated Doors:
- a. ANSI A208.1, **Grade LD-1** particleboard.
    - 1) Blocking: Provide wood blocking in particleboard-core doors as **needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware.**
      - a) 5-inch top-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have closers.
      - b) 5-inch bottom-rail blocking, in exterior doors and doors indicated to have kick, mop, or armor plates.
      - c) 5-inch mid-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have exit devices.
    - 2) Provide doors with **glued-wood-stave or WDMA I.S. 10 structural-composite-lumber** cores instead of particleboard cores for doors scheduled to receive exit devices in **Section 087100 "Door Hardware."**
  - b. Glued wood stave.
  - c. WDMA I.S. 10 structural composite lumber.
    - 1) Screw Withdrawal, Face:
    - 2) Screw Withdrawal, Edge:
  - d. Either glued wood stave or WDMA I.S. 10 structural composite lumber.
7. Core for Fire-Rated Doors: As required to achieve fire-protection rating indicated on Drawings.
- a. Blocking for Mineral-Core Doors: Provide composite blocking with improved screw-holding capability approved for use in doors of fire-protection ratings indicated on Drawings as **needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware.**
    - 1) 5-inch top-rail blocking.
    - 2) 5-inch bottom-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have protection plates.
    - 3) 5-inch mid-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have armor plates.
    - 4) **5-inch mid-rail blocking**, in doors indicated to have exit devices.
8. Construction: Five plies, hot-pressed bonded (vertical and horizontal edging is bonded to core), with entire unit abrasive planed before veneering.

## 2.5 SOLID-CORE FLUSH WOOD DOORS WITH PLASTIC-LAMINATE FACES

### A. Interior Doors, Solid Core:

- 1. Performance Grade: ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A **Extra Heavy Duty or Heavy Duty as indicated on Drawings.**
- 2. Performance Grade by Location:
  - a. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Extra Heavy Duty: **Classrooms, public toilets, janitor's closets, assembly spaces, exits doors and where indicated on Drawings.**

- b. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Standard Duty: **Closets (not including janitor's closets), private toilets, Insert locations and where indicated on Drawings.**
- 3. **Architectural Woodwork Standards - ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Grade: Premium.**
- 4. Plastic-Laminate Faces: High-pressure decorative laminates complying with NEMA LD 3, **Grade HGS.**
- 5. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: **As selected by Architect from laminate manufacturer's full range of products.**
- 6. Exposed Vertical [ **and Top** ] Edges: **Plastic laminate that matches faces, applied before faces or impact-resistant polymer edging, applied after faces.**
  - a. Fire-Rated Single Doors: Provide edge construction with intumescent seals concealed by outer stile. Comply with specified requirements for exposed vertical edges.
  - b. Fire-Rated Pairs of Doors:
    - 1) Provide fire-retardant stiles that are listed and labeled for applications indicated without formed-steel edges and astragals. Provide stiles with concealed intumescent seals. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
    - 2) Provide formed-steel edges and astragals with intumescent seals.
      - a) Finish steel edges and astragals with baked enamel [ **same color as doors** ].
      - b) Finish steel edges and astragals to match door hardware (locksets or exit devices).
  - c. Mineral-Core Doors: At hinge stiles, provide laminated-edge construction with improved screw-holding capability and split resistance. Comply with specified requirements for exposed edges.
    - 1) Screw-Holding Capability: **550 lbf** in accordance with WDMA T.M. 10.
- 7. Core for Non-Fire-Rated Doors:
  - a. ANSI A208.1, **Grade LD-1** particleboard.
    - 1) Blocking: Provide wood blocking in particleboard-core doors as **needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware.**
      - a) **5-inch** top-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have closers.
      - b) **5-inch** bottom-rail blocking, in exterior doors and doors indicated to have kick, mop, or armor plates.
      - c) **5-inch** mid-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have exit devices.
    - 2) Provide doors with **glued-wood-stave] or WDMA I.S. 10 structural-composite-lumber** cores instead of particleboard cores for doors scheduled to receive exit devices in **Section 087100 "Door Hardware."**
  - b. Glued wood stave.
  - c. WDMA I.S. 10 structural composite lumber.
    - 1) Screw Withdrawal, Face:
    - 2) Screw Withdrawal, Edge:
  - d. Either glued wood stave or WDMA I.S. 10 structural composite lumber.
- 8. Core for Fire-Rated Doors: As required to achieve fire-protection rating indicated on Drawings.
  - a. Blocking for Mineral-Core Doors: Provide composite blocking with improved screw-holding capability approved for use in doors of fire-

protection ratings indicated on Drawings as **needed to eliminate through-bolting hardware.**

- 1) 5-inch top-rail blocking.
  - 2) 5-inch bottom-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have protection plates.
  - 3) 5-inch mid-rail blocking, in doors indicated to have armor plates.
  - 4) **5-inch mid-rail blocking**, in doors indicated to have exit devices.
9. Construction:
- a. Three plies, **hot-pressed or cold-pressed** bonded (vertical and horizontal edging is bonded to core), with entire unit abrasive planed before faces are applied.
  - b. Five plies, **hot-pressed or cold-pressed** bonded (vertical and horizontal edging is bonded to core), with entire unit abrasive planed before faces and crossbands are applied.

## 2.6 HOLLOW-CORE FLUSH WOOD VENEER-FACED DOORS FOR TRANSPARENT FINISH

### A. Interior Doors, Hollow-Core Veneer-Faced:

1. Performance Grade: ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Standard Duty.
2. **Architectural Woodwork Standards - ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Grade: Premium.**
3. Species: **Walnut or as per DISD design criteria.**
4. Cut: **Quarter sliced or as per DISD design criteria.**
5. Match between Veneer Leaves: **Book match or as per DISD design criteria..**
6. Assembly of Veneer Leaves on Door Faces: **Center-balance match or as per DISD design criteria.**
7. Pair and Set Match: Provide for doors hung in same opening **or separated only by mullions.**
8. Exposed Vertical [ **and Top**] Edges: **Same species as faces - Architectural Woodwork Standards edge Type A or as per DISD design criteria.**
9. Construction: **Institutional** hollow core.
10. Blocking: Provide wood blocking with minimum dimensions as follows:
  - a. 5-by-18-inch lock blocks **at both stiles.**
  - b. 5-inch top **and bottom** rail blocking.
  - c. 10-inch **top and** bottom-rail blocking.
  - d. 2-1/2-inch mid-rail blocking.

## 2.7 HOLLOW-CORE FLUSH WOOD DOORS FOR OPAQUE FINISH

### A. Interior Doors, Hollow Core:

1. Performance Grade: ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Standard Duty.
2. **Architectural Woodwork Standards - ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Grade: Premium.**
3. Faces: **Any closed-grain hardwood of mill option - Hardboard or MDF.**
  - a. Hardboard Faces: ANSI A135.4, Class 1 (tempered) or Class 2 (standard).
  - b. MDF Faces: ANSI A208.2, Grade 150 or Grade 160.

4. Exposed Vertical **and Top** Edges: Any closed-grain hardwood.
5. Construction: **Institutional** hollow core.
6. Blocking: Provide wood blocking with minimum dimensions as follows:
  - a. 5-by-18-inch lock blocks **at both stiles**.
  - b. 5-inch top **and bottom** rail blocking.
  - c. 10-inch **top- and** bottom-rail blocking.
  - d. 2-1/2-inch mid-rail blocking.

## 2.8 HOLLOW-CORE FLUSH WOOD PLASTIC-LAMINATE-FACED DOORS

### A. Interior Doors, Hollow-Core Plastic-Laminate-Faced:

1. Performance Grade: ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Standard Duty.
2. **[Architectural Woodwork Standards] [ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A] Grade: [Premium] [Custom].**
3. Plastic-Laminate Faces: High-pressure decorative laminates complying with NEMA LD 3, **[Grade HGS] [Grade HSH].**
4. Colors, Patterns, and Finishes: **[As indicated] [As selected by Architect from laminate manufacturer's full range of products].**
5. Exposed Vertical **[ and Top]** Edges: **[Hardwood edges for staining to match faces] [Hardwood edges for painting] [Plastic laminate that matches faces, applied before faces] [Impact-resistant polymer edging, applied after faces].**
  - a. Polymer Edging Color: **[Beige] [Brown] [Same color as faces].**
6. Construction: **[Institutional] [Standard]** hollow core.
7. Blocking: Provide wood blocking with minimum dimensions as follows:
  - a. 5-by-18-inch lock blocks **[ at both stiles].**
  - b. 5-inch top- **[ and bottom-]** rail blocking.
  - c. 10-inch **[ top- and]** bottom-rail blocking.
  - d. 2-1/2-inch mid-rail blocking.

## 2.9 FIRE-RATED WOOD DOOR FRAMES

### A. Interior Frames:

1. **Architectural Woodwork Standards - ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A** Grade: **Premium.**
2. Wood Species and Cut: Match species and cut indicated for wood doors unless otherwise indicated.
3. Species: **Walnut or as per DISD design criteria.**
4. Cut: **Quarter cut/quarter sawn or as per DISD design criteria.**
5. Wood Moisture Content: **5 to 10** percent.
6. Profile: **As indicated on Drawings.**
7. Construction: Solid lumber, fire-retardant particleboard, or fire-retardant medium density fiberboard (MDF) with veneered exposed surfaces and listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for fire ratings indicated on Drawings.



## 2.10 LIGHT FRAMES AND LOUVERS

- A. Wood Beads for Light Openings in Wood Doors: Provide manufacturer's standard wood beads unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Wood Species: **Same species as door faces.**
  - 2. Profile: **Manufacturer's standard shape.**
  - 3. At wood-core doors with 20-minute fire-protection ratings, provide wood beads and metal glazing clips approved for such use.
- B. Wood-Veneered Beads for Light Openings in Fire-Rated Doors: Manufacturer's standard wood-veneered noncombustible beads matching veneer species of door faces and approved for use in doors of fire-protection rating indicated on Drawings. Include concealed metal glazing clips where required for opening size and fire-protection rating indicated.
- C. Metal Frames for Light Openings in Fire-Rated Doors: Manufacturer's standard frame formed of 0.048-inch- thick, cold-rolled steel sheet; **factory primed for paint with baked-enamel or powder-coated** finish; and approved for use in doors of fire-protection rating indicated on Drawings.
- D. Wood Louvers: Door manufacturer's standard solid-wood louvers unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Wood Species: **Same species as door faces**
  - 2. Profile: **Flat.**
- E. Metal Louvers:
  - 1. Blade Type: **Vision-proof, inverted V.**
  - 2. Metal and Finish:
    - a. Hot-dip galvanized steel, 0.040 inch thick, **factory primed for paint with baked-enamel or powder-coated** finish.
    - b. Extruded aluminum with Class II, clear anodic finish, AA-M12C22A31 as selected by Architect.
    - c. Extruded aluminum with Class II, color anodic finish, AA-M12C22A32/A34 as selected by Architect.
- F. Louvers for Fire-Rated Doors: Metal louvers with fusible link and closing device, listed and labeled for use in doors with fire-protection rating of 1-1/2 hours and less.
  - 1. Metal and Finish: Hot-dip galvanized steel, 0.040 inch thick, **factory primed for paint with baked-enamel or powder-coated** finish.

## 2.11 FABRICATION

- A. Factory fit doors to suit frame-opening sizes indicated.

1. Comply with clearance requirements of referenced quality standard for fitting unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Comply with NFPA 80 requirements for fire-rated doors.
- B. Factory machine doors for hardware that is not surface applied.
1. Locate hardware to comply with DHI-WDHS-3.
  2. Comply with final hardware schedules, door frame Shop Drawings, ANSI/BHMA-156.115-W, and hardware templates.
  3. Coordinate with hardware mortises in metal frames, to verify dimensions and alignment before factory machining.
  4. For doors scheduled to receive electrified locksets, provide factory-installed raceway and wiring to accommodate specified hardware.
  5. Metal Astragals: Factory machine astragals and formed-steel edges for hardware for pairs of fire-rated doors.
- C. Openings: Factory cut and trim openings through doors.
1. Light Openings: Trim openings with moldings of material and profile indicated.
  2. Glazing: Factory install glazing in doors indicated to be factory finished. Comply with applicable requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."
  3. Louvers: Factory install louvers in prepared openings.
- D. Exterior Doors: Factory treat exterior doors with water repellent after fabrication has been completed but before factory **priming & finishing**.
1. Flash top of out swinging doors with manufacturer's standard metal flashing.

## 2.12 FACTORY PRIMING

- A. Doors for Opaque Finish: Factory prime faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises with one coat of wood primer specified in **Section 099113 "Exterior Painting." and/or Section 099123" Interior Painting."**

## 2.13 FACTORY FINISHING

- A. Comply with referenced quality standard for factory finishing.
1. Complete fabrication, including fitting doors for openings and machining for hardware that is not surface applied, before finishing.
  2. Finish faces, all four edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
  3. Stains and fillers may be omitted on **top and** bottom edges, edges of cutouts, and mortises.
- B. Factory finish doors.

- C. Factory finish doors that are indicated on Drawings to receive transparent finish.
- D. Factory finish doors where indicated in schedules or on Drawings as factory finished.
- E. Transparent Finish:
  - 1. **Architectural Woodwork Standards - ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Grade: Premium.**
  - 2. Architectural Woodwork Standards System-5, Varnish, Conversion.
  - 3. Architectural Woodwork Standards System-9, UV Curable, Acrylated Epoxy, Polyester or Urethane.
  - 4. Architectural Woodwork Standards System-10, UV Curable, Water Based.
  - 5. Architectural Woodwork Standards System-11, Polyurethane, Catalyzed.
  - 6. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A TR-4 Conversion Varnish.
  - 7. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A TR-6 Catalyzed Polyurethane.
  - 8. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A TR-8 UV Cured Acrylated Polyester/Urethane.
  - 9. Staining: **As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.**
  - 10. Sheen: **As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.**
- F. Opaque Finish:
  - 1. **Architectural Woodwork Standards - ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A Grade: Premium.**
  - 2. Architectural Woodwork Standards System-5, Varnish, Conversion.
  - 3. Architectural Woodwork Standards System-9, UV Curable, Acrylated Epoxy, Polyester, or Urethane.
  - 4. Architectural Woodwork Standards System-10, UV Curable, Water Based.
  - 5. Architectural Woodwork Standards System-11, Polyurethane, Catalyzed.
  - 6. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A OP-4 Conversion Varnish.
  - 7. ANSI/WDMA I.S. 1A OP-6 Catalyzed Polyurethane.
  - 8. Color: **As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.**
  - 9. Sheen: **As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.**

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Hardware: For installation, see **Section 087100 "Door Hardware."** and/or **Section 087111 "Door Hardware"**.
- B. Install doors **and frames** to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and referenced quality standard, and as indicated.
- C. Install frames level, plumb, true, and straight.

1. Shim as required with concealed shims. Install level and plumb to a tolerance of **1/8 inch in 96 inches**.
2. Anchor frames to anchors or blocking built in or directly attached to substrates.
  - a. Secure with countersunk, concealed fasteners and blind nailing.
  - b. Use fine finishing nails **or finishing screws** for exposed fastening, countersunk and filled flush with woodwork.
    - 1) For factory-finished items, use filler matching finish of items being installed.
3. Install fire-rated doors and frames in accordance with NFPA 80.
4. Install smoke- and draft-control doors in accordance with NFPA 105.

D. Job-Fitted Doors:

1. Align and fit doors in frames with uniform clearances and bevels as indicated below.
  - a. Do not trim stiles and rails in excess of limits set by manufacturer or permitted for fire-rated doors.
2. Machine doors for hardware.
3. Seal edges of doors, edges of cutouts, and mortises after fitting and machining.
4. Clearances:
  - a. Provide **1/8 inch** at heads, jambs, and between pairs of doors.
  - b. Provide **1/8 inch** from bottom of door to top of decorative floor finish or covering unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
  - c. Where threshold is shown or scheduled, provide **1/4 inch** from bottom of door to top of threshold unless otherwise indicated.
  - d. Comply with NFPA 80 for fire-rated doors.
5. Bevel non-fire-rated doors **1/8 inch in 2 inches** at lock and hinge edges.
6. Bevel fire-rated doors **1/8 inch in 2 inches** at lock edge; trim stiles and rails only to extent permitted by labeling agency.

E. Factory-Fitted Doors: Align in frames for uniform clearance at each edge.

F. Factory-Finished Doors: Restore finish before installation if fitting or machining is required at Project site.

### 3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspection Agency: **Owner will engage** a qualified inspector to perform inspections and to furnish reports to Architect.

B. Inspections:

1. Provide inspection of installed Work through **AWI's Quality Certification Program & WI's Certified Compliance Program**, certifying that wood doors and frames, including installation, comply with requirements of AWI/AWMCA/WI's "Architectural Woodwork Standards" for the specified grade.

2. Fire-Rated Door Inspections: Inspect each fire-rated door in accordance with NFPA 80, Section 5.2.
  3. Egress Door Inspections: Inspect each door equipped with panic hardware, each door equipped with fire exit hardware, each door located in an exit enclosure, each electrically controlled egress door, and each door equipped with special locking arrangements in accordance with NFPA 101, Section 7.2.1.15.
- C. Repair or remove and replace installations where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.
- D. Reinspect repaired or replaced installations to determine if replaced or repaired door assembly installations comply with specified requirements.
- E. Prepare and submit separate inspection report for each fire-rated door assembly indicating compliance with each item listed in **NFPA 80 and NFPA 101**.

### 3.3 ADJUSTING

- A. Operation: Rehang or replace doors that do not swing or operate freely.
- B. Finished Doors: Replace doors that are damaged or that do not comply with requirements. Doors may be repaired or refinished if Work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing.

END OF SECTION 08 14 16

## SECTION 08 51 13 - ALUMINUM WINDOWS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes aluminum windows for exterior locations, both individual punch out windows and windows part of a storefront system. Reference 08 43 13 ALUMINUM-FRAMED STOREFRONTS for storefront information and Construction Drawings for window types..

#### 1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site 4528 Rusk Ave, Dallas, TX 75204.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, hardware, accessories, insect screens, operational clearances, and details of installation, including anchor, flashing, and sealant installation.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Sample warranties.

#### 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace aluminum windows that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period:
    - a. Window: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
    - b. Glazing Units: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
    - c. Aluminum Finish: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 WINDOW PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Product Standard: Comply with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 for definitions and minimum standards of performance, materials, components, accessories, and fabrication unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
  - 1. Window Certification: AAMA certified with label attached to each window.
- B. Performance Class and Grade: AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440 as follows:
  - 1. Minimum Performance Class: CW .
  - 2. Minimum Performance Grade: 30 .
- C. Thermal Transmittance: NFRC 100 maximum whole-window U-factor of 0.60 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F .
- D. Solar Heat-Gain Coefficient (SHGC): NFRC 200 maximum whole-window SHGC of SEW 0.30, N 0.37 .
- E. Condensation-Resistance Factor (CRF): Provide aluminum windows tested for thermal performance according to AAMA 1503, showing a CRF of 52.
- F. Thermal Movements: Provide aluminum windows, including anchorage, that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
  - 1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F ambient; 180 deg F material surfaces .
- G. Windborne-Debris Impact Resistance: Passes ASTM E1886 missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests in accordance with ASTM E1996 for Wind Zone 1 for basic protection.

### 2.2 ALUMINUM WINDOWS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. Kawneer Company, Inc.
  - 2. YKK AP America Inc.
- B. Types: As indicated on Drawings .
- C. Frames and Sashes: Aluminum extrusions complying with AAMA/WDMA/CSA 101/I.S.2/A440.

1. Thermally Improved Construction: Fabricate frames, sashes, and muntins with an integral, concealed, low-conductance thermal barrier located between exterior materials and window members exposed on interior side in a manner that eliminates direct metal-to-metal contact.
- D. Insulating-Glass Units: ASTM E2190.
1. Glass: ASTM C1036, Type 1, Class 1, q3.
    - a. Tint: Gray .
    - b. Kind: Fully tempered where indicated on Drawings .
  2. Lites: Two
  3. Filling: Fill space between glass lites with air.
  4. Low-E Coating: Sputtered on second surface .
- E. Glazing System: Manufacturer's standard factory-glazing system that produces weathertight seal .
- F. Hardware, General: Provide manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant hardware sized to accommodate sash weight and dimensions.
1. Exposed Hardware Color and Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range .
- G. Horizontal-Sliding Window Hardware:
1. Sill Cap/Track: Designed to comply with performance requirements indicated and to drain to the exterior.
  2. Locks and Latches: Operated from the inside only.
  3. Roller Assemblies: Low-friction design.
- H. Weather Stripping: Provide full-perimeter weather stripping for each operable sash unless otherwise indicated.
- I. Fasteners: Noncorrosive and compatible with window members, trim, hardware, anchors, and other components.
1. Exposed Fasteners: Do not use exposed fasteners to greatest extent possible. For application of hardware, use fasteners that match finish hardware being fastened.

## 2.3 ACCESSORIES

## 2.4 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate aluminum windows in sizes indicated. Include a complete system for assembling components and anchoring windows.
- B. Glaze aluminum windows in the factory.
- C. Weather strip each operable sash to provide weathertight installation.



- D. Weep Holes: Provide weep holes and internal passages to conduct infiltrating water to exterior.
- E. Provide water-shed members above side-hinged sashes and similar lines of natural water penetration.
- F. Mullions: Provide mullions and cover plates, matching window units, complete with anchors for support to structure and installation of window units. Allow for erection tolerances and provide for movement of window units due to thermal expansion and building deflections. Provide mullions and cover plates capable of withstanding design wind loads of window units.
- G. Complete fabrication, assembly, finishing, hardware application, and other work in the factory to greatest extent possible. Disassemble components only as necessary for shipment and installation.

## 2.5 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
- B. Class I, Color Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: non-specular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
  - 1. Color: **To be selected by Architect.**

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing windows, hardware, accessories, and other components. For installation procedures and requirements not addressed in manufacturer's written instructions, comply with installation requirements in ASTM E2112.
- B. Install windows level, plumb, square, true to line, without distortion or impeding thermal movement, anchored securely in place to structural support, and in proper relation to wall flashing and other adjacent construction to produce weathertight construction.
- C. Install windows and components to drain condensation, water penetrating joints, and moisture migrating within windows to the exterior.
- D. Separate aluminum and other corrodible surfaces from sources of corrosion or electrolytic action at points of contact with other materials.
- E. Adjust operating sashes and hardware for a tight fit at contact points and weather stripping for smooth operation and weathertight closure.

SBLM Architects  
Project No: 023569

- F. Clean exposed surfaces immediately after installing windows. Avoid damaging protective coatings and finishes. Remove excess sealants, glazing materials, dirt, and other substances.
- G. Remove and replace glass that has been broken, chipped, cracked, abraded, or damaged during construction period.

END OF SECTION 08 51 13

## SECTION 08 71 00 - DOOR HARDWARE

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Mechanical door hardware for the following:
  - a. All doors.
2. Cylinders for door hardware specified in other Sections.
3. Electrified door hardware.

#### 1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- ##### A. As required by DISD.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- ##### B. Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, detailing fabrication and assembly of door hardware, as well as procedures and diagrams. Coordinate the final Door Hardware Schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of door hardware.

1. Format: Comply with scheduling sequence and vertical format in DHI's "Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule."
2. Organization: Organize the Door Hardware Schedule into door hardware sets indicating complete designations of every item required for each door or opening. Organize door hardware sets in same order as in the Door Hardware Sets at the end of Part 3. Submittals that do not follow the same format and order as the Door Hardware Sets will be rejected and subject to resubmission.
3. Content: Include the following information:
  - a) Type, style, function, size, label, hand, and finish of each door hardware item.
  - b) Manufacturer of each item.
  - c) Fastenings and other pertinent information.
  - d) Location of door hardware set, cross-referenced to Drawings, both on floor plans and in door and frame schedule.
  - e) Explanation of abbreviations, symbols, and codes contained in schedule.
  - f) Mounting locations for door hardware.
  - g) Door and frame sizes and materials.
  - h) Warranty information for each product.
4. Submittal Sequence: Submit the final Door Hardware Schedule at earliest possible date, particularly where approval of the Door Hardware Schedule must precede fabrication of other work that is critical in the Project construction

schedule. Include Product Data, Samples, Shop Drawings of other work affected by door hardware, and other information essential to the coordinated review of the Door Hardware Schedule.

- C. Keying Schedule: After a keying meeting with the owner has taken place prepare a separate keying schedule detailing final instructions. Submit the keying schedule in electronic format. Include keying system explanation, door numbers, key set symbols, hardware set numbers and special instructions. Owner must approve submitted keying schedule prior to the ordering of permanent cylinders/cores

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Manufacturer's product data sheets including installation details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, operational descriptions and finishes.
- B. Operating and Maintenance Manuals: Provide manufacturers operating and maintenance manuals for each item comprising the complete door hardware installation in quantity as required in Division 01, Closeout Submittals.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance data for all products provided for the project.

#### 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Supplier of products and an employer of workers trained and approved by product manufacturers and of an Architectural Hardware Consultant who is available during the course of the Work to consult Contractor, Architect, and Owner about door hardware and keying.
  - 1. Scheduling Responsibility: Preparation of door hardware and keying schedule.
  - 2. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of data for electrified door hardware, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in assemblies similar to those indicated for this Project.

#### 1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of door hardware that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Three years from date of Substantial Completion unless otherwise indicated below:
  - a. Electromagnetic Locks: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - b. Exit Devices: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
  - c. Manual Closers: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Electrified Door Hardware: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- B. Means of Egress Doors: Latches do not require more than **15 lbf** to release the latch. Locks do not require use of a key, tool, or special knowledge for operation.
- C. Accessibility Requirements: For door hardware on doors in an accessible route, comply with the USDOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design" .

### 2.2 HINGES

- A. Hinges: BHMA A156.1. **Provide template-produced hinges for hinges installed on hollow-metal doors and hollow-metal frames.**

### 2.3 MECHANICAL LOCKS AND LATCHES

- A. Lock Functions: As indicated in door hardware schedule.
- B. Lock Throw: Comply with testing requirements for length of bolts required for labeled fire doors, and as follows:
  1. Bored Locks: Minimum 1/2-inch latch bolt throw.
  2. Mortise Locks: Minimum 3/4-inch latch bolt throw.
  3. Deadbolts: Minimum 1-inch bolt throw.
- C. Lock Backset: 2-3/4 inches unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Lock Trim:

1. Description: Mortise locks are to be furnished with lever handle trim, with levers having a return to within 1/2 inch of the door face, as listed in the hardware schedule. Renovations: Provide "N" escutcheons on all new locks for renovation projects .
  2. Levers: Wrought Forged .
    - a. 99 Series Von Duprin .
  3. Escutcheons (Roses): Wrought Forged .
  4. Dummy Trim: Match lever lock trim and escutcheons.
- E. Strikes: Provide manufacturer's standard strike for each lock bolt or latch bolt complying with requirements indicated for applicable lock or latch and with strike box and curved lip extended to protect frame; finished to match lock or latch.
1. Flat-Lip Strikes: For locks with three-piece antifriction latch bolts, as recommended by manufacturer.
  2. Extra-Long-Lip Strikes: For locks used on frames with applied wood casing trim.
  3. Rabbet Front and Strike: Provide on locksets for rabbeted meeting stiles.
- F. Bored Locks: BHMA A156.2; Grade 1 ; Series 4000.
- G. Mortise Locks: BHMA A156.13; Security Grade 1 ; stamped steel case with steel or brass parts; Series 1000.

## 2.4 AUXILIARY LOCKS

- A. Bored Auxiliary Locks: BHMA A156.36: Grade 1 ; with strike that suits frame.
- B. Mortise Auxiliary Locks: BHMA A156.36; Grade 1 ; with strike that suits frame.
- C. Narrow Stile Auxiliary Locks: BHMA A156.36; Grade 1 ; with strike that suits frame.

## 2.5 ELECTRIC STRIKES

- A. Electric Strikes: BHMA A156.31; Grade 1 ; with faceplate to suit lock and frame.

## 2.6 ELECTROMAGNETIC LOCKS

- A. Electromagnetic Locks: BHMA A156.23; electrically powered; with electromagnet attached to frame and armature plate attached to door; full-exterior or full-interior type, as required by application indicated.

## 2.7 ELECTROMECHANICAL LOCKS

- A. Electromechanical Locks: BHMA A156.25; Grade 1 ; motor or solenoid driven; with strike that suits frame.
  - 1. Type: Bored Mortise latch bolt Mortise deadbolt Mortise deadlocking latch bolt.

## 2.8 SELF-CONTAINED ELECTRONIC LOCKS

- A. Self-Contained Electronic Locks: BHMA A156.25, bored mortise; with internal, battery-powered, self-contained electronic locks; consisting of complete lockset, motor-driven lock mechanism, and actuating device; enclosed in zinc-dichromate-plated, wrought-steel case, and strike that suits frame. Provide key override, low-battery detection and warning, LED status indicators, and ability to program at the lock.

## 2.9 EXIT LOCKS AND EXIT ALARMS

- A. Exit Locks and Alarms: BHMA A156.29, Grade 1.

## 2.10 SURFACE BOLTS

- A. Surface Bolts: BHMA A156.16.

## 2.11 MANUAL FLUSH BOLTS

- A. Manual Flush Bolts: BHMA A156.16; minimum **3/4-inch** throw; designed for mortising into door edge.
  - 1.

## 2.12 AUTOMATIC AND SELF-LATCHING FLUSH BOLTS

- A. Automatic Flush Bolts: BHMA A156.3, Type 25; minimum 3/4-inch throw; with dust-proof strikes; designed for mortising into door edge. Include wear plates.
- B. Self-Latching Flush Bolts: BHMA A156.3, Type 27; minimum 3/4-inch throw; with dust-proof strikes designed for mortising into door edge. Include wear plates.

## 2.13 EXIT DEVICES AND AUXILIARY ITEMS

- A. Exit Devices and Auxiliary Items: BHMA A156.3.

## 2.14 LOCK CYLINDERS – **ONLY BEST ACCESS SYSTEMS ALLOWED**

- A. Lock Cylinders: Tumbler type, constructed from brass or bronze, stainless steel, or nickel silver.
- B. Standard Lock Cylinders: BHMA A156.5; Grade 1 permanent cores; face finished to match lockset.
  - 1. Core Type: Removable.
- C. High-Security Lock Cylinders: BHMA A156.30; Grade 1 permanent cores that are removable; face finished to match lockset.
  - 1. Type: M, mechanical E, electrical.
- D. Construction Master Keys: Provide cylinders with feature that permits voiding of construction keys without cylinder removal. Provide 10 construction master keys.
- E. Construction Cores: Provide construction cores that are replaceable by permanent cores. Provide 10 construction master keys.

## 2.15 KEYING

- A. Keying System: Factory registered, complying with guidelines in BHMA A156.28, appendix. Provide one extra key blank for each lock.



1. Existing System:
  - a. Master key or grand master key locks to Owner's existing system.
  - b. Re-key Owner's existing master key system into new keying system.
2. Keyed Alike: Key all cylinders to same change key.

B. Keys: Nickel silver Brass.

1. Stamping: Permanently inscribe each key with a visual key control number and include the following notation:
  - a. Notation: Information to be furnished by Owner.

## 2.16 ACCESSORIES FOR PAIRS OF DOORS

- A. Coordinators: BHMA A156.3; consisting of active-leaf, hold-open lever and inactive-leaf release trigger; fabricated from steel with nylon-coated strike plates; with built-in, adjustable safety release ; and with internal override.
- B. Carry-Open Bars: BHMA A156.3; prevent the inactive leaf from opening before the active leaf; provide polished brass or bronze carry-open bars with strike plate for inactive leaves of pairs of doors unless automatic or self-latching bolts are used.
- C. Astragals: BHMA A156.22.

## 2.17 CLOSER HOLDER RELEASE DEVICES

- A. Closer Holder Release Devices: BHMA A156.15; Grade 1; closer connected with separate or integral releasing and fire- or smoke-detecting devices. Door shall become self-closing on interruption of signal to release device. Automatic release is activated by smoke detection system loss of power.

## 2.18 MECHANICAL STOPS AND HOLDERS

- A. Wall- and Floor-Mounted Stops: BHMA A156.16.

## 2.19 OVERHEAD STOPS AND HOLDERS

- A. Overhead Stops and Holders: BHMA A156.8.

## 2.20 DOOR GASKETING

- A. Door Gasketing: BHMA A156.22; with resilient or flexible seal strips that are easily replaceable and readily available from stocks maintained by manufacturer.
- B. Maximum Air Leakage: When tested in accordance with ASTM E283 with tested pressure differential of 0.3-inch wg, as follows:
  - 1. Smoke-Rated Gasketing: 0.3 cfm/sq. ft. of door opening.
  - 2. Gasketing on Single Doors: 0.3 cfm/sq. ft. of door opening.
  - 3. Gasketing on Double Doors: 0.50 cfm per ft. of door opening.

## 2.21 AUXILIARY DOOR HARDWARE

- A. Auxiliary Hardware: BHMA A156.16.

## 2.22 AUXILIARY ELECTRIFIED DOOR HARDWARE

- A. Auxiliary Electrified Door Hardware:
  - 1.

## 2.23 FINISHES

- A. Provide finishes complying with BHMA A156.18 as indicated in door hardware schedule.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Mounting Heights: Mount door hardware units at heights indicated on Drawings unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.
  - 1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8.
  - 2. Custom Steel Doors and Frames: HMMA 831.
  - 3. Wood Doors: DHI's "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Wood Flush Doors."

- B. Install each door hardware item to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Where cutting and fitting are required to install door hardware onto or into surfaces that are later to be painted or finished in another way, coordinate removal, storage, and reinstallation of surface protective trim units with finishing work. Do not install surface-mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrates involved.
  - C. Hinges: Install types and in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule, but not fewer than the number recommended by manufacturer for application indicated or one hinge for every **30 inches** of door height, whichever is more stringent, unless other equivalent means of support for door, such as spring hinges or pivots, are provided.
  - D. Lock Cylinders: Install construction cores to secure building and areas during construction period.
    - 1. Replace construction cores with permanent cores as directed by Owner.
    - 2. Furnish permanent cores to Owner for installation.
  - E. Boxed Power Supplies: Locate power supplies as indicated or, if not indicated, . Verify location with Architect.
    - 1. Configuration: Provide least number of power supplies required to adequately serve doors with electrified door hardware.
  - F. Stops: Provide floor stops for doors unless wall or other type stops are indicated in door hardware schedule. Do not mount floor stops where they will impede traffic.
  - G. Perimeter Gasketing: Apply to head and jamb, forming seal between door and frame.
    - 1. Do not notch perimeter gasketing to install other surface-applied hardware.
  - H. Meeting Stile Gasketing: Fasten to meeting stiles, forming seal when doors are closed.  
Door Bottoms: Apply to bottom of door, forming seal with threshold when door is closed.
- 3.2 ADJUSTING
- A. Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.

END OF SECTION 08 71 00

## SECTION 08 80 00 - GLAZING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Glass products.
2. Insulating glass.
3. Glazing sealants.
4. Glazing tapes.
5. Miscellaneous glazing materials.

#### 1.2 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate glazing channel dimensions to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances to achieve proper safety margins for glazing retention under each design load case, load case combination, and service condition.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Sustainable Design Submittals:
- C. Glass Samples: For each type of glass product other than clear monolithic vision glass; **12 inches** square.
- D. Delegated Design Submittal: For glass indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Certificates: For glass.
- B. Product test reports.
- C. Preconstruction adhesion and compatibility test report.
- D. Sample warranties.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Sealant Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

#### 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer agrees to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of coated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in coating.
  - 1. Warranty Period: [10] years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Laminated Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace laminated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of laminated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Insulating Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of insulating glass is defined as failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to

manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.

1. Warranty Period: **10** years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design glazing.
- B. Structural Performance: Glazing shall withstand the following design loads within limits and under conditions indicated determined in accordance with the IBC and ASTM E1300:
  1. Design Wind Pressures: As indicated on Drawings.
  2. Design Snow Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
  3. Thermal Loads: Design glazing to resist thermal stress breakage induced by differential temperature conditions and limited air circulation within individual glass lites and insulated glazing units.
- C. Windborne-Debris-Impact Resistance: Exterior glazing shall pass ASTM E1886 missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests in accordance with ASTM E1996 for Wind Zone **4** for **basic** protection.
  1. Large-Missile Test: For glazing located within **30 feet** of grade.
  2. Small-Missile Test: For glazing located between **30 feet** and **60 feet** above grade.
- D. Safety Glazing: Where safety glazing is indicated, provide glazing that complies with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.
- E. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified, as indicated in manufacturer's published test data, based on procedures indicated below:
  1. U-Factors: Center-of-glazing values, in accordance with NFRC 100 and based on most current non-beta version of LBL's WINDOW computer program, expressed as Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F.
  2. SHGC and Visible Transmittance: Center-of-glazing values, in accordance with NFRC 200 and based on most current non-beta version of LBL's WINDOW computer program.
  3. Visible Reflectance: Center-of-glazing values, in accordance with NFRC 300.

F. Acoustic Performance:

1. Exterior Glazing: **35** OITC.
2. Interior Glazing: **41** STC.

2.2 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

A. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below unless more stringent requirements are indicated. See these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.

1. NGA Publications: "Laminated Glazing Reference Manual" and "Glazing Manual."
2. AAMA Publications: AAMA GDSG-1, "Glass Design for Sloped Glazing," and AAMA TIR A7, "Sloped Glazing Guidelines."
3. IGMA Publication for Sloped Glazing: IGMA TB-3001, "Guidelines for Sloped Glazing."
4. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial and Residential Use."

B. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.

C. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of the IGCC.

D. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass that complies with performance requirements and is not less than thickness indicated.

E. Strength: Where annealed float glass is indicated, provide annealed float glass, heat-strengthened float glass, or fully tempered float glass. Where heat-strengthened float glass is indicated, provide heat-strengthened float glass or fully tempered float glass. Where fully tempered float glass is indicated, provide fully tempered float glass.

2.3 GLASS PRODUCTS

A. Clear Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C1036, Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality-Q3.

- B. Low-Iron Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C1036, Type I, Class I (clear), Quality-Q3; and with visible light transmission of not less than 91 percent and SHGC of not less than 0.87].
- C. Tinted Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C1036, Type I, Class 2 (tinted), Quality-Q3.
- D. Fully Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
- E. Heat-Strengthened Float Glass: ASTM C1048, Kind HS (heat strengthened), Type I, Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.
- F. Reflective- and Low-E-Coated Vision Glass: ASTM C1376.
- G. Ceramic-Coated Vision Glass: ASTM C1048, Condition C, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3; and complying with Specification No. 95-1-31 in NGA's "Engineering Standards Manual."
- H. Ceramic-Coated Spandrel Glass: ASTM C1048, Type I, Condition B, Quality-Q3.
- I. Silicone-Coated Spandrel Glass: ASTM C1048, Type I, Condition C, Quality-Q3.
- J. Reflective- and Low-E-Coated Spandrel Glass: ASTM C1376, Kind CS.

## 2.4 INSULATING GLASS

- A. Insulating-Glass Units: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified in accordance with ASTM E2190.
  - 1. Sealing System: Dual seal, with manufacturer's standard.
  - 2. Perimeter Spacer: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction.
  - 3. Desiccant: Molecular sieve or silica gel, or a blend of both.

## 2.5 GLAZING SEALANTS

- A. General:
  - 1. Compatibility: Compatible with one another and with other materials they contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel



- substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
  3. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of industry colors.
- B. Neutral-Curing Silicone Glazing Sealant, Class 100/50: Complying with ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Use NT.
1. Applications: As per glazing manufacture's standards and guidelines.
- C. Neutral-Curing Silicone Glazing Sealant, Class 50: Complying with ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Use NT.
1. Applications: As per glazing manufacture's standards and guidelines.
- D. Neutral-Curing Silicone Glazing Sealant, Class 25: Complying with ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Use NT.
1. Applications: As per glazing manufacture's standards and guidelines.
- E. Acid-Curing Silicone Glazing Sealant, Class 25: Complying with ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Use NT.
1. Applications: As per glazing manufacture's standards and guidelines.

## 2.6 GLAZING TAPES

- A. Back-Bedding Mastic Glazing Tapes: Preformed, butyl-based, 100 percent solids elastomeric tape; non staining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape and glass manufacturers for application indicated; and complying with ASTM C1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
1. AAMA 804.3 tape, where indicated.
  2. AAMA 806.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
  3. AAMA 807.3 tape, for glazing applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.
- B. Expanded Cellular Glazing Tapes: Closed-cell, PVC foam tapes; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:
1. AAMA 810.1, Type 1, for glazing applications in which tape acts as primary sealant.

2. AAMA 810.1, Type 2, for glazing applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of liquid sealant.

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

- A. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.
- B. Setting Blocks:
  1. EPDM or Silicone with Shore A durometer hardness of 85, plus or minus 5.
  2. Type recommended in writing by sealant or glass manufacturer.
- C. Spacers:
  1. Neoprene blocks or continuous extrusions of hardness required by glass manufacturer to maintain glass lites in place for installation indicated.
  2. Type recommended in writing by sealant or glass manufacturer.
- D. Edge Blocks:
  1. EPDM or Silicone with Shore A durometer hardness per manufacturer's written instructions.
  2. Type recommended in writing by sealant or glass manufacturer.
- E. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 GLAZING, GENERAL

- A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.
- B. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass includes glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass, impair performance, or impair appearance.

- C. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.
- D. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.
- E. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.
- F. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than **50 inches**.
- G. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and in accordance with requirements in referenced glazing publications.

### 3.2 TAPE GLAZING

- A. Position tapes on fixed stops so that, when compressed by glass, their exposed edges are flush with or protrude slightly above sightline of stops.
- B. Install tapes continuously, but not necessarily in one continuous length. Do not stretch tapes to make them fit opening.
- C. Cover vertical framing joints by applying tapes to heads and sills first, then to jambs. Cover horizontal framing joints by applying tapes to jambs, then to heads and sills.
- D. Place joints in tapes at corners of opening with adjoining lengths butted together, not lapped. Seal joints in tapes with compatible sealant approved by tape manufacturer.
- E. Apply heel bead of elastomeric sealant.
- F. Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against tape by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings.
- G. Apply cap bead of elastomeric sealant over exposed edge of tape.

### 3.3 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

- A. Cut compression gaskets to lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.
- B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.
- C. Installation with Drive-in Wedge Gaskets: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended in writing by gasket manufacturer.
- D. Installation with Pressure-Glazing Stops: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against soft compression gasket. Install dense compression gaskets and pressure-glazing stops, applying pressure uniformly to compression gaskets. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended in writing by gasket manufacturer.
- E. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

### 3.4 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)

- A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.
- B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.
- C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

### 3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Immediately after installation, remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.
- B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains.
  - 1. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer. Remove and replace glass that cannot be cleaned without damage to coatings.
- C. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period.

### 3.6 MONOLITHIC GLASS SCHEDULE

- A. Clear Glass Type: Fully tempered float glass.
  - 1. Minimum Thickness: 6 mm.
  - 2. Safety glazing required.
- B. Low-Iron Glass Type: Fully tempered float glass.
  - 1. Minimum Thickness: 6 mm.
  - 2. Safety glazing required.
- C. Tinted Glass Type: Fully tempered float glass.
  - 1. Tint Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of industry colors.
  - 2. Minimum Thickness: 6 mm.
  - 3. Safety glazing required.
- D. Ceramic-Coated Vision Glass Type – if called for in the drawings: Fully tempered float glass.
  - 1. Glass: Clear float glass.
  - 2. Tint Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of industry colors.
  - 3. Ceramic Coating Color and Pattern: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of industry colors.
  - 4. Minimum Thickness: 6 mm.
  - 5. Coating Location: Second surface.
  - 6. Safety glazing required.

- E. Reflective-Coated Vision Glass Type – if called for in the drawings: Fully tempered float glass.
1. Coating Type: Pyrolytic.
  2. Coating Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of industry colors.
  3. Glass: Clear float glass.
  4. Tint Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of industry colors.
  5. Minimum Thickness: 6 mm.
  6. Coating Location: second surface.
  7. Safety glazing required.
- F. Ceramic-Coated Spandrel Glass Type – if called for in the drawings: Fully tempered float glass.
1. Glass: Clear float glass.
  2. Tint Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of industry colors.
  3. Coating Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of industry colors.
  4. Minimum Thickness: 6 mm.
  5. Coating Location: Second surface.
- G. Silicone-Coated Spandrel Glass Type – if called for in the drawings: Fully tempered float glass.
1. Glass: Clear float glass.
  2. Tint Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of industry colors.
  3. Coating Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of industry colors.
  4. Minimum Thickness: 6 mm.
  5. Coating Location: Second surface.
- H. Reflective-Coated Spandrel Glass Type – if called for in the drawings: Fully tempered float glass.
1. Coating Type: Pyrolytic.
  2. Coating Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of industry colors.
  3. Glass: Clear float glass.
  4. Tint Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of industry colors.
  5. Minimum Thickness: 6 mm.
  6. Coating Location: Second surface.
  7. Factory apply manufacturer's standard opacifier of the following material to coated on second surface of lites, with resulting products complying with Specification No. 89-1-6 in NGA's "Engineering Standards Manual":
    - a. Manufacturer's standard opacifier material.

- b. Polyester film laminated to glass with solvent-based adhesive.

### 3.7 LAMINATED GLASS SCHEDULE

- A. Clear Laminated Glass Type – if called for in the drawings: Fully tempered float glass.

- 1. Minimum Thickness of Each Glass Ply: 6mm.
- 2. Interlayer Thickness: 6mm.
- 3. Safety glazing required.

- B. Laminated Tinted Glass Type – if called for in the drawings: Fully tempered float glass with outer ply tinted and inner ply clear.

- 1. Minimum Thickness of Each Glass Ply: 6mm.
- 2. Interlayer Thickness: 6mm.
- 3. Safety glazing required.
  - a. film laminated to glass with solvent-based adhesive.

### 3.8 LAMINATED GLASS SCHEDULE

- B. Clear Laminated Glass Type – if called for in the drawings: Fully tempered float glass.

- 1. Minimum Thickness of Each Glass Ply: 6mm.
- 2. Interlayer Thickness: 6mm.
- 3. Safety glazing required.

- B. Laminated Tinted Glass Type – if called for in the drawings: Fully tempered float glass with outer ply tinted and inner ply clear.

- 1. Minimum Thickness of Each Glass Ply: 6mm.
- 2. Interlayer Thickness: 6mm.
- 3. Safety glazing required.

END OF SECTION 08 80 00

## SECTION 09 29 00 - GYPSUM BOARD

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

##### A. Section Includes:

1. Interior gypsum board.
2. Exterior gypsum board for ceilings and soffits.
3. Tile backing panels.
4. Texture finishes.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

##### A. Product data.

##### B. Shop Drawings: Show locations and installation of control and expansion joints, including plans, elevations, sections, details of components, and attachments to other work.

##### C. Samples: For each texture finish indicated on same backing indicated for Work.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

##### A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E119 by an independent testing agency.

##### B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E90 and classified according to ASTM E413 by an independent testing agency.



## 2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

- A. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

## 2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C1396/C1396M.
  - 1. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered and featured (rounded or beveled) for prefilling.
- B. Gypsum Board, Type X: ASTM C1396/C1396M.
  - 1. Thickness: 5/8 inch.
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered and featured (rounded or beveled) for prefilling.
- C. Flexible Gypsum Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M. Manufactured to bend to fit radii and to be more flexible than standard regular-type gypsum board of same thickness.
  - 1. Thickness: 1/4 inch.
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered and featured (rounded or beveled) for prefilling.
- D. Gypsum Ceiling Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M.
  - 1. Thickness: 1/2 inch.
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered and featured (rounded or beveled) for prefilling.
- E. Foil-Backed Gypsum Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M.
  - 1. Core: 3/8 inch - regular type, 1/2 inch - regular type, 5/8 inch - Type X and Type C as required by fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated on Drawings.
  - 2. Long Edges: Tapered and featured (rounded or beveled) for prefilling.
- F. Abuse-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M gypsum board, tested according to ASTM C1629/C1629M.
  - 1. Core: 1/2 inch - regular type, 5/8 inch - Type X.
  - 2. Surface Abrasion: ASTM C1629/C1629M.
  - 3. Indentation: ASTM C1629/C1629M.
  - 4. Soft-Body Impact: ASTM C1629/C1629M.
  - 5. Long Edges: Tapered and featured (rounded or beveled) for prefilling.
  - 6. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274.
- G. Impact-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M gypsum board, tested according to ASTM C1629/C1629M.

1. Core: 1/2 inch - regular type, 5/8 inch - Type X.
2. Surface Abrasion: ASTM C1629/C1629M.
3. Indentation: ASTM C1629/C1629M.
4. Soft-Body Impact: ASTM C1629/C1629M
5. Hard-Body Impact: ASTM C1629/C1629M
6. Long Edges: Tapered and featured (rounded or beveled) for prefilling.
7. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274.

H. Mold-Resistant Gypsum Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M. With moisture and mold resistant core and paper surfaces.

1. Core: 1/2 inch - regular type, 5/8 inch - Type X.
2. Long Edges: Tapered and featured (rounded or beveled) for prefilling.
3. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274.

## 2.4 SPECIALTY GYPSUM BOARD

A. Gypsum Board, Type C: ASTM C1396/C1396M. Manufactured to have increased fire-resistant capability.

1. Thickness: As required by fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated on Drawings.
2. Long Edges: Tapered and featured (rounded or beveled) for prefilling.

## 2.5 EXTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD FOR CEILINGS AND SOFFITS

A. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: ASTM C1396/C1396M, with manufacturer's standard edges.

1. Core: 1/2 inch - regular type, 5/8 inch - Type X.

B. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: ASTM C1177/C1177M, with fiberglass mat laminated to both sides and with manufacturer's standard edges.

1. Core: 1/2 inch - regular type, 5/8 inch - Type X.

## 2.6 TILE BACKING PANELS

A. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Board: ASTM C1178/C1178M, with manufacturer's standard edges.

1. Core: 1/2 inch - regular type, 5/8 inch - Type X.
2. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274.

B. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A118.9 and ASTM C1288 or ASTM C1325, with manufacturer's standard edges.

1. Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.
2. Mold Resistance: ASTM D3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D3274.

## 2.7 TRIM ACCESSORIES

### A. Interior Trim: ASTM C1047.

1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet or rolled zinc.
2. Shapes:
  - a. Cornerbead.
  - b. Bullnose bead.
  - c. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
  - d. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
  - e. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.
  - f. Expansion (control) joint.
  - g. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: With notched or flexible flanges.

### B. Exterior Trim: ASTM C1047.

1. Material: Hot-dip galvanized-steel sheet or rolled zinc.
2. Shapes:
  - a. Cornerbead.
  - b. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
  - c. Expansion (Control) Joint: One-piece, rolled zinc with V-shaped slot and removable strip covering slot opening.

## 2.8 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

### A. General: Comply with ASTM C475/C475M.

### B. Joint Tape:

1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
2. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: Paper.
3. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: 10-by-10 glass mesh.
4. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.

### C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat, use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.

1. Prefilling: At open joints, beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
  - a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.
3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.

4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
  5. Skim Coat: For final coat of Level 5 finish, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
- D. Joint Compound for Exterior Applications:
1. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: Use setting-type taping compound and setting-type, sandable topping compound.
  2. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: As recommended by sheathing board manufacturer.
- E. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:
1. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panel: As recommended by backing panel manufacturer.
  2. Cementitious Backer Units: As recommended by backer unit manufacturer.

## 2.9 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.
- C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C1002 unless otherwise indicated.
1. Use screws complying with ASTM C954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick.
  2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.
- D. Sound-Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.
1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.
- E. Acoustical Sealant: As specified in Section 079219 "Acoustical Joint Sealants."
- F. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation."
- G. Vapor Retarder: As specified in Section 072600 "Vapor Retarders."

## 2.10 TEXTURE FINISHES

- A. Primer: As recommended by textured finish manufacturer.
  
- B. Polystyrene Aggregate Ceiling Finish: Water-based, job-mixed, polystyrene aggregate finish with flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of not more than 25 when tested according to ASTM E84.
  - 1. Texture: [**Fine**].
  
- C. Aggregate Finish: Water-based, job-mixed, aggregated, drying-type texture finish for spray application.
  - 1. Texture: Light spatter.
  
- D. Non-Aggregate Finish: Premixed, vinyl texture finish for spray application.
  - 1. Texture: Orange peel.
  
- E. Acoustical Finish: Water-based, chemical-setting or drying-type, job-mixed texture finish for spray application.
  - 1. Application Thickness: 1/2 inch.
  - 2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
    - a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
    - b. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.
  - 3. NRC: 0.55 according to ASTM C423.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION OF PANELS

- A. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
  
- B. Comply with ASTM C840.
  
- C. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments. Provide **1/4- to 1/2-inch-** wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.

- D. For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.2 FINISHING OF GYPSUM BOARD

- A. Prefill open joints beveled edges and damaged surface areas.
- B. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.
- C. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C840:
  - 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
  - 2. Level 2: Where indicated on Drawings.
  - 3. Level 3: Where indicated on Drawings.
  - 4. Level 4: Where indicated on Drawings.
    - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
  - 5. Level 5: Where indicated on Drawings.
    - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in Section 099123 "Interior Painting."
- D. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions for use as exposed soffit board.
- E. Glass-Mat Faced Panels: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Cementitious Backer Units: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

### 3.3 APPLICATION OF TEXTURE FINISHES

- A. Surface Preparation and Primer: Prepare and apply primer to gypsum panels and other surfaces receiving texture finishes. Apply primer to surfaces that are clean, dry, and smooth.
- B. Texture Finish Application: Mix and apply finish using powered spray equipment, to produce a uniform texture, matching approved mockup and, free of starved spots or other evidence of thin application or of application patterns.

### 3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- B. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

END OF SECTION 09 29 00

## SECTION 09 30 13 - CERAMIC TILING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Porcelain tile.
2. Tile backing panels – Reference Section 09 29 00 – Gypsum Board

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Installer is a Five-Star member of the National Tile Contractors Association or a Trowel of Excellence member of the Tile Contractors' Association of America.
2. Installer's supervisor for Project holds the International Masonry Institute's Foreman Certification.
3. Installer employs only Ceramic Tile Education Foundation Certified Installers or installers recognized by the U.S. Department of Labor as Journeyman Tile Layers for Project.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide Standard-grade tile that complies with ANSI A137.1 for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.
- B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A108.02, ANSI standards referenced in other Part 2 articles, ANSI standards referenced by TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules, and other requirements specified.

## 2.2 TILE PRODUCTS

### A. Porcelain Tile Type <T-1>

1. Manufacturers:
  - a. Daltile or equal.
2. Grout Color: As selected by Architect from the manufacturer's standard color selections.
3. Trim Units: Daltile or equal.

## 2.3 TILE BACKING PANELS

### A. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A118.9 or ASTM C1325, Type A.

1. Reference Section 09 29 00 – Gypsum Board.
2. Thickness: Match existing tile wall system to install salvaged tiles in the same plane as existing.

## 2.4 GROUT MATERIALS

### A. Sand-Portland Cement Grout: ANSI A108.10, consisting of white or gray cement and white or colored aggregate as required to produce color indicated.

### B. Standard Cement Grout: ANSI A118.6.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Laticrete International, Inc.
  - b. Sika Corporation.
  - c. Or equal.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

#### A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free of coatings that are incompatible with tile-setting materials, including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone; and comply with flatness tolerances required by ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.

#### B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.



### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Where indicated, prepare substrates to receive waterproof membrane by applying a reinforced mortar bed that complies with ANSI A108.1A and is sloped 1/4 inch per foot toward drains.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation" for TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules. Comply with parts of the ANSI A108 series "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that are referenced in TCNA installation methods, specified in tile installation schedules, and apply to types of setting and grouting materials used.
- B. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.
- C. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern unless otherwise indicated. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Lay out tile work to minimize the use of pieces that are less than half of a tile. Provide uniform joint widths unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Joint Widths: Unless otherwise indicated, match existing widths.
- E. Install tile backing panels and treat joints according to ANSI A108.11.

### 3.4 INTERIOR CERAMIC TILE INSTALLATION SCHEDULE

- A. Interior Wall Installations, Masonry or Concrete:
  - 1. TCNA W211 and ANSI A108.1C Cement mortar bed (thickset) bonded to substrate.
    - a. Ceramic Tile Type: Existing
    - b. Bond Coat for Wet-Set Method: Standard dry-set mortar.
    - c. Bond Coat for Cured-Bed Method: Standard dry-set mortar.
    - d. Grout: Sand-portland cement grout.

END OF SECTION 09 30 13

## SECTION 09 51 23 - ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Acoustical tiles for interior ceilings.
2. Fully concealed, direct-hung, suspension systems.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 095113 "Acoustical Panel Ceilings" for ceilings consisting of mineral-base and glass-fiber-base acoustical panels and exposed suspension systems.
2. Section 095133 "Acoustical Metal Pan Ceilings" for ceilings consisting of metal-pan units with exposed and concealed suspension systems.

#### 1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

- A. If required by DISD or the Program Manager.

#### 1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product warranties.

#### 1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Product warranties.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

## 2.2 ACOUSTICAL TILES

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc. or equal.
- B. Acoustical Tile Standard: Manufacturer's standard tiles of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E 1264.
- C. Classification: Manufacturer's standard tiles of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E 1264.
- D. Color: As selected by the Architect from the manufacturer's standard color options.
- E. Light Reflectance (LR): Manufacturer's standard tiles of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E 1264.
- F. Ceiling Attenuation Class (CAC): Manufacturer's standard tiles of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E 1264.
- G. Noise Reduction Coefficient (NRC): Manufacturer's standard tiles of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E 1264.
- H. Articulation Class (AC): Manufacturer's standard tiles of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E 1264.
- I. Edge/Joint Detail: Square, kerfed, and rabbeted; tongue and grooved; or butt.
- J. Thickness: As indicated in the finish schedule.
- K. Modular Size: As indicated in the finish schedule.

## 2.3 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
  - 1. Armstrong Ceiling & Wall Solutions or equal.
- B. Metal Suspension-System Standard: Manufacturer's standard, direct-hung, fully concealed, metal suspension system that complies with applicable requirements in ASTM C 635/C 635M.
- C. Direct-Hung, Double-Web Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from and capped with cold-rolled steel sheet, pre-painted, electrolytically zinc coated, or hot-dip galvanized, G30 coating designation.
  - 1. Structural Classification: Intermediate -duty system.
  - 2. Access: Upward and , with initial access openings of size indicated below and located throughout ceiling within each module formed by main and cross runners,

with additional access available by progressively removing remaining acoustical tiles.

- a. Initial Access Opening: In each module, 24 by 24 inches.

## 2.4 ACCESSORIES

- A. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.
- B. Seismic Clips: Manufacturer's standard seismic clips designed to secure acoustical tiles in-place during a seismic event.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical tiles to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width tiles at borders unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Layout openings for penetrations centered on the penetrating items.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION OF SUSPENDED ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS

- A. Install suspended acoustical tile ceilings according to ASTM C 636/C 636M and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Arrange directionally patterned acoustical tiles as indicated on reflected ceiling plans.

END OF SECTION 09 51 23

## SECTION 09 65 19 - RESILIENT TILE FLOORING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Solid vinyl floor tile.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and pattern specified.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Product warranties.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product warranties.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

#### 2.2 SOLID VINYL FLOOR TILE

- A. Tile Standard: ASTM F 1700.

1. Class: Class III, Printed Film Vinyl Tile.
2. Type: A, Smooth Surface .

- B. Size: See Finish Schedule.

- C. Colors and Patterns: See Finish Schedule.

#### 2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

- A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by floor tile manufacturer for applications indicated.
- B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by floor tile and adhesive manufacturers to suit floor tile and substrate conditions indicated.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to floor tile manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F 710.
  - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
  - 2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
  - 3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing.
  - 4. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.
    - a. Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb. of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
    - b. Relative Humidity Test: Using in-situ probes, ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.
- C. Access Flooring Panels: Remove protective film of oil or other coating using method recommended by access flooring manufacturer.
- D. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- E. Do not install floor tiles until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.

1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient floor tile and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.
- F. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient floor tile.

### 3.2 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing floor tile.
- B. Lay out floor tiles from center marks established with principal walls, discounting minor offsets, so tiles at opposite edges of room are of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid using cut widths that equal less than one-half tile at perimeter.
1. Lay tiles square with room axis.
- C. Match floor tiles for color and pattern by selecting tiles from cartons in the same sequence as manufactured and packaged, if so numbered. Discard broken, cracked, chipped, or deformed tiles.
1. Lay tiles with grain running in one direction.
- D. Scribe, cut, and fit floor tiles to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces and permanent fixtures including built-in furniture, cabinets, pipes, outlets, and door frames.
- E. Extend floor tiles into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings. Extend floor tiles to center of door openings.
- F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on floor tiles as marked on substrates. Use chalk or other nonpermanent marking device.
- G. Install floor tiles on covers for telephone and electrical ducts, building expansion-joint covers, and similar items in installation areas. Maintain overall continuity of color and pattern between pieces of tile installed on covers and adjoining tiles. Tightly adhere tile edges to substrates that abut covers and to cover perimeters.
- H. Adhere floor tiles to substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.
- I. Floor Polish: Remove soil, adhesive, and blemishes from floor tile surfaces before applying liquid floor polish.
1. Apply: 6 to 8 coats of type (manufacturer) as required by DISD.

END OF SECTION 09 65 19

## SECTION 09 91 13 - EXTERIOR PAINTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Primers.
2. Finish coatings.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Samples: For each type of topcoat product.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements:

1. Kelly-Moore Paints.
2. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).

#### 2.2 PAINT PRODUCTS, GENERAL

A. Material Compatibility:

1. Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.

B. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range, colors to match existing pallet.



## 2.3 PRIMERS

- A. Exterior, Alkali-Resistant, Water-Based Primer: Pigmented, water-based primer formulated for use on alkaline surfaces, such as exterior plaster, vertical concrete, and masonry.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Kelly-Moore Paints.
    - b. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
- B. Solvent-Based Bonding Primer: Pigmented, solvent-based primer formulated for exterior use and to seal substrates and promote adhesion of specified subsequent coatings.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Kelly-Moore Paints.
    - b. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
- C. Epoxy Metal Primer: Corrosion-resistant, solvent-based, two-component epoxy primer formulated for use on prepared, exterior ferrous- and galvanized-metal surfaces.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).

## 2.4 FINISH COATINGS

- A. Exterior Latex Paint, Semigloss: Water-based, pigmented emulsion coating formulated for alkali, mold, microbial, and water resistance and for use on exterior surfaces, such as masonry, portland cement plaster, and primed wood and metal.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    - a. Kelly-Moore Paints.
    - b. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
  - 2. Gloss Level: Gloss of 35 to 70 units at 60 degrees when tested in accordance with ASTM D523.
- B. Exterior Latex Paint, Gloss: Water-based, pigmented, acrylic-copolymer-emulsion coating formulated for alkali, mold, microbial, scrub, blocking (sticking of two painted surfaces), and water resistance and for use on exterior, primed, wood and metal trim, sashes, frames, and doors.
  - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Kelly-Moore Paints.
    - b. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).

2. Gloss Level: Gloss of 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees when tested in accordance with ASTM D523.
- C. Exterior Alkyd Enamel-UV resistant, Gloss: Solvent-based, pigmented, alkyd enamel formulated for mold, microbial, and water resistance and for use on exterior, primed, wood and metal surfaces.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. Kelly-Moore Paints.
    - b. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
  2. Gloss Level: Gloss of 70 to 85 units at 60 degrees when tested in accordance with ASTM D523.
  3. Fineness of Grind: Manufacturer's standard

## 2.5 FLOOR SEALERS

- A. Water-Based, Concrete-Floor Sealer: Clear, water-based, acrylic-copolymer-emulsion sealer formulated for oil, gasoline, alkali, and water resistance and for use on exterior, concrete traffic surfaces.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
    - a. WR Meadows.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with finishes and primers.
- B. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.

1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems specified in this Section.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Apply paints in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- B. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- C. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

### 3.5 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Concrete Substrates, Traffic Surfaces:
1. Water-Based, Concrete-Floor Sealer – Concrete work at main entry:
    - a. Prime Coat: Exterior, alkali-resistant, water-based primer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Clear, water-based, acrylic-copolymer-emulsion sealer.
- B. Concrete Substrates, Wall Surfaces:
1. Latex System – Concrete retaining wall:
    - a. Prime Coat: Exterior, alkali-resistant, water-based primer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Exterior Latex Paint, Flat

C. Steel and Iron Substrates:

1. Exterior Alkyd Enamel, UV resistant – roof miscellaneous pipes and existing storage shipping containers:
  - a. Prime Coat: Exterior, alkali-resistant, water-based primer.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Exterior Solvent-based, pigmented, alkyd enamel, gloss.
  - d. Gas piping to be painted yellow.

D. Portland Cement Plaster Substrates:

1. Latex System – Roof overhang soffits as noted on drawings.
  - a. Prime Coat: Matching topcoat.
  - b. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
  - c. Topcoat: Three coat acrylic latex system semigloss.

END OF SECTION 09 91 13

## SECTION 09 91 23 - INTERIOR PAINTING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
  - 1. Water-based finish coatings.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Samples: For each type of topcoat product.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Product warranties.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, undefined:
  - 1. Sherwin-Williams.
  - 2. Kelly-Moore.
  - 3. Or equal.

#### 2.2 PAINT PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Material Compatibility:
  - 1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
  - 2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.
- B. Colors: As indicated on the finish schedule .

1. percent of surface area will be painted with deep tones.

## 2.3 WATER-BASED FINISH COATS

- A. Interior, Latex, Institutional Low Odor/VOC, Eggshell: White or colored latex paint with low-odor characteristics and a VOC of less than 10 grams per liter, for use in areas, such as hospitals and other occupied buildings, where the odor and VOC levels of conventional latex products would preclude their use.

1. Gloss and Sheen Level: Manufacturer's standard eggshell finish.

## 2.4 SOLVENT-BASED FINISH COATS: If called for in the drawings.

## 2.5 FLOOR SEALERS AND PAINTS: If called for in the drawings.

## 2.6 DRY FALL COATINGS: If called for in the drawings.

# PART 3 - EXECUTION

## 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with existing finishes and primers.
- B. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
  1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

## 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.
- B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
- C. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.
- C. Painting Fire-Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:
  - 1. Paint the following work where exposed in equipment rooms:
    - a. Uninsulated metal piping.
    - b. Any exposed metal fittings.
    - c. Any exposed wood framing.
  - 2. Paint portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets that are visible from occupied spaces.

### 3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- B. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- C. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

### 3.5 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

- A. Gypsum Board Substrates:
  - 1. Latex over Latex Sealer System :
    - a. Prime Coat: Interior latex primer sealer.
    - b. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
    - c. Topcoat: Interior latex.
- B. Insulation-Covering Substrates: Interior latex.

END OF SECTION 09 91 23

## SECTION 10 26 00 - WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Wall guards.
2. Impact-resistant handrails.
3. Corner guards.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 055000 "Metal Fabrications" for steel angle corner guards, pipe guards and wheel guards.
2. Section 057300 "Decorative Metal Railings" for metal handrails without plastic bumpers.
3. Section 064023 "Interior Architectural Woodwork" for solid-wood handrails, bumper rails, chair rails, or corner moldings without plastic bumpers.
4. Section 087100 "Door Hardware" for metal and plastic protective trim units, according to BHMA A156.6, used for armor, kick, mop, and push plates.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For each type of wall and door protection showing locations and extent.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details. Show handrail design and support spacing required to withstand structural loads.

C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, **12 inches** long.



### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Product certificates.
- B. Material certificates.
- C. Sample warranty.

### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Maintenance data.

### 1.5 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of wall- and door-protection units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
  - 1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Surface Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84 or UL 723; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
  - 1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
  - 2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
- B. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities and ICC A117.1.

## 2.2 WALL GUARDS

- A. Crash Rail: Heavy-duty assembly consisting of continuous snap-on plastic cover installed over concealed retainer; designed to withstand impacts.
1. Cover: Extruded rigid plastic, minimum 0.100-inch wall thickness; in dimensions and profiles indicated on Drawings.
    - a. Surface: Uniform.
    - b. Color and Texture: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  2. Continuous Retainer: Minimum 0.080-inch- thick, one-piece, extruded aluminum.
  3. Retainer Clips: Manufacturer's standard impact-absorbing clips designed for heavy-duty performance.
  4. Bumper: Continuous, resilient bumper cushion(s).
  5. End Caps and Corners: Prefabricated, injection-molded plastic with matching color cover; field adjustable for close alignment with snap-on cover.
  6. Accessories: Concealed splices and mounting hardware.
  7. Mounting: Surface mounted directly to wall.
- B. Bumper Rail: Standard-duty assembly consisting of continuous snap-on plastic cover installed over concealed retainer; designed to withstand impacts.
1. Cover: Extruded rigid plastic, minimum 0.078-inch wall thickness; in dimensions and profiles indicated on Drawings.
    - a. Color and Texture: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  2. Continuous Retainer: Minimum 0.080-inch- thick, one-piece, extruded aluminum.
  3. Retainer Clips: Manufacturer's standard impact-absorbing clips.
  4. Bumper: Continuous, resilient bumper cushion(s).
  5. End Caps and Corners: Prefabricated, injection-molded plastic with matching color cover; field adjustable for close alignment with snap-on cover.
  6. Accessories: Concealed splices and mounting hardware.
  7. Mounting: Surface mounted directly to wall.
- C. Rub Rail: Standard-duty assembly consisting of continuous snap-on cover installed over concealed, continuous retainer.
1. Cover: Extruded plastic, minimum 0.078-inch wall thickness; in dimensions and profiles indicated on Drawings.
    - a. Color and Texture: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  2. Retainer: Minimum 0.0625-inch thick, one-piece, extruded aluminum.
  3. End Caps and Corners: Prefabricated, injection-molded plastic; color matching cover; field adjustable for close alignment with snap-on cover.
  4. Accessories: Concealed splices and mounting hardware.
  5. Mounting: Surface mounted directly to wall.

## 2.3 IMPACT-RESISTANT HANDRAILS

- A. Structural Performance: Handrails, including attachment to building construction, shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:
1. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ft. applied in any direction.
  2. Concentrated load of 200 lbf applied in any direction.
  3. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
- B. Plastic, Impact-Resistant Handrails: Manufacturer's standard assembly consisting of snap-on plastic cover installed over continuous retainer.
1. Cover: Minimum 0.078-inch thick, extruded rigid plastic; in dimensions and profiles indicated on Drawings.
    - a. Single Handrail: Cylindrical tube profile cover with continuous retainer; with mounting brackets supporting bottom of rail.
    - b. Bumper Rail: Cover with flat front side; with 1-1/2-inch- diameter gripping surface and finger recess on back side; supported by concealed, continuous retainer and extended mounting brackets.
      - 1) Bumper Surface: Smooth.
    - c. Color and Texture: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  2. Retainer: Minimum 0.080-inch- thick, one-piece, extruded aluminum.
  3. Mounting Bracket: Extended mounting on anodized-aluminum mounting brackets.
  4. End Caps and Corners: Prefabricated, injection-molded plastic with matching color cover; field adjustable for close alignment with snap-on cover.
  5. Accessories: Concealed splices, cushions, and mounting hardware.

## 2.4 CORNER GUARDS

- A. Surface-Mounted, Plastic-Cover Corner Guards: Manufacturer's standard assembly consisting of snap-on, resilient plastic cover installed over retainer; including mounting hardware; fabricated with 90 or 135-degree turn to match wall condition.
1. Cover: Extruded rigid plastic,; in dimensions and profiles indicated on Drawings.
    - a. Color and Texture: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  2. Continuous Retainer: Minimum 0.060-inch one-piece extruded plastic.
  3. Retainer Clips: Manufacturer's standard impact-absorbing clips.
  4. Top and Bottom Caps: Prefabricated, injection-molded plastic; color matching cover; field adjustable for close alignment with snap-on cover.
- B. Flush-Mounted, Plastic-Cover Corner Guards: Manufacturer's standard assembly consisting of snap-on, resilient plastic cover that is flush with adjacent wall surface, installed over retainer; including mounting hardware; fabricated with 90- or 135-degree turn to match wall condition; full wall height.
1. Cover: Extruded rigid plastic; in dimensions and profiles indicated on Drawings.

- a. Color and Texture: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  2. Continuous Retainer: Minimum 0.060-inch- thick, one-piece, extruded aluminum.
  3. Retainer Clips: Manufacturer's standard impact-absorbing clips.
  4. Aluminum Cove Base: Nominal 6 inches high.
- C. Fire-Rated, Flush-Mounted, Plastic-Cover Corner Guards: Manufacturer's standard assembly consisting of snap-on, resilient plastic cover that is flush with adjacent wall surface, installed over continuous retainer and intumescent fire barrier; including mounting hardware; fabricated with 90- or 135-degree turn to match wall condition; full wall height.
1. Fire Rating: Same rating as wall in which corner guard is installed, UL listed and labeled according to ASTM E 1966 or UL 2079.
    - a. L-Rating at Smoke Barriers: Not exceeding 5.0 cfm/ft. of joint at 0.30 inch wg at both ambient and elevated temperatures according to UL 2079.
  2. Cover: Extruded rigid plastic, minimum wall thickness; in dimensions and profiles indicated on Drawings.
    - a. Color and Texture: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
  3. Retainer: Minimum 0.070-inch- thick, one-piece, extruded aluminum.
  4. Aluminum Cove Base:
- D. Surface-Mounted, Opaque-Plastic Corner Guards: PVC-free plastic with formed edges; fabricated with 90 or 135-degree turn to match wall condition.
1. Mounting: Countersunk screws through factory-drilled mounting holes.
  2. Color and Texture: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

## 2.5 MATERIALS

- A. Plastic Materials: Chemical- and stain-resistant, high-impact-resistant plastic with integral color throughout; extruded and sheet material as required, thickness as indicated.
- B. Polycarbonate Plastic Sheet: ASTM D 6098, S-PC01, Class 1 or Class 2, abrasion resistant; with a minimum impact-resistance rating of **15 ft.-lbf/in.** of notch when tested according to ASTM D 256, Test Method A.
- C. Fasteners: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless-steel, or other noncorrosive metal screws, bolts, and other fasteners compatible with items being fastened. Use security-type fasteners where exposed to view.
- D. Adhesive: As recommended by protection product manufacturer.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Installation Quality: Install wall and door protection according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and true to line without distortions. Do not use materials with chips, cracks, voids, stains, or other defects that might be visible in the finished Work.
- B. Mounting Heights: Install wall and door protection in locations and at mounting heights indicated on Drawings.
- C. Accessories: Provide splices, mounting hardware, anchors, trim, joint moldings, and other accessories required for a complete installation.
  - 1. Provide anchoring devices and suitable locations to withstand imposed loads.
  - 2. Where splices occur in horizontal runs of more than 20 feet, splice aluminum retainers and plastic covers at different locations along the run, but no closer than 12 inches apart.
  - 3. Adjust end and top caps as required to ensure tight seams.

END OF SECTION 10 26 00

## SECTION 10 28 00 - TOILET, BATH, AND LAUNDRY ACCESSORIES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Public-use washroom accessories – grab bars.

#### 1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance data.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Design accessories and fasteners to comply with the following requirements:

1. Grab Bars: Installed units are able to resist 250 lbf concentrated load applied in any direction and at any point..

#### 2.2 PUBLIC-USE WASHROOM ACCESSORIES

A. Grab Bar :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - a. Bobrick Washroom Equipment, Inc.
  - b. Bradley Corporation.
2. Mounting: Flanges with concealed fasteners.
3. Material: Stainless steel, 0.05 inch thick.

- a. Finish: Smooth, ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 finish (satin) on ends and slip-resistant texture in grip area.
4. Outside Diameter: 1-1/2 inches.
5. Configuration and Length: As indicated on Drawings .

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Install accessories in accordance with manufacturers' written instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate indicated and recommended by unit manufacturer. Install units level, plumb, and firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.
  1. Remove temporary labels and protective coatings.
- B. Grab Bars: Install to comply with specified structural-performance requirements and ADA/TAS requirements.

END OF SECTION 10 28 00

**SECTION 22 05 23  
GENERAL-DUTY VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Angle valves.
- B. Ball valves.
- C. Butterfly valves.
- D. Check valves.
- E. Gate valves.
- F. Chainwheels.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 22 07 19 - Plumbing Piping Insulation.
- B. Section 22 10 05 - Plumbing Piping.

**1.03 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS**

- A. CWP: Cold working pressure.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.
- C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.
- D. NRS: Non-rising stem.
- E. OS&Y: Outside screw and yoke.
- F. PTFE: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
- G. RS: Rising stem.
- H. TFE: Tetrafluoroethylene.
- I. WOG: Water, oil, and gas.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASME B1.20.1 - Pipe Threads, General Purpose, Inch; 2013 (Reaffirmed 2018).
- B. ASME B16.1 - Gray Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: Classes 25, 125, and 250; 2020.
- C. ASME B16.5 - Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: NPS 1/2 through NPS 24 Metric/Inch Standard; 2020.
- D. ASME B16.18 - Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings; 2021.
- E. ASME B31.9 - Building Services Piping; 2020.
- F. ASTM A126 - Standard Specification for Gray Iron Castings for Valves, Flanges, and Pipe Fittings; 2004 (Reapproved 2019).
- G. ASTM A536 - Standard Specification for Ductile Iron Castings; 1984, with Editorial Revision (2019).
- H. ASTM B62 - Standard Specification for Composition Bronze or Ounce Metal Castings; 2017.
- I. MSS SP-45 - Drain and Bypass Connections; 2020.
- J. MSS SP-67 - Butterfly Valves; 2022.
- K. MSS SP-71 - Gray Iron Swing Check Valves, Flanged and Threaded Ends; 2018.
- L. MSS SP-80 - Bronze Gate, Globe, Angle, and Check Valves; 2019.



- M. MSS SP-110 - Ball Valves Threaded, Socket-Welding, Solder Joint, Grooved and Flared Ends; 2010, with Errata .
- N. NSF 61 - Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; 2021.
- O. NSF 372 - Drinking Water System Components - Lead Content; 2022.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Provide data on valves including manufacturers catalog information. Submit performance ratings, rough-in details, weights, support requirements, and piping connections.
- B. Warranty: Submit manufacturer warranty and ensure that forms have been completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.
- C. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include manufacturer's descriptive literature, operating instructions, maintenance and repair data, and parts listings.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer:
  - 1. Obtain valves for each valve type from single manufacturer.

#### **1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
  - 1. Minimize exposure of operable surfaces by setting plug and ball valves to open position.
  - 2. Protect valve parts exposed to piped medium against rust and corrosion.
  - 3. Protect valve piping connections such as grooves, weld ends, threads, and flange faces.
  - 4. Adjust globe, gate, and angle valves to the closed position to avoid clattering.
  - 5. Secure check valves in either the closed position or open position.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 APPLICATIONS**

- A. Listed pipe sizes shown using nominal pipe sizes (NPS) and nominal diameter (DN).
- B. Provide the following valves for the applications if not indicated on drawings:
  - 1. Shutoff: Ball, butterfly, gate or plug.
- C. Substitutions of valves with higher CWP classes or WSP ratings for same valve types are permitted when specified CWP ratings or WSP classes are not available.
- D. Required Valve End Connections for Non-Wafer Types:
  - 1. Copper Tube:
    - a. 2 inch (50 mm, DN) and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
    - b. 2-1/2 inch (65 mm, DN) to 4 inch (100 mm, DN): Grooved or flanged ends except where threaded valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.
    - c. 5 inch (125 mm, DN) and Larger: Grooved or flanged ends.

#### **2.02 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: No less than rating indicated; as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- B. Valve Sizes: Match upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Valve Actuator Types:
  - 1. Handwheel: Valves other than quarter-turn types.
  - 2. Hand Lever: Quarter-turn valves 6 inch (150 mm, DN) and smaller except plug valves.
  - 3. Chainwheel: Device for attachment to valve handwheel, stem, or other actuator, of size and with chain for mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article.

- D. Insulated Piping Valves: With 2 inch (50 mm, DN) stem extensions and the following features:
  - 1. Gate Valves: Rising stem.
  - 2. Ball Valves: Extended operating handle of non-thermal-conductive material, and protective sleeve that allows operation of valve without breaking the vapor seal or disturbing insulation.
  - 3. Butterfly Valves: Extended neck.
- E. Valve-End Connections:
  - 1. Threaded End Valves: ASME B1.20.1.
  - 2. Flanges on Iron Valves: ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
  - 3. Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings 1/2 inch (15 mm, DN) through 24 inch (600 mm, DN): ASME B16.5.
  - 4. Solder Joint Connections: ASME B16.18.
- F. General ASME Compliance:
  - 1. Building Services Piping Valves: ASME B31.9.
- G. Potable Water Use:
  - 1. Certified: Approved for use in compliance with NSF 61 and NSF 372.
  - 2. Lead-Free Certified: Wetted surface material includes less than 0.25 percent lead content.
- H. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.
- I. Source Limitations: Obtain each valve type from a single manufacturer.

### **2.03 BRONZE, BALL VALVES**

- A. General:
  - 1. Fabricate from dezincification resistant material.
  - 2. Copper alloys containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- B. One Piece, Reduced Port with Bronze Trim:
  - 1. Comply with MSS SP-110.
  - 2. WSP Rating: 400 psi (2760 kPa).
  - 3. CWP Rating: 600 psi (4140 kPa).
  - 4. Body: Bronze.
  - 5. End Connections: Pipe thread.
  - 6. Seats: PTFE.
- C. Two Piece, Full Port with Stainless Steel Trim:
  - 1. Comply with MSS SP-110.
  - 2. Body: Forged bronze or dezincified-brass alloy.
  - 3. Seats: PTFE.
  - 4. Stem: Stainless steel, blowout proof.
  - 5. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
  - 6. Manufacturers:
    - a. Apollo Flow Controls; Conbraco Industries.
    - b. Crane; Crane Energy Flow Solution.
    - c. Hammond Valve.
    - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - e. NIBCO Inc.
    - f. Watts.

### **2.04 IRON, SINGLE FLANGE BUTTERFLY VALVES**

- A. Lug Style; Bi-directional dead-end service without use of downstream flange:
  - 1. Class 125, or Class 150 flanges.

2. Comply with MSS SP-67, Type I.
3. Lug Style, Service Pressure Ratings:
  - a. 150 psi (1034 kPa) for sizes 14 to 24 inch (350 to 600 mm, DN).
  - b. Vacuum down to 29.9 in-Hg (101.2 kPa).
4. Body Material: ASTM A126, cast iron or ASTM A536, ductile iron.
5. Stem: One or two-piece stainless steel.
6. Seat: EPDM.
7. Disc: Stainless steel.
8. Finish: Epoxy coated.
9. Operator: Gear operator with handwheel over direct-mount actuator base.
10. Manufacturers:
  - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Valves.
  - b. Cooper Cameron Valves; a division of Cooper Cameron Corp.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves or Stockham Division.
  - d. Hammond Valve.
  - e. Kitz Corporation.
  - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - g. NIBCO Inc.
  - h. Red-White Valve Corporation.
  - i. Tyco Valves & Controls; a unit of Tyco Flow Control.
  - j. Watts Regulator Co.; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.

#### **2.05 BRONZE, SWING CHECK VALVES**

- A. General:
  1. Fabricate from dezincification resistant material.
  2. Copper alloys containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.
- B. Class 125:
  1. Pressure and Temperature Rating: MSS SP-80, Type 3.
  2. Design: Y-pattern, horizontal or vertical flow.
  3. WOG Rating: 200 psi (1380 kPa).
  4. Body: Bronze, ASTM B62.
  5. End Connections: Threaded.
  6. Disc: Bronze.
  7. Manufacturers:
    - a. American Valve, Inc.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - d. NIBCO Inc.
    - e. Red-White Valve Corporation.

#### **2.06 IRON, SWING CHECK VALVES WITH CLOSURE CONTROL**

- A. Class 125 with Lever and Spring-Closure Control.
  1. Comply with MSS SP-71, Type I.
  2. Description:
    - a. CWP Rating: 200 psi (1380 kPa).
    - b. Design: Clear or full waterway.
    - c. Body: ASTM A126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
    - d. Ends: Flanged as indicated.
    - e. Trim: Bronze.
    - f. Gasket: Asbestos free.
    - g. Closer Control: Factory installed, exterior lever, and weight.

3. Manufacturers:
  - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves, Jenkins Valves and Stockham Division
  - b. Grinnel Corporation.
  - c. Hammond Valve.
  - d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - e. Mueller Company.
  - f. NIBCO Inc.
  - g. Watts Industries.

## **2.07 BRONZE, GATE VALVES**

- A. NRS or OS & Y:
  1. Body: ASTM A126, gray iron with bolted bonnet.
  2. End Connections: Flanged.
  3. Trim: Bronze.
  4. Disc: Solid wedge.
  5. Packing and Gasket: Asbestos free.
  6. Manufacturers:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves, Jenkins Valves, or Stockham Division.
    - b. Flo Fab Inc.
    - c. Hammond Valve.
    - d. Kitz Corporation.
    - e. Legend Valve.
    - f. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - g. NIBCO Inc.
    - h. Watts Regulator Company.

## **2.08 CHAINWHEELS**

- A. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, brackets, and chain.
  1. Attachment: For connection to ball valve stems.
  2. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides: Ductile iron. Include zinc coating.
  3. Chain: Hot-dip galvanized steel. Sized to fit sprocket rim.
- B. Manufacturers:

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Discard all packing materials and verify that valve interior, including threads and flanges are completely clean without signs of damage or degradation that could result in leakage.
- B. Verify valve parts to be fully operational in all positions from closed to fully open.
- C. Confirm gasket material to be suitable for the service, to be of correct size, and without defects that could compromise effectiveness.
- D. Should valve is determined to be defective, replace with new valve.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Provide unions or flanges with valves to facilitate equipment removal and maintenance while maintaining system operation and full accessibility for servicing.
- B. Provide separate valve support as required and locate valve with stem at or above center of piping, maintaining unimpeded stem movement.
- C. Where valve support members are welded to structural building framing, scrape, brush clean, and apply one coat of zinc rich primer to welds.

SBLM Architects  
Project No: 023569.00

- D. Install check valves where necessary to maintain direction of flow as follows:
  - 1. Swing Check: Install horizontal maintaining hinge pin level.
- E. Provide chainwheels on operators for valves 4 inch (100 mm, DN) and larger where located 96 inches (2.4 m) or more above finished floor, terminating 60 inches (1.5 m) above finished floor.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 22 05 29**  
**HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Prefabricated trapeze-framed systems.
- B. Strut systems for pipe or equipment support.
- C. Beam clamps.
- D. Pipe hangers.
- E. Pipe rollers and roller supports.
- F. Pipe supports, guides, shields, and saddles.
- G. Nonpenetrating rooftop supports for low-slope roofs.
- H. Anchors and fasteners.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 03 30 00 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Concrete equipment pads.
- B. Section 05 50 00 - Metal Fabrications.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM A123/A123M - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products; 2017.
- B. ASTM A153/A153M - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware; 2016a.
- C. ASTM A181/A181M - Standard Specification for Carbon Steel Forgings, for General-Purpose Piping; 2022.
- D. ASTM A36/A36M - Standard Specification for Carbon Structural Steel; 2019.
- E. ASTM A47/A47M - Standard Specification for Ferritic Malleable Iron Castings; 1999, with Editorial Revision (2018).
- F. ASTM A283/A283M - Standard Specification for Low and Intermediate Tensile Strength Carbon Steel Plates; 2018.
- G. ASTM A395/A395M - Standard Specification for Ferritic Ductile Iron Pressure-Retaining Castings for Use at Elevated Temperatures; 1999 (Reapproved 2018).
- H. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2020.
- I. ASTM A1011/A1011M - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet and Strip, Hot-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, and Ultra-High Strength; 2023.
- J. ASTM B633 - Standard Specification for Electrodeposited Coatings of Zinc on Iron and Steel; 2019.
- K. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2022.
- L. ASTM E96/E96M - Standard Test Methods for Gravimetric Determination of Water Vapor Transmission Rate of Materials; 2022.
- M. MFMA-4 - Metal Framing Standards Publication; 2004.

- N. MSS SP-58 - Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design, Manufacture, Selection, Application, and Installation; 2018, with Amendment (2019).
- O. UL 723 - Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for metal channel (strut) framing systems, nonpenetrating rooftop supports, post-installed concrete and masonry anchors, and thermal insulated pipe supports.

#### **1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with applicable building code.

#### **1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Provide required hardware to hang or support piping, equipment, or fixtures with related accessories as necessary to complete installation of plumbing work.
- B. Provide hardware products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for intended purpose.
- C. Do not use wire, chain, perforated pipe strap, or wood for permanent supports unless specifically indicated or permitted.
- D. Materials for Metal Fabricated Supports: Comply with Section 05 50 00.
  - 1. Zinc-Plated Steel: Electroplated in accordance with ASTM B633 unless stated otherwise.
  - 2. Galvanized Steel: Hot-dip galvanized in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M or ASTM A153/A153M unless stated otherwise.
- E. Corrosion Resistance: Use corrosion-resistant metal-based materials fully compatible with exposed piping materials and suitable for the environment where installed.
  - 1. Indoor Dry Locations: Use zinc-plated steel or approved equivalent unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Outdoor, Damp, or Wet-Indoor Locations: Use galvanized steel, stainless steel, or approved equivalent unless otherwise indicated.

#### **2.02 PREFABRICATED TRAPEZE-FRAMED SYSTEMS**

- A. Prefabricated Trapeze-Framed Metal Strut Systems:
  - 1. MFMA-4 compliant, pre-fabricated, MSS SP-58 Type 59 continuous-slot metal strut channel with associated tracks, fittings, and related accessories.
  - 2. Strut Channel or Bracket Material:
    - a. Indoor Dry Locations: Use zinc-plated steel or galvanized steel.
    - b. Outdoor and Damp or Wet Indoor Locations: Use galvanized steel.
  - 3. Accessories: Provide bracket covers, cable basket clips, cable tray clips, clamps, conduit clamps, fire-retarding brackets, j-hooks, protectors, and vibration dampeners.

#### **2.03 STRUT SYSTEMS FOR PIPE OR EQUIPMENT SUPPORT**

- A. Strut Channels:
  - 1. ASTM A653/A653M galvanized steel bracket with clamps for surface mounting of piping or plumbing equipment support.
  - 2. Channel or Bracket Kits: Include rods, brackets, end-fixed fittings, covers, clips, and other related hardware required to complete sectional trapeze section for piping or other

support.

- B. Hanger Rods:
  - 1. Threaded zinc-plated steel unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Minimum Size, Unless Otherwise Indicated or Required:
    - a. Equipment Supports: 1/2 inch (13 mm, DN) diameter.
    - b. Piping up to 1 inch (25 mm, DN): 1/4 inch (6 mm, DN) diameter.
    - c. Piping larger than 1 inch (25 mm, DN): 3/8 inch (10 mm, DN) diameter.
    - d. Trapeze Support for Multiple Pipes: 3/8 inch (10 mm) in length.
- C. Channel Nuts:
  - 1. Provide carbon steel channel nut with epoxy copper or zinc finish and long, regular, or short spring as indicated on drawings.

#### **2.04 BEAM CLAMPS**

- A. MSS SP-58 types 19 through 23, 25 or 27 through 30 based on required load.
- B. Provide clamps with hardened steel cup-point set screws and lock-nuts for anchoring in place.
- C. Material: ASTM A395/A395M ductile iron, ASTM A36/A36M carbon steel, ASTM A47/A47M malleable iron, ASTM A181/A181M forged steel, or ASTM A283/A283M steel.

#### **2.05 PIPE HANGERS**

- A. Band Hangers, Adjustable:
  - 1. MSS SP-58 type 7 or 9, zinc-plated ASTM A1011/A1011M steel or ASTM A653/A653M carbon steel.
- B. J-Hangers, Adjustable:
  - 1. MSS SP-58 type 5, zinc-plated ASTM A1011/A1011M steel or ASTM A653/A653M carbon steel.
  - 2. Felt-Lined: Provide for uninsulated pipe to reduce noise and prevent static issues.
- C. Clevis Hangers, Adjustable:
  - 1. Copper Tube: MSS SP-58 type 1, epoxy-plated copper.
  - 2. Felt-Lined: MSS SP-58 type 1, zinc-plated, silicone-free carbon steel.
  - 3. Light-Duty: MSS SP-58 type 1, zinc-colored, epoxy plated.
  - 4. Standard-Duty: MSS SP-58 type 1, zinc-colored, epoxy plated.
- D. Nonmetallic Pipe Hangers:
  - 1. CPVC fabricated, snap-action hanger for pendant or sidewall applications.

#### **2.06 PIPE ROLLERS AND ROLLER SUPPORTS**

- A. MSS SP-58 type 43 based on required load, nonconductive and corrosion resistant.
- B. Material: Zinc plated ASTM A36/A36M carbon steel or ASTM A47/A47M malleable iron.

#### **2.07 PIPE SUPPORTS, GUIDES, SHIELDS, AND SADDLES**

- A. Dielectric Barriers: Provide between metallic supports and metallic piping and associated items of dissimilar type; acceptable dielectric barriers include rubber or plastic sheets or coatings attached securely to pipe or item.
- B. Stanchions:
  - 1. Material: Malleable iron, ASTM A47/A47M; or carbon steel, ASTM A36/A36M.
  - 2. Provide coated or plated saddles to isolate steel hangers from dissimilar metal tube or pipe.
  - 3. For pipe runs, use stanchions of same type and material where vertical adjustment is required for stationary pipe.
- C. U-Bolts:



1. MSS SP-58 type 24, carbon steel u-bolt for pipe support or anchoring.
- D. Pipe Shields for Insulated Piping:
  1. MSS SP-58 type 40, ASTM A1011/A1011M steel or ASTM A653/A653M carbon steel.
  2. General Construction and Requirements:
    - a. Surface Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84 or UL 723.
    - b. Shields Material: UV-resistant polypropylene with glass fill.
    - c. Maximum Insulated Pipe Outer Diameter: 12-5/8 inch (321 mm).
    - d. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to 178 degrees F (Minus 40 to 81 degrees C).
    - e. Pipe shields to be provided at hanger, support, and guide locations on pipe requiring insulation or additional support.
- E. Pipe Supports:
  1. Material: ASTM A395/A395M ductile iron, ASTM A36/A36M carbon steel, ASTM A47/A47M malleable iron, ASTM A181/A181M forged steel, or ASTM A283/A283M steel.
  2. Liquid Temperatures Up to 122 degrees F (50 degrees C):
    - a. Overhead Support: MSS SP-58 types 1, 3 through 12 clamps.
    - b. Support From Below: MSS SP-58 types 35 through 38.
  3. Operating Temperatures from 122 to 446 degrees F (50 to 230 degrees C):
    - a. Overhead Support: MSS SP-58 type 1 or 3 through 12 clamps with appropriate saddle of MSS SP-58 type 40 for insulated pipe.
    - b. Roller Chair: MSS SP-58 types 41 or 43 through 46 roller chair support with appropriate saddle of MSS SP-58 type 39 for insulated pipe.
    - c. Sliding Support: MSS SP-58 types 35 through 38.
- F. Pipe Supports, Thermal Insulated:
  1. General Requirements:
    - a. Insulated pipe supports to be provided at hanger, support, and guide locations on pipe requiring insulation or additional support.
    - b. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index/smoke developed index of 5/30, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.
    - c. Provide pipe supports for 1/2 to 30 inch (15 to 750 mm, DN) iron pipes.
    - d. Insulation inserts to consist of rigid phenolic foam insulation surrounded by 360 degree, PVC jacketing.
  2. PVC Jacket:
    - a. Pipe insulation protection shields to be provided with ball bearing hinge and locking seam.
    - b. Moisture Vapor Transmission: 0.0071 perm inch (0.0092 ng/Pa s m), when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M.
    - c. Minimum Thickness: 60 mil, 0.06 inch (1.524 mm).

## **2.08 NONPENETRATING ROOFTOP SUPPORTS FOR LOW-SLOPE ROOFS**

- A. Provide steel pedestals with thermoplastic or rubber base that rest on top of roofing membrane, not requiring any attachment to the roof structure and not penetrating the roofing assembly, with support fixtures as specified.
- B. Base Sizes: As required to distribute load sufficiently to prevent indentation of roofing assembly.
- C. Attachment/Support Fixtures: As recommended by manufacturer, same type as indicated for equivalent indoor hangers and supports.
- D. Mounting Height: Provide minimum clearance of 6 inches (150 mm) under supported component to top of roofing.

## **2.09 ANCHORS AND FASTENERS**

- A. Unless otherwise indicated and where not otherwise restricted, use the anchor and fastener types indicated for the specified applications.
- B. Concrete: Use preset concrete inserts, expansion anchors, or screw anchors.
- C. Solid or Grout-Filled Masonry: Use expansion anchors or screw anchors.
- D. Hollow Masonry: Use toggle bolts.
- E. Hollow Stud Walls: Use toggle bolts.
- F. Steel: Use beam ceiling clamps, beam clamps, machine bolts, or welded threaded studs.
- G. Beam Ceiling Flanges: ASTM A47/A47M Grade 32510, malleable iron or stainless steel with copper, plain, stainless steel, or zinc finish.
- H. Sheet Metal: Use sheet metal screws.
- I. Wood: Use wood screws.
- J. Plastic and lead anchors are not permitted.
- K. Preset Concrete Inserts: Continuous metal strut channel and spot inserts specifically designed to be cast in concrete ceilings, walls, and floors.
  - 1. Channel Material: Use galvanized steel.
  - 2. Manufacturer: Same as manufacturer of metal strut channel framing system.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- B. Verify that mounting surfaces are ready to receive support and attachment components.
- C. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install anchors and fasteners in accordance with ICC Evaluation Services, LLC (ICC-ES) evaluation report conditions of use where applicable.
- C. Provide independent support from building structure. Do not provide support from piping, ductwork, conduit, or other systems.
- D. Unless specifically indicated or approved by Architect, do not provide support from suspended ceiling support system or ceiling grid.
- E. Unless specifically indicated or approved by Architect, do not provide support from roof deck.
- F. Do not penetrate or otherwise notch or cut structural members without approval of Structural Engineer.
- G. Provide thermal insulated pipe supports complete with hangers and accessories. Install thermal insulated pipe supports during the installation of the piping system.
- H. Equipment Support and Attachment:
  - 1. Use metal fabricated supports or supports assembled from metal channel (strut) to support equipment as required.
  - 2. Use metal channel (strut) secured to studs to support equipment surface-mounted on hollow stud walls when wall strength is not sufficient to resist pull-out.
  - 3. Use metal channel (strut) to support surface-mounted equipment in wet or damp locations to provide space between equipment and mounting surface.

4. Unless otherwise indicated, mount floor-mounted equipment on properly sized 4 inch (100 mm) high concrete pad constructed in accordance with Section 03 30 00.
  5. Securely fasten floor-mounted equipment. Do not install equipment such that it relies on its own weight for support.
- I. Preset Concrete Inserts: Use manufacturer-provided closure strips to inhibit concrete seepage during concrete pour.
  - J. Secure fasteners according to manufacturer's recommended torque settings.
  - K. Remove temporary supports.

**3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Inspect support and attachment components for damage and defects.
- B. Repair cuts and abrasions in galvanized finishes using zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer. Replace components that exhibit signs of corrosion.
- C. Correct deficiencies and replace damaged or defective support and attachment components.

**END OF SECTION**

SBLM Architects  
Project No: 023569.00

**SECTION 22 05 53**  
**IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT**

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**1.01 PLUMBING COMPONENT IDENTIFICATION GUIDELINE**

A. Pipe Markers: 3/4 inch (20 mm) diameter and higher.

**1.02 PIPE MARKERS**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 22 07 19  
PLUMBING PIPING INSULATION**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Flexible elastomeric cellular insulation.
- B. Piping insulation for supplies and drains for handicap-accessible lavatories and sinks.
- C. Glass fiber insulation.
- D. Jacketing and accessories.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 07 84 00 - Firestopping.
- B. Section 22 10 05 - Plumbing Piping: Placement of hangers and hanger inserts.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM C177 - Standard Test Method for Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Guarded-Hot-Plate Apparatus; 2019.
- B. ASTM C195 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Thermal Insulating Cement; 2007 (Reapproved 2019).
- C. ASTM C534/C534M - Standard Specification for Preformed Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Thermal Insulation in Sheet and Tubular Form; 2020a.
- D. ASTM C547 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Pipe Insulation; 2022.
- E. ASTM C795 - Standard Specification for Thermal Insulation for Use in Contact with Austenitic Stainless Steel; 2008 (Reapproved 2023).
- F. ASTM C1423 - Standard Guide for Selecting Jacketing Materials for Thermal Insulation; 2021.
- G. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2022.
- H. ASTM E96/E96M - Standard Test Methods for Gravimetric Determination of Water Vapor Transmission Rate of Materials; 2022.
- I. ASTM G21 - Standard Practice for Determining Resistance of Synthetic Polymeric Materials to Fungi; 2015, with Editorial Revision (2021).
- J. SAE AMS3779 - Tape, Adhesive, Pressure-Sensitive Thermal Radiation Resistant, Aluminum Coated Glass Cloth; 2016b.
- K. ICC A117.1 - Supply and Drain Protective Shield Covers.
- L. UL 723 - Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Provide product description, thermal characteristics, list of materials and thickness for each service, and locations.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Applicator Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the type of work specified in this section with minimum three years of experience.

**1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Accept materials on site, labeled with manufacturer's identification, product density, and thickness.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index/Smoke developed index of 25/50, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

### **2.02 GLASS FIBER INSULATION**

- A. Insulation: ASTM C547 and ASTM C795; rigid molded, noncombustible.
  - 1. K (Ksi) Value: ASTM C177, 0.24 at 75 degrees F (0.035 at 24 degrees C).
  - 2. Maximum Service Temperature: 850 degrees F (454 degrees C).
  - 3. Maximum Moisture Absorption: 0.2 percent by volume.
- B. Vapor Barrier Jacket: White Kraft paper with glass fiber yarn, bonded to aluminized film; moisture vapor transmission when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M of 0.02 perm (0.029 ng/(Pa s m)).
- C. Vapor Barrier Lap Adhesive: Compatible with insulation.
- D. Insulating Cement/Mastic: ASTM C195; hydraulic setting on mineral wool.

### **2.03 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC CELLULAR INSULATION**

- A. Insulation: Preformed flexible elastomeric cellular rubber insulation complying with ASTM C534/C534M Grade 1; use molded tubular material wherever possible.
  - 1. Minimum Service Temperature: Minus 40 degrees F (Minus 40 degrees C).
  - 2. Maximum Service Temperature: 220 degrees F (104 degrees C).
  - 3. Connection: Waterproof vapor barrier adhesive.

### **2.04 JACKETING AND ACCESSORIES**

- A. PVC Plastic Jacket:
  - 1. Jacket: One piece molded type fitting covers and sheet material, off-white color.
    - a. Minimum Service Temperature: 0 degrees F (Minus 18 degrees C).
    - b. Maximum Service Temperature: 150 degrees F (66 degrees C).
    - c. Moisture Vapor Permeability: 0.002 perm inch (0.0029 ng/(Pa s m)), maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M.
    - d. Thickness: 10 mil, 0.010 inch (0.25 mm).
    - e. Connections: Brush on welding adhesive.
- B. Aluminum Jacket:
  - 1. Thickness: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) sheet.
  - 2. Finish: Smooth.
  - 3. Joining: Longitudinal slip joints and 2 inch (50 mm) laps.
  - 4. Fittings: 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick die-shaped fitting covers with factory-attached protective liner.
  - 5. Metal Jacket Bands: 3/8 inch (10 mm) wide; 0.015 inch (0.38 mm) thick aluminum.
- C. Reinforced Tape:
  - 1. FSK tape suitable for sealing seams between insulation, insulated pipe bends, and fittings resulting in a tight, smooth surface without wrinkles.
  - 2. Comply with UL 723 or ASTM E84.
  - 3. Moisture Vapor Permeability: 0.00 perm inch (0.00 ng/(Pa s m)), when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M.
  - 4. Finish: Match insulation.

### **2.05 PROTECTIVE SHIELDING GUARDS**

- A. Protective Shielding Pipe Covers:
  - 1. Manufacturers:

- a. Engineered Brass Company.
  - b. Insul-Tect Products Co.; a subsidiary of MVG Molded Products.
  - c. McGuire Manufacturing.
  - d. Plumberex.
  - e. Truebro; a brand of IPS Corporation.
  - f. Zurn Industries, LLC; Tubular Brass Plumbing Products Operation.
2. Description: Manufactured plastic wraps for covering plumbing fixture hot and cold water supplies, trap, and drain piping. Comply with Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements.
  3. Construction: 1/8 inch PVC with antimicrobial, antifungal and UV resistant properties.
    - a. Comply with ASME A112.18.9 for covers on accessible lavatory piping.
    - b. Comply with ICC A117.1.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that piping has been tested before applying insulation materials.
- B. Verify that surfaces are clean and dry, with foreign material removed.

#### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install in accordance with North American Insulation Manufacturers Association (NAIMA) National Insulation Standards.
- C. Exposed Piping: Locate insulation and cover seams in least visible locations.
- D. Insulated pipes conveying fluids below ambient temperature: Insulate entire system including fittings, valves, unions, flanges, strainers, flexible connections, pump bodies, and expansion joints.
- E. Glass fiber insulated pipes conveying fluids below ambient temperature:
  1. Provide vapor barrier jackets, factory-applied or field-applied. Secure with self-sealing longitudinal laps and butt strips with pressure-sensitive adhesive. Secure with outward clinch expanding staples and vapor barrier mastic.
  2. Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with molded insulation of like material and thickness as adjacent pipe. Finish with glass cloth and vapor barrier adhesive or PVC fitting covers.
- F. For hot piping conveying fluids 140 degrees F (60 degrees C) or less, do not insulate flanges and unions at equipment, but bevel and seal ends of insulation.
- G. Glass fiber insulated pipes conveying fluids above ambient temperature:
  1. Provide standard jackets, with or without vapor barrier, factory-applied or field-applied. Secure with self-sealing longitudinal laps and butt strips with pressure-sensitive adhesive. Secure with outward clinch expanding staples.
  2. Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with insulation of like material and thickness as adjoining pipe. Finish with glass cloth and adhesive or PVC fitting covers.
- H. Inserts and Shields:
  1. Application: Piping 1-1/2 inches (40 mm) diameter or larger.
  2. Shields: Galvanized steel between pipe hangers or pipe hanger rolls and inserts.
  3. Insert Location: Between support shield and piping and under the finish jacket.
  4. Insert Configuration: Minimum 6 inches (150 mm) long, of same thickness and contour as adjoining insulation; may be factory fabricated.
  5. Insert Material: Hydrous calcium silicate insulation or other heavy density insulating material suitable for the planned temperature range.

- I. Continue insulation through walls, sleeves, pipe hangers, and other pipe penetrations. Finish at supports, protrusions, and interruptions. At fire separations, see Section 07 84 00.
- J. Pipe Exposed in Mechanical Equipment Rooms or Finished Spaces (less than 10 feet (3 meters) above finished floor): Finish with PVC jacket and fitting covers.
- K. Exterior Applications: Provide vapor barrier jacket. Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with insulation of like material and thickness as adjoining pipe, and finish with glass mesh reinforced vapor barrier cement. Cover with aluminum jacket with seams located on bottom side of horizontal piping.
- L. Buried Piping: Provide factory fabricated assembly with inner all-purpose service jacket with self-sealing lap, and asphalt impregnated open mesh glass fabric, with one mil, 0.001 inch (0.025 mm) thick aluminum foil sandwiched between three layers of bituminous compound; outer surface faced with a polyester film.
- M. Heat Traced Piping: Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with insulation of like material, thickness, and finish as adjoining pipe. Size large enough to enclose pipe and heat tracer. Cover with aluminum jacket with seams located on bottom side of horizontal piping.

### 3.03 SCHEDULES

- A. Plumbing Systems:
  - 1. Domestic Cold Water:
    - a. Pipe Size Range: All Sizes
      - 1) Type: Glass Fiber
      - 2) Thickness: 1 inch
  - 2. Domestic Hot and Recirculated Water:
    - a. Pipe Size Range: NPS 1-1/4 and smaller
      - 1) Type: Glass Fiber
      - 2) Thickness: 1 inch
    - b. Pipe Size Range: NPS 1-1/2 and larger
      - 1) Type: Glass Fiber
      - 2) Thickness: 1-1/2 inch
  - 3. Roof Drain and Overflow Drain Bodies:
    - a. Pipe Size Range: All Sizes
      - 1) Type: Glass Fiber
      - 2) Thickness: 1 inch
  - 4. Stormwater and Overflow:
    - a. Pipe Size Range: All Sizes
      - 1) Type: Glass Fiber
      - 2) Thickness: 1 inch
  - 5. Condensate Piping from HVAC Systems:
    - a. Pipe Size Range: All Sizes
      - 1) Type: Glass Fiber or Flexible Elastomeric
      - 2) Thickness: 1 inch

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 22 10 05  
PLUMBING PIPING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Sanitary waste piping, buried within 5 feet (1500 mm) of building.
- B. Sanitary waste piping, above grade.
- C. Storm drainage piping, buried within 5 feet (1500 mm) of building.
  - 1. Storm drainage piping, above grade.
  - 2. Natural gas piping, buried within 5 feet (1500 mm) of building.
  - 3. Piping for HVAC condensate.
  - 4. Natural gas piping, above grade.
  - 5. Pipe hangers and supports.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 22 05 53 - Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASME B16.3 - Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings: Classes 150 and 300; 2021.
- B. ASME B16.23 - Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Drainage Fittings: DWV; 2021.
- C. ASME B16.29 - Wrought Copper and Wrought Copper Alloy Solder-Joint Drainage Fittings—DWV; 2017.
- D. ASME B31.1 - Power Piping; 2020.
- E. ASME B31.9 - Building Services Piping; 2020.
- F. ASTM A53/A53M - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless; 2022.
- G. ASTM A74 - Standard Specification for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings; 2021.
- H. ASTM A123/A123M - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products; 2017.
- I. ASTM A234/A234M - Standard Specification for Piping Fittings of Wrought Carbon Steel and Alloy Steel for Moderate and High Temperature Service; 2019.
- J. ASTM B32 - Standard Specification for Solder Metal; 2020.
- K. ASTM B306 - Standard Specification for Copper Drainage Tube (DWV); 2020.
- L. ASTM B813 - Standard Specification for Liquid and Paste Fluxes for Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube; 2016.
- M. ASTM B828 - Standard Practice for Making Capillary Joints by Soldering of Copper and Copper Alloy Tube and Fittings; 2016.
- N. ASTM C564 - Standard Specification for Rubber Gaskets for Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings; 2020a.
- O. ASTM D2564 - Standard Specification for Solvent Cements for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Piping Systems; 2020.
- P. ASTM D2665 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Drain, Waste, and Vent Pipe and Fittings; 2020.
- Q. ASTM D2846/D2846M - Standard Specification for Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Hot- and Cold-Water Distribution Systems; 2019a.

- R. ASTM D2855 - Standard Practice for the Two-Step (Primer and Solvent Cement) Method of Joining Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) or Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Pipe and Piping Components with Tapered Sockets; 2020.
- S. ASTM D3034 - Standard Specification for Type PSM Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Sewer Pipe and Fittings; 2021.
- T. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2022.
- U. ASTM F437 - Standard Specification for Threaded Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80; 2021.
- V. ASTM F438 - Standard Specification for Socket-Type Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40; 2017.
- W. ASTM F439 - Standard Specification for Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80; 2019.
- X. ASTM F441/F441M - Standard Specification for Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40 and 80; 2020.
- Y. ASTM F442/F442M - Standard Specification for Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe (SDR-PR); 2020.
- Z. ASTM F493 - Standard Specification for Solvent Cements for Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Plastic Pipe and Fittings; 2020.
- AA. AWWA C105/A21.5 - Polyethylene Encasement for Ductile-Iron Pipe Systems; 2018.
- BB. CISPI 301 - Standard Specification for Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste, and Vent Piping Applications; 2021.
- CC. CISPI 310 - Specification for Coupling for Use in Connection with Hubless Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings for Sanitary and Storm Drain, Waste, and Vent Piping Applications; 2018.
- DD. MSS SP-58 - Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design, Manufacture, Selection, Application, and Installation; 2018, with Amendment (2019).
- EE. NSF 61 - Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; 2021.
- FF. NSF 372 - Drinking Water System Components - Lead Content; 2022.
- GG. UL 723 - Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Provide data on pipe materials, pipe fittings, valves, and accessories. Provide manufacturers catalog information. Indicate valve data and ratings.

#### **1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Perform work in accordance with applicable codes.

#### **1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Provide temporary end caps and closures on piping and fittings. Maintain in place until installation.
- B. Protect piping systems from entry of foreign materials by temporary covers, completing sections of the work, and isolating parts of completed system.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Potable Water Supply Systems: Provide piping, pipe fittings, and solder and flux (if used), that comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 for maximum lead content; label pipe and fittings.
- B. Plenum-Installed Acid Waste Piping: Flame-spread index equal or below 25 and smoke-spread index equal or below 50 according to ASTM E84 or UL 723 tests.

### **2.02 SANITARY WASTE PIPING, BURIED WITHIN 5 FEET (1500 MM) OF BUILDING**

- A. Cast Iron Pipe: ASTM A74 service weight.
  - 1. Fittings: Cast iron.
  - 2. Joints: Hub-and-spigot, CISPI HSN compression type with ASTM C564 neoprene gaskets or lead and oakum.
- B. Cast Iron Pipe: CISPI 301, hubless.
  - 1. Fittings: Cast iron.
  - 2. Joints: CISPI 310, neoprene gasket and stainless steel clamp and shield assemblies.
- C. PVC Pipe: ASTM D2665 or ASTM D3034.
  - 1. Fittings: PVC.
  - 2. Joints: Solvent welded, with ASTM D2564 solvent cement.

### **2.03 SANITARY WASTE PIPING, ABOVE GRADE**

- A. Cast Iron Pipe: ASTM A74, service weight.
  - 1. Fittings: Cast iron.
  - 2. Joint Seals: ASTM C564 neoprene gaskets, or lead and oakum.
- B. Cast Iron Pipe: CISPI 301, hubless, service weight.
  - 1. Fittings: Cast iron.
  - 2. Joints: CISPI 310, neoprene gaskets and stainless steel clamp-and-shield assemblies.
- C. Copper Tube: ASTM B306, DWV.
  - 1. Fittings: ASME B16.29, wrought copper, or ASME B16.23, solvent.
  - 2. Joints: ASTM B32, alloy Sn50 solder.
- D. CPVC Pipe: ASTM D2846/D2846M, ASTM F441/F441M, or ASTM F442/F442M.
  - 1. Fittings: CPVC; ASTM D2846/D2846M, ASTM F437, ASTM F438, or ASTM F439.
  - 2. Joints: ASTM D2846/D2846M, solvent weld with ASTM F493 solvent cement.
- E. PVC Pipe: ASTM D2665.
  - 1. Fittings: PVC.
  - 2. Joints: Solvent welded, with ASTM D2564 solvent cement.
  - 3. PVC piping installed in return air plenums shall be wrapped to meet ASTM E84 25/50 rating or shall be manufactured to meet applicable ratings to be installed in plenums.

### **2.04 STORM DRAINAGE PIPING, ABOVE GRADE**

- A. Cast Iron Pipe: CISPI 301, hubless, service weight.
  - 1. Fittings: Cast iron.
  - 2. Joints: Neoprene gaskets and stainless steel clamp-and-shield assemblies.

### **2.05 NATURAL GAS PIPING, BURIED WITHIN 5 FEET (1500 MM) OF BUILDING**

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M Schedule 40 black.
  - 1. Fittings: ASTM A234/A234M, wrought steel welding type.
  - 2. Joints: ASME B31.1, welded.
  - 3. Jacket: AWWA C105/A21.5 polyethylene jacket or double layer, half-lapped 10 mil (0.25 mm) polyethylene tape.

## **2.06 NATURAL GAS PIPING, ABOVE GRADE**

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M Schedule 40 black.
  - 1. Fittings: ASME B16.3, malleable iron, or ASTM A234/A234M, wrought steel welding type.
  - 2. Joints: Threaded or welded to ASME B31.1.

## **2.07 PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

- A. Provide hangers and supports that comply with MSS SP-58.
  - 1. If type of hanger or support for a particular situation is not indicated, select appropriate type using MSS SP-58 recommendations.
  - 2. Overhead Supports: Individual steel rod hangers attached to structure or to trapeze hangers.
  - 3. Trapeze Hangers: Welded steel channel frames attached to structure.
  - 4. Vertical Pipe Support: Steel riser clamp.
  - 5. Rooftop Supports for Low-Slope Roofs: Steel pedestals with bases that rest on top of roofing membrane, not requiring any attachment to the roof structure and not penetrating the roofing assembly, with support fixtures as specified; and as follows:
    - a. Bases: High-density polypropylene.
    - b. Base Sizes: As required to distribute load sufficiently to prevent indentation of roofing assembly.
    - c. Steel Components: Stainless steel or carbon steel hot-dip galvanized after fabrication in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M.
    - d. Attachment and Support Fixtures: As recommended by manufacturer, same type as indicated for equivalent indoor hangers and supports; corrosion-resistant material.
    - e. Height: Provide minimum clearance of 6 inches (150 mm) under pipe to top of roofing.
- B. Plumbing Piping - Drain, Waste, and Vent:
  - 1. Hangers for Pipe Sizes 1/2 Inch (15 mm) to 1-1/2 Inches (40 mm): Carbon steel, adjustable swivel, split ring.
  - 2. Hangers for Pipe Sizes 2 inch (50 mm, DN) and Over: Carbon steel, adjustable, clevis.
  - 3. Wall Support for Pipe Sizes to 3 inch (80 mm, DN): Cast iron hook.
  - 4. Wall Support for Pipe Sizes 4 inch (100 mm, DN) and Over: Welded steel bracket and wrought steel clamp.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 PREPARATION**

- A. Ream pipe and tube ends. Remove burrs. Bevel plain end ferrous pipe.
- B. Remove scale and dirt, on inside and outside, before assembly.
- C. Prepare piping connections to equipment with flanges or unions.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Provide clearance in hangers and from structure and other equipment for installation of insulation and access to valves and fittings.
- C. Provide access where valves and fittings are not exposed.
- D. Install valves with stems upright or horizontal, not inverted. See Section 22 05 23.
- E. Copper Pipe and Tube: Make soldered joints in accordance with ASTM B828, using specified solder, and flux meeting ASTM B813; in potable water systems use flux also complying with NSF 61 and NSF 372.
- F. PVC Pipe: Make solvent-welded joints in accordance with ASTM D2855.

- G. Pipe Hangers and Supports:
1. Install in accordance with ASME B31.9.
  2. Support horizontal piping as indicated.
  3. Install hangers to provide minimum 1/2 inch (15 mm) space between finished covering and adjacent work.
  4. Place hangers within 12 inches (300 mm) of each horizontal elbow.
  5. Use hangers with 1-1/2 inch (40 mm) minimum vertical adjustment. Design hangers for pipe movement without disengagement of supported pipe.
  6. Support vertical piping at every floor. Support riser piping independently of connected horizontal piping.
  7. Where several pipes can be installed in parallel and at same elevation, provide multiple or trapeze hangers.
  8. Provide copper plated hangers and supports for copper piping.
- H. When installing more than one piping system material, ensure system components are compatible and joined to ensure the integrity of the system. Provide necessary joining fittings. Ensure flanges, union, and couplings for servicing are consistently provided.

### 3.03 SERVICE CONNECTIONS

- A. Provide new sanitary sewer services. Before commencing work, check invert elevations required for sewer connections, confirm inverts and ensure that these can be properly connected with slope for drainage and cover to avoid freezing.
- B. Provide new water service complete with approved reduced pressure backflow preventer and water meter with by-pass valves, pressure reducing valve, and sand strainer.
1. Provide sleeve in wall for service main and support at wall with reinforced concrete bridge. Calk enlarged sleeve and make watertight with pliable material. Anchor service main inside to concrete wall.
  2. Provide 18 gauge, 0.0478-inch (1.21 mm) galvanized sheet metal sleeve around service main to 6 inch (150 mm) above floor and 6 feet (1800 mm) minimum below grade. Size for minimum of 2 inches (50 mm) of loose batt insulation stuffing.

### 3.04 SCHEDULES

- A. Pipe Hanger Spacing:
1. Metal Piping:
    - a. Pipe Size: 1/2 inch (15 mm, DN) to 1-1/4 inch (32 mm, DN):
      - 1) Maximum Hanger Spacing: 6.5 ft (2 m).
      - 2) Hanger Rod Diameter: 3/8 inches (9 mm).
    - b. Pipe Size: 1-1/2 inch (40 mm, DN) to 2 inch (50 mm, DN):
      - 1) Maximum Hanger Spacing: 10 ft (3 m).
      - 2) Hanger Rod Diameter: 3/8 inch (9 mm).
    - c. Pipe Size: 2-1/2 inch (65 mm, DN) to 3 inch (80 mm, DN):
      - 1) Maximum Hanger Spacing: 10 ft (3 m).
      - 2) Hanger Rod Diameter: 1/2 inch (13 mm).
    - d. Pipe Size: 4 inch (100 mm, DN) to 6 inch (150 mm, DN):
      - 1) Maximum Hanger Spacing: 10 ft (3 m).
      - 2) Hanger Rod Diameter: 5/8 inch (15 mm).
    - e. Pipe Size: 8 inch (200 mm, DN) to 12 inch (300 mm, DN):
      - 1) Maximum hanger spacing: 14 ft (4.25 m).
      - 2) Hanger Rod Diameter: 7/8 inch (22 mm).
  - B. Piping Applications:
    1. Piping for HVAC condensate, all sizes, shall be:

- a. DWV copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings and soldered joints for interior applications.
- b. Solid wall CPVC pipe, CPVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints for exterior applications.
2. Under slab, soil, waste and vent piping, all sizes, shall be one of the following:
  - a. Cast iron, hub-and-spigot, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
  - b. Cast iron, hubless, CISPI hubless couplings, and coupled joints.
  - c. Solid wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
3. Above ground, soil and waste piping, all sizes, shall be one of the following:
  - a. Cast iron, hub-and-spigot, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
  - b. Cast iron, hubless, solvent stack fittings, CISPI hubless couplings, and coupled joints.
  - c. Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
  - d. Solid wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
4. Above ground, vent piping, all sizes, shall be one of the following:
  - a. Cast iron, hub-and-spigot, gaskets, and gasketed joints.
  - b. Cast iron, hubless, CISPI hubless couplings, and coupled joints.
  - c. Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
  - d. Solid wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 22 10 06  
PLUMBING PIPING SPECIALTIES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Drains.
- B. Cleanouts.
- C. Hose bibbs.
- D. Hydrants.
- E. Backflow preventers.
- F. Water hammer arrestors.
- G. Mixing valves.
- H. Balancing Valves.
- I. Stainers.
- J. Flexible Connectors.
- K. Trap Seal Primer Device.

**1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASME A112.6.3 - Floor Drains; 2022.
- B. ASSE 1011 - Performance Requirements for Hose Connection Vacuum Breakers; 2023.
- C. ASSE 1013 - Performance Requirements for Reduced Pressure Principle Backflow Prevention Assemblies; 2021.
- D. NSF 61 - Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; 2021.
- E. NSF 372 - Drinking Water System Components - Lead Content; 2022.
- F. PDI-WH 201 - Water Hammer Arresters; 2017.

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Provide component sizes, rough-in requirements, service sizes, and finishes.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Specialties in Potable Water Supply Systems: Provide products that comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 for maximum lead content.

**2.02 DRAINS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Jay R. Smith Manufacturing Company.
  - 2. Josam Company.
  - 3. MIFAB, Inc.
  - 4. Tyler Pipe; Wade Division.
  - 5. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  - 6. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- B. Floor Drain:
  - 1. ASME A112.6.3; lacquered cast iron or stainless steel, two piece body with double drainage flange, weep holes, reversible clamping collar, and round, adjustable nickel-bronze strainer.
- C. Floor Sink:

1. Square lacquered cast iron body with integral seepage pan, epoxy coated interior, aluminum dome strainer, nickel bronze frame, full or half grate (refer to schedule on drawings).

### **2.03 CLEANOUTS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Jay R. Smith Manufacturing Company.
  2. Josam Company.
  3. MIFAB, Inc.
  4. Tyler Pipe; Wade Division.
  5. Watts Drainage Products Inc.
  6. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- B. Cleanouts at Interior Finished Floor Areas:
  1. Lacquered cast iron body with anchor flange, reversible clamping collar, threaded top assembly, and round gasketed scored cover in service areas and round gasketed depressed cover to accept floor finish in finished floor areas.
- C. Cleanouts at Interior Finished Wall Areas:
  1. Line type with lacquered cast iron body and round epoxy coated gasketed cover, and round stainless steel access cover secured with machine screw.
- D. Cleanouts at Interior Unfinished Accessible Areas: Calked or threaded type. Provide bolted stack cleanouts on vertical rainwater leaders.

### **2.04 HOSE BIBBS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Jay R. Smith Manufacturing Company.
  2. Watts Regulator Company.
  3. Zurn Industries, LLC.
  4. Approved equivalent manufacturer.
- B. Interior Hose Bibbs:
  1. Bronze or brass with integral mounting flange, replaceable hexagonal disc, hose thread spout, chrome-plated where exposed with handwheel, integral vacuum breaker in compliance with ASSE 1011.

### **2.05 HYDRANTS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Josam Company.
  2. Jay R. Smith Manufacturing Company.
  3. MIFAB, Inc.
  4. Tyler Pipe; Wade Division.
  5. Watts Drainage Products.
  6. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- B. Wall Hydrants:
  1. ASSE 1019; freeze resistant, self-draining type with chrome plated wall plate hose thread spout, lockshield and removable key, and integral vacuum breaker.
- C. Post Hydrants, nonfreeze draining type:
  1. ASME A112.21.3M; freeze resistant, self draining exposed-outlet post hydrant with bronze casing and casing guard, garden hose threaded outlet complying with ASME B1.20.7, loose key operation, casing and rod of length required for burial of valve below frost line, and integral vacuum breaker.



## 2.06 BACKFLOW PREVENTERS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Watts Regulator Company, a part of Watts Water Technologies.
  - 3. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- B. Reduced Pressure Backflow Preventer Assembly:
  - 1. ASSE 1013; cast bronze body and stainless steel springs; two independently operating, spring loaded check valves; diaphragm type differential pressure relief valve located between check valves; third check valve that opens under back pressure in case of diaphragm failure, and non-threaded vent outlet.
  - 2. Size: \_\_\_\_\_ inch (\_\_\_\_\_ mm) assembly with threaded gate valves.

## 2.07 WATER HAMMER ARRESTORS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. AMTROL, Inc.
  - 2. Jay R. Smith Manufacturing Company.
  - 3. Josam Company.
  - 4. MIFAB, Inc.
  - 5. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
  - 6. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - 7. Tyler Pipe; Wade Division.
  - 8. Watts Regulator Company, a part of Watts Water Technologies.
  - 9. Zurn Industries, LLC.
- B. Water Hammer Arrestors:
  - 1. Stainless steel construction, bellows type sized in accordance with PDI-WH 201, precharged suitable for operation in temperature range minus 100 to 300 degrees F (minus 73 to 149 degrees C) and maximum 250 psi (1700 kPa) working pressure.

## 2.08 MIXING VALVES

- A. Thermostatic Mixing Valves:
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.
    - b. Honeywell International Inc.
    - c. Leonard Valve Company.
    - d. Powers; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.
    - e. Taco Inc.
    - f. Watts; a division of Watts Water Technologies, Inc.; Watts Regulator Co.
    - g. Zurn Industries, LLC; Plumbing Products Group; Wilkins Water Control Products.
  - 2. Valve: Chrome-plated cast brass body, stainless steel or copper alloy bellows, integral temperature adjustment.
  - 3. Accessories:
    - a. Volume control shut-off valve on outlet.
    - b. Strainer stop checks on inlets.
    - c. Adjustable, temperature-control handle.

## 2.09 BALANCING VALVES

- A. Copper-Alloy Calibrated Balancing Valves:
  - 1. Type: Y-pattern globe valve with two readout ports and memory-setting indicator. Ball type valve for balancing applications is prohibited.
  - 2. Body: Brass or bronze.
  - 3. Size: Same as connected piping, but not larger than NPS 2.

4. Accessories: Meter hoses, fittings, valves, differential pressure meter, and carrying case.
- B. Memory-Stop Balancing Valves:
  1. Standard: MSS SP-110 for two-piece, copper-alloy ball valves.
  2. Pressure Rating: 400-psig minimum CWP.
  3. Size: NPS 2 or smaller.
  4. Body: Copper alloy.
  5. Port: Standard or full port.
  6. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
  7. Seats and Seals: Replaceable.
  8. End Connections: Solder joint or threaded.
  9. Handle: Vinyl-covered steel with memory-setting device.

## **2.10 STRAINERS FOR DOMESTIC WATER PIPING**

- A. Y-Pattern Strainers:
  1. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Body: Bronze for NPS 2 and smaller; cast iron with interior lining that complies with AWWA C550 or that is FDA approved, epoxy coated and for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  3. End Connections: Threaded for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
  4. Screen: Stainless steel with round perforations unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Perforation Size:
    - a. Strainers NPS 2 and Smaller: 0.033 inch.
    - b. Strainers NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: 0.062 inch.
  6. Drain: Factory installed, hose-end drain valve.

## **2.11 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Flex-Hose Company, Inc.
  2. Flexicraft Industries.
  3. Flex Pession, Ltd.
  4. Flex-Weld Inc.
  5. Hyspan Precision Products, Inc.
  6. Mercer Gasket & Shim, Inc.
  7. Metraflex, Inc.
  8. Proco Products, Inc.
  9. TOZEN Corporation.
  10. Unaflex Universal Metal Hose; a Hyspan Company.
- B. Bronze-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.
  1. Working Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
  2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.
  3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged copper alloy.
- C. Stainless-Steel-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-stainless-steel tubing with stainless-steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.
  1. Working Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
  2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded steel-pipe nipple.
  3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

- B. Install backflow preventers in each water supply to mechanical equipment and systems and to other equipment and water systems that may be a source of contamination. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 1. Locate backflow preventers in same room as connected equipment or systems.
  - 2. Install drain for backflow preventers with atmospheric-vent drain connection with air-gap fitting, fixed air-gap fitting, or equivalent positive pipe separation of at least two pipe diameters in drain piping and pipe-to-floor drain. Locate air-gap device attached to or under backflow preventer. Simple air breaks are unacceptable for this application.
  - 3. Do not install bypass piping around backflow preventers.
- C. Extend cleanouts to finished floor or wall surface. Lubricate threaded cleanout plugs with mixture of graphite and linseed oil. Ensure clearance at cleanout for rodding of drainage system.
- D. Install Y-pattern strainers for water on supply side of each control valve, water pressure reducing valve, solenoid valve, and pump.
- E. Install draining-type post hydrants with 1 cu.yd. of crushed gravel around drain hole. Set post hydrants in concrete paving or in 1 cu.ft. of concrete block at grade.
- F. Install floor cleanouts at elevation to accommodate finished floor.
- G. Install approved potable water protection devices on plumbing lines where contamination of domestic water may occur; on boiler feed water lines, janitor rooms, fire sprinkler systems, premise isolation, irrigation systems, flush valves, interior and exterior hose bibbs.
- H. Pipe relief from backflow preventer to nearest drain.
- I. Install water hammer arrestors in water piping according to PDI-WH 201.
- J. Install air chambers on hot and cold water supply piping to each fixture or group of fixtures (each washroom). Fabricate same size as supply pipe or 3/4 inch (20 mm) minimum, and minimum 18 inches (450 mm) long.
- K. Install supply-type, trap-seal primer valves with outlet piping pitched down toward drain trap a minimum of 1 percent, and connect to floor-drain body, trap, or inlet fitting. Adjust valve for proper flow.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 22 11 16  
DOMESTIC WATER PIPING**

**PART GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes domestic water piping from 5' outside of building to fixtures and equipment inside the building.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 23 Section "Meters and Gages" for thermometers, pressure gages, and fittings.
  - 2. Division 22 Section "Plumbing Specialties" for water distribution piping specialties.

**1.03 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Provide components and installation capable of producing domestic water piping systems with the following minimum working-pressure ratings, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Domestic Water Service Piping: 160 psig.
  - 2. Domestic Water Distribution Piping: 125 psig.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For Pipe, Tube, Fittings, and Couplings.
- B. Water Samples: Specified in "Cleaning" Article in Part 3.
- C. Field Test Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.
- B. Comply with NSF 61, "Drinking Water System Components-Health Effects; Sections 1 through 9," for potable domestic water piping and components.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 PIPING MATERIALS**

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Piping Applications" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting, and joining materials.
- B. Transition Couplings for Aboveground Pressure Piping: Coupling or other manufactured fitting the same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
- C. Transition Couplings for Underground Pressure Piping: AWWA C219, metal, sleeve- Type coupling or other manufactured fitting the same size as, with pressure rating at least equal to and ends compatible with, piping to be joined.

**2.02 UNDERGROUND PIPING**

- A. All underground piping to be copper or C-900 Brute.
- B. Copper Tubing: All copper to meet ASTM B88 standards.
  - 1. 2 inch diameter and smaller: Type "L" soft drawn commercially pure copper.
  - 2. 2-1/2 inch diameter or larger: Type "L" hard drawn commercially pure copper.

**2.03 UNDER SLAB PIPING**

- A. Copper Tubing: All copper to meet ASTM B88 standards.

1. 2 inch diameter and smaller: Type "K" soft drawn commercially pure copper.
2. 2-1/2 inch diameter or larger: Type "K" hard drawn commercially pure copper.
3. Joints/fittings are not allowed in piping runs beneath concrete slabs. All joints to be in accessible areas above the slab (behind access doors in walls, in mechanical closets, etc.).
4. Copper tubing to be sleeved with code approved sleeving.

#### **2.04 INTERIOR PIPING**

- A. All copper tubing to be Type "L" hard drawn commercially pure copper and to meet ASTM B88 standards.

#### **2.05 POLYETHYLENE ENCASEMENT (PE)**

- A. PE Encasement for Underground Metal Piping to be PE film 0.008 inch (0.20 mm) minimum thickness, tube or sheet and to meet ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 EXCAVATION**

- A. Refer to Division 2 Section "Earthwork" for excavating, trenching, and backfilling.

#### **3.02 PIPING APPLICATIONS**

- A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating may be used in applications below, unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Flanges may be used on aboveground piping, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Grooved joints may be used on aboveground grooved-end piping.
  3. Fitting Option: Mechanically formed tee-branch outlets and brazed joints may be used on aboveground copper tubing.

#### **3.03 PIPE FITTINGS**

- A. Copper Piping Unions:
  1. 150 lb. standard
  2. 300 lb. water-oil-gas service copper with ground joints.
  3. Di-electric unions are required at connections of dissimilar metals.
- B. Only soldered fittings are allowed. Compression fittings and mechanical fastening systems are not allowed in any application for Dallas ISD projects.

#### **3.04 PIPE JOINTS**

- A. All pipe joints to conform to ASTM B813 and ASTM B828
- B. Use a cast brass adapter when connecting copper pipe to screwed brass pipe.
- C. Copper piping joints to use solder fittings.
  1. Solid string, hard solder.
  2. Wire, hard solder.
  3. Cored solder is not allowed.
  4. Solder:
    - a. 1-1/2 inch and smaller: 95-1/2% tin, 4% copper and 1/2% silver.
    - b. 2 inch and larger: "SILFOS15", 15% silver, 80% copper, 5% phosphorous.
  5. Flux to be non-corrosive, lead-free paste.

#### **3.05 PIPE INSTALLATION**

- A. Install sleeve with water stop and mechanical sleeve seal at each service pipe penetration through the foundation wall. Select number of interlocking rubber links required to make installation watertight.
- B. Install aboveground domestic water piping level and plumb.

- C. Set outlet pressure at 80 psig maximum for water pressure regulators, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Ductile iron water service piping is not allowed.

### 3.06 VALVES

- A. Locate accessible isolation valves in the following locations:
  - 1. Restroom Gang: above lay-in ceilings adjacent to gang restrooms. When hard ceilings are present provide 18" x 18" (minimum) ceiling access panel to access valves.
  - 2. Individual (private) Restrooms: above lay-in ceilings adjacent to gang restrooms. When hard ceilings are present provide 18" x 18" (minimum) ceiling access panel to access valves.
  - 3. Individual Fixtures: above lay-in ceilings adjacent to gang restrooms. When hard ceilings are present provide 18" x 18" (minimum) ceiling access panel to access valves.
  - 4. In corridors to allow isolation of building wings, sections, areas.
  - 5. On main water entry upstream of strainer and backflow preventer (if backflow preventer is inside building).
  - 6. At each exterior wall hydrant and each roof hydrant.
  - 7. At all appliances and plumbing fixtures.
- B. Install shut-off valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve, inside building at each domestic water service.
- C. Isolation valves to be 1/4 turn full port ball valves.
- D. Provide sectional valves close to water main on each branch and riser serving plumbing fixtures or equipment. Use ball valves for piping NPS 3 and smaller.
- E. Provide shutoff ball valves on each water supply to equipment and plumbing fixtures without supply stops.
- F. Provide drain valves for equipment, at base of each water riser, at low points in horizontal piping, and where required to drain water piping.
  - 1. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water mains, risers, and branches.
  - 2. Install stop-and-waste drain valves where indicated.
- G. Install calibrated balancing valves in each hot-water circulation return branch and discharge side of each pump and circulator.
- H. Provide di-electric unions at all connections of dissimilar metals.
- I. Contractor to provide drawings showing all installed isolation valve locations in closeout documents.
- J. All water valve installations shall be labeled, diagrammed and provide with a means of access. Provide access panels where necessary

### 3.07 VALVE REQUIREMENTS BY TYPE

- A. Check Valves: 125 lb. bronze checkvalve with "Buna N" disc.
- B. Ball Valves:
  - 1. 150 psi, bronze 1/4 turn ball valve with full port, stainless steel ball
  - 2. 300 psi, bronze 1/4 turn ball valve with full port, stainless steel ball. ASTM 61
  - 3. 125 psi lead free dezincification resistant arsenical brass 1/4 turn ball valve with full port, stainless steel ball C46500 or CW 511L, ASTM 763, or C46750
- C. Temperature and pressure relief valves: ASME rated valve
- D. Water Main Valves: 150 lb. AWWA valve
- E. Pressure Reducing Valves: 300 lb. bronze sealed spring cage, strainer.

- F. Cast Iron: ASTM A126, Class B
- G. Cast Carbon Steel: ASTM A216, Grade WCB
- H. Forged Carbon Steel: ASTM A105, Grade II
- I. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.
- J. Gate valves are not allowed on any domestic potable water piping.

### **3.08 WATER HAMMER ARRESTORS**

- A. Provide on hot and cold water supply lines. Locate between last two flush/solenoid valves on supply lines or per manufacturer's recommendations.
- B. Water hammer arrestors are to be located within 3 feet of single toilet fixtures or per manufacturer's recommendations.
- C. Contractor to provide as-built drawings showing all final water hammer arrestor locations with sizes in closeout documents.

### **3.09 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION**

- A. Refer to Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports" for pipe hanger and support devices. Install the following:
  - 1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
  - 2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs: According to the following:
    - a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    - b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    - c. Longer Than 100 Feet, if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.
  - 3. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls.
  - 4. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
  - 5. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.
- B. Install supports according to Division 23 Section "Hangers and Supports."
- C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.
- D. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
  - 1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
  - 4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
  - 6. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
  - 7. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.
- E. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.
- F. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

### **3.10 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to equipment and machines to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water service piping with shutoff valve. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.
- D. Connect domestic water piping to service piping with shutoff valve, and extend and connect to the following:

1. Booster Systems: Cold-water suction and discharge piping.
2. Water Heaters: Cold-water supply and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
3. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code. Refer to Division 22 Section "Plumbing Fixtures."
4. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

### 3.11 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Inspect domestic water piping as follows:
  1. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
  2. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
    - a. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
    - b. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
  3. Re-inspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for re-inspection.
  4. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Test domestic water piping as follows:
  1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
  2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
  3. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
  4. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
  5. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

### 3.12 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide adequate flow.
  1. Manually adjust ball-Type balancing valves in hot-water-circulation return piping to provide flow of hot water in each branch.
  2. Adjust calibrated balancing valves to flows indicated.

### 3.13 CLEANING

- A. Clean and disinfect potable and non-potable domestic water piping as follows:
  1. Purge new piping and parts of existing domestic water piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before placing system into service.
  2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction or, if methods are not prescribed, procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652
- B. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities.
- C. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.



SBLM Architects  
Project No: 023569.00

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 22 40 00  
PLUMBING FIXTURES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Flush valve water closets.
- B. Wall hung urinals.
- C. Lavatories.
- D. Bottle filling drinking fountains.
- E. Electric water coolers.
- F. Bi-level, electric water coolers.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASME A112.18.1 - Plumbing Supply Fittings; 2018, with Errata.
- B. ASME A112.19.2 - Ceramic Plumbing Fixtures; 2018, with Errata.
- C. ASME A112.19.5 - Flush Valves and Spuds for Water Closets, Urinals, and Tanks; 2022.
- D. NSF 61 - Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects; 2021.
- E. NSF 372 - Drinking Water System Components - Lead Content; 2022.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide catalog illustrations of fixtures, sizes, rough-in dimensions, utility sizes, trim, and finishes.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the type of products specified in this section, with minimum three years of documented experience.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Potable Water Systems: Provide plumbing fittings and faucets that comply with NSF 61 and NSF 372 for maximum lead content; label pipe and fittings.

**2.02 FLUSH VALVE WATER CLOSETS**

- A. Water Closets:
  - 1. Vitreous china, ASME A112.19.2, wall hung, siphon jet flush action, china bolt caps.
  - 2. Flush Valve: Exposed (top spud).
  - 3. Flush Operation: Manual, oscillating handle.
- B. Flush Valves:
  - 1. Manual Operated:
    - a. Type: ASME A112.18.1 or ASME A112.19.5; diaphragm type complete with vacuum breaker stops, and accessories.
    - b. Supplied Volume Capacity: 1.28 gallons per flush.
- C. Water Closet Carriers:
  - 1. Heavy-duty(or dual)wall carrier.

**2.03 WALL HUNG URINALS**

- A. Vitreous china, ASME A112.19.2, wall hung with side shields and concealed carrier.

1. Flush Valve: Exposed (top spud).
  2. Flush Operation: Manual, oscillating handle.
  3. Trapway Outlet: Integral.
- B. Flush Valves:
1. Manual Operated:
    - a. Type: ASME A112.18.1 or ASME A112.19.5; diaphragm type, complete with vacuum breaker stops, and accessories.
    - b. Supplied Volume Capacity: 0.5 gallons per flush, maximum.

#### **2.04 LAVATORIES**

- A. Wall-Hung Basin:
1. Porcelain: ASME A112.19.2; white rectangular commercial-grade sink with predrilled holes, rear-center drain, front overflow, and hanger. Size as indicated on drawings with 4 inch (100 mm) centerset spacing.
- B. Metered Faucet (in student restrooms):
1. ASME A112.18.1; chrome plated mechanically metered mixing faucet and tamper resistant with 4 inch center set faucet.
  2. 0.2 gallons/cycle.
  3. Adjustable duration set for 20-30 seconds.
  4. All exposed chrome plated fittings polished.
  5. Water Supply: 3/8 flexible inch chrome plated copper attached to 1/2 inch IPS x 3/8 inch flare chrome plated loose-key stop.

#### **2.05 BOTTLE FILLING DRINKING FOUNTAINS**

#### **2.06 ELECTRIC WATER COOLERS**

- A. Water Cooler: Electric, mechanically refrigerated; surface mounted, ADA compliant; stainless steel top, stainless steel body, elevated anti-squirt vandal resistant bubbler with stream guard, automatic stream regulator, push button, mounting bracket; integral air cooled condenser and stainless steel grille.
- B. Bottle Filler: Materials to match fountain.

#### **2.07 BI-LEVEL, ELECTRIC WATER COOLERS**

- A. Water Cooler: Bi-level, electric, mechanically refrigerated; surface mounted, ADA compliant; stainless steel top, stainless steel body, elevated anti-squirt vandal resistant bubbler with stream guard, automatic stream regulator, push button, mounting bracket; integral air cooled condenser and stainless steel grille.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that walls and floor finishes are prepared and ready for installation of fixtures.

#### **3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Rough-in fixture piping connections in accordance with minimum sizes indicated in fixture rough-in schedule for particular fixtures.

#### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install components level and plumb.

#### **3.04 INTERFACE WITH WORK OF OTHER SECTIONS**

- A. Review millwork shop drawings. Confirm location and size of fixtures and openings before rough-in and installation.

**3.05 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust stops or valves for intended water flow rate to fixtures without splashing, noise, or overflow.

**3.06 CLEANING**

- A. Clean plumbing fixtures and equipment.

**3.07 PROTECTION**

- A. Protect installed products from damage due to subsequent construction operations.
- B. Do not permit use of fixtures by construction personnel.
- C. Repair or replace damaged products before Date of Substantial Completion.

**3.08 SCHEDULES**

- A. Fixture Heights: Refer to architectural for installation heights.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 00 01**  
**GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC SYSTEMS**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

**1.01 DESCRIPTION**

- A. The General Requirements for Mechanical Work are intended to be complementary to the General Requirements of the Construction Contract.
- B. Work Included: Provide complete mechanical systems where shown on the drawings, as specified herein, and as needed for a complete and proper installation.
  - 1. Provide new DDC controls and integrate with the existing building DDC system.
  - 2. Test & Balance: will be provided by the Owner. Contractor responsibilities to support the Test & Balance effort are contained in Section 23 05 93.
  - 3. Other items and services required to complete the systems.

**1.02 QUALITY ASSURANCE AND APPLICABLE STANDARDS**

- A. Use adequate numbers of skilled workers that are thoroughly trained and experienced in the necessary crafts and are completely familiar with the specified requirements and the methods needed for proper performance of the work of this Section.
- B. Without additional cost to the Architect/Engineer/Owner, provide such other labor and materials as are required to complete the work of this Section in accordance with the requirements of governmental agencies having jurisdiction, regardless of whether such materials and associated labor are called for elsewhere in these Contract Documents.
- C. Codes: Perform all work in accordance with the latest edition of the following codes:
  - 1. State and city building, fire, plumbing, and mechanical codes.
  - 2. National Electrical Code (NEC)
  - 3. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)
  - 4. American with Disabilities Act (ADA)
  - 5. Texas Accessibility Standards (TAS)
  - 6. Texas Department of Criminal Justice (TDCJ) Standards
  - 7. Minimum Jail Standards of the Texas Commission on Jail Standards
  - 8. All authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Where conflicts occur between drawings, specifications, and code requirements, the most stringent requirement shall take precedence.
- E. Standards: The specifications and standards of the following organizations are by reference made a part of these specifications. All work, unless otherwise indicated, shall comply with the requirements and recommendations wherever applicable:
  - 1. American National Standards Institute (ANSI)
  - 2. Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Institute (ARI)
  - 3. American Gas Association (AGA)
  - 4. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM)
  - 5. American Society of Plumbing Engineers (ASPE)
  - 6. American Society of Mechanical Engineers (ASME)
  - 7. American Society of Refrigeration, Heating and Air Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE)
  - 8. Electrical Testing Laboratories (ETL)
  - 9. National Bureau of Standards (NBS)
  - 10. National Electrical Manufacturer's Association (NEMA)
  - 11. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)
  - 12. Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning National Association (SMACNA)
  - 13. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL)

- F. Electrical Characteristics for Equipment: Equipment of differing electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such equipment is proposed on the "Alternate Manufacturer Evaluation Form", subsequently approved, and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.
- G. When requested, provide the Owner's Authorized Representative with manufacturer's certificate that materials meet or exceed minimum requirements as specified.

### **1.03 REQUIREMENTS OF REGULATORY AGENCIES**

- A. The requirements and recommendations of the latest edition of the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) Act are by reference made a part of these specifications. All work shall comply with the requirements and recommendations wherever applicable.

### **1.04 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE**

- A. All Other Sections of Divisions 21, 22, and 26 (as applicable).
- B. All other divisions of the contract documents. Refer to each division's specifications and drawings for all requirements

### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Comply with pertinent provisions of Division 01.
- B. Provide Specifications per Division 01 for all submitted alternate equipment.
- C. Product Data: Submit the following:
  - 1. Materials list of items proposed to be provided under Division 23.
  - 2. Manufacturer's specifications and other data needed to prove compliance with the specified requirements. The term "Compliance" is understood to mean that the Contractor certifies that the submitted equipment will meet or exceed the contract document requirements. Items that do not clearly meet this definition should be identified and explained as required in the following paragraph.
  - 3. Identify the difference between the specified item or function and the proposed. Explain with enough detail so that the Architect/Engineer/Owner can easily determine that the item complies with the functional intent. List any disadvantages or advantages of the proposed item versus the specified item. Submit technical data sheets and pictures and diagrams to support and clarify. Organize in a clear and concise format. All substitutions shall be approved in writing by Architect/Engineer. The Architect/Engineer's decision shall be final.
  - 4. Allow a minimum of ten (10) working days for the review of submittals and each re-submittal.
  - 5. Compliance with the Contract documents shall be the sole responsibility of the Contractor. Items on equipment that are were not accepted by the Architect/Engineer in writing as an approved equal shall be replaced or revised to comply with the contract documents at the Contractor's expense.
  - 6. Manufacturer's recommended installation procedures which, when reviewed by the Architect/Engineer, shall become the basis for accepting or rejecting actual installation procedures used on the work.
  - 7. Sign the submittal as an indication of compliance with the contract documents. Any deviations from the contract documents shall be indicated on the submittal prior to signing. Any deviations not indicated shall be cause for rejection and removal of the non-complying equipment at the Contractor's expense.
- D. See individual specification Sections for submittal requirements of materials and equipment.
- E. Resubmittals of rejected submittals shall be limited to one (1) in number. Costs for processing subsequent resubmittals in excess of the first resubmittal, resulting from the Contractor's disregard of Architect/Engineer's primary submittal rejection comments, shall be borne by the

Contractor. Costs shall be based on Architect/Engineer's hourly rates as published in their current professional fee schedules and shall also include reimbursable costs for delivery, mailing, and photocopies at direct cost plus fifteen percent (15%).

- F. Shop Drawings: Upon written request of the Contractor, the Architect/Engineer will provide directly to the Contractor electronic backgrounds of drawings required to produce shop drawings. The requirements to secure electronic files for shop drawing purposes are the same as for record drawing purposes. See 230010, Paragraph 1.15.H.2.

#### **1.06 ORDINANCES, PERMITS, METERS, UTILITIES, AND ROYALTIES**

#### **1.07 COMPATIBILITY OF EQUIPMENT**

#### **1.08 EXISTING UTILITIES AND TEMPORARY SERVICES FOR CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Verify the location and capacity of existing utility services pertaining to work of Division 23. Relocate existing utilities unearthed by excavation as directed by the utility service companies affected.
- B. Temporary Services for Construction
  - 1. Provide temporary services in strict accordance with the provisions of these specifications.

#### **1.09 EXCAVATION AND BACKFILLING**

- A. Perform all excavation and backfilling necessary for the installation of the work. This shall include shoring and pumping in ditches to keep them in dry condition until the work has been installed. Properly perform all shoring required to protect the excavation and to safeguard employees.
- B. Perform excavation and backfilling in strict accordance with the provisions of these specifications including trench safety requirements.
- C. Make all excavations to the proper depth, with allowances made for floor slabs, forms, beams, etc. Properly compact ground under piping before installing piping.
  - 1. Provide backfilling with selected soil, free from rocks and debris and pneumatically tamp with 6-inch layers to secure a field density ration of 95 percent as defined by ASTM Designation D698-57T (Proctor Soil Compaction Test).
- D. Remove from the site excavated materials not suitable and not used in the backfill.
- E. Field check and verify the locations of all underground utilities. Avoid disturbing these as far as possible. In the event existing utilities are damaged, repair them at no cost to the Architect/Engineer/Owner.
- F. In a lime-stabilized area, fully restore the lime stabilization after the excavation is complete.
- G. Replace concrete, curbs, paving, and other surface improvements cut during excavation to their original condition.

#### **1.10 JOBSITE CONDITIONS**

- A. Examine the areas and conditions under which work of this Section will be performed. Include required work to correct conditions detrimental to the timely and proper completion of all Division 23 Work. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.

#### **1.11 PREPARATION AND COORDINATION**

- A. Perform coordination work in strict accordance with provisions of these specifications and the following:
  - 1. Coordinate as necessary with other trades to assure proper and adequate interface with all work.
  - 2. Where ducts, pipes and other mechanical items are shown in conflict with locations of structural members and other equipment, include labor and materials required for extensions, offsets and supports to clear the encroachment.

3. Although such work is not specifically indicated, provide all supplementary or miscellaneous items, appurtenances, and devices incidental to or necessary for a sound, secure, and complete installation.
  4. Coordinate accepted equipment changes from those scheduled or specified with other trades affected. Additional compensation to other trades for equipment changes is the responsibility of the Contractor making the change.
- B. Mechanical Drawings are diagrammatic. Follow the drawings as closely as actual construction and work of other trades will permit. Duct and piping arrangement have been designed for maximum economy consistent with good practice and other considerations. Install the systems arranged as shown on the drawings, except as otherwise approved in advance by the Architect/Engineer.
- C. Data indicated on the Drawings and in these Specifications are as exact as could be secured, but their absolute accuracy is not warranted. The exact locations, distances, levels, and other conditions will be governed by actual construction and the Drawings and Specifications should be used only for guidance in such regard.
- D. Where items such as diffusers, thermostats, switches, and control panels are not specifically located on the Drawings, provide an RFI to the Architect/Engineer, and locate as determined in the field by the Architect/Engineer. Where such items are installed without such specific direction, relocate as directed by the Architect/Engineer, and at no additional cost to the Architect/Engineer/Owner.
- E. Verify all dimensions and distances. No additional compensation will be allowed because of differences between work shown on the Drawings and actual dimensions and distances at the jobsite.

#### **1.12 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. The drawings show the arrangements of work. Should project conditions necessitate rearrangement, or if the materials or equipment can be installed to a better advantage in a different manner, before proceeding with the work, prepare and submit five copies of Drawings of the proposed arrangement for the Architect/Engineer's review. Allow a minimum of ten (10) working days for review.
- B. Should the Contractor propose to install equipment requiring space conditions other than those shown, or rearrange the equipment, he shall assume responsibility for the rearrangement of the space and shall have the Architect/Engineer review the change before proceeding with the work. The request for such changes shall be accompanied by contractor-generated detailed shop drawings of the space in question. Identify monetary credits proposed or other benefits of the change. Allow a minimum of ten (10) working days for review.
- C. Properly locate and size all slots, holes, and openings in the building structure pertaining to the work and for the correct location of pipe sleeves, duct sleeves, fire dampers, etc., as applicable to the work.

#### **1.13 CUTTING AND PATCHING**

- A. Perform cutting and patching associated with the work in strict accordance with the provisions of Division 01 of these Specifications and the following:
1. Coordinate work to minimize cutting and patching work.
  2. Request for Architect/Engineer's Consent
    - a. Prior to cutting or coring of the building structure, submit a written request to the Architect/Engineer for permission to proceed with cutting. Include x-rays of any floor area where cutting or coring is proposed.
    - b. Contractor is cautioned that concrete floor may contain steel tendons, pipes, and electrical/telecom conduits, all of which can not be cut or damaged.



3. Perform Architect/Engineer-approved cutting and demolition by methods that will prevent damage to other portions of the work and provide proper surfaces to receive installation of new work and repair.
4. Perform fitting and adjusting of products to provide finished installation complying with the specified tolerances and finishes.
5. Provide all core drilling of holes. Where sleeves and blockouts are required, they shall be cut or provided at locations required. On completion of this work or as work progresses, make all repairs and do all patching required as a result of work under this Contract. All patching shall be performed in a manner that will restore the surrounding work to its original condition to the satisfaction of the Architect/Engineer.
6. Assume responsibility for the proper size of all sleeves and blockouts in the building structure pertaining to the work and for providing the correct location of pipe sleeves and blockouts.
7. Where openings are cut through masonry walls, provide lintels or structural supports to protect the remaining masonry. Provide adequate support during the cutting operation to prevent any damage to the affected masonry.

#### **1.14 PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS**

- A. Provide the record documents associated with the work of Division 23 in strict accordance with the provisions of these specifications.
- B. Throughout progress of the Division 23 Work, maintain an accurate record of changes in the Contract Documents that apply to work of Division 23. Changes shall include all addendums issued during bidding. Maintain an accurate record of the location of mechanical service lines and outlets and all outside utilities.
- C. Delegate the responsibility for maintenance of Record Documents to one person on the Contractor's staff as approved by the Architect/Engineer. Submit in writing at the pre-construction conference the name and credentials of the person responsible for record mark-ups and maintenance.
- D. Accuracy of Records
  1. Thoroughly coordinate changes within the Record Documents, making adequate and proper entries on each page of Specifications and each sheet of drawings and other documents where such entry is required to show the change properly. Match the symbology and format of the base documents.
  2. Accuracy of records shall be such that a future verification of items shown in the Contract Documents may rely reasonably on information obtained from the approved Project Record Documents.
- E. Maintain the job set of Record Documents completely protected from deterioration and from loss and damage until completion of the work and transfer of all recorded data to the final Project Record Documents.
- F. Making Entries on Drawings
  1. Using an erasable colored pencil (not ink or indelible pencil), clearly describe the change by graphic line and note as required.
  2. Date all entries.
  3. Call attention to the entry by a "cloud" drawn around the area or areas affected.
  4. In the event of overlapping changes, use different colors for the overlapping changes.
  5. Make entries within 24 hours after receipt of information that the change has occurred.
  6. Maintain the base drawing format and use the same symbology.
  7. Convert field mark-ups to finished CADD record drawings when required in this section.
- G. Conversion of Schematic Layouts

1. In some cases on the drawings, arrangements of ductwork and piping and similar items are shown schematically and are not intended to portray precise physical layout. Determine final physical arrangement subject to the Architect/Engineer's approval. However, design of future modifications of the facility may require accurate information as to the final physical layout of items that are shown only schematically on the drawings.
  2. Show on the job set of record drawings, by dimension accurate to within one inch, the centerline of each run of items such as all sleeves and piping, etc., below grade, in walls, or in the concrete slab. A surface mounted device indicates the exact location:
    - a. Clearly identify the item by accurate note such as "Chilled Water" and the like.
    - b. Show, by symbol or note, the vertical location of the item "under slab," "in ceiling plenum," "exposed," and the like.
    - c. Make all identification sufficiently descriptive that it may be related reliably to the specifications.
- H. Final Project Record Documents
1. The purpose of the final Project Record Documents is to provide factual
    - a. information regarding all aspects of the Work, both concealed and visible, to enable future modification of the Work to proceed without lengthy and expensive site measurement, investigation, and examination.
  2. Provide completed record drawings on CD and one Mylar film reproducible of each drawing.
  3. Refer to Section 017839 for additional requirements.

**1.15 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA**

- A. Well before substantial completion, submit two copies of a preliminary draft of the proposed manual(s) to the Architect/Engineer for review and comments. Allow a minimum of ten (10) working days for review.
- B. Submit specified number copies of the approved manual to the Architect/Engineer prior to indoctrination of operation and maintenance personnel.
- C. Prepare in accordance with the following standards:

Format:	8½" x 11"
Size:	White bond, at least 20 lb. weight
Paper:	Neatly written or printed
Text:	11" in height preferable; bind in with text; foldouts acceptable; larger drawings are acceptable but fold to fit within the Manual and provide a drawing pocket inside rear cover or bind in with text.
Drawings:	

Flysheets:	Separate each section of the Manual with neatly prepared flysheets briefly describing contents of the ensuing section; flysheets may be in color.
Binding:	Use heavy-duty plastic or fiberboard covers with binding mechanism concealed inside the manual; 3-ring binders will be acceptable; all binding is subject to the Architect/ Engineer's approval.
Measurements:	Provide all measurements in U.S. standard units such as feet-and-inches, lbs, and cfm. Where items may be expected to be measured within ten years in accordance with metric formulae, provide additional measurements in the "International System of Units" (SI).

- D. Provide front and back covers for each manual, using durable material approved by the Architect/Engineer, and clearly identified on or through the cover with at least the following information:
1. Name and Address of Work
  2. Name of Contractor
  3. General subject of this manual
  4. Space for approval signature of the Architect/Engineer and approval date

#### **1.16 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS**

- A. Contents: Include at least the following:
1. Neatly typewritten index near the front of the manual, giving immediate information as to location within the manual of all emergency information regarding the installation.
  2. Complete instructions regarding operation and maintenance of all equipment provided including lubrication, disassembly, and reassembly.
  3. Complete nomenclature of all parts of all equipment.
  4. Complete nomenclature and part number of all replaceable parts, name and address of nearest vendor, and all other data pertinent to procurement procedures.
  5. Copy of all guarantees and warranties issued.
  6. Manufacturer's bulletins, drawings, and descriptive data, clearly indicating the precise items included in this installation and deleting, or otherwise clearly indicating, all manufacturers' data with which this installation is not concerned.
  7. Such other data as required in other sections of these specifications.

#### **1.17 EQUIPMENT FOUNDATIONS**

- A. Provide equipment foundations associated with the work in accordance with the provisions of these specifications
- B. Provide concrete bases for all pad or floor mounted equipment. Bases shall be four inches (4") high above finished floors or grades (unless otherwise noted) and shall protrude two inches (2") beyond all sides of equipment and shall have exposed chamfer edges. Construct bases from ready-mixed hardrock concrete, ASTM C94, reinforced with #3 rebar, ASTM A615, Grade 40,

at 18" on center each way.

- C. Field verify exact location of outdoor pad mounted equipment with the Architect/Engineer. Supply necessary fill and grade site to provide natural drainage away from equipment.

#### **1.18 PAINTING**

- A. All equipment shall be delivered to the job with suitable factory finish. Should the finish be damaged in transit or during the installation, it shall be finished to match appearance of original finish. All work shall be subject to approval by Architect/Engineer.

#### **1.19 TESTING AND INSPECTION**

- A. Provide personnel and equipment, make required tests, and secure required approvals from the Architect/Engineer and governmental agencies having jurisdiction.
- B. Make written notice to the Architect/Engineer, adequately in advance, of each of the following stages of construction:
  - 1. When all rough-in is complete, but not covered;
  - 2. As specified in all Division 23 sections.
  - 3. At the completion of the work of Division 23.
- C. When material or workmanship is found to not comply with the specified requirements, remove the noncomplying items from the job site and replace them with items complying with the specified requirements at no additional cost to the Architect/Engineer/Owner. This shall be performed within 3 days after receipt of written notice of noncompliance.

#### **1.20 WARRANTY**

- A. Warranty all equipment and workmanship for a period of one year after date of substantial completion and replace or repair any faulty equipment or installation at no cost to the Architect/Engineer/Owner for such service during this period, all in accordance with requirements of Division 01.
- B. Provide full material warranty on all compressors for a period of five years after date of substantial completion.
- C. This warranty shall not void specific warranties issued by manufacturers for greater periods of time. Nor shall it void any rights guaranteed to the Owner by law.
- D. Warranties shall be in writing in a form satisfactory to the Owner, and shall be delivered to the Owner before final payment is made.

#### **1.21 PROJECT COMPLETION**

- A. Upon completion of the work of Division 23, thoroughly clean all exposed portions of the mechanical installation, removing all traces of soil, labels, grease, oil, and other foreign material, and using only the type cleaner recommended by the manufacturer of the item being cleaned.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 00 10  
BASIC MECHANICAL REQUIREMENTS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following:
  - 1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
  - 2. Transition fittings.
  - 3. Dielectric fittings.
  - 4. Mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 5. Sleeves.
  - 6. Escutcheons.
  - 7. Grout.
  - 8. Mechanical demolition.
  - 9. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
  - 10. Painting and finishing.
  - 11. Concrete bases.
  - 12. Supports and anchorages.

**1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct shafts, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and in duct shafts.
- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- F. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:
  - 1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
  - 2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For the following:
  - 1. Transition fittings.
  - 2. Dielectric fittings.
  - 3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
  - 4. Escutcheons.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Characteristics for Mechanical Equipment: Equipment of differing electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such equipment is proposed on the "Alternate Manufacturer Evaluation Form", subsequently approved, and connecting electrical services,

circuit breakers, and conduit sizes appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

#### **1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.

#### **1.07 COORDINATION**

- A. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for mechanical installations.
- B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- C. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for mechanical items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS**

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

#### **2.02 JOINING MATERIALS**

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
  - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
    - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
    - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
    - c. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BcuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

#### **2.03 TRANSITION FITTINGS**

- A. AWWA Transition Couplings: Same size as, and with pressure rating at least equal to and with ends compatible with, piping to be joined.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
    - b. Dresser Industries, Inc.; DMD Div.
    - c. Ford Meter Box Company, Incorporated (The); Pipe Products Div.

- d. JCM Industries.
- e. Smith-Blair, Inc. f. Viking Johnson.
- 2. Underground Piping NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Manufactured fitting or coupling.
- 3. Underground Piping NPS 2 and Larger: AWWA C219, metal sleeve- type coupling.
- 4. Aboveground Pressure Piping: Pipe fitting.
- B. Flexible Transition Couplings for Underground Nonpressure Drainage Piping: ASTM C 1173 with elastomeric sleeve, ends same size as piping to be joined, and corrosion-resistant metal band on each end.
  - 1. Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
  - 2. Fernco, Inc.
  - 3. Mission Rubber Company.
  - 4. Plastic Oddities, Inc.

#### **2.04 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS**

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
    - b. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
    - c. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Wilkins Div.
- D. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co. b.
    - b. Epco Sales, Inc.
    - c. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
- E. Dielectric-Flange Kits: Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Central Plastics Company.
    - c. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
  - 2. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.
- F. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Calpico, Inc.
    - b. Lochinvar Corp.
- G. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Perfection Corp.
    - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc..

## 2.05 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
    - b. Metraflex Co.
    - c. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
- B. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
- C. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel. Include two for each sealing element.
- D. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

## 2.06 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral water stop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
  - 1. Under deck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.

## 2.07 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
  - 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- C. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With concealed or exposed-rivet hinge, set screw or spring clips, and chrome-plated finish.
- D. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

## 2.08 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
  - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining,
  - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
  - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 MECHANICAL DEMOLITION

- A. Refer to Divisions 2 and 23 for general demolition requirements and procedures.
- B. Disconnect, demolish, and remove mechanical systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
  - 1. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
  - 2. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.



3. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
  4. Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap or plug ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
  5. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
  6. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
  7. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
  8. Controls to be removed and reconnected: When controls are removed form a piece of equipment and are to be reused, the removal and reconnection shall be by the controls contractor. If the original wire is not of sufficient length to make the reconnect, a new control wire shall be used. Splicing of control wires to make the connection is not allowed.
- C. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

### **3.02 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 23 sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for piping with fittings with penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
- M. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
  1. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.
- N. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
  1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve

seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

- O. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials.
- P. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- Q. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.
- R. Provide air eliminators on the Chilled and Heating water systems.
- S. Locate manual air vents on high points in piping exterior to the building
- T. Locate automatic air vent at high points in the piping and at main air handling units connections

### **3.03 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
  - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
  - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

### **3.04 PIPING CONNECTIONS**

- A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:
  - 1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
  - 3. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
  - 4. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

### **3.05 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.

- B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Install mechanical equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.
- D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

### **3.06 PAINTING**

- A. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

### **3.07 CONCRETE BASES**

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
  - 1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
  - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.
  - 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
  - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
  - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
  - 6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 7. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 3.

### **3.08 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES**

- A. Refer to Division 5 for structural steel.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor mechanical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

### **3.09 GROUTING**

- A. Mix and install grout for mechanical equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

### **3.10 FILTERS**

- A. Install new AC filters at the following construction milestones:
  - 1. Equipment startup
  - 2. One week prior to substantial completion

SBLM Architects  
Project No: 023569.00

3. One week prior to the six month warranty walk
- END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 05 13  
COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
  - 1. Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes basic requirements for factory-installed motors.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 23 for mounting motors and vibration isolation control devices.
  - 2. Division 23 for application of motors and reference to specific motor requirements for motor-driven equipment.

**1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Factory-Installed Motor: A motor installed by motorized-equipment manufacturer as a component of equipment.

**1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

**1.05 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices. Provide motors that are:
  - 1. Compatible with the following:
    - a. Magnetic controllers.
    - b. Multispeed controllers.
    - c. Reduced-voltage controllers.
  - 2. Designed and labeled for use with variable frequency controllers, and suitable for use throughout speed range without overheating.
  - 3. Matched to torque and horsepower requirements of the load.
  - 4. Matched to ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MOTOR REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Motor requirements apply to factory-installed motors except as follows:
  - 1. Different ratings, performance, or characteristics for a motor are specified in another Section.
  - 2. Manufacturer for a factory-installed motor requires ratings, performance, or characteristics, other than those specified in this Section, to meet performance specified.
  - 3. All motors are to be high efficiency type and suitable for use with a Variable Frequency Drive.

**2.02 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS**

- A. All motors above 1/16 HP and below 1 HP must be Electrically Commutated Motors (ECM). Direct drive motors shall be used whenever possible.
- B. Motors 3/4 HP and Larger: Three phase.
- C. Motors smaller than 1/2 HP: Single phase.

- D. Frequency Rating: 60 Hz.
- E. Voltage Rating: NEMA standard voltage selected to operate on nominal circuit voltage to which motor is connected.
- F. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 105 deg F and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.
- G. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.
- H. Enclosure: Open dripproof.

### **2.03 POLYPHASE MOTORS**

- A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.
- B. Efficiency: Premium efficiency according to NEMA MG 1-1998 Table 12-12.
- C. Stator: Copper windings, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Multispeed motors shall have separate winding for each speed.
- D. Rotor: Squirrel cage, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Bearings: Double-shielded, pre-lubricated ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.
- F. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Insulation: Class F, unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Code Letter Designation:
  - 1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or G.
  - 2. Motors Smaller Than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.
- I. Enclosure: Cast iron for motors 7.5hp and larger; rolled steel for motors smaller than 7.5 hp.

### **2.04 POLYPHASE MOTORS WITH ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Motors Used with Reduced-Inrush Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.
- B. Motors Used with Variable Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.
  - 1. Designed with critical vibration frequencies outside operating range of controller output.
  - 2. Temperature Rise: Matched to rating for Class B insulation.
  - 3. Insulation: Class H.
  - 4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors. NEMA Standard MG 1-1993, Revision 1, Part 31, Section IV, "Definite Purpose Inverter Fed Motors", Paragraph 31.40.4.2 Voltage Spikes.
- C. Source Quality Control: Perform the following tests on each motor according to NEMA MG 1:
  - 1. Measure winding resistance.
  - 2. Read no-load current and speed at rated voltage and frequency.
  - 3. Measure locked rotor current at rated frequency.
  - 4. Perform high-potential test.

### **2.05 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS**

- A. Type: One of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
  - 1. Permanent-split capacitor.
  - 2. Split-phase start, capacitor run.

3. Capacitor start, capacitor run.
- B. Shaded-Pole Motors: For motors 1/20 hp and smaller only.
- C. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.
- D. Bearings: Ball type for belt-connected motors and other motors with high radial forces on motor shaft; sealed, pre-lubricated-sleeve type for other single-phase motors.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Prepare for acceptance tests as follows:
  1. Run each motor with its controller. Demonstrate correct rotation, alignment, and speed at motor design load.
  2. Test interlocks and control features for proper operation.
  3. Verify that current in each phase is within nameplate rating.

#### **3.02 ADJUSTING**

- A. Align motors, bases, shafts, pulleys and belts. Tension belts according to manufacturer's written instructions.

#### **3.03 CLEANING**

- A. After completing equipment installation, inspect unit components. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 05 19  
METERS AND GAGES FOR HVAC PIPING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary
  - 1. Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following meters and gages for mechanical systems:
  - 1. Thermometers.
  - 2. Gages.
  - 3. Test plugs.

**1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. CR: Chlorosulfonated polyethylene synthetic rubber.
- B. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated; include performance curves.
- B. Shop Drawings: Schedule for thermometers and gages indicating manufacturer's number, scale, range, and location for each.
- C. Product Certificates: For each type of thermometer and gage, signed by product manufacturer.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 METAL-CASE, LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Trerice
  - 2. Weiss
  - 3. Weksler Instruments
- B. Case: Die-cast aluminum or brass, 7 inches long.
- C. Tube: Red or blue reading, mercury or organic-liquid filled, with magnifying lens.
- D. Tube Background: Satin-faced, non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings.
- E. Window: Glass or plastic.
- F. Connector: Adjustable type, 180 degrees in vertical plane, 360 degrees in horizontal plane, with locking device.
- G. Stem: Copper-plated steel, aluminum, or brass for thermowell installation and of length to suit installation.
- H. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of range or plus or minus 1 scale Division to maximum of 1.5 percent of range.

**2.02 THERMOWELLS**

- A. Manufacturers: Same as manufacturer of thermometer being used.
- B. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type metal fitting made for insertion into piping and of type, diameter, and length required to hold thermometer.

**2.03 PRESSURE GAGES**

- A. Manufacturers:



1. AMETEK
  2. Ashcroft
  3. Ernst Gage Co.
  4. KOBOLD Instruments, Inc.
  5. Marsh Bellofram.
  6. Palmer - Wahl Instruments Inc.
  7. Terice
  8. Weiss Instruments
  9. Weksler
- B. Direct-Mounting, Dial-Type Pressure Gages: Indicating-dial type complying with ASME B40.100.
1. Case: Liquid-filled type, drawn steel or cast aluminum, 4-1/2-inch diameter.
  2. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube, unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Pressure Connection: Brass, NPS 1/4, bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
  4. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
  5. Dial: Satin-faced, non-reflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings.
  6. Pointer: Red or other dark-color metal.
  7. Window: Glass or plastic.
  8. Ring: Metal.
  9. Accuracy: Grade B, plus or minus 2 percent of middle half scale.
  10. Vacuum-Pressure Range: 30-in. Hg of vacuum to 15 psig of pressure.
  11. Range for Fluids under Pressure: Two times operating pressure.
- C. Pressure-Gage Fittings:
1. Valves: NPS 1/4 brass or stainless-steel needle type.
  2. Syphons: NPS 1/4 coil of brass tubing with threaded ends.
  3. Snubbers: ASME B40.5, NPS 1/4 brass bushing with corrosion-resistant, porous-metal disc of material suitable for system fluid and working pressure.

## 2.04 TEST PLUGS

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Flow Design, Inc.
  2. MG Piping Products Co.
  3. National Meter, Inc.
  4. Peterson Equipment Co., Inc.
  5. Sisco Manufacturing Co.
  6. Terice, H. O. Co.
  7. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
- B. Description: Corrosion-resistant brass or stainless-steel body with core inserts and gasketed and threaded cap, with extended stem for units to be installed in insulated piping.
- C. Minimum Pressure and Temperature Rating: 500 psig at 200° F. D. Core Inserts: One or two self-sealing rubber valves.
1. Insert material for air, water, oil, or gas service at 20 to 200°F shall be CR.
  2. Insert material for air or water service at minus 30 to plus 275° F shall be EPDM.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 THERMOMETER APPLICATIONS

- A. Install liquid-in-glass thermometers in the following locations:
1. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic zone.
  2. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic boiler and chiller.

3. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic coil in air-handling units and built-up central systems.
  4. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic heat exchanger.
  5. Inlet and outlet of each hydronic heat-recovery unit.
  6. Inlet and outlet of each thermal storage tank.
- B. Provide the following temperature ranges for thermometers:
1. Domestic Hot Water: 30 to 180°F, with 2-degree scale divisions.
  2. Domestic Cold Water: 0 to 100° F, with 2-degree scale divisions.
  3. Heating Hot Water: 30 to 240° F, with 2-degree scale divisions.
  4. Condenser Water: 0 to 160° F, with 2-degree scale divisions.
  5. Chilled Water: 0 to 100° F, with 2-degree scale divisions.

### **3.02 GAGE APPLICATION**

- A. Install pressure gages for inlet and discharge of each pressure-reducing valve.
- B. Install pressure gages at chilled- and condenser-water inlets and outlets of chillers.
- C. Install pressure gages at suction and discharge of each pump.

### **3.03 TEST PLUG APPLICATION**

- A. Provide Pressure and Temperature Test Plugs (PETE) at inlet and outlet all cooling and heating coils, pumps, and any other HVAC equipment.

### **3.04 INSTALLATIONS**

- A. Install direct-mounting thermometers and adjust vertical and tilted positions.
- B. Install thermowells with socket extending one-third of diameter of pipe and in vertical position in piping tees where thermometers are indicated.
- C. Install direct-mounting pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at most readable position.
- D. Install needle-valve and snubber fitting in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.
- E. Install test plugs in tees in piping.

### **3.05 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance for meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

### **3.06 ADJUSTING**

- A. Calibrate meters according to manufacturer's written instructions, after installation.
- B. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 05 23  
GENERAL DUTY VALVES FOR HVAC PIPING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following general-duty valves:
1. Copper-alloy ball valves.
  2. Ferrous-alloy butterfly valves.
  3. Bronze check valves.
  4. Gray-iron swing check valves.
  5. Ferrous-alloy wafer check valves.
  6. Spring-loaded, lift-disc check valves.
  7. Bronze gate valves.
  8. Cast-iron gate valves.
  9. Bronze globe valves.
  10. Chainwheel actuators.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
1. Division 23 Section "Mechanical Identification" for valve tags and charts.
  2. Division 23 piping sections for specialty valves applicable to those sections only.

**1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. The following are standard abbreviations for valves:
1. CWP: Cold working pressure.
  2. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
  3. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.
  4. PTFE: Polytetrafluoroethylene plastic.
  5. SWP: Steam working pressure.
  6. TFE: Tetrafluoroethylene plastic.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of valve indicated. Include body, seating, and trim materials; valve design; pressure and temperature classifications; end connections; arrangement; dimensions; and required clearances. Include list indicating valve and its application. Include rated capacities; shipping, installed, and operating weights; furnished specialties; and accessories.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. ASME Compliance: ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
1. Exceptions: Domestic hot- and cold-water piping valves unless referenced.
  2. ASME Compliance for Ferrous Valves: ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for dimension and design criteria.
  3. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 for valve materials for potable-water service.

**1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
  2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
  3. Set angle, gate, and globe valves closed to prevent rattling.
  4. Set ball and plug valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.

5. Set butterfly valves closed or slightly open.
  6. Block check valves in either closed or open position.
- B. Use the following precautions during storage:
1. Maintain valve end protection.
  2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.
- C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 VALVES, GENERAL**

- A. Refer to Part 3 "Valve Applications" Article for applications of valves.
- B. All ball valves for the full port with stainless steel ball unless otherwise required.
- C. Bronze Valves: NPS 2 and smaller with threaded ends, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Ferrous Valves: NPS 2-1/2 and larger with flanged or grooved ends, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Valve Pressure and Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.
- F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream pipe, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Valve Actuators:
1. Chainwheel: For attachment to valves, of size and mounting height, as indicated in the "Valve Installation" Article in Part 3.
  2. Gear Drive: For quarter-turn valves NPS 8 and larger.
  3. Handwheel: For valves other than quarter-turn types.
  4. Lever Handle: For quarter-turn valves NPS 6 and smaller.
- H. Extended Valve Stems: On insulated valves.
- I. Valve Flanges: ASME B16.1 for cast-iron valves, ASME B16.5 for steel valves, and ASME B16.24 for bronze valves.
- J. Valve Grooved Ends: AWWA C606.
- K. Threaded: With threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
- L. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

### **2.02 COPPER-ALLOY BALL VALVES**

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Two-Piece and Three Piece, Copper-Alloy Ball Valves:
    - a. Conbraco Industries, Inc.; Apollo Div.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
    - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
    - e. Grinnell Corporation.
    - f. Hammond Valve.
    - g. Jamesbury, Inc.
    - h. Jomar International, LTD.
    - i. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - j. Nexus Valve Specialties.
    - k. NIBCO INC.
    - l. R & M Energy Systems (Borger, TX).

- m. Red-White Valve Corp.
- n. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
- B. Copper-Alloy Ball Valves, General: MSS SP-110.
- C. Two-Piece, Copper-Alloy Ball Valves: Brass or bronze body with full port, chrome-plated bronze ball; [PTFE or TFE] seats; and 600-psig minimum CWP rating and blowout-proof stem.
- D. Three-Piece, Copper-Alloy Ball Valves: Brass or bronze body with full port, chrome-plated bronze ball; [PTFE or TFE] seats; and 600-psig minimum CWP rating and blowout-proof stem.

### 2.03 FERROUS-ALLOY BUTTERFLY VALVES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Single-Flange, Ferrous-Alloy Butterfly Valves:
    - a. American Valve, Inc.
    - b. Bray International, Inc.
    - c. Cooper Cameron Corp.; Cooper Cameron Valves Div.
    - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Center Line.
    - e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
    - f. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
    - g. Dover Corp.; Dover Resources Company; Norriseal Div.
    - h. General Signal; DeZurik Unit.
    - i. Grinnell Corporation.
    - j. Hammond Valve.
    - k. Kitz Corporation of America.
    - l. Legend Valve & Fitting, Inc.
    - m. Metraflex Co.
    - n. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - o. Mueller Steam Specialty.
    - p. NIBCO INC.
    - q. Process Development & Control.
    - r. Red-White Valve Corp.
    - s. Techno Corp.
    - t. Tyco International, Ltd.; Tyco Valves & Controls.
    - u. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
  - 2. Flanged, Ferrous-Alloy Butterfly Valves:
    - a. Bray International, Inc.
    - b. Cooper Cameron Corp.; Cooper Cameron Valves Div.
    - c. Grinnell Corporation.
    - d. Mueller Steam Specialty.
    - e. Tyco International, Ltd.; Tyco Valves & Controls.
  - 3. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Butterfly Valves:
    - a. Central Sprinkler Co.; Central Grooved Piping Products.
    - b. rinnell Corporation.
    - c. Hammond Valve.
    - d. McWane, Inc.; Kennedy Valve Div.
    - e. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - f. Mueller Steam Specialty.
    - g. NIBCO INC.
- B. Ferrous-Alloy Butterfly Valves, General: MSS SP-67, Type I, for tight shutoff, with disc and lining suitable for potable water, unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Single-Flange, 150-psig CWP Rating, Ferrous-Alloy Butterfly Valves: Wafer- lug type with one- or two- piece stem.
- D. Flanged, 150-psig CWP Rating, Ferrous-Alloy Butterfly Valves: Flanged-end type with one- or two- piece stem.
- E. Grooved-End, 175-psig CWP Rating, Ferrous-Alloy Butterfly Valves: Ductile- iron or steel body with grooved or shouldered ends.

#### **2.04 BRONZE CHECK VALVES**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Horizontal Lift Check Valves with Metal Disc:
    - a. Cincinnati Valve Co.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
    - d. Red-White Valve Corp.
    - e. Walworth Co.
  - 2. Vertical Lift Check Valves with Metal Disc:
    - a. Cincinnati Valve Co.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
    - d. Red-White Valve Corp.
  - 3. Swing Check Valves with Metal Disc:
    - a. American Valve, Inc.
    - b. Cincinnati Valve Co.
    - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
    - e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
    - f. Grinnell Corporation.
    - g. Hammond Valve.
    - h. Kitz Corporation of America.
    - i. Legend Valve & Fitting, Inc.
    - j. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - k. NIBCO INC.
    - l. Powell, Wm. Co.
    - m. Red-White Valve Corp.
    - n. Walworth Co.
    - o. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
- B. Bronze Check Valves, General: MSS SP-80.
- C. Class 125, Bronze, Horizontal Lift Check Valves: Bronze body with bronze disc and seat.
- D. Class 125, Bronze, Vertical Lift Check Valves: Bronze body with bronze disc and seat.
- E. Class 125, Bronze, Swing Check Valves: Bronze body with bronze disc and seat.

#### **2.05 GRAY-IRON SWING CHECK VALVES**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Type I, Gray-Iron Swing Check Valves with Metal Seats:
    - a. Cincinnati Valve Co.
    - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
    - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
    - e. Flomatic Valves.

- f. Grinnell Corporation.
- g. Hammond Valve.
- h. Milwaukee Valve Company.
- i. Mueller Co.
- j. NIBCO INC.
- k. Powell, Wm. Co.
- l. Red-White Valve Corp. m. Walworth Co.
- m. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
- 2. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Swing Check Valves:
  - a. Grinnell Corporation.
  - b. Mueller Co.
- B. Gray-Iron Swing Check Valves, General: MSS SP-71.
- C. Class 125, gray-iron, swing check valves with metal seats.
- D. 175-psig CWP Rating, Grooved-End, Swing Check Valves: Ductile-iron body with grooved or shouldered ends.

## **2.06 FERROUS-ALLOY WAFER CHECK VALVES**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Dual-Plate, Ferrous-Alloy, Wafer-Lug Check Valves:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - b. Gulf Valve Co.
    - c. Valve and Primer Corp.
  - 2. Dual-Plate, Ferrous-Alloy, Double-Flanged-Type Check Valves:
    - a. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
    - b. Gulf Valve Co.
    - c. Techno Corp.
- B. Ferrous-Alloy Wafer Check Valves, General: API 594, spring loaded.
- C. Dual-Plate, Class 125 or 150, Ferrous-Alloy, Wafer-Lug Check Valves: Single-flange body.
- D. Dual-Plate, Class 125 or 150, Ferrous-Alloy, Double-Flanged Check Valves: Flanged-end body.

## **2.07 SPRING-LOADED, LIFT-DISC CHECK VALVES**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Wafer, Lift-Disc Check Valves:
    - a. Durabla Fluid Technology, Inc.
    - b. Flomatic Valves.
    - c. GA Industries, Inc.
    - d. Grinnell Corporation.
    - e. Hammond Valve.
    - f. Metraflex Co.
    - g. Milwaukee Valve Company.
    - h. Mueller Steam Specialty.
    - i. Multiplex Manufacturing Co.
    - j. NIBCO INC.
    - k. SSI Equipment, Inc.
    - l. Val-Matic Valve & Mfg. Corp.
    - m. Valve and Primer Corp.
- B. Lift-Disc Check Valves, General: FCI 74-1, with spring-loaded bronze or alloy disc and bronze or alloy seat.

- C. Class 125, Wafer, Lift-Disc Check Valves: Wafer style with cast-iron shell with diameter made to fit within bolt circle.

## 2.08 BRONZE GATE VALVES

### A. Manufacturers:

- 1. Type 1, Bronze, Nonrising-Stem Gate Valves:
  - a. American Valve, Inc.
  - b. Cincinnati Valve Co.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - e. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
  - f. Grinnell Corporation.
  - g. Hammond Valve.
  - h. Kitz Corporation of America.
  - i. Legend Valve & Fitting, Inc.
  - j. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - k. NIBCO INC.
  - l. Powell, Wm. Co.
  - m. Red-White Valve Corp.
  - n. Walworth Co.
  - o. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
- 2. Type 2, Bronze, Rising-Stem, Gate Valves:
  - a. American Valve, Inc. b. Cincinnati Valve Co.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
  - e. Grinnell Corporation.
  - f. Hammond Valve.
  - g. Kitz Corporation of America.
  - h. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - i. NIBCO INC.
  - j. Powell, Wm. Co.
  - k. Red-White Valve Corp.
  - l. Walworth Co.

- B. Bronze Gate Valves, General: MSS SP-80, with ferrous-alloy handwheel.
- C. Class 125, Bronze Gate Valves: Bronze body with nonrising stem and bronze solid wedge and union- ring bonnet.
- D. Class 125, Bronze Gate Valves: Bronze body with rising stem and bronze solid or split wedge and union-ring bonnet.

## 2.09 CAST-IRON GATE VALVES

### A. Manufacturers:

- 1. Cast-Iron, Nonrising-Stem Gate Valves:
  - a. Cincinnati Valve Co.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
  - e. Grinnell Corporation.
  - f. Hammond Valve.
  - g. Kitz Corporation of America.



- h. Legend Valve & Fitting, Inc.
  - i. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - j. NIBCO INC.
  - k. Powell, Wm. Co.
  - l. Red-White Valve Corp. m. Walworth Co.
  - m. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
2. Cast-Iron, Rising-Stem Gate Valves:
- a. Cincinnati Valve Co.
  - b. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Crane Valves.
  - c. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Jenkins Valves.
  - d. Crane Co.; Crane Valve Group; Stockham Div.
  - e. Grinnell Corporation.
  - f. Hammond Valve.
  - g. Kitz Corporation of America.
  - h. Legend Valve & Fitting, Inc.
  - i. Milwaukee Valve Company.
  - j. NIBCO INC.
  - k. Powell, Wm. Co.
  - l. Red-White Valve Corp. m. Walworth Co.
  - m. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
- B. Cast-Iron Gate Valves, General: MSS SP-70, Type I.
- C. Class 125, NRS, Bronze-Mounted, Cast-Iron Gate Valves: Cast-iron body with bronze trim, nonrising stem, and solid-wedge disc.
- D. Class 125, OS&Y, Bronze-Mounted, Cast-Iron Gate Valves: Cast-iron body with bronze trim, rising stem, and solid-wedge disc.

## **2.10 CHAINWHEEL ACTUATORS**

- A. Manufacturers:
- 1. Babbitt Steam Specialty Co.
  - 2. Roto Hammer Industries, Inc.
- B. Description: Valve actuation assembly with sprocket rim, brackets, and chain.
- 1. Sprocket Rim with Chain Guides: Ductile iron, of type and size required for valve.
  - 2. Brackets: Type, number, size, and fasteners required to mount actuator on valve.
  - 3. Chain: Hot-dip, galvanized steel, of size required to fit sprocket rim.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine piping system for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
- 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- B. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.
- C. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.
- D. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.
- E. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.

F. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

### 3.02 VALVE APPLICATIONS

- A. Refer to piping Sections for specific valve applications. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
1. Shutoff Service: Ball, butterfly, or gate valves.
  2. Throttling Service: Ball or control valves.
  3. Pump Discharge: Spring-loaded, lift-disc check valves.
- B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are not available, the same types of valves with higher SWP class or CWP ratings may be substituted.
- C. Chilled, Condenser, and Heating Hot Water Piping: Use the following types of valves:
1. Ball Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Two or Three-piece, 600-psig CWP rating, copper alloy.
  2. Ball Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Class 150, ferrous alloy.
  3. Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Single-flange or Flanged, 150-psig CWP rating for dead-end service, ferrous alloy, with EPDM liner.
  4. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: 175-psig CWP rating.
  5. Lift Check Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Class 125 or 150, horizontal or vertical, bronze.
  6. Swing Check Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Class 125 or 150, bronze.
  7. Swing Check Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Class 125, gray iron.
  8. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron, Swing Check Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: 175-psig CWP rating.
  9. Wafer Check Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Dual-plate, wafer-lug or double-flanged, Class 125 or 150 ferrous alloy.
  10. Spring-Loaded, Lift-Disc Check Valves: Class 125 or 250, cast iron.
  11. Gate Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Class 125 or 150, bronze.
  12. Gate Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Class 125, NRS or OS&Y, bronze-mounted cast iron.
- D. Domestic Water Piping: Use the following types of valves:
1. Ball Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Two or Three-piece, 600-psig CWP rating, copper alloy.
  2. Ball Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Class 150 ferrous alloy.
  3. Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Single-flange or Flanged, 150-psig CWP rating, ferrous alloy, with EPDM liner.
  4. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron Butterfly Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: 175-psig CWP rating.
  5. Lift Check Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Class 125 horizontal or vertical, bronze.
  6. Swing Check Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Class 125, bronze.
  7. Swing Check Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Class 125, gray iron.
  8. Grooved-End, Ductile-Iron, Swing Check Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: 175-psig CWP rating.
  9. Wafer Check Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Dual-plate, wafer-lug or double-flanged, Class 125 or 150, ferrous alloy.
  10. Spring-Loaded, Lift-Disc Check Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Class 125 or 150.
  11. Spring-Loaded, Lift-Disc Check Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Class 125, cast iron.
  12. Gate Valves, NPS 2 and Smaller: Class 125 or 150, bronze.
  13. Gate Valves, NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Class 125 NRS or OS&Y, bronze-mounted cast iron.
- E. Select valves with the following end connections:
1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
  2. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Flanged or threaded ends.
  3. For Copper Tubing, NPS 5 and Larger: Flanged ends.
  4. For Steel Piping, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends.
  5. For Steel Piping, NPS 2-1/2 and larger: Flanged, grooved, or threaded ends.

### **3.03 VALVE INSTALLATION**

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.
- C. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.
- D. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.
- E. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.
- F. Install chainwheel operators on valves NPS 4 and larger and more than 96 inches above floor.
- G. Extend chains to 60 inches above finished floor elevation.
- H. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
  - 1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.
  - 2. Dual-Plate Check Valves: In horizontal or vertical position, between flanges.
  - 3. Lift Check Valves: With stem upright and plumb.

### **3.04 JOINT CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Refer to Division 23 Section "Basic Mechanical Requirements" for basic piping joint construction.
- B. Grooved Joints: Assemble joints with keyed coupling housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts according to coupling and fitting manufacturer's written instructions.

### **3.05 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 05 29  
HANGERS AND SUPPORT FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.
- B. Details of hangers and supports on the roof shall include a detail of the roofing connection requirements. Contractor shall coordinate requirements to ensure the roofing support does not void roof warranty.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes hangers and supports for mechanical system piping and equipment.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 23 for vibration isolation restraint devices.

**1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. MSS: Manufacturers Standardization Society for the Valve and Fittings Industry.
- B. Terminology: As defined in MSS SP-90, "Guidelines on Terminology for Pipe Hangers and Supports."

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each Type of pipe hanger, channel support system component, and thermal-hanger shield insert indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Provide shop drawings for each location required for multiple piping supports and trapeze hangers. Provide manufacturer's catalog data including load capacity.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products from one of the following manufacturers:
  - 1. Pipe Hangers:
    - a. AAA Technology and Specialties Co., Inc.
    - b. B-Line Systems, Inc.
    - c. Grinnell Corp.
    - d. National Pipe Hanger Corp.
    - e. PHD Manufacturing, Inc.
  - 2. Channel Support Systems:
    - a. B-Line Systems, Inc.
    - b. Grinnell Corp.; Power-Strut Unit.
    - c. National Pipe Hanger Corp.
    - d. Unistrut Corp.
  - 3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts:
    - a. Carpenter & Patterson, Inc.
    - b. Michigan Hanger Co., Inc.
    - c. PHS Industries, Inc.
    - d. Pipe Shields, Inc.

**2.02 MANUFACTURED UNITS**

- A. Pipe Hangers, Supports, and Components: MSS SP-58, factory-fabricated components. Refer to "Hanger and Support Applications" Article in Part 3 for where to use specific hanger and

support types.

1. Galvanized, Metallic Coatings: For piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.
  2. Nonmetallic Coatings: On attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- B. Channel Support Systems: MFMA-2, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
1. Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted or galvanized finish.
  2. Nonmetallic Coatings: On attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.
- C. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: 100-psi minimum compressive-strength insulation, encased in sheet metal shield.
1. Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type I cellular glass or water- repellent-treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with vapor barrier.
  2. Material for Hot Piping: ASTM C 552, Type I cellular glass or water- repellent-treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate.
  3. For Trapeze or Clamped System: Insert and shield cover entire circumference of pipe.
  4. For Clevis or Band Hanger: Insert and shield cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.
  5. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield.

## **2.03 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS**

- A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars, black and galvanized.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 HANGER AND SUPPORT APPLICATIONS**

- A. Specific hanger requirements are specified in Sections specifying equipment and systems.
- B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Specification Sections.
- C. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Specification Sections, install the following types:
1. Adjustable Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of 120 to 450 deg F pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 16, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
  3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes, NPS 3/4 to NPS 24, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
  4. Adjustable Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
  5. Split Pipe-Ring with or without Turnbuckle-Adjustment Hangers (MSS Type 11): For suspension of noninsulated stationary pipes, NPS 3/8 to NPS 8.
  6. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipe, NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
  7. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
  8. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes, NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
  9. Adjustable Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 38): For stanchion- Type support for pipes, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 36, if vertical adjustment is required, with steel pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange.
  10. Single Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes, NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.
  11. Adjustable Roller Hangers (MSS Type 43): For suspension of pipes, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 20, from single rod if horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might

- occur.
12. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 42, if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.
  13. XVIII. Pipe Roll and Plate Units (MSS Type 45): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 24, if small horizontal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur and vertical adjustment is not necessary.
  14. Adjustable Pipe Roll and Base Units (MSS Type 46): For support of pipes, NPS 2 to NPS 30, if vertical and lateral adjustment during installation might be required in addition to expansion and contraction.
- D. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Specification Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20.
  2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers, NPS 3/4 to NPS 20, if longer ends are required for riser clamps.
- E. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Specification Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
  2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
  3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
  4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
  5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 ° F piping installations.
- F. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Specification Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
  2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joint construction to attach to top flange of structural shape.
  3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
  4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
  5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
  6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
  7. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
  8. Malleable Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
  9. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    - a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    - b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    - c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
  10. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
- G. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Specification Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.

2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
  3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe, 360-degree insert of high-density, 100-psi minimum compressive-strength, water-repellent-treated calcium silicate or
    - a. cellular-glass pipe insulation, same thickness as adjoining insulation with vapor barrier and encased in 360-degree sheet metal shield.
- H. Spring Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Specification Sections, install the following types:
1. Spring Cushions (MSS Type 48): For light loads if vertical movement does not exceed 1-1/4 inches.
  2. Spring-Cushion Roll Hangers (MSS Type 49): For equipping Type 41 roll hanger with springs.

### 3.02 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Pipe Hanger and Support Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from building structure.
- B. Channel Support System Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of piping and support together on field-assembled channel systems.
  1. Field assemble and install according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- C. Heavy-Duty Steel Trapeze Installation: Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping and support together on field-fabricated, heavy-duty trapezes.
  1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified above for individual pipe hangers.
  2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D-1.1.
- D. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Space attachments within maximum piping span length indicated in MSS SP-69. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, guides, strainers, and expansion joints, and at changes in direction piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.
- E. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.
- F. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses will not be transmitted to connected equipment.
- G. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and so maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9, "Building Services Piping," is not exceeded.
- H. Insulated Piping: Comply with the following:
  1. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39 protection saddles. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
    - a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
  2. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
    - a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
    - b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    - c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
    - d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.

- e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
3. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood inserts.
4. Insert Material: Length at least as long as protective shield.
5. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

### **3.03 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS**

- A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure above or to support equipment above floor.
- B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make smooth bearing surface.

### **3.04 METAL FABRICATION**

- A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for heavy-duty steel trapezes and equipment supports.
- B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field-weld connections that cannot be shop-welded because of shipping size limitations.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1 procedures for shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work, and with the following:
  1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
  2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
  3. Remove welding flux immediately.
  4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

### **3.05 ADJUSTING**

- A. Hanger Adjustment: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.

### **3.06 PAINTING**

- A. Touching Up: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
  1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 23 05 53  
MECHANICAL IDENTIFICATION**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following mechanical identification materials and their installation:
  - 1. Equipment nameplates.
    - a. Equipment markers.
    - b. Access panel and door markers.
    - c. Pipe markers.
    - d. Stencils.
    - e. Valve tags.
    - f. Valve schedules.
    - g. Warning tags.

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.
- C. Valve numbering scheme.
- D. Valve Schedules: For each piping system. Furnish extra copies (in addition to mounted copies) to include in maintenance manuals.

**1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. ASME Compliance: Comply with ASME A13.1, "Scheme for the Identification of Piping Systems," for letter size, length of color field, colors, and viewing angles of identification devices for piping.

**1.05 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with location of access panels and doors.
- C. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION DEVICES**

- A. Equipment Nameplates: Phenolic-resin laminated with data engraved, not stamped, for permanent attachment on equipment. If equipment located above ceiling, utilize a white phenolic-resin laminated identification tag riveted to the ceiling grid or ceiling structure at that unit.
  - 1. Data:
    - a. Manufacturer, product name, model number, and serial number.
    - b. Capacity, operating and power characteristics, and essential data.
  - 2. Location: Accessible and visible.
  - 3. Fasteners: As required to mount on equipment.
- B. Equipment Markers: ASTM D 709, Type I, cellulose, paper-base, phenolic- resin-laminate engraving stock; Grade ES-2. Fabricate in sizes required for message

1. Terminology: Match schedules as closely as possible.
  2. Data:
    - a. Name and plan number.
    - b. Equipment service.
    - c. Design capacity.
    - d. Other design parameters such as pressure drop, entering and leaving conditions, and speed.
  3. Size: 2-1/2 by 4 inches for control devices, dampers, and valves; 4- 1/2 by 6 inches for equipment.
  4. Fasteners: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws.
- C. Access Panel and Door Markers: 1/16-inch- thick, engraved laminated plastic, with abbreviated terms and numbers corresponding to identification. Provide 1/8-inch center hole for attachment.
1. Fasteners: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws.

## **2.02 PIPING IDENTIFICATION DEVICES**

- A. Manufactured Pipe Markers, General: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing direction of flow.
1. Colors: Comply with ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Lettering: Use piping system terms indicated and abbreviate only as necessary for each application length.
  3. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches: Full-band pipe markers extending 360 degrees around pipe at each location.
  4. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches and Larger: Either full- band or strip-type pipe markers at least three times letter height and of length required for label.
  5. Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions; or as separate unit on each pipe marker to indicate direction of flow.
- B. Pretensioned Pipe Markers: Precoiled semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without adhesive.

## **2.03 STENCILS**

- A. Stencils: Prepared with letter sizes according to ASME A13.1 for piping; minimum letter height of 1-1/4 inches for ducts; and minimum letter height of 3/4 inch for access panel and door markers, equipment markers, equipment signs, and similar operational instructions.
1. Stencil Material: Metal or fiberboard.
  2. Stencil Paint: Exterior, gloss, alkyd enamel or acrylic enamel, black, unless otherwise indicated. Paint may be in pressurized spray-can form.
  3. Identification Paint: Exterior, alkyd enamel or acrylic enamel in colors according to ASME A13.1, unless otherwise indicated.

## **2.04 VALVE TAGS**

- A. Valve Tags: Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers, with numbering scheme approved by Architect or Engineer. Provide 5/32-inch hole for fastener.
1. Material: 0.032-inch- thick brass or aluminum.
  2. Valve-Tag Fasteners: Brass wire-link or beaded chain; or S-hook.

## **2.05 VALVE SCHEDULES**

- A. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on standard-size bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal- operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.

1. Valve-Schedule Frames: 30"x42" display frame for mounting on masonry walls for each page of valve schedule. Include mounting screws.
2. Provide one each for every mechanical equipment room.
3. Frame: Extruded aluminum.
4. Glazing: ASTM C 1036, Type I, Class 1, Glazing Quality B, 2.5-mm, single-thickness glass.

## **2.06 WARNING TAGS**

- A. Warning Tags: Preprinted or partially preprinted, accident-prevention tags; of plasticized card stock with matte finish suitable for writing.
  1. Size: 3 by 5-1/4 inches minimum.
  2. Fasteners: Brass grommet and wire.
  3. XVIII. Nomenclature: Large-size primary caption such as DANGER, CAUTION, or DO NOT OPERATE.
  4. Color: Yellow background with black lettering.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 APPLICATIONS, GENERAL**

- A. Products specified are for applications referenced in other Division 15 Sections. If more than single- type material, device, or label is specified for listed applications, selection is Installer's option.

### **3.02 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Install and permanently fasten equipment nameplates on each major item of mechanical equipment that does not have nameplate or has nameplate that is damaged or located where not easily visible. Locate nameplates where accessible and visible. Include nameplates for the following general categories of equipment:
  1. Fuel-burning units, including boilers, furnaces, heaters, stills, and absorption units.
  2. Pumps, compressors, chillers, condensers, and similar motor-driven units.
  3. Heat exchangers, coils, evaporators, cooling towers, heat recovery units, and similar equipment.
  4. Fans, blowers, primary balancing dampers, and mixing boxes.
  5. Packaged HVAC central-station and zone-type units.
- B. Install equipment markers with mechanical fasteners on or near each major item of mechanical equipment. Data required for markers may be included on signs, and markers may be omitted if both are indicated.
  1. Letter Size: Minimum 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
  2. Data: Distinguish among multiple units, indicate operational requirements, indicate safety and emergency precautions, warn of hazards and improper operations, and identify units.
  3. Locate markers where accessible and visible. Include markers for the following general categories of equipment:
    - a. Main control and operating valves, including safety devices and hazardous units such as gas outlets.
    - b. Fire department hose valves and hose stations.
    - c. Meters, gages, thermometers, and similar units.
    - d. Fuel-burning units, including boilers, furnaces, heaters, stills, and absorption units.
    - e. Pumps, compressors, chillers, condensers, and similar motor-driven units.
    - f. Heat exchangers, coils, evaporators, cooling towers, heat recovery units, and similar equipment.

- g. Fans, blowers, primary balancing dampers, and mixing boxes.
  - h. Packaged HVAC central-station and zone-type units.
  - i. Tanks and pressure vessels.
  - j. Strainers, filters, humidifiers, water-treatment systems, and similar equipment.
- C. Stenciled Equipment Marker Option: Stenciled markers may be provided instead of laminated plastic equipment markers, at Installer's option, if lettering larger than 1 inch high is needed for proper identification because of distance from normal location of required identification.
- D. Install access panel markers with screws on equipment access panels.

### **3.03 PIPING IDENTIFICATION**

- A. Install manufactured pipe markers indicating service on each piping system. Install with flow indication arrows showing direction of flow.
- 1. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, Less Than 6 Inches: Pretensioned pipe markers. Use size to ensure a tight fit.
  - 2. Pipes with OD, Including Insulation, 6 Inches and Larger: Shaped pipe markers. Use size to match pipe and secure with fasteners.
- B. Stenciled Pipe Marker Option: Stenciled markers may be provided instead of manufactured pipe markers, at Installer's option. Install stenciled pipe markers with painted, color-coded bands or rectangles complying with ASME A13.1 on each piping system.
- 1. Identification Paint: Use for contrasting background.
  - 2. Stencil Paint: Use for pipe marking.
- C. Locate pipe markers and color bands where piping is exposed in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior nonconcealed locations as follows:
- 1. Near each valve and control device.
  - 2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
  - 3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and non-accessible enclosures.
  - 4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
  - 5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
  - 6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
  - 7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced markers.

### **3.04 VALVE-TAG INSTALLATION**

- A. Install tags on valves and control devices in piping systems, except check valves; valves within factory-fabricated equipment units; plumbing fixture supply stops; shutoff valves; faucets; convenience and lawn-watering hose connections; and HVAC terminal devices and similar roughing-in connections of end-use fixtures and units. List tagged valves in a valve schedule.
- B. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in the following:
- 1. Valve-Tag Size, shape, and color:
    - a. 1-1/2 inches, round, natural color.

### **3.05 VALVE-SCHEDULE INSTALLATION**

- A. Mount valve schedule on wall in accessible location in each major equipment room.

### **3.06 WARNING-TAG INSTALLATION**

- A. Write required message on, and attach warning tags to, equipment and other items where required.

**3.07 ADJUSTING**

- A. Relocate mechanical identification materials and devices that have become visually blocked by other work.

**3.08 CLEANING**

- A. Clean faces of mechanical identification devices and glass frames of valve schedules.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 05 93  
TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Testing, adjustment, and balancing of air systems.
- B. Testing, adjustment, and balancing of hydronic systems.

**1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AABC (NSTSB) - AABC National Standards for Total System Balance, 7th Edition; 2016.
- B. ASHRAE Std 111 - Measurement, Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Building HVAC Systems; 2008, with Errata (2019).
- C. NEBB (TAB) - Procedural Standard for Testing Adjusting and Balancing of Environmental Systems; 2019.

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Installer Qualifications: Submit name of adjusting and balancing agency and TAB supervisor for approval within 30 days after award of Contract.
- B. TAB Plan: Submit a written plan indicating the testing, adjusting, and balancing standard to be followed and the specific approach for each system and component.
  - 1. Submit to Architect.
  - 2. Submit six weeks prior to starting the testing, adjusting, and balancing work.
  - 3. Include certification that the plan developer has reviewed Contract Documents, the equipment and systems, and the control system with the Architect and other installers to sufficiently understand the design intent for each system.
  - 4. Include at least the following in the plan:
    - a. List of all air flow, water flow, sound level, system capacity and efficiency measurements to be performed and a description of specific test procedures, parameters, formulas to be used.
    - b. Copy of field checkout sheets and logs to be used, listing each piece of equipment to be tested, adjusted and balanced with the data cells to be gathered for each.
    - c. Identification and types of measurement instruments to be used and their most recent calibration date.
    - d. Discussion of what notations and markings will be made on the duct and piping drawings during the process.
    - e. Final test report forms to be used.
    - f. Detailed step-by-step procedures for TAB work for each system and issue, including:
      - 1) Terminal flow calibration (for each terminal type).
      - 2) Diffuser proportioning.
      - 3) Branch/submain proportioning.
      - 4) Total flow calculations.
      - 5) Rechecking.
      - 6) Diversity issues.
    - g. Details of how TOTAL flow will be determined; for example:
      - 1) Air: Sum of terminal flows via control system calibrated readings or via hood readings of all terminals, supply (SA) and return air (RA) pitot traverse, SA or RA flow stations.
      - 2) Water: Pump curves, circuit setter, flow station, ultrasonic, etc.
    - h. Procedures for formal deficiency reports, including scope, frequency and distribution.

- C. Final Report: Indicate deficiencies in systems that would prevent proper testing, adjusting, and balancing of systems and equipment to achieve specified performance.
  - 1. Revise TAB plan to reflect actual procedures and submit as part of final report.
  - 2. Submit draft copies of report for review prior to final acceptance of Project. Provide final copies for Architect and for inclusion in operating and maintenance manuals.
  - 3. Include actual instrument list, with manufacturer name, serial number, and date of calibration.
  - 4. Form of Test Reports: Where the TAB standard being followed recommends a report format use that; otherwise, follow ASHRAE Std 111.
  - 5. Units of Measure: Report data in I-P (inch-pound) units only.
  - 6. Include the following on the title page of each report:
    - a. Name of Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Agency.
    - b. Address of Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Agency.
    - c. Telephone number of Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Agency.
    - d. Project name.
    - e. Project location.
    - f. Project Architect.
    - g. Project Engineer.
    - h. Project Contractor.
    - i. Report date.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS - NOT USED**

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Perform total system balance in accordance with one of the following:
  - 1. AABC (NSTSB), AABC National Standards for Total System Balance.
  - 2. ASHRAE Std 111, Practices for Measurement, Testing, Adjusting and Balancing of Building Heating, Ventilation, Air-Conditioning, and Refrigeration Systems.
- B. Begin work after completion of systems to be tested, adjusted, or balanced and complete work prior to Substantial Completion of the project.
- C. Where HVAC systems and/or components interface with life safety systems, including fire and smoke detection, alarm, and control, coordinate scheduling and testing and inspection procedures with the authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. TAB Agency Qualifications:
  - 1. Company specializing in the testing, adjusting, and balancing of systems specified in this section.
  - 2. Having minimum of three years documented experience.
  - 3. Certified by one of the following:
    - a. AABC, Associated Air Balance Council: [www.aabc.com/#sle](http://www.aabc.com/#sle); upon completion submit AABC National Performance Guaranty.
    - b. NEBB, National Environmental Balancing Bureau: [www.nebb.org/#sle](http://www.nebb.org/#sle).
- E. TAB Supervisor and Technician Qualifications: Certified by same organization as TAB agency.

### **3.02 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that systems are complete and operable before commencing work. Ensure the following conditions:
  - 1. Systems are started and operating in a safe and normal condition.
  - 2. Temperature control systems are installed complete and operable.
  - 3. Proper thermal overload protection is in place for electrical equipment.

4. Final filters are clean and in place. If required, install temporary media in addition to final filters.
  5. Duct systems are clean of debris.
  6. Fans are rotating correctly.
  7. Fire and volume dampers are in place and open.
  8. Air coil fins are cleaned and combed.
  9. Access doors are closed and duct end caps are in place.
  10. Air outlets are installed and connected.
  11. Duct system leakage is minimized.
  12. Hydronic systems are flushed, filled, and vented.
  13. Pumps are rotating correctly.
  14. Proper strainer baskets are clean and in place.
  15. Service and balance valves are open.
- B. Submit field reports. Report defects and deficiencies that will or could prevent proper system balance.
- C. Beginning of work means acceptance of existing conditions.

### **3.03 PREPARATION**

- A. Hold a pre-balancing meeting at least one week prior to starting TAB work.
1. Require attendance by all installers whose work will be tested, adjusted, or balanced.

### **3.04 ADJUSTMENT TOLERANCES**

- A. Air Handling Systems: Adjust to within plus or minus 10 percent of design for supply systems and plus or minus 10 percent of design for return and exhaust systems.
- B. Air Outlets and Inlets: Adjust total to within plus 10 percent and minus 10 percent of design to space. Adjust outlets and inlets in space to within plus or minus 10 percent of design.
- C. Hydronic Systems: Adjust to within plus or minus 10 percent of design.

### **3.05 RECORDING AND ADJUSTING**

- A. Ensure recorded data represents actual measured or observed conditions.
- B. Permanently mark settings of valves, dampers, and other adjustment devices allowing settings to be restored. Set and lock memory stops.
- C. After adjustment, take measurements to verify balance has not been disrupted or that such disruption has been rectified.
- D. Leave systems in proper working order, replacing belt guards, closing access doors, closing doors to electrical switch boxes, and restoring thermostats to specified settings.
- E. At final inspection, recheck random selections of data recorded in report. Recheck points or areas as selected and witnessed by the Owner.

### **3.06 AIR SYSTEM PROCEDURE**

- A. Adjust air handling and distribution systems to provide required or design supply, return, and exhaust air quantities.
- B. Make air quantity measurements in ducts by Pitot tube traverse of entire cross sectional area of duct.
- C. Measure air quantities at air inlets and outlets.
- D. Adjust distribution system to obtain uniform space temperatures free from objectionable drafts and noise.
- E. Use volume control devices to regulate air quantities only to extend that adjustments do not create objectionable air motion or sound levels. Effect volume control by duct internal devices



such as dampers and splitters.

- F. Vary total system air quantities by adjustment of fan speeds. Provide drive changes required. Vary branch air quantities by damper regulation.
- G. Provide system schematic with required and actual air quantities recorded at each outlet or inlet.
- H. Measure static air pressure conditions on air supply units, including filter and coil pressure drops, and total pressure across the fan. Make allowances for 50 percent loading of filters.
- I. Adjust outside air automatic dampers, outside air, return air, and exhaust dampers for design conditions.
- J. Measure temperature conditions across outside air, return air, and exhaust dampers to check leakage.
- K. Where modulating dampers are provided, take measurements and balance at extreme conditions. Balance variable volume systems at maximum air flow rate, full cooling, and at minimum air flow rate, full heating.
- L. Measure building static pressure and adjust supply, return, and exhaust air systems to provide required relationship between each to maintain approximately 0.05 inches (12.5 Pa) positive static pressure near the building entries.
- M. For variable air volume system powered units set volume controller to air flow setting indicated. Confirm connections properly made and confirm proper operation for automatic variable air volume temperature control.
- N. On fan powered VAV boxes, adjust air flow switches for proper operation.

### **3.07 WATER SYSTEM PROCEDURE**

- A. Adjust water systems to provide required or design quantities.
- B. Use calibrated Venturi tubes, orifices, or other metered fittings and pressure gauges to determine flow rates for system balance. Where flow metering devices are not installed, base flow balance on temperature difference across various heat transfer elements in the system.
- C. Adjust systems to provide specified pressure drops and flows through heat transfer elements prior to thermal testing. Perform balancing by measurement of temperature differential in conjunction with air balancing.
- D. Effect system balance with automatic control valves fully open to heat transfer elements.
- E. Effect adjustment of water distribution systems by means of balancing cocks, valves, and fittings. Do not use service or shut-off valves for balancing unless indexed for balance point.
- F. Where available pump capacity is less than total flow requirements or individual system parts, full flow in one part may be simulated by temporary restriction of flow to other parts.

### **3.08 SCOPE**

- A. Test, adjust, and balance the following:
  - 1. Plumbing Pumps.
  - 2. HVAC Pumps.
  - 3. Computer Room Air Conditioning Units.
  - 4. Air Handling Units.
  - 5. Fans.
  - 6. Air Terminal Units.
  - 7. Air Inlets and Outlets.

### **3.09 MINIMUM DATA TO BE REPORTED**

- A. Electric Motors:

1. Manufacturer.
  2. Model/Frame.
  3. HP/BHP.
  4. Phase, voltage, amperage; nameplate, actual, no load.
  5. RPM.
  6. Service factor.
  7. Sheave Make/Size/Bore.
- B. Pumps:
1. Identification/number.
  2. Manufacturer.
  3. Size/model.
  4. Impeller.
  5. Service.
  6. Design flow rate, pressure drop, BHP.
  7. Actual flow rate, pressure drop, BHP.
  8. Discharge pressure.
  9. Suction pressure.
  10. Total operating head pressure.
- C. Cooling Coils:
1. Identification/number.
  2. Location.
  3. Service.
  4. Manufacturer.
  5. Air flow, design and actual.
  6. Entering air DB temperature, design and actual.
  7. Entering air WB temperature, design and actual.
  8. Leaving air DB temperature, design and actual.
  9. Leaving air WB temperature, design and actual.
  10. Water flow, design and actual.
  11. Water pressure drop, design and actual.
  12. Entering water temperature, design and actual.
  13. Leaving water temperature, design and actual.
  14. Saturated suction temperature, design and actual.
  15. Air pressure drop, design and actual.
- D. Heating Coils:
1. Identification/number.
  2. Location.
  3. Service.
  4. Manufacturer.
  5. Air flow, design and actual.
  6. Water flow, design and actual.
  7. Water pressure drop, design and actual.
  8. Entering water temperature, design and actual.
  9. Leaving water temperature, design and actual.
  10. Entering air temperature, design and actual.
  11. Leaving air temperature, design and actual.
  12. Air pressure drop, design and actual.
- E. Air Moving Equipment:
1. Location.

2. Manufacturer.
  3. Model number.
  4. Serial number.
  5. Arrangement/Class/Discharge.
  6. Air flow, specified and actual.
  7. Return air flow, specified and actual.
  8. Outside air flow, specified and actual.
  9. Total static pressure (total external), specified and actual.
  10. Sheave Make/Size/Bore.
  11. Number of Belts/Make/Size.
  12. Fan RPM.
- F. Exhaust Fans:
1. Location.
  2. Manufacturer.
  3. Model number.
  4. Serial number.
  5. Air flow, specified and actual.
  6. Total static pressure (total external), specified and actual.
  7. Sheave Make/Size/Bore.
  8. Number of Belts/Make/Size.
  9. Fan RPM.
- G. Duct Traverses:
1. System zone/branch.
  2. Duct size.
  3. Area.
  4. Design velocity.
  5. Design air flow.
  6. Test velocity.
  7. Test air flow.
  8. Duct static pressure.
  9. Air temperature.
- H. Terminal Unit Data:
1. Manufacturer.
  2. Type, constant, variable, single, dual duct.
  3. Identification/number.
  4. Location.
  5. Model number.
  6. Size.
  7. Minimum static pressure.
  8. Minimum design air flow.
  9. Maximum design air flow.
  10. Maximum actual air flow.
  11. Inlet static pressure.
- I. Air Distribution Tests:
1. Air terminal number.
  2. Room number/location.
  3. Terminal type.
  4. Terminal size.
  5. Design air flow.

SBLM Architects  
Project No: 023569.00

6. Test (final) air flow.
7. Percent of design air flow.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 07 19  
HVAC PIPING INSULATION**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Piping insulation.
- B. Jacketing and accessories.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 07 84 00 - Firestopping.
- B. Section 23 21 13 - Hydronic Piping: Placement of hangers and hanger inserts.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM C177 - Standard Test Method for Steady-State Heat Flux Measurements and Thermal Transmission Properties by Means of the Guarded-Hot-Plate Apparatus; 2019.
- B. ASTM C195 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Thermal Insulating Cement; 2007 (Reapproved 2019).
- C. ASTM C534/C534M - Standard Specification for Preformed Flexible Elastomeric Cellular Thermal Insulation in Sheet and Tubular Form; 2020a.
- D. ASTM C547 - Standard Specification for Mineral Fiber Pipe Insulation; 2022.
- E. ASTM C795 - Standard Specification for Thermal Insulation for Use in Contact with Austenitic Stainless Steel; 2008 (Reapproved 2023).
- F. ASTM E84 - Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; 2022.
- G. ASTM E96/E96M - Standard Test Methods for Gravimetric Determination of Water Vapor Transmission Rate of Materials; 2022.
- H. UL 723 - Standard for Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Provide product description, thermal characteristics, list of materials and thickness for each service, and locations.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Applicator Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the type of work specified in this section with minimum three years of experience.

**1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Accept materials on site, labeled with manufacturer's identification, product density, and thickness.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index/Smoke developed index of 25/50, maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723.

**2.02 GLASS FIBER, RIGID**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. CertainTeed Corporation.
  - 2. Johns Manville Corporation.
  - 3. Knauf Insulation.

4. Manson Insulation Inc.
5. Owens Corning Corporation.
- B. Insulation: ASTM C547 and ASTM C795; rigid molded, noncombustible.
  1. K (Ksi) Value: ASTM C177, 0.24 at 75 degrees F (0.035 at 24 degrees C).
  2. Maximum Service Temperature: 850 degrees F (454 degrees C).
  3. Maximum Moisture Absorption: 0.2 percent by volume.
- C. Vapor Barrier Jacket: White kraft paper with glass fiber yarn, bonded to aluminized film; moisture vapor transmission when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M of 0.02 perm-inches (0.029 ng/Pa s m).
- D. Vapor Barrier Lap Adhesive: Compatible with insulation.
- E. Insulating Cement/Mastic: ASTM C195; hydraulic setting on mineral wool.

### **2.03 FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC CELLULAR INSULATION**

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Aeroflex USA, Inc.
  2. Armacell LLC.
  3. K-Flex USA LLC.
- B. Insulation: Preformed flexible elastomeric cellular rubber insulation complying with ASTM C534/C534M Grade 1; use molded tubular material wherever possible.
  1. Minimum Service Temperature: Minus 40 degrees F (Minus 40 degrees C).
  2. Maximum Service Temperature: 180 degrees F (82 degrees C).
  3. Connection: Waterproof vapor barrier adhesive.
- C. Elastomeric Foam Adhesive: Air dried, contact adhesive, compatible with insulation.

### **2.04 JACKETING AND ACCESSORIES**

- A. PVC Plastic.
  1. Jacket: One piece molded type fitting covers and sheet material, off-white color.
    - a. Minimum Service Temperature: 0 degrees F (minus 18 degrees C).
    - b. Maximum Service Temperature: 150 degrees F (66 degrees C).
    - c. Moisture Vapor Permeability: 0.002 perm inch (0.0029 ng/(Pa s m)), maximum, when tested in accordance with ASTM E96/E96M.
    - d. Thickness: 10 mil, 0.010 inch (0.25 mm).
    - e. Connections: Brush on welding adhesive.
  2. Covering Adhesive Mastic: Compatible with insulation.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Test piping for design pressure, liquid tightness, and continuity prior to applying insulation materials.
- B. Verify that surfaces are clean and dry, with foreign material removed.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install in accordance with NAIMA National Insulation Standards.
- C. Glass Fiber Insulated Pipes Conveying Fluids Below Ambient Temperature:
  1. Provide vapor barrier jackets, factory-applied or field-applied; secure with self-sealing longitudinal laps and butt strips with pressure-sensitive adhesive. Secure with outward clinch expanding staples and vapor barrier mastic.

2. Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with molded insulation of like material and thickness as adjacent pipe. Finish with glass cloth and vapor barrier adhesive or PVC fitting covers.
- D. Glass Fiber Insulated Pipes Conveying Fluids Above Ambient Temperature:
  1. Provide standard jackets, with or without vapor barrier, factory-applied, or field-applied. Secure with self-sealing longitudinal laps and butt strips with pressure-sensitive adhesive. Secure with outward clinch expanding staples.
  2. Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with insulation of like material and thickness as adjoining pipe. Finish with glass cloth and adhesive or PVC fitting covers.
- E. Inserts and Shields:
  1. Application: Piping 1-1/2 inches (40 mm) diameter or larger.
  2. Shields: Galvanized steel between pipe hangers or pipe hanger rolls and inserts.
  3. Insert location: Between support shield and piping and under the finish jacket.
  4. Insert Configuration: Minimum 6 inches (150 mm) long, of same thickness and contour as adjoining insulation; may be factory fabricated.
  5. Insert Material: Hydrous calcium silicate insulation or other heavy density insulating material suitable for the planned temperature range.
- F. Continue insulation through walls, sleeves, pipe hangers, and other pipe penetrations. Finish at supports, protrusions, and interruptions. At fire separations, see Section 07 84 00.
- G. Pipe Exposed in Mechanical Equipment Rooms or Finished Spaces (less than 10 feet (3 meters) above finished floor): Finish with PVC jacket and fitting covers.
- H. Exterior Applications: Provide vapor barrier jacket. Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with insulation of like material and thickness as adjoining pipe, and finish with glass mesh reinforced vapor barrier cement. Cover with aluminum jacket with seams located on bottom side of horizontal piping. Provide two coats of UV resistant finish for flexible elastomeric cellular insulation without jacketing.
- I. Heat Traced Piping: Insulate fittings, joints, and valves with insulation of like material, thickness, and finish as adjoining pipe. Size large enough to enclose pipe and heat tracer. Cover with aluminum jacket with seams located on bottom side of horizontal piping.

### **3.03 SCHEDULE**

- A. Heating Systems:
  1. Heating Water Supply and Return Indoor Applications: NPS 1-1/2 inch and smaller, preformed glass fiber, 1-1/2 inches thick; NPS 2 and larger, preformed glass fiber, 2 inches thick. Outdoor Applications: all sizes, preformed glass fiber, 2 inches thick with field applied jacket.
- B. Cooling Systems:
  1. Chilled Water Indoor Applications: NPS 3/4 and larger, preformed glass fiber, 1-1/2 inches thick. Outdoor Applications: all sizes, preformed glass fiber, 2 inches thick with field applied jacket.
  2. Refrigerant Suction: all sizes, flexible elastomeric, 1 inch thick; provide 2 inches thick for outdoor applications.
  3. Refrigerant Hot Gas: all sizes, flexible elastomeric, 1 inch thick; provide 2 inches thick for outdoor applications.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 08 00  
COMMISSIONING OF HVAC**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SUMMARY**

- A. See Section 01 91 13 - General Commissioning Requirements for overall objectives; comply with the requirements of Section 01 91 13.
- B. This section covers the Contractor's responsibilities for commissioning; each subcontractor or installer responsible for the installation of a particular system or equipment item to be commissioned is responsible for the commissioning activities relating to that system or equipment item.
- C. The Commissioning Authority (CA) directs and coordinates all commissioning activities and provides Prefunctional Checklists and Functional Test Procedures for Contractor's use.
- D. The entire HVAC system is to be commissioned, including commissioning activities for the following specific items:
  - 1. Control system.
  - 2. Major and minor equipment items.
  - 3. Piping systems and equipment.
  - 4. Ductwork and accessories.
  - 5. Terminal units.
  - 6. Other equipment and systems explicitly identified elsewhere in Contract Documents as requiring commissioning.
- E. The Prefunctional Checklist and Functional Test requirements specified in this section are in addition to, not a substitute for, inspection or testing specified in other sections.

**1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASHRAE Guideline 1.1 - HVAC&R Technical Requirements for the Commissioning Process; 2007, with Errata (2012).

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Updated Submittals: Keep the Commissioning Authority informed of all changes to control system documentation made during programming and setup; revise and resubmit when substantial changes are made.
- B. Startup Reports, Prefunctional Checklists, and Trend Logs: Submit for approval of Commissioning Authority.
- C. HVAC Control System O&M Manual Requirements. In addition to documentation specified elsewhere, compile and organize at minimum the following data on the control system:
  - 1. Specific step-by-step instructions on how to perform and apply all functions, features, modes, etc. mentioned in the controls training sections of this specification and other features of this system. Provide an index and clear table of contents. Include the detailed technical manual for programming and customizing control loops and algorithms.
  - 2. Full as-built set of control drawings.
  - 3. Full as-built sequence of operations for each piece of equipment.
  - 4. Full points list; in addition to the information on the original points list submittal, include a listing of all rooms with the following information for each room:
    - a. Floor.
    - b. Room number.
    - c. Room name.
    - d. Air handler unit ID.
    - e. Reference drawing number.



- f. Air terminal unit tag ID.
  - g. Heating and/or cooling valve tag ID.
  - h. Minimum air flow rate.
  - i. Maximum air flow rate.
5. Full print out of all schedules and set points after testing and acceptance of the system.
  6. Full as-built print out of software program.
  7. Electronic copy on disk of the entire program for this facility.
  8. Marking of all system sensors and thermostats on the as-built floor plan and HVAC drawings with their control system designations.
  9. Maintenance instructions, including sensor calibration requirements and methods by sensor type, etc.
  10. Control equipment component submittals, parts lists, etc.
  11. Warranty requirements.
  12. Copies of all checkout tests and calibrations performed by the Contractor (not commissioning tests).
  13. Organize and subdivide the manual with permanently labeled tabs for each of the following data in the given order:
    - a. Sequences of operation.
    - b. Control drawings.
    - c. Points lists.
    - d. Controller and/or module data.
    - e. Thermostats and timers.
    - f. Sensors and DP switches.
    - g. Valves and valve actuators.
    - h. Dampers and damper actuators.
    - i. Program setups (software program printouts).
- D. Project Record Documents: See Section 01 78 00 for additional requirements.
1. Submit updated version of control system documentation, for inclusion with operation and maintenance data.
  2. Show actual locations of all static and differential pressure sensors (air, water and building pressure) and air-flow stations on project record drawings.
- E. Draft Training Plan: In addition to requirements specified in Section 01 79 00, include:
1. Follow the recommendations of ASHRAE Guideline 1.1.
  2. Control system manufacturer's recommended training.
  3. Demonstration and instruction on function and overrides of any local packaged controls not controlled by the HVAC control system.
- F. Training Manuals: See Section 01 79 00 for additional requirements.
1. Provide three extra copies of the controls training manuals in a separate manual from the O&M manuals.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 TEST EQUIPMENT**

- A. Provide all standard testing equipment required to perform startup and initial checkout and required functional performance testing; unless otherwise noted such testing equipment will NOT become the property of Owner.
- B. Equipment-Specific Tools: Where special testing equipment, tools and instruments are specific to a piece of equipment, are only available from the vendor, and are required in order to accomplish startup or Functional Testing, provide such equipment, tools, and instruments as part of the work at no extra cost to Owner; such equipment, tools, and instruments are to become the property of Owner.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 PREPARATION**

- A. Cooperate with the Commissioning Authority in development of the Prefunctional Checklists and Functional Test Procedures.
- B. Furnish additional information requested by the Commissioning Authority.
- C. Prepare a preliminary schedule for HVAC pipe and duct system testing, flushing and cleaning, equipment start-up and testing, adjusting, and balancing start and completion for use by the Commissioning Authority; update the schedule as appropriate.
- D. Notify the Commissioning Authority when pipe and duct system testing, flushing, cleaning, startup of each piece of equipment and testing, adjusting, and balancing will occur; when commissioning activities not yet performed or not yet scheduled will delay construction notify ahead of time and be proactive in seeing that the Commissioning Authority has the scheduling information needed to efficiently execute the commissioning process.
- E. Put all HVAC equipment and systems into operation and continue operation during each working day of testing, adjusting, and balancing and commissioning, as required.
- F. Provide test holes in ducts and plenums where directed to allow air measurements and air balancing; close with an approved plug.
- G. Provide temperature and pressure taps in accordance with Contract Documents.

#### **3.02 INSPECTING AND TESTING - GENERAL**

- A. Submit startup plans, startup reports, and Prefunctional Checklists for each item of equipment or other assembly to be commissioned.
- B. Perform the Functional Tests directed by the Commissioning Authority for each item of equipment or other assembly to be commissioned.
- C. Provide two-way radios for use during the testing.
- D. Valve/Damper Stroke Setup and Check:
  - 1. For all valve/damper actuator positions checked, verify the actual position against the control system readout.
  - 2. Set pump/fan to normal operating mode.
  - 3. Command valve/damper closed; visually verify that valve/damper is closed and adjust output zero signal as required.
  - 4. Command valve/damper open; verify position is full open and adjust output signal as required.
  - 5. Command valve/damper to a few intermediate positions.
  - 6. If actual valve/damper position does not reasonably correspond, replace actuator or add pilot positioner (for pneumatics).
- E. Coil Valve Leak Check:
  - 1. Method 1 - Water Temperature With 2-Way Valve:
    - a. Calibrate water temperature sensors on each side of coil to be within 0.2 degree F (0.1 degree C ) of each other.
    - b. Turn off air handler fans, close outside air dampers. Keep pump running. Make sure appropriate coil dampers are open.
    - c. Normally closed valves will close.
    - d. Override normally open valves to the closed position.
    - e. After 10 minutes observe water delta T across coil. If it is greater than 2 degrees F ( one degree C ), leakage is probably occurring.
    - f. Reset valve stroke to close tighter.
    - g. Repeat test until compliance is achieved.

- F. Isolation Valve or System Valve Leak Check: For valves not by coils.
  - 1. With full pressure in the system, command valve closed.
  - 2. Use an ultra-sonic flow meter to detect flow or leakage.
- G. Deficiencies: Correct deficiencies and re-inspect or re-test, as applicable, at no extra cost to Owner.

### **3.03 TAB COORDINATION**

- A. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing of HVAC.
- B. Coordinate commissioning schedule with TAB schedule.
- C. Review the TAB plan to determine the capabilities of the control system toward completing TAB.
- D. Provide all necessary unique instruments and instruct the TAB technicians in their use; such as handheld control system interface for setting terminal unit boxes, etc.
- E. Have all required Prefunctional Checklists, calibrations, startup and component Functional Tests of the system completed and approved by the Commissioning Authority prior to starting TAB.
- F. Provide a qualified control system technician to operate the controls to assist the TAB technicians or provide sufficient training for the TAB technicians to operate the system without assistance.

### **3.04 CONTROL SYSTEM FUNCTIONAL TESTING**

- A. Prefunctional Checklists for control system components will require a signed and dated certification that all system programming is complete as required to accomplish the requirements of Contract Documents and the detailed Sequences of Operation documentation submittal.
- B. Do not start Functional Testing until all controlled components have themselves been successfully Functionally Tested in accordance with Contract Documents.
- C. Using a skilled technician who is familiar with this building, execute the Functional Testing of the control system as required by the Commissioning Authority.
- D. Functional Testing of the control system constitutes demonstration and trend logging of control points monitored by the control system.
  - 1. The scope of trend logging is partially specified; trend log up to 50 percent more points than specified at no extra cost to Owner.
  - 2. Perform all trend logging specified in Prefunctional Checklists and Functional Test procedures.
- E. Functionally Test integral or stand-alone controls in conjunction with the Functional Tests of the equipment they are attached to, including any interlocks with other equipment or systems; further testing during control system Functional Test is not required unless specifically indicated below.
- F. Demonstrate the following to the Commissioning Authority during testing of controlled equipment; coordinate with commissioning of equipment.
  - 1. Setpoint changing features and functions.
  - 2. Sensor calibrations.
- G. Demonstrate to the Commissioning Authority:
  - 1. That all specified functions and features are set up, debugged and fully operable.
  - 2. That scheduling features are fully functional and setup, including holidays.
  - 3. That all graphic screens and value readouts are completed.
  - 4. Correct date and time setting in central computer.

5. That field panels read the same time as the central computer; sample 10 percent of field panels; if any of those fail, sample another 10 percent; if any of those fail test all remaining units at no extra cost to Owner.
  6. Functionality of field panels using local operator keypads and local ports (plug-ins) using portable computer/keypad; demonstrate 100 percent of panels and 10 percent of ports; if any ports fail, sample another 10 percent; if any of those fail, test all remaining units at no extra cost to Owner.
  7. Power failure and battery backup and power-up restart functions.
  8. Global commands features.
  9. Security and access codes.
  10. Occupant over-rides (manual, telephone, key, keypad, etc.).
  11. O&M schedules and alarms.
  12. Occupancy sensors and controls.
  13. Fire alarm interlocks and response.
  14. All control strategies and sequences not tested during controlled equipment testing.
- H. If the control system, integral control components, or related equipment do not respond to changing conditions and parameters appropriately as expected, as specified and according to acceptable operating practice, under any of the conditions, sequences, or modes tested, correct all systems, equipment, components, and software required at no additional cost to Owner.

### **3.05 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS**

- A. See Section 01 78 00 for additional requirements.
- B. Add design intent documentation furnished by Architect to manuals prior to submission to Owner.
- C. Submit manuals related to items that were commissioned to Commissioning Authority for review; make changes recommended by Commissioning Authority.
- D. Commissioning Authority will add commissioning records to manuals after submission to Owner.

### **3.06 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING**

- A. See Section 01 79 00 for additional requirements.
- B. Demonstrate operation and maintenance of HVAC system to Owner' personnel; if during any demonstration, the system fails to perform in accordance with the information included in the O&M manual, stop demonstration, repair or adjust, and repeat demonstration. Demonstrations may be combined with training sessions if appropriate.
- C. These demonstrations are in addition to, and not a substitute for, Prefunctional Checklists and demonstrations to the Commissioning Authority during Functional Testing.
- D. Provide classroom and hands-on training of Owner's designated personnel on operation and maintenance of the HVAC system, control system, and all equipment items indicated to be commissioned. Provide the following minimum durations of training:
- E. TAB Review: Instruct Owner's personnel for minimum 8 hours, after completion of TAB, on the following:
  1. Review final TAB report, explaining the layout and meanings of each data type.
  2. Discuss any outstanding deficient items in control, ducting or design that may affect the proper delivery of air or water.
  3. Identify and discuss any terminal units, duct runs, diffusers, coils, fans and pumps that are close to or are not meeting their design capacity.
  4. Discuss any temporary settings and steps to finalize them for any areas that are not finished.

SBLM Architects  
Project No: 023569.00

- 5. Other salient information that may be useful for facility operations, relative to TAB.
- F. Provide the services of manufacturer representatives to assist instructors where necessary.
- G. Provide the services of the HVAC controls instructor at other training sessions, when requested, to discuss the interaction of the controls system as it relates to the equipment being discussed.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 09 00  
INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROL FOR HVAC**

**1. CONTROLS SYSTEM DESIGN/SCOPE OF WORK SELECTION REQUIREMENTS:**

**1.01 1.3 MINOR CLASSROOM ADDITIONS AND MINOR MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT  
REPLACEMENTS/RENOVATIONS:**

- A. 1.3.1 If the existing system has a Java application control engine (JACE), integrate the new controls into the existing system.
  - 1. 1.3.1.1 Match the existing control protocol with the new controls.
  - 2. 1.3.1.2 Do not mix LON and BACnet IP systems.
- B. 1.3.2 If the existing system is either pneumatic and/or not Distech branded, ensure the entire building receives all new controls.
  - 1. 1.3.2.1 Control system infrastructure to be Distech BacNET IP or Dallas ISD approved equal. IP controllers include but not limited to central plant, AHU's, RTU's, VAV boxes and miscellaneous equipment.

- 2. NEW CONSTRUCTION/RENOVATIONS: NO JACE SHALL BE OVERLOADED PAST 80% MEMORY, CPU AND/OR SPACE. CONTRACTOR TO PROVIDE AN ADDITIONAL JACE AND REWORK COMMUNICATION TRUNKS AS NEEDED TO UNLOAD JACE.**
- 3. KEEP CONTROL SYSTEMS AND STRATEGIES SIMPLE TO MINIMIZE FIRST COST, IMPROVE RELIABILITY, AND SIMPLIFY OPERATION. CONSIDER MORE SOPHISTICATED CONTROL STRATEGIES, SHOWN TO SAVE ENERGY OR REDUCE LIFE CYCLE COSTS, ONLY APPLY WHERE IT IS NOT DETRIMENTAL TO OVERALL SYSTEM RELIABILITY AND MAINTAINABILITY.**
- 4. FOR EACH PROJECT, BEFORE DEMO WORK, CONTROLS CONTRACTOR TO TAKE SCREENSHOTS OF EXISTING CONTROLS SYSTEM. CONTRACTOR IS RESPONSIBLE FOR COMMUNICATION TRUNKS THAT HAVE BEEN CUT DURING CONSTRUCTION.**
- 5. CONTROLS CONTRACTOR IS RESPONSIBLE FOR COORDINATING WITH DALLAS ISD AND SETTING UP THE CORRECT GRAPHIC TEMPLATES FOR EACH BUILDING. IF CONTRACTOR FAILS TO DO SO, CONTRACTOR TO MAKE ALL CHANGES NEEDED TO MEET GRAPHIC TEMPLATE AT NO EXTRA COST TO DALLAS ISD.**
- 6. APPROVED VENDORS:**
  - 6.01 6.1 JMS INTEGRATED BUILDING SOLUTIONS.**
  - 6.02 6.2 TDINDUSTRIES.**
- 7. CONTROL ARCHITECTURE:**
  - 7.01 7.1 THE BUILDING AUTOMATION SYSTEM (BAS) CONSISTS OF A DISTECH SYSTEM THAT INTEGRATES WITH THE DALLAS ISD SUPERVISORY SYSTEM. A TRIDIUM JAVA APPLICATION CONTROL ENGINE (JACE) CONTROLLER(S) FOR INTEGRATION OF FIELD CONTROLLERS AND WEB-BASED INTERFACE WITH DALLAS ISD INTRANET, OR THROUGH THE INTERNET WITH A VPN CONNECTION.**
  - 7.02 7.2 THE JAVA APPLICATION CONTROL ENGINE (JACE) CONTROLLER TO PROVIDE PROGRAMMING, SCHEDULING, GRAPHICS, AND MONITORING OF THE HVAC SYSTEMS. PROVIDE ACCESS TO THE JACE FROM ANY COMPUTER ON THE DALLAS ISD INTRANET OR THROUGH THE INTERNET WITH A VPN CONNECTION.**
  - 7.03 7.3 IDENTIFY THE VARIOUS CONTROL SYSTEMS AT EACH CAMPUS TO DETERMINE TO INSTALL A NEW FMCS/CMCS OR TO EXPAND THE EXISTING SYSTEM TO EXPAND. THE GOAL IS LIMITING THE NUMBER OF DIFFERENT CONTROL SYSTEMS AT A CAMPUS.**
  - 7.04 7.4 WHERE A JACE BUILDING CONTROLLER IS PRESENT, EXPAND THE EXISTING CONTROLLER, OR IF NECESSARY, PROVIDE AN ADDITIONAL JACE CONTROLLER TO INCORPORATE AND INTEGRATE THE NEW FIELD CONTROLLERS.**
  - 7.05 7.5 THE JACE CONTROLLER TO ACCEPT BACNET MS/TP, BACNET IP OR LONWORKS DATA FROM THE FIELD CONTROLLER AND OTHER PROPRIETARY FMCS COMPONENTS AT THE CAMPUS DEPENDING ON THE SCOPE OF WORK.**
  - 7.06 7.7 ALL CONTROLLERS TO BE BACNET OR LONMARK CERTIFIED DEVICES.**
  - 7.07 7.8 INCLUDE CONTROLLERS, SENSORS, ACTUATORS, ETC. AS REQUIRED FOR A COMPLETE OPERATIONAL SYSTEM.**
  - 7.08 7.9 ONLY CRITICAL ALARMS TO POPULATE. CRITICAL ALARMS ARE BASED ON CRITICAL EQUIPMENT SUCH AS CHILLERS, BOILERS, PUMPS AND VAV/MULTIZONE AHU'S.**

- 7.09 7.10 SUPPLY THE CHILLERS, BOILERS, AND AIR HANDLING UNITS, WITH ASSOCIATED CONTROLS AND PUMPS, AND A RIB RELAY WITH MANUAL HOA SWITCH. THIS IS TO ALLOW DALLAS ISD TO TURN ON AND RUN EQUIPMENT LOCALLY. THE ACTIVATION OF THE SWITCH NOTIFIES THE BUILDING AUTOMATION SYSTEM (BAS) THAT THE UNIT IS IN MANUAL OVERRIDE. THE BAS GRAPHIC TO CHANGE COLOR TO RED TO ALERT THAT THAT EQUIPMENT HAS BEEN LOCALLY OVERRIDDEN.**
- 8. DESIGN THE FACILITY MANAGEMENT CONTROL SYSTEM (FMCS) IN ACCORDANCE WITH THE FOLLOWING:**
- 8.01 8.1 DESIGN SIMPLE BASIC CONTROL STRATEGIES TO ALLOW FOR EASE OF MAINTENANCE AND LONG-TERM RELIABILITY. ALL STRATEGIES THAT DIFFER FROM THE MASTER POINTS LIST AND SEQUENCES TO BE APPROVED IN WRITING BY DALLAS ISD.**
- 8.02 8.2 OPEN NIC LICENSE.**
- 8.03 8.3 EMBEDDED WORKBENCH.**
- 8.04 8.4 USE NIAGARA FRAMEWORK SOFTWARE FOR ALL PROGRAMMING AND NETWORK MANAGEMENT.**
- 9. THE FMCS TO INCLUDE AT A MINIMUM, THE FOLLOWING PROGRAMS:**
- 9.01 9.1 TIME OF DAY SCHEDULING: OPERATE ALL EQUIPMENT BASED ON A TIME SCHEDULE PROGRAMMED THROUGH THE FMCS CENTRAL CLOCK SYSTEM.**
- 9.02 9.2 HOLIDAY SCHEDULING: PROGRAM SYSTEMS TO OPERATE ON THE NIGHT SCHEDULE DURING HOLIDAYS AND WEEKENDS. TEMPORARY SCHEDULING TO BE AVAILABLE ON THE JACE SCHEDULER.**
- 9.03 9.3 OPTIMUM START/STOP: BASED ON INDOOR AND OUTDOOR TEMPERATURES AND HISTORICAL DATA LOGGED BY THE ENERGY MANAGEMENT CONTROL SYSTEM, THE OPTIMUM START/STOP PROGRAM TO CALCULATE THE LEAD TIME TO TURN EQUIPMENT ON/OFF TO OPTIMIZE RUN TIMES WHILE MAINTAINING THE PROPER TEMPERATURE DURING OCCUPANCY.**
- 9.04 9.4 NIGHT SETBACK/SETUP: MAINTAIN A MINIMUM UNOCCUPIED BUILDING TEMPERATURE DURING THE HEATING SEASON AND A MAXIMUM TEMPERATURE DURING THE COOLING SEASON BY ENABLING THE REQUIRED SYSTEMS. OUTDOOR AIR DAMPERS TO REMAIN CLOSED DURING UNOCCUPIED OPERATION OF EQUIPMENT.**
- 10. ALL MONITORED POINTS PROVIDED IN THE CONTROL SYSTEM TO COMPLY WITH DALLAS ISD'S POINTS LIST AND BE LABELED ACCORDING TO THE SPECIFIED NAMING CONVENTION.**
- 11. ARCHITECT/ENGINEER TO INCLUDE THE FOLLOWING SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS RELATED TO THE FACILITY MANAGEMENT CONTROL SYSTEM IN THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS, AT A MINIMUM:**
- 11.01 11.1 CONTROL DRAWINGS WITH A CLEARLY DEFINED SYMBOLS LEGEND.**
- 11.02 11.2 SCHEMATIC DRAWING FOR EACH TYPE OF SYSTEM BEING CONTROLLED.**
- 11.03 11.3 FULL POINTS LIST DETAILING AND DEFINING ALL REQUIRED POINTS.**
- 11.04 11.4 SOFTWARE LICENSE FOR NETWORK MANAGEMENT TOOL.**
- 11.05 11.5 MATRIX WITH VAV BOX COUNT AND LIST OF MAJOR EQUIPMENT.**
- 11.06 11.6 SEQUENCES OF OPERATION FOR ALL EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS.**
- 12. THE SEQUENCES OF OPERATION IS TO INCLUDE, AT A MINIMUM, THE FOLLOWING ITEMS:**
- 12.01 12.1 CONSISTENCY WITH DALLAS ISD'S CURRENT ENERGY CONSERVATION PLAN.**



- 12.02 12.2 ALL INTERACTIONS AND INTERLOCKS WITH OTHER RELATED SYSTEMS.
- 12.03 12.3 DETAILED DELINEATION OF CONTROL BETWEEN ANY PACKAGED CONTROLS AND THE BUILDING AUTOMATION SYSTEM, LISTING WHAT POINTS THE FMCS MONITORS ONLY VS POINTS THE FMCS CONTROLS.
- 12.04 12.4 SEQUENCES FOR START-UP, WARM-UP, OCCUPIED, AND UNOCCUPIED PERIODS.
- 12.05 12.5 CAPACITY CONTROL AND EQUIPMENT STAGING SEQUENCES.
- 12.06 12.6 TEMPERATURE AND PRESSURE CONTROL.
- 12.07 12.7 DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF ALL CONTROL STRATEGIES SUCH AS ECONOMIZER, DEMAND LIMITING, HOT WATER RESET, ETC.
- 12.08 12.8 SEQUENCES FOR ALARMS AND EMERGENCY PROCEDURES.
- 12.09 12.9 RECOMMENDED VALUES FOR ALL ADJUSTABLE SETTINGS, SET-POINTS, AND PARAMETERS THAT ARE TO BE SET OR ADJUSTED BY OPERATING STAFF.
- 12.10 12.10 ALL OTHER CONTROL VALUES OR SETTINGS USED FOR TESTING AND/OR OPERATING EQUIPMENT.
- 13. DALLAS ISD MASTER CONTROLS LIST AND SEQUENCES IS A BASE DOCUMENT WHICH THE ARCHITECT/ENGINEER REQUESTS FROM DESIGN MANAGER AND MODIFIES FOR PROJECT SPECIFIC USE. SEQUENCES OF OPERATION SPELL OUT IN DETAIL THE START-UP, SHUTDOWN, NORMAL AND EMERGENCY OPERATING MODES, INTERLOCKS, SAFETIES, AND ANNUAL/AUTOMATIC RESETS FOR EACH SYSTEM. THE SPECIFICATION CLEARLY DIFFERENTIATES BETWEEN CONTROLLERS AND CONTROL SEQUENCES FURNISHED AND IMPLEMENTED VIA FACTORY FURNISHED ASSEMBLIES AND THOSE ACCOMPLISHED VIA THE BUILDING CONTROL NETWORK. CLEARLY DEFINE ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES OF THE VARIOUS TRADES AS RELATED TO THE CONTROLS SYSTEMS AND THEIR INTERFACES.
- 14. MDF/IDF ROOMS TO HAVE STANDALONE THERMOSTATS.
- 15. ALL MOTORIZED TWO-WAY CONTROL VALVES TO BE PRESSURE INDEPENDENT FOR INDEPENDENT ROOM CONTROL.
- 16. IN THE CHILLED AND HOT WATER PLANTS, ALL MOTORIZED VALVES TO HAVE POSITION SENSING FEEDBACK PROVIDED TO FMCS FOR TRUE POSITION MONITORING.
- 17. CONTROL ACTUATORS: ACCEPTABLE MANUFACTURERS: BELIMO OR BRAY.
- 18. PROVIDE TEMPERATURE SENSORS IN EACH CLASSROOM FOR ALL EQUIPMENT (VAV BOXES, UNITARY DX EQUIPMENT, ETC.).
- 19. TEMPERATURE SENSORS FOR HYDRONIC SINGLE ZONE AHU'S AND VAV BOXES TO HAVE A BLANK FACE.
- 20. TEMPERATURE SENSORS FOR DX SINGLE ZONE RTU SERVING A CLASSROOM TO HAVE A BLANK FACE WITH OCCUPANCY OVERRIDE BUTTON.
- 21. TEMPERATURE SENSORS FOR DX RTU SERVING AREAS SUCH AS ADMINISTRATION, GYMS, AUDITORIUMS, CAFETERIAS, KITCHENS, CHOIR, DANCE AND BAND TO HAVE LCD SCREEN WITH OCCUPANCY OVERRIDE AND SETPOINT ADJUSTMENT. THESE SENSORS TO HAVE TAMPER PROOF PROTECTIVE COVERS.
- 22. ALL DATABASE FILES AND FILES NECESSARY FOR SYSTEM ACCESS AND TROUBLESHOOTING, INCLUDING JACE STATION BACKUP FILES, TO BE LOADED ON A USB FLASH DRIVE, AND STORED WITHIN THE BUILDING CONTROLLER ENCLOSURE. BACKUP TO BE DONE AT SUPERVISORY SERVER AS WELL.
- 23. ALL CONTROLLER NODES WITHIN LNS DATABASE FILES OR JACE STATION FILES TO CONTAIN THE CORRESPONDING ROOM NUMBER FOR WHICH THEY SERVE. KEEP THIS INFORMATION VISIBLE IN THE NAVIGATION TREE.

SBLM Architects  
Project No: 023569.00

**24. WHERE ADVANCED ANALYTICAL SOFTWARE IS REQUIRED BY CODE, THE SYSTEM TO UTILIZE THE NIAGARA BASED ANALYTICS SOFTWARE. DALLAS ISD TO HAVE THE CAPABILITY TO DEACTIVATE SYSTEM IF NEEDED.**

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 09 23**  
**ENERGY MANAGEMENT CONTROL SYSTEM (BACNET IP/TRIDIUM)**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 01 Specifications and Section 23 00 00, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. It is the intent of this specification to describe the basic architecture and performance requirements of the Energy Management Control System (EMCS). The turn-key EMCS shall include all software including operator software, programming tools, graphics editor, all other available software programs, modules, or plug-ins offered by the DDC manufacturers, hardware, Control Units, Distributed Controllers, Unitary Controllers, Local Area Networks (LANs), sensors, modems, wiring, connectors, control devices, actuators, installation and calibration, supervision, adjustments and fine tuning necessary for a complete and fully operational system.
- B. All systems shall be complete true stand-alone systems.
- C. System protocol shall be BACnet IP. LonWorks, BACnet MS/TP or proprietary protocol software is not allowed.
- D. Everything shall be reprogrammed through software without change of any hardware. The owner shall have all the tools necessary to reprogram without any additional costs.
- E. EMCS shall have backward and forward compatibility.
- F. Systems shall be furnished and installed complete in all respects, including any and all equipment, controls, wiring, instrumentation, enclosures, labor, engineering, training, commissioning, programming, supervision, calibration, coordination with other trades, etc. No information given in (or omitted from) these specifications shall relieve the contractor of this absolute requirement. Include all associated electrical work except as noted. Work includes furnishing of all labor, superintendence, materials, tools, equipment and sources necessary for the complete installation or modification of the following systems as herein specified. It is the intent of these specifications that the Contractor shall furnish and install the systems complete in every respect and ready to operate. All equipment, miscellaneous items and accessories required for such installation and for the correct and convenient operation of the entire installation whether or not each such item or accessory is shown on the plans or mentioned in these specifications shall be furnished and installed.
- G. Should discrepancies or ambiguities arise within these specifications, the most stringent condition with regard to cost shall govern the bid. Obtain clarification from the Engineer prior to purchasing equipment and proceeding with the work.
- H. Where drawings are provided as part of or supplement to these specifications, such drawings are inherently schematic only and not intended to convey all controls, wiring, installation, details, etc. It shall be the responsibility of the EMCS contractor to verify that control approaches presented are appropriate for the HVAC systems involved, and that bids include all work described, specified, or otherwise necessary for a complete and functioning system.
- I. Schedule: Contractor acknowledges that submission of bid constitutes agreement with and conformance to the completion dates.
- J. Codes, Permits, and Fees: This contractor shall comply with all local, state and national codes, and shall secure and pay or all applicable costs, fees, permits, and licenses. No additional costs shall be allowed for these items.
- K. Other Conditions:

1. Safety: Execute all work with the highest regard to safety. Comply with all laws governing safety, including the "Occupational Safety and Health Standards" and the "Safety and Health Regulations for Construction", State and federal. All applicable power tools used during construction shall have current approval under an approved Equipment Grounding Program, and shall bear the tag relating such. Contractor is solely responsible for all means and methods.
  2. Coordination and Supervision: Each bid shall include the necessary detail and interconnection work to coordinate his work with the work of other trades. Contractor shall keep competent supervisory personnel on the job whenever work is being performed which affects his trade.
  3. Storage of Materials: Each Contractor shall provide temporary storage facilities suitable for equipment stored at the job site. Storage facilities shall be weatherproof and lockable as required.
  4. Protection of Building and Materials: Each Contractor shall take necessary precautions to prevent damage to existing buildings and to work of other trades.
  5. Observations: Site observation by Owner or Engineer is for express purpose of verifying compliance by Contractor with Contract Documents, and shall not be construed as construction supervision nor indication of approval of manner or location in which work is being performed as being safe practice or place.
  6. Contractor is reminded that he shall also comply with all respects to the Invitation to Bid, General Conditions, Supplementary Conditions, Notice of Bidders, Instructions to Bidders, and all other governing parts of these specifications and the contract documents. These sections are included as part of the contract.
  7. Where the term "Contractor" is used within these specifications, it shall be understood to mean an approved controls manufacturer/contractor, and facility management systems contractor.
- L. Equipment and Software Updates/Upgrades:
1. Equipment: All equipment, components, parts, materials, etc. provided throughout the period of Work (as governed in the Agreement) shall be fully compatible with all other equipment, etc. provided at any other time throughout the period of Work. Should updated versions of equipment be provided which are not fully compatible with earlier equipment provided, Contractor shall replace earlier equipment with the later version at no cost to Owner.
  2. Software: All software upgrades applicable to system and offered by the manufacturer/contractor for this system shall be provided at no cost to the Owner throughout the period of work. This no cost upgrade shall include installation, programming, modifications to field equipment, data base revisions, training, etc. as appropriate.
- M. The Engineer shall reserve all authority regarding approval, conditional approval, or rejection of systems not fully complying with these specifications.

### **1.03 WORK INCLUDED**

- A. The EMCS shall be a totally Native BACnet IP based system, based on a distributed control system in accordance with this specification. All building controllers, application controllers, and all input/output devices shall communicate using the protocols and network standards as defined by the latest ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 135, BACnet. In other words, all controllers, including unitary controllers, shall be Native BACnet IP devices. No gateways shall be used for communication to controllers installed under this section. Gateways may be used for communication to existing systems or to systems installed under other sections.
- B. The owner will provide reserved DHCP addresses and any other network configuration information necessary to each control contractor for the purpose of configuring each JACE on the owner network. The controls contractor shall coordinate the IP addressed for each JACE. It

shall be the responsibility of each control contractor to coordinate with the owner for network connectivity.

- C. Contractor is responsible for taking screenshots of existing controls system to document condition of existing system before additional work is performed.
- D. The controls contractors shall supply, install, configure and program at least one JACE for each building. It shall be the control contractor's responsibility to determine how many JACE controllers will be required to limit congestion and to maintain system reliability and stability. No JACE shall be overloaded past 80% memory, CPU and/or space. Contractor to provide an additional JACE and rework communication trunks as needed to unload JACE. The JACE or JACEs will be the primary operator interface for the building. All JACEs must be supplied with open licenses and be configured to work with any other Niagara JACE or N4 Supervisor. Configure each JACE with all User Interface, Connectivity, and Embedded Workbench tools and licenses to allow for standalone operation as well as integration into a future enterprise system. All JACEs shall also be supplied with UPS, battery backup or with SRAM Data Recovery Service with provisions for automatic restart and database backup in case of power failure. Additionally, all drivers necessary and required to function with the installed control components within the scope of work for each building shall be the responsibility of the control contractor.
- E. The Energy Management Control System (EMCS) application program shall be written to communicate specifically utilizing BACnet IP protocols. Software shall include password protection, alarming, logging of historical data, full graphics including animation, full suite of field engineering tools including graphical programming and applications. Systems using operating systems other than that described above are strictly prohibited.
- F. Additions and Renovations work where existing controls components are to remain in selected areas of building: New additions shall be provided with new JACE. All new and existing equipment receiving new controls shall be BACnet IP. Contractor shall provide a new home run to serve the new addition's JACE, and/or provide a new home run to all new and existing equipment receiving new controls. Contractor shall provide all hardware, wiring, components, etc. required.
- G. When replacing existing AHUs that have 3-way valves and the hydronic piping is to remain, provide new 3-way valves. This is only applicable to renovation work with existing piping, all new construction to utilize 2-way pressure independent valves.
- H. This system is to control all mechanical equipment, including all unitary equipment such as VAV boxes, heat pumps, fan-coils, AC units, etc. and all air handlers, boilers, chillers, and any other listed equipment. All application controllers for every terminal unit (VAV, HP, UV, etc.) air handler, all central plant equipment, and any other piece of controlled equipment shall be fully programmable.
- I. Provide all necessary BACnet-compliant hardware and software to meet the system's functional specifications. Provide Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS) for Windows-based control software and every controller in system, including unitary controllers.
- J. Incorporate and integrate all new JACEs, controllers, graphics and software into Owner's supervisory system and dashboard.
- K. Prepare individual hardware layouts, interconnection drawings, and software configuration from project design data.
- L. Implement the detailed design for all analog and binary objects, system databases, graphic displays, logs, and management reports based on control descriptions, logic drawings, configuration data, and bid documents.
- M. Design, provide, and install all equipment cabinets, panels, data communication network cables needed, and all associated hardware.

- N. Provide and install all interconnecting cables between supplied cabinets, application controllers, and input/output devices.
- O. Provide and install all interconnecting cables between all operator's terminals and peripheral devices (such as printers, etc.) supplied under this section.
- P. Provide complete manufacturer's specifications for all items that are supplied. Include vendor name of every item supplied.
- Q. Provide supervisory specialists and technicians at the job site to assist in all phases of system installation, startup, and commissioning.
- R. Provide a comprehensive operator and technician training program as described herein.
- S. Provide as-built documentation, operator's terminal software, diagrams, and all other associated project operational documentation (such as technical manuals) on approved media, the sum total of which accurately represents the final system.
- T. Provide new sensors, dampers, valves, and install only new electronic actuators. No used components shall be used as any part or piece of installed system.
- U. Unless otherwise specified, all products shall be of single manufacturer where possible with substitutions approved by Engineer/Owner.
- V. Provide all indicating devices, interface equipment, and other apparatus required to operate mechanical system and to perform functions specified and to operate other items specified.
- W. Workmanship:
  - 1. Contractor shall use only thoroughly trained and experienced workmen completely familiar with the items required and with the manufacturers recommended methods of installation. In all respects, the workmanship shall be of the highest grade, and all construction shall be done according to the best practice of the trade. Unless otherwise noted, conduit shall be concealed and installed square to the building lines. Any work not meeting these requirements shall be replaced or rebuilt without extra expense to the Owner.
  - 2. Bidder shall perform sufficient site investigations to include all requirements described in the construction documents. Bids shall include, at Bidder's discretion, costs related to site verifications for renovation projects. No additional costs shall be allowed for such items.

#### **1.04 N4 SUPERVISOR STRUCTURE**

- A. The N4 Supervisor shall be utilized for aggregation of the campuses within this contract and in the future for further campuses.
- B. The Campus Wide N4 Supervisor shall be responsible for the following services:
  - 1. Campus Wide Login information such as Users, Navigation
  - 2. Graphics Files necessary for central login and navigation
  - 3. Graphics files necessary for aggregation of information from the district wide system.
  - 4. Critical alarm console for display of critical alarms from the district wide system.
  - 5. Uploaded histories, data storage and retrieval
  - 6. Automatic back-up of each Site N4 Supervisor or JACE.
- C. For campuses where multiple JACE controllers are needed, a Site N4 Supervisor or a JACE configured as a Supervisor for the subordinate JACE controllers shall be provided at each campus.
- D. The Site N4 Supervisor shall be responsible for the following services:
  - 1. Site Login information such as Users, Navigation
  - 2. Campus-specific graphics files and user interface graphics.
  - 3. Local alarm console for display of campus specific alarms.
  - 4. Uploaded histories, data storage and retrieval of campus specific trends.
  - 5. Email service for alarm notification of critical alarms.

6. Automatic back-up of each JACE at the campus.
  7. Scheduling of equipment at the campus.
- E. For campuses where multiple JACE controllers are needed, the JACEs shall be responsible for the following services:
1. Generation of alarms
  2. Generation of data history on monitored points.
  3. All DDC logic. Field controllers would still contain their associated logic.
- F. For campuses where a single JACE controller is needed, the JACE shall be responsible for the following services:
1. Site Login information such as Users, Navigation
  2. Campus-specific graphics files and user interface graphics.
  3. Local alarm console for display of campus specific alarms.
  4. Uploaded histories, data storage and retrieval of campus specific trends.
  5. Email service for alarm notification of critical alarms.
  6. Scheduling of equipment at the campus.

### 1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. Drawings
1. The system supplier shall submit detailed complete, engineered drawings, control sequence, and bill of materials for approval.
  2. Drawings shall be submitted in the following standard sizes: 11" x 17" (ANSI B).
  3. Complete sets (copies) of submittal drawings shall be provided.
  4. Drawings shall be available on CD, flash drive or digital copy.
- B. System Documentation
1. Include the following in submittal package:
    - a. Data sheets for all pieces of equipment.
    - b. System configuration diagrams in simplified block format.
    - c. All input/output object listings and an alarm point summary listing.
    - d. Electrical drawings that show all system internal and external connection points, terminal block layouts, and terminal identification.
    - e. Complete bill of materials, valve schedule and damper schedule.
    - f. Manufacturer's instructions and drawings for installation, maintenance, and operation of all purchased items.
    - g. Overall system operation and maintenance instructions including preventive maintenance and troubleshooting instructions.
- C. For all system elements - operator's workstation(s), building controller(s), application controllers, routers, and repeaters, provide BACnet Protocol Implementation Conformance Statements (PICS).
- D. Provide complete description and documentation of any proprietary (non-BACnet) services and/or objects used in the system.
- E. Drawings and Manuals:
1. Upon completion of the work, the Contractor shall provide the Owner with "record" layouts for the system. Layouts shall indicate all equipment and the function of each item shall be indicated.
  2. Operating instructions and as-built system flow diagrams and drawings shall be prepared, bound and delivered to the Owner. Each sensor, relay, switch, motor, controller, indicator (when inside panel), and item of equipment, etc., shall be identified with a number or mark identical to one which shall be tagged on each item. Large items of equipment may be identified by a suitable symbol listed in a legend on the control diagram.

### **1.06 EMCS CONTRACTOR QUALIFICATION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. The Energy Management Control System Manufacturer/Contractor, to be acceptable to this project, must have had an established engineering and service office serving the Owner's area for a minimum of five years prior to bid date of this project and be the authorized installing contractor for the manufacturer of the BACnet components. This office shall have a staff of factory trained technicians fully capable of rendering training, instruction, calibration procedures and routine and emergency maintenance service on all system components furnished.
- B. Installers shall have not less than five years' experience with electronic and pneumatic controls.
- C. The entire system shall be provided by a qualified and approved Controls Manufacturer/Contractor. It shall be designed by engineers and installed by competent technicians, all of which are regularly employed by the manufacturer of the control equipment. The Manufacturer/Contractor shall maintain permanent local facilities for engineering, installation, and 24 hour maintenance and service. Submit required Qualifications Form as specified. The manufacturer shall provide evidence of the ability to support and service the work in the Owner's facilities.
- D. The Bidder/Contractor shall be certified by the manufacturer of the equipment and have factory trained installers
- E. Equipment and performance are intended as a standard of quality, but not as a means of excluding other approved Manufacturers/Control Contractors.

### **1.07 GRAPHICS**

- A. EMCS contractor is responsible for coordinating with owner and setting up the correct graphic templates for each building and piece of equipment. If contractor fails to do so, contractor shall make all changes needed to meet graphic template at no extra cost to owner
- B. All graphical interfaces shall use standard Tridium devices that are available with the JACE. No proprietary graphics shall be utilized on these projects.
- C. The graphics provided shall be part of the Control Contractor's proposal. The purchase of additional licenses or graphics shall not be required for a complete and working graphical interface including dashboard or control panels, trends, alarms, etc.

### **1.08 WARRANTY**

- A. The temperature control contractor shall guarantee all workmanship and material in the installed temperature regulation system for a period of one (1) year, such guarantee dating from the date of final acceptance of the entire air conditioning system by the Architect/Engineer.
- B. This warranty shall cover the repair or replacement without additional costs to the Owner of any defective materials, parts, etc. of facility workmanship.
- C. During the warranty period, the temperature controls contractor shall respond to calls for warranty service within eight (8) working hours. Emergency service shall be obtainable within four (4) hours of notification by the Owner. Emergency service shall be obtainable on a 24 hour basis, seven (7) days per week.
- D. The temperature control contractor's office shall be within a 150-mile radius of the job site.
- E. Warranty Access:
  - 1. The Owner shall grant to the Contractor, reasonable access to the EMCS system during the warranty period. The owner shall provide, at no cost to the contractor, remote software access to an on-site computer or VPN access for the following functions:
    - a. Access to the entire facility control system by the contractor to provide service and diagnostic support.
- F. Service:



1. All service of the system shall be furnished by the Contractor, at no cost to the Owner, for a period of one (1) year, concurrent with the warranty period specified above.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 ACCEPTABLE EMCS VENDORS**

- A. Distech by JMS
- B. Distech by TD Industries

### **2.02 MATERIALS**

- A. General: All materials and equipment used shall be standard components, of regular manufacture for this application. All systems and components shall have been thoroughly tested and proven in actual use.
- B. Exceptions to the specification will qualify bid as unacceptable.

### **2.03 OPERATOR'S SERVER AND WORKSTATION**

- A. The new graphics, hardware and software shall be fully integrated to the owners front end system and workstation. Floor plan and interactive color graphics shall be provided for the school with each zone providing color indication of the zone comfort level. In addition to the floor plan graphic, each piece of controlled equipment shall be represented by a graphic that is accessible by clicking on the zone or indicated piece of equipment. All points shall be available on the graphic.
- B. Software:
  1. EMS software shall be provided as an all-inclusive package. Software package shall allow the owner to have all the software modules/software tools that the controls contractor has for installation. The district shall have the software tools to be 100% self-sufficient when it comes to programming the systems, modifying DDC and graphics, creating reports and trends, etc. Provisions to provide software at each school campus at no additional charge in the future must be included as a part of this bid.
- C. Software shall include the following, but not be limited to:
  1. DDC Programming tool
  2. All points binding and interoperability software to make the system truly open
  3. Graphic editing tools
  4. Energy management tools
  5. Trending tools
- D. Graphics:
  1. Graphics pages shall consist of the following graphics at a minimum:
  2. District Map
  3. Floor plans (typical of every school for both space temperature and humidity)
  4. Animated Unit Summary Pages (one per piece of HVAC equipment)
  5. Text Summary Pages (one per piece HVAC equipment)
  6. Time Schedule Pages
  7. Run times Page
  8. Graphics Editing Mode
  9. Trendlog Page
- E. General structure of workstation interaction shall be a standard client/server relationship. Server shall be used to archive data and store system database. Clients shall access server for all archived data. Each client shall include flexibility to access graphics from server or local drive. Server shall support a minimum of 50 clients simultaneously. Provide software licenses for server and 20 clients.
- F. Displays:

1. Operator's workstation shall display all data associated with project as called out on drawings and/or object type list supplied. Graphic files shall be created using digital, full color photographs of system installation, AutoCAD or Visio drawing files of field installation drawings and wiring diagrams from as-built drawings. Operator's workstation shall display all data using three-dimensional graphic representations of all mechanical equipment. System shall be capable of displaying graphic file, text, and dynamic object data together on each display and shall include animation. Information shall be labeled with descriptors and shall be shown with the appropriate engineering units.
  2. All displays and programming shall be generated and customized by the local EMCS supplier and installer. Systems requiring factory programming for graphics or DDC logic are specifically prohibited.
  3. Analog objects may also be assigned to an area of a system graphic, where the color of the defined area changes based on the analog object's value. For example, an area of a floor-plan graphic served by a single control zone would change color with respect to the temperature of the zone or its deviation from setpoint.
- G. Password Protection:
1. Provide security system that prevents unauthorized use unless operator is logged on. Access shall be limited to operator's assigned functions when user is logged on. This includes displays as outlined above.
  2. Each operator's terminal shall provide security for 200 users minimum. Each user shall have an individual User ID, User Name and Password.
- H. Operator Activity Log:
1. Operator Activity Log shall be included with system that tracks all operator changes and activities. System shall track what is changed in the system, who performed this change, date and time of system activity and value of the change before and after operator activity. Operator shall be able to display all activity, sort the changes by user and also by operation.
  2. Log shall be gathered and archived to hard drive on operator workstation as needed. Operator shall be able to export data for display and sorting in a spreadsheet.
  3. Any displayed data, that is changeable by the operator, may be selected using the right mouse button and the operator activity log shall then be selectable on the screen. Selection of the operator activity log using this method shall show all operator changes of just that displayed data.
- I. Scheduling:
1. Operator's workstation shall show all information in easy-to-read daily format including calendar of this month and next. All schedules shall show actual ON/OFF times for day based on scheduling priority. Priority for scheduling shall be events, holidays and daily with events being the highest.
  2. Holiday and special event schedules shall display data in calendar format. Operator shall be able to schedule holidays and special events directly from these calendars.
  3. Operator shall be able to change all information for a given weekly or exception schedule if logged on with the appropriate security access.
- J. Alarm Indication and Handling:
1. Operator's workstation shall provide audible, visual, and printed means of alarm indication. The alarm dialog box shall always become the top dialog box regardless of the application(s), currently running.
  2. System shall provide log of alarm messages. Alarm log shall be archived to the hard disk of the system operator's terminal. Each entry shall include a description of the event-initiating object generating the alarm.
  3. Alarm messages shall be in user-definable text (English or other specified language) and shall be entered either at the operator's terminal or via remote communication.

K. Trendlog Information:

1. System server shall periodically gather historically recorded data stored in the building controllers and field controllers and archive the information. Archived files shall be appended with new sample data, allowing samples to be accumulated. Systems that write over archived data shall not be allowed, unless limited file size is specified. Samples may be viewed at the operator's workstation. Operator shall be able to scroll through all trended data. All trendlog information shall be displayed in standard engineering units.
2. Software shall be included that is capable of graphing the trend logged object data. Software shall be capable of creating two-axis (x, y) graphs that display up to ten object types at the same time in different colors.
3. Operator shall be able to change trend log setup information. This includes the information to be logged as well as the interval at which it is to be logged. All input, output, and value object types in the system may be logged.

L. Field Engineering Tools:

1. Operator's workstation software shall include field-engineering tools for programming all controllers supplied. All controllers shall be programmed using graphical tools that allow the user to connect function blocks on screen that provide sequencing of all control logic. Function blocks shall be represented by graphical displays that are easily identified and distinct from other types of blocks. Graphical programming that uses simple rectangles and squares is not acceptable.

**2.04 NETWORK AREA CONTROLLER (NAC)**

- A. Network Area Controller (NAC) shall be equal to a Tridium Niagara N4 JACE 8000 or greater. The NAC shall be provided with the necessary BACnet hardware and software for complete integration and functionality.
- B. The Network Area Controller (NAC) shall provide the interface between the WAN and the field control devices, and provide global supervisory control functions over the control devices connected to the NAC. It shall be capable of executing application control programs to provide:
  1. Calendar functions
  2. Scheduling
  3. Trending
  4. Alarm monitoring and routing
  5. Time synchronization
  6. Integration of BACnet controller data
  7. Network Management functions for all BACnet based devices
- C. The NAC must provide or be provided with the following hardware features as a minimum:
  1. Two Ethernet Ports - 10/100 Mbps
  2. One RS-232 Port
  3. One RS-485 Port
  4. One Interface Port - 78 KB FTT-10A
  5. Battery Backup or UPS
  6. Flash memory for long term data backup (If battery backup or flash memory is not supplied, the controller must contain a hard disk with at least 1 gigabyte storage capacity)
  7. The NAC must be capable of operation over a temperature range of 0 to 55°C
  8. The NAC must be capable of withstanding storage temperatures of between 0 and 70°C
  9. The NAC must be capable of operating over a humidity range of 5 to 95% RH, non-condensing
- D. Event Alarm Notification Actions
  1. The NAC shall provide alarm recognition, storage; routing, management, and analysis to supplement distributed capabilities of equipment or application specific controllers.

2. The NAC shall be able to route any alarm condition to any defined user location whether connected to a local network or remote via dial-up telephone connection, or wide-area network.
  3. Provide for the creation of a minimum of eight of alarm classes for the purpose of routing types and or classes of alarms, i.e.: Critical, HVAC, Energy, etc.
  4. Provide timed (schedule) routing of alarms by class, object, group, or node.
  5. Provide alarm generation from binary object "runtime" and /or event counts for equipment maintenance. The user shall be able to reset runtime or event count values with appropriate password control.
- E. The EMCS contractor shall coordinate with owner and setup alarms for each HVAC system type.
- F. Control equipment and network failures shall be treated as alarms and annunciated.
- G. Alarms shall be annunciated in any of the following manners as defined by the user:
1. Screen message text
  2. Email of the complete alarm message to multiple recipients. Provide the ability to route and email alarms based on:
    - a. Day of week
    - b. Time of day
    - c. Recipient
  3. Pagers via paging services that initiate a page on receipt of email message
  4. Graphic with flashing alarm object(s)
  5. Printed message, routed directly to a dedicated alarm printer
- H. Alarm actions may be initiated by user defined programmable objects created for that purpose.
- I. Defined users shall be given proper access to acknowledge any alarm, or specific types or classes of alarms defined by the user.

## **2.05 SOFTWARE LICENSE AGREEMENT**

- A. The controls contractor shall sign a copy of the manufacturer's standard software and firmware licensing agreement as a condition of this contract. Such license shall grant use of all programs and application software as defined by the manufacturer's license agreement, but shall protect the manufacturer's rights to disclosure of trade secrets contained within such software.
- B. The open license must contain the following statements:
1. accept.station.in="\*\*"
  2. accept.station.out="\*\*"
  3. accept.wb.in="\*\*"
  4. accept.wb.out="\*\*"
- C. Provide a printed copy of the license agreement as part of the submittal package.

## **2.06 WEB BROWSER CLIENTS**

- A. The system shall be capable of supporting an unlimited number of clients using a standard Web browser such as Internet Explorer™ or Mozilla Firefox™. Systems requiring additional software (to enable a standard Web browser) to be resident on the client machine, or manufacture-specific browsers shall not be acceptable.
- B. The Web browser software shall run on any operating system and system configuration that is supported by the Web browser. Systems that require specific machine requirements in terms of processor speed, memory, etc., in order to allow the Web browser to function with the EMCS, shall not be acceptable.
- C. The Web browser shall provide the same view of the system, in terms of graphics, schedules, calendars, logs, etc., and provide the same interface methodology as is provided by the

Graphical User Interface. Systems that require different views or that require different means of interacting with objects such as schedules, or logs, shall not be permitted.

## **2.07 SYSTEM PROGRAMMING**

- A. The Graphical User Interface software (GUI) shall provide the ability to perform system programming and graphic display engineering as part of a complete software package. Access to the programming functions and features of the GUI shall be through password access as assigned by the system administrator.
- B. Programming Methods
  - 1. Provide the capability to copy objects from the supplied libraries, or from a user-defined library to the user's application. Objects shall be linked by a graphical linking scheme by dragging a link from one object to another. Object links will support one-to-one, many-to-one, or one-to-many relationships. Linked objects shall maintain their connections to other objects regardless of where they are positioned on the page and shall show link identification for links to objects on other pages for easy identification. Links will vary in color depending on the type of link, i.e., internal, external, hardware, etc.
  - 2. Configuration of each object will be done through the object's property sheet using fill-in the blank fields, list boxes, and selection buttons. Use of custom programming, scripting language, or a manufacturer-specific procedural language for configuration will not be accepted.
  - 3. The software shall provide the ability to view the logic in a monitor mode. When on-line, the monitor mode shall provide the ability to view the logic in real time for easy diagnosis of the logic execution. When off-line (debug), the monitor mode shall allow the user to set values to inputs and monitor the logic for diagnosing execution before it is applied to the system.
  - 4. All programming shall be done in real-time. Systems requiring the uploading, editing, and downloading of database objects shall not be allowed.
  - 5. The system shall support object duplication within a customer's database. An application, once configured, can be copied and pasted for easy re-use and duplication. All links, other than to the hardware, shall be maintained during duplication.

## **2.08 CENTRAL PLANT AND AIR HANDLER APPLICATION CONTROLLERS**

- A. General:
  - 1. Provide one or more Native BACnet IP application controllers for each air handler and central plant control that adequately cover all objects listed in object list. All controllers shall interface to building controller via BACnet IP protocol. No gateways shall be used. Controllers shall include input, output and self-contained logic program as needed for complete control of units. Controllers shall be fully programmable using graphical programming blocks. Programming tool shall be resident on operator workstation or JACE. No auxiliary or non-BACnet controllers shall be used.
- B. All program sequences shall be stored on board application controller in EEPROM. No batteries shall be needed to retain logic program. Programming of application controller shall be completely modifiable in the field over installed BACnet LANs or remotely via Ethernet connection.

## **2.09 EXPANDABLE APPLICATION CONTROLLERS**

- A. General:
  - 1. Expandable application controller shall be capable of providing control strategies for the system based on information from any or all connected inputs. The program that implements these strategies shall be completely flexible and user definable. Any systems utilizing factory pre-programmed global strategies that cannot be modified by field personnel on-site via simple download are not acceptable. Changing global strategies via firmware changes is also unacceptable. Program execution of controller shall be a

minimum of once per second.

2. Each and every analog and binary value shall support standard BACnet priority arrays. All flowcharts shall be generated and automatically downloaded to controller. No re-entry of database information shall be necessary.
3. The onboard, battery-backed real time clock must support schedule operations and trendlogs.

## **2.10 TERMINAL UNIT APPLICATION CONTROLLERS (ROOFTOPS, HEAT PUMPS, AC UNITS, FAN COILS)**

### **A. General:**

1. Provide one Native BACnet application controller for each piece of unitary mechanical equipment that adequately covers all objects listed in object list for unit. All controllers shall interface to building controller via BACnet IP protocol. No gateways shall be used. Controllers shall include input, output and self-contained logic program as needed for complete control of unit.

## **2.11 VAV BOX CONTROLLERS**

### **A. General:**

1. Provide one Native BACnet application controller for each VAV box that adequately covers all objects listed in object list for unit. All controllers shall interface to building controller via BACnet IP protocol. No gateways shall be used. Controllers shall include on board CFM flow sensor, inputs, outputs and programmable, self-contained logic program as needed for control of units.

## **2.12 ELECTRONIC ACTUATORS**

### **A. General:**

1. Shall be Electric unless otherwise specified. Shall be manufactured by Belimo. Five-year manufacturer's warranty. Two-year unconditional and three-year product defect from date of installation.
2. Furnish a Freeze-stat and install "Hard Wire" interlock to disconnect the mechanical spring return actuator power circuit for fail-safe operation. Use of the control signal to drive the actuators closed is not acceptable.
3. VAV box damper actuation shall be Floating type or Analog (2-10vdc) and provide to VAV box manufactured for factory installation.
4. Booster-heat valve actuation shall be Floating type or Analog (2-10vdc).
5. Primary valve control shall be Analog (2-10vdc).
6. UL Listed Standard 873 and Canadian Standards association Class 481302 shall certify Actuators.
7. Mechanical spring shall be provided when specified. Capacitors or other non-mechanical forms of fail-safe are not acceptable.
8. Position indicator device shall be installed and made visible to the exposed side of the Actuator. For damper short shaft mounting, a separate indicator shall be provided to the exposed side of the Actuator.
9. Overload Protection: Actuators shall provide protection against actuator burnout by using an internal current limiting circuit or digital motor rotation sensing circuit. Circuit shall insure that actuators cannot burn out due to stalled damper or mechanical and electrical paralleling. End switches to deactivate the actuator at the end of rotation are acceptable only for Butterfly Valve actuators.
10. A push button gearbox release shall be provided for all non-spring actuators.
11. Modulating actuators shall be 24VAC and consume 10VA power or less.
12. Conduit connectors are required when specified and when code requires it.

### **B. Damper Actuators:**

1. Electronic damper actuators shall be direct-coupled rotary type, suitable for mounting directly on the damper end shaft. Electronic damper actuators shall be properly sized to provide sufficient torque to position the damper throughout its operating range. Damper actuators used on economizer and/or outside air dampers shall be spring return.
  2. Terminal unit damper actuators shall be electric, low voltage, utilizing floating control.
  3. Outside Air and Exhaust Air Damper Actuators shall be Mechanical Spring Return. Capacitors or other non-mechanical forms of fail-safe are not acceptable. The actuator mounting arrangement and spring return feature shall permit normally open or normally closed positions of the damper as required.
  4. Economizer Actuators shall be provided and installed by EMCS contractor. Actuators shall utilize Analog control 2-10 VDC and shall give position feedback for FDD monitoring. Floating control is not acceptable. Actuators shall be Mechanical Spring Return. Equal to Belimo LF-24-SR.
  5. Electric damper actuators (including VAV box actuators) shall be direct shaft mounted and use a V-bolt and toothed V-clamp causing a cold weld effect for positive gripping. Single bolt or setscrew type fasteners are not acceptable.
  6. One electronic actuator shall be direct shaft mounted per damper section. No connecting rods or jackshafts shall be needed. Small outside air and return air economizer dampers may be mechanically linked together if one actuator has sufficient torque to drive both and damper drive shafts are both horizontal installed.
  7. Multi-section dampers with electric actuators shall be arranged so that each damper section operates individually. One electronic actuator shall be direct shaft mounted per damper section.
- C. Valve Actuators ½" to 6":
1. Electronic valve actuators shall be suitable for direct-coupled mounting to the valve bonnet. Valve actuators shall be properly sized to provide sufficient torque to position the valve throughout its operating range. Where butterfly valves are specified, double acting non-spring return actuators may be used. Unless otherwise stated, provide normally open valves for heating water applications and normally closed valves for chilled water applications.
  2. Terminal unit reheat valve actuators shall be suitable for direct-coupled mounting to the valve bonnet. Valve actuators shall be properly sized to provide sufficient torque to position the valve throughout its operating range. Non-spring return tri-state floating valve actuators may be used on terminal units where the valve is less than 1 inch.
  3. Mechanical spring shall be provided on all actuators for pre-heat coil and actuators for AHU heating or cooling coil when units are mounted outside. Capacitors or other non-mechanical forms of fail-safe are not acceptable.
  4. All zone service actuators shall be non-spring return unless otherwise specified.
  5. The valve actuator shall be capable of providing the minimum torque required for proper valve close off for the required application.
  6. All control valves actuators shall have an attached 3-foot cable for easy installation to a junction box.
  7. Override handle and gearbox release shall be provided for all non-spring return valve actuators.
- D. Butterfly Valve Industrial Actuators:
1. Bray or Belimo are acceptable manufacturers.
  2. Actuators shall be approved under Canadian Standards Association or other Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory to UL standards. CSA Class 4813 02 or equal. Enclosure shall be NEMA 4 (weatherproof) enclosure and will have an industrial quality coating.
  3. Actuator shall have a motor rated for continuous duty. The motor shall be fractional horsepower; permanent split capacitor type designed to operate on a 120 VAC, 1-phase,

60 Hz supply. Two adjustable cam actuated end travel limit switches shall be provided to control direction of travel. A self-resetting thermal switch shall be imbedded in the motor for overload protection.

4. Reduction gearing shall be designed to withstand the actual motor stall torque. Gears shall be hardened alloy steel, permanently lubricated. A self-locking gear assembly or a brake shall be supplied.
5. Actuator shall have a 6 ft wiring harness provided for ease in field wiring (above 1500 in-lbs). Two adjustable SPDT cam-actuated auxiliary switches, rated at 250 VAC shall be provided for indication of open and closed position. Actuator shall have heater and thermostat to minimize condensation within the actuator housing.
6. Actuator shall be equipped with a hand wheel for manual override to permit operation of the valve in the event of electrical power failure or system malfunction. Hand wheel must be permanently attached to the actuator and when in manual operation electrical power to the actuator will be permanently interrupted. The hand wheel will not rotate while the actuator is electrically driven.
7. The actuator shall be Analog, floating, or two position as called out in the control sequence of operation. All Analog valves shall be positive positioning and respond to a 0-10 VDC or 2-10 VDC or adjustable signal as required. Analog actuators shall have a digital control card allowing any voltage input for control and any DC voltage feedback signal for position indication.
8. Control loops shall cause productive actuation with each movement of the actuator and actuators shall modulate at a rate which is stable and responsive. Actuator movement shall not occur before the effects of previous movement have affected the sensor.
9. Actuator shall have capability of signaling a trouble alarm when the actuator Stop-Go Ratio exceeds 30%.

### **2.13 DAMPERS AND VALVES**

#### **A. Control Dampers:**

1. Control Air dampers shall be parallel blade for two-position control and opposed blade for modulating control applications. Dampers shall be galvanized with nylon bearings. Blade edge and tip seals shall be included for all dampers. Leakage through the damper shall not exceed 4 CFM per square foot at 1" w.c. Blades shall be 16-gauge minimum and 10" wide maximum and frame shall be of welded channel iron. Dampers over 48" wide shall be equipped with a jackshaft to provide sufficient force throughout the intended operating range.
2. All dampers used for modulating service shall be opposed blade type arrange for normally open or normally closed operation as required. The damper is to be sized so that when wide open the pressure drop is a sufficient amount of its close-off pressure drop for effective throttling.
3. All dampers used for two-position or open-close control shall be parallel blade type arranged for normally open or closed operation as required.
4. Damper linkage hardware shall be constructed of aluminum or corrosion resistant zinc and nickel-plated steel and furnished as follows:
  - a. Bearing support bracket and drive blade pin extension shall be provided for each damper section. Sheet metal contractor shall install bearing support bracket and drive blade pin extension. Sheet metal contractor shall provide permanent indication of blade position by scratching or marking the visible end of the drive blade pin extension.
  - b. Drive pin may be round only if V-bolt and toothed V-clamp is used to cause a cold weld effect for positive gripping. For single bolt or set-screw type actuator fasteners, round damper pin shafts must be milled with at least one side flat to avoid slippage.

#### **B. Multiple Section Dampers:**



1. Size damper sections based on actuator manufacturers specific recommendations for face velocity, differential pressure and damper type. In general:
    - a. Damper section shall not exceed 24 ft-sq. with face velocity £ 1500 FPM.
    - b. Damper section shall not exceed 18 ft-sq. with face velocity £ 2500 FPM.
    - c. Damper section shall not exceed 13 ft-sq. with face velocity £ 3000 FPM.
  2. Damper manufacturer shall supply alignment plates for all multi-section dampers.
  3. Multiple section dampers of two or more shall be arranged to allow actuators to be direct shaft mounted on the outside of the duct.
  4. Multiple section dampers of three or more sections wide shall be arranged with a 3-sided vertical channel (8" wide by 6" deep) within the duct or fan housing and between adjacent damper sections. Vertical channel shall be anchored at the top and bottom to the fan housing or building structure for support. The sides of each damper frame shall be connected to the channels. Holes in the channel shall allow damper drive blade shafts to pass through channel for direct shaft mounting of actuators. Open side of channel shall be faced down stream of the airflow, except for exhaust air dampers.
  5. Multiple section dampers to be mounted flush within a wall or housing opening shall receive either vertical channel supports as described above or sheet metal standout collars. Sheet metal collars (12" minimum) shall bring each damper section out of the wall to allow direct shaft mounting of the actuator on the side of the collar.
- C. Control Valves:
1. Manufacturer:
    - a. Belimo
  2. Control Valves
    - a. Factory fabricated of type, body material, and pressure class based on maximum pressure and temperature rating of piping system, unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Pressure Independent Characterized Control Valve (PICCV)
    - a. Forged brass body rated at no less than 600 psi, chrome plated brass ball and stem, female, NPT union ends. No P/T ports required; however, P/T ports on both sides of the valve shall be coordinated with the mechanical contractor.
    - b. The modulating control valves shall be pressure independent.
    - c. The control valve shall accurately control the flow from 0 to 100% full rated flow with an equal percentage flow characteristic. The flow shall not vary more than +/- 5% due to system pressure fluctuations across the valve with a minimum of 5 PSID and a maximum of 50 PSID across the valve.
    - d. Combination of actuator and valve shall provide a minimum close off pressure rating of 200 psi.
    - e. The application of multiple control valves piped in parallel to achieve the rated coil flow shall be permitted. Actuators shall be electronically programmed to permit sequencing of the flow with a single control input signal.
    - f. The control valve shall require no maintenance and shall not include replaceable cartridges.
    - g. The EMCS Contractor shall provide services of Belimo factory technician for commissioning all pressure independent characterized control valves. Note that timing of valve commissioning is critical to the commissioning process and shall be coordinated with the commissioning agent. Belimo factory technician should be scheduled to work after valves and controllers are active but prior to commencing commissioning. Controls programming and commissioning are dependent upon having a completed Belimo PICCV Commissioning Report.
    - h. The manufacturer shall warrant all components for a period of 5 years from the date of substantial completion with the first two years unconditional.

- i. PICC valves are required on all hot and cold water HVAC control applications (VAVs, AHUs, fan coils, etc.)
  4. Electronic Pressure Independent Valve (EPIV)
    - a. 2-way electronic pressure independent flow control valve with an integrated electronic flow meter and control algorithm.
- D. Control Valves ½" to 6":
  1. Control valves shall be globe type constructed for tight shutoff and shall operate satisfactorily against system pressures and differentials. Provide two way or three way pattern as shown on the plans. Valves with size up to and including 2-1/2" shall be "screwed". 3" and larger valves shall be "flanged" configuration. Valves larger than 4" shall be butterfly. Water control valves shall be sized for a maximum pressure drop of 5.0 psig at rated flow (except as noted). Two-way control valves shall exhibit equal percentage characteristics. Two-position control valves shall be line size. Ball valves are acceptable for floating or two-position operation where valve size is less than 1 inch.
  2. The controls contractor shall furnish all specified motorized control valves and actuators. Controls contractor shall furnish all control wiring to actuators. The Plumbing contractor shall install all valves. Equal Percentage control characteristic shall be provided for all water coil control valves. Linear valve characteristic is acceptable for 3-way valves 2½ inch and above.
  3. Characterized Control Valves shall be used for hydronic heating or cooling applications and small to medium AHU water coil applications to 100 GPM. Actuators are non-spring return for terminal unit coil control unless otherwise noted. If the coil is exposed to the Outside Air stream then see plans for Spring Return requirement.
  4. Leakage is Zero percent, Close-off is 200 psi, maximum differential is 30 psi. Rangeability is 500:1.
  5. Valves 1/2 inch through 2 inches shall be nickel-plated forged brass body, NPT screw type connections.
  6. Valves 1/2 inch through 1-1/4 inches shall be rated for ANSI Class 600 working pressure. Valves 1-1/2 inch and 2 inches shall be rated for ANSI Class 400 working pressure.
  7. The operating temperature range shall be 0° to 250° F.
  8. Stainless steel ball & stem shall be furnished on all modulating valves.
  9. Seats shall be fiberglass reinforced Teflon.
  10. Two-way and three-way valves shall have an equal percentage control port. Full stem rotation is required for maximum flow to insure stable BTU control of the coil.
  11. Three-way valve shall be applicable for both mixing and diverting.
  12. The characterizing disc is made of TEFZEL and shall be keyed and held secure by a retaining ring.
  13. The valves shall have a blowout proof stem design.
  14. The stem packing shall consist of 2 lubricated O-rings designed for on-off or modulating service and require no maintenance.
  15. The valves shall have an ISO type, 4-bolt flange, for mounting actuator in any orientation parallel or perpendicular to the pipe.
  16. A non-metallic thermal isolation adapter shall separate valve flange from actuator.
  17. One fastening screw shall secure the direct coupling of the thermal isolation adapter between the actuator and the valve. This will prevent all lateral or rotational forces from affecting the stem and its packing O-rings.
- E. Globe valves ½" to 2":
  1. Shall be used for steam control or water flow applications.
  2. Valves shall be bronze body, NPT screw type, and shall be rated for ANSI Class 250 working pressure.

3. Valves 1/2 inch (DN15) through 2 inches (DN50) with spring return actuators shall close off against 50 psi pressure differential with Class III leakage (0.1%).
  4. The operating temperature range shall be 20° to 280° F.
  5. Spring loaded TFE packing shall protect against leakage at the stem.
  6. Two-way valves shall have an equal percentage control port.
  7. Three-way valves shall a linear control and bypass port.
  8. Mixing and diverting valves must be installed specific to the valve design.
- F. Globe Valve 2 ½ to 6”:
1. Valves 2-1/2 inch (DN65) through 6 inches (DN50) shall be iron body, 125 lb. flanged with Class III (0.1%) close-off leakage at 50 psi differential.
  2. Valves with spring return actuators shall close off against 50 psi pressure differential with Class III leakage (0.1%).
  3. Flow type for two-way valves shall be equal percentage. Flow type for three-way valves shall be linear.
  4. Mixing and diverting valves must be installed specific to the valve design.
- G. Butterfly Valves:
1. Butterfly valves shall be sized for modulating service at 60-70 degree stem rotation. Isolation valves shall be line-size. Design velocity shall be less than 12 feet per second when used with standard EPDM seats.
  2. Body is Cast Iron.
  3. Disc is Aluminum Bronze standard.
  4. Seat is EPDM Standard.
  5. Body Pressure is 200 psi, -30°F to 275°F.
  6. Flange is ANSI 125/250.
  7. Media Temperature Range is -22°F to 240°F.
  8. Maximum Differential Pressure is 200 psi for 2” to 6” size.
- H. Actuator mounting for damper and valve arrangements shall comply to the following:
1. Damper Actuators: Shall not be installed in the air stream
  2. A weather shield shall be used if actuators are located outside. For Damper Actuators use clear plastic enclosure.
  3. Damper or valve actuator ambient temperature shall not exceed 122°F through any combination of medium temperature or surrounding air. Appropriate air gaps, thermal isolation washers or spacers, standoff legs, or insulation shall be provided as necessary.
  4. Actuator cords or conduit shall incorporate a drip leg if condensation is possible. Water shall not be allowed to contact actuator or internal parts. Location of conduits in temperatures dropping below dew point shall be avoided to prevent water from condensing in conduit and running into actuator.
  5. Damper mounting arrangements shall comply to the following:
  6. The ventilation subcontractor shall furnish and install damper channel supports and sheet metal collars.
  7. No jack shafting of damper sections shall be allowed.
  8. Multi-section dampers shall be arranged so that each damper section operates individually. One electronic actuator shall be direct shaft mounted per section.
- I. Valve Sizing for Water Coil:
1. On/Off Control Valves shall be line size.
  2. Modulating Control Valve Body Size may be reduced at most two pipe sizes from the line size or not less than ½ the pipe size. The BAS contractor shall size all water coil control valves for the application as follows:
    - a. Booster-heat valves shall be sized not to exceed 5 psi differential pressure. Size valve for 50% Valve Authority. Valve design pressure drop is equal to the sum of coil

- drop plus the balance valve drop.
  - b. Primary valves shall be sized not to exceed 5 psi differential pressure. Size valve for 50% Valve Authority. Valve design pressure drop is equal to the sum of coil drop plus the balance valve drop.
  - c. Butterfly valves shall be sized for modulating service at 60-70 degree rotation. Design velocity shall be 12 feet per second or less when used with standard EPDM seats.
- J. Valve mounting arrangements shall comply to the following:
- 1. Unions shall be provided on all ports of two-way and three-way valves.
  - 2. Install three-way equal percentage Characterized Control valves in a mixing configuration with the "A" port piped to the coil.
  - 3. Install 2½ inch and above, Three-Way globe valves, as manufactured for mixing or diverting service to the coil.
  - 4. Two-way valve shall be piped in the return side of the coil in order to minimize ambient heat at the coil.

#### **2.14 ENCLOSURES**

- A. NEMA 2 rated enclosures for inside mounting, provide with weather shield for outside mounting.
- B. All controllers, power supplies and relays shall be mounted in enclosures.
- C. Enclosures may be NEMA 1 when located in a clean, dry, indoor environment. Indoor enclosures shall be NEMA 12 when installed in other than a clean environment.
- D. Enclosures shall have hinged, locking doors.
- E. Provide laminated plastic nameplates for all enclosures in any mechanical room or electrical room. Include location and unit served on nameplate. Laminated plastic shall be 1/8" thick sized appropriately to make label easy to read.
- F. All direct digital controllers located indoors shall be installed in NEMA 1 enclosures. All direct digital controllers located outdoors shall be installed in NEMA 3R enclosures. Enclosures shall be of suitable size to accommodate all power supplies, relays and accessories required for the application. Each enclosure shall include a perforated subpanel for direct mounting of the enclosed devices. Include matched key locks for all enclosures provided.

#### **2.15 SENSORS, SWITCHES, CONTROLLERS, TRANSDUCERS, AND MISCELLANEOUS DEVICES**

- A. Temperature Sensors:
  - 1. All temperature sensors to be solid state electronic, factory-calibrated to within 0.5°F, totally interchangeable with housing appropriate for application. Wall sensors to be installed as indicated on drawings. Mount 48 inches above finished floor. Duct sensors to be installed such that the sensing element is in the main air stream. Immersion sensors to be installed in wells provided by control contractor, but installed by mechanical contractor. Immersion wells shall be filled with thermal compound before installation of immersion sensors. Outside air sensors shall be installed away from exhaust or relief vents, not in an outside air intake and in a location that is in the shade most of the day.
- B. Wall Temperature Sensor
  - 1. Temperature sensors for DX RTU serving areas such as Administration, Gyms, Auditoriums, Cafeterias, Kitchens, Choir, Dance and Band shall have LCD screen with occupancy override and setpoint adjustment. These sensors shall have tamper proof protective covers.
  - 2. Temperature sensors for DX single zone RTU serving a classroom shall have a blank face with occupancy override button.
  - 3. Temperature sensors for hydronic single zone AHU's and VAV boxes shall have a blank face.

- C. Differential Pressure Switches (Air):
  - 1. Provide differential pressure switches across fans and filters for status indication. Differential pressure switches shall have an adjustable setpoint from 0.05" w.c. to 2" w.c. with a switch differential that progressively increases from 0.02" w.c. at minimum to 0.8" w.c. at maximum. Switch shall be SPDT rated for 15A (non-inductive) at 277VAC.
- D. Differential Pressure Switches (Liquid):
  - 1. Provide differential pressure switches across pumps and chillers to prove flow. Differential pressure switches shall have a 0-150 psig working differential pressure and have an adjustable setpoint from 4" w.c. to 43.5" w.c. on a fall and 5.5" w.c. to 45" w.c. on a rise. Liquid differential pressure switch enclosure shall carry a NEMA 4 rating. Switch shall be SPDT rated for 5A (inductive) at 125VAC.
- E. Float Switches:
  - 1. Provide float switches in condensate drain pans as required by code. Float switches shall utilize a magnetically actuated dry reed switch. Float shall be constructed of seamless polypropylene. Switch shall be SPDT rated for 16A (non-inductive) at 120VAC.
- F. Mixed Air Low Limit Controllers (Freezestats):
  - 1. Mixed air low limit controllers shall be manual reset, adjustable setpoint with 20-foot element serpentine across the entering air face of center cooling coil. Control shall be responsive only to the lowest temperature along the element.
- G. Static High Limit Controllers:
  - 1. Discharge static high limit controllers shall be provided on all VAV AHU systems. When discharge static pressure exceeds setpoint, the supply fan shall be de-energized. Manual reset shall be required.
- H. Static Pressure Transducers (Air):
  - 1. Provide static pressure transducers for monitoring supply duct static pressure. Static pressure transducers shall be 100% solid state and shall include glass on silicon, ultra-stable capacitance sensors. Each static pressure transducer shall incorporate short circuit and reverse polarity protection. Transmitter output shall be either 0-10VDC or 4-20mA. Static pressure transducers are to be provided in an enclosure that is suitable for duct mounting. The desired setpoint is to be in the top 50% of the transmitter's operating range.
- I. Differential Pressure Transducers (Air):
  - 1. Provide differential pressure transducers for monitoring air system and airflow measuring station differential pressures. Differential pressure transducers shall be 100% solid state and shall include glass on silicon, ultra-stable capacitance sensors. Each differential pressure transducer shall incorporate short circuit and reverse polarity protection. Transducer output shall be either 0-10VDC or 4-20mA. Differential pressure transducers are to be provided in an enclosure that is suitable for duct mounting. The desired setpoint is to be in the top 50% of the transducer's operating range.
- J. Line Pressure Transducers (Liquid):
  - 1. Provide Rosemount 3051 line pressure transducers for monitoring hydronic system line pressure. Pressure transducers shall be 100% solid state with accuracy of +/- 1% of calibration range. Factory calibrated and have zero and span trimmers for field calibration. Range shall be selected to match the medium being monitored. Transducer output shall be either 0-10VDC or 4-20mA. Differential pressure transducers are to be provided in a field mounted enclosure and all wetted parts shall be constructed from materials that are suitable for operation in the measured medium. LCD display.
- K. Differential Pressure Transducers (Liquid):

1. Provide Rosemount 3051 pressure differential transducers for monitoring hydronic system differential pressure. Differential pressure transducers shall be 100% solid state with accuracy of +/- 1% of calibration range and shall include dual silicon water type sensors. Factory calibrated and have zero and span trimmers for field calibration. Pressure snubbers to protect from pressure pulses and a 3-way bypass / valve assembly to protect the transducer from overpressure damage during start-up. Range shall be selected to match the medium being monitored. Transducer output shall be either 0-10VDC or 4-20mA. Differential pressure transducers are to be provided in a field mounted enclosure and all wetted parts shall be constructed from materials that are suitable for operation in the measured medium. LCD display.
- L. Airflow Measuring Stations:
  1. Where shown on the plans, provide airflow measuring stations utilizing multiple point averaging sensors for total pressure measurement and bullet-nose probes for static pressure measurement. Airflow measuring stations shall be factory assembled units with a sheet metal casing of at least 16 gauge galvanized steel. Airflow measuring stations shall be equipped with 3/8" aluminum hexagon cell straightening vanes. Pressure drop across airflow measuring station shall be less than 0.13" w.c. at 2000 FPM with the straightening vanes installed. Accuracy of airflow measurement shall be +/- 2% at 6000 FPM inlet velocity and +/- 0.5% at 2000 FPM inlet velocity.
- M. Liquid Flow Meters:
  1. Provide insertion type flow meters for monitoring system hydronic system flow. Flow meters shall be 100% solid state and shall include paddle type non-magnetic, non-photoelectric sensors. Flow meters shall be provided with "hot tap" isolation valves and all accessories for bi-directional flow. Flow meter transmitter supply voltage to be 24VAC unregulated. Flow meter output shall have either a 4-20mA or pulse output that is linear with the flow rate.
- N. Current Sensing Relays:
  1. Provide current switches for indication of equipment status. Amperage ratings shall be adjustable with the desired setpoint to be in the top 50% of the current relay's operating range. Current sensing relays shall incorporate trip indication LED's and shall be sized for proper operation with the equipment served.
- O. Relative Humidity Sensors:
  1. Relative humidity sensors shall have an accuracy of +/-3% from 5 to 95% RH. Output signal shall be either be 0-10VDC or 4-20mA. Humidity transmitters shall be factory calibrated and require no field setting.
- P. CO2 Sensors:
  1. CO2 sensors shall be space or duct mounted carbon dioxide sensors as required by the application. Space CO2 sensors shall be mounted next to space temperature sensors. The sensor shall have a range of 0-2000 ppm with an accuracy of ±5%. The response time for the sensor shall be less than one minute. The sensor shall be capable of providing an analog signal proportional to the CO2 level sensed. The signal shall be either 0-10VDC or 4-20mA.
- Q. Duct/Well Sensors:
  1. Sensors for duct and water temperature sensing shall incorporate either RTD or Thermistor sensing devices. Sensing element accuracy shall be 0.1% over the sensor span or better. Where the element is being used for sensing mixed air or coil discharge temperatures and/or the duct cross sectional area is in excess of 14 square feet, the element shall be of the averaging type. Averaging duct sensors shall utilize a 6, 12 or 24 foot sensing element. Immersion sensors shall use matched 316 stainless steel bulb wells. All duct and immersion sensors shall be provided with conduit connection housings. Sensors shall be provided with adequate standoffs for insulation installation.

- R. Selector Switches:
  - 1. Selector switches shall be 2 or 3-position, knob or key type as required by the sequence of operation. Selector switches shall feature oil tight construction and be fitted with snap-fit contact blocks rated for 10A, 600VAC/DC operation. Labels shall be provided indicating switch position.
- S. Pushbutton Switches:
  - 1. Pushbutton switches shall be either maintained or momentary as required by the sequence of operation. Pushbutton switches shall feature oil tight construction and be fitted with snap-fit contact blocks rated for 10A, 600VAC/DC operation. Labels shall be provided indicating switch function.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Prior to starting work, carefully inspect installed work of other trades and verify that such work is complete to the point where work of this Section may properly commence.
- B. Notify the owners' representative in writing of conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of the work.
- C. Do not begin work until all unsatisfactory conditions are resolved.
- D. Each bid must include all costs associated with providing wiring, conduit, concrete trenching, and earth trenching.

### **3.02 OPERATION**

- A. BACnet Object List:
  - 1. Each point will be checked out by the Contractor and the Owner's Representative will inspect each point with the bidder prior to acceptance. Provide complete written documented inspections, test and checkout report. Calibrate all equipment.

### **3.03 INSTALLATION**

- A. General:
  - 1. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
  - 2. Provide all miscellaneous devices, hardware, software, interconnections installation and programming required to ensure a complete operating system in accordance with the sequences of operation and point schedules.
  - 3. Provide a complete and operational temperature control and building automation system based on the following points and sequence of operation. The system shall be complete as to sequences and standard control practices. The determined point list is the minimum amount of points that are to be provided. If additional points are required to meet the sequence of operation, they will be provided.
- B. Location and Installation of Components:
  - 1. Locate and install components for easy accessibility; in general, mount 48 inches above floor with minimum 3'-0" clear access space in front of units. Obtain approval on locations from owner's representative prior to installation.
  - 2. Enclosures and hardware or wiring shall not block or limit accessibility to service compartments of any other equipment.
  - 3. The work shall be coordinated fully, as it pertains to the fire protection system, fire alarm system, and electrical power system. All items shall be terminated in the DDC controllers in a predetermined order as indicated in the submittal drawings.
  - 4. All instruments, switches, transmitters, etc., shall be suitably wired and mounted to protect them from vibration, moisture and high or low temperatures.
  - 5. Identify all equipment and panels. Provide permanently mounted tags for all panels.

6. Provide stainless steel or brass thermowells suitable for respective application and for installation under other sections - sized to suit pipe diameter without restricting flow.
- C. Interlocking and Control Wiring:
1. Provide all interlock and control wiring. All wiring shall be installed neatly and professionally, in accordance with Specification Division 16 and all national, state and local electrical codes.
  2. Provide wiring as required by functions as specified and as recommended by equipment manufacturers, to serve specified control functions. Provide shielded low capacitance wire for all communications trunks. Communication shall be per manufacturer's specifications.
  3. Control wiring shall not be installed in power circuit raceways. Magnetic starters and disconnect switches shall not be used as junction boxes. Provide auxiliary junction boxes as required. Coordinate location and arrangement of all control equipment with the owner's representative prior to rough-in.
  4. Provide auxiliary pilot duty relays on motor starters as required for control function.
  5. Provide power for all control components from nearest electrical control panel or as indicated on the electrical drawings. Coordinate with electrical contractor.
  6. All control wiring in the mechanical, electrical, telephone and boiler rooms to be installed in conduit. All other wiring to be installed neatly and inconspicuously per local code requirements. If local code allows, control wiring above accessible ceiling spaces may be run with plenum rated cable (without conduit).
- D. Installation Requirements:
1. Any panels associated with the control system shall be furnished and installed under this section of the work. Panel wiring shall be terminated by connecting to numbered terminals strips. Wire nut connections shall not be allowed. All wiring shall be color coded and shall be tagged for future identification.
  2. Unless otherwise specified, all devices, panels, etc., furnished and/or installed by the Contractor shall be located where they can be calibrated and maintained from the floor without use of a ladder. These items shall be identified by means of plates made of plastic suitably engraved, embossed or punched, plastic tape will not be acceptable. At completion of job, the Contractor shall submit record drawings of any changes made during construction. This submittal shall be a condition of final payment.
  3. Any conduit on roof shall be absolute minimum and shall have prior written approval.
  4. All conduit used indoor and outdoor shall be metal and shall be of type and fittings to minimize corrosion and moisture entry.
- E. Cable Installation and Attachments:
1. Control System wiring and equipment installation shall be in accordance with good engineering practices as established by the TIA/EIA and the NEC. Wiring shall meet all state and local electrical codes. All wiring shall test free from all grounds and shorts. All cable shall be supported from the building structure and bundled.
  2. The support system shall provide a protective pathway to eliminate stress that could damage the cabling. The cable shall not be crushed, deformed, skinned, crimped, twisted, or formed into tight radius bends that could compromise the integrity of the cabling. Controls cables shall not be run loose on ceiling grid or ceiling tiles. Support shall be provided by mounting appropriate fasteners which may be loaded with multiple cables. Provided that the weight load is carried by the support rod or wire, the support assembly may attach to the ceiling grid for lateral stabilization. The required support wires for the ceiling grid or light fixtures shall not be utilized. Any fastener attached to the ceiling grid shall not interfere with inserting or removing ceiling tiles. All cabling and supports must be positioned at least 12 inches above the ceiling grid.
  3. Controls cables shall be run in bundles above accessible ceilings and supported from building structure. Cabling shall be loosely bundled with wire wraps randomly spaced at



- 30 to 48 inches on center, wire wraps shall not be tight enough to deform cabling and shall not be used to support the cabling.
4. Attachments for cabling support shall be spaced at 48 to 60 inches on center. The cable bundle shall not be allowed to sag more than 12 inches mid-span between attachments. Attachments shall be sized as follows:

Bundles up to 1/2" dia. (Ten 1/4" cables)	2" bridle ring, Caddy #4BRT32 or equivalent
Bundles up to 3/4" dia. (Sixteen 1/4" cables)	3/4" J-Hook, Caddy #CAT12 or equivalent
Bundles up to 1-5/16" dia. (Fifty 1/4" cables)	1-5/16" J-Hook, Caddy #CAT21 or equivalent
Bundles up to 2" dia. (Eighty 1/4" cables)	2" J-Hook, Caddy #CAT21 or equivalent
Split bundles greater than 2" dia.	Provide cable tray
  5. Do not mix different signal strength cables on the same J-Hook (i.e. fire alarm, 25 volt speaker cable). Multiple J-Hooks can be on the same attachment point up to the rated weight of the attachment device.
  6. Controls cables shall be run in conduit stubs, where stubs are provided, from wall mounted devices to above accessible ceilings. Conduit shall be required only within walls and concealed spaces to provide access. Provide a plastic snap bushing or sleeve on the end of each conduit stub such as Thomas & Betts Catalog no. 443 - 3/4", 424 - 1", 425 - 1 1/4", 427 - 2" or equivalent.
  7. Conduit, duct or track shall be used for controls cable in exposed areas.
  8. All conduit, ducts, track and raceways shall be supported from the structure at industry standard intervals for the size specified, utilizing proper anchoring devices and techniques for each type of cable used.
  9. All penetrations through fire rated walls or floors shall feature a short length of metal conduit. The hole shall be neatly cut, not oversize or irregular. Seal the interior of the conduit sleeve around the cables and around the outside of the sleeve on each side of the penetration with fire-stop caulk or putty, such as Minnesota Mining & Mfg. Co. (3M) - CP 25WB+ caulk, MPS-2+ putty, or equivalent. Install according to the manufacturers' instructions.
  10. All cable shall have a label on both ends utilizing self-laminating, flexible vinyl film and non-smear nylon marking pens. Utilize Tyton Corporation Part No. RO175 Rite-On labels and Part No. FTP1 nylon marking pens or equivalent.
  11. Each cable run shall include a three foot service loop with wire tie located in the ceiling above the control unit panel. This is to allow for future re-termination or repair.
  12. No terminations or splices shall be installed in or above ceilings. Cable shall be continuous from one device termination to the next.
  13. Mount all equipment firmly in place. Route cable in a professional, neat and orderly installation.
  14. All cabling shall be placed with regard to the environment, EMI/RFI (interference) and its effect on communication signal transmission.
  15. Do not route any controls cable within two feet of any light fixture, HVAC unit service access area, electric panel, or any device containing a motor or transformer.
  16. Low voltage controls cable will not be installed in the same conduit, duct or track with line voltage electrical cable.
  17. Maximum pulling tension should not exceed 25 lb/ft. or manufactures recommendation, whichever is less.
  18. Any pulling compounds utilized must be approved by the cable manufacturer and shall not degrade the strength or electrical characteristics of the cable.
  19. Cable bends shall not exceed the manufacturers' suggested bend radius.

20. Provide for adequate ventilation in all equipment panels.
  21. Provide wire mold where wiring must run exposed. Obtain advance approval from Architect and Owner before running exposed. Coordinate with Owner and Architect.
  22. For all wiring, provide numbering on all terminations (both ends).
  23. Label all panels, cans, enclosures, controllers and correlate with air conditioning units served. Labeling shall relate to shop drawings and equipment served. Provide wiring diagram inside each enclosure.
  24. Provide a rain-tight enclosure for each rooftop unit controller.
  25. Locate outdoor air sensors shielded and on northern exposure.
- F. Termination practices:
1. Strip back only as much cable jacket as required to terminate.
  2. Preserve wire twists as closely as possible to point of termination (0.5" maximum) to keep signal impairment to a minimum.
  3. Avoid twisting cable during installation.
  4. Electrical Interlocks:
    - a. All electrical interlocks shall be provided as specified. All electrical interlocks shall be made by means of motor starters or shall be accomplished by separate relays. No motor power lead shall be utilized in an interlock circuit.

### 3.04 SERVICES

- A. Field Services:
1. Prepare and start logic control system under provisions of this section.
  2. Start-up and commission systems. Allow sufficient time for start-up and commissioning prior to placing control systems in permanent operation.
  3. Provide the capability for off-site monitoring at control contractor's local or main office. At a minimum, off-site facility shall be capable of system diagnostics and software download. Owner shall provide remote access via Internet for this service for 1 year or as specified.
  4. Provide Owner's Representative with spare parts list. Identify equipment critical to maintaining the integrity of the operating system.
  5. Provide all interface devices and computer cards required.
  6. Contractor responsible for verifying all quantities of air conditioning units, etc. on existing and new construction.
  7. Provide Owner with CD or flash drive with graphic diagrams and drawings. Include map of Campus with buildings located and floor plan of each building with equipment located.
  8. This Contractor shall provide a Project Manager with a minimum of 3 years' experience with installation and set-up of the equipment of the Bidder/Manufacturer they represent.
- B. HVAC Training:
1. Provide application engineer to instruct owner in operation of systems and equipment.
  2. Provide system operator's training to include (but not limited to) such items as the following: modification of data displays, alarm and status descriptors, requesting data, execution of commands and request of logs. Provide this training to a minimum of 3 persons.
  3. Provide on-site training above as required, up to 16 hours as part of this contract.
- C. Demonstration:
1. Demonstrate complete operating system to owner's representative.
  2. Provide certificate stating that control system has been tested and adjusted for proper operation.
- D. Programming:
1. Prior to completion of the control installation, schedule time with Owner's designated representatives to evaluate and select programming options and requirements. Contractor

- shall provide engineer for such meetings and consultations on an as-needed basis. Preparation time for the conference shall be in addition to the "in conference" time, and shall be provided on an as-needed basis without additional cost to the Owner.
2. The Contractor shall also provide additional coordination as needed with the Owner's representative and Engineer to formulate and determine functions, reports, graphics, and alarms most desirable and suitable for the school district and writing the software capability. Programming of these items shall be provided. The Contractor shall program the system using coordinated Owner provided schedules for time of day and holidays.
  3. No hardware change shall be required for program changes.
- E. Documentation:
1. The Contractor shall provide a complete documentation package to the owner which shall include floor plans indicating location of EMCS equipment, wiring diagrams, bill of materials, data base information, and sequences of operation. The sequences of operation shall be submitted and approved by the owner in writing prior to installation and programming.
- F. Coordination:
1. For construction project installations where electrical and mechanical contractors are responsible for their respective trade, the electrical contractor is to provide line voltage to required equipment and the mechanical contractor is to install any devices that are to be included in piping systems. It is the controls contractor responsibility to provide all devices with diagrams for location and coordinate with mechanical contractor prior to mechanical contractor starting installations. For installations where controls only, work is provided, all necessary work shall be performed by the controls contractor. Controls contractor shall coordinate and provide all required work and wiring for duct mounted smoke detectors, control relays for unit shutdown, and interface with any fire alarm system. For installations where controls only work is provided, all necessary work shall be performed by the controls contractor.

**PART 4 SEQUENCE OF OPERATION**

**4.01 SEQUENCE OF OPERATION**

- A. The following are sequences of operations which will be accomplished by the EMCS. Coordinate with Owner in operating equipment to maximize comfort and economy. All points required to accomplish the sequences will be provided and connected to the EMCS.
- B. All chillers, boilers, pumps and AHU's shall be supplied with a RIB relay with manual HOA switches. This is to allow owner to turn on and run equipment locally. The activation of the switch shall notify the Building Automation System (BAS) that the unit is in manual override. The equipment on the BAS graphic shall change color to red to alert that that equipment has been locally manually overridden.
- C. Provide one outside air relative humidity sensor and temperature sensor per campus. It is also acceptable to obtain outside air ambient conditions from a nearby weather station.

**4.02 BUILDING ELECTRICAL METERING/MONITORING**

- A. GENERAL:
  1. Provide digital monitoring of building MSB. The FMCS shall monitor the electrical energy consumption at the buildings main electric feed. Coordinate with switchgear manufacturer and/or electrical contractor.
  2. Provide dashboard with daily, weekly, monthly, and yearly usage totals
- B. CONTROL POINTS:

Description	Type
KVA	AI

KWH	AI
Demand	AI
Power Factor	AI
Voltage	AI

**4.03 DOMESTIC WATER MAIN SUPPLY METERING/MONITORING**

A. GENERAL:

1. The FMCS contractor shall provide a flow meter (Omni Compound C2 water flow meter or equivalent) to be installed on the main domestic water line. Coordinate with plumbing contractor.
2. The FMCS shall monitor flow from the primary water supply to the building. When the amount of flow is greater than programmed (adj.) the FMCS shall send an alarm. Provide all flow meters and controls points for a complete system.
3. Provide dashboard with daily, weekly, monthly and yearly usage totals

B. CONTROL POINTS:

Description	Type
Flow Meter	AI

**4.04 NATURAL GAS MAIN SUPPLY METERING/MONITORING**

A. GENERAL:

1. The FMCS contractor shall provide a flow meter to be installed on the main gas line. Coordinate with plumbing contractor.
2. The FMCS shall monitor gas from the primary gas supply to the building. When the amount of flow is greater than programmed (adj.) the FMCS shall send an alarm. Provide all gas meters and controls points for a complete system. Coordinate with plumbing contractor.
  - a. Provide dashboard with daily, weekly, monthly, and yearly usage totals

B. CONTROL POINTS:

Description	Type
Gas Flow Meter	AI

**4.05 AMBIENT CONDITIONS**

A. GENERAL:

1. The FMCS shall monitor the ambient outside conditions at the building. Sensors shall be located outside the building for northern exposure.

B. CONTROL POINTS:

Description	Type
Outside Temperature	AI
Outside Humidity	AI
Outside CO2	AI

**4.06 SUMP PUMPS**

A. GENERAL:

1. Sump Pumps shall be monitored by FMCS. The FMCS shall generate an alarm should the pump lose power, stop operating or secondary float switch above designated level for 30 minutes.

B. CONTROL POINTS:

Description	Type
Pump Amps/Status (Each Pump)	AI

Secondary Float Switch (Each Pump)	DI
------------------------------------	----

**4.07 ELECTRICAL ROOM EXHAUST FANS**

A. GENERAL:

- The FMCS to monitor space temperature for all electrical rooms with exhaust fans. The electrical room exhaust fans are to operate continuously when the space above 80° F (adj.).

B. CONTROL POINTS:

Description	Type
Fan Amps/Status (Each Fan)	AI
Space Temperature (Each Room)	AI
Fan Start/Stop Command (Each Fan)	DO

**4.08 CRAWLSPACE EXHAUST FANS**

A. GENERAL:

- The FMCS to measure crawlspace temperature and humidity. Calculations are to be done to find dewpoint of crawlspace and ambient dewpoint. The crawlspace fans are to operate continuously when the crawlspace dewpoint is above 60° F (adj.) and ambient dewpoint is less than crawlspace dewpoint.

B. CONTROL POINTS:

Description	Type
Crawlspace Temperature	AI
Crawlspace Humidity	AI
Fan Amps/Status (Each Fan)	AI
Fan Start/Stop Command (Each Fan)	DO

**4.09 RELIEF FANS**

A. GENERAL:

- The FMCS to measure building pressure. The relief fans are to operate to maintain a positive pressure setpoint of .05" In. W.C. (adj.).

B. CONTROL POINTS:

Description	Type
Building Pressure (Each Sensor)	AI
Fan Amps/Status (Each Fan)	AI
Fan Start/Stop Command (Each Fan)	DO
Fan VFD Speed (Each Fan)	AO

**4.10 KITCHEN HOOD EXHAUST FANS AND MAKEUP AIR UNITS**

A. GENERAL:

- Kitchen hood, exhaust fans and makeup air units to have standalone kitchen system controls.
- Kitchen hood exhaust fans shall be hardwired interlocked with associated makeup air units.
- Kitchen hood exhaust fans and makeup air units shall be monitored by FMCS.

B. CONTROL POINTS:

Description	Type
Fan Amps/Status (Each Kitchen Fan)	AI

Fan Amps/Status (Each Makeup Air Unit)	AI
--	----

**4.11 VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVES**

A. GENERAL:

1. The FMCS shall interface and monitor points from the VFDs.
  - a. VFD interfaces shall be achieved via communication link.
  - b. VFD data to be shown on associated unitary graphic.
  - c. Provide dashboard with daily, weekly, monthly, and yearly usage totals for KWH and Runtime

B. CONTROL POINTS:

Description	Type
Start/Stop (Each VFD)	DI
Alarm (Each VFD)	DI
Percent Output (Each VFD)	AI
Frequency Output (Each VFD)	AI
Amperage (Each VFD)	AI
KWH (Each VFD)	AI
Runtime (Each VFD)	AI

**4.12 MDF / IDF ROOMS**

A. GENERAL:

1. Units to have standalone thermostat. Units to operate continuously.
2. The FMCS shall monitor space temperature for all MDF/IDF rooms. The FMCS shall generate an alarm should the space temperature exceed or drop below its assigned alarm limits (adj.).

B. CONTROL POINTS:

Description	Type
Space Temperature (Each Room)	AI

**4.13 KILN HOODS AND EXHAUST FANS**

A. GENERAL:

1. Kiln hood(s) and exhaust fan(s) to have standalone controls. Each hood and associated fan shall be hardwired interlocked with each other.
2. When kiln is turned on, exhaust fan is to come on and run continuously during kiln running time and for two hours after kiln turns off.
3. Kiln hood exhaust fans shall be monitored by FMCS.

B. CONTROL POINTS:

Description	Type
Fan Amps/Status (Each Kiln Fan)	AI

**4.14 VARIABLE PRIMARY CHILLED WATER SYSTEM**

A. GENERAL:

1. There are two chillers with motorized isolation valves. The pumping system will be variable primary type with two pumps. The pump(s) will have a minimum flow condition equal to the minimum flow allowed by the chiller manufacturer. There will also be a bypass line with an automated control valve to allow the minimum flow of chillers. Minimum flow to be specified by the chiller manufacturer.

B. CENTRAL PLANT SYSTEM ENABLING/DISABLING:

1. The occupied/unoccupied mode of operation shall be defined by the EMCS optimum start/stop schedule.
  2. The EMCS shall enable the chilled water system based on an ambient temperature above 50° F (adj.) and requests for cooling. The number of requests shall be adjustable. This system enable will assign the lead/lag chillers and lead/lag pumps. Equipment will operate on a lead-lag and equal run time basis.
  3. The lead chillers slow stroking, motorized isolation valve (120 seconds) shall open.
  4. After a time delay allowing the motorized isolation valve to fully open, the lead chilled water pump shall start. If lead pump fails to start and flow not proven, system shall be able to auto rotate and start lag pump.
  5. Once a chilled water pump has started and water flow has been proven, the lead chiller shall be enabled. If lead chiller fails to start, system shall be able to auto rotate and start lag chiller. The motorized isolation valve shall be opened/closed with the enabling/disabling of its corresponding chiller.
  6. Upon each start of the chilled water system, it will activate a lag chiller enable delay of 1 hour (adj.) in order for the system loop and the lead chiller to stabilize.
- C. CHILLED WATER TEMPERATURE CONTROL:
1. The chilled water setpoint will be controlled by EMCS by sending a setpoint signal 42°F (adj.) to each chiller control panel (UCP).
  2. There shall be a linear chilled water supply temperature reset algorithm in between:
    - a. 42°F (adj.) chilled water supply when outside air temperature is at or above 70°F (adj.)
    - b. 46°F (adj.) chilled water supply when outside air temperature is at or below 50°F (adj.)
- D. CHILLER DEMAND LIMIT:
1. Chiller demand limiting will be used at least 120 seconds (adj.) prior to the sequencing and staging up of lag chillers.
  2. The chiller demand limit signal of 40% (adj.) will be sent by EMCS to chillers.
  3. Once the staging up of lag chiller has occurred, the chiller limit signal shall stay active for an additional 300 seconds (adj.) to allow system to stabilize. After time delay is over, the chiller demand limiting signal shall be disabled
- E. STAGING OF CHILLER:
1. Staging Up (The lag chiller shall be enabled when any of the following conditions occur):
    - a. When the chilled water supply temperature exceeds the set point by 2°F (adj.) and a 5°F differential from return water temperature for a 15 minute period (adj.). the EMCS will enable the second chiller. The bypass automatic control valve shall be reset to allow total minimum GPM of both chillers to flow through the bypass.
    - b. When lead chiller load is at 85% (adj.) or more for 15 minutes (adj.).
    - c. When lead chiller fails or is in alarm.
  2. Staging Down (The lag chiller shall be disabled when any of the following conditions occur):
    - a. When the chilled water supply temperature is at or below the set point and there is at least a 6°F differential from return water temperature for a 15 minute period (adj.). the EMCS will disable the second chiller. The bypass automatic control valve shall be reset to allow total minimum GPM of one chiller to bypass.
    - b. When chiller loads are at 40% (adj.) or less for 15 minutes (adj.).
- F. CHILLED WATER PUMPING SYSTEM:
1. Variable Primary Chilled Pumping System:
    - a. One variable primary pump will be started when system is enabled. If lead pump fails to start and flow not proven, system shall be able to auto rotate and start lag pump.

- b. The speed of the pumps shall not drop below minimum output to maintain minimum flow through enabled chillers.
- c. Anytime a there is a call for two chillers to run simultaneously, there shall be a call for two pumps to run simultaneously.
- d. The pump VFD will be controlled by differential pressure transducer (s) across the supply and return piping at locations as shown on the drawings or as directed by the engineer. If the pressure is below setpoint, the pump speed will be increased. If the differential pressure is above setpoint, the pump speed will be decreased.
- e. The lag pump will activate whenever the speed of the first pump is at or above 90% (adj.) for 15 minutes (adj.). The lag pump shall turn on and operate in unison with the lead pump to maintain building load. Once both pumps are operating at 40% (adj.), for 15 minutes (adj.) the lag pump shall turn off and the lead pump shall remain on to maintain building load.
- f. The differential pressure setpoint for the pumping system shall be reset based on maximum chilled water valve position. If the maximum valve position is above 90% (adj.), then the differential set point will be set to maximum pressure as determined by the temperature control system contractor. If the maximum valve position is below 50% (adj.), then the differential pressure setpoint will be set to minimum pressure as determined by the temperature control system contractor. If the maximum valve position is between 90%-50% (adj.), then the differential pressure setpoint will modulate linearly between the minimum and maximum pressure setpoints.

**G. CHILLED WATER BYPASS:**

- 1. Minimum Flow:
  - a. The chilled water bypass valve shall be initially closed and open as necessary to provide minimum flow to enabled chillers.
  - b. Bypass valve shall monitor chiller flow meter to ensure minimum flow is being met by modulating bypass control valve open as necessary.
  - c. As a failsafe backup to the flow meter, bypass valve shall also monitor the chilled water pressure drop across each chiller evaporator when a chiller is enabled. As the sensed differential pressure falls below the pressure drop associated with the chiller recommended flow rate, as provided by the chiller manufacturer, modulate the bypass control valve to maintain minimum flow. Initial default chiller evaporator pressure drop of 3 psi (adj.).

**H. SAFETIES:**

- 1. Freeze Protection:
  - a. When the outside air (OA) temperature drops below 36°F (adj.), a primary pump will be started and all associated isolation valves opened. All building chilled water valves will be open to 20%.
  - b. When the OA temperature rises 2°F above freeze protection setpoint for one hour, the reverse shall occur.

**I. Control Points:**

Description	Type
Outside Air Temperature	AI
Building Common Chilled Water Supply Temperature	AI
Building Common Chilled Water Return Temperature	AI
Chiller Supply Water Temperature (Each Chiller)	AI



Chiller Return Water Temperature (Each Chiller)	AI
Chilled Water Bypass Temperature	AI
Chiller Evaporator Differential Pressure (Each Chiller)	AI
Building Flow	AI
Chiller Flow	AI
Makeup Water Flow	AI
Building Chilled Water Differential Pressure (Each Sensor)	AI
Chiller Amps/Status (Each Chiller)	AI
Chiller Alarm (Each Chiller)	AI
Pump Amps/Status (Each Pump)	AI
Motorized Valve Feedback Position (Each Valve)	AI
Chiller Start/Stop Command (Each Chiller)	DO
Pump Start/Stop Command (Each Pump)	DO
Pump VFD Speed (Each Pump)	AO
Chiller Supply Setpoint (Each Chiller)	AO
Chiller Capacity Limit (Each Chiller)	AO
Chiller Isolation Valve (Each Chiller)	AO
Chilled Water Bypass Valve	AO

**4.15 COOLING TOWER AND CONDENSER WATER PUMPS**

**A. GENERAL:**

1. There are two cooling towers with VFD's and motorized isolation valves. The associated condenser pumping system consists of two pumps and VFD's.

**B. CENTRAL PLANT SYSTEM ENABLING/DISABLING:**

1. The cooling tower system shall be enabled any time there is a call for cooling from the associated water cooled chillers occupied/unoccupied mode of operation.
2. This system enable will assign the lead/lag cooling towers and lead/lag pumps. Equipment will operate on a lead-lag and equal run time basis.
3. The lead cooling tower slow stroking, motorized isolation valve (120 seconds) shall open.
4. After the time delay allowing the motorized isolation valve to fully open, the lead condenser water pump shall start. If lead pump fails to start and flow not proven, system shall be able to auto rotate and start lag pump.
5. Once a condenser water pump has started and water flow has been proven, the lead cooling tower shall operate. If lead cooling tower fails to start, system shall be able to auto rotate and start lag cooling tower. The motorized isolation valve shall be opened/closed with the enabling/disabling of its corresponding cooling tower.

**C. CONDENSOR WATER TEMPERATURE CONTROL:**

1. The system will incorporate an algorithm based on ambient wetbulb temperature and cooling tower approach to modulate and maintain a leaving condenser water temperature setpoint (adj.). Initial default setpoint shall be 75°F

2. Condenser water temperature setpoint (adj.) shall be equal to current ambient wetbulb temperature + tower approach
3. Upper limit for condenser water temperature setpoint is 85°F (adj.)
4. Lower limit for condenser water temperature setpoint is 55°F (adj.)

D. COOLING TOWER BYPASS:

1. When condenser water going back to tower(s) is 55°F or below (adj.), the three way bypass valve shall modulate to maintain a minimum cooling tower leaving water temperature of 55°F (adj.), and the cooling tower fans shall remain off

E. CONTROL POINTS:

Description	Type
Outside Air Temperature	AI
Outside Air Humidity	AI
Common Condenser Water Supply Temperature	AI
Common Condenser Water Return Temperature	AI
Chiller Condenser Water Temperature (Each Chiller)	AI
Chiller Condenser Return Water Temperature (Each Chiller)	AI
Makeup Water Flow	AI
Cooling Tower Fan Amps/Status (Each Fan)	AI
Pump Amps/Status (Each Pump)	AI
Motorized Valve Feedback Position (Each Valve)	AI
Vibration Alarm (Each Tower)	DI
Cooling Tower Fan Start/Stop Command (Each Fan)	DO
Pump Start/Stop Command (Each Pump)	DO
Cooling Tower Fan VFD Speed (Each Pump)	AO
Pump VFD Speed (Each Pump)	AO
Cooling Tower Isolation Valves (Each Tower)	AO
Cooling Tower Bypass Valve	AO

**4.16 CONDENSING PRIMARY/SECONDARY HEATING WATER SYSTEM (OEM BOILER SEQUENCER)**

A. GENERAL:

1. There are two boilers with circulating primary pumps and two building hot water pumps.

B. HEATING SYSTEM ENABLING/DISABLING:

1. The occupied/unoccupied mode of operation shall be defined by the EMCS optimum start/stop schedule.

2. The EMCS shall enable the hot water system based on an ambient temperature below 60° F (adj.) and requests for heating. The number of requests shall be adjustable. This system enable will enable the boiler sequencer that is provided by boiler manufacturer. Building pumps will operate on a lead-lag and equal run time basis.
- C. HOT WATER PUMPING:
1. Building Pumping System:
    - a. One variable building pump will be started when system is enabled. If lead pump fails to start and flow not proven, system shall be able to auto rotate and start lag pump.
    - b. The pump VFD will be controlled by differential pressure transducer (s) across the supply and return piping at locations as shown on the drawings or as directed by the engineer. If the pressure is below setpoint, the pump speed will be increased. If the differential pressure is above setpoint, the pump speed will be decreased.
    - c. The lag pump will activate whenever the speed of the first pump is at or above 90% (adj.) for 15 minutes (adj.). The lag pump shall turn on and operate in unison with the lead pump to maintain building load. Once both pumps are operating at 40% (adj.), for 15 minutes (adj.) the lag pump shall turn off and the lead pump shall remain on to maintain building load.
    - d. The differential pressure setpoint for the pumping system shall be reset based on maximum hot water valve position. If the maximum valve position is above 90% (adj.), then the differential set point will be set to maximum pressure as determined by as determined by TAB contractor. If the maximum valve position is below 50% (adj.), then the differential pressure setpoint will be set to minimum pressure as determined by TAB contractor. If the maximum valve position is between 90%-50% (adj.), then the differential pressure setpoint will modulate linearly between the minimum and maximum pressure setpoints.
- D. BOILER CONTROL:
1. Sequencing:
    - a. The EMCS will enable the manufacturer provided boiler sequencer. The sequencer will modulate boilers.
  2. Primary Circulating Pumps:
    - a. Primary circulating pumps shall be hardwired interlocked with boiler.
    - b. Primary circulating pumps shall run continuously anytime there is a call for its associated boiler.
- E. HOT WATER TEMPERATURE CONTROL:
1. The hot water setpoint will be sent by EMCS to sequencer and sequencer will modulate boilers to meet setpoint.
  2. There shall be a linear hot water supply temperature reset algorithm in between:
    - a. 100°F (adj.) hot water supply when outside air temperature is at or above 60°F (adj.)
    - b. 130°F (adj.) hot water supply when outside air temperature is at or below 45°F (adj.)
- F. SAFETIES:
1. Freeze Protection:
    - a. When the outside air (OA) temperature drops below 36°F (adj.), a building pump will be started. All building hot water valves will be open to 20%.
    - b. When the OA temperature rises 2°F above freeze protection setpoint for one hour, the reverse shall occur.
  2. CO Monitoring:
    - a. A carbon monoxide sensor shall be installed in boiler room.
    - b. Carbon monoxide sensor shall be hardwired interlocked with boiler(s) and shutdown boiler(s) when carbon monoxide rises above 50 ppm.

- c. Carbon monoxide alarm shall disable any supply fans in boiler room and enable all exhaust fans in boiler room.

G. Control Points:

Description	Type
Outside Air Temperature	AI
Building Common Hot Water Supply Temperature	AI
Building Common Hot Water Return Temperature	AI
Boiler Supply Water Temperature (Each Boiler)	AI
Boiler Return Water Temperature (Each Boiler)	AI
Building Flow	AI
Makeup Water Flow	AI
Building Hot Water Differential Pressure (Each Sensor)	AI
Boiler Amps/Status (Each Boiler)	AI
Boiler Alarm (Each Boiler)	AI
Circulation Pump Amps/Status (Each Pump)	AI
Building Pump Amps/Status (Each Pump)	AI
CO Monitoring Alarm	DI
Boiler Sequencer System Enable	DO
Boiler Sequencer Hot Water Setpoint	AO
Building Pump Start/Stop Command (Each Pump)	DO
Building Pump VFD Speed (Each Pump)	AO

**4.17 NON-CONDENSING PRIMARY/SECONDARY HEATING WATER SYSTEM (OEM BOILER SEQUENCER)**

A. GENERAL:

- 1. There are two boilers with circulating primary pumps and two building hot water pumps.

B. HEATING SYSTEM ENABLING/DISABLING:

- 1. The occupied/unoccupied mode of operation shall be defined by the EMCS optimum start/stop schedule.
- 2. The EMCS shall enable the hot water system based on an ambient temperature below 60° F (adj.) and requests for heating. The number of requests shall be adjustable. This system enable will enable the boiler sequencer that is provided by boiler manufacturer. Building pumps will operate on a lead-lag and equal run time basis.

C. HOT WATER PUMPING:

- 1. Building Pumping System:
  - a. One variable building pump will be started when system is enabled. If lead pump fails to start and flow not proven, system shall be able to auto rotate and start lag pump.
  - b. The pump VFD will be controlled by differential pressure transducer (s) across the supply and return piping at locations as shown on the drawings or as directed by the

engineer. If the pressure is below setpoint, the pump speed will be increased. If the differential pressure is above setpoint, the pump speed will be decreased.

- c. The lag pump will activate whenever the speed of the first pump is at or above 90% (adj.) for 15 minutes (adj.). The lag pump shall turn on and operate in unison with the lead pump to maintain building load. Once both pumps are operating at 40% (adj.), for 15 minutes (adj.) the lag pump shall turn off and the lead pump shall remain on to maintain building load.
- d. The differential pressure setpoint for the pumping system shall be reset based on maximum hot water valve position. If the maximum valve position is above 90% (adj.), then the differential set point will be set to maximum pressure as determined by TAB contractor. If the maximum valve position is below 50% (adj.), then the differential pressure setpoint will be set to minimum pressure as determined by TAB contractor. If the maximum valve position is between 90%-50% (adj.), then the differential pressure setpoint will modulate linearly between the minimum and maximum pressure setpoints.

**D. BOILER CONTROL:**

- 1. Sequencing:
  - a. The EMCS will enable the manufacturer provided boiler sequencer. The sequencer will modulate boilers.
- 2. Primary Circulating Pumps:
  - a. Primary circulating pumps shall be hardwired interlocked with boiler.
  - b. Primary circulating pumps shall run continuously anytime there is a call for its associated boiler.
- 3. Mixing Valve
  - a. Each boiler is to have a 3-way mixing valve provided by boiler manufacturer.
  - b. Mixing valve is to limit low water temperatures from entering boiler.

**E. HOT WATER TEMPERATURE CONTROL:**

- 1. The hot water setpoint will be sent by EMCS to sequencer and sequencer will modulate boilers to meet setpoint.
- 2. There shall be a linear hot water supply temperature reset algorithm in between:
  - a. 140°F (adj.) hot water supply when outside air temperature is at or above 60°F (adj.)
  - b. 160°F (adj.) hot water supply when outside air temperature is at or below 45°F (adj.)

**F. SAFETIES:**

- 1. Freeze Protection:
  - a. When the outside air (OA) temperature drops below 36°F (adj.), a building pump will be started. All building hot water valves will be open to 20%.
  - b. When the OA temperature rises 2°F above freeze protection setpoint for one hour, the reverse shall occur.
- 2. CO Monitoring:
  - a. A carbon monoxide sensor shall be installed in boiler room.
  - b. Carbon monoxide sensor shall be hardwired interlocked with boiler(s) and shutdown boiler(s) when carbon monoxide rises above 50 ppm.
  - c. Carbon monoxide alarm shall disable any supply fans in boiler room and enable all exhaust fans in boiler room.

**G. CONTROL POINTS:**

Description	Type
Outside Air Temperature	AI
Building Common Hot Water Supply Temperature	AI

Building Common Hot Water Return Temperature	AI
Boiler Supply Water Temperature (Each Boiler)	AI
Boiler Return Water Temperature (Each Boiler)	AI
Building Flow	AI
Makeup Water Flow	AI
Building Hot Water Differential Pressure (Each Sensor)	AI
Boiler Amps/Status (Each Boiler)	AI
Boiler Alarm (Each Boiler)	AI
Boiler Circulation Pump Amps/Status (Each Pump)	AI
Building Pump Amps/Status (Each Pump)	AI
CO Monitoring Alarm	DI
Boiler Sequencer System Enable	DO
Boiler Sequencer Hot Water Setpoint	AO
Building Pump Start/Stop Command (Each Pump)	DO
Building Pump VFD Speed (Each Pump)	AO

**4.18 SINGLE ZONE VARIABLE AIR VOLUME AIR HANDLING UNIT (PREHEAT/CHILLED WATER/HOT WATER REHEAT)**

- A. GENERAL:
  - 1. The unit shall have supply fan, hot water coil, chilled water coil and outside air damper. The control system contractor shall provide a dedicated stand-alone DDC controller for each unit.
- B. UNIT ENABLING/DISABLING:
  - 1. The occupied/unoccupied mode of operation shall be defined by the EMCS optimum start/stop schedule.
  - 2. During unoccupied times, as required to maintain the unoccupied heating and cooling setpoints 55°F (adj.) heating and 85°F (adj.) cooling as sensed by the space temperature sensor.
- C. FAN CONTROL:
  - 1. During cooling mode, the unit supply air fan shall run continuously, the VFD shall modulate the supply air fan to maintain space setpoint, and the chilled water valve shall modulate to maintain cooling supply air temperature setpoint. Minimum fan speed shall be set at 20Hz (adj.).
  - 2. During heating mode, the unit supply air fan shall run continuously, the VFD shall modulate the supply air fan to maintain space setpoint, and the hot water valve shall modulate to maintain space temperature setpoint. Minimum fan speed shall be set at 35Hz (adj.).
- D. TEMPERATURE CONTROL:
  - 1. Warm-up or Cool-down:
    - a. The EMCS shall determine the required warm-up or cool-down period based on the optimized start algorithm.

- b. Upon enabling the unit, the unit shall heat and cool as required to maintain the occupied heating and cooling setpoints (initially 70°F heating, 74°F cooling) as sensed by a space temperature sensor.
  - c. During warm-up, the supply air discharge temperature shall be 90°F (adj.). During cool-down, the supply air temperature shall be 55°F (adj.).
  - d. Once the occupied setpoint temperature threshold has been reached, the EMCS shall switch the unit to the occupied mode.
2. Occupied Mode:
- a. Preheat Coil:
    - 1) The preheat valve will modulate to maintain precool discharge air temperature of 50°F (adj.).
  - b. Heating Mode:
    - 1) When space temperature is below heating setpoint, the unit is in heating mode. The reheat valve will modulate to maintain space temperature and discharge temperature of no more than 90°F (adj.).
  - c. Cooling Mode:
    - 1) When space temperature is above cooling setpoint, the unit is in cooling mode. The chilled water valve will modulate to maintain a scheduled cooling supply air setpoint at all times during cooling mode. Initially unit discharge supply air temperature of 55°F (adj.). There shall be a linear supply air temperature reset algorithm in between:
      - (a) 55°F (adj.) supply air temperature supply when outside air temperature is at or above 80°F (adj.)
      - (b) 60°F (adj.) supply air temperature supply when outside air temperature is at or above 50°F (adj.)
3. Unoccupied Mode:
- a. The EMCS shall enable the unit as required to maintain the unoccupied heating and cooling setpoints (initially 55°F heating and 85°F cooling) as sensed by the space temperature sensor.
- E. OUTSIDE AIR DAMPER CONTROL:
1. Warm-up or Cool-down:
    - a. The outside air damper shall be closed.
  2. Occupied Mode:
    - a. EMCS shall monitor the CO2 level in the space:
      - 1) When CO2 levels are below 1100 ppm (adj.), the outside air damper shall be at the minimum position (adj.) as set by TAB. Reference scheduled CFM.
      - 2) When CO2 levels are above 1200 ppm (adj.), the outside air damper shall be at the maximum position (adj.) as set by TAB. Reference scheduled CFM.
  3. Unoccupied mode:
    - a. The outside air damper shall be closed.
- F. DRY BULB ECONOMIZER MODE: (Utilize when economizer exemption cannot be taken)
- a. In occupied or unoccupied mode, when space temperature is above space setpoint, outside air temperature is 60°F (adj.) or below and there is a call for cooling, the unit shall be in economizer mode. Outside air damper is to open 100% and to provide free cooling to the space until the space temperature setpoint is satisfied. If space is not satisfied within 10 min (adj.), mechanical cooling will be enabled.
- G. SAFETIES:
1. Freeze Protection:
    - a. When the outside air (OA) temperature drops below 36°F (adj.), chilled water and hot water valves will be open to 20% if not already open.

- b. When the OA temperature rises 2°F above freeze protection setpoint for one hour, the reverse shall occur.
- 2. Freeze Stat:
  - a. A temperature low limit switch shall be provided to disable the unit and close all dampers when it senses that the air temperature is below 36°F (adj.)

H. CONTROL POINTS:

Description	Type
Fan Amps/Status	AI
Filter Alarm	DI
Space Temperature	AI
Mixed Air Temperature	AI
Return Air Temperature	AI
Space Humidity	AI
Space CO2	AI
Pre-Heat Supply Temperature (Pre Cool)	AI
Cooling Supply Air Temperature	AI
Unit Discharge Air temperature (Re Heat)	AI
Freeze Status Alarm	DI
Fan Start/Stop Command	DO
Fan VFD Speed	AO
Chilled Water Valve	AO
Pre-Heat Hot Water Valve	AO
Re-Heat Hot Water Valve	AO
Outside Air Damper	AO

**4.19 VARIABLE AIR VOLUME AIR HANDLING UNIT (CHILLED WATER/ HOT WATER PREHEAT)**

- A. GENERAL:
  - 1. The unit shall have supply fan, hot water coil, chilled water coil and outside air damper. The control system contractor shall provide a dedicated stand-alone DDC controller for each unit.
- B. UNIT ENABLING/DISABLING:
  - 1. The occupied/unoccupied mode of operation shall be defined by the EMCS optimum start/stop schedule.
  - 2. During unoccupied times, a minimum number of associated VAV boxes, 40% (adj.), shall request the AHU before AHU is allowed to operate.
- C. FAN CONTROL:
  - 1. The unit shall operate when the associated VAV boxes it serves are in occupied mode and operational.
  - 2. The supply fan VFD will be controlled by static pressure transducer 2/3rds of the way down the longest supply duct run. If the static pressure is below setpoint, the supply fan speed will be increased. If the static pressure is above setpoint, the supply fan speed will be decreased.
  - 3. A static pressure reset algorithm shall be used with minimum and maximum limits of .5" to 1.2" (adj.). VAV boxes shall be polled for damper position. Static pressure shall be slowly decreased until 25% (adj.) of the VAV box damper positions are at least 90% open.



D. TEMPERATURE CONTROL:

1. Warm-up or Cool-down:
  - a. The EMCS shall determine the required warm-up or cool-down period based on the optimized start algorithm.
  - b. Upon enabling the unit, the unit shall heat or cool as required to satisfy the occupied heating or cooling setpoints of 60% (adj.) of the VAV boxes (initially 70°F heating, 74°F cooling) as sensed by a space temperature sensor.
  - c. During warm-up, the supply air discharge temperature shall be 90°F (adj.). During cool-down, the supply air temperature shall be 55°F (adj.).
  - d. Once the occupied setpoint temperature threshold has been reached, the EMCS shall switch the unit to the occupied mode.
2. Occupied Mode:
  - a. Preheat Coil:
    - 1) The preheat valve will modulate to maintain precool discharge air temperature of 50°F (adj.). Preheat coil shall be disabled when ambient outside air temperature is above 55°F (adj.).
  - b. Cooling Coil:
    - 1) The chilled water valve will modulate to initially maintain unit discharge supply air temperature of 55°F (adj.). There shall be a linear supply air temperature reset algorithm in between:
      - (a) 55°F (adj.) supply air temperature supply when outside air temperature is at or above 80°F (adj.)
      - (b) 60°F (adj.) supply air temperature supply when outside air temperature is at or below 50°F (adj.)
3. Unoccupied Mode:
  - a. The EMCS shall enable the unit as required to maintain the unoccupied heating and cooling setpoints (initially 55°F heating and 85°F cooling) as sensed by the VAV box space temperature sensors. A minimum number of associated VAV boxes, 40% (adj.), shall request the AHU before AHU is allowed to operate.

E. OUTSIDE AIR DAMPER CONTROL:

1. Warm-up or Cool-down:
  - a. The outside air damper shall be closed.
2. Occupied Mode:
  - a. EMCS shall monitor the CO2 level at return air duct/plenum:
    - 1) When CO2 levels are below 1100 ppm (adj.), the outside air damper shall be at the minimum position (adj.) as set by TAB. Reference scheduled CFM.
    - 2) When CO2 levels are above 1200 ppm (adj.), the outside air damper shall be at the maximum position (adj.) as set by TAB. Reference scheduled CFM.
3. Unoccupied mode:
  - a. The outside air damper shall be closed.

F. DRY BULB ECONOMIZER MODE: (Utilize when economizer exemption cannot be taken)

- a. In occupied or unoccupied mode, outside air temperature is 60°F (adj.) or below and there is a call for cooling, the unit shall be in economizer mode. Outside air damper is to open 100% and to provide free cooling. If cold deck setpoint is not met within 10 min (adj.), mechanical cooling will be enabled.

G. SAFETIES:

1. Freeze Protection:
  - a. When the outside air (OA) temperature drops below 36°F (adj.), chilled water and hot water valves will be open to 20% if not already open.

- b. When the OA temperature rises 2°F above freeze protection setpoint for one hour, the reverse shall occur.
- 2. Freeze Stat:
  - a. A temperature low limit switch shall be provided to disable the unit and close all dampers when it senses that the air temperature is below 36°F (adj.)
- 3. Static Pressure Switch
  - a. A high static pressure switch shall be provided to disable the unit and close all dampers when pressure switch is activated.

H. CONTROL POINTS:

Description	Type
Fan Amps/Status	AI
Filter Alarm	DI
Mixed Air Temperature	AI
Return Air Temperature	AI
Return Air Humidity	AI
Return Air CO2	AI
Preheat Supply Air Temperature (PreCool)	AI
Unit Discharge Air temperature	AI
Static Pressure Sensor	AI
Freeze Status Alarm	DI
High Static Alarm	DI
Fan Start/Stop Command	DO
Fan VFD Speed	AO
Chilled Water Valve	AO
Hot Water Valve	AO
Outside Air Damper	AO

**4.20 VAV TERMINAL UNIT WITH HOT WATER REHEAT**

- A. GENERAL:
  - 1. The variable air volume (VAV) terminal unit with hot water reheat shall serve intended spaces. The control system contractor shall provide a dedicated stand-alone DDC controller for each unit.
- B. UNIT ENABLING/DISABLING:
  - 1. The occupied/unoccupied mode of operation shall be defined by the EMCS schedule.
  - 2. During unoccupied times, as required to maintain the unoccupied heating and cooling setpoints 55°F (adj.) heating and 85°F (adj.) cooling as sensed by the space temperature sensor.
- C. TEMPERATURE CONTROL:
  - 1. Warm-up or Cool-down:
    - a. The EMCS shall determine the required warm-up or cool-down period based on the optimized start algorithm.
    - b. Upon enabling the unit, the unit shall heat and cool as required to maintain the occupied heating and cooling setpoints (initially 70°F heating, 74°F cooling) as sensed by a space temperature sensor.
    - c. During warm-up, the VAV box shall modulate to max heating CFM and the hot water valve shall be closed. Once the occupied setpoint temperature threshold has been reached, the EMCS shall switch the VAV box to the occupied mode.

- d. During cool-down, the VAV box shall modulate to max cooling CFM and the hot water valve shall be closed. Once the occupied setpoint temperature threshold has been reached, the EMCS shall switch the VAV box to the occupied mode.
- 2. Occupied Mode:
  - a. The unit shall heat and cool as required to maintain the occupied heating and cooling setpoints (initially 70°F heating, 74°F cooling) as sensed by a space temperature sensor.
  - b. On a rise in space temperature, the unit will modulate to provide max cooling CFM. As space temperature decreases, the box will modulate down to its minimum cooling CFM. As the space temperature continues to fall to below the spaces heating set point, the VAV terminal shall modulate its heating minimum heating CFM. At this point, the hot water valve will modulate to maintain heating leaving air temperature setpoint of 90°F (adj.). The VAV box shall modulate CFM to maintain space temperature setpoint.
  - c. The unit shall not enter heating mode unless outside air temperature is below 60° F (adj.).
- 3. Unoccupied Mode:
  - a. The VAV box shall modulate CFM and hot water valve as needed to maintain unoccupied space temperature setpoints.

D. CONTROL POINTS:

Description	Type
Space Temperature	AI
Discharge Air Temperature	AI
Discharge Air CFM Flow	AI
Damper Position	AO
Hot Water Valve	AO

**4.21 SINGLE ZONE DX RTU**

- A. GENERAL:
  - 1. System consists of a direct expansion (DX) cooling section, heating section, supply fan section and an outside air damper.
  - 2. Temperature sensors for DX single zone RTU serving a classroom shall have a blank face with occupancy override button.
  - 3. Temperature sensors for DX RTU serving areas such as Administration, Gyms, Auditoriums, Cafeterias, Kitchens, Choir, Dance and Band shall have a blank face with occupancy override button.
- B. UNIT ENABLING/DISABLING:
  - 1. The occupied/unoccupied mode of operation shall be defined by the EMCS optimum start/stop schedule.
  - 2. During unoccupied times, as required to maintain the unoccupied heating and cooling setpoints 55°F (adj.) heating and 85°F (adj.) cooling as sensed by the space temperature sensor.
  - 3. When the override pushbutton is depressed, the unit shall be indexed to the occupied mode for an adjustable period of time (initially 1 hour). After the override time period has expired, the unit shall revert back to the unoccupied mode.
- C. FAN CONTROL:
  - 1. Fan speed shall be controlled by the unit's internal controls. If unit requires fan speed to be controlled by external source, contractor to provide everything necessary to achieve fan control as noted below.
    - a. Fan shall run in low speed during first stage heating or cooling as set by TAB.

- b. Fan shall run in high speed during second stage heating or cooling as set by TAB.
- D. OUTSIDE AIR DAMPER CONTROL:
  - 1. Warm-up or Cool-down:
    - a. The outside air damper shall be closed.
  - 2. Occupied Mode:
    - a. EMCS shall monitor the CO2 level in the space:
      - 1) When CO2 levels are below 1100 ppm (adj.), the outside air damper shall be at the minimum position (adj.) as set by TAB. Reference scheduled CFM.
      - 2) When CO2 levels are above 1200 ppm (adj.), the outside air damper shall be at the maximum position (adj.) as set by TAB. Reference scheduled CFM.
  - 3. Unoccupied Mode:
    - a. The outside air damper shall be closed.
- E. TEMPERATURE CONTROL:
  - 1. Warm-up or Cool-down:
    - a. The EMCS shall determine the required warm-up or cool-down period based on the optimized start algorithm.
    - b. Upon enabling the unit, the unit shall heat and cool as required to maintain the occupied heating and cooling setpoints (initially 70°F heating, 74°F cooling) as sensed by a space temperature sensor.
    - c. Once the occupied setpoint temperature has been reached, the EMCS shall switch the unit to the occupied mode.
  - 2. Occupied Mode:
    - a. Space set point shall be user adjustable within  $\pm 2^\circ\text{F}$  (adj.).
    - b. In the occupied mode of operation, the unit supply fan shall cycle with a call for heating or cooling.
    - c. The unit shall heat and cool as required to maintain the occupied heating and cooling setpoints (initially 70°F heating, 74°F cooling) as sensed by a space temperature sensor.
    - d. When space temperature rises above occupied cooling setpoint, the DDC controller shall energize the first stage of mechanical cooling. When space temperature continues to rise  $2^\circ\text{F}$  (adj.) above occupied cooling setpoint, the DDC controller shall energize the second stage of mechanical cooling.
      - 1) First stage cooling – Low speed supply CFM and first stage of compressor(s)
      - 2) Second stage cooling – High speed supply CFM and second stage of compressor(s)
      - 3) Unit shall run in second stage cooling until space temperature drops to occupied space cooling setpoint. Unit shall then run in first stage of cooling until space temperature drops  $1^\circ\text{F}$  (adj.) below space temperature setpoint and then cycle off.
    - e. When space temperature drops below occupied heating setpoint, the DDC controller shall energize the first stage of heating. When space temperature continues to drop  $2^\circ\text{F}$  (adj.) below occupied heating setpoint, the DDC controller shall energize the second stage of heating.
      - 1) First stage heating – Low speed supply CFM and first stage of heating.
      - 2) Second stage heating – High speed supply CFM and second stage of heating.
      - 3) Unit shall run in second stage heating until space temperature rises to occupied space heating setpoint. Unit shall then run in first stage heating until space temperature rises  $1^\circ\text{F}$  (adj.) above space temperature setpoint and then cycle off.
  - 3. Unoccupied Mode:

- a. The EMCS shall enable the unit as required to maintain the unoccupied heating and cooling setpoints (initially 55°F heating and 85°F cooling) as sensed by the space temperature sensor.
  - b. When override button is pushed, the unit shall index to occupied mode for one (1) hour (adj.). After the override time has expired, the unit shall revert to unoccupied mode.
- F. DRY BULB ECONOMIZER MODE: (Utilize when economizer exemption cannot be taken)
- 1. In occupied or unoccupied mode, when space temperature is above space setpoint, outside air temperature is 60°F (adj.) or below and there is a call for cooling, the unit shall be in economizer mode. Outside air damper is to open 100% and to provide free cooling to the space until the space temperature setpoint is satisfied. If space is not satisfied within 10 min (adj.), mechanical cooling will be enabled.
  - 2. Units equipped with a powered exhaust fan, the fan is to be enabled any time the unit is in economizer mode.
  - 3. All sensors necessary for economizer mode operation and FDD shall be provided and fully controlled by EMCS contractor.
- G. FAULT DETECTION AND DIAGNOSTICS (FDD) (Utilize when economizer exemption cannot be taken)
- 1. Each DX rooftop unit shall have its economizer status monitored by the EMCS. The unit's fault detection and diagnostics shall be capable of generating a visible alarm to be seen by the EMCS should the unit be in economizer when conditions are not met, or vice versa.
- H. CONTROL POINTS:

Description	Type
Supply Fan Amps/Status	AI
Compressor Amps/Status (Each Compressor)	AI
Mixed Air Temperature	AI
Supply Air Temperature	AI
Outside Air Temperature (Global)	AI
Space Temperature	AI
Space CO2 Concentration	AI
Outside Air Damper Feedback	AI
Fan Start/Stop Command (Each Fan)	DO
Fan Speed (Only If Required by Unit)	AO
Compressor Cooling Command (Each Stage)	DO
Heating Command (Each Stage)	DO
Outside Air Damper	AO

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 09 25  
VARIABLE FREQUENCY DRIVES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions, Division 1 Specifications and Section 23 00 10, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Variable Frequency Drive (VFD)
- B. Options, include bypass

**1.03 SCOPE**

- A. This section provides specification for AC variable frequency drives or herein identified as VFD's for use with NEMA B, NEMA D, NEMA A, NEMA E, Wound Rotor, Synchronous design AC motors.
- B. The VFD manufacturer shall furnish, test, adjust and certify all packages systems for satisfactory operation prior to shipment.
- C. Any exceptions / deviations to this specification shall be indicated in writing and submitted.

**1.04 REFERENCES**

- A. EN 61010-1 - Safety requirement for electrical equipment for measurement, control, and laboratory use. Part 1 - General Requirements
- B. EN 60204-1 - Safety of machinery-electrical equipment of machines. Part 1 - Specification for general requirements.
- C. EN 60950 - Safety of information technology equipment including electrical business equipment.
- D. IEC 664 - Insulation coordination for equipment within low- voltage systems.
- E. IEC 60068-2-6 - Environmental testing - Part 2 - Test Fc: vibration (sinusoidal).
- F. IEC 60068-2-27 - Environmental testing. Part 2: Tests. Test Ea and guidance: Shock
- G. IEC 801-4 - Electrical Fast Transient (Supplementary Wave). IEEE C62.41 - Recommended Practice on Surge Voltages in Low- Voltage AC Power Circuits.
- H. NEC - National Electrical Code
- I. NEMA ICS6 - Industrial control and systems enclosures. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for electrical equipment
- J. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum).
- K. NEMA FU1 - Low Voltage Cartridge Fuses.
- L. NEMA ICS 7 - Industrial Control and Systems: Adjustable Speed Drives.
- M. NEMA ICS 7.1 - Safety Standards for Construction and Guide for Selection, Installation, and Operation of Adjustable Speed Drive Systems.
- N. UL 508 - Industrial control equipment.
- O. UL 508C - Power conversion equipment.
- P. UL 508C - Testing standard
- Q. UL Type 1 or Type 12 - As listed in the contract documents

### 1.05 SUBMITTALS

- A. Provide submittal data on all items specified in this section in accordance with Specification Section 23 00 10, General Conditions, and Division 1.
- B. Product Data:
  - 1. Provide as outlined in the contract documents previously issued:
    - a. General description, voltage, horsepower, max current ratings, diagrams.
    - b. Ratings and weights.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Provide as outlined in the contract documents previously issued:
    - a. Outline dimensions.
    - b. Mounting points.
    - c. Interconnecting wiring diagrams.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions:
  - 1. Provide with each variable frequency drive at time of shipment and submittal:
    - a. Installation methods
    - b. Connection points
- E. Submit product data for Variable Frequency Drive (VFD) with submittal package. Include manufacturer, dimensions, ratings, listings, elementary power and control wiring diagrams and data on features and components. Provide mounting points and connection points. Any exceptions to the specification shall be clearly noted in the submittal.

### 1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. The VFD and options shall comply with the applicable requirements of the latest standards of ANSI, IEEE, and the National Electrical Code.
- B. The VFD and options shall be tested to ANSI/UL Standard 508 and listed by a nationally recognized testing agency such as UL or ETL. Device shall bear label.
- C. To ensure quality and minimize infantile failures at the jobsite, the VFD shall be "burned in" for 24- hours by the manufacturer.
- D. All VFD shall be UL listed for short circuit current rating of 100 kA and UL label shall be attached accordingly.
- E. All VFD system door mounted pilot devices shall be tested to verify successful operation. Documentation shall be provided upon the request of the engineer.
- F. All features shall be functionally tested at the factory for proper operation.

### 1.07 WARRANTY

- A. VFD shall be free from defects in materials and workmanship under normal use and service for a period of 3 year from substantial completion.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 GENERAL

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. ABB
  - 2. Danfoss
- B. Furnish complete variable speed drives as specified herein. All standard and optional features requested shall be included within the VFD enclosure unless otherwise specified. Drives shall be for variable torque load, unless otherwise noted.
- C. The variable speed drives shall convert three-phase, 60 HZ utility power to adjustable voltage and frequency, three-phase, AC power for step less motor speed control from 10% to 100% of

the motor's 60 Hz speed. Input voltage shall be as specified in the schedule.

- D. The VFD power input stage shall convert three-phase AC line power to a fixed DC bus voltage. This will be accomplished with a solid state three-phase full-wave diode rectifier with metal oxide varistor (MOV) three-phase protection. Displacement power factor shall not be less than 0.95 throughout the speed range. Input line inductors (3%) shall be included on the line side of the power input state for units that have saturating (non-linear) DC link reactors.
- E. The VFD output power shall vary frequency to the motor from 6 to 60 Hz with resultant motor speed varying at the motor nameplate rated speed, with output voltage variation from zero to motor rated voltage for optimum volts per hertz (V/Hz) ratio for fan and pump loads. Output current shall be rated 110% of motor full load amps (FLA) for 1 minute based upon VFD's variable torque FLA rating. The output must be a voltage source type generating a sine coded PWM waveform utilizing an asynchronous carrier frequency (output transistor switching frequency is to be independent of drive output frequency). This carrier frequency shall be adjustable to minimize harmonically induced noise or vibration.
- F. All VFD shall contain integral EMI filters to attenuate radio frequency interference conducted to the AC power line.
- G. VFD shall minimize the audible motor noise through the use of an adjustable carrier frequency. The carrier frequency shall be automatically adjusted to optimize motor and VFD operation while reducing motor noise. VFDs with fixed carrier frequency are not acceptable.

## 2.02 FEATURES

- A. The VFD shall include the following features:
  - 1. The VFD shall be housed in a NEMA 1 enclosure for indoor applications.
  - 2. The VFD shall be housed in a NEMA 3R enclosure for outdoor applications.
  - 3. The following display/control parameters shall be located on the front of the enclosure:
    - a. Hand/Off/Auto selector to start and stop the motor. In the auto position, the drive shall start/stop from a remote contact closure. In the auto position, motor speed shall be determined by the follower signal. In the manual position, motor speed shall be determined by manual adjustment.
    - b. Power on indication that the VFD is being supplied by the power line.
    - c. Fault indication that the VFD has tripped on a fault condition.
    - d. Display shall indicate load parameters such as load percent, frequency or running load amps.
    - e. A set of form C, dry contacts to indicate when the VFD is in the run mode.
    - f. A set of form C, dry contacts to indicate when the VFD is in the fault mode.
    - g. Terminations for safety interlocks such as freeze and smoke shut-down.
    - h. For a fault condition other than a ground fault, short circuit or internal fault, an auto restart function shall provide up to 6 programmable restart attempts. The time delay before restart attempts shall be a minimum of 30 seconds. This function permits automatic restarting after the drive controller detects a fault, provided that the other operating functions are correct, a run command is present, and the fault has disappeared. This shall be a function that is field selectable.
    - i. The VFD shall include a door interlocked, padlockable, input power disconnect switch.
- B. The following bypass features shall be included:
  - 1. Manual bypass shall provide all the circuitry necessary to transfer the motor from the VFD to the power line, or from the line to the controller.
  - 2. The AC Drive shall include mechanically and electrically interlocked isolation and bypass contactors complete with thermal overload relay, VFD/OFF/BYPASS switch and TEST/NORMAL selector switch.



3. Motor overload protection shall be provided in both the controller mode and the bypass mode.
  4. The operator shall have full control of the bypass starter by operation of the VFD/OFF/BYPASS selector switch.
  5. In the automatic mode of operation the isolation and bypass contactors shall be sequenced by the 110 volt rated auto start contact provided by user.
  6. A test/normal selector switch shall provide test operation of the power converter while operating the motor in bypass.
  7. A pilot light shall indicate whether motor is operating in drive or bypass mode.
- C. Speed Reference Input:
1. Shall accept both a manual speed signal and a 0-10 VDC speed reference analog input signal from the Building Automation System (BAS). The input signal will generally be a temperature signal on single zone VAV applications or cooling tower control or a pressure signal on VAV applications.
- D. Feedback Signal:
1. Provide 0-5 VDC or 0-20 mA analog output signal to indicate actual operating speed of VFD. Output signal shall be fed into the BAS.
- E. The VFD shall include a standard EIA-485 communications port and capabilities to be connected to the following serial communications protocols at no additional cost and without the need to install any additional hardware or software in the VFD: BacNet MS/TP, Lonwork Free Topology (FTP) and Modbus.

### **2.03 PROTECTIVE FEATURES**

- A. The VFD shall include the following protective features:
1. Protection against input transient voltage spikes.
  2. Separate overload protection for each motor controlled.
  3. Protection against input power under voltage, over voltage, and phase loss.
  4. Protection against output current overload and over current.
  5. Protection against over temperature within the VFD enclosure.
  6. Protection against over voltage on the DC bus.
  7. DC bus discharge circuit for protection of service personnel.
  8. Insensitive to incoming power phase sequence.
  9. The number of restart attempts shall be adjustable from 0 to 20 and the time between attempts shall be adjustable between zero and 600 seconds. The original set-up shall be 4 restarts with 120 seconds between restarts.
  10. Four programmable critical frequency lockouts ranges to prevent the VFD from operating the load at a speed that causes vibration in the driven equipment.
  11. An automatic start delay may be selected from 0 to 120 seconds. During the start delay the VFD shall be programmed to provide either no voltage to the motor or apply DC braking current if desired.

### **2.04 ADJUSTMENTS**

- A. The VFD shall include the following adjustments inside the enclosure:
1. Maximum speed, adjustable 50-100% base speed.
  2. Minimum speed, adjustable 0-50% base speed.
  3. Acceleration time, adjustable 3 to 1800 seconds.
  4. Deceleration time, adjustable 3 to 1800 seconds with override circuit to prevent nuisance trips if decel time is set too short.
  5. Current limit, adjustable 0-100%.

## **2.05 SERVICE CONDITIONS**

- A. The VFD shall be designed to operate within the following service conditions:
  - 1. Ambient temperature, 14 to 113°F.
  - 2. 0 to 95% relative humidity, non-condensing.
  - 3. Elevation to 3,300 feet without derating.
  - 4. AC line voltage variation, -10% to +10% of nominal.
  - 5. No side clearance shall be required for cooling.
  - 6. All VFD shall be plenum rated.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 START UP SERVICE**

- A. The manufacturer shall provide start up service by a factory trained service technician. The service technician shall verify correct installation, start up the drive, and check for proper operation.
- B. The VFD's shall be mounted and installed in accordance with all local, state, federal and NEC codes.
- C. Protection:
  - 1. Before and during the installation, the VFD shall be protected from site and environmental contaminants.
- D. Installation:
  - 1. Installation shall be in compliance with the manufacturer's instructions, drawings and recommendations.
- E. Start-up Assistance:
  - 1. On-site assistance shall be available from a factory certified technical representative who shall supervise the contractor's installation, testing and start-up of the VFD.
- F. Do not install VFD until building environment can be maintained in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

### **3.02 TRAINING**

- A. The manufacturer shall have regularly scheduled maintenance and training schools on the equipment supplied.
- B. Training course shall be quoted as a separate line item with submittal.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 21 13  
HYDRONIC PIPING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Hydronic system requirements.
- B. Heating water piping, above grade.
- C. Chilled water piping, above grade.
- D. Equipment drains and overflows.
- E. Pipe hangers and supports.
- F. Unions, flanges, mechanical couplings, and dielectric connections.
- G. Valves:
  - 1. Pressure independent temperature control valves and balancing valves.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 07 84 00 - Firestopping.
- B. Section 23 05 23 - General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping.
- C. Section 23 05 53 - Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment.
- D. Section 23 07 19 - HVAC Piping Insulation.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASME BPVC-IX - Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX - Qualification Standard for Welding, Brazing, and Fusing Procedures; Welders; Brazers; and Welding, Brazing, and Fusing Operators; 2021.
- B. ASME B16.3 - Malleable Iron Threaded Fittings: Classes 150 and 300; 2021.
- C. ASME B16.15 - Cast Copper Alloy Threaded Fittings: Classes 125 and 250; 2018.
- D. ASME B16.18 - Cast Copper Alloy Solder Joint Pressure Fittings; 2021.
- E. ASME B16.22 - Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder-Joint Pressure Fittings; 2021.
- F. ASME B16.34 - Valves — Flanged, Threaded, and Welding End; 2020.
- G. ASME B31.9 - Building Services Piping; 2020.
- H. ASTM A53/A53M - Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless; 2022.
- I. ASTM A106/A106M - Standard Specification for Seamless Carbon Steel Pipe for High-Temperature Service; 2019a.
- J. ASTM A234/A234M - Standard Specification for Piping Fittings of Wrought Carbon Steel and Alloy Steel for Moderate and High Temperature Service; 2019.
- K. ASTM A536 - Standard Specification for Ductile Iron Castings; 1984, with Editorial Revision (2019).
- L. ASTM B32 - Standard Specification for Solder Metal; 2020.
- M. ASTM B88 - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube; 2020.
- N. ASTM B88M - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube (Metric); 2020.
- O. ASTM D1785 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe, Schedules 40, 80, and 120; 2021a.

- P. ASTM D2241 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Pressure-Rated Pipe (SDR Series); 2020.
- Q. ASTM D2466 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 40; 2021.
- R. ASTM D2467 - Standard Specification for Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Plastic Pipe Fittings, Schedule 80; 2020.
- S. ASTM D2855 - Standard Practice for the Two-Step (Primer and Solvent Cement) Method of Joining Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) or Chlorinated Poly (Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Pipe and Piping Components with Tapered Sockets; 2020.
- T. ASTM F708 - Standard Practice for Design and Installation of Rigid Pipe Hangers; 2024.
- U. ASTM F1476 - Standard Specification for Performance of Gasketed Mechanical Couplings for Use in Piping Applications; 2007 (Reapproved 2019).
- V. AWS A5.8M/A5.8 - Specification for Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding; 2019.
- W. AWS D1.1/D1.1M - Structural Welding Code - Steel; 2020, with Errata (2023).
- X. AWWA C606 - Grooved and Shouldered Joints; 2015.
- Y. MSS SP-58 - Pipe Hangers and Supports - Materials, Design, Manufacture, Selection, Application, and Installation; 2018, with Amendment (2019).

#### **1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Welders Certificate: Include welders certification of compliance with ASME BPVC-IX.
- B. Product Data:
  - 1. Include data on pipe materials, pipe fittings, valves, and accessories.
  - 2. Show grooved joint couplings, fittings, valves, and specialties on drawings and product submittals, specifically identified with the manufacturer's style or series designation.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate pipe fittings, particulars such as gages, sizes, and configuration prior to start of work for [all piping] systems. Provide drawings in 1/4" per foot scale or larger.

#### **1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Welder Qualifications: Certify in accordance with ASME BPVC-IX.

#### **1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Provide temporary end caps and closures on piping and fittings. Maintain in place until installation.
- B. Protect piping systems from entry of foreign materials by temporary covers, completing sections of the work, and isolating parts of completed system.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 HYDRONIC SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Comply with ASME B31.9 and applicable federal, state, and local regulations.
- B. Piping: Provide piping, fittings, hangers, and supports as required, as indicated, and as follows:
  - 1. Where more than one piping system material is specified, provide joining fittings that are compatible with piping materials and ensure that the integrity of the system is not jeopardized.
  - 2. Use non-conducting dielectric connections whenever jointing dissimilar metals.
  - 3. Grooved mechanical joints may be used in accessible locations only.
    - a. Accessible locations include those exposed on interior of building, in pipe chases, and in mechanical rooms, aboveground outdoors, and as approved by Architect.
    - b. Grooved mechanical connections and joints comply with AWWA C606.

- 1) Ductile Iron: Comply with ASTM A536, Grade 65-45-12.
  - 2) Steel: Comply with ASTM A106/A106M, Grade B or ASTM A53/A53M.
  - c. Use rigid joints unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Provide pipe hangers and supports in accordance with ASME B31.9 or MSS SP-58 unless indicated otherwise.
- C. Pipe-to-Valve and Pipe-to-Equipment Connections: Use flanges, unions, or grooved couplings to allow disconnection of components for servicing; do not use direct welded, soldered, or threaded connections.
1. Where grooved joints are used in piping, provide grooved valve/equipment connections if available; if not available, provide flanged ends and grooved flange adapters.
- D. Valves: Provide valves where indicated:
1. Gate, ball and butterfly valves: Comply with requirements specified in Section 230523 General-Duty Valves for HVAC Piping.
  2. Provide drain valves where indicated, and if not indicated, provide at least at main shut-off, low points of piping, bases of vertical risers, and at equipment. Use 3/4 inch (20 mm) gate valves with cap; pipe to nearest floor drain.
  3. Install calibrated-orifice, balancing valves in the return pipe of each heating or cooling terminal.

## **2.02 HEATING WATER PIPING, ABOVE GRADE**

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Schedule 40, black, using one of the following joint types:
1. Welded Joints: ASTM A234/A234M, wrought steel welding type fittings; AWS D1.1/D1.1M welded.
  2. Threaded Joints: ASME B16.3, malleable iron fittings.
  3. Grooved Joints: AWWA C606 grooved pipe, fittings of same material, and mechanical couplings.
- B. Copper Tube: ASTM B88 (ASTM B88M), Type L (B), drawn, using one of the following joint types:
1. Solder Joints: ASME B16.18 cast brass/bronze or ASME B16.22 solder wrought copper fittings.
    - a. Solder: ASTM B32 lead-free solder, HB alloy (95-5 tin-antimony) or tin and silver.
  2. Tee Connections: Mechanically extracted collars with notched and dimpled branch tube.

## **2.03 CHILLED WATER PIPING, ABOVE GRADE**

- A. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Schedule 40, black; using one of the following joint types:
1. Welded Joints: ASTM A234/A234M, wrought steel welding type fittings; AWS D1.1/D1.1M welded.
  2. Threaded Joints: ASME B16.3, malleable iron fittings.
  3. Grooved Joints: AWWA C606 grooved pipe, fittings of same material, and mechanical couplings.
- B. Copper Tube: ASTM B88 (ASTM B88M), Type L (B), hard drawn; using one of the following joint types:
1. Solder Joints: ASME B16.18 cast brass/bronze or ASME B16.22, solder wrought copper fittings.
    - a. Solder: ASTM B32 lead-free solder, HB alloy (95-5 tin-antimony) or tin and silver.
    - b. Braze: AWS A5.8M/A5.8 BCuP copper/silver alloy.
  2. Tee Connections: Mechanically extracted collars with notched and dimpled branch tube.

## **2.04 EQUIPMENT DRAINS AND OVERFLOWS**

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B88 (ASTM B88M), Type L (B), drawn; using one of the following joint types:

1. Solder Joints: ASME B16.18 cast brass/bronze or ASME B16.22 solder wrought copper fittings; ASTM B32 lead-free solder, HB alloy (95-5 tin-antimony) or tin and silver.
  2. Grooved Joints: AWWA C606 grooved pipe, fittings of same material, and mechanical couplings.
- B. PVC Pipe: ASTM D1785, Schedule 40, or ASTM D2241, SDR 21 or 26.
1. Fittings: ASTM D2466 or D2467, PVC.
  2. Joints: Solvent welded in accordance with ASTM D2855.

## **2.05 PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS**

- A. Provide hangers and supports that comply with MSS SP-58. Refer to Section 230529 Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment.
1. If type of hanger or support for a particular situation is not indicated, select appropriate type using MSS SP-58 recommendations.
  2. Hangers for Pipe Sizes 1/2 to 1-1/2 Inch (13 to 38 mm): Carbon steel, adjustable swivel, split ring.
  3. Hangers for Cold Pipe Sizes 2 Inches (50 mm) and Greater: Carbon steel, adjustable, clevis.
  4. Hangers for Hot Pipe Sizes 2 to 4 Inches (50 to 100 mm): Carbon steel, adjustable, clevis.
  5. Hangers for Hot Pipe Sizes 6 Inches (150 mm) and Greater: Adjustable steel yoke, cast iron roll, double hanger.
  6. Multiple or Trapeze Hangers: Steel channels with welded spacers and hanger rods.
  7. Multiple or Trapeze Hangers for Hot Pipe Sizes 6 Inches (150 mm) and Greater: Steel channels with welded spacers and hanger rods, cast iron roll.
  8. Copper Pipe Support: Carbon steel ring, adjustable, copper plated.
  9. Hanger Rods: Mild steel threaded both ends, threaded one end, or continuous threaded.
- B. In grooved installations, use rigid couplings with offsetting angle-pattern bolt pads or with wedge-shaped grooves in header piping to permit support and hanging in accordance with ASME B31.9.

## **2.06 UNIONS, FLANGES, MECHANICAL COUPLINGS, AND DIELECTRIC CONNECTIONS**

- A. Unions for Pipe 2 Inches (50 mm) and Less:
1. Ferrous Piping: 150 psig (1034 kPa) malleable iron, threaded.
  2. Copper Pipe: Bronze, soldered joints.
- B. Flanges for Pipe 2 Inches (50 mm) and Greater:
1. Ferrous Piping: 150 psig (1034 kPa) forged steel, slip-on.
  2. Copper Piping: Bronze.
  3. Gaskets: 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick, preformed neoprene.
- C. Mechanical Couplings for Grooved and Shouldered Joints: Two or more curved housing segments with continuous key to engage pipe groove, circular C-profile gasket, and bolts to secure and compress gasket.
1. Dimensions and Testing: In accordance with AWWA C606.
  2. Mechanical Couplings: Comply with ASTM F1476.
  3. Bolts and Nuts: Hot dipped galvanized or zinc-electroplated steel.
  4. When pipe is field grooved, provide coupling manufacturer's grooving tools.
- D. Dielectric Connections:
1. Waterways:
    - a. Water impervious insulation barrier capable of limiting galvanic current to 1 percent of short circuit current in a corresponding bimetallic joint.
    - b. Dry insulation barrier able to withstand 600-volt breakdown test.

- c. Construct of galvanized steel with threaded end connections to match connecting piping.
- d. Suitable for the required operating pressures and temperatures.
2. Flanges:
  - a. Dielectric flanges with same pressure ratings as standard flanges.
  - b. Water impervious insulation barrier capable of limiting galvanic current to 1 percent of short circuit current in a corresponding bimetallic joint.
  - c. Dry insulation barrier able to withstand 600-volt breakdown test.
  - d. Construct of galvanized steel with threaded end connections to match connecting piping.
  - e. Suitable for the required operating pressures and temperatures.

## **2.07 PRESSURE INDEPENDENT TEMPERATURE CONTROL VALVES AND BALANCING VALVES**

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Armstrong Pumps, Inc.
  2. Bell & Gossett Domestic Pump; a division of ITT Industries.
  3. Flow Design Inc.
  4. Gerand Engineering Co.
  5. Griswold Controls.
  6. Taco.
- B. Control Valves: Factory-fabricated pressure independent with internal differential pressure regulator (DPRV), which automatically adjusts to normal changes in system pressure and provides 100 percent control valve authority at all positions of the valve.
  1. PICV to accurately control the flow from 0 to 100 percent full rated flow with an operating pressure differential range of 3 to 60 psig (21 to 414 kPa).
  2. Provide control valve to incorporate control, balancing, and flow limiting. Hydronic system pressure independent control valve bodies to comply with ASME B16.34 or ASME B16.15 pressure and temperature class ratings based on the design operating temperature and 150 percent of the system design operating pressure and have the following characteristics:
    - a. 2 NPS (50 DN) and Smaller: Class 150 bronze body with union connections, stainless steel trim trim, stainless steel rising stem, stainless steel disc or ball, and screwed ends with backseating capacity repackable under pressure.
    - b. 2-1/2 NPS (65 DN) and Larger: Class 125 iron or ductile iron body, stainless steel trim, stainless steel rising stem, stainless steel disc or ball, flanged ends with backseating capacity repackable under pressure.
    - c. Pressure Control Seat: Brass construction with vulcanized EPDM.
    - d. Sizing: Line-size.
    - e. Close-Off (Differential) Pressure Rating: Combination of actuator, DPRV action, and trim to provide a minimum close-off pressure rating of 150 percent of total system (pump) head.
- C. Electronic Actuators: Direct-mounted, self-calibrating type designed for minimum 60,000 full-stroke cycles at rated force.
- D. Provide actuator with visible position indication. Fail positions on power failure to include in-place, open or closed as indicated in the controls specifications.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 PREPARATION**

- A. Ream pipe and tube ends. Remove burrs. Bevel plain end ferrous pipe.
- B. Prepare pipe for grooved mechanical joints as required by coupling manufacturer.

- C. Remove scale and dirt on inside and outside before assembly.
- D. Prepare piping connections to equipment using jointing system specified.
- E. Keep open ends of pipe free from scale and dirt. Protect open ends with temporary plugs or caps.

### 3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. PVC Pipe: Make solvent-welded joints in accordance with ASTM D2855.
- C. Route piping in orderly manner, parallel to building structure, and maintain gradient.
- D. Install piping to conserve building space and to avoid interference with use of space.
- E. Group piping whenever practical at common elevations.
- F. Sleeve pipe passing through partitions, walls, and floors.
- G. Slope piping and arrange to drain at low points.
- H. Grooved Joints:
  - 1. Install in accordance with the manufacturer's latest published installation instructions.
  - 2. Gaskets to be suitable for the intended service, molded, and produced by the coupling manufacturer.
- I. Inserts:
  - 1. Provide inserts for placement in concrete formwork.
  - 2. Provide inserts for suspending hangers from reinforced concrete slabs and sides of reinforced concrete beams.
  - 3. Provide hooked rod to concrete reinforcement section for inserts carrying pipe over 4 inches (100 mm).
- J. Pipe Hangers and Supports:
  - 1. Install in accordance with ASME B31.9, ASTM F708, or MSS SP-58.
  - 2. Support horizontal piping as scheduled.
  - 3. Install hangers to provide minimum 1/2-inch (13 mm) space between finished covering and adjacent work.
  - 4. Place hangers within 12 inches (300 mm) of each horizontal elbow.
  - 5. Use hangers with 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum vertical adjustment. Design hangers for pipe movement without disengagement of supported pipe.
  - 6. Support vertical piping at every floor. Support riser piping independently of connected horizontal piping.
  - 7. Where several pipes can be installed in parallel and at same elevation, provide multiple or trapeze hangers.
  - 8. Provide copper plated hangers and supports for copper piping.
- K. Provide clearance in hangers and from structure and other equipment for installation of insulation and access to valves and fittings. See Section 23 07 19.
- L. Use eccentric reducers to maintain top of pipe level.
- M. Install valves with stems upright or horizontal, not inverted.

### 3.03 SCHEDULES

- A. Piping Applications:
  - 1. Hot-water heating piping, above ground, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
    - a. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered or mechanical pressure-seal joints.



- b. Schedule 40 steel pipe; Class 150, malleable-iron fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; threaded or pressure-seal joints.
2. Hot-water heating piping, above ground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be one of the following:
  - a. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints; pressure seal joints are acceptable on piping NPS 4 and smaller.
  - b. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints; pressure seal joints are acceptable on piping NPS 4 and smaller.
  - c. Schedule 40 steel pipe, grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fitting; and grooved mechanical joints.
3. Chilled-water piping, above ground, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be one of the following:
  - a. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered or mechanical pressure-seal joints.
  - b. Schedule 40 steel pipe; Class 150, malleable-iron fittings; cast-iron flanges and flange fittings; threaded or pressure-seal joints.
4. Chilled-water piping, above ground, NPS 2-1/2 and larger, shall be one of the following:
  - a. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered joints; pressure seal joints are acceptable on piping NPS 4 and smaller.
  - b. Schedule 40 steel pipe, wrought-steel fittings and wrought-cast or forged-steel flanges and flange fittings, and welded and flanged joints; pressure seal joints are acceptable on piping NPS 4 and smaller.
  - c. Schedule 40 steel pipe, grooved, mechanical joint coupling and fitting; and grooved mechanical joints.
5. Condensate drain piping shall be one of the following:
  - a. Type L, drawn-temper copper tubing, wrought-copper fittings, and soldered or mechanical pressure-seal joints.
  - b. Schedule 40 PVC plastic pipe and fittings and solvent-welded joints.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 21 23  
HYDRONIC PUMPS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following categories of hydronic pumps for hydronic systems:
  - 1. End-suction pumps.
  - 2. Automatic Condensate pump units
- B. Related Sections include the following:
  - 1. Division 23 Section "Motors" for general motor requirements.
  - 2. Division 23 for inertia pads, isolation pads, spring supports, and spring hangers.

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Include certified performance curves and rated capacities; shipping, installed, and operating weights; furnished specialties; final impeller dimensions; and accessories for each Type of product indicated. Indicate pump's operating point on curves.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show pump layout and connections. Include Setting Drawings with templates for installing foundation and anchor bolts and other anchorages.
  - 1. Wiring Diagrams: Detail wiring for power, signal, and control systems and differentiate between manufacturer-installed and field-installed wiring.
- C. Maintenance Data: For pumps to include in maintenance manuals specified in Division 1.

**1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. UL Compliance: Fabricate and label pumps to comply with UL 778, "Motor- Operated Water Pumps," for construction requirements.
- B. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, connections, and dimensional requirements of pumps and are based on the specific types and models indicated. Subject to these specification requirements, other manufacturers' pumps with equal performance characteristics may be considered. Any additional cost required due to the contractor's use of an alternate manufacturer shall be the contractor's responsibility and there shall be no additional cost to the owner.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

**1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Manufacturer's Preparation for Shipping: Clean flanges and exposed machined metal surfaces and treat with anticorrosion compound after assembly and testing. Protect flanges, pipe openings, and nozzles with wooden flange covers or with screwed-in plugs.
- B. Store pumps in dry location.
- C. Retain protective covers for flanges and protective coatings during storage.
- D. Protect bearings and couplings against damage from sand, grit, and other foreign matter.
- E. Comply with pump manufacturer's written rigging instructions.

**1.06 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.

### 1.07 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
  - 1. Mechanical Seals: One mechanical seal for each pump.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.01 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
  - 1. End-Suction Pumps:
    - a. Armstrong
    - b. Bell & Gossett
    - c. Weiman
    - d. PGrundfos/PACO
    - e. Peerless
  - 2. Automatic Condensate Pumps:
    - a. Armstrong
    - b. Bell & Gossett
    - c. Grundfos/PACO
    - d. Peerless

### 2.02 GENERAL PUMP REQUIREMENTS

- A. Pump Units: Factory assembled and tested.
- B. Motors: Include built-in, thermal-overload protection and grease-lubricated ball bearings. Select each motor to be non-overloading over full range of pump performance curve.
  - 1. Minimum efficiency as indicated according to IEEE 112, Test Method B. Include motors with higher efficiency than "average standard industry motors" according to IEEE 112, Test Method B.

### 2.03 CLOSE-COUPLED, END-SUCTION PUMPS

- A. Description: Centrifugal, close-coupled, end-suction, single-stage, bronze- fitted, back-pull-out, radially split case design; rated for 175-psig minimum working pressure and a continuous water temperature of 225 deg F.
  - 1. Casing: Cast iron, with flanged piping connections, drain plug at low point of volute, and threaded gage tapings at inlet and outlet connections.
    - a. Connection Option: Unions at connections for casings that are not available with threaded companion flanges.
  - 2. Impeller: ASTM B 584, cast bronze, statically and dynamically balanced, closed, overhung, single suction, keyed to shaft, and secured by locking cap screw.
  - 3. Wear Rings: Replaceable, bronze casing ring.
  - 4. Shaft and Sleeve: Steel shaft extension with bronze sleeve and neoprene slinger.
  - 5. Shaft: Stainless-steel shaft close coupled to motor shaft.
  - 6. Seals: Mechanical, with carbon-steel rotating ring, stainless-steel spring, ceramic seat, and flexible bellows and gasket.
  - 7. Motor: Directly mounted to pump casing and with supporting legs as integral Part of motor enclosure.

### 2.04 PUMP SPECIALTY FITTINGS

- A. Suction Diffuser: Angle or straight pattern, 175-psig pressure rating, cast-iron body and end cap, pump-inlet fitting; with bronze startup and bronze or stainless-steel permanent strainers; bronze or stainless-steel straightening vanes; drain plug; and factory- or field-fabricated

support.

- B. Triple-Duty Valve: Angle or straight pattern, 175-psig pressure rating, cast-iron body, pump-discharge fitting; with drain plug and bronze-fitted shutoff, balancing, and check valve features.

## **2.05 AUTOMATIC CONDENSATE PUMP UNITS**

- A. Description: Packaged units with corrosion-resistant pump, plastic tank with cover, and automatic controls. Include factory- or field-installed check valve and a 72-inch- minimum, electrical power cord with plug.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Examine equipment foundations and anchor-bolt locations for compliance with requirements for installation.
  - 1. Examine roughing-in for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before pump installation.
  - 2. Examine foundations and inertia bases for suitable conditions where pumps are to be installed.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

### **3.02 PUMP INSTALLATION**

- A. Install pumps according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 1. Install pumps according to HI 1.1-1.5, "Centrifugal Pumps for Nomenclature, Definitions, Application and Operation."
- B. Install pumps to provide access for periodic maintenance, including removing motors, impellers, couplings, and accessories.
- C. Support pumps and piping separately so piping is not supported by pumps.
- D. Suspend in-line pumps using continuous-thread hanger rod and vibration- isolation hangers. Install seismic bracing as required by authorities having jurisdiction.
- E. Set base-mounted pumps on concrete foundation. Disconnect coupling halves before setting. Do not reconnect couplings until alignment operations have been completed.
  - 1. Support pump baseplate on rectangular metal blocks and shims, or on metal wedges with small taper, at points near foundation bolts to provide a gap of 3/4 to 1-1/2 inches between pump base and foundation for grouting.
  - 2. Adjust metal supports or wedges until pump and driver shafts are level. Check coupling faces and suction and discharge flanges of pump to verify that they are level and plumb.
- F. Automatic Condensate Pump Units: Install units for collecting condensate and extend to open drain.

### **3.03 ALIGNMENT**

- A. Align pump and motor shafts and piping connections after setting them on foundations, after grout has been set and foundation bolts have been tightened, and after piping connections have been made.
- B. Comply with pump and coupling manufacturers' written instructions.
- C. Adjust pump and motor shafts for angular and offset alignment by methods specified in HI 1.1-1.5, "Centrifugal Pumps for Nomenclature, Definitions, Application and Operation."
- D. After alignment is correct, tighten foundation bolts evenly but not too firmly. Completely fill baseplate with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout while metal blocks and shims or wedges are in place. After grout has cured, fully tighten foundation bolts.

### 3.04 CONNECTIONS

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
- C. Connect piping to pumps. Install valves that are the same size as piping connected to pumps.
- D. Install suction and discharge pipe sizes equal to or greater than diameter of pump nozzles.
- E. Install check valve and throttling valve on discharge side of in-line circulators.
- F. Install nonslam check valve and globe valve on discharge side of vertical in-line pumps.
- G. Install suction diffuser and shutoff valve on suction side of vertical in-line pumps.
- H. Install triple-duty valve on discharge side of vertical in-line pumps.
- I. Install suction diffuser and shutoff valve on suction side of base-mounted pumps.
- J. Install triple-duty valve on discharge side of base-mounted pumps.
- K. Install flexible connectors on suction and discharge sides of base-mounted pumps between pump casing and valves.
- L. Install pressure gages on pump suction and discharge. Install at integral pressure-gage tapplings where provided.
- M. Install temperature and pressure-gage connector plugs in suction and discharge piping around each pump.
- N. Install check valve and gate or ball valve on each condensate pump unit discharge.
- O. Install electrical connections for power, controls, and devices.
- P. Electrical power and control wiring and connections are specified in Division 16 Sections.
- Q. Ground equipment.
  - 1. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

### 3.05 COMMISSIONING

- A. Verify that pumps are installed and connected according to the Contract Documents.
- B. Verify that electrical wiring installation complies with manufacturer's written instructions and the Contract Documents.
- C. Perform the following preventive maintenance operations and checks before starting:
  - 1. Lubricate bearings.
  - 2. Remove grease-lubricated bearing covers, flush bearings with kerosene, and clean thoroughly. Fill with new lubricant according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 3. Disconnect coupling and check motor for proper rotation that matches direction marked on pump casing.
  - 4. Verify that pumps are free to rotate by hand and that pumps for handling hot liquids are free to rotate with pumps hot and cold. Do not operate pumps if they are bound or drag, until cause of trouble is determined and corrected.
  - 5. Check suction piping connections for tightness to avoid drawing air into pumps.
  - 6. Clean strainers.
  - 7. Verify that pump controls are correct for required application.
- D. Starting procedure for pumps with shutoff power not exceeding safe motor power is as follows:
  - 1. Prime pumps by opening suction valves and closing drains, and prepare pumps for operation.

2. Open cooling water-supply valves in cooling water supply to bearings, where applicable.
  3. Open cooling water-supply valves if stuffing boxes are water cooled.
  4. Open sealing liquid-supply valves if pumps are so fitted.
  5. Open warm-up valves of pumps handling hot liquids if pumps are not normally kept at operating temperature.
  6. Open circulating line valves if pumps should not be operated against dead shutoff.
  7. Start motors.
  8. Open discharge valves slowly.
  9. Observe leakage from stuffing boxes and adjust sealing liquid valve for proper flow to ensure lubrication of packing. Let packing "run in" before reducing leakage through stuffing boxes; then tighten glands.
  10. Check general mechanical operation of pumps and motors.
  11. Close circulating line valves once there is sufficient flow through pumps to prevent overheating.
- E. When pumps are to be started against closed check valves with discharge shutoff valves open, steps are the same, except open discharge valves before starting motors.
- F. Refer to Division 23 for detailed requirements for testing, adjusting, and balancing hydronic systems.

### **3.06 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain hydronic pumps as specified below:
1. Train Owner's maintenance personnel on procedures and schedules for starting and stopping, troubleshooting, servicing, and maintaining pumps.
  2. Review data in maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1 Section "Contract Closeout."
  3. Review data in maintenance manuals. Refer to Division 1.
  4. Schedule training with Owner, through Architect, with at least seven days' advance notice.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 23 00  
REFRIGERANT PIPING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Piping.
- B. Refrigerant.
- C. Moisture and liquid indicators.
- D. Valves.
- E. Filter-driers.

**1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AHRI 710 - Performance Rating of Liquid-Line Driers; 2009.
- B. ASHRAE Std 15 - Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems; 2022, with Addendum (2024).
- C. ASME B16.22 - Wrought Copper and Copper Alloy Solder-Joint Pressure Fittings; 2021.
- D. ASME B31.5 - Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components; 2022.
- E. ASTM B280 - Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service; 2020.
- F. AWS A5.8M/A5.8 - Specification for Filler Metals for Brazing and Braze Welding; 2019.

**1.03 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION**

- A. Where more than one piping system material is specified ensure system components are compatible and joined to ensure the integrity of the system is not jeopardized. Provide necessary joining fittings. Ensure flanges, union, and couplings for servicing are consistently provided.
- B. Provide pipe hangers and supports in accordance with ASME B31.5 unless indicated otherwise.
- C. Liquid Indicators:
  - 1. Use line size on leaving side of liquid solenoid valves.
- D. Valves:
  - 1. Use service valves on suction and discharge of compressors.
- E. Filter-Driers:
  - 1. Use a filter-drier immediately ahead of liquid-line controls, such as thermostatic expansion valves, solenoid valves, and moisture indicators.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Provide general assembly of specialties, including manufacturers catalogue information. Provide manufacturers catalog data including load capacity.

**1.05 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Deliver and store piping and specialties in shipping containers with labeling in place.
- B. Protect piping and specialties from entry of contaminating material by leaving end caps and plugs in place until installation.
- C. Dehydrate and charge components such as piping and receivers, seal prior to shipment, until connected into system.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 PIPING**

- A. Copper Tube: ASTM B280, H58 hard drawn or O60 soft annealed.
  - 1. Fittings: ASME B16.22 wrought copper.
  - 2. Joints: Braze, AWS A5.8M/A5.8 BCuP silver/phosphorus/copper alloy.

### **2.02 REFRIGERANT**

- A. Refrigerant: Use only refrigerants that have ozone depletion potential (ODP) of zero and global warming potential (GWP) of less than 50.

### **2.03 MOISTURE AND LIQUID INDICATORS**

- A. Indicators: Single port type, UL listed, with copper or brass body, flared or solder ends, sight glass, color coded paper moisture indicator with removable element cartridge and plastic cap; for maximum temperature of 200 degrees F (93 degrees C) and maximum working pressure of 500 psi (3450 kPa).

### **2.04 VALVES**

- A. Service Valves:
  - 1. Forged brass body with copper stubs, brass caps, removable valve core, integral ball check valve, flared or solder ends, for maximum pressure of 500 psi (3450 kPa).

### **2.05 FILTER-DRIERS**

- A. Performance:
  - 1. Flow Capacity - Liquid Line: As indicated in schedule, minimum, rated in accordance with AHRI 710.
  - 2. Pressure Drop: 2 psi (14 kPa), maximum, when operating at full connected evaporator capacity.
  - 3. Design Working Pressure: 350 psi (2410 kPa), minimum.
- B. Cores: Molded molecular sieve desiccant compatible with refrigerant, activated alumina, activated charcoal, and filtration to 40 microns, with secondary filtration to 20 microns; of construction that will not pass into refrigerant lines.
- C. Construction: UL listed.
  - 1. Connections: As specified for applicable pipe type.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 PREPARATION**

- A. Ream pipe and tube ends. Remove burrs. Bevel plain end ferrous pipe.
- B. Remove scale and dirt on inside and outside before assembly.
- C. Prepare piping connections to equipment with flanges or unions.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install refrigeration specialties in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Route piping in orderly manner, with plumbing parallel to building structure, and maintain gradient.
- C. Install piping to conserve building space and avoid interference with use of space.
- D. Group piping whenever practical at common elevations and locations. Slope piping one percent in direction of oil return.
- E. Install piping to allow for expansion and contraction without stressing pipe, joints, or connected equipment.



- F. Pipe Hangers and Supports:
  - 1. Install in accordance with ASME B31.5.
  - 2. Support horizontal piping as indicated.
  - 3. Place hangers within 12 inches (300 mm) of each horizontal elbow.
  - 4. Support vertical piping at every floor. Support riser piping independently of connected horizontal piping.
  - 5. Where several pipes can be installed in parallel and at same elevation, provide multiple or trapeze hangers.
- G. Arrange piping to return oil to compressor. Provide traps and loops in piping, and provide double risers as required. Slope horizontal piping 0.40 percent in direction of flow.
- H. Provide clearance for installation of insulation and access to valves and fittings.
- I. Provide access to concealed valves and fittings.
- J. Insulate piping; refer to Section 230719.
- K. Follow ASHRAE Std 15 procedures for charging and purging of systems and for disposal of refrigerant.
- L. Fully charge completed system with refrigerant after testing.

### **3.03 SCHEDULES**

- A. Hanger Spacing for Copper Tubing.
  - 1. 1/2 inch (13 mm), 5/8 inch (16 mm), and 7/8 inch (22 mm) OD: Maximum span, 5 feet (1500 mm); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.3 mm).
  - 2. 1-1/8 inch (29 mm) OD: Maximum span, 6 feet (1800 mm); minimum rod size, 1/4 inch (6.3 mm).
  - 3. 1-3/8 inch (35 mm) OD: Maximum span, 7 feet (2100 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
  - 4. 1-5/8 inch (41 mm) OD: Maximum span, 8 feet (2400 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).
  - 5. 2-1/8 inch (54 mm) OD: Maximum span, 8 feet (2400 mm); minimum rod size, 3/8 inch (9.5 mm).

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 31 00  
HVAC DUCTS AND CASINGS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Metal ductwork.
- B. Nonmetal ductwork.
- C. Duct cleaning.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 23 05 93 - Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC.
- B. Section 23 33 00 - Air Duct Accessories.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM A480/A480M - Standard Specification for General Requirements for Flat-Rolled Stainless and Heat-Resisting Steel Plate, Sheet, and Strip; 2023b.
- B. ASTM A653/A653M - Standard Specification for Steel Sheet, Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) or Zinc-Iron Alloy-Coated (Galvannealed) by the Hot-Dip Process; 2020.
- C. ASTM A1008/A1008M - Standard Specification for Steel, Sheet, Cold-Rolled, Carbon, Structural, High-Strength Low-Alloy, High-Strength Low-Alloy with Improved Formability, Required Hardness, Solution Hardened, and Bake Hardenable; 2023, with Editorial Revision.
- D. NFPA 90A - Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems; 2021.
- E. SMACNA (DCS) - HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible; 2021.
- F. UL 181 - Standard for Factory-Made Air Ducts and Air Connectors; current edition, including all revisions.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Provide data for duct materials.
- B. Shop Drawings: Indicate duct fittings, particulars such as gages, sizes, welds, and configuration prior to start of work for all duct systems. Provide drawings in 1/4" per foot scale or larger.
- C. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of ducts and duct fittings. Record changes in fitting location and type. Show additional fittings used.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
  - 1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.
  - 2. AWS D9.1M/D9.1, "Sheet Metal Welding Code," for duct joint and seam welding.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 DUCT ASSEMBLIES**

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Construct ductwork to comply with NFPA 90A standards.
- B. Ducts: Galvanized steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Low Pressure Supply (Heating Systems): 2 inch w.g. (500 Pa) pressure class, galvanized steel.
- D. Low Pressure Supply (System with Cooling Coils): 2 inch w.g. (500 Pa) pressure class, galvanized steel.
- E. Medium Pressure Supply: 4 inch w.g. (\_\_\_ Pa) pressure class, galvanized steel.

- F. Return and Relief: 2 inch w.g. (\_\_\_ Pa) pressure class, galvanized steel.
- G. General Exhaust: 2 inch w.g. (\_\_\_ Pa) pressure class, galvanized steel.
- H. Outside Air Intake: 2 inch w.g. (\_\_\_ Pa) pressure class, galvanized steel.
- I. Transfer Air and Sound Boots: 2 inch w.g. (500 Pa) pressure class, galvanized steel.

## **2.02 MATERIALS**

- A. Galvanized Steel for Ducts: Hot-dipped galvanized steel sheet, ASTM A653/A653M FS Type B, with G60/Z180 coating.
- B. Un-Galvanized Steel for Ducts: ASTM A1008/A1008M Designation CS (commercial steel), cold-rolled.
- C. Stainless Steel for Ducts: ASTM A666, Type 304.
- D. Joint Sealers and Sealants: Non-hardening, water resistant, mildew and mold resistant.
  - 1. Type: Heavy mastic or liquid used alone or with tape, suitable for joint configuration and compatible with substrates, and recommended by manufacturer for pressure class of ducts.
  - 2. VOC Content: Not more than 75 g/L, excluding water.
  - 3. Surface Burning Characteristics: Flame spread index of zero and smoke developed index of zero, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
- E. Hanger Rod: ASTM A36/A36M; steel, galvanized; threaded both ends, threaded one end, or continuously threaded.
- F. Hanger Fasteners: Attach hangers to structure using appropriate fasteners, as follows:
  - 1. Concrete Wedge Expansion Anchors: Complying with ICC-ES AC193.
  - 2. Masonry Wedge Expansion Anchors: Complying with ICC-ES AC01.
  - 3. Concrete Screw Type Anchors: Complying with ICC-ES AC193.
  - 4. Masonry Screw Type Anchors: Complying with ICC-ES AC106.

## **2.03 DUCTWORK FABRICATION**

- A. Fabricate and support in accordance with SMACNA (DCS) and as indicated.
- B. Provide duct material, gauges, reinforcing, and sealing for operating pressures indicated.
- C. Construct T's, bends, and elbows with radius of not less than 1-1/2 times width of duct on centerline. Where not possible and where rectangular elbows must be used, provide air foil turning vanes of perforated metal with glass fiber insulation.
- D. Increase duct sizes gradually, not exceeding 15 degrees divergence wherever possible; maximum 30 degrees divergence upstream of equipment and 45 degrees convergence downstream.
- E. Fabricate continuously welded round and oval duct fittings in accordance with SMACNA (DCS).

## **2.04 MANUFACTURED DUCTWORK AND FITTINGS**

- A. Flat Oval Ducts: Machine made from round spiral lockseam duct.
  - 1. Manufacture in accordance with SMACNA (DCS).
  - 2. Fittings: Manufacture at least two gauges heavier metal than duct.
  - 3. Provide duct material, gauges, reinforcing, and sealing for operating pressures indicated.
  - 4. Manufacturers:
    - a. Ductmate Industries, Inc..
    - b. Linx Industries (formerly Lindab)..
    - c. SEMCO LLC..
    - d. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
    - e. Spiral Manufacturing Co., Inc.

- B. Spiral Ducts: Round spiral lockseam duct with galvanized steel outer wall.
  - 1. Manufacture in accordance with SMACNA (DCS).
- C. Flexible Ducts: UL 181, Class 1, UV-inhibited black polymer film supported by helically wound spring steel wire.
  - 1. Insulation: Fiberglass insulation with polyethylene vapor barrier film.
  - 2. Pressure Rating: 10 inches wg (2.50 kPa) positive and 0.5 inches wg (0.125 kPa) negative.
  - 3. Maximum Velocity: 4000 fpm (20.3 m/sec).
  - 4. Temperature Range: Minus 20 degrees F to 175 degrees F (Minus 28 degrees C to 79 degrees C).
  - 5. Manufacturers:
    - a. Flexmaster U.S,A, Inc..
    - b. McGill AirFlow, LLC..
    - c. Thermaflex; a Flex-Tek Group company.
- D. Transverse Duct Connection System: SMACNA "E" rated rigidly class connection, interlocking angle and duct edge connection system with sealant, gasket, cleats, and corner clips in accordance with SMACNA (DCS).

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install, support, and seal ducts in accordance with SMACNA (DCS).
- B. During construction provide temporary closures of metal or taped polyethylene on open ductwork to prevent construction dust from entering ductwork system.
- C. Flexible Ducts: Connect to metal ducts with adhesive plus sheet metal screws.
- D. Duct sizes indicated are inside clear dimensions.
- E. Locate ducts with sufficient space around equipment to allow normal operating and maintenance activities.
- F. Use double nuts and lock washers on threaded rod supports.
- G. Connect terminal units to supply ducts directly or with one foot (300 mm) maximum length of flexible duct. Do not use flexible duct to change direction.
- H. Connect diffusers or light troffer boots to low pressure ducts directly or with 5 feet (1.5 m) maximum length of flexible duct held in place with strap or clamp.

#### **3.02 CLEANING**

- A. Clean duct systems with high power vacuum machines. Protect equipment that could be harmed by excessive dirt with filters, or bypass during cleaning. Provide adequate access into ductwork for cleaning purposes.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 33 00  
AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Turning vanes.
- B. Backdraft dampers - metal.
- C. Duct access doors.
- D. Flexible duct connectors.
- E. Volume control dampers.
- F. Section 23 31 00 - HVAC Ducts and Casings.

**1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. NFPA 90A - Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems; 2021.
- B. NFPA 92 - Standard for Smoke Control Systems; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- C. NFPA 96 - Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations; 2024.
- D. SMACNA (DCS) - HVAC Duct Construction Standards Metal and Flexible; 2021.
- E. UL 33 - Safety Heat Responsive Links for Fire-Protection Service; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- F. UL 555 - Standard for Fire Dampers; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- G. UL 555S - Standard for Smoke Dampers; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: For each type of product.
- B. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  - 1. Extra Fusible Links: One of each type and size.

**1.04 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Protect dampers from damage to operating linkages and blades.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 TURNING VANES**

- A. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.
  - 1. Acoustic Turning Vanes: Fabricate airfoil-shaped aluminum extrusions with perforated faces and fibrous-glass fill.
- B. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figures 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."
- C. Vane Construction: Single wall for ducts up to 48 inches wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

**2.02 BACKDRAFT DAMPERS - METAL**

- A. Gravity Backdraft Dampers, Size 18 by 18 inches (450 by 450 mm) or Smaller, Furnished with Air Moving Equipment: Air moving equipment manufacturer's standard construction.
- B. Multi-Blade, Parallel Action Gravity Balanced Backdraft Dampers: Galvanized steel, with center pivoted blades of maximum 6 inch (150 mm) width, with felt or flexible vinyl sealed edges,

linked together in rattle-free manner with 90 degree stop, steel ball bearings, and plated steel pivot pin; adjustment device to permit setting for varying differential static pressure.

### **2.03 DUCT ACCESS DOORS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. American Warming and Ventilating; a Mestek Group Company.
  - 2. Cesco Products; a division of MESTEK, Inc.
  - 3. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  - 4. Elgen Manufacturing, Inc.
  - 5. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
  - 6. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  - 7. McGill AirFlow, LLC.
  - 8. Nailor Industries, Inc.
  - 9. Pottorff.
  - 10. Ruskin Company, a brand of Johnson Controls.
- B. Fabrication: Rigid and close-fitting of galvanized steel with sealing gaskets and quick fastening locking devices. For insulated ducts, install minimum 1 inch (25 mm) thick insulation with sheet metal cover.
  - 1. Less Than 12 inches (300 mm) Square: Secure with sash locks.
  - 2. Up to 18 inches (450 mm) Square: Provide two hinges and two sash locks.
  - 3. Up to 24 by 48 inches (600 by 1200 mm): Three hinges and two compression latches with outside and inside handles.
  - 4. Larger Sizes: Provide an additional hinge.

### **2.04 FLEXIBLE DUCT CONNECTORS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Ductmate Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Duro Dyne Inc.
  - 3. Elgen Manufacturing, Inc.
  - 4. Ventfabrics, Inc.
  - 5. Ward Industries; a brand of Hart & Cooley, Inc.
- B. Fabricate in accordance with SMACNA (DCS) and as indicated.
- C. Flexible Duct Connections: Fabric crimped into metal edging strip.
  - 1. Fabric: UL listed fire-retardant neoprene coated woven glass fiber fabric to NFPA 90A, minimum density 30 oz per sq yd (1.0 kg/sq m).
    - a. Net Fabric Width: Approximately 2 inches (50 mm) wide.
  - 2. Metal: 3 inches (75 mm) wide, 24 gauge, 0.0239 inch (0.61 mm) thick galvanized steel.

### **2.05 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS**

- A. Manufacturers, Standard Leakage Rating, Steel:
  - 1. Louvers & Dampers, Inc, a brand of Mestek, Inc.
  - 2. Flexmaster U.S.A., Inc.
  - 3. McGill AirFlow LLC.
  - 4. Nailor Industries, Inc.
  - 5. Pottorff.
  - 6. Ruskin Company, a brand of Johnson Controls.
- B. Fabricate in accordance with SMACNA (DCS) and as indicated.
- C. Splitter Dampers:
  - 1. Material: Same gauge as duct to 24 inches (600 mm) size in either direction, and two gauges heavier for sizes over 24 inches (600 mm).

2. Blade: Fabricate of single thickness sheet metal to streamline shape, secured with continuous hinge or rod.
  3. Operator: Minimum 1/4 inch (6 mm) diameter rod in self aligning, universal joint action, flanged bushing with set screw.
- D. Single Blade Dampers:
1. Fabricate for duct sizes up to 6 by 30 inch (150 by 760 mm).
  2. Blade: 24 gauge, 0.0239 inch (0.61 mm), minimum.
- E. Multi-Blade Damper: Fabricate of opposed blade pattern with maximum blade sizes 8 by 72 inch (200 by 1825 mm). Assemble center and edge crimped blades in prime coated or galvanized channel frame with suitable hardware.
1. Blade: 18 gauge, 0.0478 inch (1.21 mm), minimum.
- F. End Bearings: Except in round ducts 12 inches (300 mm) and smaller, provide end bearings. On multiple blade dampers, provide oil-impregnated nylon, thermoplastic elastomer, or sintered bronze bearings.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install accessories in accordance with manufacturer's instructions, NFPA 90A, and follow SMACNA (DCS). Refer to Section 23 31 00 for duct construction and pressure class.
- B. Provide backdraft dampers on exhaust fans or exhaust ducts nearest to outside and where indicated.
- C. Provide duct access doors for inspection and cleaning before and after filters, coils, fans, automatic dampers, at fire dampers, combination fire and smoke dampers, and elsewhere as indicated. Provide for cleaning kitchen exhaust ducts in accordance with NFPA 96 Provide minimum 8 by 8 inch (200 by 200 mm) size for hand access, size for shoulder access, and as indicated. Provide 4 by 4 inch (100 by 100 mm) for balancing dampers only. Review locations prior to fabrication.
- D. Provide fire dampers and combination fire and smoke dampers at locations indicated, where ducts and outlets pass through fire rated components, and where required by Authorities Having Jurisdiction. Install with required perimeter mounting angles, sleeves, breakaway duct connections, corrosion resistant springs, bearings, bushings and hinges.
- E. Install smoke dampers and combination smoke and fire dampers in accordance with NFPA 92.
- F. Demonstrate re-setting of fire dampers to Owner's representative.
- G. At fans and motorized equipment associated with ducts, provide flexible duct connections immediately adjacent to the equipment.
- H. Provide balancing dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches are taken from larger ducts as required for air balancing. Install minimum 2 duct widths from duct take-off.
- I. Use turning vanes only where indicated.
- J. Provide balancing dampers on duct take-off to diffusers, grilles, and registers, regardless of whether dampers are specified as part of the diffuser, grille, or register assembly.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 34 23  
HVAC POWER VENTILATORS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Roof ventilators.
- B. Ceiling exhaust fans.
- C. Kitchen hood upblast roof exhausters.
- D. Section 23 33 00 - Air Duct Accessories: Backdraft dampers.

**1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AMCA (DIR) - (Directory of) Products Licensed Under AMCA International Certified Ratings Program; 2015.
- B. AMCA 99 - Standards Handbook; 2016.
- C. AMCA 204 - Balance Quality and Vibration Levels for Fans; 2020.
- D. AMCA 210 - Laboratory Methods of Testing Fans for Certified Aerodynamic Performance Rating; 2016.
- E. AMCA 300 - Reverberant Room Method for Sound Testing of Fans; 2014.
- F. AMCA 301 - Methods for Calculating Fan Sound Ratings from Laboratory Test Data; 2014.
- G. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); 2020.
- H. NFPA 96 - Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations; 2024.
- I. UL 705 - Power Ventilators; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- J. UL 762 - Outline of Investigation for Power Roof Ventilators for Restaurant Exhaust Appliances; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Provide data on fans and accessories including fan curves with specified operating point clearly plotted, power, RPM, sound power levels at rated capacity, and electrical characteristics and connection requirements.
- B. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  - 1. Extra Fan Belts: One set for each individual fan.

**1.04 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Permanent ventilators may not be used for ventilation during construction.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 POWER VENTILATORS - GENERAL**

- A. Static and Dynamically Balanced: Comply with AMCA 204.
- B. Performance Ratings: Comply with AMCA 210, bearing certified rating seal.
- C. Sound Ratings: Comply with AMCA 301, tested to AMCA 300, bearing certified sound ratings seal.
- D. Fabrication: Comply with AMCA 99.
- E. UL Compliance: UL listed and labeled, designed, manufactured, and tested in accordance with UL 705.
- F. Electrical Components: Listed and classified by Underwriters Laboratories Inc. as suitable for the purpose specified and indicated.



- G. Kitchen Hood Exhaust Fans: Comply with requirements of NFPA 96 and UL 762.

## **2.02 ROOF VENTILATORS**

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Acme Engineering & Manufacturing Corp.
  2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  3. Loren Cook Company.
  4. PennBarry, Division of Air System Components.
  5. Twin City Fan & Blower; BCRD: [www.tcf.com/#sle](http://www.tcf.com/#sle).
- B. Fan Unit: V-belt or direct driven as indicated, with spun aluminum housing; resilient mounted motor; 1/2 inch (13 mm) mesh, 0.62 inch (1.6 mm) thick aluminum wire birdscreen; square base to suit roof curb with continuous curb gaskets.
- C. Roof Curb: 14 inch high self-flashing of galvanized steel with continuously welded seams, built-in cant strips.
- D. Disconnect Switch: Factory wired, non-fusible, in housing for thermal overload protected motor.
- E. Backdraft Damper: Gravity actuated, aluminum multiple blade construction, felt edged with offset hinge pin, nylon bearings, blades linked, and line voltage motor drive, power open, spring return.
- F. Sheaves: Cast iron or steel, dynamically balanced, bored to fit shafts and keyed; variable and adjustable pitch motor sheave selected so required rpm is obtained with sheaves set at mid-position; fan shaft with self-aligning pre-lubricated ball bearings.

## **2.03 CEILING EXHAUST FANS**

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Broan-Nu Tone, L.L.C.
  2. Carnes, a division of Carnes Company Inc.
  3. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  4. Loren Cook Company.
  5. PennBarry, Division of Air System Components.
  6. Twin City Fan & Blower.
- B. Centrifugal Fan Unit: V-belt or direct driven with galvanized steel housing lined with acoustic insulation, resilient mounted motor, gravity backdraft damper in discharge.
- C. Grille: Molded white plastic.
- D. Sheaves: Cast iron or steel, dynamically balanced, bored to fit shafts and keyed; variable and adjustable pitch motor sheaves selected so required rpm is obtained with sheaves set at mid-position; fan shaft with self-aligning pre-lubricated ball bearings.

## **2.04 KITCHEN HOOD UPBLAST ROOF EXHAUSTERS**

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Carnes, a division of Carnes Company Inc; VRBK.
  2. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
  3. PennBarry, Division of Air System Components.
  4. Twin City Fan & Blower.
- B. Direct Drive Fan:
1. Fan Wheel:
    - a. Type: Non-overloading, backward inclined centrifugal.
    - b. Material: Aluminum, statically and dynamically balanced.
  2. Housing:

- a. Construct of heavy gauge aluminum including curb cap, windband, and motor compartment.
  - b. Rigid internal support structure.
  - c. One-piece fabricated or fully welded curb-cap base to windband for leak proof construction.
  - d. Construct drive frame assembly of heavy gauge steel, mounted on vibration isolators.
  - e. Provide breather tube for fresh air motor cooling and wiring.
- C. Shafts and Bearings:
1. Fan Shaft:
    - a. Ground and polished steel with anti-corrosive coating.
    - b. First critical speed at least 25 percent over maximum cataloged operating speed.
  2. Bearings:
    - a. Permanently sealed or pillow block type.
    - b. Minimum L10 life in excess of 100,000 hours (equivalent to L50 average life of 500,000 hours), at maximum cataloged operating speed.
    - c. 100 percent factory tested.
- D. Drive Assembly:
1. Belts, pulleys, and keys oversized for a minimum of 150 percent of driven horsepower.
  2. Belts: Static free and oil resistant.
  3. Fully machined cast iron type, keyed and securely attached to the wheel and motor shafts.
  4. Motor pulley adjustable for final system balancing.
  5. Readily accessible for maintenance.
- E. Disconnect Switches:
1. Factory mounted and wired.
  2. Environment Type per NEMA 250: Unless otherwise indicated, as specified for the following installation locations:
    - a. Indoor Clean, Dry Locations: Type 1.
    - b. Outdoor Locations: Type 3R.
  3. Finish for Painted Steel Enclosures: Provide manufacturer's standard unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Positive electrical shutoff.
  5. Wired from fan motor to junction box installed within motor compartment.
- F. Roof Curb: 12 inch (300 mm) high self-flashing of galvanized steel with continuously welded seams, built-in cant strips, insulation and curb bottom, curb bottom, ventilated double wall, and factory installed nailer strip.
- G. Drain Trough: Allows for single-point drainage of water, grease, and other residues.
- H. Options/Accessories:
1. Birdscreen:
    - a. Provide galvanized steel construction.
  2. Clean Out Port: Removable grease repellent compression rubber plug allows access for cleaning wheel through windband.
  3. Grease Trap:
    - a. Aluminum.
    - b. Includes drain connection.
    - c. Collects grease residue.
  4. Hinge Kit:
    - a. Aluminum hinges.
    - b. Hinges and restraint cables mounted to base (sleeve).
    - c. Allows fan to tilt away for access to wheel and ductwork for inspection and cleaning.

5. Heat Baffle: Prevents heat from radiating into motor compartment.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Secure roof exhausters with cadmium plated steel lag screws to roof curb.
- C. Extend ducts to roof exhausters into roof curb. Counterflash duct to roof opening.
- D. Hung Cabinet Fans:
  1. Install flexible connections specified in Section 23 33 00 between fan and ductwork. Ensure metal bands of connectors are parallel with minimum one inch (25 mm) flex between ductwork and fan while running.
- E. Provide sheaves required for final air balance.
- F. Install backdraft dampers on inlet to roof and wall exhausters.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 37 00  
AIR OUTLETS AND INLETS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Diffusers:
- B. Registers/grilles:

**1.02 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Provide data for equipment required for this project. Review outlets and inlets as to size, finish, and type of mounting prior to submission. Submit schedule of outlets and inlets showing type, size, location, application, and noise level.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Carnes, a division of Carnes Company Inc.
- B. Krueger-HVAC, Division of Air System Components.
- C. Metalaire, Inc.
- D. Nailor Industries, Inc.
- E. Price Industries.
- F. Titus, a brand of Air Distribution Technologies.
- G. Tuttle and Bailey.

**2.02 SUPPLY, RETURN, AND EXHAUST DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES**

- A. Material: As scheduled on the contract drawings.
- B. Finish: As scheduled on the contract drawings.
- C. Face Size and Style: As scheduled on the contract drawings.
- D. Mounting: As scheduled on the contract drawings. Ceiling mounted air devices shall be compatible with the type of ceiling in which they are to be installed. Contractor is responsible to check the architectural drawings to supply the proper air devices and adapting framework for the type of construction at each air device.
- E. Accessories: As scheduled on the contract drawings.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Check location of outlets and inlets and make necessary adjustments in position to comply with architectural features, symmetry, and lighting arrangement.
- C. Install diffusers to ductwork with air tight connection.
- D. Provide balancing dampers on duct take-off to diffusers, and grilles and registers, despite whether dampers are specified as part of the diffuser, or grille and register assembly.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 73 13**  
**CENTRAL-STATION AIR-HANDLING UNITS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Casing construction.
- B. Fan section.
- C. Coil section.
- D. Filter and air cleaner section.
- E. Damper section.
- F. Controls.
- G. Roof mounting curb.

**1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AHRI 410 - Forced-Circulation Air-Cooling and Air-Heating Coils; 2001, with Addenda (2011).
- B. AMCA 500-D - Laboratory Methods of Testing Dampers for Rating; 2018.
- C. AMCA 500-L - Laboratory Methods of Testing Louvers for Rating; 2012 (Reapproved 2015).
- D. ASHRAE Std 52.2 - Method of Testing General Ventilation Air-Cleaning Devices for Removal Efficiency by Particle Size; 2017, with Addendum (2022).
- E. ASHRAE Std 90.1 I-P - Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-Rise Residential Buildings; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- F. NFPA 90A - Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems; 2021.

**1.03 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordinate the work with other trades for installation of roof mounted air handling units on roof curbs.
- B. Sequencing: Ensure that utility connections are achieved in an orderly and expeditious manner.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data:
  - 1. Published Literature: Indicate dimensions, weights, capacities, ratings, gauges and finishes of materials, and electrical characteristics and connection requirements.
  - 2. Filters: Data for filter media, filter performance data, filter assembly, and filter frames.
  - 3. Fans: Performance and fan curves with specified operating point clearly plotted, power, RPM.
  - 4. Sound Power Level Data: Fan outlet and casing radiation at rated capacity.
  - 5. Electrical Requirements: Power supply wiring including wiring diagrams for interlock and control wiring, clearly indicating factory-installed and field-installed wiring.
- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Include installation instructions.
- D. Maintenance Data: Include instructions for lubrication, filter replacement, motor and drive replacement, spare parts lists, and wiring diagrams.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the type of products specified in this section, with minimum three years of documented experience.

### **1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING**

- A. Accept products on site in factory-fabricated protective containers, with factory-installed shipping skids and lifting lugs. Inspect for damage.
- B. Store in clean dry place and protect from weather and construction traffic. Handle carefully to avoid damage to components, enclosures, and finish.
- C. Do not operate units until ductwork is clean, filters are in place, bearings lubricated, and fan has been test run under observation.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Carrier Global Corporation
- B. Trane Technologies, PLC
- C. York, a brand of Johnson Controls International, PLC
- D. Temtrol.

### **2.02 CASING CONSTRUCTION**

- A. Full Perimeter Base Rail:
  - 1. Construct of galvanized steel.
  - 2. Provide base rail of sufficient height, minimum 6 inches tall, to raise unit for external trapping of condensate drain pans.
- B. Casing:
  - 1. Construct of one piece, insulated, double wall panels.
  - 2. Provide mid-span, no through metal, internal thermal break.
  - 3. Construct outer panels of 16 gauge galvanized steel and inner panels of 20 gauge galvanized steel. Interior lining of the floor panels to be a solid lining of 16 gauge minimum galvanized steel. Subfloor of 20 gauge minimum galvanized steel.
  - 4. Casing Air Pressure Performance Requirements:
    - a. Able to withstand up to 8 in-wc (2 kPa) positive or negative static pressure.
    - b. Not to exceed 0.0042 inches per inch (0.000165 mm per mm) deflection at 1.5 times design static pressure up to a maximum of plus 8 in-wc (2 kPa) in positive pressure sections and minus 8 in-wc (2 kPa) in negative pressure sections.
    - c. Unit to conform to casing leakage no more than 1% of design airflow at 8 inches total static pressure.
  - 5. All wall and roof panels to be completely removable for unit access and removal of components.
  - 6. On exterior units, exterior paint finish to be capable of withstanding at least 2,500 hours, with no visible corrosive effects, when tested in a salt spray and fog atmosphere in accordance with ASTM B 117-95 test procedure.
- C. Access Doors:
  - 1. Construction, thermal and air pressure performance same as casing.
  - 2. Provide surface mounted handles on hinged, swing doors.
  - 3. Provide shatterproof viewing window designed to withstand operating pressures. Locate in fan section door.
  - 4. Provide access doors in the fan, filter, and inlet sections on the coil header side, as well as in any sections with welded panels. Doors to be of double wall construction with a solid liner. Access doors to also be included between heating and cooling coils where space allows.
  - 5. Provide at minimum, 18 inch access door between all coils for cleaning and inspection.
- D. Outdoor Unit Roof:

1. Factory install single layer outer roof above inner roof.
  2. Slope at a minimum of 0.125 inches per foot (10.41 mm per m) from one side of unit to the other side, or from center to sides of unit.
  3. Roof assembly to overhang each unit wall or base rail to overhang curb to facilitate water runoff and prevent water intrusion into roof curb to base connection.
- E. Outside Air and Exhaust Air Weather Hood:
1. Fabricate from same material as casing outer panel.
  2. Extend hood past perimeter of unit casing opening so as not to obstruct airflow path.
  3. Paint hoods with same finish as external surface of outdoor units.
  4. Provide inlet hood for each fresh air damper with a sine wave moisture eliminator to prevent entrainment of water into the unit from outside air.
  5. Provide exhaust hoods for each exhaust air opening.
  6. Size each hood for 100 percent of nominal fresh air damper capacities.
  7. Protect each hood with bird screen to prevent nesting at intake or exhaust airflow paths.
- F. Unit Flooring: Construct with sufficient strength to support expected people and equipment loads associated with maintenance activities.
- G. Casing Leakage: Seal joints and provide airtight access doors so that air leakage does not exceed one percent of design flow at the specified casing pressure.
- H. Insulation:
1. Completely fill panel cavities in each direction to prevent voids and settling.
  2. Provide a minimum, 3 inch foam insulation (R-19 or greater) on walls with exterior, interior and blankoffs. Floors to be at least 4 inch foam insulation with subfloor.
  3. Comply with NFPA 90A.
- I. Drain Pan Construction:
1. Provide cooling coil sections with an insulated, double wall, galvanized steel drain pan and 304 stainless steel interior liner complying with ASHRAE Std 62.1 for indoor air quality and sufficiently sized to collect all condensate.
  2. Slope in two planes to promote positive drainage and eliminate stagnate water conditions.
  3. Locate outlet of sufficient diameter at lowest point of pan to prevent overflow at normal operating conditions.
  4. Provide threaded drain connections constructed of drain pan material, extended sufficient distance beyond the base to accommodate field installed, condensate drain trapping.
  5. Coil supports and bulkheads to be 304 stainless steel.
- J. Louvers: Stationary, of galvanized steel, 4 inches (100 mm) deep with plenum, nylon bearings, 1/2-inch (13 mm) mesh, 0.04-inch (1.0 mm) galvanized wire bird screen in aluminum frame, and bearing AMCA Certified Ratings Seal in accordance with AMCA 500-L. Furnish adjustable louvers with hollow vinyl bulb edging on blades and foam side stops to limit leakage to maximum 2 percent at 4 in-wc (1 kPa) differential pressure when sized for 2000 fpm (10 m/s) face velocity.

### **2.03 FAN AND MOTOR SECTIONS**

- A. Direct Drive
- B. Provide fan array systems on air handlers greater than 6,000 CFM, minimum of two (2) direct-drive SWSI plenum-type fans.
- C. All fans to be connected to variable speed drive (VFD) for balancing and/or speed control. VFDs to be field-wired for indoor units and factory-installed and wired for outdoor units. VFDs shall be provided by one of the approved manufacturers listed in the VFD section.
- D. Factory mounted motor overload panel for all units with multiple fans.
- E. Fan motors to be 1800 or 3600 rpm.

- F. Fan motors to be TEFC or TEAO. ODP motors are not allowed.
- G. Integral coplanar silencers in fan cubes.
- H. All fans to be isolated with gravity-backdraft dampers from the factory on each fan. Include damper pressure drop in total pressure drop calculations during fan selections.

#### **2.04 COIL SECTION**

- A. Casing: Provide access to both sides of coils. Enclose coils with headers and return bends exposed outside casing. Slide coils into casing through removable end panel with blank off sheets and sealing collars at connection penetrations.
- B. Drain Pans: 24 inch (600 mm) downstream of coil and down spouts for cooling coil banks more than one coil high.
- C. Eliminators: Three break of Type 304 stainless steel, mounted over drain pan.
- D. Air Coils:
  - 1. Certify capacities, pressure drops, and selection procedures in accordance with AHRI 410.
  - 2. Maximum face velocity across coils to be 490 fpm.
- E. Fabrication:
  - 1. Tubes: 5/8 inch (16 mm) OD seamless copper expanded into fins, brazed joints.
  - 2. Fins: Aluminum.
  - 3. Casing: Die formed channel frame of galvanized steel.
  - 4. Coils to be drainable with a design working pressure of 300 psig at temperatures up to 300 deg F.
- F. Water Heating Coils:
  - 1. Construct coil casings of 304 stainless steel with formed end supports and top and bottom channels.
  - 2. Configuration: Drainable, with threaded plugs for drain and vent; serpentine type with return bends on smaller sizes and return headers on larger sizes.
  - 3. Each heating section to be minimum of two-rows and located in the preheat position for integral freeze protection.
- G. Water Cooling Coils:
  - 1. Construct coil casings of 304 stainless steel with formed end supports and top and bottom channels.
  - 2. Configuration: Drainable, with threaded plugs for drain and vent; threaded plugs in return bends and in headers opposite each tube.

#### **2.05 FILTER AND AIR CLEANER SECTION**

- A. General: Provide filter sections with filter racks, minimum of one access door for filter removal, and filter block-offs to prevent air bypass.
- B. Pleated Media Filters:
  - 1. Media: 2 inch (50 mm), 100 percent synthetic fibers, continuously laminated to a grid with water repellent adhesive, and capable of operating up to a maximum of 625 fpm (3.17 m/s) without loss of efficiency and holding capacity.
  - 2. Frame: Steel wire grid.
  - 3. Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value: MERV 13 when tested in accordance with ASHRAE Std 52.2.
- C. Differential Pressure Gauge:
  - 1. Provide factory installed dial type differential pressure gauge, flush mounted with casing outer wall, and fully piped to both sides of each filter to indicate status.



2. Maintain plus/minus 5 percent accuracy within operating limits of 20 degrees F (minus 6.7 degrees C) to 120 degrees F (48.9 degrees C).

## **2.06 DAMPER SECTION**

- A. Mixing Section: Provide a functional section to support the damper assembly for modulating the volume of outdoor, return, and exhaust air.
- B. Damper Blades:
  1. Double-skin airfoil design with metal, compressible jamb seals and extruded-vinyl blade-edge seals on each blade.
  2. Self-lubricating stainless steel or synthetic sleeve bearings.
  3. Comply with ASHRAE Std 90.1 I-P for rated maximum leakage rate.
  4. Provide leakage testing and pressure ratings in compliance with AMCA 500-D test methods.
  5. Arrange in parallel or opposed-blade configuration.
  6. Dampers in inlet section to be low leak. Actuators to be provided and installed in the field by FMCS Contractor.
  7. Provide damper blades with extruded vinyl edge seals and stainless steel jamb seals.
- C. Barometric Relief Dampers:
  1. Frame: Roll formed galvanized steel.
  2. Blades: Roll formed galvanized steel.
  3. Blade Seals: Extruded vinyl, mechanically attached to the blade edge.

## **2.07 CONTROLS**

- A. Equip air handling unit with a single-point motor starter panel in an enclosure with a variable frequency drive. DDC provided by FMCS Contractor.
- B. VFD to meet requirements that are listed in the VFD section.

## **2.08 ROOF MOUNTING CURB**

- A. Roof Mounting Curb: Minimum 14 inches (350 mm) high galvanized steel, channel frame with gaskets and nailer strips.
- B. Provide air handling unit with the manufacturer's standard curb, shipped loose for field installation by others prior to unit placement. Roof curb to be a prefabricated galvanized steel-mounting curb.
- C. Isolation curb (where sound requirements exist) to have rigid upper and lower steel structure with vibration isolation springs and elastomeric waterproof membrane. Isolation springs to have 2 inch static deflection and vertical and horizontal restraints.
- D. Include roof curb accessories for each roof mounted unit.

## **2.09 PIPING CABINET**

- A. On exterior units, cooling and heating coils, piping and control valves to be properly supported and located in an enclosure for protections.
- B. Manufacturer to provide weatherproof enclosure of sufficient size for installation and service of control valves. Enclosure to have hinged access doors.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Bolt sections together with gaskets.
- C. Install flexible duct connections between fan inlet and discharge ductwork and air handling unit sections. Ensure that metal bands of connectors are parallel with minimum 1 inch (25 mm) flex

between ductwork and fan while running.

- D. Make connections to coils with unions or flanges.
- E. Hydronic Coils:
  - 1. Hydronic Coils: Connect water supply to leaving air side of coil (counterflow arrangement).
  - 2. Provide shut-off valve on supply line and lockshield balancing valve with memory stop on return line.
  - 3. Locate water supply at bottom of supply header and return water connection at top.
  - 4. Provide manual air vents at high points complete with stop valve.
  - 5. Ensure water coils are drainable and provide drain connection at low points.
- F. Cooling Coils:
  - 1. Pipe drain and overflow to nearest floor drain.
- G. Install unit to maintain manufacturer required clearances. At a minimum, install unit with 30 inch clearance on all sides, except the side where filters and coils are accessed. On that side, clearance to equal the length of the coil plus 2 feet.
- H. Install air handlers in mechanical rooms on 4 inch tall housekeeping pads. Pads to be 3 inches larger than equipment on all sides.
- I. Ensure cooling coils and drain pans are readily accessible for inspection, cleaning and maintenance in their normal operation position.

### **3.02 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements for additional requirements.
- B. Coordination of Other Tests and Inspections:
  - 1. Owner will employ independent Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing agency to test and/or inspect modular central-station air handling-unit.
  - 2. Provide access as required to accommodate timely performance.

### **3.03 SYSTEM STARTUP**

- A. Provide manufacturer's field representative to perform systems startup.
- B. Prepare and start equipment and systems in accordance with manufacturers' instructions and recommendations.
- C. Adjust for proper operation within manufacturer's published tolerances.

### **3.04 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES**

- A. Demonstration: Demonstrate operation of system to Owner's personnel.
  - 1. Use operation and maintenance data as reference during demonstration.
  - 2. Briefly describe function, operation, and maintenance of each component.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 81 19**  
**SELF CONTAINED AIR CONDITIONERS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

**1.02 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes the following rooftop air conditioners:
  - 1. Cooling and heating units 6 tons and smaller.
  - 2. Cooling and heating units 7-1/2 to 20 tons.

**1.03 DEFINITIONS**

- A. DDC: Direct-digital controls.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's technical data for each model indicated, including rated capacities, dimensions, required clearances, characteristics, furnished specialties, and accessories.
- B. Shop Drawings: Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
  - 1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for selecting vibration isolators and for designing vibration isolation bases.
  - 2. Wiring Diagrams: Power, signal, and control wiring.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: For rooftop air conditioners to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- E. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Product Options: Drawings indicate size, profiles, and dimensional requirements of rooftop air conditioners and are based on the specific system indicated. Refer to Division 1 Section "Product Requirements."
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Mechanical Refrigeration."
- D. Energy-Efficiency Ratio: Equal to or greater than prescribed by ASHRAE 90.1, "Energy Efficient Design of New Buildings except Low-Rise Residential Buildings."
- E. Coefficient of Performance: Equal to or greater than prescribed by ASHRAE 90.1, "Energy Efficient Design of New Buildings except Low-Rise Residential Buildings."
- F. Comply with NFPA 54 for gas-fired furnace section.
- G. ARI Certification: Units shall be ARI certified and listed.
- H. ARI Compliance for Units with Capacities Less Than 135,000 Btuh: Rate rooftop air-conditioner capacity according to ARI 210/240, "Unitary Air- Conditioning and Air-Source Heat Pump Equipment."

1. Sound Power Level Ratings: Comply with ARI 270, "Sound Rating of Outdoor Unitary Equipment."
- I. ARI Compliance for Units with Capacities 135,000 Btuh and More: Rate rooftop air- conditioner capacity according to ARI 340/360, "Commercial and Industrial Unitary Air- Conditioning and Heat Pump Equipment."
  1. Sound Power Level Ratings: Comply with ARI 270, "Sound Rating of Outdoor Unitary Equipment."

#### **1.06 COORDINATION**

- A. Coordinate size, location, and installation of rooftop air-conditioner manufacturer's roof curbs and equipment supports with roof installer.

#### **1.07 WARRANTY**

- A. Complete warranty period for ten (10) years on all equipment and components.
- B. Installing contractor to provide a one (1) year labor warranty on all equipment and components.
- C. Warranty to cover heat exchangers for a minimum of fifteen (15) years from substantial completion.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. All units to be provided with the following:
  1. Standard mechanical thermostat strip for 3rd party control. Units with OEM branded controls and/or integration boards are not allowed. Controls to be provided by controls vendor.
  2. Factory installed internal condensate drain connection and sloped stainless steel drain pan.
  3. Low ambient freeze protection.
  4. Brass service valves installed in discharge and liquid lines.
  5. Hinged access panels with handles.
  6. Steel hail guards.
  7. MERV 13 filters.
- B. All units 3 ton to 6 tons shall have two stage compressor and a minimum two speed fan.
- C. All units 7.5 tons and above shall have a minimum of two compressors with dual refrigeration circuits.
- D. Heat pump packaged units are not allowed.
- E. Variable speed compressors and digital scroll compressors are not allowed on single zone units.
- F. Indoor fan to be forward curved, centrifugal, direct drive multispeed motor for all sizes available by selected approved manufacturer. Include VFD or ECM motor for balancing and fan-speed control.
- G. Condenser fan to be propeller type with direct drive motor.
- H. Refrigerant coils to be aluminum-plate fin and seamless copper tube. Aluminum microchannel condenser coils are acceptable.
- I. Refrigerant shall be R410a.
- J. Heat Exchanger:
  1. Stainless steel construction.
  2. Two or Four-stage heat.
- K. Mixing Box Requirements:

1. Return air and outside air compartment with 0-100% outside air damper. Actuator to be provided by controls contractor.
  2. Low leak dampers that are tested in accordance with AMCA 500D.
  3. Relief damper: gravity actuated with bird screen and hood.
- L. Powered GFCI convenience outlets: Include a factory-mounted and wired outlet on one RTU for each group of units within a fifty foot radius.
- M. Roof curb: steel with corrosion-protection coating, gasketing, and factory-installed wood nailer; complying with NRCA standards; minimum height of 14 inches clear above adjacent roof finish elevation.

## **2.02 ROOFTOP AIR CONDITIONERS 10 TONS AND SMALLER**

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work are limited to the following:
1. AAON
  2. Trane
- B. Description: Factory assembled and tested; designed for exterior installation; consisting of compressor, indoor and outside refrigerant coils, indoor fan and outside coil fan, refrigeration and temperature controls, filters, and dampers.
- C. Casing: Galvanized-steel construction with enamel paint finish, removable panels or access doors with neoprene gaskets for inspection and access to internal parts, minimum 1/2-inch-thick thermal insulation, knockouts for electrical and piping connections, exterior condensate drain connection, and lifting lugs. All exposed vertical panels and top covers in the indoor section shall be insulated with fire-resistant, permanent, odorless, glass fiber material. The base of the down flow unit shall be insulated with a foil-faced, closed cell material.
- D. Indoor Fan: Forward curved, centrifugal, direct drive multispeed motor.
- E. Condenser Fan: Propeller type, directly driven by motor.
- F. Refrigerant Coils: Aluminum-plate fin and seamless copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor. Unit shall have a factory installed internal condensate drain connection and sloped stainless steel drain pan.
- G. Compressor: Scroll compressor with integral vibration isolators, internal over current and over temperature protection, internal pressure relief.
- H. Refrigeration System:
1. Compressor.
  2. Outside coil and fan.
  3. Indoor coil and fan.
  4. Four-way reversing valve and suction line accumulator.
  5. Expansion valve with replaceable thermostatic element.
  6. Refrigerant dryer.
  7. High-pressure switch.
  8. Low-pressure switch.
  9. Thermostat for coil freeze-up protection during low-ambient temperature operation or loss of air.
  10. Low-ambient switch rated at 32° F.
  11. Brass service valves installed in discharge and liquid lines.
  12. Charge of refrigerant. Refrigerants shall be:
    - a. R410a
- I. Filters: 2-inch thick, MERV 13 filters in filter rack.

- J. Heat Exchanger: Stainless-steel construction for natural-gas-fired burners with the following controls:
  - 1. Redundant single or dual gas valve with manual shutoff.
  - 2. Hot surface ignition.
  - 3. Electronic flame sensor.
  - 4. Induced-draft blower.
- K. Outside-Air Damper: Linked damper blades, for 0 to 25 percent outside air, with fully modulating, spring-return damper motor and hood.
- L. Economizer: Return- and outside-air dampers with neoprene seals, outside- air filter, and hood.
  - 1. Damper Motor: Fully modulating spring return with adjustable minimum position.
  - 2. Control: Electronic-control system uses [outside-air temperature] to adjust mixing dampers.
  - 3. Relief Damper: Gravity actuated with bird screen and hood.
- M. Power Connection: Provide for single point connection of power to unit with unit- mounted disconnect switch accessible from outside unit and control-circuit transformer with built-in circuit breaker.
- N. Unit Controls: Solid-state control board and components contain at least the following features:
  - 1. Indoor fan on/off delay.
  - 2. Default control to ensure proper operation after power interruption.
  - 3. Service relay output.
  - 4. Unit diagnostics and diagnostic code storage.
  - 5. Field-adjustable control parameters.
  - 6. Dehumidification control with humidistat.
  - 7. Economizer control.
  - 8. Gas valve delay between first- and second-stage firing.
  - 9. Indoor-air quality control with carbon dioxide sensor.
  - 10. Minimum run time.
  - 11. Night setback mode.
  - 12. Smoke alarm with smoke detector installed in supply and/or return air as required by code.
  - 13. Low-refrigerant pressure control.
- O. DDC: Install controller and sensor with ability for local occupancy override. Unit sensor shall have LCD display with local occupancy override and temperature override capabilities.

### **2.03 ROOFTOP AIR CONDITIONERS 10 TO 20 TONS**

- A. Available Manufacturers:
  - 1. AAON
  - 2. Trane
- B. Description: Factory assembled and tested; designed for exterior installation; consisting of compressor, indoor and outside refrigerant coils, indoor fan and outside coil fan, refrigeration and temperature controls, filters, and dampers.
- C. Casing: Galvanized-steel construction with enamel paint finish, removable panels or access doors with neoprene gaskets for inspection and access to internal parts, minimum 1/2-inch-thick thermal insulation, knockouts for electrical and piping connections, exterior condensate drain connection, and lifting lugs. All exposed vertical panels and top covers in the indoor section shall be insulated with fire-resistant, permanent, odorless, glass fiber material. The base of the downflow unit shall be insulated with a foil-faced, closed cell material
  - 1. Provide double wall construction where NC30 noise levels are not to be exceeded.
- D. Indoor Fan: Forward curved, centrifugal, grease-lubricated ball bearings, and direct drive motor. Unit shall have a factory installed internal condensate drain connection and sloped stainless

steel drain pan.

- E. Condenser Fan: Propeller type, directly driven by permanently lubricated motor.
- F. Refrigerant Coils: Aluminum-plate fin and seamless copper tube in steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor.
- G. Compressor(s): Two [scroll] compressors with integral vibration isolators, internal overcurrent and overtemperature protection, internal pressure relief.
- H. Refrigeration System:
  - 1. Compressor(s).
  - 2. Outside coil and fan.
  - 3. Indoor coil and fan.
  - 4. Four-way reversing valve and suction line accumulator.
  - 5. Expansion valves with replaceable thermostatic elements.
  - 6. Refrigerant dryers.
  - 7. High-pressure switches.
  - 8. Low-pressure switches.
  - 9. Thermostats for coil freeze-up protection during low-ambient temperature operation or loss of air.
  - 10. Independent refrigerant circuits.
  - 11. Brass service valves installed in discharge and liquid lines.
  - 12. Charge of refrigerant.
  - 13. Timed Off Control: Automatic-reset control shuts compressor off after five minutes.
- I. Filters: 2-inch- thick, MERV 13 filters in filter rack.
- J. Heat Exchanger: Stainless-steel construction for natural-gas-fired burners with the following controls:
  - 1. Redundant dual gas valve with manual shutoff.
  - 2. Hot surface ignition.
  - 3. Electronic flame sensor.
  - 4. Induced-draft blower.
  - 5. Flame rollout switch.
- K. Economizer: Return- and outside-air dampers with neoprene seals, outside- air filter, and hood.
  - 1. Damper Motor: Fully modulating spring return with adjustable minimum position.
  - 2. Control: Electronic-control system uses [outside-air temperature] to adjust mixing dampers.
  - 3. Relief Damper: Gravity actuated with bird screen and hood.
- L. Power Connection: Provide for single point connection of power to unit with unit- mounted disconnect switch accessible from outside unit and control-circuit transformer with built-in circuit breaker.
- M. Unit Controls: Solid-state control board and components contain at least the following features:
  - 1. Indoor fan on/off delay.
  - 2. Default control to ensure proper operation after power interruption.
  - 3. Service relay output.
  - 4. Unit diagnostics and diagnostic code storage.
  - 5. Field-adjustable control parameters.
  - 6. Defrost control.
  - 7. Dehumidification control with humidistat.
  - 8. Economizer control.
  - 9. Gas valve delay between first- and second-stage firing.
  - 10. Indoor-air quality control with carbon dioxide sensor.

11. Low-ambient control, allowing operation down to 0 deg F.
  12. Minimum run time.
  13. Night setback mode.
  14. Smoke alarm with smoke detector installed in [supply air] [return air] [supply and return air].
  15. Low-refrigerant pressure control.
  16. Variable-Air-Volume Control: Variable-frequency drive controls supply-air static pressure. Supply-air, static-pressure limit shuts unit down on high pressure.
- N. DDC: Install controller and sensor with ability for local occupancy override. Unit sensor shall have LCD display with local occupancy override and temperature override capabilities.
- O. Accessories:
1. Hail guards of steel, painted to match casing.
  2. Power exhaust fan centrifugal type.
- P. Horizontal Discharge Roof Curb: Steel with corrosion-protection coating, insulation, gasketing, and factory-installed wood nailer, and configured to convert from downflow to horizontal airflow; complying with NRCA standards; minimum height of 26 inches.
- Q. Isolation Curb: Rigid upper and lower steel structure with vibration isolation springs having 2-inch static deflection and vertical and horizontal restraints; with elastomeric waterproof membrane.

#### **2.04 ROOFTOP AIR CONDITIONERS LARGER THAN 20 TONS**

- A. Available Manufacturers:
1. AAON
  2. Daikin
- B. Description: Factory assembled and tested; designed for exterior installation; consisting of compressor, indoor and outside refrigerant coils, indoor fan and outside coil fan, refrigeration and temperature controls, filters, and dampers.
- C. Casing: Manufacturer's standard galvanized sheet metal construction with exterior enamel paint finish, hinged access doors with neoprene gaskets for inspection and access to internal parts, minimum 1-inch-thick thermal insulation, knockouts for electrical and piping connections, exterior condensate drain connection, and lifting lugs. All exposed vertical panels and top covers in the indoor section shall be insulated with fire-resistant, permanent, odorless, glass fiber material. The base of the downflow unit shall be insulated with a foil-faced, closed cell material
1. Provide double wall construction where NC30 noise levels are not to be exceeded.
- D. Indoor Fan: Forward curved, centrifugal, direct driven motor, grease-lubricated ball bearings, and motor. Mount fan and motor assembly on base with spring isolators having 2-inch deflection.
- E. Outside Coil Fan: Propeller type, directly driven by permanently lubricated motor.
- F. Refrigerant Coils: Aluminum-plate fin and seamless copper tube in galvanized-steel casing with equalizing-type vertical distributor and thermal expansion valve; tested to 450 psig and leak tested to 300 psig with air under water. Insulate coil section. Unit shall have a factory installed internal condensate drain connection and sloped stainless steel drain pan.
- G. Compressor(s): At least two scroll compressors with integral vibration isolators, internal over current and over temperature protection, internal pressure relief.
- H. Refrigeration System:
1. Compressor(s).
  2. Outside coil and fan.



3. Indoor coil and fan.
  4. Expansion valves with replaceable thermostatic elements.
  5. Refrigerant dryers.
  6. High-pressure switches.
  7. Low-pressure switches.
  8. Thermostats for coil freeze-up protection during low-ambient temperature operation or loss of air.
  9. Independent refrigerant circuits.
  10. Brass service valves installed in discharge and liquid lines.
  11. Charge of refrigerant.
  12. Timed Off Control: Automatic-reset control shuts compressor off after five minutes.
  13. Refrigerant Circuits:
  14. Compressor Motor Overload Protection: Manual reset.
  15. Antirecycling Timing Device:
  16. Oil-Pressure Switch: Designed to shut down compressors on low oil pressure.
- I. Pre-Filters: 2-inch- thick, MERV 13 filters in filter rack.
- J. Heat Exchanger: Stainless-steel] construction for natural-gas-fired burners with the following controls:
1. Redundant dual gas valve with manual shutoff.
  2. Fully modulating gas valve with turn-down ratio of at least 4:1.
  3. Hot surface ignition.
  4. Electronic flame sensor.
  5. Induced-draft blower.
  6. Flame rollout switch.
- K. Economizer: Return- and outside-air dampers with neoprene seals, outside- air filter, and hood.
1. Damper Motor: Fully modulating spring return with adjustable minimum position.
  2. Control: Electronic-control system uses [outside-air temperature] to adjust mixing dampers.
  3. Relief Damper: Gravity actuated with bird screen and hood.
- L. Multizone Dampers: Supply-air head with neoprene seal dampers, in configuration and numbers indicated.
1. Zone Damper Motor: Fully modulating spring return with adjustable minimum position. P.
  2. Power Connection: Provide for single connection of power to unit with unit-mounted disconnect switch accessible from outside unit and control-circuit transformer with built-in circuit breaker.
- M. Unit Controls: Solid-state control board and components contain at least the following features:
1. Indoor fan on/off delay.
  2. Default control to ensure proper operation after power interruption.
  3. Service relay output.
  4. Unit diagnostics and diagnostic code storage.
  5. Field-adjustable control parameters.
  6. Defrost control.
  7. Dehumidification control with humidistat.
  8. Economizer control.
  9. Gas valve delay between first- and second-stage firing.
  10. Indoor-air quality control with carbon dioxide sensor.
  11. Low-ambient control, allowing operation down to 0 deg F.
  12. Minimum run time.
  13. Night setback mode.

14. Return-air temperature limit.
  15. Smoke alarm with smoke detector installed in [supply air] [return air] [supply and return air].
  16. Low-refrigerant pressure control.
  17. Variable-Air-Volume Control: Variable-frequency drive controls supply-air static pressure. Supply-air, static-pressure limit shuts unit down on high pressure.
- N. DDC: Install controller and sensor with ability for local occupancy override. Unit sensor shall have LCD display with local occupancy override and temperature override capabilities.
- O. Optional Accessories:
1. Hail guards of steel, painted to match casing.
- P. Horizontal Discharge Roof Curb: Steel with corrosion-protection coating, gasketing, and factory-installed wood nailer, and configured to convert from downflow to horizontal airflow; complying with NRCA standards; minimum height of 26.
- Q. Isolation Curb: Rigid upper and lower steel structure with vibration isolation springs having 2 inch static deflection and vertical and horizontal restraints; with elastomeric waterproof membrane.

## **2.05 MOTORS**

- A. General requirements for motors are specified in Division 23 Section "Motors."
- B. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated; if not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.
- C. Controllers, electrical devices, and wiring are specified in Division 16 Sections.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install units level and plumb, maintaining manufacturer's recommended clearances.
- B. Curb Support: Install roof curb on roof structure, level and secure, according to ARI Guideline B. Install and secure rooftop air conditioners on curbs and coordinate roof penetrations and flashing with roof construction. Secure units to curb support with anchorbolts.
- C. Isolation Curb Support: Install units on isolation curbs according to ARI Guideline B.

### **3.02 CONNECTIONS**

- A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Division 2 Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.
- B. Install piping adjacent to machine to allow service and maintenance.
  1. Gas Piping: Comply with applicable requirements in Division 23 Section "Fuel Gas Piping." Connect gas piping to burner, full size of gas train inlet, and connect with union and shutoff valve with sufficient clearance for burner removal and service.
- C. Duct installation requirements are specified in other Division 23 Sections. Drawings indicate the general arrangement of ducts. The following are specific connection requirements:
  1. Install ducts to termination in roof curb.
  2. Remove roof decking only as required for passage of ducts. Do not cut out decking under entire roof curb.
  3. Connect supply ducts to rooftop unit with flexible duct connectors specified in Division 23
  4. Terminate return-air duct through roof structure and insulate space between roof and bottom of unit with 2-inch-thick, acoustic duct liner.
- D. Electrical System Connections: Comply with applicable requirements in Division 26 Sections for power wiring, switches, and motor controls.

- E. Ground equipment according to Division 26.
- F. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

### **3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field- assembled components and equipment installation, including connections. Report results in writing.
- B. Perform the following field quality-control tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
  - 1. After installing rooftop air conditioners and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units for compliance with requirements.
  - 2. Inspect for and remove shipping bolts, blocks, and tie-down straps.
  - 3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
  - 4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- C. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest as specified above.

### **3.04 STARTUP SERVICE**

- A. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions and do the following:
  - 1. Inspect for visible damage to unit casing.
  - 2. Inspect for visible damage to furnace combustion chamber.
  - 3. Inspect for visible damage to compressor, air-cooled outside coil, and fans.
  - 4. Inspect internal insulation.
  - 5. Verify that labels are clearly visible.
  - 6. Verify that clearances have been provided for servicing.
  - 7. Verify that controls are connected and operable.
  - 8. Verify that filters are installed.
  - 9. Clean outside coil and inspect for construction debris.
  - 10. XVIII. Clean furnace flue and inspect for construction debris.
  - 11. Connect and purge gas line.
  - 12. Adjust vibration isolators.
  - 13. Inspect operation of barometric dampers.
  - 14. Lubricate bearings on fan.
  - 15. Inspect fan-wheel rotation for movement in correct direction without vibration and binding.
  - 16. Adjust fan belts to proper alignment and tension.
  - 17. Start unit according to manufacturer's written instructions.
  - 18. Inspect and record performance of interlocks and protective devices; verify sequences.
  - 19. Operate unit for an initial period as recommended or required by manufacturer.
  - 20. Perform the following operations for both minimum and maximum firing and adjust burner for peak efficiency. Adjust pilot to stable flame.
    - a. Measure gas pressure on manifold.
    - b. Measure combustion-air temperature at inlet to combustion chamber.
    - c. Measure flue-gas temperature at furnace discharge.
    - d. Perform flue-gas analysis.
  - 21. Calibrate thermostats.
  - 22. Adjust and inspect high-temperature limits.
  - 23. Inspect outside-air dampers for proper stroke and interlock with return-air dampers.

24. Inspect controls for correct sequencing of heating, mixing dampers, refrigeration, and normal and emergency shutdown.
25. Simulate maximum cooling demand and inspect the following:
  - a. Compressor refrigerant suction and hot-gas pressures.
  - b. Short circuiting of air through outside coil or from outside coil to outside-air intake.
26. After startup and performance testing, change filters, vacuum heat exchanger and cooling and outside coils, lubricate bearings, adjust belt tension, and inspect operation of power vents.

### **3.05 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust initial temperature and humidity set points.
- B. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges as indicated.
- C. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits (one for winter season and one for summer season) to site outside normal occupancy hours for this purpose, without additional cost.

### **3.06 DEMONSTRATION**

- A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain rooftop air conditioners. Refer to Division 1 Section "[Closeout Procedures] [Demonstration and Training]."

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 23 81 26.13**  
**SMALL-CAPACITY SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR CONDITIONERS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Air cooled condensing units.
- B. Indoor air handling (fan and coil) units for ductless systems.
- C. Controls.

**1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. AHRI 210/240 - Performance Rating of Unitary Air-Conditioning and Air-Source Heat Pump Equipment; 2023.
- B. AHRI 520 - Performance Rating of Positive Displacement Condensing Units; 2004.
- C. ASHRAE Std 23 - Methods for Performance Testing Positive Displacement Refrigerant Compressors and Compressor Units; 2022.
- D. NFPA 90A - Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems; 2021.
- E. NFPA 90B - Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air-Conditioning Systems; 2024.
- F. UL 207 - Standard for Refrigerant-Containing Components and Accessories, Nonelectrical; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

**1.03 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Product Data: Provide rated capacities, weights, accessories, electrical nameplate data, and wiring diagrams.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include manufacturer's descriptive literature, operating instructions, installation instructions, maintenance and repair data, and parts listing.

**1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the type of products specified in this section, with minimum three years of documented experience.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Lennox Industries, Inc.
- B. LG.
- C. Mitsubishi Electric & Electronics.
- D. Samsung HVAC.
- E. SANYO North America.

**2.02 SYSTEM DESIGN**

- A. Split-System Heating and Cooling Units: Self-contained, packaged, matched factory-engineered and assembled, pre-wired indoor and outdoor units; UL listed.
  - 1. Provide refrigerant lines internal to units and between indoor and outdoor units, factory cleaned, dried, pressurized and sealed, with insulated suction line.
- B. Performance Requirements: See Drawings for additional requirements.

**2.03 INDOOR AIR HANDLING UNITS FOR DUCTLESS SYSTEMS**

- A. Indoor Units: Self-contained, packaged, factory assembled, pre-wired unit consisting of cabinet, supply fan, evaporator coil, and controls; wired for single power connection with control

transformer.

1. Cabinet: Galvanized steel.
    - a. Finish: White.
  2. Fan: Line-flow fan direct driven by a single motor.
  3. Filter return air with washable, antioxidant pre-filter and a pleated anti-allergy enzyme filter.
- B. Evaporator Coils: Copper tube aluminum fin assembly, galvanized or polymer drain pan sloped in all directions to drain, drain connection, refrigerant piping connections, restricted distributor or thermostatic expansion valve.
1. Construction and Ratings: In accordance with AHRI 210/240 and UL 207.
  2. Manufacturer: System manufacturer.

## **2.04 OUTDOOR UNITS**

- A. Outdoor Units: Self-contained, packaged, pre-wired unit consisting of cabinet, with compressor and condenser.
1. Comply with AHRI 210/240.
  2. Refrigerant: R-410A.
  3. Cabinet: Galvanized steel with baked enamel finish, easily removed and secured access doors with safety interlock switches, glass fiber insulation with reflective liner.
  4. Construction and Ratings: In accordance with AHRI 210/240 with testing in accordance with ASHRAE Std 23 and UL 207.
- B. Compressor: Scroll, two speed 1800 and 3600 rpm, AHRI 520 resiliently mounted integral with condenser, with positive lubrication, crankcase heater, high pressure control, motor overload protection, service valves and drier. Provide time delay control to prevent short cycling and rapid speed changes.
- C. Accessories: Filter drier, high-pressure switch (manual reset), low pressure switch (automatic reset), service valves and gauge ports, thermometer well (in liquid line).
1. Provide thermostatic expansion valves.
- D. Operating Controls:
1. Control by room thermostat to maintain room temperature setting.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that substrates are ready for installation of units and openings are as indicated on shop drawings.
- B. Verify that proper power supply is available and in correct location.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Install in accordance with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 05 05  
SELECTIVE DEMOLITION FOR ELECTRICAL**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Electrical demolition.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT**

- A. Materials and equipment for patching and extending work: As specified in individual sections.

**PART 3 EXECUTION**

**3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that abandoned wiring and equipment serve only abandoned facilities.
- B. Demolition drawings are based on casual field observation.
- C. Report discrepancies to Architect and Engineer before disturbing existing installation.
- D. Beginning of demolition means installer accepts existing conditions.

**3.02 PREPARATION**

- A. Disconnect electrical systems in walls, floors, and ceilings to be removed.
- B. Coordinate utility service outages with utility company.
- C. Provide temporary wiring and connections to maintain existing systems in service during construction. When work must be performed on energized equipment or circuits, use personnel experienced in such operations.
- D. Existing Electrical Service: Maintain existing system in service until new system is complete and ready for service. Disable system only to make switchovers and connections. Minimize outage duration.
  - 1. Obtain permission from Owner at least 24 hours before partially or completely disabling system.
  - 2. Make temporary connections to maintain service in areas adjacent to work area.
- E. Existing Fire Alarm System: Maintain existing system in service until new system is accepted. Disable system only to make switchovers and connections. Minimize outage duration.
  - 1. Notify Owner before partially or completely disabling system.
  - 2. Notify local fire service.
  - 3. Make notifications at least 24 hours in advance.
  - 4. Make temporary connections to maintain service in areas adjacent to work area.
- F. Existing Telephone System: Maintain existing system in service until new system is complete and ready for service. Disable system only to make switchovers and connections. Minimize outage duration.
  - 1. Notify Owner at least 24 hours before partially or completely disabling system.
  - 2. Notify telephone utility company at least 24 hours before partially or completely disabling system.
  - 3. Make temporary connections to maintain service in areas adjacent to work area.

**3.03 DEMOLITION AND EXTENSION OF EXISTING ELECTRICAL WORK**

- A. Remove, relocate, and extend existing installations to accommodate new construction.
- B. Remove abandoned wiring to source of supply.
- C. Remove exposed abandoned conduit, including abandoned conduit above accessible ceiling finishes. Cut conduit flush with walls and floors, and patch surfaces.

- D. Disconnect abandoned outlets and remove devices. Remove abandoned outlets if conduit servicing them is abandoned and removed. Provide blank cover for abandoned outlets that are not removed.
- E. Disconnect and remove abandoned panelboards and distribution equipment.
- F. Disconnect and remove electrical devices and equipment serving utilization equipment that has been removed.
- G. Disconnect and remove abandoned luminaires. Remove brackets, stems, hangers, and other accessories.
- H. Repair adjacent construction and finishes damaged during demolition and extension work.
- I. Maintain access to existing electrical installations that remain active. Modify installation or provide access panel as appropriate.

### **3.04 CLEANING AND REPAIR**

- A. See Section 01 74 19 - Construction Waste Management and Disposal for additional requirements.
- B. Clean and repair existing materials and equipment that remain or that are to be reused.
- C. Panelboards: Clean exposed surfaces and check tightness of electrical connections. Replace damaged circuit breakers and provide closure plates for vacant positions. Provide typed circuit directory showing revised circuiting arrangement.
- D. Luminaires: Remove existing luminaires for cleaning. Use mild detergent to clean all exterior and interior surfaces; rinse with clean water and wipe dry. Replace lamps and broken electrical parts.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 26 05 13  
MEDIUM-VOLTAGE CABLES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Medium voltage cable.
- B. Cable accessories.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems.
- B. Section 33 71 19 - Electrical Underground Ducts, Ductbanks, and Manholes: Cable racks in manholes.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. IEEE C2 - National Electrical Safety Code(R) (NESC(R)); 2023.
- B. IEEE 48 - IEEE Standard for Test Procedures and Requirements for Alternating-Current Cable Terminations Used on Shielded Cables Having Laminated Insulation Rated 2.5 kV through 765 kV or Extruded Insulation Rated 2.5 kV through 500 kV; 2020.
- C. NEMA WC 70 - Power Cables Rated 2000 Volts or Less for the Distribution of Electrical Energy; 2021.
- D. NETA ATS - Standard For Acceptance Testing Specifications For Electrical Power Equipment And Systems; 2021.
- E. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide for cable, terminations, and accessories.
- C. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency specified under Regulatory Requirements. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of product.
- D. Project Record Documents: Record actual sizes and locations of cables.
- E. Certificate of Compliance: Indicate approval of installation by authority having jurisdiction.
- F. Maintenance Data: Include instructions for testing and cleaning cable and accessories.

**1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience and with service facilities within 100 miles (160 km) of Project.
- C. Installer Qualifications: Authorized installer of specified manufacturer with service facilities within 100 miles (160 km) of Project.
- D. Products: Listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- E. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MEDIUM-VOLTAGE CABLE**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
  - 2. Okonite.
  - 3. Southwire Company.
- B. Medium Voltage Cable: NEMA WC 70 rubber insulated cable.
  - 1. Voltage: per drawings, grounded.
  - 2. Conductor: Copper, compact round, stranded, with foil conductor shield.
  - 3. Construction: Single conductor with metal wire insulation shielding.
  - 4. Insulation Jacket: PVC, minimum thickness.
  - 5. Armor Material: Steel.
  - 6. Armor Design: Interlocked metal tape.
  - 7. Armor Jacket: None.

### **2.02 CABLE ACCESSORIES**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. 3M.
  - 2. TE Connectivity; Raychem Products.
- B. Potheads: IEEE 48, Class 1 termination. Pothead with porcelain insulators, cable connector and aerial lug, sealed cable entrance and support, and insulating compound.
  - 1. Conductors: 1.
- C. Cable Terminations: IEEE 48, Class 2 porcelain insulator cable terminator in kit form.
- D. Cast Epoxy Cable Terminations: IEEE 48, Class 1 cast epoxy cable termination in kit form with stress cone, shield ground connection, wet porcelain rain shield for outdoor units, epoxy resin molding material, and accessories and molds required for proper application.
- E. Modular Cable Terminations: IEEE 48, Class 1, molded-rubber cable termination in kit form with stress cone, ground clamp, non-tracking rubber skirts, load break connector, rubber cap, and aerial lug.
- F. Tape Terminations: IEEE 48; Class 1, tape termination kit with semi- conductive tape, stress control tape, splicing tape, vinyl plastic tape, stress cone, mechanical ground straps, and cable preparation kit.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that conduit, duct, trench, or manholes are ready to receive cable.
- B. Cable routing is shown in approximate locations unless dimensioned. Route as required to complete wiring system.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Avoid abrasion and other damage to cables during installation.
- B. Use suitable lubricants and pulling equipment.
- C. Sustain cable pulling tensions and bending radii below recommended limits.
- D. Ground cable shield at each termination and splice.
- E. Install cables in manholes along wall providing longest route.
- F. Arrange cable in manholes to avoid interference with duct entrances.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 05 19**  
**LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Single conductor building wire.
- B. Wiring connectors.
- C. Electrical tape.
- D. Heat shrink tubing.
- E. Wire pulling lubricant.
- F. Cable ties.
- G. Firestop sleeves.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 07 84 00 - Firestopping.
- B. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems: Additional requirements for grounding conductors and grounding connectors.
- C. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- D. Section 28 46 00 - Fire Detection and Alarm: Fire alarm system conductors and cables.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM B3 - Standard Specification for Soft or Annealed Copper Wire; 2013 (Reapproved 2018).
- B. ASTM B8 - Standard Specification for Concentric-Lay-Stranded Copper Conductors, Hard, Medium-Hard, or Soft; 2023.
- C. ASTM B33 - Standard Specification for Tin-Coated Soft or Annealed Copper Wire for Electrical Purposes; 2010, with Editorial Revision (2020).
- D. ASTM B787/B787M - Standard Specification for 19 Wire Combination Unilay-Stranded Copper Conductors for Subsequent Insulation; 2004 (Reapproved 2020).
- E. ASTM D3005 - Standard Specification for Low-Temperature Resistant Vinyl Chloride Plastic Pressure-Sensitive Electrical Insulating Tape; 2017.
- F. ASTM D4388 - Standard Specification for Nonmetallic Semi-Conducting and Electrically Insulating Rubber Tapes; 2020.
- G. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2015.
- H. NECA 120 - Standard for Installing Armored Cable (AC) and Type Metal-Clad (MC) Cable; 2018.
- I. NEMA WC 70 - Power Cables Rated 2000 Volts or Less for the Distribution of Electrical Energy; 2021.
- J. NETA ATS - Standard For Acceptance Testing Specifications For Electrical Power Equipment And Systems; 2021.
- K. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- L. UL 44 - Thermoset-Insulated Wires and Cables; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- M. UL 83 - Thermoplastic-Insulated Wires and Cables; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- N. UL 183 - Manufactured Wiring Systems; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

- O. UL 486A-486B - Wire Connectors; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- P. UL 486C - Splicing Wire Connectors; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- Q. UL 486D - Sealed Wire Connector Systems; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- R. UL 510 - Polyvinyl Chloride, Polyethylene, and Rubber Insulating Tape; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- S. UL 1569 - Metal-Clad Cables; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### **1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate sizes of raceways, boxes, and equipment enclosures installed under other sections with the actual conductors to be installed, including adjustments for conductor sizes increased for voltage drop.
  - 2. Coordinate with electrical equipment installed under other sections to provide terminations suitable for use with the conductors to be installed.
  - 3. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from Contract Documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for conductors and cables, including detailed information on materials, construction, ratings, listings, and available sizes, configurations, and stranding.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of product.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Maintain at the project site a copy of each referenced document that prescribes execution requirements.
- C. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- D. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 CONDUCTOR AND CABLE APPLICATIONS**

- A. Do not use conductors and cables for applications other than as permitted by NFPA 70 and product listing.
- B. Provide single conductor building wire installed in suitable raceway unless otherwise indicated, permitted, or required.
- C. Nonmetallic-sheathed cable is not permitted.
- D. Metal-clad cable is not permitted.

#### **2.02 CONDUCTOR AND CABLE GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Provide products that comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.

- C. Unless specifically indicated to be excluded, provide all required conduit, boxes, wiring, connectors, etc. as required for a complete operating system.
- D. Comply with NEMA WC 70.
- E. Thermoplastic-Insulated Conductors and Cables: Listed and labeled as complying with UL 83.
- F. Thermoset-Insulated Conductors and Cables: Listed and labeled as complying with UL 44.
- G. Conductors for Grounding and Bonding: Also comply with Section 26 05 26.
- H. Conductors and Cables Installed Exposed in Spaces Used for Environmental Air (only where specifically permitted): Plenum rated, listed and labeled as suitable for use in return air plenums.
- I. Conductor Material:
  - 1. Provide copper conductors only. Aluminum conductors are not acceptable for this project. Conductor sizes indicated are based on copper.
  - 2. Copper Conductors: Soft drawn annealed, 98 percent conductivity, uncoated copper conductors complying with ASTM B3, ASTM B8, or ASTM B787/B787M unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Tinned Copper Conductors: Comply with ASTM B33.
- J. Minimum Conductor Size:
  - 1. Branch Circuits: 12 AWG.
    - a. Exceptions:
      - 1) 20 A, 120 V circuits longer than 75 feet (23 m): 10 AWG, for voltage drop.
      - 2) 20 A, 120 V circuits longer than 150 feet (46 m): 8 AWG, for voltage drop.
      - 3) 20 A, 277 V circuits longer than 150 feet (46 m): 10 AWG, for voltage drop.
  - 2. Control Circuits: 14 AWG.
- K. Where conductor size is not indicated, size to comply with NFPA 70 but not less than applicable minimum size requirements specified.
- L. Conductor Color Coding:
  - 1. Color code conductors as indicated unless otherwise required by the authority having jurisdiction. Maintain consistent color coding throughout project.
  - 2. Color Coding Method: Integrally colored insulation.
  - 3. Color Code:
    - a. 480Y/277 V, 3 Phase, 4 Wire System:
      - 1) Phase A: Brown.
      - 2) Phase B: Orange.
      - 3) Phase C: Yellow.
      - 4) Neutral/Grounded: Gray.
    - b. 208Y/120 V, 3 Phase, 4 Wire System:
      - 1) Phase A: Black.
      - 2) Phase B: Red.
      - 3) Phase C: Blue.
      - 4) Neutral/Grounded: White.
    - c. Equipment Ground, All Systems: Green.
    - d. Isolated Ground, All Systems: Green with yellow stripe.
    - e. For control circuits, comply with manufacturer's recommended color code.

### **2.03 SINGLE CONDUCTOR BUILDING WIRE**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Copper Building Wire:
    - a. Cerro Wire LLC.

- b. Encore Wire Corporation.
  - c. General Cable Technologies Corporation.
  - d. Service Wire Co.
  - e. Southwire Company.
- B. Description: Single conductor insulated wire.
- C. Conductor Stranding:
- 1. Feeders and Branch Circuits:
    - a. Size 10 AWG and Smaller: Solid.
    - b. Size 8 AWG and Larger: Stranded.
- D. Insulation Voltage Rating: 600 V.
- E. Insulation:
- 1. Copper Building Wire: Type THHN/THWN or THHN/THWN-2.

#### **2.04 WIRING CONNECTORS**

- A. Description: Wiring connectors appropriate for the application, suitable for use with the conductors to be connected, and listed as complying with UL 486A-486B or UL 486C as applicable.
- B. Connectors for Grounding and Bonding: Comply with Section 26 05 26.
- C. Wiring Connectors for Splices and Taps:
- 1. Copper Conductors Size 8 AWG and Smaller: Use twist-on insulated spring connectors.
  - 2. Copper Conductors Size 6 AWG and Larger: Use mechanical connectors or compression connectors.
- D. Wiring Connectors for Terminations:
- 1. Provide terminal lugs for connecting conductors to equipment furnished with terminations designed for terminal lugs.
  - 2. Provide compression adapters for connecting conductors to equipment furnished with mechanical lugs when only compression connectors are specified.
  - 3. Where over-sized conductors are larger than the equipment terminations can accommodate, provide connectors suitable for reducing to appropriate size, but not less than required for the rating of the overcurrent protective device.
  - 4. Provide motor pigtail connectors for connecting motor leads in order to facilitate disconnection.
  - 5. Copper Conductors Size 8 AWG and Larger: Use mechanical connectors or compression connectors where connectors are required.
  - 6. Stranded Conductors Size 10 AWG and Smaller: Use crimped terminals for connections to terminal screws.
  - 7. Conductors for Control Circuits: Use crimped terminals for all connections.
- E. Twist-on Insulated Spring Connectors: Rated 600 V, 221 degrees F (105 degrees C) for standard applications and 302 degrees F (150 degrees C) for high temperature applications; pre-filled with sealant and listed as complying with UL 486D for damp and wet locations.
- F. Mechanical Connectors: Provide bolted type or set-screw type.
- 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Burndy LLC.
    - b. IlSCO.
    - c. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
- G. Compression Connectors: Provide circumferential type or hex type crimp configuration.
- 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Burndy LLC.

- b. IlSCO.
  - c. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
- H. Crimped Terminals: Nylon-insulated, with insulation grip and terminal configuration suitable for connection to be made.
- 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Burndy LLC.
    - b. IlSCO.
    - c. Thomas & Betts Corporation.

## 2.05 ACCESSORIES

- A. Electrical Tape:
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. 3M.
    - b. Plymouth Rubber Europa.
  - 2. Vinyl Color Coding Electrical Tape: Integrally colored to match color code indicated; listed as complying with UL 510; minimum thickness of 7 mil (0.18 mm); resistant to abrasion, corrosion, and sunlight; suitable for continuous temperature environment up to 221 degrees F (105 degrees C).
  - 3. Vinyl Insulating Electrical Tape: Complying with ASTM D3005 and listed as complying with UL 510; minimum thickness of; resistant to abrasion, corrosion, and sunlight; conformable for application down to 0 degrees F (-18 degrees C) and suitable for continuous temperature environment up to 221 degrees F (105 degrees C).
  - 4. Rubber Splicing Electrical Tape: Ethylene Propylene Rubber (EPR) tape, complying with ASTM D4388; minimum thickness of 30 mil (0.76 mm); suitable for continuous temperature environment up to 194 degrees F (90 degrees C) and short-term 266 degrees F (130 degrees C) overload service.
  - 5. Electrical Filler Tape: Rubber-based insulating moldable putty, minimum thickness of 125 mil (3.2 mm); suitable for continuous temperature environment up to 176 degrees F (80 degrees C).
  - 6. Moisture Sealing Electrical Tape: Insulating mastic compound laminated to flexible, all-weather vinyl backing; minimum thickness of 90 mil (2.3 mm).
- B. Heat Shrink Tubing: Heavy-wall, split-resistant, with factory-applied adhesive; rated 600 V; suitable for direct burial applications; listed as complying with UL 486D.
- C. Wire Pulling Lubricant: Listed; suitable for use with the conductors or cables to be installed and suitable for use at the installation temperature.
- D. Cable Ties: Material and tensile strength rating suitable for application.
- E. Firestop Sleeves: Listed; provide as required to preserve fire resistance rating of building elements.
  - 1. Products:
    - a. HoldRite, a brand of Reliance Worldwide Corporation; HydroFlame Pro Series/HydroFlame Custom Built.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 INSTALLATION

- A. Circuiting Requirements:
  - 1. Unless dimensioned, circuit routing indicated is diagrammatic.
  - 2. When circuit destination is indicated without specific routing, determine exact routing required.
  - 3. Arrange circuiting to minimize splices.

4. Include circuit lengths required to install connected devices within 10 ft (3.0 m) of location indicated.
  5. Maintain separation of Class 1, Class 2, and Class 3 remote-control, signaling, and power-limited circuits in accordance with NFPA 70.
  6. Maintain separation of wiring for emergency systems in accordance with NFPA 70.
  7. Circuiting Adjustments: Unless otherwise indicated, when branch circuits are indicated as separate, combining them together in a single raceway is not permitted.
  8. Common Neutrals: Unless otherwise indicated, sharing of neutral/grounded conductors among up to three single phase branch circuits of different phases installed in the same raceway is not permitted. Provide dedicated neutral/grounded conductor for each individual branch circuit.
  9. Provide oversized neutral/grounded conductors where indicated and as specified below.
    - a. Provide 200 percent rated neutral for feeders fed from K-rated transformers.
    - b. Provide 200 percent rated neutral for feeders serving panelboards with 200 percent rated neutral bus.
- B. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Perform work in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship).
- D. Installation in Raceway:
1. Tape ends of conductors and cables to prevent infiltration of moisture and other contaminants.
  2. Pull all conductors and cables together into raceway at same time.
  3. Do not damage conductors and cables or exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tension and sidewall pressure.
  4. Use suitable wire pulling lubricant where necessary, except when lubricant is not recommended by the manufacturer.
- E. Paralleled Conductors: Install conductors of the same length and terminate in the same manner.
- F. Secure and support conductors and cables in accordance with NFPA 70 using suitable supports and methods approved by the authority having jurisdiction. Provide independent support from building structure. Do not provide support from raceways, piping, ductwork, or other systems.
1. Installation Above Suspended Ceilings: Do not provide support from ceiling support system. Do not provide support from ceiling grid or allow conductors and cables to lay on ceiling tiles.
  2. Installation in Vertical Raceways: Provide supports where vertical rise exceeds permissible limits.
- G. Install conductors with a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) of slack at each outlet.
- H. Neatly train and bundle conductors inside boxes, wireways, panelboards and other equipment enclosures.
- I. Group or otherwise identify neutral/grounded conductors with associated ungrounded conductors inside enclosures in accordance with NFPA 70.
- J. Make wiring connections using specified wiring connectors.
1. Make splices and taps only in accessible boxes. Do not pull splices into raceways or make splices in conduit bodies or wiring gutters.
  2. Remove appropriate amount of conductor insulation for making connections without cutting, nicking or damaging conductors.
  3. Do not remove conductor strands to facilitate insertion into connector.
  4. Clean contact surfaces on conductors and connectors to suitable remove corrosion, oxides, and other contaminates. Do not use wire brush on plated connector surfaces.



5. Mechanical Connectors: Secure connections according to manufacturer's recommended torque settings.
  6. Compression Connectors: Secure connections using manufacturer's recommended tools and dies.
- K. Insulate splices and taps that are made with uninsulated connectors using methods suitable for the application, with insulation and mechanical strength at least equivalent to unspliced conductors.
1. Dry Locations: Use insulating covers specifically designed for the connectors, electrical tape, or heat shrink tubing.
    - a. For taped connections, first apply adequate amount of rubber splicing electrical tape or electrical filler tape, followed by outer covering of vinyl insulating electrical tape.
  2. Damp Locations: Use insulating covers specifically designed for the connectors, electrical tape, or heat shrink tubing.
    - a. For connections with insulating covers, apply outer covering of moisture sealing electrical tape.
    - b. For taped connections, follow same procedure as for dry locations but apply outer covering of moisture sealing electrical tape.
  3. Wet Locations: Use heat shrink tubing.
- L. Insulate ends of spare conductors using vinyl insulating electrical tape.
- M. Install firestopping to preserve fire resistance rating of partitions and other elements, using materials and methods specified in Section 07 84 00.
- N. Unless specifically indicated to be excluded, provide final connections to all equipment and devices as required for a complete operating system.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 05 26**  
**GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Grounding and bonding requirements.
- B. Conductors for grounding and bonding.
- C. Connectors for grounding and bonding.
- D. Ground bars.
- E. Ground rod electrodes.
- F. Ground enhancement material.
- G. Ground access wells.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 26 05 19 - Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables: Additional requirements for conductors for grounding and bonding, including conductor color coding.
- B. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- C. Section 26 56 00 - Exterior Lighting: Additional grounding and bonding requirements for pole-mounted luminaires.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2015.
- B. NEMA GR 1 - Grounding Rod Electrodes and Grounding Rod Electrode Couplings; 2022.
- C. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- D. NFPA 780 - Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems; 2023.
- E. UL 467 - Grounding and Bonding Equipment; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

**1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Verify exact locations of underground metal water service pipe entrances to building.
  - 2. Coordinate the work with other trades to provide steel reinforcement complying with specified requirements for concrete-encased electrode.
  - 3. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from Contract Documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.
- B. Sequencing:
  - 1. Do not install ground rod electrodes until final backfill and compaction is complete.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittals procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for grounding and bonding system components.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Indicate proposed arrangement for signal reference grids. Include locations of items to be bonded and methods of connection.

- D. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of product.
- E. Project Record Documents: Record actual locations of grounding electrode system components and connections.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Maintain at the project site a copy of each referenced document that prescribes execution requirements.
- C. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- D. Installer Qualifications for Signal Reference Grids: Company with minimum five years documented experience with high frequency grounding systems.
- E. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 GROUNDING AND BONDING REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Do not use products for applications other than as permitted by NFPA 70 and product listing.
- B. Unless specifically indicated to be excluded, provide all required components, conductors, connectors, conduit, boxes, fittings, supports, accessories, etc. as necessary for a complete grounding and bonding system.
- C. Where conductor size is not indicated, size to comply with NFPA 70 but not less than applicable minimum size requirements specified.
- D. Grounding Electrode System:
  - 1. Provide connection to required and supplemental grounding electrodes indicated to form grounding electrode system.
    - a. Provide continuous grounding electrode conductors without splice or joint.
    - b. Install grounding electrode conductors in raceway where exposed to physical damage. Bond grounding electrode conductor to metallic raceways at each end with bonding jumper.
  - 2. Metal Underground Water Pipe(s):
    - a. Provide connection to underground metal domestic and fire protection (where present) water service pipe(s) that are in direct contact with earth for at least 10 feet (3.0 m) at an accessible location not more than 5 feet (1.5 m) from the point of entrance to the building.
    - b. Provide bonding jumper(s) around insulating joints/pipes as required to make pipe electrically continuous.
    - c. Provide bonding jumper around water meter of sufficient length to permit removal of meter without disconnecting jumper.
  - 3. Metal In-Ground Support Structure:
    - a. Provide connection to metal in-ground support structure that is in direct contact with earth in accordance with NFPA 70.
  - 4. Concrete-Encased Electrode:
    - a. Provide connection to concrete-encased electrode consisting of not less than 20 feet (6.0 m) of either steel reinforcing bars or bare copper conductor not smaller than 4 AWG embedded within concrete foundation or footing that is in direct contact with

- earth in accordance with NFPA 70.
5. Ground Ring:
    - a. Provide a ground ring encircling the building or structure consisting of bare copper conductor not less than 2 AWG in direct contact with earth, installed at a depth of not less than 30 inches (750 mm).
    - b. Where location is not indicated, locate ground ring conductor at least 24 inches (600 mm) outside building perimeter foundation.
    - c. Provide ground enhancement material around conductor where indicated.
    - d. Provide connection from ground ring conductor to:
      - 1) Perimeter columns of metal building frame.
  6. Ground Rod Electrode(s):
    - a. Provide three electrodes in an equilateral triangle configuration unless otherwise indicated or required.
    - b. Space electrodes not less than 10 feet (3.0 m) from each other and any other ground electrode.
    - c. Where location is not indicated, locate electrode(s) at least 5 feet (1.5 m) outside building perimeter foundation as near as possible to electrical service entrance; where possible, locate in softscape (uncovered) area.
    - d. Provide ground enhancement material around electrode where indicated.
    - e. Provide ground access well for each electrode.
  7. Provide additional ground electrode(s) as required to achieve specified grounding electrode system resistance.
  8. Ground Bar: Provide ground bar, separate from service equipment enclosure, for common connection point of grounding electrode system bonding jumpers as permitted in NFPA 70. Connect grounding electrode conductor provided for service-supplied system grounding to this ground bar.
    - a. Ground Bar Size: 1/4 by 4 by 12 inches (6 by 100 by 300 mm) unless otherwise indicated or required.
    - b. Where ground bar location is not indicated, locate in accessible location as near as possible to service disconnect enclosure.
    - c. Ground Bar Mounting Height: 18 inches (450 mm) above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.
  9. Ground Riser: Provide common grounding electrode conductor not less than 3/0 AWG for tap connections to multiple separately derived systems as permitted in NFPA 70.
- E. Service-Supplied System Grounding:
1. For each service disconnect, provide grounding electrode conductor to connect neutral (grounded) service conductor to grounding electrode system. Unless otherwise indicated, make connection at neutral (grounded) bus in service disconnect enclosure.
  2. For each service disconnect, provide main bonding jumper to connect neutral (grounded) bus to equipment ground bus where not factory-installed. Do not make any other connections between neutral (grounded) conductors and ground on load side of service disconnect.
- F. Grounding for Separate Building or Structure Supplied by Feeder(s) or Branch Circuits:
1. Provide grounding electrode system for each separate building or structure.
  2. Provide equipment grounding conductor routed with supply conductors.
  3. For each disconnecting means, provide grounding electrode conductor to connect equipment ground bus to grounding electrode system.
  4. Do not make any connections and remove any factory-installed jumpers between neutral (grounded) conductors and ground.
- G. Separately Derived System Grounding:
1. Separately derived systems include, but are not limited to:

- a. Transformers (except auto transformers such as buck-boost transformers).
  - b. Uninterruptible power supplies (UPS), when configured as separately derived systems.
  - c. Generators, when neutral is switched in the transfer switch.
2. Provide grounding electrode conductor to connect derived system grounded conductor to nearest effectively grounded metal building frame. Unless otherwise indicated, make connection at neutral (grounded) bus in source enclosure.
  3. Provide bonding jumper to connect derived system grounded conductor to nearest metal building frame and nearest metal water piping in the area served by the derived system, where not already used as a grounding electrode for the derived system. Make connection at same location as grounding electrode conductor connection.
  4. Where common grounding electrode conductor ground riser is used for tap connections to multiple separately derived systems, provide bonding jumper to connect the metal building frame and metal water piping in the area served by the derived system to the common grounding electrode conductor.
  5. Outdoor Source: Where the source of the separately derived system is located outside the building or structure supplied, provide connection to grounding electrode at source in accordance with NFPA 70.
  6. Provide system bonding jumper to connect system grounded conductor to equipment ground bus. Make connection at same location as grounding electrode conductor connection. Do not make any other connections between neutral (grounded) conductors and ground on load side of separately derived system disconnect.
  7. Where the source and first disconnecting means are in separate enclosures, provide supply-side bonding jumper between source and first disconnecting means.
- H. Bonding and Equipment Grounding:
1. Provide bonding for equipment grounding conductors, equipment ground busses, metallic equipment enclosures, metallic raceways and boxes, device grounding terminals, and other normally non-current-carrying conductive materials enclosing electrical conductors/equipment or likely to become energized as indicated and in accordance with NFPA 70.
  2. Provide insulated equipment grounding conductor in each feeder and branch circuit raceway. Do not use raceways as sole equipment grounding conductor.
  3. Where circuit conductor sizes are increased for voltage drop, increase size of equipment grounding conductor proportionally in accordance with NFPA 70.
  4. Unless otherwise indicated, connect wiring device grounding terminal to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor and to outlet box with bonding jumper.
  5. Terminate branch circuit equipment grounding conductors on solidly bonded equipment ground bus only. Do not terminate on neutral (grounded) or isolated/insulated ground bus.
  6. Provide bonding jumper across expansion or expansion/deflection fittings provided to accommodate conduit movement.
  7. Provide bonding for interior metal piping systems in accordance with NFPA 70. This includes, but is not limited to:
    - a. Metal water piping where not already effectively bonded to metal underground water pipe used as grounding electrode.
    - b. Metal gas piping.
    - c. Metal process piping.
  8. Provide bonding for interior metal air ducts.
  9. Provide bonding for metal building frame.
  10. Provide bonding and equipment grounding for pools and fountains and associated equipment in accordance with NFPA 70.
- I. Isolated Ground System:

1. Where isolated ground receptacles or other isolated ground connections are indicated, provide separate isolated/insulated equipment grounding conductors.
  2. Connect isolated/insulated equipment grounding conductors only to separate isolated/insulated equipment ground busses.
  3. Connect the isolated/insulated equipment grounding conductors to the solidly bonded equipment ground bus only at the service disconnect or separately derived system disconnect. Do not make any other connections between isolated ground system and normal equipment ground system on the load side of this connection.
- J. Communications Systems Grounding and Bonding:
1. Provide intersystem bonding termination at service equipment or metering equipment enclosure and at disconnecting means for any additional buildings or structures in accordance with NFPA 70.
  2. Provide bonding jumper in raceway from intersystem bonding termination to each communications room or backboard and provide ground bar for termination.
    - a. Bonding Jumper Size: 6 AWG, unless otherwise indicated or required.
    - b. Raceway Size: 3/4 inch (21 mm) trade size unless otherwise indicated or required.
    - c. Ground Bar Size: 1/4 by 2 by 12 inches (6 by 50 by 300 mm) unless otherwise indicated or required.
    - d. Ground Bar Mounting Height: 18 inches above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.

## 2.02 GROUNDING AND BONDING COMPONENTS

- A. General Requirements:
1. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
  2. Provide products listed and labeled as complying with UL 467 where applicable.
- B. Conductors for Grounding and Bonding, in Addition to Requirements of Section 26 05 26:
1. Use insulated copper conductors unless otherwise indicated.
    - a. Exceptions:
      - 1) Use bare copper conductors where installed underground in direct contact with earth.
      - 2) Use bare copper conductors where directly encased in concrete (not in raceway).
- C. Connectors for Grounding and Bonding:
1. Description: Connectors appropriate for the application and suitable for the conductors and items to be connected; listed and labeled as complying with UL 467.
  2. Unless otherwise indicated, use exothermic welded connections for underground, concealed and other inaccessible connections.
    - a. Exceptions:
      - 1) Use mechanical connectors for connections to electrodes at ground access wells.
  3. Unless otherwise indicated, use mechanical connectors, compression connectors, or exothermic welded connections for accessible connections.
    - a. Exceptions:
      - 1) Use exothermic welded connections for connections to metal building frame.
  4. Manufacturers - Mechanical and Compression Connectors:
    - a. Advanced Lightning Technology (ALT).
    - b. Burndy LLC.
    - c. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
    - d. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
  5. Manufacturers - Exothermic Welded Connections:
    - a. Burndy LLC.

- b. Cadweld, a brand of Erico International Corporation.
  - c. thermOweld, subsidiary of Continental Industries; division of Burndy LLC.
- D. Ground Bars:
- 1. Description: Copper rectangular ground bars with mounting brackets and insulators.
  - 2. Standard Size: 1/4"D x 4"D x 12"L unless noted otherwise.
  - 3. Holes for Connections: As indicated or as required for connections to be made.
  - 4. Manufacturers:
    - a. Advanced Lightning Technology (ALT).
    - b. Erico International Corporation.
    - c. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
- E. Ground Rod Electrodes:
- 1. Comply with NEMA GR 1.
  - 2. Material: Copper-bonded (copper-clad) steel.
  - 3. Size: 3/4 inch diameter by 10 feet in length, unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Manufacturers:
    - a. Advanced Lightning Technology (ALT).
    - b. Erico International Corporation.
    - c. Galvan Industries, Inc.
    - d. Harger Lightning & Grounding.
- F. Ground Access Wells:
- 1. Description: Open bottom round or rectangular well with access cover for testing and inspection; suitable for the expected load at the installed location.
  - 2. Size: As required to provide adequate access for testing and inspection, but not less than minimum size requirements specified.
    - a. Round Wells: Not less than 8 inches (200 mm) in diameter.
    - b. Rectangular Wells: Not less than 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm).
  - 3. Depth: As required to extend below frost line to prevent frost upheaval, but not less than 10 inches (250 mm).
  - 4. Cover: Factory-identified by permanent means with word "GROUND".
  - 5. Manufacturers:
    - a. Advanced Lightning Technology (ALT).
    - b. Erico International Corporation.
    - c. Harger Lightning & Grounding.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Perform work in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship).
- C. Ground Rod Electrodes: Unless otherwise indicated, install ground rod electrodes vertically. Where encountered rock prohibits vertical installation, install at 45 degree angle or bury horizontally in trench at least 30 inches (750 mm) deep in accordance with NFPA 70 or provide ground plates.
  - 1. Outdoor Installations: Unless otherwise indicated, install with top of rod 6 inches (150 mm) below finished grade.
  - 2. Indoor Installations: Unless otherwise indicated, install with 4 inches (100 mm) of top of rod exposed.
- D. Make grounding and bonding connections using specified connectors.
  - 1. Remove appropriate amount of conductor insulation for making connections without cutting, nicking or damaging conductors. Do not remove conductor strands to facilitate

- insertion into connector.
  - 2. Remove nonconductive paint, enamel, or similar coating at threads, contact points, and contact surfaces.
  - 3. Exothermic Welds: Make connections using molds and weld material suitable for the items to be connected in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations.
  - 4. Mechanical Connectors: Secure connections according to manufacturer's recommended torque settings.
  - 5. Compression Connectors: Secure connections using manufacturer's recommended tools and dies.
- E. Identify grounding and bonding system components in accordance with Section 26 05 53.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 26 05 29  
HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Support and attachment requirements and components for equipment, conduit, cable, boxes, and other electrical work.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 03 30 00 - Cast-in-Place Concrete: Concrete equipment pads.
- B. Section 26 05 33.13 - Conduit for Electrical Systems: Additional support and attachment requirements for conduits.
- C. Section 26 05 33.16 - Boxes for Electrical Systems: Additional support and attachment requirements for boxes.
- D. Section 26 51 00 - Interior Lighting: Additional support and attachment requirements for interior luminaires.
- E. Section 26 56 00 - Exterior Lighting: Additional support and attachment requirements for exterior luminaires.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ASTM A123/A123M - Standard Specification for Zinc (Hot-Dip Galvanized) Coatings on Iron and Steel Products; 2017.
- B. ASTM A153/A153M - Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware; 2016a.
- C. ASTM B633 - Standard Specification for Electrodeposited Coatings of Zinc on Iron and Steel; 2019.
- D. MFMA-4 - Metal Framing Standards Publication; 2004.
- E. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2015.
- F. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- G. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- H. UL 5B - Strut-Type Channel Raceways and Fittings; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

**1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate sizes and arrangement of supports and bases with the actual equipment and components to be installed.
  - 2. Coordinate the work with other trades to provide additional framing and materials required for installation.
  - 3. Coordinate compatibility of support and attachment components with mounting surfaces at the installed locations.
  - 4. Coordinate the arrangement of supports with ductwork, piping, equipment and other potential conflicts installed under other sections or by others.
  - 5. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from Contract Documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.
- B. Sequencing:
  - 1. Do not install products on or provide attachment to concrete surfaces until concrete has fully cured in accordance with Section 03 30 00.

### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for channel (strut) framing systems, non-penetrating rooftop supports, and post-installed concrete and masonry anchors.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include details for fabricated hangers and supports where materials or methods other than those indicated are proposed for substitution.
- D. Installer's Qualification Statement: Include evidence of compliance with specified requirements.
- E. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of product.

### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with NFPA 70.
- B. Comply with applicable building code.
- C. Maintain at the project site a copy of each referenced document that prescribes execution requirements.
- D. Installer Qualifications for Powder-Actuated Fasteners (when specified): Certified by fastener system manufacturer with current operator's license.
- E. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 SUPPORT AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS**

- A. General Requirements:
  - 1. Provide all required hangers, supports, anchors, fasteners, fittings, accessories, and hardware as necessary for the complete installation of electrical work.
  - 2. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended, where applicable.
  - 3. Where support and attachment component types and sizes are not indicated, select in accordance with manufacturer's application criteria as required for the load to be supported. Include consideration for vibration, equipment operation, and shock loads where applicable.
  - 4. Do not use products for applications other than as permitted by NFPA 70 and product listing.
  - 5. Do not use wire, chain, perforated pipe strap, or wood for permanent supports unless specifically indicated or permitted.
  - 6. Steel Components: Use corrosion resistant materials suitable for the environment where installed.
    - a. Indoor Dry Locations: Use zinc-plated steel or approved equivalent unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Outdoor and Damp or Wet Indoor Locations: Use galvanized steel, stainless steel, or approved equivalent unless otherwise indicated.
    - c. Zinc-Plated Steel: Electroplated in accordance with ASTM B633.
    - d. Galvanized Steel: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication in accordance with ASTM A123/A123M or ASTM A153/A153M.
- B. Conduit and Cable Supports: Straps, clamps, etc. suitable for the conduit or cable to be supported.

1. Conduit Straps: One-hole or two-hole type; steel or malleable iron.
2. Conduit Clamps: Bolted type unless otherwise indicated.
3. Manufacturers:
  - a. Cooper Crouse-Hinds, a division of Eaton Corporation.
  - b. Erico International Corporation.
  - c. O-Z/Gedney, a brand of Emerson Electric Co.
  - d. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
- C. Outlet Box Supports: Hangers, brackets, etc. suitable for the boxes to be supported.
  1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Cooper Crouse-Hinds, a division of Eaton.
    - b. Erico International Corporation.
    - c. O-Z/Gedney, a brand of Emerson Electric Co.
    - d. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
- D. Metal Channel (Strut) Framing Systems: Factory-fabricated continuous-slot metal channel (strut) and associated fittings, accessories, and hardware required for field-assembly of supports.
  1. Comply with MFMA-4.
  2. Channel (Strut) Used as Raceway (only where specifically indicated): Listed and labeled as complying with UL 5B.
  3. Channel Material:
    - a. Indoor Dry Locations: Use painted steel, zinc-plated steel, or galvanized steel.
    - b. Outdoor and Damp or Wet Indoor Locations: Use galvanized steel.
  4. Minimum Channel Thickness: Steel sheet, 12 gauge, 0.1046 inch (2.66 mm).
  5. Minimum Channel Dimensions: 1-5/8 inch (41 mm) width by 13/16 inch (21 mm) height.
  6. Manufacturers:
    - a. Cooper B-Line, a division of Eaton Corporation.
    - b. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
    - c. Unistrut, a brand of Atkore International Inc.
- E. Hanger Rods: Threaded zinc-plated steel unless otherwise indicated.
  1. Minimum Size, Unless Otherwise Indicated or Required:
    - a. Equipment Supports: 1/2 inch (13 mm) diameter.
    - b. Single Conduit up to 1 inch (27 mm) trade size: 1/4 inch (6 mm) diameter.
    - c. Single Conduit larger than 1 inch (27 mm) trade size: 3/8 inch (10 mm) diameter.
    - d. Trapeze Support for Multiple Conduits: 3/8 inch (10 mm) diameter.
    - e. Outlet Boxes: 1/4 inch (6 mm) diameter.
    - f. Luminaires: 1/4 inch (6 mm) diameter.
- F. Anchors and Fasteners:
  1. Unless otherwise indicated and where not otherwise restricted, use the anchor and fastener types indicated for the specified applications.
  2. Concrete: Use preset concrete inserts, expansion anchors, or screw anchors.
  3. Solid or Grout-Filled Masonry: Use expansion anchors or screw anchors.
  4. Hollow Masonry: Use toggle bolts.
  5. Hollow Stud Walls: Use toggle bolts.
  6. Steel: Use beam clamps, machine bolts, or welded threaded studs.
  7. Sheet Metal: Use sheet metal screws.
  8. Wood: Use wood screws.
  9. Plastic and lead anchors are not permitted.
  10. Powder-actuated fasteners are not permitted.
  11. Hammer-driven anchors and fasteners are not permitted.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Perform work in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship).
- C. Provide independent support from building structure. Do not provide support from piping, ductwork, or other systems.
- D. Unless specifically indicated or approved by Architect, do not provide support from suspended ceiling support system or ceiling grid.
- E. Unless specifically indicated or approved by Architect, do not provide support from roof deck.
- F. Do not penetrate or otherwise notch or cut structural members without approval of Structural Engineer.
- G. Equipment Support and Attachment:
  - 1. Use metal fabricated supports or supports assembled from metal channel (strut) to support equipment as required.
  - 2. Use metal channel (strut) secured to studs to support equipment surface-mounted on hollow stud walls when wall strength is not sufficient to resist pull-out.
  - 3. Use metal channel (strut) to support surface-mounted equipment in wet or damp locations to provide space between equipment and mounting surface.
  - 4. Unless otherwise indicated, mount floor-mounted equipment on properly sized 3 inch (80 mm) high concrete pad constructed in accordance with Section 03 30 00.
  - 5. Securely fasten floor-mounted equipment. Do not install equipment such that it relies on its own weight for support.
- H. Conduit Support and Attachment: Also comply with Section 26 05 33.13.
- I. Box Support and Attachment: Also comply with Section 26 05 33.16.
- J. Interior Luminaire Support and Attachment: Also comply with Section 26 51 00.
- K. Exterior Luminaire Support and Attachment: Also comply with Section 26 56 00.
- L. Secure fasteners according to manufacturer's recommended torque settings.
- M. Remove temporary supports.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 05 33.13  
CONDUIT FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Galvanized steel rigid metal conduit (RMC).
- B. Intermediate metal conduit (IMC).
- C. PVC-coated galvanized steel rigid metal conduit (RMC).
- D. Flexible metal conduit (FMC).
- E. Liquidtight flexible metal conduit (LFMC).
- F. Electrical metallic tubing (EMT).
- G. Rigid polyvinyl chloride (PVC) conduit.
- H. Liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit (LFNC).
- I. Conduit fittings.
- J. Accessories.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 07 84 00 - Firestopping.
- B. Section 26 05 19 - Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables: Metal clad cable (Type MC), armored cable (Type AC), and manufactured wiring systems, including uses permitted.
- C. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- D. Section 26 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems.
- E. Section 26 05 33.16 - Boxes for Electrical Systems.
- F. Section 26 05 33.23 - Surface Raceways for Electrical Systems.
- G. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- H. Section 31 23 16.13 - Trenching: Excavating, bedding, and backfilling.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ANSI C80.1 - American National Standard for Electrical Rigid Steel Conduit (ERSC); 2020.
- B. ANSI C80.3 - American National Standard for Electrical Metallic Tubing -- Steel (EMT-S); 2020.
- C. ANSI C80.6 - American National Standard for Electrical Intermediate Metal Conduit; 2018.
- D. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2015.
- E. NECA 101 - Standard for Installing Steel Conduits (Rigid, IMC, EMT); 2020.
- F. NECA 111 - Standard for Installing Nonmetallic Raceways (RNC, ENT, LFNC); 2017.
- G. NEMA FB 1 - Fittings, Cast Metal Boxes, and Conduit Bodies for Conduit, Electrical Metallic Tubing, and Cable; 2014.
- H. NEMA RN 1 - Polyvinyl-Chloride (PVC) Externally Coated Galvanized Rigid Steel Metal Conduit and Intermediate Metal Conduit; 2018.
- I. NEMA TC 2 - Electrical Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Conduit; 2020.
- J. NEMA TC 3 - Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) Fittings for Use with Rigid PVC Conduit and Tubing; 2021.

- K. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- L. UL 1 - Flexible Metal Conduit; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- M. UL 6 - Electrical Rigid Metal Conduit-Steel; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- N. UL 360 - Liquid-Tight Flexible Metal Conduit; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- O. UL 514B - Conduit, Tubing, and Cable Fittings; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- P. UL 651 - Schedule 40, 80, Type EB and A Rigid PVC Conduit and Fittings; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- Q. UL 797 - Electrical Metallic Tubing-Steel; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- R. UL 1203 - Explosion-Proof and Dust-Ignition-Proof Electrical Equipment for Use in Hazardous (Classified) Locations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- S. UL 1242 - Electrical Intermediate Metal Conduit-Steel; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- T. UL 1660 - Liquid-Tight Flexible Nonmetallic Conduit; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

#### **1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate minimum sizes of conduits with the actual conductors to be installed, including adjustments for conductor sizes increased for voltage drop.
  - 2. Coordinate the arrangement of conduits with structural members, ductwork, piping, equipment and other potential conflicts installed under other sections.
  - 3. Verify exact conduit termination locations required for boxes, enclosures, and equipment installed under other sections.
  - 4. Coordinate the work with other trades to provide roof penetrations that preserve the integrity of the roofing system and do not void the roof warranty.
  - 5. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from Contract Documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.
- B. Sequencing:
  - 1. Do not begin installation of conductors and cables until installation of conduit is complete between outlet, junction and splicing points.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittals procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for conduits and fittings.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Indicate proposed arrangement for conduits to be installed within structural concrete slabs, where permitted.
  - 2. Include proposed locations of roof penetrations and proposed methods for sealing.
- D. Project Record Documents: Record actual routing for conduits installed underground, conduits embedded within concrete slabs, and conduits 2 inch (53 mm) trade size and larger.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Maintain at the project site a copy of each referenced document that prescribes execution requirements.
- C. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having

jurisdiction.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 CONDUIT APPLICATIONS**

- A. Do not use conduit and associated fittings for applications other than as permitted by NFPA 70 and product listing.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated and where not otherwise restricted, use the conduit types indicated for the specified applications. Where more than one listed application applies, comply with the most restrictive requirements. Where conduit type for a particular application is not specified, use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit.
- C. Underground:
  - 1. Under Slab on Grade: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit (IMC), PVC-coated galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, or rigid PVC conduit.
  - 2. Exterior, Direct-Buried: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, intermediate metallic conduit (IMC), PVC-coated galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, or rigid PVC conduit.
  - 3. Exterior, Embedded Within Concrete: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, intermediate metallic conduit (IMC), rigid PVC conduit, or reinforced thermosetting resin conduit (RTRC).
  - 4. Where rigid polyvinyl (PVC) conduit is provided, transition to galvanized steel rigid metal conduit where emerging from underground.
  - 5. Where rigid polyvinyl (PVC) conduit larger than 2 inch (53 mm) trade size is provided, use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit elbows for bends.
  - 6. Where steel conduit is installed in direct contact with earth where soil has a resistivity of less than 2000 ohm-centimeters or is characterized as severely corrosive based on soils report or local experience, use corrosion protection tape to provide supplementary corrosion protection or use PVC-coated galvanized steel rigid metal conduit.
  - 7. Where steel conduit emerges from concrete into soil, use corrosion protection tape to provide supplementary corrosion protection for a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) on either side of where conduit emerges or use PVC-coated galvanized steel rigid metal conduit.
- D. Embedded Within Concrete:
  - 1. Within Slab on Grade (within structural slabs only where approved by Structural Engineer): Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit (IMC), PVC-coated galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, rigid PVC conduit, or reinforced thermosetting resin conduit (RTRC).
  - 2. Within Slab Above Ground (within structural slabs only where approved by Structural Engineer): Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit (IMC), PVC-coated galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, rigid PVC conduit, or reinforced thermosetting resin conduit (RTRC).
  - 3. Within Concrete Walls Above Ground: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit (IMC), PVC-coated galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, rigid PVC conduit, or reinforced thermosetting resin conduit (RTRC).
  - 4. Where rigid polyvinyl (PVC) conduit is provided, transition to galvanized steel rigid metal conduit where emerging from concrete.
- E. Concealed Within Masonry Walls: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit (IMC), or electrical metallic tubing (EMT).
- F. Concealed Within Hollow Stud Walls: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit (IMC), or electrical metallic tubing (EMT).
- G. Concealed Above Accessible Ceilings: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit (IMC), or electrical metallic tubing (EMT).
- H. Interior, Damp or Wet Locations: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit.

- I. Exposed, Interior, Not Subject to Physical Damage: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit (IMC), or electrical metallic tubing (EMT).
- J. Exposed, Interior, Subject to Physical Damage: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit or intermediate metal conduit (IMC).
- K. Exposed, Exterior: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit (IMC), or PVC-coated galvanized steel rigid metal conduit.
- L. Concealed, Exterior, Not Embedded in Concrete or in Contact With Earth: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit or intermediate metal conduit (IMC).
- M. Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Use galvanized steel rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit (IMC), aluminum rigid metal conduit, or PVC-coated galvanized steel rigid metal conduit.
- N. Connections to Luminaires Above Accessible Ceilings: Use flexible metal conduit.
  - 1. Maximum Length: 6 feet (1.8 m).
- O. Connections to Vibrating Equipment:
  - 1. Dry Locations: Use flexible metal conduit.
  - 2. Damp, Wet, or Corrosive Locations: Use liquidtight flexible metal conduit.
  - 3. Maximum Length: 6 feet (1.8 m) unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Vibrating equipment includes, but is not limited to:
    - a. Transformers.
    - b. Motors.

## 2.02 CONDUIT REQUIREMENTS

- A. Existing Work: Where existing conduits are indicated to be reused, they may be reused only where they comply with specified requirements, are free from corrosion, and integrity is verified by pulling a mandrel through them.
- B. Provide all conduit, fittings, supports, and accessories required for a complete raceway system.
- C. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- D. Minimum Conduit Size, Unless Otherwise Indicated:
  - 1. Branch Circuits: 3/4 inch (21 mm) trade size.
  - 2. Branch Circuit Homeruns: 3/4 inch (21 mm) trade size.
  - 3. Control Circuits: 1/2 inch (16 mm) trade size.
  - 4. Underground, Interior: 3/4 inch (21 mm) trade size.
  - 5. Underground, Exterior: 1 inch (27 mm) trade size.
- E. Where conduit size is not indicated, size to comply with NFPA 70 but not less than applicable minimum size requirements specified.

## 2.03 GALVANIZED STEEL RIGID METAL CONDUIT (RMC)

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Allied Tube & Conduit.
  - 2. Nucor Tubular Products.
  - 3. Western Tube, a division of Zekelman Industries.
  - 4. Wheatland Tube, a division of Zekelman Industries.
- B. Description: NFPA 70, Type RMC galvanized steel rigid metal conduit complying with ANSI C80.1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 6.
- C. Fittings:
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Bridgeport Fittings Inc.
    - b. O-Z/Gedney, a brand of Emerson Electric Co.



- c. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
2. Non-Hazardous Locations: Use fittings complying with NEMA FB 1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 514B.
3. Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Use fittings listed and labeled as complying with UL 1203 for the classification of the installed location.
4. Material: Use steel or malleable iron.
5. Connectors and Couplings: Use threaded type fittings only. Threadless set screw and compression (gland) type fittings are not permitted.

#### **2.04 INTERMEDIATE METAL CONDUIT (IMC)**

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Allied Tube & Conduit.
  2. Nucor Tubular Products.
  3. Western Tube, a division of Zekelman Industries.
  4. Wheatland Tube, a division of Zekelman Industries.
- B. Description: NFPA 70, Type IMC galvanized steel intermediate metal conduit complying with ANSI C80.6 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 1242.
- C. Fittings:
  1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Bridgeport Fittings Inc.
    - b. O-Z/Gedney, a brand of Emerson Electric Co.
    - c. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
  2. Non-Hazardous Locations: Use fittings complying with NEMA FB 1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 514B.
  3. Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Use fittings listed and labeled as complying with UL 1203 for the classification of the installed location.
  4. Material: Use steel or malleable iron.
  5. Connectors and Couplings: Use threaded type fittings only. Threadless set screw and compression (gland) type fittings are not permitted.

#### **2.05 PVC-COATED GALVANIZED STEEL RIGID METAL CONDUIT (RMC)**

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
  2. Robroy Industries.
  3. Allied Tube & Conduit.
  4. Calbond.
- B. Description: NFPA 70, Type RMC galvanized steel rigid metal conduit with external polyvinyl chloride (PVC) coating complying with NEMA RN 1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 6.
- C. Exterior Coating: Polyvinyl chloride (PVC), nominal thickness of 40 mil (1.02 mm).
- D. Interior Coating: Urethane, minimum thickness of 2 mil (0.05 mm).
- E. PVC-Coated Fittings:
  1. Manufacturer: Same as manufacturer of PVC-coated conduit to be installed.
  2. Non-Hazardous Locations: Use fittings listed and labeled as complying with UL 514B.
  3. Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Use fittings listed and labeled as complying with UL 1203 for the classification of the installed location.
  4. Material: Use steel or malleable iron.
  5. Exterior Coating: Polyvinyl chloride (PVC), minimum thickness of 40 mil (1.02 mm).
  6. Interior Coating: Urethane, minimum thickness of 2 mil (0.05 mm).

- F. PVC-Coated Supports: Furnish with exterior coating of polyvinyl chloride (PVC), minimum thickness of 15 mil (0.38 mm).

## **2.06 FLEXIBLE METAL CONDUIT (FMC)**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
  - 2. Electri-Flex Company.
  - 3. International Metal Hose.
- B. Description: NFPA 70, Type FMC standard wall steel flexible metal conduit listed and labeled as complying with UL 1, and listed for use in classified firestop systems to be used.
- C. Fittings:
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Bridgeport Fittings Inc.
    - b. O-Z/Gedney, a brand of Emerson Electric Co.
    - c. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
  - 2. Description: Fittings complying with NEMA FB 1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 514B.
  - 3. Material: Use steel or malleable iron.

## **2.07 LIQUIDTIGHT FLEXIBLE METAL CONDUIT (LFMC)**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
  - 2. Electri-Flex Company.
  - 3. International Metal Hose.
- B. Description: NFPA 70, Type LFMC polyvinyl chloride (PVC) jacketed steel flexible metal conduit listed and labeled as complying with UL 360.
- C. Fittings:
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Bridgeport Fittings Inc.
    - b. O-Z/Gedney, a brand of Emerson Electric Co.
    - c. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
  - 2. Description: Fittings complying with NEMA FB 1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 514B.
  - 3. Material: Use steel or malleable iron.

## **2.08 ELECTRICAL METALLIC TUBING (EMT)**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Allied Tube & Conduit.
  - 2. Nucor Tubular Products.
  - 3. Western Tube, a division of Zekelman Industries.
  - 4. Wheatland Tube, a division of Zekelman Industries.
- B. Description: NFPA 70, Type EMT steel electrical metallic tubing complying with ANSI C80.3 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 797.
- C. Fittings:
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Bridgeport Fittings Inc.
    - b. O-Z/Gedney, a brand of Emerson Electric Co.
    - c. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
  - 2. Description: Fittings complying with NEMA FB 1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 514B.

3. Material: Use steel or malleable iron.
4. Connectors and Couplings: Use compression (gland) or set-screw type.
  - a. Do not use indenter type connectors and couplings.
5. Damp or Wet Locations (where permitted): Use fittings listed for use in wet locations.
6. Embedded Within Concrete (where permitted): Use fittings listed as concrete-tight. Fittings that require taping to be concrete-tight are acceptable.

## **2.09 RIGID POLYVINYL CHLORIDE (PVC) CONDUIT**

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Cantex Inc.
  2. Carlon, a brand of Thomas & Betts Corporation.
  3. JM Eagle.
  4. Allied Tube & Conduit.
- B. Description: NFPA 70, Type PVC rigid polyvinyl chloride conduit complying with NEMA TC 2 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 651; Schedule 40 unless otherwise indicated, Schedule 80 where subject to physical damage; rated for use with conductors rated 90 degrees C.
- C. Fittings:
  1. Manufacturer: Same as manufacturer of conduit to be connected.
  2. Description: Fittings complying with NEMA TC 3 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 651; material to match conduit.

## **2.10 LIQUIDTIGHT FLEXIBLE NONMETALLIC CONDUIT (LFNC)**

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
  2. Electri-Flex Company.
  3. International Metal Hose.
- B. Description: NFPA 70, Type LFNC liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit listed and labeled as complying with UL 1660.
- C. Fittings:
  1. Manufacturer: Same as manufacturer of conduit to be connected.
  2. Description: Fittings complying with NEMA FB 1 and listed and labeled as complying with UL 514B; suitable for the type of conduit to be connected.

## **2.11 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Corrosion Protection Tape: PVC-based, minimum thickness of 20 mil (0.51 mm).
- B. Conduit Joint Compound: Corrosion-resistant, electrically conductive; suitable for use with the conduit to be installed.
- C. Solvent Cement for PVC Conduit and Fittings: As recommended by manufacturer of conduit and fittings to be installed.
- D. Pull Strings: Use nylon cord with average breaking strength of not less than 200 pound-force (890 N).
- E. Sealing Compound for Sealing Fittings: Listed for use with the particular fittings to be installed.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Perform work in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship).
- C. Install galvanized steel rigid metal conduit (RMC) in accordance with NECA 101.

- D. Install intermediate metal conduit (IMC) in accordance with NECA 101.
- E. Install PVC-coated galvanized steel rigid metal conduit (RMC) using only tools approved by the manufacturer.
- F. Install rigid polyvinyl chloride (PVC) conduit in accordance with NECA 111.
- G. Install liquidtight flexible nonmetallic conduit (LFNC) in accordance with NECA 111.
- H. Conduit Routing:
  - 1. Unless dimensioned, conduit routing indicated is diagrammatic.
  - 2. Conduits in the following areas may be exposed, unless otherwise indicated:
    - a. Electrical rooms.
    - b. Mechanical equipment rooms.
    - c. Within joists in areas with no ceiling.
  - 3. Unless otherwise approved, do not route conduits exposed:
    - a. Across floors.
    - b. Across roofs.
    - c. Across top of parapet walls.
    - d. Across building exterior surfaces.
  - 4. Conduits installed underground or embedded in concrete may be routed in the shortest possible manner unless otherwise indicated. Route all other conduits parallel or perpendicular to building structure and surfaces, following surface contours where practical.
  - 5. Arrange conduit to maintain adequate headroom, clearances, and access.
  - 6. Arrange conduit to provide no more than the equivalent of four 90 degree bends between pull points.
  - 7. Arrange conduit to provide no more than 150 feet (46 m) between pull points.
  - 8. Route conduits above water and drain piping where possible.
  - 9. Arrange conduit to prevent moisture traps. Provide drain fittings at low points and at sealing fittings where moisture may collect.
  - 10. Maintain minimum clearance of 6 inches (150 mm) between conduits and piping for other systems.
  - 11. Maintain minimum clearance of 12 inches (300 mm) between conduits and hot surfaces. This includes, but is not limited to:
    - a. Heaters.
    - b. Hot water piping.
    - c. Flues.
- I. Conduit Support:
  - 1. Secure and support conduits in accordance with NFPA 70 and Section 26 05 29 using suitable supports and methods approved by the authority having jurisdiction.
  - 2. Provide independent support from building structure. Do not provide support from piping, ductwork, or other systems.
  - 3. Use metal channel (strut) with accessory conduit clamps to support multiple parallel surface-mounted conduits.
  - 4. Use conduit clamp to support single conduit from beam clamp or threaded rod.
  - 5. Use trapeze hangers assembled from threaded rods and metal channel (strut) with accessory conduit clamps to support multiple parallel suspended conduits.
  - 6. Use of wire for support of conduits is not permitted.
  - 7. Where conduit support intervals specified in NFPA 70 and NECA standards differ, comply with the most stringent requirements.
- J. Connections and Terminations:

1. Use approved zinc-rich paint or conduit joint compound on field-cut threads of galvanized steel conduits prior to making connections.
  2. Where two threaded conduits must be joined and neither can be rotated, use three-piece couplings or split couplings. Do not use running threads.
  3. Use suitable adapters where required to transition from one type of conduit to another.
  4. Provide drip loops for liquidtight flexible conduit connections to prevent drainage of liquid into connectors.
  5. Terminate threaded conduits in boxes and enclosures using threaded hubs or double lock nuts for dry locations and raintight hubs for wet locations.
  6. Provide insulating bushings or insulated throats at all conduit terminations to protect conductors.
  7. Secure joints and connections to provide maximum mechanical strength and electrical continuity.
- K. Penetrations:
1. Do not penetrate or otherwise notch or cut structural members, including footings and grade beams, without approval of Structural Engineer.
  2. Make penetrations perpendicular to surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Provide sleeves for penetrations as indicated or as required to facilitate installation. Set sleeves flush with exposed surfaces unless otherwise indicated or required.
  4. Conceal bends for conduit risers emerging above ground.
  5. Seal interior of conduits entering the building from underground at first accessible point to prevent entry of moisture and gases.
  6. Where conduits penetrate waterproof membrane, seal as required to maintain integrity of membrane.
  7. Make penetrations for roof-mounted equipment within associated equipment openings and curbs where possible to minimize roofing system penetrations. Where penetrations are necessary, seal as indicated or as required to preserve integrity of roofing system and maintain roof warranty. Include proposed locations of penetrations and methods for sealing with submittals.
  8. Install firestopping to preserve fire resistance rating of partitions and other elements, using materials and methods specified in Section 07 84 00.
- L. Underground Installation:
1. Provide trenching and backfilling in accordance with Section 31 23 16.13.
  2. Minimum Cover, Unless Otherwise Indicated or Required:
    - a. Underground, Exterior: 24 inches (610 mm).
    - b. Under Slab on Grade: 12 inches (300 mm) to bottom of slab.
  3. Provide underground warning tape in accordance with Section 26 05 53 along entire conduit length for service entrance where not concrete-encased.
- M. Embedment Within Structural Concrete Slabs (only where approved by Structural Engineer):
1. Secure conduits to prevent floating or movement during pouring of concrete.
- N. Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Where conduits cross boundaries of hazardous (classified) locations, provide sealing fittings located as indicated or in accordance with NFPA 70.
- O. Conduit Movement Provisions: Where conduits are subject to movement, provide expansion and expansion/deflection fittings to prevent damage to enclosed conductors or connected equipment. This includes, but is not limited to:
1. Where conduits cross structural joints intended for expansion, contraction, or deflection.
  2. Where calculated in accordance with NFPA 70 for rigid polyvinyl chloride (PVC) conduit installed above ground to compensate for thermal expansion and contraction.
  3. Where calculated in accordance with NFPA 70 for reinforced thermosetting resin conduit (RTRC) conduit installed above ground to compensate for thermal expansion and

contraction.

4. Where conduits are subject to earth movement by settlement or frost.
- P. Condensation Prevention: Where conduits cross barriers between areas of potential substantial temperature differential, provide sealing fitting or approved sealing compound at an accessible point near the penetration to prevent condensation. This includes, but is not limited to:
1. Where conduits pass from outdoors into conditioned interior spaces.
  2. Where conduits pass from unconditioned interior spaces into conditioned interior spaces.
- Q. Provide pull string in all empty conduits and in conduits where conductors and cables are to be installed under other sections. Leave minimum slack of 12 inches (300 mm) at each end.
- R. Provide grounding and bonding in accordance with Section 26 05 26.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 05 53**  
**IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Electrical identification requirements.
- B. Identification nameplates and labels.
- C. Wire and cable markers.
- D. Voltage markers.
- E. Underground warning tape.
- F. Warning signs and labels.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 26 05 19 - Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables: Color coding for power conductors and cables 600 V and less; vinyl color coding electrical tape.
- B. Section 26 05 73 - Power System Studies: Arc flash hazard warning labels.
- C. Section 26 27 26 Wiring Devices: Device and wallplate finishes; factory pre-marked wallplates.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- B. NFPA 70E - Standard for Electrical Safety in the Workplace; 2024.
- C. UL 969 - Marking and Labeling Systems; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

**1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Verify final designations for equipment, systems, and components to be identified prior to fabrication of identification products.
- B. Sequencing:
  - 1. Do not conceal items to be identified, in locations such as above suspended ceilings, until identification products have been installed.
  - 2. Do not install identification products until final surface finishes and painting are complete.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements for submittals procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for each product.
- C. Shop Drawings: Provide schedule of items to be identified indicating proposed designations, materials, legends, and formats.
- D. Manufacturer's Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation and installation of product.

**1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with requirements of NFPA 70.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.01 IDENTIFICATION REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Identification for Equipment:

1. Use identification nameplate to identify each piece of electrical distribution and control equipment and associated sections, compartments, and components.
  - a. Switchgear:
    - 1) Identify ampere rating.
    - 2) Identify voltage and phase.
    - 3) Identify power source and circuit number. Include location.
    - 4) Use identification nameplate to identify main and tie devices.
    - 5) Use identification nameplate to identify load(s) served for each branch device. Identify spares and spaces.
  - b. Switchboards:
    - 1) Identify ampere rating.
    - 2) Identify voltage and phase.
    - 3) Identify power source and circuit number. Include location.
    - 4) Use identification nameplate to identify main overcurrent protective device.
    - 5) Use identification nameplate to identify load(s) served for each branch device. Identify spares and spaces.
  - c. Panelboards:
    - 1) Identify ampere rating.
    - 2) Identify voltage and phase.
    - 3) Identify power source and circuit number. Include location.
    - 4) Use typewritten circuit directory to identify load(s) served for panelboards with a door. Identify spares and spaces.
    - 5) For power panelboards without a door, use identification nameplate to identify load(s) served for each branch device. Identify spares and spaces.
  - d. Transformers:
    - 1) Identify kVA rating.
    - 2) Identify voltage and phase for primary and secondary.
    - 3) Identify power source and circuit number. Include location
    - 4) Identify load(s) served. Include location.
  - e. Enclosed switches, circuit breakers, and motor controllers:
    - 1) Identify voltage and phase.
    - 2) Identify power source and circuit number. Include location.
    - 3) Identify load(s) served. Include location.
  - f. Time Switches:
    - 1) Identify load(s) served and associated circuits controlled. Include location.
  - g. Enclosed Contactors:
    - 1) Identify ampere rating.
    - 2) Identify voltage and phase.
    - 3) Identify configuration, e.g., E.O.E.H. (electrically operated, electrically held) or E.O.M.H. (electrically operated, mechanically held).
    - 4) Identify coil voltage.
    - 5) Identify load(s) and associated circuits controlled. Include location.
  - h. Centralized Emergency Lighting Inverters:
    - 1) Identify input and output voltage and phase.
    - 2) Identify power source and circuit number for normal power source. Include location.
    - 3) Identify load(s) served. Include location.
  - i. Transfer Switches:
    - 1) Identify voltage and phase.
    - 2) Identify power source and circuit number for both normal power source and standby power source. Include location



- 3) Identify load(s) served. Include location.
- 4) Identify short circuit current rating based on the specific overcurrent protective device type and settings protecting the transfer switch.
- j. UPS (Uninterruptible Power Supplies)
  - 1) Identify kW / kVA.
  - 2) Identify input and output voltage and phase.
  - 3) Identify power source and circuit number for normal power source. Include location.
  - 4) Identify load(s) served. Include location.
- k. Electricity Meters:
  - 1) Identify load(s) metered.
2. Service Equipment:
  - a. Use identification nameplate to identify each service disconnecting means.
  - b. For buildings or structures supplied by more than one service, or any combination of branch circuits, feeders, and services, use identification nameplate or means of identification acceptable to authority having jurisdiction at each service disconnecting means to identify all other services, feeders, and branch circuits supplying that building or structure. Verify format and descriptions with authority having jurisdiction.
3. Emergency System Equipment:
  - a. Use identification nameplate or voltage marker to identify emergency system equipment in accordance with NFPA 70.
  - b. Use identification nameplate at each piece of service equipment to identify type and location of on-site emergency power sources.
  - c. Use identification nameplate to identify emergency operating instructions for emergency system equipment.
4. Use voltage marker to identify highest voltage present for each piece of electrical equipment.
5. Use identification nameplate to identify equipment utilizing series ratings, where permitted, in accordance with NFPA 70.
6. Use identification nameplate to identify switchboards and panelboards utilizing a high leg delta system in accordance with NFPA 70.
7. Use identification nameplate to identify disconnect location for equipment with remote disconnecting means.
8. Use identification label or handwritten text using indelible marker on inside of door at each fused switch to identify required NEMA fuse class and size.
9. Use identification label to identify overcurrent protective devices for branch circuits serving fire alarm circuits. Identify with text "FIRE ALARM CIRCUIT".
10. Available Fault Current Documentation: Use identification label to identify the available fault current and date calculations were performed at locations requiring documentation by NFPA 70 including but not limited to the following.
  - a. Service equipment.
  - b. Motor control centers.
  - c. Elevator control panels.
11. Arc Flash Hazard Warning Labels: Use warning labels to identify arc flash hazards for electrical equipment, such as switchboards, panelboards, industrial control panels, meter socket enclosures, and motor control centers that are likely to require examination, adjustment, servicing, or maintenance while energized.
  - a. Minimum Size: 3.5 by 5 inches (89 mm by 127 mm).
  - b. Legend: Include orange header that reads "WARNING", followed by the word message "Arc Flash and Shock Hazard; Appropriate PPE Required; Do not operate controls or open covers without appropriate personal protection equipment; Failure to

- comply may result in injury or death; Refer to NFPA 70E for minimum PPE requirements" or approved equivalent.
- c. Service Equipment: Include the following information in accordance with NFPA 70.
    - 1) Nominal system voltage.
    - 2) Available fault current.
    - 3) Clearing time of service overcurrent protective device(s).
    - 4) Date label applied.
  12. Use warning signs to identify electrical hazards for entrances to all rooms and other guarded locations that contain exposed live parts operating at 600 V nominal or less with the word message "DANGER; Electrical hazard; Authorized personnel only" or approved equivalent.
  13. Use warning signs to identify electrical hazards for entrances to all buildings, vaults, rooms, or enclosures containing exposed live parts or exposed conductors operating at over 600 V nominal with the word message "DANGER; HIGH VOLTAGE; KEEP OUT".
  14. Use warning labels to identify electrical hazards for equipment, compartments, and enclosures containing exposed live parts or exposed conductors operating at over 600 V nominal with the word message "DANGER; HIGH VOLTAGE; KEEP OUT".
  15. Use warning labels, identification nameplates, or identification labels to identify electrical hazards for equipment where multiple power sources are present with the word message "DANGER; Hazardous voltage; Multiple power sources may be present; Disconnect all electric power including remote disconnects before servicing" or approved equivalent.
- B. Identification for Conductors and Cables:
1. Color Coding for Power Conductors 600 V and Less: Comply with Section 26 05 19.
  2. Identification for Communications Conductors and Cables: Comply with Section 27 10 00.
  3. Use identification nameplate or identification label to identify color code for ungrounded and grounded power conductors inside door or enclosure at each piece of feeder or branch-circuit distribution equipment when premises has feeders or branch circuits served by more than one nominal voltage system.
  4. Use wire and cable markers to identify connected grounding electrode system components for grounding electrode conductors.
  5. Use underground warning tape to identify direct buried cables.
- C. Identification for Raceways:
1. Use voltage markers to identify highest voltage present for accessible conduits at maximum intervals of 20 feet (6.1 m).
  2. Use color-coded bands to identify systems other than normal power system for accessible conduits at maximum intervals of 20 feet (6.1 m).
    - a. Color-Coded Bands: Use field-painting or vinyl color coding electrical tape to mark bands 3 inches (76 mm) wide.
      - 1) Color Code:
        - (a) Emergency Power System: Red.
        - (b) Fire Alarm System: Red.
      - 2) Field-Painting: Comply with Section 09 91 23 and 09 91 13.
      - 3) Vinyl Color Coding Electrical Tape: Comply with Section 26 05 19.
  3. Use identification labels, handwritten text using indelible marker, or plastic marker tags to identify circuits enclosed for accessible conduits at wall penetrations, at floor penetrations, at roof penetrations, and at equipment terminations when source is not within sight.
  4. Use identification labels, handwritten text using indelible marker, or plastic marker tags to identify spare conduits at each end. Identify purpose and termination location.
  5. Use underground warning tape to identify underground raceways.
  6. Use voltage markers to identify highest voltage present for wireways at maximum intervals of 20 feet (6.1 m).

- D. Identification for Boxes:
  - 1. Use voltage markers to identify highest voltage present.
  - 2. Use color coded boxes to identify systems other than normal power system.
    - a. Color-Coded Boxes: Field-painted in accordance with Section 09 91 23 and 09 91 13 per the following color code:
      - 1) Emergency Power System: Red.
      - 2) Fire Alarm System: Red.
  - 3. Use identification labels to identify circuits enclosed.
    - a. For exposed boxes in public areas, use only identification labels.
- E. Identification for Devices:
  - 1. Wiring Device and Wallplate Finishes: Comply with Section 26 27 26.
  - 2. Use identification label to identify fire alarm system devices.
  - 3. Use identification label or engraved wallplate to identify serving branch circuit for all receptacles.

## 2.02 IDENTIFICATION NAMEPLATES AND LABELS

- A. Identification Nameplates:
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Brimar Industries, Inc.
    - b. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
    - c. Seton Identification Products.
  - 2. Materials:
    - a. Indoor Clean, Dry Locations: Use plastic nameplates.
    - b. Outdoor Locations: Use stainless steel nameplates suitable for exterior use.
  - 3. Plastic Nameplates: Two-layer or three-layer laminated acrylic or electrically non-conductive phenolic with beveled edges; minimum thickness of 1/16 inch (1.6 mm); engraved text.
  - 4. Stainless Steel Nameplates: Minimum thickness of 1/32 inch (0.8 mm); engraved or laser-etched text.
  - 5. Mounting Holes for Mechanical Fasteners: Two, centered on sides for sizes up to 1 inch (25 mm) high; Four, located at corners for larger sizes.
- B. Identification Labels:
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Brady Corporation.
    - b. Brother International Corporation.
    - c. Panduit Corp.
  - 2. Materials: Use self-adhesive laminated plastic labels; UV, chemical, water, heat, and abrasion resistant.
    - a. Use only for indoor locations.
  - 3. Text: Use factory pre-printed or machine-printed text. Do not use handwritten text unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Format for Equipment Identification:
  - 1. Minimum Size: 1 inch (25 mm) by 2.5 inches (64 mm).
  - 2. Legend:
    - a. System designation where applicable:
      - 1) Emergency Power System: Identify with text "EMERGENCY".
      - 2) Fire Alarm System: Identify with text "FIRE ALARM".
    - b. Equipment designation or other approved description.
  - 3. Text: All capitalized unless otherwise indicated.
  - 4. Minimum Text Height:

- a. System Designation: 1 inch (25 mm).
  - b. Equipment Designation: 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  - c. Exception: Provide minimum text height of 1 inch (25 mm) for equipment located more than 10 feet (3.0 m) above floor or working platform.
5. Color:
- a. Normal Power System: White text on black background.
  - b. Emergency Power System: White text on red background.
  - c. Fire Alarm System: White text on red background.
- D. Format for General Information and Operating Instructions:
1. Minimum Size: 1 inch (25 mm) by 2.5 inches (64 mm).
  2. Legend: Include information or instructions indicated or as required for proper and safe operation and maintenance.
  3. Text: All capitalized unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Minimum Text Height: 1/4 inch (6 mm).
  5. Color: Black text on white background unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Format for Caution and Warning Messages:
1. Minimum Size: 2 inches (51 mm) by 4 inches (100 mm).
  2. Legend: Include information or instructions indicated or as required for proper and safe operation and maintenance.
  3. Text: All capitalized unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Minimum Text Height: 1/2 inch (13 mm).
  5. Color: Black text on yellow background unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Format for Receptacle Identification:
1. Minimum Size: 3/8 inch (10 mm) by 1.5 inches (38 mm).
  2. Legend: Power source and circuit number or other designation indicated.
  3. Text: All capitalized unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Minimum Text Height: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
  5. Color: Black text on clear background.
- G. Format for Control Device Identification:
1. Minimum Size: 3/8 inch (10 mm) by 1.5 inches (38 mm).
  2. Legend: Load controlled or other designation indicated.
  3. Text: All capitalized unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Minimum Text Height: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
  5. Color: Black text on clear background.
- H. Format for Fire Alarm Device Identification:
1. Minimum Size: 3/8 inch (10 mm) by 1.5 inches (38 mm).
  2. Legend: Designation indicated and device zone or address.
  3. Text: All capitalized unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Minimum Text Height: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
  5. Color: Red text on white background.

### **2.03 WIRE AND CABLE MARKERS**

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Brady Corporation.
  2. HellermannTyton.
  3. Panduit Corp.
- B. Markers for Conductors and Cables: Use wrap-around self-adhesive vinyl cloth, wrap-around self-adhesive vinyl self-laminating, heat-shrink sleeve, plastic sleeve, plastic clip-on, or vinyl split sleeve type markers suitable for the conductor or cable to be identified.

- C. Markers for Conductor and Cable Bundles: Use plastic marker tags secured by nylon cable ties.
- D. Legend: Power source and circuit number or other designation indicated.
- E. Text: Use factory pre-printed or machine-printed text, all capitalized unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Minimum Text Height: 1/8 inch (3 mm).
- G. Color: Black text on white background unless otherwise indicated.

#### **2.04 VOLTAGE MARKERS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Brady Corporation.
  - 2. Brimar Industries, Inc.
  - 3. Seton Identification Products.
- B. Markers for Conduits: Use factory pre-printed self-adhesive vinyl, self-adhesive vinyl cloth, or vinyl snap-around type markers.
- C. Markers for Boxes and Equipment Enclosures: Use factory pre-printed self-adhesive vinyl or self-adhesive vinyl cloth type markers.
- D. Minimum Size:
  - 1. Markers for Equipment: 1 1/8 by 4 1/2 inches (29 by 110 mm).
  - 2. Markers for Conduits: As recommended by manufacturer for conduit size to be identified.
  - 3. Markers for Pull Boxes: 1 1/8 by 4 1/2 inches (29 by 110 mm).
  - 4. Markers for Junction Boxes: 1/2 by 2 1/4 inches (13 by 57 mm).
- E. Legend:
  - 1. Markers for Voltage Identification: Highest voltage present.
  - 2. Markers for System Identification:
    - a. Emergency Power System: Text "EMERGENCY".
- F. Color: Black text on orange background unless otherwise indicated.

#### **2.05 UNDERGROUND WARNING TAPE**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Brady Corporation.
  - 2. Brimar Industries, Inc.
  - 3. Seton Identification Products.
- B. Materials: Use foil-backed detectable type polyethylene tape suitable for direct burial, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Foil-backed Detectable Type Tape: 3 inches (76 mm) wide, with minimum thickness of 5 mil (0.1 mm), unless otherwise required for proper detection.
- D. Legend: Type of service, continuously repeated over full length of tape.
- E. Color:
  - 1. Tape for Buried Power Lines: Black text on red background.
  - 2. Tape for Buried Communication, Alarm, and Signal Lines: Black text on orange background.

#### **2.06 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Brimar Industries, Inc.
  - 2. Clarion Safety Systems, LLC.
  - 3. Insite Solutions, LLC.

- B. Comply with ANSI Z535.2 or ANSI Z535.4 as applicable.
- C. Warning Signs:
  - 1. Materials:
    - a. Indoor Dry, Clean Locations: Use factory pre-printed rigid plastic or self-adhesive vinyl signs.
    - b. Outdoor Locations: Use factory pre-printed rigid aluminum signs.
  - 2. Rigid Signs: Provide four mounting holes at corners for mechanical fasteners.
  - 3. Minimum Size: 7 by 10 inches (178 by 254 mm) unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Warning Labels:
  - 1. Materials: Use factory pre-printed or machine-printed self-adhesive polyester or self-adhesive vinyl labels; UV, chemical, water, heat, and abrasion resistant; produced using materials recognized to UL 969.
  - 2. Machine-Printed Labels: Use thermal transfer process printing machines and accessories recommended by label manufacturer.
  - 3. Minimum Size: 2 by 4 inches (51 mm by 102 mm) unless otherwise indicated.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install identification products to be plainly visible for examination, adjustment, servicing, and maintenance. Unless otherwise indicated, locate products as follows:
  - 1. Surface-Mounted Equipment: Enclosure front.
  - 2. Flush-Mounted Equipment: Inside of equipment door.
  - 3. Free-Standing Equipment: Enclosure front; also enclosure rear for equipment with rear access.
  - 4. Elevated Equipment: Legible from the floor or working platform.
  - 5. Branch Devices: Adjacent to device.
  - 6. Interior Components: Legible from the point of access.
  - 7. Conduits: Legible from the floor.
  - 8. Boxes: Outside face of cover.
  - 9. Conductors and Cables: Legible from the point of access.
  - 10. Devices: Outside face of cover.
- C. Install identification products centered, level, and parallel with lines of item being identified.
- D. Secure nameplates to exterior surfaces of enclosures using stainless steel screws and to interior surfaces using self-adhesive backing or epoxy cement.
- E. Install self-adhesive labels and markers to achieve maximum adhesion, with no bubbles or wrinkles and edges properly sealed.
- F. Install underground warning tape above buried service lines with one tape per trench at 12 inches below finished grade.
- G. Secure rigid signs using stainless steel screws.
- H. Mark all handwritten text, where permitted, to be neat and legible.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 05 73  
POWER SYSTEM STUDIES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Short-circuit study.
- B. Protective device coordination study.
- C. Arc flash and shock risk assessment.
  - 1. Includes arc flash hazard warning labels.
- D. Criteria for the selection and adjustment of equipment and associated protective devices not specified in this section, as determined by studies to be performed.

**1.02 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. ANSI Z535.4 - American National Standard for Product Safety Signs and Labels; 2023.
- B. IEEE 141 - IEEE Recommended Practice for Electric Power Distribution for Industrial Plants; 1993 (Reaffirmed 1999).
- C. IEEE 242 - IEEE Recommended Practice for Protection and Coordination of Industrial and Commercial Power Systems; 2001, with Errata (2003).
- D. IEEE 399 - IEEE Recommended Practice for Industrial and Commercial Power Systems Analysis; 1997.
- E. IEEE 551 - IEEE Recommended Practice for Calculating Short-Circuit Currents in Industrial and Commercial Power Systems; 2006.
- F. IEEE 1584 - IEEE Guide for Performing Arc-Flash Hazard Calculations; 2018, with Errata (2019).
- G. NEMA MG 1 - Motors and Generators; 2021.
- H. NETA ATS - Standard For Acceptance Testing Specifications For Electrical Power Equipment And Systems; 2021.
- I. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- J. NFPA 70E - Standard for Electrical Safety in the Workplace; 2024.

**1.03 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Existing Installations: Coordinate with equipment manufacturer(s) to obtain data necessary for completion of studies.
  - 2. Coordinate the work to provide equipment and associated protective devices complying with criteria for selection and adjustment, as determined by studies to be performed.
  - 3. Notify Engineer of any conflicts with or deviations from Contract Documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.
- B. Sequencing:
  - 1. Verify naming convention for equipment identification prior to creation of final drawings, reports, and arc flash hazard warning labels (where applicable).

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Study preparer's qualifications.
- C. Study reports, stamped or sealed and signed by a Professional Engineer.

- D. Product Data: In addition to submittal requirements specified in other sections, include manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for equipment and protective devices indicating information relevant to studies.
  - 1. Include characteristic time-current trip curves for protective devices.
  - 2. Include impedance data for busway.
  - 3. Include impedance data for engine generators.
  - 4. Clearly indicate whether proposed short circuit current ratings are fully rated or, where acceptable, series rated systems.
  - 5. Include documentation of listed series ratings upon request.
  - 6. Identify modifications made in accordance with studies that:
    - a. Can be made at no additional cost to Owner.
    - b. As submitted will involve a change to the contract sum.
- E. Arc Flash Hazard Warning Label Samples: One of each type and legend specified.
- F. Site-specific arc flash hazard warning labels.
- G. Field quality control reports.
- H. Certification that field adjustable protective devices have been set in accordance with requirements of studies.
- I. Project Record Documents: Revise studies as required to reflect as-built conditions.
  - 1. Include hard copies with operation and maintenance data submittals.
  - 2. Include computer software files used to prepare studies with file name(s) cross-referenced to specific pieces of equipment and systems.

#### **1.05 POWER SYSTEM STUDIES**

- A. Scope of Studies:
  - 1. Except where study descriptions below indicate exclusions, analyze system at each bus from primary protective devices of utility source down to each piece of equipment involved, including parts of system affecting calculations being performed (e.g. fault current contribution from motors).
  - 2. Include in analysis alternate sources and operating modes (including known future configurations) to determine worst case conditions.
    - a. Known Operating Modes:
      - 1) Utility as source.
      - 2) Generator as source.
      - 3) Bus tie breaker open/close positions.
- B. General Study Requirements:
  - 1. Comply with NFPA 70.
  - 2. Perform studies utilizing computer software complying with specified requirements; manual calculations are not permitted.
- C. Data Collection:
  - 1. Compile information on project-specific characteristics of actual installed equipment, protective devices, feeders, etc. as necessary to develop single-line diagram of electrical distribution system and associated input data for use in system modeling.
    - a. Utility Source Data: Include primary voltage, maximum and minimum three-phase and line-to-ground fault currents, impedance, X/R ratio, and primary protective device information.
      - 1) Obtain up-to-date information from Utility Company.
    - b. Generators: Include manufacturer/model, kW and voltage ratings, and impedance.
    - c. Motors: Include manufacturer/model, type (e.g. induction, synchronous), horsepower rating, voltage rating, full load amps, and locked rotor current or NEMA MG 1 code



- letter designation.
- d. Transformers: Include primary and secondary voltage ratings, kVA rating, winding configuration, percent impedance, and X/R ratio.
- e. Protective Devices:
  - 1) Circuit Breakers: Include manufacturer/model, type (e.g. thermal magnetic, electronic trip), frame size, trip rating, voltage rating, interrupting rating, available field-adjustable trip response settings, and features (e.g. zone selective interlocking).
  - 2) Fuses: Include manufacturer/model, type/class (e.g. Class J), size/rating, and speed (e.g. time delay, fast acting).
- f. Protective Relays: Include manufacturer/model, type, settings, current/potential transformer ratio, and associated protective device.
- g. Conductors: Include feeder size, material (e.g. copper, aluminum), insulation type, voltage rating, number per phase, raceway type, and actual length.
- 2. Existing Installations:
  - a. Collect data on existing electrical distribution system necessary for completion of studies, including field verification of available existing data (e.g. construction documents, previous studies). Include actual settings for field-adjustable devices.
- D. Short-Circuit Study:
  - 1. Comply with IEEE 551 and applicable portions of IEEE 141, IEEE 242, and IEEE 399.
  - 2. For purposes of determining equipment short circuit current ratings, consider conditions that may result in maximum available fault current, including but not limited to:
    - a. Maximum utility fault currents.
    - b. Maximum motor contribution.
    - c. Known operating modes (e.g. utility as source, generator as source, utility/generator in parallel, bus tie breaker open/close positions).
  - 3. For each bus location, calculate the maximum available three-phase bolted symmetrical and asymmetrical fault currents. For grounded systems, also calculate the maximum available line-to-ground bolted fault currents.
- E. Protective Device Coordination Study:
  - 1. Comply with applicable portions of IEEE 242 and IEEE 399.
  - 2. Analyze alternate scenarios considering known operating modes (e.g. utility as source, generator as source, utility/generator in parallel, bus tie breaker open/close positions).
  - 3. Analyze protective devices and associated settings for suitable margins between time-current curves to achieve full selective coordination while providing adequate protection for equipment and conductors.
- F. Arc Flash and Shock Risk Assessment:
  - 1. Comply with NFPA 70E.
  - 2. Perform incident energy and arc flash boundary calculations in accordance with IEEE 1584 (as referenced in NFPA 70E Annex D), where applicable.
  - 3. Calculate the arc-flash protection boundary and incident energy at the service, extend down to the system overcurrent protective devices as follows:
    - To normal system low-voltage load buses where fault current is 10kA or less.
    - To three phase motors per electrical one-line diagram.
  - 4. For equipment with main devices mounted in separate compartmentalized sections, perform calculations on both the line and load side of the main device.
  - 5. Analyze alternate scenarios considering conditions that may result in maximum incident energy, including but not limited to:
    - a. Maximum and minimum utility fault currents.
    - b. Maximum and minimum motor contribution.

- c. Known operating modes (e.g. utility as source, generator as source, utility/generator in parallel, bus tie breaker open/close positions).
- G. Study Reports:
- 1. General Requirements:
    - a. Identify date of study and study preparer.
    - b. Identify study methodology and software product(s) used.
    - c. Identify scope of studies, assumptions made, implications of possible alternate scenarios, and any exclusions from studies.
    - d. Identify base used for per unit values.
    - e. Include single-line diagram and associated input data used for studies; identify buses on single-line diagram as referenced in reports, and indicate bus voltage.
    - f. Include conclusions and recommendations.
  - 2. Short-Circuit Study:
    - a. For each scenario, identify at each bus location:
      - 1) Calculated maximum available symmetrical and asymmetrical fault currents (both three-phase and line-to-ground where applicable).
      - 2) Fault point X/R ratio.
      - 3) Associated equipment short circuit current ratings.
    - b. Identify locations where the available fault current exceeds the equipment short circuit current rating, along with recommendations.
  - 3. Protective Device Coordination Study:
    - a. For each scenario, include time-current coordination curves plotted on log-log scale graphs.
    - b. For each graph include (where applicable):
      - 1) Partial single-line diagram identifying the portion of the system illustrated.
      - 2) Protective Devices: Time-current curves with applicable tolerance bands for each protective device in series back to the source, plotted up to the maximum available fault current at the associated bus.
      - 3) Conductors: Damage curves.
      - 4) Transformers: Inrush points and damage curves.
      - 5) Generators: Full load current, overload curves, decrement curves, and short circuit withstand points.
      - 6) Motors: Full load current, starting curves, and damage curves.
      - 7) Capacitors: Full load current and damage curves.
    - c. For each protective device, identify fixed and adjustable characteristics with available ranges and recommended settings.
      - 1) Circuit Breakers: Include long time pickup and delay, short time pickup and delay, and instantaneous pickup.
      - 2) Include ground fault pickup and delay.
      - 3) Include fuse ratings.
      - 4) Protective Relays: Include current/potential transformer ratios, tap, time dial, and instantaneous pickup.
    - d. Identify cases where either full selective coordination or adequate protection is not achieved, along with recommendations.
  - 4. Arc Flash and Shock Risk Assessment:
    - a. For the worst case for each scenario, identify at each bus location:
      - 1) Calculated incident energy and associated working distance.
      - 2) Calculated arc flash boundary.
      - 3) Bolted fault current.
      - 4) Arcing fault current.
      - 5) Clearing time.

- 6) Arc gap distance.
- b. For purposes of producing arc flash hazard warning labels, summarize the maximum incident energy and associated data reflecting the worst case condition of all scenarios at each bus location.

### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Study Preparer Qualifications: Professional electrical engineer licensed in the State in which the Project is located and with minimum five years experience in the preparation of studies of similar type and complexity using specified computer software.
- B. Computer Software for Study Preparation: Use the latest edition of commercially available software utilizing specified methodologies.
  1. Acceptable Software Products:
    - a. EasyPower LLC.
    - b. ETAP/Operation Technology, Inc.
    - c. Power Analytics Corporation.
    - d. SKM Systems Analysis, Inc.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 ARC FLASH HAZARD WARNING LABELS**

- A. Provide warning labels complying with ANSI Z535.4 to identify arc flash hazards for each work location analyzed by the arc flash and shock risk assessment.
  1. Materials: Comply with Section 26 05 53.
  2. Minimum Size: 4 by 6 inches (100 by 150 mm).
  3. Legend: Provide custom legend in accordance with NFPA 70E based on equipment-specific data as determined by arc flash and shock risk assessment.
    - a. Include orange header that reads "WARNING" unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Include the following information:
      - 1) Arc flash boundary.
      - 2) Available incident energy and corresponding working distance.
      - 3) Site-specific PPE (personnel protective equipment) requirements.
      - 4) Nominal system voltage.
      - 5) Limited approach boundary.
      - 6) Restricted approach boundary.
      - 7) Equipment identification.
      - 8) Date calculations were performed.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Adjust equipment and protective devices for compliance with studies and recommended settings.
- C. Notify Engineer of any conflicts with or deviations from studies. Obtain direction before proceeding.
- D. Submit detailed reports indicating inspection and testing results, and final adjusted settings.

### **3.02 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES**

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for closeout submittals.
- B. See Section 01 79 00 - Demonstration and Training, for additional requirements.
- C. Training: Include as part of the base bid training for Owner's personnel on electrical safety pertaining to arc flash and shock hazards.

SBLM Architects  
Project No: 023569.00

1. Use site-specific arc flash and shock risk assessment report as training reference, supplemented with additional training materials as required.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 08 00  
COMMISSIONING OF ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS**

**PART 1 – GENERAL**

**1.1 SUMMARY**

- A. This Section includes commissioning process requirements for Electrical systems, assemblies, and equipment.
- B. This project will have selected building systems commissioned. The equipment and systems to be commissioned are specified in "SECTION 01 91 13 - GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS".

**1.2 RELATED SECTIONS**

- A. SECTION 01 91 13 - GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS
- B. SECTION 22 08 00 – COMMISSIONING OF PLUMBING SYSTEMS
- C. SECTION 23 08 00 – COMMISSIONING OF HVAC SYSTEMS
- D. SECTION 28 08 00 – COMMISSIONING OF FIRE ALARM SYSTEMS

**1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Refer to section 01 91 13 - GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS

**1.4 SUBMITTALS**

- A. Certificate Of Readiness, signed by the Contractor, certifying that systems, assemblies, equipment, components, and associated controls are ready for testing.
- B. Manufacturer's completed start-up reports for equipment and systems.

**1.5 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES**

- A. Reference Project Specification Section 01 91 13 - GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS for details of Electrical contractor's responsibilities related to commissioning.
- B. Attend commissioning meetings.
- C. Complete and return any commissioning checklists prior to functional testing.
- D. Provide information requested by the CxA for functional testing and for final commissioning documentation.
- E. Provide measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data, and provide data acquisition equipment to record data for the complete range of testing for the required test period.
- F. Functional testing of systems will be carried out solely by Electrical contractor's personnel, under the direction of CxA. Provide experienced personnel, familiar with the systems being installed under this project.

- G. Provide all personnel, tools, materials, and equipment to support the commissioning process. Facilitate the coordination of the commissioning work with the CxP and incorporate commissioning activities into the master construction schedule.
- H. Incorporate all commissioning related activities into the construction schedule, ensuring that activities do not delay construction/project completion.
- I. Notify the Owner's Representative and the CxP in writing that equipment and system are ready for functional testing.
- J. Perform equipment startups using authorized manufacturing representatives.
- K. Provide written documentation to the CxP that equipment and system are fully operational and ready to be functionally performance tested.
- L. Perform commissioning tests at the direction of the CxP.
- M. Attend construction phase commissioning coordination meetings.
- N. Provide qualified personnel for participation in commissioning tests.
- O. Provide equipment, materials, and labor necessary to correct deficiencies found during the commissioning process.
- P. Participate in plumbing systems, assemblies, equipment, and component maintenance orientations and inspections as directed by the CxP.
- Q. Provide information requested by the CxP for commissioning documentation and testing.
- R. Perform all quality control functions to ensure equipment and system are installed properly. Ensure equipment and systems are brought to a state of readiness and full functionality prior to commencing the commissioning functional performance testing process.
- S. Provide qualified and owner approved representative to attend end of warranty testing.

## **1.6 CxA'S RESPONSIBILITIES**

- A. Reference Project Specification Section 01 91 13 - GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS.
- B. CxA will direct commissioning testing.

## **PART 2 – PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

## **PART 3 – EXECUTION**

### **3.1 GENERAL TESTING REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Equipment Testing and Acceptance Procedures: Testing requirements are specified in Division 26 Sections. Provide submittals, test data, inspector record, and certification to the CxA.

- B. Reference Project Specification Section 01 91 13 - GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS for detailed requirements of commissioning of Electrical systems.
- C. Perform commissioning tests at the direction of the CxA.
- D. Provide technicians, instrumentation, and tools to perform commissioning test at the direction of the CxA.
- E. Test all operating modes, interlocks, control responses, and responses to abnormal or emergency conditions, and verify proper response of building automation system controllers and sensors.
- F. Tests will be performed using design conditions whenever possible.

### **3.2 SYSTEM START-UP**

- A. Contractor is solely responsible for system start-up. CxA may, at his discretion, witness start up procedures, but will not perform any Functional Testing of systems until Contractor has completed start-up and resolved all operating deficiencies, and has so certified.

### **3.3 TESTING PREPARATION**

- A. Certify that Electrical systems, subsystems, and equipment have been installed, calibrated, and started and are operating according to the Contract Documents.
- B. Certify that Electrical instrumentation and control systems have been completed and calibrated, that they are operating according to the Contract Documents, and that pretest set points have been recorded.
- C. Set systems, subsystems, and equipment into operating mode to be tested (e.g., normal shutdown, normal auto position, normal manual position, unoccupied cycle, emergency power, and alarm conditions).
- D. Inspect and verify the position of each device and interlock identified on checklists.
- E. Check safety cutouts, alarms, and interlocks with life-safety systems during each mode of operation.

### **3.4 FUNCTIONAL TESTING**

- A. Reference Project Specification Section 01 91 13 - GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS for detailed requirements of commissioning of Electrical systems.
- B. Provide measuring instruments and logging devices to record test data as directed by the CxA.

### **3.5 DEFERRED TESTING**

- A. Initial commissioning will be done as soon as contract work is completed, though building may not be at full occupancy and equipment may not be at full loading.
- B. If adequate load may be artificially placed upon heating or cooling equipment, CxA, at his discretion, may perform functional testing during non-peak load periods. If testing cannot be

carried out under these conditions to adequately verify system performance, testing will be deferred until such time as conditions are more satisfactory.

1. Contractor is to provide services of personnel and participate in deferred or seasonal testing process in the same manner as he would in non-seasonal testing.
2. If tests cannot be completed because of a deficiency outside the scope of the Electrical system, document the deficiency and report it to the Owner. After deficiencies are resolved, reschedule tests.

### **3.6 RE-TESTING**

- A. Reference Project Specification Section 01 91 13 - GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS for detailed requirements of re-testing of Electrical systems.

### **3.7 SYSTEMS TO BE COMMISSIONED**

- A. Reference Project Specification Section 01 91 13 - GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS for list of Electrical systems to be commissioned.

**END OF SECTION**



**SECTION 26 09 23  
LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Occupancy sensors.
- B. Outdoor motion sensors.
- C. Time switches.
- D. Outdoor photo controls.
- E. Daylighting controls.
- F. Lighting contactors.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- B. Section 26 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems
- C. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- D. Section 26 27 26 - Wiring Devices: Devices for manual control of lighting, including wall switches, wall dimmers, and fan speed controllers.
  - 1. Includes finish requirements for wall controls specified in this section.
- E. Section 26 51 00 - Interior Lighting.
- F. Section 26 56 00 - Exterior Lighting.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2015.
- B. NECA 130 - Standard for Installing and Maintaining Wiring Devices; 2016.
- C. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); 2020.
- D. NEMA 410 - Performance Testing for Lighting Controls and Switching Devices with Electronic Drivers and Discharge Ballasts; 2023.
- E. NEMA ICS 2 - Industrial Control and Systems Controllers, Contactors and Overload Relays Rated 600 Volts; 2008 (Reaffirmed 2020).
- F. NEMA ICS 6 - Industrial Control and Systems: Enclosures; 1993 (Reaffirmed 2016).
- G. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- H. UL 916 - Energy Management Equipment; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- I. UL 917 - Clock-Operated Switches; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- J. UL 1472 - Solid-State Dimming Controls; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- K. UL 60947-1 - Low-Voltage Switchgear and Controlgear - Part 1: General Rules; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- L. UL 60947-4-1 - Low-Voltage Switchgear and Controlgear - Part 4-1: Contactors and Motor-starters - Electromechanical Contactors and Motor-starters; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

**1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination:

1. Coordinate the placement of lighting control devices with millwork, furniture, equipment, etc. installed under other sections.
2. Coordinate the placement of wall switch occupancy sensors with actual installed door swings.
3. Coordinate the placement of occupancy sensors with millwork, furniture, equipment or other potential obstructions to motion detection coverage installed under other sections.
4. Coordinate the placement of photo sensors for daylighting controls with windows, skylights, and luminaires to achieve optimum operation. Coordinate placement with ductwork, piping, equipment, or other potential obstructions to light level measurement installed under other sections.
5. Notify Architect of any conflicts or deviations from Contract Documents to obtain direction prior to proceeding with work.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Include ratings, configurations, standard wiring diagrams, dimensions, colors, service condition requirements, and installed features.
  1. Occupancy Sensors: Include detailed motion detection coverage range diagrams.
- C. Shop Drawings:
  1. Occupancy Sensors: Provide lighting plan indicating location, model number, and orientation of each occupancy sensor and associated system component.
  2. Daylighting Controls: Provide lighting plan indicating location, model number, and orientation of each photo sensor and associated system component.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include detailed information on device programming and setup.
- E. Project Record Documents: Record actual installed locations and settings for lighting control devices.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Maintain at the project site a copy of each referenced document that prescribes execution requirements.
- C. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- D. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

#### **1.07 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Provide five year manufacturer warranty for all occupancy sensors.
- C. Provide two year manufacturer warranty for all daylighting controls.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- B. Unless specifically indicated to be excluded, provide all required conduit, wiring, connectors, hardware, components, accessories, etc. as required for a complete operating system.

## 2.02 OCCUPANCY SENSORS

- A. Acceptable manufacturers as below, no substitutions is allowed.
  - 1. nLight by Acuity Brands.
  - 2. Nextlight.
  - 3. Echoflex.
- B. All Occupancy Sensors:
  - 1. Description: Factory-assembled commercial specification grade devices for indoor use capable of sensing both major motion, such as walking, and minor motion, such as small desktop level movements, according to published coverage areas, for automatic control of load indicated.
  - 2. Sensor Technology:
    - a. Passive Infrared (PIR) Occupancy Sensors: Designed to detect occupancy by sensing movement of thermal energy between zones.
    - b. Ultrasonic Occupancy Sensors: Designed to detect occupancy by sensing frequency shifts in emitted and reflected inaudible sound waves.
    - c. Passive Infrared/Ultrasonic Dual Technology Occupancy Sensors: Designed to detect occupancy using a combination of both passive infrared and ultrasonic technologies.
    - d. Passive Infrared/Acoustic Dual Technology Occupancy Sensors: Designed to detect occupancy using a combination of both passive infrared and audible sound sensing technologies.
  - 3. Provide LED to visually indicate motion detection with separate color LEDs for each sensor type in dual technology units.
  - 4. Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, occupancy sensor to turn load on when occupant presence is detected and to turn load off when no occupant presence is detected during an adjustable turn-off delay time interval.
  - 5. Dual Technology Occupancy Sensors: Field configurable turn-on and hold-on activation with settings for activation by either or both sensing technologies.
  - 6. Turn-Off Delay: Field adjustable, with time delay settings up to 30 minutes.
  - 7. Compatibility (Non-Dimming Sensors): Suitable for controlling incandescent lighting, low-voltage lighting with electronic and magnetic transformers, fluorescent lighting with electronic and magnetic ballasts, and fractional motor loads, with no minimum load requirements.
- C. Wall Switch Occupancy Sensors:
  - 1. All Wall Switch Occupancy Sensors:
    - a. Description: Occupancy sensors designed for installation in standard wall box at standard wall switch mounting height with a field of view of 180 degrees, integrated manual control capability, and no leakage current to load in off mode.
    - b. Unless otherwise indicated or required to control the load indicated on drawings, provide line voltage units with self-contained relay.
    - c. Where indicated, provide two-circuit units for control of two separate lighting loads, with separate manual controls and separately programmable operation for each load.
    - d. Operation: Field selectable to operate either as occupancy sensor (automatic on/off) or as vacancy sensor (manual-on/automatic off).
    - e. Manual-Off Override Control: When used to turn off load while in automatic-on mode, unit to revert back to automatic mode after no occupant presence is detected during the delayed-off time interval.
    - f. Finish: Match finishes specified for wiring devices in Section 26 27 26, unless otherwise indicated.

2. Passive Infrared/Ultrasonic Dual Technology Wall Switch Occupancy Sensors: Capable of detecting motion within an area of 900 square feet (83.6 sq m).
- D. Wall Dimmer Occupancy Sensors:
  1. General Requirements:
    - a. Description: Occupancy sensors designed for installation in standard wall box at standard wall switch mounting height with a field of view of 180 degrees, integrated dimming control capability , and no leakage current to load in off mode, dual technology type.
    - b. Operation: Field selectable to operate either as occupancy sensor (automatic on/off) or as vacancy sensor (manual-on/automatic off).
    - c. Dimmer: Solid-state with continuous full-range even control following square law dimming curve, integral radio frequency interference filtering, power failure preset memory, air gap switch accessible without removing wall plate, and listed as complying with UL 1472; type and rating suitable for load controlled.
    - d. Finish: Match finishes specified for wiring devices in Section 26 27 26, unless otherwise indicated.
  - E. Ceiling Mounted Occupancy Sensors:
    1. All Ceiling Mounted Occupancy Sensors:
      - a. Description: Low profile occupancy sensors designed for ceiling installation.
    2. Passive Infrared/Ultrasonic Dual Technology Ceiling Mounted Occupancy Sensors:
      - a. Standard Range Sensors: Capable of detecting motion within an area of 450 square feet (41.8 sq m) at a mounting height of 9 feet (2.7 m), with a field of view of 360 degrees.
      - b. Extended Range Sensors: Capable of detecting motion within an area of 1,200 square feet (111.5 sq m) at a mounting height of 9 feet (2.7 m), with a field of view of 360 degrees.
    3. Passive Infrared/Acoustic Dual Technology Ceiling Mounted Occupancy Sensors:
      - a. Standard Range Sensors: Capable of detecting motion within an area of 450 square feet (41.8 sq m) at a mounting height of 9 feet (2.7 m), with a field of view of 360 degrees.
      - b. Extended Range Sensors: Capable of detecting motion within an area of 1,200 square feet (111.5 sq m) at a mounting height of 9 feet (2.7 m).
  - F. Power Packs for Low Voltage Occupancy Sensors:
    1. Description: Plenum rated, self-contained low voltage class 2 transformer and relay compatible with specified low voltage occupancy sensors for switching of line voltage loads.
    2. Provide quantity and configuration of power and slave packs with all associated wiring and accessories as required to control the load indicated on drawings.
    3. Input Supply Voltage: Dual rated for 120/277 V ac.
    4. Load Rating: As required to control the load indicated on drawings.

### **2.03 OUTDOOR MOTION SENSORS**

- A. Acceptable manufacturers as below, no substitutions is allowed.
  1. nLight by Acuity.
  2. Nextlight.
  3. Echoflex.
- B. Description: Factory-assembled wet location listed device suitable for wall or ceiling/eave mounting, with integral swivel for field adjustment of coverage, capable of detecting motion for automatic control of load indicated.

- C. Sensor Technology: Passive Infrared (PIR) designed to detect occupancy by sensing movement of thermal energy between zones.
- D. Operation: Unless otherwise indicated, motion sensor to turn load on when motion is detected and to turn load off when no motion is detected during an adjustable turn-off delay time interval.
- E. Turn-Off Delay: Field adjustable, with time delay settings available up to 15 minutes.
- F. Integral Photocell: For dusk to dawn operation.
- G. Manual Override: Activated by switching power off to unit and then back on.
- H. Load Rating: 1,000 W incandescent and fluorescent load at 120 V ac.
- I. Coverage: Capable of detecting motion within a distance of 50 feet (15 m) at a mounting height of 8 feet (2.4 m), with a field of view of 270 degrees.

#### **2.04 TIME SWITCHES**

- A. Acceptable manufacturers as below, no substitutions is allowed.
  - 1. nLight by Acuity.
  - 2. Nextlight
  - 3. Echoflex.
- B. Digital Electronic Time Switches:
  - 1. Description: Factory-assembled solid state programmable controller with LCD display, listed and labeled as complying with UL 916 or UL 917.
  - 2. Program Capability:
    - a. 24-Hour Time Switches: Single channel, with same schedule for each day of the week and skip-a-day feature to omit selected days.
    - b. 7-Day Time Switches: Single channel, capable of different schedule for each day of the week with additional holiday schedule available to override normal schedule for selected days.
    - c. Astronomic Time Switches: Single channel, capable of different schedule for each day of the week with additional holiday schedule available to override normal schedule for selected days and field-configurable astronomic feature to automatically adjust for seasonal changes in sunrise and sunset times.
  - 3. Schedule Capacity: Not less than 16 programmable on/off operations.
  - 4. Provide automatic daylight savings time and leap year compensation.
  - 5. Provide power outage backup to retain programming and maintain clock.
  - 6. Manual override: Capable of overriding current schedule both permanently and temporarily until next scheduled event.
  - 7. Input Supply Voltage: As indicated on the drawings.
  - 8. Provide lockable enclosure; environmental type per NEMA 250 as specified for the following installation locations:
    - a. Indoor clean, dry locations: Type 1.
    - b. Outdoor locations: Type 3R.

#### **2.05 OUTDOOR PHOTO CONTROLS**

- A. Acceptable manufacturers as below, no substitutions is allowed.
  - 1. nLight by Acuity.
  - 2. Nextlight.
  - 3. Echoflex.

#### **2.06 DAYLIGHTING CONTROLS**

- A. Acceptable manufacturers as below, no substitutions is allowed.
  - 1. nLight by Acuity.
  - 2. Nextlight.

3. Echoflex.
- B. System Description: Control system consisting of photo sensors and compatible control modules and power packs, contactors, or relays as required for automatic control of load indicated according to available natural light; capable of integrating with occupancy sensors and manual override controls.
- C. Daylighting Control Photo Sensors: Low voltage class 2 photo sensor units with output signal proportional to the measured light level and provision for zero or offset based signal.
  1. Sensor Type: Filtered silicon photo diode.
  2. Sensor Range:
    - a. Indoor Photo Sensors: 5 to 100 footcandles (53.8 to 1,080 lx).
    - b. Outdoor Photo Sensors: 5 to 250 footcandles (53.8 to 2690 lx).
    - c. Atrium Photo Sensors: 200 to 2,500 footcandles (2150 to 2,6910 lx).
    - d. Skylight Photo Sensors: 1,000 to 6,000 footcandles (10,760 to 64,580 lx).
    - e. Open Loop Photo Sensors: 3 to 6,000 footcandles (32.3 to 64,580 lx).
  3. Finish: White unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Power Packs for Low Voltage Daylighting Control Modules:
  1. Description: Plenum rated, self-contained low voltage class 2 transformer and relay compatible with specified low voltage daylighting control modules for switching of line voltage loads. Provide quantity and configuration of power and slave packs with all associated wiring and accessories as required to control the load indicated on drawings.
  2. Input Supply Voltage: Dual rated for 120/277 V ac.
  3. Load Ratings: As required to control the load indicated on drawings.

## 2.07 LIGHTING CONTACTORS

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. ABB/GE
  2. Eaton Corporation.
  3. Schneider Electric; Square D Products.
- B. Description: Magnetic lighting contactors complying with NEMA ICS 2, and listed and labeled as complying with UL 60947-1 and UL 60947-4-1; noncombination type unless otherwise indicated; ratings, configurations and features as indicated on the drawings.
- C. Short Circuit Current Rating:
  1. Provide contactors with listed short circuit current rating not less than the available fault current at the installed location as indicated on the drawings.
- D. Enclosures:
  1. Comply with NEMA ICS 6.
  2. Environment Type per NEMA 250: Unless otherwise indicated, as specified for the following installation locations:
    - a. Indoor Clean, Dry Locations: Type 1 or Type 12.
    - b. Outdoor Locations: Type 3R or Type 4.
  3. Finish: Manufacturer's standard unless otherwise indicated.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.01 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- B. Verify that outlet boxes are installed in proper locations and at proper mounting heights and are properly sized to accommodate devices and conductors in accordance with NFPA 70.
- C. Verify that openings for outlet boxes are neatly cut and will be completely covered by devices or wall plates.

- D. Verify that final surface finishes are complete, including painting.
- E. Verify that branch circuit wiring installation is completed, tested, and ready for connection to lighting control devices.
- F. Verify that the service voltage and ratings of lighting control devices are appropriate for the service voltage and load requirements at the location to be installed.
- G. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install lighting control devices in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship) and, where applicable, NECA 130, including mounting heights specified in those standards unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Coordinate locations of outlet boxes provided under Section 26 05 33.16 as required for installation of lighting control devices provided under this section.
- C. Install lighting control devices in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Unless otherwise indicated, connect lighting control device grounding terminal or conductor to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor and to outlet box with bonding jumper.
- E. Install lighting control devices plumb and level, and held securely in place.
- F. Where required and not furnished with lighting control device, provide wall plate in accordance with Section 26 27 26.
- G. Provide required supports in accordance with Section 26 05 29.
- H. Where applicable, install lighting control devices and associated wall plates to fit completely flush to mounting surface with no gaps and rough opening completely covered without strain on wall plate. Repair or reinstall improperly installed outlet boxes or improperly sized rough openings. Do not use oversized wall plates in lieu of meeting this requirement.
- I. Occupancy Sensor Locations:
  - 1. Location Adjustments: Locations indicated are diagrammatic and only intended to indicate which rooms or areas require devices. Provide quantity and locations as required for complete coverage of respective room or area based on manufacturer's recommendations for installed devices.
  - 2. Locate ultrasonic and dual technology passive infrared/ultrasonic occupancy sensors a minimum of 4 feet (1.2 m) from air supply ducts or other sources of heavy air flow and as per manufacturer's recommendations, in order to minimize false triggers.
- J. Outdoor Photo Control Locations:
  - 1. Where possible, locate outdoor photo controls with photo sensor facing north. If north facing photo sensor is not possible, install with photo sensor facing east, west, or down.
  - 2. Locate outdoor photo controls so that photo sensors do not face artificial light sources, including light sources controlled by the photo control itself.
- K. Install outdoor photo controls so that connections are weatherproof. Do not install photo controls with conduit stem facing up in order to prevent infiltration of water into the photo control.
- L. Daylighting Control Photo Sensor Locations:
  - 1. Location Adjustments: Locations indicated are diagrammatic and only intended to indicate which rooms or areas require devices. Provide quantity and locations as required for proper control of respective room or area based on manufacturer's recommendations for installed devices.
  - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, locate photo sensors for closed loop systems to accurately measure the light level controlled at the designated task location, while minimizing the

measured amount of direct light from natural or artificial sources such as windows or pendant luminaires.

3. Unless otherwise indicated, locate photo sensors for open loop systems to accurately measure the level of daylight coming into the space, while minimizing the measured amount of lighting from artificial sources.
- M. Unless otherwise indicated, install switches on load side of power packs so that switch does not turn off power pack.

### **3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Inspect each lighting control device for damage and defects.
- C. Test occupancy sensors to verify proper operation, including time delays and ambient light thresholds where applicable. Verify optimal coverage for entire room or area. Record test results in written report to be included with submittals.
- D. Test time switches to verify proper operation.
- E. Test outdoor photo controls to verify proper operation, including time delays where applicable.
- F. Test daylighting controls to verify proper operation, including light level measurements and time delays where applicable. Record test results in written report to be included with submittals.
- G. Correct wiring deficiencies and replace damaged or defective lighting control devices.

### **3.04 ADJUSTING**

- A. Adjust devices and wall plates to be flush and level.
- B. Adjust occupancy sensor settings to minimize undesired activations while optimizing energy savings, and to achieve desired function as indicated or as directed by Architect.
- C. Adjust position of directional occupancy sensors and outdoor motion sensors to achieve optimal coverage as required.
- D. Where indicated or as directed by Architect, install factory masking material or adjust integral blinders on passive infrared (PIR) and dual technology occupancy sensor lenses to block undesired motion detection.
- E. Adjust time switch settings to achieve desired operation schedule as indicated or as directed by Architect. Record settings in written report to be included with submittals.
- F. Adjust daylighting controls under optimum lighting conditions after all room finishes, furniture, and window treatments have been installed to achieve desired operation as indicated or as directed by Architect. Record settings in written report to be included with submittals. Readjust controls calibrated prior to installation of final room finishes, furniture, and window treatments that do not function properly as determined by Architect.

### **3.05 COMMISSIONING**

- A. See Section 01 91 13 - General Commissioning Requirements for commissioning requirements.

### **3.06 CLOSEOUT ACTIVITIES**

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for closeout submittals.
- B. See Section 01 79 00 - Demonstration and Training, for additional requirements.
- C. Demonstration: Demonstrate proper operation of lighting control devices to Architect, and correct deficiencies or make adjustments as directed.
- D. Training: Train Owner's personnel on operation, adjustment, programming, and maintenance of lighting control devices.



SBLM Architects  
Project No: 023569.00

1. Use operation and maintenance manual as training reference, supplemented with additional training materials as required.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 27 26  
WIRING DEVICES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Wall switches.
- B. Wall dimmers.
- C. Receptacles.
- D. Wall plates.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 26 05 19 - Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables: Manufactured wiring systems for use with access floor boxes with compatible pre-wired connectors.
- B. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- C. Section 26 05 33.16 - Boxes for Electrical Systems.
- D. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- E. Section 26 05 83 - Wiring Connections: Cords and plugs for equipment.
- F. Section 26 09 23 - Lighting Control Devices: Devices for automatic control of lighting, including occupancy sensors, in-wall time switches, and in-wall interval timers.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. FS W-C-596 - Connector, Electrical, Power, General Specification for; 2014h (Validated 2022).
- B. FS W-S-896 - Switches, Toggle (Toggle and Lock), Flush Mounted (General Specification); 2017g, with Amendment.
- C. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2015.
- D. NECA 130 - Standard for Installing and Maintaining Wiring Devices; 2016.
- E. NEMA WD 1 - General Color Requirements for Wiring Devices; 1999 (Reaffirmed 2020).
- F. NEMA WD 6 - Wiring Devices - Dimensional Specifications; 2016.
- G. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- H. UL 20 - General-Use Snap Switches; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- I. UL 498 - Attachment Plugs and Receptacles; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- J. UL 514D - Cover Plates for Flush-Mounted Wiring Devices; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- K. UL 943 - Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupters; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- L. UL 1449 - Standard for Surge Protective Devices; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- M. UL 1472 - Solid-State Dimming Controls; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

**1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate the placement of outlet boxes with millwork, furniture, equipment, etc. installed under other sections or by others.
  - 2. Coordinate wiring device ratings and configurations with the electrical requirements of actual equipment to be installed.

3. Coordinate the installation and preparation of uneven surfaces, such as split face block, to provide suitable surface for installation of wiring devices.
4. Notify Architect of any conflicts or deviations from Contract Documents to obtain direction prior to proceeding with work.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's catalog information showing dimensions, colors, and configurations.
  1. Wall Dimmers: Include derating information for ganged multiple devices.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of product.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data:
  1. Wall Dimmers: Include information on operation and setting of presets.
  2. GFCI Receptacles: Include information on status indicators.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Maintain at the project site a copy of each referenced document that prescribes execution requirements.
- C. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- D. Products: Listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- E. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 WIRING DEVICE APPLICATIONS**

- A. Provide wiring devices suitable for intended use and with ratings adequate for load served.
- B. For single receptacles installed on an individual branch circuit, provide receptacle with ampere rating not less than that of the branch circuit.
- C. Provide weather resistant GFCI receptacles with specified weatherproof covers for receptacles installed outdoors or in damp or wet locations.
- D. Provide GFCI protection for receptacles installed within 6 feet (1.8 m) of sinks.
- E. Provide GFCI protection for receptacles installed in kitchens.
- F. Provide GFCI protection for receptacles serving electric drinking fountains.
- G. Unless noted otherwise, do not use combination switch/receptacle devices.

#### **2.02 WIRING DEVICE FINISHES**

- A. Provide wiring device finishes as described below unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Wiring Devices, Unless Otherwise Indicated: brushed stainless steel.
- C. Wiring Devices Connected to Emergency Power: Red with stainless steel wall plate factory engraved "Emergency".
- D. Flush Floor Box Service Fittings: Gray wiring devices with aluminum cover and ring/flange.

### 2.03 WALL SWITCHES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Hubbell Incorporated: ww
  - 2. Leviton Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - 3. Pass & Seymour, a brand of Legrand North America, Inc.
- B. Wall Switches - General Requirements: AC only, quiet operating, general-use snap switches with silver alloy contacts, complying with NEMA WD 1 and NEMA WD 6, and listed as complying with UL 20 and where applicable, FS W-S-896; types as indicated on the drawings.
  - 1. Wiring Provisions: Terminal screws for side wiring and screw actuated binding clamp for back wiring with separate ground terminal screw.
- C. Standard Wall Switches: Industrial specification grade, 20 A, 120/277 V with standard toggle type switch actuator and maintained contacts; single pole single throw, double pole single throw, three way, or four way as indicated on the drawings.

### 2.04 WALL DIMMERS

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Leviton Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - 2. Lutron Electronics Company, Inc.
  - 3. Pass & Seymour, a brand of Legrand North America, Inc.
- B. Wall Dimmers - General Requirements: Solid-state with continuous full-range even control following square law dimming curve, integral radio frequency interference filtering, power failure preset memory, air gap switch accessible without removing wall plate, complying with NEMA WD 1 and NEMA WD 6, and listed as complying with UL 1472; types and ratings suitable for load controlled as indicated on the drawings.
- C. Control: Slide control type with separate on/off switch.

### 2.05 RECEPTACLES

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Hubbell Incorporated.
  - 2. Leviton Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  - 3. Lutron Electronics Company, Inc.
  - 4. Pass & Seymour, a brand of Legrand North America, Inc.
- B. Receptacles - General Requirements: Self-grounding, complying with NEMA WD 1 and NEMA WD 6, and listed as complying with UL 498, and where applicable, FS W-C-596; types as indicated on the drawings.
  - 1. Wiring Provisions: Terminal screws for side wiring or screw actuated binding clamp for back wiring with separate ground terminal screw.
  - 2. NEMA configurations specified are according to NEMA WD 6.
- C. Convenience Receptacles:
  - 1. Standard Convenience Receptacles: Commercial specification grade, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R; single or duplex as indicated on the drawings.
  - 2. Weather Resistant Convenience Receptacles: Commercial specification grade, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, listed and labeled as weather resistant type complying with UL 498 Supplement SE suitable for installation in damp or wet locations; single or duplex as indicated on the drawings.
  - 3. Tamper Resistant Convenience Receptacles: Commercial specification grade, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, listed and labeled as tamper resistant type; single or duplex as indicated on the drawings.
  - 4. Tamper Resistant and Weather Resistant Convenience Receptacles: Commercial specification grade, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, listed and labeled as tamper resistant type

and as weather resistant type complying with UL 498 Supplement SE suitable for installation in damp or wet locations; single or duplex as indicated on the drawings.

- D. GFCI Receptacles:
1. GFCI Receptacles - General Requirements: Self-testing, with feed-through protection and light to indicate ground fault tripped condition and loss of protection; listed as complying with UL 943, class A.
    - a. Provide test and reset buttons of same color as device.
  2. Standard GFCI Receptacles: Industrial specification grade, duplex, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, rectangular decorator style.
  3. Weather Resistant GFCI Receptacles: Commercial specification grade, duplex, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, rectangular decorator style, listed and labeled as weather resistant type complying with UL 498 Supplement SE suitable for installation in damp or wet locations.
  4. Tamper Resistant GFCI Receptacles: Commercial specification grade, duplex, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, rectangular decorator style, listed and labeled as tamper resistant type.
  5. Tamper Resistant and Weather Resistant GFCI Receptacles: Commercial specification grade, duplex, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, rectangular decorator style, listed and labeled as tamper resistant type and as weather resistant type complying with UL 498 Supplement SE suitable for installation in damp or wet locations.
- E. Surge Protection Receptacles:
1. Surge Protection Receptacles - General Requirements: Listed and labeled as complying with UL 1449, Type 2 or 3.
    - a. Energy Dissipation: Not less than 240 J per mode.
    - b. Protected Modes: L-N, L-G, N-G.
    - c. UL 1449 Voltage Protection Rating (VPR): Not more than 700 V for L-N, L-G modes and 1200 V for N-G mode.
    - d. Diagnostics:
      - 1) Visual Notification: Provide indicator light to report functional status of surge protection.
      - 2) Audible Notification: Provide switchable audible alarm to report that surge protection is not functional.
  2. Standard Surge Protection Receptacles: , duplex, 20A, 125V, NEMA 5-20R, rectangular decorator style.

## 2.06 WALL PLATES

- A. Manufacturers:
1. Hubbell Incorporated.
  2. Leviton Manufacturing Company, Inc.
  3. Lutron Electronics Company, Inc.
  4. Pass & Seymour, a brand of Legrand North America, Inc.
- B. Wall Plates: Comply with UL 514D.
1. Configuration: One piece cover as required for quantity and types of corresponding wiring devices.
  2. Size: Standard.
  3. Screws: Metal with slotted heads finished to match wall plate finish.
- C. Stainless Steel Wall Plates: Brushed satin finish, Type 302 stainless steel.
- D. Weatherproof Covers for Damp Locations: Gasketed, cast aluminum, with self-closing hinged cover and corrosion-resistant screws; listed as suitable for use in wet locations with cover closed.

- E. Weatherproof Covers for Wet Locations: Gasketed, cast aluminum, with hinged lockable cover and corrosion-resistant screws; listed as suitable for use in wet locations while in use with attachment plugs connected and identified as extra-duty type.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- B. Verify that outlet boxes are installed in proper locations and at proper mounting heights and are properly sized to accommodate devices and conductors in accordance with NFPA 70.
- C. Verify that wall openings are neatly cut and will be completely covered by wall plates.
- D. Verify that final surface finishes are complete, including painting.
- E. Verify that branch circuit wiring installation is completed, tested, and ready for connection to wiring devices.
- F. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

#### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Perform work in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship) and, where applicable, NECA 130, including mounting heights specified in those standards unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Coordinate locations of outlet boxes provided under Section 26 05 33.16 as required for installation of wiring devices provided under this section.
  - 1. Mounting Heights: Unless otherwise indicated, as follows:
    - a. Wall Switches: 48 inches (1200 mm) above finished floor.
    - b. Wall Dimmers: 48 inches (1200 mm) above finished floor.
    - c. Receptacles: 18 inches (450 mm) above finished floor or 6 inches (150 mm) above counter.
  - 2. Orient outlet boxes for vertical installation of wiring devices unless otherwise indicated.
  - 3. Where multiple receptacles, wall switches, or wall dimmers are installed at the same location and at the same mounting height, gang devices together under a common wall plate.
  - 4. Locate wall switches on strike side of door with edge of wall plate 3 inches (80 mm) from edge of door frame. Where locations are indicated otherwise, notify Architect to obtain direction prior to proceeding with work.
  - 5. Locate receptacles for electric drinking fountains concealed behind drinking fountain according to manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Install wiring devices in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Install permanent barrier between ganged wiring devices when voltage between adjacent devices exceeds 300 V.
- E. Where required, connect wiring devices using pigtails not less than 6 inches (150 mm) long. Do not connect more than one conductor to wiring device terminals.
- F. Connect wiring devices by wrapping conductor clockwise 3/4 turn around screw terminal and tightening to proper torque specified by the manufacturer. Where present, do not use push-in pressure terminals that do not rely on screw-actuated binding.
- G. Unless otherwise indicated, connect wiring device grounding terminal to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor and to outlet box with bonding jumper.
- H. Provide GFCI receptacles with integral GFCI protection at each location indicated. Do not use feed-through wiring to protect downstream devices.
- I. Install wiring devices plumb and level with mounting yoke held rigidly in place.

- J. Install wall switches with OFF position down.
- K. Install wall dimmers to achieve full rating specified and indicated after derating for ganging as instructed by manufacturer.
- L. Do not share neutral conductor on branch circuits utilizing wall dimmers.
- M. Install vertically mounted receptacles with grounding pole on top and horizontally mounted receptacles with grounding pole on left.
- N. Install wall plates to fit completely flush to wall with no gaps and rough opening completely covered without strain on wall plate. Repair or reinstall improperly installed outlet boxes or improperly sized rough openings. Do not use oversized wall plates in lieu of meeting this requirement.
- O. Install blank wall plates on junction boxes and on outlet boxes with no wiring devices installed or designated for future use.
- P. Install poke-through closure plugs in each unused core holes to maintain fire rating of floor.

### **3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Inspect each wiring device for damage and defects.
- C. Operate each wall switch, wall dimmer, and fan speed controller with circuit energized to verify proper operation.
- D. Test each receptacle to verify operation and proper polarity.
- E. Test each GFCI receptacle for proper tripping operation according to manufacturer's instructions.
- F. Inspect each surge protection receptacle to verify surge protection is active.
- G. Correct wiring deficiencies and replace damaged or defective wiring devices.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 28 13  
FUSES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Fuses.
- B. Spare fuse cabinet.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- B. Section 26 24 13 - Switchboards: Fusible switches.
- C. Section 26 24 16 - Panelboards: Fusible switches.
- D. Section 26 28 16.16 - Enclosed Switches: Fusible switches.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. NEMA FU 1 - Low Voltage Cartridge Fuses; 2012.
- B. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- C. UL 248-1 - Low-Voltage Fuses - Part 1: General Requirements; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- D. UL 248-4 - Low-Voltage Fuses - Part 4: Class CC Fuses; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- E. UL 248-10 - Low-Voltage Fuses - Part 10: Class L Fuses; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- F. UL 248-12 - Low-Voltage Fuses - Part 12: Class R Fuses; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

**1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate fuse clips furnished in equipment provided under other sections for compatibility with indicated fuses.
  - 2. Coordinate fuse requirements according to manufacturer's recommendations and nameplate data for actual equipment to be installed.
  - 3. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from Contract Documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard data sheets including voltage and current ratings, interrupting ratings, time-current curves, and current limitation curves.
  - 1. Spare Fuse Cabinet: Include dimensions.
- C. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  - 1. See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
  - 2. Extra Fuses: One set(s) of three for each type and size installed.
  - 3. Fuse Pullers: One set(s) compatible with each type and size installed.
  - 4. Spare Fuse Cabinet Keys: Two.



## **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Bussmann, a division of Eaton Corporation.
- B. Littelfuse, Inc.
- C. Mersen.

### **2.02 APPLICATIONS**

- A. Service Entrance:
  - 1. Fusible Switches up to 600 Amperes: Class RK1, time-delay.
  - 2. Fusible Switches Larger Than 600 Amperes: Class L, time-delay.
- B. Feeders:
  - 1. Fusible Switches up to 600 Amperes: Class RK1, time-delay.
  - 2. Fusible Switches Larger Than 600 Amperes: Class L, time-delay.
- C. General Purpose Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time-delay.
- D. Individual Motor Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time-delay.
- E. In-Line Protection for Pole-Mounted Luminaires: Class CC, time-delay.
- F. Primary Protection for Control Transformers: Class CC, time-delay.

### **2.03 FUSES**

- A. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- B. Unless specifically indicated to be excluded, provide fuses for all fusible equipment as required for a complete operating system.
- C. Provide fuses of the same type, rating, and manufacturer within the same switch.
- D. Comply with UL 248-1.
- E. Unless otherwise indicated, provide cartridge type fuses complying with NEMA FU 1, Class and ratings as indicated.
- F. Voltage Rating: Suitable for circuit voltage.
- G. Class R Fuses: Comply with UL 248-12.
- H. Class L Fuses: Comply with UL 248-10.
- I. Class CC Fuses: Comply with UL 248-4.

### **2.04 SPARE FUSE CABINET**

- A. Description: Wall-mounted sheet metal cabinet with shelves and hinged door with cylinder lock, suitably sized to store spare fuses and fuse pullers specified.
- B. Finish: Manufacturer's standard, factory applied grey finish unless otherwise indicated.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Do not install fuses until circuits are ready to be energized.
- B. Install fuses with label oriented such that manufacturer, type, and size are easily read.

SBLM Architects  
Project No: 023569.00

C. Install spare fuse cabinet where indicated.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 28 16.13  
ENCLOSED CIRCUIT BREAKERS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Enclosed circuit breakers.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- B. Section 26 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems.
- C. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. FS W-C-375 - Circuit Breakers, Molded Case; Branch Circuit and Service; 2013e, with Amendments (2022).
- B. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2015.
- C. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); 2020.
- D. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- E. UL 50 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Non-Environmental Considerations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- F. UL 50E - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Environmental Considerations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- G. UL 489 - Molded-Case Circuit Breakers, Molded-Case Switches and Circuit Breaker Enclosures; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- H. UL 869A - Reference Standard for Service Equipment; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- I. UL 1053 - Ground-Fault Sensing and Relaying Equipment; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

**1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate work with other trades. Avoid placement of ductwork, piping, equipment, or other potential obstructions within dedicated equipment spaces and within working clearances for electrical equipment required by NFPA 70.
  - 2. Coordinate arrangement of electrical equipment with the dimensions and clearance requirements of the actual equipment to be installed.
  - 3. Coordinate the work with other trades to provide walls suitable for installation of flush-mounted enclosed circuit breakers where indicated.
  - 4. Verify with manufacturer that conductor terminations are suitable for use with the conductors to be installed.
  - 5. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from Contract Documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for circuit breakers, enclosures, and other installed components and accessories.
  - 1. Include characteristic trip curves for each type and rating of circuit breaker upon request.

- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate outline and support point dimensions, voltage and current ratings, short circuit current ratings, conduit entry locations, conductor terminal information, and installed features and accessories.
  - 1. Include dimensioned plan and elevation views of enclosed circuit breakers and adjacent equipment with all required clearances indicated.
  - 2. Include wiring diagrams showing all factory and field connections.
  - 3. Clearly indicate whether proposed short circuit current ratings are fully rated or, where acceptable, series rated systems.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Maintain at the project site a copy of each referenced document that prescribes execution requirements.
- C. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. ABB/GE.
- B. Eaton Corporation.
- C. Schneider Electric; Square D Products.
- D. Source Limitations: Furnish enclosed circuit breakers and associated components produced by the same manufacturer as the other electrical distribution equipment used for this project and obtained from a single supplier.

#### **2.02 ENCLOSED CIRCUIT BREAKERS**

- A. Description: Units consisting of molded case circuit breakers individually mounted in enclosures.
- B. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- C. Unless otherwise indicated, provide products suitable for continuous operation under the following service conditions:
  - 1. Altitude: Less than 6,600 feet (2,000 m).
  - 2. Ambient Temperature: Between 23 degrees F (-5 degrees C) and 104 degrees F (40 degrees C).
- D. Short Circuit Current Rating:
  - 1. Provide enclosed circuit breakers with listed short circuit current rating not less than the available fault current at the installed location indicated on the drawings.
- E. Enclosed Circuit Breakers Used for Service Entrance: Listed and labeled as suitable for use as service equipment according to UL 869A.
- F. Conductor Terminations: Suitable for use with the conductors to be installed.
- G. Provide thermal magnetic circuit breakers unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Provide electronic trip circuit breakers where indicated.
- I. Provide insulated, groundable fully rated solid neutral assembly where a neutral connection is required, with a suitable lug for terminating each neutral conductor.
- J. Provide solidly bonded equipment ground bus in each enclosed circuit breaker, with a suitable lug for terminating each equipment grounding conductor.
- K. Enclosures: Comply with NEMA 250, and list and label as complying with UL 50 and UL 50E.

1. Environment Type per NEMA 250: Unless otherwise indicated, as specified for the following installation locations:
  - a. Indoor Clean, Dry Locations: Type 1.
  - b. Outdoor Locations: Type 3R.
- L. Provide externally operable handle with means for locking in the OFF position.
- M. Ground Fault Protection: Where ground-fault protection is indicated, provide system listed and labeled as complying with UL 1053.
  1. Where electronic circuit breakers equipped with integral ground fault protection are used, provide separate neutral current sensor where applicable.
  2. Where accessory ground fault sensing and relaying equipment is used, equip companion circuit breakers with ground-fault shunt trips.
    - a. Use zero sequence ground fault detection method unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Provide test panel and field-adjustable ground fault pick-up and delay settings.

### **2.03 MOLDED CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS**

- A. Description: Quick-make, quick-break, over center toggle, trip-free, trip-indicating circuit breakers listed and labeled as complying with UL 489, and complying with FS W-C-375 where applicable; ratings, configurations, and features as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Interrupting Capacity:
  1. Provide circuit breakers with interrupting capacity as required to provide the short circuit current rating indicated, but not less than:
    - a. 10,000 rms symmetrical amperes at 240 VAC or 208 VAC.
    - b. 14,000 rms symmetrical amperes at 480 VAC.
  2. Fully Rated Systems: Provide circuit breakers with interrupting capacity not less than the short circuit current rating indicated.
- C. Conductor Terminations:
  1. Provide mechanical lugs unless otherwise indicated.
  2. Lug Material: Aluminum, suitable for terminating aluminum or copper conductors.
- D. Thermal Magnetic Circuit Breakers: For each pole, furnish thermal inverse time tripping element for overload protection and magnetic instantaneous tripping element for short circuit protection.
  1. Provide field-adjustable magnetic instantaneous trip setting for circuit breaker frame sizes 225 amperes and larger.
- E. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers: Furnish solid state, microprocessor-based, true rms sensing trip units.
  1. Provide the following field-adjustable trip response settings:
    - a. Long time pickup, adjustable by replacing interchangeable trip unit or by setting dial.
    - b. Long time delay.
    - c. Short time pickup and delay.
    - d. Instantaneous pickup.
    - e. Ground fault pickup and delay where ground fault protection is indicated.
- F. Provide the following features and accessories where indicated or where required to complete installation:
  1. Shunt Trip: Provide coil voltage as required for connection to indicated trip actuator.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Perform work in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship).

- C. Arrange equipment to provide minimum clearances in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 70.
- D. Provide required support and attachment in accordance with Section 26 05 29.
- E. Install enclosed circuit breakers plumb.
- F. Except where indicated to be mounted adjacent to the equipment they supply, mount enclosed circuit breakers such that the highest position of the operating handle does not exceed 79 inches (2000 mm) above the floor or working platform.
- G. Provide grounding and bonding in accordance with Section 26 05 26.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 28 16.16  
ENCLOSED SWITCHES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Enclosed safety switches.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- B. Section 26 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems.
- C. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- D. Section 26 28 13 - Fuses.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2015.
- B. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); 2020.
- C. NEMA KS 1 - Heavy Duty Enclosed and Dead-Front Switches (600 Volts Maximum); 2013.
- D. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- E. UL 50 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Non-Environmental Considerations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- F. UL 50E - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment, Environmental Considerations; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- G. UL 98 - Enclosed and Dead-Front Switches; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- H. UL 869A - Reference Standard for Service Equipment; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

**1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate the work with other trades. Avoid placement of ductwork, piping, equipment, or other potential obstructions within the dedicated equipment spaces and within working clearances for electrical equipment required by NFPA 70.
  - 2. Coordinate arrangement of electrical equipment with the dimensions and clearance requirements of the actual equipment to be installed.
  - 3. Verify with manufacturer that conductor terminations are suitable for use with the conductors to be installed.
  - 4. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from Contract Documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for enclosed switches and other installed components and accessories.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate outline and support point dimensions, voltage and current ratings, short circuit current ratings, conduit entry locations, conductor terminal information, and installed features and accessories.
  - 1. Include dimensioned plan and elevation views of enclosed switches and adjacent equipment with all required clearances indicated.
  - 2. Include wiring diagrams showing all factory and field connections.

3. Identify mounting conditions required for equipment seismic qualification.
- D. Manufacturer's equipment seismic qualification certification.

## **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Maintain at the project site a copy of each referenced document that prescribes execution requirements.
- C. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- D. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. ABB/GE.
- B. Eaton Corporation.
- C. Schneider Electric; Square D Products.
- D. Siemens Industry, Inc.
- E. Source Limitations: Furnish enclosed switches and associated components produced by the same manufacturer as the other electrical distribution equipment used for this project and obtained from a single supplier.

### **2.02 ENCLOSED SAFETY SWITCHES**

- A. Description: Quick-make, quick-break enclosed safety switches listed and labeled as complying with UL 98; heavy duty; ratings, configurations, and features as indicated on the drawings.
- B. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- C. Unless otherwise indicated, provide products suitable for continuous operation under the following service conditions:
  1. Altitude: Less than 6,600 feet (2,000 m).
  2. Ambient Temperature: Between -22 degrees F (-30 degrees C) and 104 degrees F (40 degrees C).
- D. Horsepower Rating: Suitable for connected load.
- E. Voltage Rating: Suitable for circuit voltage.
- F. Short Circuit Current Rating:
  1. Minimum Ratings:
    - a. Switches Protected by Class H Fuses: 10,000 rms symmetrical amperes.
    - b. Heavy Duty Single Throw Switches Protected by Class R, Class J, Class L, or Class T Fuses: 200,000 rms symmetrical amperes.
- G. Enclosed Safety Switches Used for Service Entrance: Listed and labeled as suitable for use as service equipment according to UL 869A.
- H. Provide with switch blade contact position that is visible when the cover is open.
- I. Fuse Clips for Fusible Switches: As required to accept fuses indicated.
  1. Where NEMA Class R fuses are installed, provide rejection feature to prevent installation of fuses other than Class R.
- J. Conductor Terminations: Suitable for use with the conductors to be installed.



- K. Provide solidly bonded equipment ground bus in each enclosed safety switch, with a suitable lug for terminating each equipment grounding conductor.
- L. Enclosures: Comply with NEMA 250, and list and label as complying with UL 50 and UL 50E.
  - 1. Environment Type per NEMA 250: Unless otherwise indicated, as specified for the following installation locations:
    - a. Indoor Clean, Dry Locations: Type 1.
    - b. Outdoor Locations: Type 3R.
- M. Provide safety interlock to prevent opening the cover with the switch in the ON position with capability of overriding interlock for testing purposes.
- N. Heavy Duty Switches:
  - 1. Comply with NEMA KS 1.
  - 2. Conductor Terminations:
    - a. Provide mechanical lugs unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Lug Material: Aluminum, suitable for terminating aluminum or copper conductors.
  - 3. Provide externally operable handle with means for locking in the OFF position, capable of accepting three padlocks.
    - a. Provide means for locking handle in the ON position where indicated.

### **PART 3 EXECUTION**

#### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Perform work in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship).
- C. Arrange equipment to provide minimum clearances in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 70.
- D. Provide required support and attachment in accordance with Section 26 05 29.
- E. Install enclosed switches plumb.
- F. Except where indicated to be mounted adjacent to the equipment they supply, mount enclosed switches such that the highest position of the operating handle does not exceed 79 inches (2000 mm) above the floor or working platform.
- G. Provide grounding and bonding in accordance with Section 26 05 26.
- H. Provide fuses complying with Section 26 28 13 for fusible switches as indicated or as required by equipment manufacturer's recommendations.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 29 13  
ENCLOSED CONTROLLERS**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Enclosed NEMA controllers for low-voltage (600 V and less) applications:
  - 1. Magnetic motor starters.
  - 2. General purpose contactors.
  - 3. Manual motor starters.
- B. Overcurrent protective devices for motor controllers, including overload relays.
- C. Control accessories:
  - 1. Auxiliary contacts.
  - 2. Pilot devices.
  - 3. Control and timing relays.
  - 4. Control power transformers.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- B. Section 26 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems.
- C. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- D. Section 26 28 13 - Fuses: Fuses for fusible switches.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. IEEE C57.13 - IEEE Standard Requirements for Instrument Transformers; 2016.
- B. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2015.
- C. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); 2020.
- D. NEMA KS 1 - Heavy Duty Enclosed and Dead-Front Switches (600 Volts Maximum); 2013.
- E. NETA ATS - Standard For Acceptance Testing Specifications For Electrical Power Equipment And Systems; 2021.
- F. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- G. UL 98 - Enclosed and Dead-Front Switches; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- H. UL 489 - Molded-Case Circuit Breakers, Molded-Case Switches and Circuit Breaker Enclosures; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

**1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate the work with other trades to avoid placement of ductwork, piping, equipment, or other potential obstructions within the dedicated equipment spaces and working clearances required by NFPA 70.
  - 2. Coordinate the work to provide motor controllers and associated overload relays suitable for use with the actual motors to be installed.
  - 3. Coordinate the work to provide controllers and associated wiring suitable for interface with control devices to be installed.
  - 4. Coordinate arrangement of electrical equipment with the dimensions and clearance requirements of the actual equipment to be installed.

5. Verify with manufacturer that conductor terminations are suitable for use with the conductors to be installed.
6. Notify Architect of any conflicts with or deviations from Contract Documents. Obtain direction before proceeding with work.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets for motor controllers, enclosures, overcurrent protective devices, and other installed components and accessories.
- C. Shop Drawings: Indicate dimensions, voltage, controller sizes, short circuit current ratings, conduit entry locations, conductor terminal information, and installed features and accessories.
  1. Include dimensioned plan and elevation views of enclosed controllers and adjacent equipment with all required clearances indicated.
  2. Include wiring diagrams showing all factory and field connections.
- D. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of product.
- E. Maintenance Data: Include information on replacement parts and recommended maintenance procedures and intervals.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Maintain at the project site a copy of each referenced document that prescribes execution requirements.
- C. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- D. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. ABB/GE.
- B. Eaton Corporation.
- C. Schneider Electric; Square D Products.
- D. Siemens Industry, Inc.

#### **2.02 ENCLOSED CONTROLLERS**

- A. Provide enclosed controller assemblies consisting of all required components, control power transformers, instrumentation and control wiring, accessories, etc. as necessary for a complete operating system.
- B. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- C. Description: Enclosed controllers complying with NEMA ICS 2, and listed and labeled as complying with UL 60947-1 and UL 60947-4-1; ratings, configurations and features as indicated on the drawings.
- D. Service Conditions:
  1. Provide controllers and associated components suitable for operation under the following service conditions without derating:

- a. Altitude:
    - 1) Class 1 Km Equipment (devices utilizing power semiconductors, e.g. variable frequency controllers): Less than 3,300 feet (1,000 m).
    - 2) Class 2 Km Equipment (electromagnetic and manual devices): Less than 6,600 feet (2,000 m).
  - b. Ambient Temperature: Between 32 degrees F (0 degrees C) and 104 degrees F (40 degrees C).
  2. Provide controllers and associated components suitable for operation at indicated ratings under the service conditions at the installed location.
- E. Short Circuit Current Rating:
1. Provide controllers with listed short circuit current rating not less than the available fault current at the installed location as determined by short circuit study performed in accordance with Section 26 05 73.
- F. Conductor Terminations: Suitable for use with the conductors to be installed.
- G. Enclosures:
1. Comply with NEMA ICS 6.
  2. Environment Type per NEMA 250: Unless otherwise indicated, as specified for the following installation locations:
    - a. Indoor Clean, Dry Locations: Type 1 or Type 12.
    - b. Outdoor Locations: Type 3R or Type 4.
  3. Finish: Manufacturer's standard unless otherwise indicated.
- H. Magnetic Motor Starters: Combination type unless otherwise indicated.
1. Combination Magnetic Motor Starters: NEMA ICS 2, Class A combination motor controllers with magnetic contactor(s), externally operable disconnect and overload relay(s).
  2. Noncombination Magnetic Motor Starters: NEMA ICS 2, Class A noncombination motor controllers with magnetic contactor(s) and overload relay(s).
  3. Configuration: Full-voltage non-reversing unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Minimum Starter Size: NEMA Size 0.
  5. Use of non-standard starter sizes smaller than specified standard NEMA sizes is not permitted.
  6. Disconnects: Circuit breaker or disconnect switch type as indicated.
    - a. Circuit Breakers: Motor circuit protectors (magnetic-only) unless otherwise indicated or required.
    - b. Disconnect Switches: Fusible type unless otherwise indicated.
    - c. Provide externally operable handle with means for locking in the OFF position. Provide safety interlock to prevent opening the cover with the disconnect in the ON position with capability of overriding interlock for testing purposes.
    - d. Provide auxiliary interlock for disconnection of external control power sources where applicable.
  7. Overload Relays: Bimetallic thermal type unless otherwise indicated.
  8. Pilot Devices Required:
    - a. Furnish local pilot devices for each unit as specified below unless otherwise indicated on drawings.
- I. Manual Motor Starters:
1. Description: NEMA ICS 2, Class A manually-operated motor controllers with overload relay(s).
  2. Configuration: Non-reversing unless otherwise indicated.
  3. Fractional-Horsepower Manual Motor Starters:
    - a. Furnish with toggle operator.

- b. Overload Relays: Bimetallic or melting alloy thermal type.
- c. Provide means for locking operator in the OFF position.
- d. Furnish Red ON indicating light where not within sight of equipment.
- 4. Integral-Horsepower Manual Motor Starters:
  - a. Furnish with toggle or pushbutton operator.
  - b. Overload Relays: Bimetallic or melting alloy thermal type.
  - c. Provide means for locking operator in the OFF position.
  - d. Furnish Red ON indicating light where not within sight of equipment.
  - e. Provide auxiliary contact where indicated; normally open (NO) or normally closed (NC) as indicated or as required.
- J. Motor-Starting Switches: Horsepower-rated switches without overload protection; toggle operator.

### **2.03 OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES**

- A. Overload Relays:
  - 1. Provide overload relays and, where applicable, associated current elements/heaters, selected according to actual installed motor nameplate data, in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and NFPA 70; include consideration for motor service factor and ambient temperature correction, where applicable.
  - 2. Inverse-Time Trip Class Rating: Class 20 unless otherwise indicated or required.
  - 3. Trip-free operation.
  - 4. Visible trip indication.
  - 5. Resettable.
    - a. Employ manual reset unless otherwise indicated.
    - b. Do not employ automatic reset with two-wire control.
  - 6. Bimetallic Thermal Overload Relays:
    - a. Interchangeable current elements/heaters.
    - b. Adjustable trip; plus/minus 10 percent of nominal, minimum.
    - c. Trip test function.
  - 7. Melting Alloy Thermal Overload Relays:
    - a. Interchangeable current elements/heaters.
- B. Fusible Disconnect Switches:
  - 1. Description: Quick-make, quick-break, dead-front fusible switch units complying with NEMA KS 1, and listed and labeled as complying with UL 98; ratings, configurations, and features as indicated on the drawings.
  - 2. Fuse Clips: As required to accept indicated fuses.
  - 3. Provide externally operable handle with means for locking in the OFF position. Provide means for locking switch cover in the closed position. Provide safety interlock to prevent opening the cover with the switch in the ON position with capability of overriding interlock for testing purposes.
- C. Circuit Breakers:
  - 1. Interrupting Capacity (not applicable to motor circuit protectors):
    - a. Provide circuit breakers with interrupting capacity as required to provide the short circuit current rating indicated, but not less than specified minimum requirements.
    - b. Fully Rated Systems: Provide circuit breakers with interrupting capacity not less than the short circuit current rating indicated.
  - 2. Motor Circuit Protectors:
    - a. Description: Instantaneous-trip circuit breakers furnished with magnetic instantaneous tripping elements for short circuit protection, but not with thermal inverse time tripping elements for overload protection; UL 489 recognized only for

use as part of a listed combination motor controller with overload protection; ratings, configurations, and features as indicated on the drawings.

- b. Provide field-adjustable magnetic instantaneous trip setting.

## **2.04 CONTROL ACCESSORIES**

- A. Auxiliary Contacts:
  1. Comply with NEMA ICS 5.
  2. Provide number and type of contacts indicated or required to perform necessary functions, including holding (seal-in) circuit and interlocking, plus one normally open (NO) and one normally closed (NC) spare contact for each magnetic motor starter, minimum.
- B. Pilot Devices:
  1. Comply with NEMA ICS 5; heavy-duty type.
  2. Pushbuttons: Unless otherwise indicated, provide momentary, non-illuminated type with flush button operator; normally open or normally closed as indicated or as required.
  3. Selector Switches: Unless otherwise indicated, provide maintained, non-illuminated type with knob operator; number of switch positions as indicated or as required.
  4. Indicating Lights: Push-to-test type unless otherwise indicated.
  5. Provide LED lamp source for indicating lights and illuminated devices.
- C. Control and Timing Relays:
  1. Comply with NEMA ICS 5.
  2. Provide number and type of relays indicated or required to perform necessary functions.
- D. Control Power Transformers:
  1. Size to accommodate burden of contactor coil(s) and all connected auxiliary devices.
  2. Include primary and secondary fuses.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Install controllers in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship).
- C. Arrange equipment to provide minimum clearances in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 70.
- D. Provide required support and attachment in accordance with Section 26 05 29.
- E. Install enclosed controllers plumb and level.
- F. Provide grounding and bonding in accordance with Section 26 05 26.
- G. Install all field-installed devices, components, and accessories.
- H. Provide fuses complying with Section 26 28 13 for fusible switches as indicated.
- I. Where accessories are not self-powered, provide control power source as indicated or as required to complete installation.
- J. Set field-adjustable controllers and associated components according to installed motor requirements, in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and NFPA 70.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 43 00  
SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Surge protective devices for service entrance locations.
- B. Surge protective devices for distribution locations.
- C. Surge protective devices for branch panelboard locations.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- B. Section 26 24 13 - Switchboards.
- C. Section 26 24 16 - Panelboards.

**1.03 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS**

- A. EMI/RFI: Electromagnetic Interference/Radio Frequency Interference.
- B. SPD: Surge Protective Device.

**1.04 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. MIL-STD-220 - Method of Insertion Loss Measurement; 2009c (Validated 2019).
- B. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2015.
- C. NEMA 250 - Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 Volts Maximum); 2020.
- D. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- E. UL 1283 - Standard for Electromagnetic Interference Filters; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- F. UL 1449 - Standard for Surge Protective Devices; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

**1.05 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination: Coordinate size and location of overcurrent device compatible with the actual surge protective device and location to be installed. Notify Architect of any conflicts or deviations from Contract Documents to obtain direction prior to ordering equipment.

**1.06 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Include detailed component information, voltage, surge current ratings, repetitive surge current capacity, voltage protection rating (VPR) for all protection modes, maximum continuous operating voltage (MCOV), nominal discharge current (I-n), short circuit current rating (SCCR), connection means including any required external overcurrent protection, enclosure ratings, outline and support point dimensions, weight, service condition requirements, and installed features.
- C. Shop Drawings: Include wiring diagrams showing all factory and field connections with wire and circuit breaker/fuse sizes.
- D. Certificates: Manufacturer's documentation of listing for compliance with the following standards:
  - 1. UL 1449.
- E. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Include application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of product.

- F. Operation and Maintenance Data: Include information on status indicators and recommended maintenance procedures and intervals.
- G. Warranty: Submit sample of manufacturer's warranty and documentation of final executed warranty completed in Owner's name and registered with manufacturer.
- H. Project Record Documents: Record actual connections and locations of surge protective devices.

#### **1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Maintain at the project site a copy of each referenced document that prescribes execution requirements.
- C. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- D. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

#### **1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND PROTECTION**

- A. Store in a clean, dry space in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

#### **1.09 FIELD CONDITIONS**

- A. Maintain field conditions within manufacturer's required service conditions during and after installation.

#### **1.10 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Manufacturer's Warranty: Provide minimum five year warranty covering repair or replacement of surge protective devices showing evidence of failure due to defective materials or workmanship.
- C. Exclude surge protective devices from any clause limiting warranty responsibility for acts of nature, including lightning, stated elsewhere.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. As indicated under product descriptions below.
- B. Field-installed, Externally Mounted Surge Protective Devices - Other Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - 1. ABB/GE.
  - 2. Eaton.
  - 3. Current Technology; a brand of Thomas & Betts Power Solutions.
  - 4. Schneider Electric; Square D Brand Surgeologic Products.
  - 5. Siemens.
- C. Factory-installed, Internally Mounted Surge Protective Devices:
  - 1. Same as manufacturer of equipment containing surge protective device, to provide a complete listed assembly including SPD.

#### **2.02 SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES - GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Description: Factory-assembled surge protective devices (SPDs) for 60 Hz service; listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended; system voltage as indicated on the drawings.



- B. Unless otherwise indicated, provide field-installed, externally-mounted or factory-installed, internally-mounted SPDs.
- C. List and label as complying with UL 1449, Type 1 when connected on line side of service disconnect overcurrent device and Type 1 or 2 when connected on load side of service disconnect overcurrent device.
- D. Protected Modes:
  - 1. Wye Systems: L-N, L-G, N-G, L-L.
  - 2. Single Split Phase Systems: L-N, L-G, N-G, L-L.
  - 3. High Leg Delta Systems: L-N, L-G, N-G, L-L.
- E. UL 1449 Voltage Protection Ratings (VPRs):
  - 1. 208Y/120V System Voltage: Not more than 1,000 V for L-N, L-G, and N-G modes and 1,200 V for L-L mode.
  - 2. 480Y/277V System Voltage: Not more than 1,500 V for L-N, L-G, and N-G modes and 2,000 V for L-L mode.
  - 3. 480V Delta System Voltage: Not more than 1,800 V for L-G mode and 3,000 V for L-L mode.
- F. UL 1449 Maximum Continuous Operating Voltage (MCOV): Not less than 115% of nominal system voltage.
- G. Enclosure Environment Type per NEMA 250: Unless otherwise indicated, as specified for the following installation locations:
  - 1. Indoor clean, dry locations: Type 1.
- H. Mounting for Field-installed, Externally Mounted SPDs: Unless otherwise indicated, as specified for the following locations:
  - 1. Provide surface-mounted SPD where mounted in non-public areas or adjacent to surface-mounted equipment.
  - 2. Provide flush-mounted SPD where mounted in public areas or adjacent to flush-mounted equipment.
- I. Equipment Containing Factory-installed, Internally Mounted SPDs: Listed and labeled as a complete assembly including SPD.
  - 1. Panelboards: See Section 26 24 16.

### **2.03 SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES FOR SERVICE ENTRANCE LOCATIONS**

- A. Surge Protective Device:
  - 1. Protection Circuits: Field-replaceable modular or non-modular.
  - 2. Surge Current Rating: Not less than 120 kA per mode/240 kA per phase.
  - 3. Repetitive Surge Current Capacity: Not less than 5,000 impulses.
  - 4. UL 1449 Nominal Discharge Current (I-n): 20 kA.
  - 5. UL 1449 Short Circuit Current Rating (SCCR): Not less than the available fault current at the installed location as indicated on the drawings.
  - 6. Diagnostics:
    - a. Protection Status Monitoring: Provide indicator lights to report the protection for each phase.
    - b. Alarm Notification: Provide indicator light and audible alarm to report alarm condition. Provide button to manually silence audible alarm.

### **2.04 SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES FOR DISTRIBUTION LOCATIONS**

- A. Surge Protective Device:
  - 1. Protection Circuits: Field-replaceable modular or non-modular.
  - 2. Surge Current Rating: Not less than 80 kA per mode/160 kA per phase.

3. Repetitive Surge Current Capacity: Not less than 3,500 impulses.
4. UL 1449 Nominal Discharge Current (I-n): 20 kA.
5. UL 1449 Short Circuit Current Rating (SCCR): Not less than the available fault current at the installed location as indicated on the drawings.
6. Diagnostics:
  - a. Protection Status Monitoring: Provide indicator lights to report the protection status for each phase.
  - b. Alarm Notification: Provide indicator light and audible alarm to report alarm condition. Provide button to manually silence audible alarm.
7. Provide surge rated integral disconnect switch for SPDs not connected to a dedicated circuit breaker or fused switch or not direct bus connected.

## **2.05 SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES FOR BRANCH PANELBOARD LOCATIONS**

- A. Surge Protective Device:
  1. Protection Circuits: Field-replaceable modular or non-modular.
  2. Surge Current Rating: Not less than 60 kA per mode/120 kA per phase.
  3. Repetitive Surge Current Capacity: Not less than 2,000 impulses.
  4. UL 1449 Nominal Discharge Current (I-n): 20 kA.
  5. UL 1449 Short Circuit Current Rating (SCCR): Not less than the available fault current at the installed location as indicated on the drawings.
  6. Diagnostics:
    - a. Protection Status Monitoring: Provide indicator lights to report the protection status for each phase.
    - b. Alarm Notification: Provide indicator light and audible alarm to report alarm condition. Provide button to manually silence audible alarm.
  7. Provide surge rated integral disconnect switch for SPDs not connected to a dedicated circuit breaker or fused switch or not direct bus connected.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- B. Verify that the service voltage and configuration marked on the SPD are consistent with the service voltage and configuration at the location to be installed.
- C. Verify that electrical equipment is ready to accept connection of the SPD and that installed overcurrent device is consistent with requirements of drawings and manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Verify system grounding and bonding is in accordance with Section 26 05 26, including bonding of neutral and ground for service entrance and separately derived systems where applicable. Do not energize SPD until deficiencies have been corrected.
- E. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Perform work in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship).
- B. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- C. Arrange equipment to provide minimum clearances in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 70.
- D. Unless indicated otherwise, connect service entrance surge protective device on load side of service disconnect main overcurrent device.
- E. Provide conductors with minimum ampacity as indicated on the drawings, as required by NFPA 70, and not less than manufacturer's recommended minimum conductor size.

- F. Install conductors between SPD and equipment terminations as short and straight as possible, not exceeding manufacturer's recommended maximum conductor length. Breaker locations may be reasonably rearranged in order to provide leads as short and straight as possible. Twist conductors together to reduce inductance.
- G. Do not energize SPD until bonding of neutral and ground for service entrance and separately derived systems is complete in accordance with Section 26 05 26 where applicable. Replace SPDs damaged by improper or missing neutral-ground bond.
- H. Disconnect SPD prior to performing any high potential testing. Replace SPDs damaged by performing high potential testing with SPD connected.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 51 00  
INTERIOR LIGHTING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Interior luminaires.
- B. Emergency lighting units.
- C. Exit signs.
- D. Drivers.
- E. Accessories.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 26 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems.
- B. Section 26 05 53 - Identification for Electrical Systems: Identification products and requirements.
- C. Section 26 09 23 - Lighting Control Devices.
- D. Section 26 27 26 - Wiring Devices: Manual wall switches and wall dimmers.
- E. Section 26 56 00 - Exterior Lighting.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. IES LM-79 - Approved Method: Optical and Electrical Measurements of Solid-State Lighting Products; 2019.
- B. IES LM-80 - Approved Method: Measuring Maintenance of Light Output Characteristics of Solid-State Light Sources; 2021.
- C. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2015.
- D. NECA/IESNA 500 - Standard for Installing Indoor Lighting Systems; 2006.
- E. NEMA 410 - Performance Testing for Lighting Controls and Switching Devices with Electronic Drivers and Discharge Ballasts; 2023.
- F. NEMA LE 4 - Recessed Luminaires, Ceiling Compatibility; 2023.
- G. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- H. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- I. UL 924 - Emergency Lighting and Power Equipment; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- J. UL 1598 - Luminaires; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- K. UL 8750 - Light Emitting Diode (LED) Equipment for Use in Lighting Products; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

**1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Coordination:
  - 1. Coordinate the installation of luminaires with mounting surfaces installed under other sections. Coordinate the work with placement of supports, anchors, etc. required for mounting. Coordinate compatibility of luminaires and associated trims with mounting surfaces at installed locations.
  - 2. Coordinate the placement of luminaires with structural members, ductwork, piping, equipment, diffusers, fire suppression system components, and other potential conflicts installed under other sections.

3. Coordinate the placement of exit signs with furniture, equipment, signage or other potential obstructions to visibility installed under other sections.
4. Notify Architect of any conflicts or deviations from Contract Documents to obtain direction prior to proceeding with work.

#### **1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets including detailed information on luminaire construction, dimensions, ratings, finishes, mounting requirements, listings, service conditions, photometric performance, installed accessories, and ceiling compatibility; include model number nomenclature clearly marked with all proposed features.
  1. LED Luminaires:
    - a. All LED general purpose luminaires shall be either Energy Star or DesignLights Consortium (DLC) approved.
    - b. Include estimated useful life, calculated based on IES LM-80 test data.
    - c. Include IES LM-79 test report upon request.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Indicate application conditions and limitations of use stipulated by product testing agency. Include instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, and installation of product.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: Instructions for each product including information on replacement parts.
- E. Project Record Documents: Record actual connections and locations of luminaires and any associated remote components.
- F. Shop Drawing Requirements:
  1. Submit shop drawings of each reflected ceiling plan in the project showing the specific locations of all parts of the lighting control system including motion sensors, photocells, smart switches, room controllers, enhanced building controls (only if required), etc. Motion sensors are to include sensor type, sensor mounting, and other pertinent data to allow evaluation of the proposed system.
  2. Submit wiring diagram for all motion sensors photocell, smart switches, room controllers, etc.
  3. Submit a sequence of operations for each unique space type describing the function of each button on each switch and the effects on the lighting in the space. This sequence of operations is to follow the District's standard sequences with the added information describing how the lighting control system pieces/parts work together.
  4. Submit a list of switch types with a list of proposed button labels. This list is to be similar to the button information on lighting control drawings with added information showing switch button layouts and actual labels for the project.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Maintain at the project site a copy of each referenced document that prescribes execution requirements.
- C. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- D. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

### **1.07 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Provide three year manufacturer warranty for LED luminaires, including drivers.
- C. Provide five year pro-rata warranty for batteries for emergency lighting units.
- D. Provide ten year pro-rata warranty for batteries for self-powered exit signs.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 LUMINAIRE TYPES**

- A. Furnish products as indicated in luminaire schedule included on the drawings.

### **2.02 LUMINAIRES**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Acuity Brands, Inc.
  - 2. Cooper Lighting, a division of Cooper Industries.
  - 3. Hubbell Lighting, Inc.
  - 4. NexGen Lighting Solutions
- B. Provide products that comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- C. Provide products that are listed and labeled as complying with UL 1598, where applicable.
- D. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- E. Unless otherwise indicated, provide complete luminaires including lamp(s) and all sockets, ballasts, reflectors, lenses, housings and other components required to position, energize and protect the lamp and distribute the light.
- F. Unless specifically indicated to be excluded, provide all required conduit, boxes, wiring, connectors, hardware, supports, trims, accessories, etc. as necessary for a complete operating system.
- G. Provide products suitable to withstand normal handling, installation, and service without any damage, distortion, corrosion, fading, discoloring, etc.
- H. Recessed Luminaires:
  - 1. Ceiling Compatibility: Comply with NEMA LE 4.
  - 2. Luminaires Recessed in Insulated Ceilings: Listed and labeled as IC-rated, suitable for direct contact with insulation and combustible materials.
  - 3. Luminaires Recessed in Sloped Ceilings: Provide suitable sloped ceiling adapters.
  - 4. Air-Handling Recessed Fluorescent Luminaires: Suitable for air supply/return, heat removal, or combination as indicated.
    - a. Luminaires for Air Supply/Return: Provide air control blades where indicated.
    - b. Luminaires for Heat Removal: Provide heat removal dampers where indicated.
- I. LED Luminaires:
  - 1. All LED general purpose luminaires shall be either Energy Star or DesignLights Consortium (DLC) approved.
  - 2. Components: UL 8750 recognized or listed as applicable.
  - 3. Tested in accordance with IES LM-79 and IES LM-80.
  - 4. LED Estimated Useful Life: Minimum of 50,000 hours at 70 percent lumen maintenance, calculated based on IES LM-80 test data.
  - 5. CRI of 80 or above.
  - 6. Lamp color: 4000K.
- J. Track Lighting Systems: Provide track compatible with specified track heads, with all connectors, power feed fittings, dead ends, hangers and canopies as necessary to complete

installation.

- K. Luminaires Mounted in Continuous Rows: Provide quantity of units required for length indicated, with all accessories required for joining and aligning.

### **2.03 EMERGENCY LIGHTING UNITS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  - 1. Acuity Brands, Inc.
  - 2. Cooper Lighting, a division of Cooper Industries.
  - 3. Hubbell Lighting, Inc.
  - 4. NexGen Lighting Solutions.
- B. Description: Emergency lighting units complying with NFPA 101 and all applicable state and local codes, and listed and labeled as complying with UL 924.
- C. Operation: Upon interruption of normal power source or brownout condition exceeding 20 percent voltage drop from nominal, solid-state control automatically switches connected lamps to integral battery power for minimum of 90 minutes of rated emergency illumination, and automatically recharges battery upon restoration of normal power source.
- D. Battery:
  - 1. Sealed maintenance-free lead calcium unless otherwise indicated.
  - 2. Size battery to supply all connected lamps, including emergency remote heads where indicated.
- E. Diagnostics: Provide power status indicator light and accessible integral test switch to manually activate emergency operation.
- F. Provide low-voltage disconnect to prevent battery damage from deep discharge.
- G. Accessories:
  - 1. Provide compatible accessory mounting brackets where indicated or required to complete installation.
  - 2. Provide compatible accessory high impact polycarbonate vandal shields where indicated.
  - 3. Provide compatible accessory wire guards where indicated.
  - 4. Where indicated, provide emergency remote heads that are compatible with the emergency lighting unit they are connected to and suitable for the installed location.

### **2.04 EXIT SIGNS**

- A. Description: Exit signs complying with NFPA 101 and applicable state and local codes, and listed and labeled as complying with UL 924.
  - 1. Number of Faces: Single- or double-face as indicated or as required for installed location.
  - 2. Directional Arrows: As indicated or as required for installed location.
- B. Powered Exit Signs: Internally illuminated with LEDs unless otherwise indicated.
  - 1. Manufacturers:
    - a. Acuity Brands, Inc.
    - b. Cooper Lighting, a division of Cooper Industries.
    - c. Hubbell Lighting, Inc.
    - d. NexGen Lighting Solutions.
  - 2. Self-Powered Exit Signs:
    - a. Operation: Upon interruption of normal power source or brownout condition exceeding 20 percent voltage drop from nominal, solid-state control automatically switches connected lamps to integral battery power for minimum of 90 minutes of rated emergency illumination, and automatically recharges battery upon restoration of normal power source.
    - b. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel cadmium unless otherwise indicated.

- c. Diagnostics: Provide power status indicator light and accessible integral test switch to manually activate emergency operation.
- d. Provide low-voltage disconnect to prevent battery damage from deep discharge.

## **2.05 DRIVERS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Alloy LED.
  2. General Electric Company/GE Lighting.
  3. Lutron Electronics Company, In.
  4. OSRAM Sylvania, In.
  5. Philips Lighting North America Corporation.
- B. Drivers - General Requirements:
  1. Minimum Efficiency/Efficacy: Provide ballasts complying with all current applicable federal and state ballast efficiency/efficacy standards.
  2. Electronic Drivers: Inrush currents not exceeding peak currents specified in NEMA 410.
- C. Dimmable LED Drivers:
  1. Dimming Range: Continuous dimming from 100 percent to one percent relative light output unless dimming capability to lower level is indicated, without flicker.
  2. Control Compatibility: Fully compatible with the dimming controls to be installed.
    - a. Wall Dimmers: See Section 26 27 26.
    - b. Daylighting Controls: See Section 26 09 23.

## **2.06 ACCESSORIES**

- A. Stems for Suspended Luminaires: Steel tubing, factory finished to match luminaire or field-painted as directed.
- B. Threaded Rods for Suspended Luminaires: Zinc-plated steel, minimum 1/4" size, field-painted as directed.
- C. Provide accessory plaster frames for luminaires recessed in plaster ceilings.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Coordinate locations of outlet boxes provided under Section 26 05 33.16 as required for installation of luminaires provided under this section.
- B. Perform work in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship).
- C. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Install luminaires securely, in a neat and workmanlike manner, as specified in NECA 500 (commercial lighting) and NECA 502 (industrial lighting).
- E. Provide required support and attachment in accordance with Section 26 05 29.
- F. Install luminaires plumb and square and aligned with building lines and with adjacent luminaires.
- G. Suspended Ceiling Mounted Luminaires:
  1. Do not use ceiling tiles to bear weight of luminaires.
  2. Do not use ceiling support system to bear weight of luminaires unless ceiling support system is certified as suitable to do so.
  3. Secure surface-mounted and recessed luminaires to ceiling support channels or framing members or to building structure.
  4. Secure pendant-mounted luminaires to building structure.
  5. Secure lay-in luminaires to ceiling support channels using listed safety clips at four corners.



6. See appropriate Division 9 section where suspended grid ceiling is specified for additional requirements.
- H. Recessed Luminaires:
  1. Install trims tight to mounting surface with no visible light leakage.
- I. Suspended Luminaires:
  1. Unless otherwise indicated, specified mounting heights are to bottom of luminaire.
  2. Install using the suspension method indicated, with support lengths and accessories as required for specified mounting height.
  3. Provide minimum of two supports for each luminaire equal to or exceeding 4 feet nominal length, with no more than 4 feet (1.2 m) between supports.
- J. Wall-Mounted Luminaires: Unless otherwise indicated, specified mounting heights are to center of luminaire.
- K. Install accessories furnished with each luminaire.
- L. Bond products and metal accessories to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor.
- M. Emergency Lighting Units:
  1. Unless otherwise indicated, connect unit to unswitched power from same circuit feeding normal lighting in same room or area. Bypass local switches, contactors, or other lighting controls.
- N. Exit Signs:
  1. Unless otherwise indicated, connect unit to unswitched power from same circuit feeding normal lighting in same room or area. Bypass local switches, contactors, or other lighting controls.
- O. Install lamps in each luminaire.

### **3.02 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL**

- A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for additional requirements.
- B. Inspect each product for damage and defects.
- C. Operate each luminaire after installation and connection to verify proper operation.
- D. Test self-powered exit signs, emergency lighting units, and fluorescent emergency power supply units to verify proper operation upon loss of normal power supply.
- E. Correct wiring deficiencies and repair or replace damaged or defective products. Repair or replace excessively noisy ballasts as determined by Architect.

### **3.03 ADJUSTING**

- A. Aim and position adjustable luminaires to achieve desired illumination as indicated or as directed by Architect. Secure locking fittings in place.
- B. Aim and position adjustable emergency lighting unit lamps to achieve optimum illumination of egress path as required or as directed by Architect or authority having jurisdiction.
- C. Air-Handling Luminaires with Air Control Blades or Heat Removal Dampers: Adjust as indicated or as required for proper airflow as directed by Architect.
- D. Exit Signs with Field-Selectable Directional Arrows: Set as indicated or as required to properly designate egress path as directed by Architect or authority having jurisdiction.

### **3.04 CLEANING**

- A. Clean surfaces according to NECA 500 (commercial lighting), NECA 502 (industrial lighting), and manufacturer's instructions to remove dirt, fingerprints, paint, or other foreign material and restore finishes to match original factory finish.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 26 56 00  
EXTERIOR LIGHTING**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Exterior luminaires.
- B. Lamps.
- C. Poles and accessories.
- D. Luminaire accessories.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 26 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems.
- B. Section 26 05 29 - Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems.
- C. Section 26 09 23 - Lighting Control Devices.
  - 1. Includes automatic controls for lighting including outdoor motion sensors, time switches, and outdoor photo controls.
  - 2. Includes lighting contactors.
- D. Section 26 51 00 - Interior Lighting.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. IEEE C2 - National Electrical Safety Code(R) (NESEC(R)); 2023.
- B. IES LM-79 - Approved Method: Optical and Electrical Measurements of Solid-State Lighting Products; 2019.
- C. IES LM-80 - Approved Method: Measuring Maintenance of Light Output Characteristics of Solid-State Light Sources; 2021.
- D. NECA 1 - Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction; 2015.
- E. NECA/IESNA 501 - Standard for Installing Exterior Lighting Systems; 2000 (Reaffirmed 2006).
- F. NEMA 410 - Performance Testing for Lighting Controls and Switching Devices with Electronic Drivers and Discharge Ballasts; 2023.
- G. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- H. UL 1598 - Luminaires; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.
- I. UL 8750 - Light Emitting Diode (LED) Equipment for Use in Lighting Products; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

**1.04 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS**

**1.05 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Shop Drawings:
  - 1. Indicate dimensions and components for each luminaire that is not a standard product of the manufacturer.
  - 2. Provide photometric calculations where luminaires are proposed for substitution upon request.
- C. Product Data: Provide manufacturer's standard catalog pages and data sheets including detailed information on luminaire construction, dimensions, ratings, finishes, mounting requirements, listings, service conditions, photometric performance, weight, effective projected area (EPA), and installed accessories; include model number nomenclature clearly marked with

all proposed features.

1. LED Luminaires:
  - a. Include estimated useful life, calculated based on IES LM-80 test data.
  - b. Include IES LM-79 test report upon request.
  - c. All LED general purpose luminaires shall be either Energy Star or DesignLights Consortium (DLC) approved.
- D. Operation and Maintenance Data: Instructions for each product including information on replacement parts.

#### **1.06 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- B. Maintain at the project site a copy of each referenced document that prescribes execution requirements.
- C. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company specializing in manufacturing the products specified in this section with minimum three years documented experience.
- D. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

#### **1.07 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.
- B. Provide three year manufacturer warranty for all LED luminaires, including drivers.

### **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

#### **2.01 LUMINAIRE TYPES**

- A. Furnish products as indicated in luminaire schedule included on the drawings.

#### **2.02 LUMINAIRES**

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. Acuity Brands, Inc.
  2. Cooper Lighting, a division of Cooper Industries.
  3. Hubbell Lighting, Inc.
  4. Philips Lighting North America Corporation.
  5. NexGen Lighting Solution.
- B. Provide products that comply with requirements of NFPA 70.
- C. Provide products that are listed and labeled as complying with UL 1598, where applicable.
- D. Provide products listed, classified, and labeled as suitable for the purpose intended.
- E. Unless otherwise indicated, provide complete luminaires including lamp(s) and all sockets, driver, reflectors, lenses, housings and other components required to position, energize and protect the lamp and distribute the light.
- F. Unless specifically indicated to be excluded, provide all required conduit, boxes, wiring, connectors, hardware, poles, foundations, supports, trims, accessories, etc. as necessary for a complete operating system.
- G. Provide products suitable to withstand normal handling, installation, and service without any damage, distortion, corrosion, fading, discoloring, etc.
- H. Provide luminaires listed and labeled as suitable for wet locations unless otherwise indicated.
- I. LED Luminaires:
  1. Components: UL 8750 recognized or listed as applicable.

2. Tested in accordance with IES LM-79 and IES LM-80.
3. LED Estimated Useful Life: Minimum of 50,000 hours at 70 percent lumen maintenance, calculated based on IES LM-80 test data.
4. All LED general purpose luminaires shall be either Energy Star or DesignLights Consortium (DLC) approved.
5. Lamp Color: 4,000K.

### **2.03 DRIVERS**

- A. Manufacturers:
  1. General Electric Company/GE Lighting
  2. OSRAM Sylvania, Inc
  3. Philips Lighting North America Corporation.
- B. Drivers - General Requirements:
  1. Provide ballasts containing no polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs).
  2. Minimum Efficiency/Efficacy: Provide ballasts complying with all current applicable federal and state ballast efficiency/efficacy standards.
  3. Drivers: Inrush currents not exceeding peak currents specified in NEMA 410.
- C. Dimmable LED Drivers:
  1. Dimming Range: Continuous dimming from 100 percent to one percent relative light output unless dimming capability to lower level is indicated, without flicker.
  2. Control Compatibility: Fully compatible with the dimming controls to be installed.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 EXAMINATION**

- A. Verify that field measurements are as indicated.
- B. Verify that outlet boxes are installed in proper locations and at proper mounting heights and are properly sized to accommodate conductors in accordance with NFPA 70.
- C. Verify that suitable support frames are installed where required.
- D. Verify that branch circuit wiring installation is completed, tested, and ready for connection to luminaires.
- E. Verify that conditions are satisfactory for installation prior to starting work.

### **3.02 INSTALLATION**

- A. Coordinate locations of outlet boxes provided under Section 26 05 33.16 as required for installation of luminaires provided under this section.
- B. Perform work in accordance with NECA 1 (general workmanship).
- C. Install products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Install luminaires in accordance with NECA/IESNA 501.
- E. Provide required support and attachment in accordance with Section 26 05 29.
- F. Install luminaires plumb and square and aligned with building lines and with adjacent luminaires.
- G. Recessed Luminaires:
  1. Install trims tight to mounting surface with no visible light leakage.
- H. Suspended Luminaires:
  1. Install using the suspension method indicated, with support lengths and accessories as required for specified mounting height.

- I. Wall-Mounted Luminaires: Unless otherwise indicated, specified mounting heights are to center of luminaire.
- J. Pole-Mounted Luminaires:
  - 1. Maintain the following minimum clearances:
    - a. Comply with IEEE C2.
    - b. Comply with utility company requirements.
  - 2. Grounding:
    - a. Bond luminaires, metal accessories, metal poles, and foundation reinforcement to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor.
  - 3. Install separate service conductors, size as indicated on drawings, from each luminaire down to handhole for connection to branch circuit conductors.
- K. Install accessories furnished with each luminaire.
- L. Bond products and metal accessories to branch circuit equipment grounding conductor.
- M. Install lamps in each luminaire.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 27 05 00 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS

### PART 1 GENERAL

#### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

- A. Structured cabling infrastructure for voice and data.
- B. Cable pathways and management.

#### 1.2 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED UNDER OTHER DIVISIONS

- A. Access Control system equipment and cabling.
- B. Foundations and pads required for equipment furnished under this Division.
- C. Field painting, except such painting as is required to maintain shop coat painting and factory finish painting.
- D. Flashing of conduits into roofing and outside walls.
- E. Heating, ventilating, and air conditioning equipment.
- F. Cutting and patching for low voltage systems Work, except for errors and omissions under this Division.

#### 1.3 RELATED WORK - OWNER FURNISHED EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS

- A. Telephone system electronics (Voice over IP).
- B. Network system electronics.
- C. Projectors and AV electronics.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with applicable local, state and federal codes.
- B. Comply with applicable requirements of recognized industry associations which produce standards for the various trades.
- C. Warrant Work under this specification against faulty material or Workmanship in accordance with Division 1. If the project is occupied or the systems placed in operation in several phases at the request of the Owner, then the warranty of each system or piece of equipment used shall begin on the date of substantial completion for each phase. The use of building equipment for temporary service and testing does not constitute the beginning of the warranty.
- D. Equipment and material provided under this Division shall be periodically inspected and serviced by competent installers. This function becomes the responsibility of the Owner

once the system is accepted by the Owner. The one year material and Workmanship warranty is not intended to supersede normal inspection or service and shall not be construed to mean the Contractor shall provide free service for normal maintenance items such as periodic cleaning and adjustment due to normal use, nor to correct without charge, breakage, maladjustment, and other trouble caused by improper maintenance.

- E. Upon completion of contract and progressively as work proceeds, clean-up and remove dirt, debris and scrap materials. Maintain the premises in a neat and clean condition at all times during construction. Protect and preserve access to Head-end equipment at all times. Clean items with factory finishes. Touch-up minor damage to surfaces; refinish entire piece of equipment when sustained major damage. All electronics must be protected from dust and other airborne debris.

## 1.5 STANDARDS

- A. The Contractor's performance of the Work shall comply with applicable federal, state and local laws, rules and regulations. The Contractor shall give required notices, shall procure necessary governmental licenses, permits, and inspections and shall pay without burden to The Owner, all fees and charges in connection therewith unless specifically provided otherwise. In the event of violation, the Contractor shall pay all fines and penalties, including attorney's fees and other defense costs and expenses in connection therewith.
- B. Federal Communications Commission
  - 1. Equipment requiring FCC registration or approval shall have received such approval and shall be appropriately identified.
- C. Codes, Standards and Ordinances
  - 1. Design, manufacture, test, and install telecommunications cabling networks per manufacturer's requirements and in accordance with NFPA-70(National Electrical Code®), state codes, local codes, requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, and particularly the following standards:
    - a. ANSI/TIA-568-C.0 Generic Telecommunications Cabling for Customer Premises, 2009.
    - b. ANSI/TIA-568-C.1 Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard, 2009.
    - c. ANSI/TIA-569-B -- Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces
    - d. ANSI/TIA/EIA-606(A) -- The Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure of Commercial Buildings
    - e. ANSI/TIA/EIA-607(A) -- Commercial Building Grounding and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications
    - f. ANSI/TIA/EIA-526-7 -- Measurement of Optical Power Loss of Installed Single-Mode Fiber Cable Plant
    - g. ANSI/TIA/EIA-526-14A -- Measurement of Optical Power Loss of Installed Multimode Fiber Cable Plant
    - h. ANSI/TIA/EIA-758(A) -- Customer-Owned Outside Plant Telecommunications Cabling Standard
    - i. TIA/EIA TSB 67 - Transmission Performance Specifications for Field Testing of Twisted - Pair Cabling Systems.
  - 2. Install cabling in accordance with the most recent edition of BICSI® publications:
    - a. BICSI -- Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual, Volume 11

- b. BICSI -- Cabling Installation Manual
- 3. Federal, state, and local codes, rules, regulations, and ordinances governing the Work, are as fully part of the specifications as if herein repeated or hereto attached. If the Contractor should note items in the drawings or the specifications, construction of which would be code violations, promptly call them to the attention of the Owner's Representative in writing. Where the requirements of other sections of the specifications are more stringent than applicable codes, rules, regulations, and ordinances, the specifications shall apply.
  - a. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM): ASTM E. 814 - Fire Tests of Through - Penetration Firestops.
  - b. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL): U.L. 1479 - Fire Tests of Through - Penetrations Firestops.
  - c. National Fire Protection Association (NFPA): NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code.
  - d. Americans with Disabilities Accessibility Guidelines.
  - e. Code of Federal Regulations, Title 29, Chapter XVII, Part 1910 (OSHA).
  - f. Uniform Building Code (UBC).
  - g. International Building Code (IBC).
  - h. Texas Department of State Health Services (TDSHS).

#### 1.6 COMPLETENESS OF WORK

- A. The Contract Documents depict low voltage systems which are intended to be complete and functioning systems. All products, materials, labor, and programming necessary to render a fully functional system to fulfill the design intent shown on the documents shall be provided by the Contractor.
- B. Catalog numbers referenced throughout this Division's drawings and specifications are intended to convey a general understanding of the type of quality of the product required. Where written descriptions differ from information conveyed by a catalog number, the written description shall govern. No extra charge shall be allowed because a catalog number is found to be incomplete or obsolete.

#### 1.7 SEQUENCE AND SCHEDULING

- A. Submit schedule for installation of pathway and infrastructure. Indicate delivery, installation, and testing for conformance to specific job completion dates. As a minimum, dates are to be provided for bid award, installation start date, completion of station cabling, completion of riser pathway/cabling, completion of testing and labeling, cutover, completion of the final punch list, start of demolition, Owner acceptance, and demolition completion.

#### 1.8 SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with provisions of Division 1.
- B. Comply with provisions in Sections 27 05 26, 27 05 28, 27 11 23, 27 51 13, 28 13 00, 28 14 00, and 28 16 00.

#### 1.9 USE OF THE SITE

- A. Use of the site shall be at the Owner's direction in matters in which the owner deems it necessary to place restriction.



- B. Access to building wherein the Work is performed shall be as directed by the Owner.
- C. The Owner will occupy the premises during the entire period of construction for conducting his or her normal business operations. Cooperate with the owner to minimize conflict and to facilitate the owner's operations.
- D. Schedule necessary shutdowns of plant services with the Owner, and obtain written permission from the owner. Refer to article - CONTINUITY OF SERVICES herein.
- E. Proceed with the Work without interfering with ordinary use of streets, aisles, passages, exits, and operations of the owner.
- F. All Contractor personnel must check in with the facilities engineering department and/or the General Contractor upon arrival and upon departure.

#### 1.10 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

- A. Insofar as possible, deliver items in manufacturers' original unopened packaging. Where this is not practical, cover items with protective materials, to keep them from being damaged. Use care in loading, transporting, unloading, and storage to keep items from being damaged.
- B. Store items in a clean dry place and protect from damage.

#### 1.11 RECORD DRAWINGS

- A. Keep a set of blueline prints at the job site exclusively for recording deviations from the Construction Drawings.
- B. Record locations and depths of buried and concealed conduits from fixed, easily identifiable objects, such as building walls. Where conduits are concealed in walls, indicate distances off of building corners or other building features not likely to be disturbed by future alterations.
- C. Mark deviations in colored pencils so that work of various systems can be easily identified.
- D. When Work is completed, record all deviations in an electronic format using AutoCAD 2010 in a format usable to the Owner. Coordinate this format with the Owner.
- E. Submit two copies of completed "record drawings" on compact disc to Owner's Representative for distribution.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

- A. All materials and equipment used in carrying out these specifications are to be new and have UL listing, or listing by other recognized testing laboratory when such listings are available.

- B. Model numbers and manufacturers included in this specification are listed to establish a standard of product quality.
- C. Other qualified manufacturers may be substituted only with the Owner's written consent. To request a substitution, the Contractor shall submit complete technical data, samples, and if requested, results of independent testing laboratory tests of proposed equipment.
  - 1. If proposed System includes equipment other than specified model numbers, submit a list of major items and their quantities, with a one-line schematic diagram for review.
  - 2. Material not specifically identified within this document but which is required for the successful implementation of the intended system(s), shall be of the same class and quality as the specified material and equipment.
  - 3. Include a list of previously installed projects using proposed equipment that are similar in nature to specified system.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 COORDINATION

- A. Insofar as it is possible to determine in advance, advise the General Contractor to leave proper chases and openings. Place all outlets, anchors, sleeves, and supports prior to pouring concrete or installation of masonry work. Should the Contractor neglect doing this, any cutting and/or patching required is to be done at this Contractor's expense. Visit site and be informed of conditions under which work must be performed. No subsequent allowance will be made because of error or failure to obtain necessary information to completely estimate and perform work involved.
- B. Carefully coordinate with other divisions to ensure proper power requirements, grounding, fireproofing and interlocking controls between the fire alarm system, security system, and other owner furnished systems.
- C. Notify other tradesmen of any deviations or special conditions necessary for the installation of work. Interferences between work of various Contractors to be resolved prior to installation. Work installed not in compliance with specifications and drawings and without properly checking and coordinating as specified above shall, if necessary, be removed and properly reinstalled without additional cost to Owner.
- D. The Owner or the Owner's Representative shall be the mediating authority in all deviation and disputes arising on project.
- E. Coordinate with local telephone and cable service providers to assure that proper points of service, demarcation location and grounding requirements are in accordance with contract drawings. Duct bank is to be provided by Division 26. This Contractor shall be involved regarding discussions about services to the building.
  - 1. Coordinate with other trades to provide wall and ceiling access panels wherever required for access to communication equipment.
- F. Intent:
  - 1. These sections of specifications and drawings form a complete set of documents for communications systems for this project. Neither is complete without the other. Any item mentioned in one shall be as binding as though mentioned in both.

2. The intent of these specifications and drawings is to form a guide for a complete systems installation. Where an item is reasonably necessary for a complete system but not specifically mentioned, such as pull boxes, fittings, expansion fittings, support hangers, etc. provide same without additional cost to Owner.
3. Communication Equipment Room (CER) layouts indicated on drawings are diagrammatical only. Exact location of outlets and equipment to be coordinated and governed by project conditions. The Designer reserves the right to make any reasonable changes (approximately 6 feet) in location of junction boxes, or equipment prior to roughing in of such without additional cost to Owner.

G. Deviations:

1. No deviations from specifications and drawings to be made without full knowledge and consent of Designer.
2. Should the Contractor find during progress of work that existing conditions make desirable a modification of the requirements of any particular item, report such item promptly to Designer for his decision and instructions.

H. Main Horizontal Pathway/Raceway

1. Unless otherwise noted on the drawings, all communications/low voltage systems cabling shall be routed above accessible corridor ceilings parallel to room walls and corridors via cable tray or j-hook supports. Cabling shall be segregated by function as follows:
  - a. Voice/data cabling.
  - b. All other systems.

3.2 CONTINUITY OF SERVICES

- A. The Contractor shall not take any action that will interfere with, or interrupt, existing building services unless previous arrangements have been made with the owner's representative. Arrange the Work to minimize shutdown time.
- B. Owner's personnel will perform shutdown of operating systems. The Contractor shall give three (3) days' advance notice for systems shutdown.
- C. Should services be inadvertently interrupted, immediately furnish labor, including overtime, material, and equipment necessary for prompt restoration of interrupted service.

3.3 TRENCHING, EXCAVATION, BACKFILLING, AND REPAIRS

- A. Trenching, Excavation, and Backfilling is the responsibility of the General Contractor. This Contractor is to coordinate all requirements with the GC. Failure to properly coordinate this effort resulting in additional trenching, excavation, backfilling, or repairs shall be performed without additional cost to Owner.

3.4 PLYWOOD BACKBOARD AND WALL BACKING

- A. Contractor shall provide 4' W x 8' H x 3/4" D fire retardant plywood backboard as indicated in all Communication Rooms. Plywood is to be painted with two coats of fire retardant paint on all six sides and installed 6" above finished floor. The fire rating on the plywood shall be masked prior to painting and the mask removed after installation such that the fire rating is always visible.

- B. General Contractor is to provide appropriate backing in walls as required for mounting brackets and other wall mounted equipment per manufacturer requirements.
- C. Where work is to be done in an existing Telecommunication Room (TR), the Contractor shall ensure plywood in the TR is flame retardant. If the existing plywood does not comply the Contractor shall replace it with plywood compliant with 3.4.A.

### 3.5 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Select appropriate type or types of through penetration firestop devices or systems appropriate for each type of communications penetration and base each selection on criteria specified herein.
- B. Selected systems shall not be less than the hourly time delay ratings indicated in the Contract Documents for each respective fire-rated floor, wall, or other partition of building construction. Firestop for each type of communications penetration shall conform to requirements of an independent testing laboratory design drawing or manufacturer's approved modification when used in conjunction with details shown on the Drawings.
- C. Perform all necessary coordination with trades constructing floors, walls, or other partitions of building construction with respect to size and shape of each opening to be constructed and device or system approved for use in each instance.
- D. Coordinate each firestop selection with adjacent Work for dimensional or other interference and for feasibility. In areas accessible to public and other "finished" areas, firestop systems Work shall be selected, installed, and finished to the quality of adjacent surfaces of building construction being penetrated.
- E. Use materials that have no irritating or objectionable odors when firestopping is required in existing buildings and areas that are occupied.
- F. Provide damming materials, plates, wires, restricting collars, and devices necessary for proper installation of Firestopping. Remove combustible installation aids after firestopping material has cured.
- G. All firestops shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions in order to maintain the specific rating assigned by the independent testing laboratory.
- H. Existing raceways, cable trays, and cabling that penetrate existing building construction shall be firestopped to the extent necessary to fill cavities that may exist between existing building construction and existing communications penetrations or existing conduit sleeve, and between existing conduits and existing conduit sleeve.
- I. If required by inspecting authorities:
  - 1. Expose and remove Firestopping to the extent directed by inspecting authority to permit his or her inspection.
  - 2. Reinstall new firestopping and restore Work where removed for inspection.

### 3.6 TESTS

- A. On completion of Work, installation shall be entirely free of damaged conductors, software errors, incomplete jack termination including labeling and faceplates and dust. Perform a thorough operation test in the presence of the Owner or their representative. Provide documentation of all test results as outlined in each system's specifications. Include labor, materials and instruments for above tests.
- B. Furnish owner, as a part of closing documents, a copy of such tests including identification of each cable, also the dedicated communication service ground test as required by each systems individual manufacturer indicating compliance with their requirements.
- C. Prior to final observation and acceptance, test and leave in satisfactory operating condition, all systems and equipment including but not limited to the following:
  - 1. Grounding.
  - 2. Firestopping of all sleeves and conduits.
  - 3. Telephone and LAN systems.
  - 4. Turn in test results on cabling.

### 3.7 INSPECTION FEES AND PERMITS

- A. Obtain and pay for all necessary permits and inspection fees required for communication systems installation.

### 3.8 OBSERVATIONS

- A. When field observation services are a part of the project scope, the Designer's office will provide periodic observation of the progress of Work specified herein. Purpose of the observation is to ensure compliance of Contractor's Work with specifications and drawings. The Designer's office may also observe tests required of this Contractor as called for in other sections of specifications.
- B. Specifications and drawings represent Work to be done in view of total project requirements. Final location of conduits, jacks, outlets, components, etc., to eliminate possible conflict with other trades is responsibility of this Contractor. Contractor to provide all supervision required for his personnel to ensure that installation is made in accordance with specifications and drawings and all safety rules and regulations are observed. In event of conflicts of Work on project with other trades, Contractor to make every reasonable effort to resolve conflict through meetings and discussions with other parties involved, by preparation of drawings or other appropriate action. Only after this has been done shall the Designer's assistance be requested through the RFI process.
- C. When the Designer is requested to visit the project to aid in resolution of conflicts, or for witnessing tests, they shall be given a minimum of 48 hours notice prior to time their presence is requested at job site.

### 3.9 WARRANTY-GUARANTEE

- A. The Designer reserves right to accept or reject any part of the installation which does not successfully meet requirements as set out in these specifications.
- B. This Contractor shall, and hereby does, guarantee all Work installed under this division shall be free from defects in workmanship and materials for a period of one year from date

of final acceptance. This Contractor further agrees to repair or replace any defective material or workmanship which is or becomes defective within the terms of this warranty-guarantee.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 27 05 26 – GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS

### PART 1 GENERAL

#### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

- A. Provide all labor, materials, and equipment for the complete installation of Work called for in the Contract Documents.

#### 1.2 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. This section includes the minimum requirements for the equipment and cable installations in communications equipment rooms (Telecommunications Closets).
- B. Included in this section are the minimum composition requirements and installation methods for the following:
  - 1. Telecommunications Grounding Busbars
  - 2. Telecommunications Bonding Accessories

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. All cable and equipment shall be installed in a neat and workmanlike manner. All methods of construction that are not specifically described or indicated in the contract documents shall be subject to the control and approval of the Owner or Owner Representative. Equipment and materials shall be of the quality and manufacture indicated. The equipment specified is based upon the acceptable manufactures listed. Where “approved equal” is stated, equipment shall be equivalent in every way to that of the equipment specified and subject to approval.
- B. Strictly adhere to all Building Industry Consulting Service International (BICSI), Electronic Industries Alliance (EIA) and Telecommunications Industry Association (TIA) recommended installation practices when installing communications/data cabling.
- C. Material and Work specified herein shall comply with the applicable requirements of:
  - 1. ANSI/TIA-568-C.0 Generic Telecommunications Cabling for Customer Premises, 2009.
  - 2. ANSI/TIA-568-C.1 Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard, 2009.
  - 3. ANSI/TIA-569-B Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces
  - 4. ANSI/TIA/EIA - 606-A Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure of Commercial Buildings
  - 5. ANSI-J-STD - 607-A Joint Standard for Commercial Building Grounding (Earthing) and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications
  - 6. NFPA 70 - National Electric Code, 2014
  - 7. BICSI - Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual, 13th Edition

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with provisions of Division 1.
- B. Comply with provisions of Section 27 05 00, 27 05 28, 27 11 16, 27 11 23, 27 51 13, 28

13 00, 28 14 00, and 28 16 00.

- c. Provide product data for the following:
  1. Manufacturers cut sheets, specifications and installation instructions for all products for review.

**PART 2 PRODUCTS**

**2.1 WALL-MOUNT BUSBARS**

- A. Telecommunications Grounding Busbar (TGB)
  1. Telecommunications Grounding Busbar (TGB) shall be constructed of .25" (6.4 mm) thick solid copper bar.
  2. The busbar shall be minimum 2" (50 mm) high and 12" (300 mm) long and shall have minimum 9 attachment points (one row) for two-hole grounding lugs.
  3. The hole pattern for attaching grounding lugs shall meet the requirements of ANSI-JSTD - 607-A and shall accept 6 lugs with 5/8" (15.8 mm) hole centers and 3 lugs with 1" (25.4 mm) hole centers.
  4. The busbar shall include wall-mount stand-off brackets, assembly screws and insulators creating a 4" (100 mm) standoff from the wall.
  5. The busbar shall be UL Listed as grounding and bonding equipment.
  6. Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. Ortronics
    - b. Chatsworth Products, Inc. (CPI)
    - c. Owner Approved Equivalent.

**B. Responsibility Matrix**

Item	Provided by Contractor	Provided by Owner
TGB	X	
Ground Wiring	X	

**2.2 BONDING ACCESSORIES**

- A. Two Mounting Hole Ground Terminal Block
  1. Ground terminal block shall be made of electroplated tin aluminum extrusion.
  2. Ground terminal block shall accept conductors ranging from #14 AWG through 2/0.
  3. The conductors shall be held in place by two stainless steel set screws.
  4. Ground terminal block shall have two 1/4" (6.4 mm) holes spaced on 5/8" (15.8 mm) centers to allow secure two-bolt attachment to the rack or cabinet.
  5. Ground terminal block shall be UL Listed as a wire connector.
  6. Acceptable Manufacturers:
    - a. Chatsworth Products, Inc. (CPI),
    - b. Owner Approved Equivalent.
  
- B. Compression Lugs
  1. Compression lugs shall be manufactured from electroplated tinned copper.
  2. Compression lugs shall have two holes spaced on 5/8" (15.8 mm) or 1" (25.4 mm) centers, as stated below, to allow secure two bolt connections to busbars.
  3. Compression lugs shall be sized to fit a specific size conductor, sizes #6 to 4/0, as



stated below.

4. Compression lugs shall be UL Listed as wire connectors.
5. Acceptable Manufacturers:
  - a. Ortronics
  - b. Chatsworth Products, Inc. (CPI)
  - c. Owner Approved Equivalent.

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

#### A. Wall-Mount Busbars

1. Attach busbars to the wall with appropriate hardware according to the manufacturer's installation instructions.
2. Conductor connections to the TMGB or TGB shall be made with 2-Hole Bolt-On Compression Lugs sized to fit the busbar and the conductors.
3. Each lug shall be attached with stainless steel hardware after preparing the bond according to manufacturer recommendations and treating the bonding surface on the busbar with antioxidant to help prevent corrosion at the bond.
4. The wall-mount busbar shall be bonded to ground as part of the overall Telecommunications Bonding and Grounding System.

#### B. Ground Terminal Block

1. Every rack and cabinet shall be bonded to the TMGB or TGB.
2. Minimum bonding connection to racks and cabinets shall be made with a rack-mount 2-hole ground terminal block sized to fit the conductor and rack and installed according to manufacturer recommendations.
3. Remove paint between rack/cabinet and terminal block, clean surface and use antioxidant between the rack and the terminal block to help prevent corrosion at the bond.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 27 05 28 – PATHWAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

### PART 1 GENERAL

#### 1.1 WORK INCLUDED

- A. Provide all labor, materials, and equipment for the complete installation of Work called for in the Contract Documents.

#### 1.2 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. This section includes the minimum requirements for communications cable pathway installations in common areas (outside of the Telecommunications Closets).
- B. Included in this section are the minimum composition requirements and installation methods for the following:
  - 1. J-Hook Pathway System.
  - 2. Fire Rated Pathway Devices.

#### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. All cable and equipment shall be installed in a neat and workmanlike manner. All methods of construction that are not specifically described or indicated in the contract documents shall be subject to the control and approval of the Owner or Owner Representative. Equipment and materials shall be of the quality and manufacture indicated. The equipment specified is based upon the acceptable manufacturers listed. Where “approved equal” is stated, equipment shall be equivalent in every way to that of the equipment specified and subject to approval.
- B. Strictly adhere to all Building Industry Consulting Service International (BICSI), Electronic Industries Alliance (EIA) and Telecommunications Industry Association (TIA) recommended installation practices when installing UTP data cabling.
- C. Material and Work specified herein shall comply with the applicable requirements of:
  - 1. ANSI/TIA-568-C.0 Generic Telecommunications Cabling for Customer Premises, 2009.
  - 2. ANSI/TIA-568-C.1 Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard, 2009.
  - 3. ANSI/TIA-569-B Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces.
  - 4. ANSI/TIA/EIA-606-A Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure of Commercial Buildings, 2002
  - 5. ANSI-J-STD-607-A Joint Standard for Commercial Building Grounding (Earthing) and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications
  - 6. NFPA 70 – National Electric Code, 2014
  - 7. BICSI – Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual, 13<sup>th</sup> Edition
  - 8. NEMA – VE-1 – Metal Cable Tray Systems
  - 9. NEMA – VE-2 – Metal Cable Tray Installation Guidelines

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with provisions of Division 1.
- B. Comply with provisions of Section 27 05 00 and 27 05 26.
- C. Provide product data for the following:
  - 1. Submit manufacturer's cut sheets, specifications and installation instructions for all products for review by Owner Authorized Representative.

#### 1.5 CONTRACTOR CLOSE OUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit Closeout documentation in accordance with Division 1 of the Project Manual and any applicable supplements. The number of submittal sets required is the greater of either the requirements of Division 1 of the Project Manual, or a minimum of four (4) sets.
  - 1. Segregate documents into separate binders containing data relevant to operational, maintenance, and warranty issues.
  - 2. Warranty and Maintenance:
  - 3. Test Report Binder(s)
  - 4. Record Drawings

#### 1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Ship product in its original container, to prevent damage or entrance of foreign matter.
- B. Handling and shipping in accordance with manufacturer's recommendation.
- C. Provide protective covering during construction, to prevent damage or entrance of foreign matter.
- D. Replace at no expense to Owner, product damaged during storage, handling or the course of construction.

#### 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Verify conditions on the job site are applicable to this Work. Notify Architect in writing of discrepancies, conflicts, or omissions promptly upon discovery.
- B. The Drawings diagrammatically show cabling and arrangements of equipment fitting the space available without interference. If conditions exist which make it impossible to install Work as shown, recommend solutions and/or submit drawings to the Architect for approval, showing how the Work may be installed.

#### 1.8 WARRANTY

- A. Warrant labor and product to be free of defects and deficiencies, and to conform to the drawings and specifications as to kind, quality, function, and characteristics, following the date of substantial completion. Repair or replace defects occurring in labor or product within the Warranty period without charge.

### PART 2 PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 NON-CONTINUOUS CABLE SUPPORT SYSTEMS

- A. Non-Continuous Cable Supports (J-Hooks)
  - 1. Non-continuous cable supports shall provide a bearing surface of sufficient width to comply with required bend radii of high-performance cables; cULus Listed.
  - 2. Non-continuous cable supports shall have flared edges to prevent damage while installing cables.
  - 3. Non-continuous cable supports sized 1 5/16" and larger shall have a cable retainer strap to provide containment of cables within the hanger. The cable retainer strap shall be removable and reusable and be suitable for use in air handling spaces.
  - 4. Non-continuous cable supports shall have an electro-galvanized or G60 finish and shall be rated for indoor use in non-corrosive environments.
  - 5. Stainless Steel non-continuous cable supports are intended for indoor and outdoor use in non-corrosive environments or where only mildly corrosive conditions apply.
  - 6. Approved Manufacturers:
    - a. Erico
    - b. Hilti
    - c. Cooper B-Line
    - d. Caddy
    - e. Owner Approved Equivalent
  
- B. Non-Continuous Cable Support Assemblies from Drop Wire/Ceiling
  - 1. Fastener to wire/rod with one non-continuous cable support, factory or jobsite assembled; rated for indoor use in non-corrosive environments; cULus Listed.
  - 2. Approved Manufacturers:
    - a. Erico
    - b. Hilti
    - c. Owner Approved Equivalent

## 2.2 FIRE-RATED PATHWAY DEVICES

- A. Provide through-wall fire-rated pathway devices, as required.
  - 1. Cables penetrating through fire-rated floors or walls shall utilize fire-rated pathway devices capable of providing an F rating equal to the rating of the barrier in which the device is installed.
  - 2. The device shall be tested for smoke leakage (L rating) and shall not require the use of any optional sealing materials to achieve the published rating.
  - 3. The device shall utilize a fire and smoke sealing system that automatically adjusts to the addition or removal of cables.
  - 4. Wiring devices shall be capable of allowing a 0 to 100-percent visual fill of cables.
  - 5. Wire devices shall be of a sufficient size to accommodate the quantity and size of data cables required and shall be suitable for use with new or existing cable installations.
  - 6. The installed device (in normal use) shall require no maintenance and shall accommodate future cable changes without mechanical adjustment and/or removal or replacement of protective materials.
  - 7. Approved Products:
    - a. STI EZ-PATH
    - b. Hilti CP 653
    - c. Owner Approved Equivalent

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Non-Continuous Cable Support Systems (J-hooks)
1. Installation and configuration shall conform to the requirements of the current revision levels of ANSI/ EIA/TIA Standards 568 & 569, NFPA 70 (National Electrical Code), applicable local codes, and to the manufacturer's installation instructions.
  2. Install cables using techniques, practices, and methods that are consistent with Category 5 or higher requirements and that supports Category 5 or higher performance of completed and linked signal paths, end to end.
  3. Install cables without damaging conductors, shield, or jacket.
  4. Do not bend cables, in handling or in installing, to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
  5. Pull cables without exceeding cable manufacturer's recommended pulling tensions. Use pulling means that will not damage media.
  6. Do not exceed load ratings specified by manufacturer.
  7. Adjustable non-continuous support sling shall have a static load limit of 100 lbs.
  8. Follow manufacturer's recommendations for allowable fill capacity for each size non-continuous cable support.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 27 15 00 – COMMUNICATIONS HORIZONTAL CABLING

### PART 1 – GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Provide all labor, materials, and equipment for the complete installation of Work called for in the Contract Documents.
- B. This section includes the minimum requirements for the installation of horizontal cabling between Telecommunications Rooms and Work Area Outlets.
- C. Included in this section are the minimum composition requirements and installation methods for the following:
  - 1. Category 6 Cable
  - 2. Faceplates, Jacks, and Modules
  - 3. Patch Panels and Organizers
  - 4. Patch Cords
  - 5. Cable Ties

#### 1.2 DEFINITIONS AND TERMS

Trade association names and communications terminology are frequently abbreviated. The following acronyms or abbreviations may be referenced within this Section:

- |          |  |
|----------|--|
| 1. ANSI  | American National Standards Institute              |
| 2. AWG   | American Wire Gauge                                |
| 3. BICSI | Building Industry Consulting Service International |
| 4. CMP   | Communications Plenum Cable                        |
| 5. DCM   | Design Criteria Manual                             |
| 6. EIA   | Electronics Industries Association                 |
| 7. FEP   | Fluorinated Ethylene Propylene                     |
| 8. IDC   | Insulation Displacement Connector                  |
| 9. IDF   | Intermediate Distribution Frame                    |
| 10. IEC  | International Electrotechnical Commission          |
| 11. IEEE | Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers  |
| 12. ISO  | International Standards Organization               |
| 13. MDF  | Main Distribution Frame                            |
| 14. DISD | Dallas Independent School District                 |
| 15. NEMA | National Electric Manufacturers Association        |
| 16. NEXT | Near End Crosstalk                                 |
| 17. NFPA | National Fire Protection Association               |
| 18. OAR  | Owner's Authorized Representative                  |
| 19. PCI  | Ortronics Certified Installer                      |
| 20. RCDD | Registered Communications Distribution Designer    |
| 21. RFP  | Request for Proposal                               |
| 22. RL   | Return Loss  |
| 23. STD  | Standard   |
| 24. TIA  | Telecommunications Industry Association            |

- |         |                             |
|---------|-----------------------------|
| 25. TSB | Technical Services Bulletin |
| 26. UL  | Underwriters Laboratories   |
| 27. UTP | Unshielded Twisted Pair     |

### 1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. All cable and equipment shall be installed in a neat and workmanlike manner. All methods of construction that are not specifically described or indicated in the contract documents shall be subject to the control and approval of the OAR.
- B. Equipment and materials shall be of the quality and manufacture indicated. The equipment specified is based upon the acceptable manufacturers listed. Where "approved equal" is stated, or a substitution is requested, equipment shall be equivalent in every way to that of the equipment specified. All substitutions are subject to the control and approval of the OAR.
- C. Strictly adhere to all BICSI, EIA and TIA recommended installation practices when installing communications cabling.
- D. Contractor's Qualifications:
1. Firms regularly engaged in the installation of Data Communications cabling and that have five (5) years of installation experience with systems similar to that required for this project.
  2. Provide references to include client names, phone numbers and a summary of project details. These references will be checked and the clients will be asked questions relative to the performance of your company.
  3. Provide verification that installation personnel responsible have been properly trained to install the products described in this Section.
  4. Provide a BICSI RCDD certified professional for oversight on this project. This person does not have to be working on-site, but must be accessible to answer questions and provide weekly status reports. The RCDD shall be a full-time employee of the contractor.
  5. Provide full time project manager with a minimum of ten (10) years field experience in installation of communications systems and infrastructures. Project manager shall be assigned for the duration of the project and shall not be replaced without written consent from the OAR.
- E. Manufacturer's Qualifications:
1. Firms regularly engaged in manufacture of products of the types, ratings and capacities required for this project; whose products have been in satisfactory use in similar service for not less than five (5) years, with production capabilities per applicable NEMA standards.
- F. Material and Work specified herein shall comply with the applicable requirements of:
1. NECA 1 – Standard Practice of Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction
  2. ANSI/NECA/BICSI-568 – Standard for Installing Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling
  3. ANSI/TIA-568-C.0 – Generic Telecommunications Cabling for Customer Premises

4. ANSI/TIA-568-C.1 – Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standard
5. ANSI/TIA-568-C.2 – Balanced Twisted-Pair Telecommunications Cabling and Components Standards
6. EIA/TIA TSB-36 – Additional Cable Specifications for Unshielded Twisted Pair
7. EIA/TIA TSB-40 – Additional Transmission Specifications for Unshielded Twisted Pair
8. EIA/TIA TSB-67 – Transmission Performance Specifications for Field-testing of Unshielded Twisted Pair Cabling Systems
9. ANSI/TIA/EIA-569-A Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces
10. ANSI/TIA/EIA-606-A – Administration Standard for the Telecommunications Infrastructure of Commercial Buildings
11. ANSI-J-STD-607-A – Joint Standard for Commercial Building Grounding (Earthing) and Bonding Requirements for Telecommunications
12. ANSI/TIA-942 – Telecommunications Infrastructure Standard for Data Centers
13. NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code, 2011
14. UL 13 – Standard for Safety for Power-Limited Circuit Cables
15. UL 444– Standard for Safety for Communications Cables
16. BICSI – Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual, 13th Edition
17. IEEE 802 – Local Area Network Standard
18. DISD Design Criteria Manual
19. Applicable codes and directives of authorities having jurisdiction

G. Work:

1. The Work shall be performed in compliance with the applicable manufacturer's installation instructions, Standards, and certifications listed herein, the Contract Documents, and governing codes and regulations of the authorities having jurisdiction.
2. The drawing and specification requirements govern where they exceed Code and Regulation requirements.
3. Where requirements between governing Codes and Regulations vary, the more restrictive provision applies.
4. Nothing in the Contract Documents grants authority or permission to disregard or violate any legal requirements.

## 1.4 CONFLICTS

- A. This installation shall be made in strict accordance with the Specifications, Drawings, any applicable codes, referenced publications and standards. In case of conflicts between the aforementioned, notify the OAR in writing prior to commencement of affected work.

## 1.5 PERMITS

- A. The Contractor shall secure and pay for all necessary permits and fees required for the execution of this Work. Work will not start until all permit applications are approved.



## 1.6 SCHEDULING

- A. The Contractor shall comply with all scheduling requests established by OAR, both prior to commencing Work, and during construction. The Contractor shall provide a detailed schedule of work to be performed. This schedule shall be submitted with the bid and, if accepted, will be used to track work status.
- B. Work should be scheduled not to interfere with day-to-day operations within the facility. Operations vary by area and should be given careful consideration in relation to the schedule.
- C. The successful Contractor for all or any portion of the work described by this RFP package will be responsible for achieving a complete and fully functional installation on or before the contract scheduled completion date.

## 1.7 REQUIREMENTS

- A. All references to manufacturers, model numbers and other pertinent information herein are intended to establish standards of performance and quality of construction. The OAR must approve material submittal and substitutions in writing.
- B. Verification that all the components specified and installed meet the criteria specified by the respective component manufacturer, supplier and designer is the responsibility of the Contractor.
- C. All installation tools, special equipment and testing apparatus required to accomplish field connections and related work as described herein shall be furnished by the Contractor at no additional cost.
- D. The requirements as given in this document are to be adhered to unless revised by the OAR in writing.
- E. The Owner reserves the right to waive these requirements at any time.

## 1.8 SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with provisions of Division 01.
- B. Comply with provisions of Section 27 05 00.
- C. Produce Shop Drawings for ALL horizontal cabling, to include but not limited to, proposed routing and its location relative to building structure (columns, floor or ceiling) and its relationship to electrical, mechanical elements as well as any horizontal cables that may exceed 295' in length (including service loops).
- D. Provide all submittal requirements under this section as a single package.
- E. Provide product data for the following:
  1. Product data consisting of manufacturers specifications for each type of product to be installed, all applicable certifications and elevation/plan documents supporting compliance with stated Specifications.
  2. Manufacturer's certificate of acceptance of the qualifications of the installing Contractor to install, test and maintain the manufacturer's equipment.
  3. Manufacturer's installation specifications for UTP cabling and optical fiber, indicating minimum bend radius and maximum pull tension.
  4. Outline of administration labeling scheme for voice and data communications cabling and termination locations per ANSI/EIA/TIA-606 and DISD DCM.

5. Proposed format of as-built documentation.

## 1.9 CONTRACTOR CLOSE OUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit Closeout documentation in accordance with Division 01 of the Project Manual and any applicable supplements. The number of submittal sets required is the greater of either the requirements of Division 01 of the Project Manual, or a minimum of four (4) sets.
  1. Segregate documents into separate binders containing data relevant to operational, maintenance, and warranty issues.
  2. Test reports on all copper and optical fiber cables (electronic file format and hard copy).
  3. As-built cable schedules with recorded cable routing and lengths of each designated run.
  4. As built documentation of all cabling systems.
  5. As built documentation of IDF/TR modifications and associated cabinet elevations.
  6. Laminated as-built drawing sheet of TR service area representing each level, with a scale of not less than 1/8", mounted on the wall of each TR.
- B. Warranty and Maintenance:
  1. Test Report Binder(s)
  2. Record Drawings

## 1.10 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver materials factory-packaged in containers or reels and handle in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. Store in a clean, dry space and protect products from damaging fumes and traffic. Handle materials carefully to avoid damage.
- B. Storage space on project site may be limited. Contractor shall coordinate delivery and arrange storage of materials and equipment with the OAR.
- C. Components sensitive to damage in a harsh environment shall be stored off-site and delivered as needed.
- D. Provide protective covering during construction to prevent damage or entrance of foreign matter.
- E. Contractor is responsible for on-site security of tools, test equipment and materials.
- F. Replace at no expense to Owner, product damaged during storage, handling or the course of construction.

## 1.11 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Verify conditions on the job site are applicable to this Work. Notify Architect in writing of discrepancies, conflicts, or omissions promptly upon discovery.

- B. The Drawings diagrammatically show cabling and arrangements of equipment fitting the space available without interference. If conditions exist which make it impossible to install Work as shown, recommend solutions and/or submit drawings to the Architect for approval, showing how the Work may be installed.

## 1.12 WARRANTY

- A. Warrant labor and product to be free of defects and deficiencies, and to conform to the drawings and specifications as to kind, quality, function, and characteristics, following Contractor Warranty requirements defined in Division 01, or for a period of 1 year from date of final completion, whichever is longer. Repair or replace defects occurring in labor or product within the Warranty period without charge.
- B. All surplus parts and pieces to the installation shall be maintained as a spare parts inventory at the building site. Parts replaced during the warranty period shall have a warranty matching that of the original part from date of replacement.
- C. In addition to the warranty outlined above, the Contractor shall facilitate a warranty between the Owner and the Manufacturer that provides coverage of the installed cabling system for a period of (25) twenty-five years (Ortronics Certification Plus System Warranty). This warranty will cover the installed horizontal cabling system (Patch Panel to Workstation). Category 6 copper links originating from patch panels shall be warranted against the link performance minimum expected results defined in the ANSI/TIA/EIA Telecommunications Systems Bulletin (TSB-67), now incorporated into TIA/EIA 568-B, for Category 6 performance requirements. Category 6 copper links originating from wall mounted 110-style termination blocks shall be warranted against link performance minimum expected results for Category 6 performance requirements. Installation shall be performed by a Ortronics Certified Installer.

## PART 2 – PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL

- A. The products specified in this document do not necessarily constitute the exhaustive list of products required to complete the statement of work. Except where described in the SUMMARY subpart of this document, the contractor is responsible for providing any other parts and materials needed to deliver a complete and working system.

### 2.2 ACCEPTABLE DISTRIBUTORS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements set forth in DISD DCM, Contractor shall procure all horizontal cabling components thru an approved Ortronics product distributor.

## 2.3 ACCEPTABLE VENDORS AND MATERIALS

- A. Subject to compliance with requirements, install products from the following manufacturers, except where noted:
  - 1. Cable, Copper
    - a. Ortronics Corp.
    - b. Owner Approved Equivalent
  - 2. Termination Components
    - a. Ortronics.
  
- B. Part numbers are provided for convenience purposes only; the contractor is responsible for complete material list and quantities. All materials listed are manufactured by Ortronics unless otherwise noted. Colors shall be approved by Owner.

## 2.4 CATEGORY 6 PRODUCTS

- A. UTP Cable (Voice/Data)
  - 1. Provide Category 6 cabling for all voice and data work area outlet locations.
  - 2. Cable shall far exceed ANSI/TIA/EIA-568-B.2-1 and ISO/IEC 11801 Class E standards.
  - 3. The conductors shall be 24 AWG construction with FEP (CMP) or polyolefin (CMR) insulation.
  - 4. The copper conductors shall be twisted in pairs, separated by an integrated pair divider and shall be covered by a low smoke, flame retardant (CMP) jacket or a flame retardant (CMR) jacket.
  - 5. Provide plenum-rated cable for all plenum environments and riser-rated cable for all non-plenum environments.
  - 6. The jacket color for cables shall be specific per system per DISD TDGs
  - 7. Approved products:
    - a. DataGain Category 6+ UTP, Plenum, 66-240-2B
    - b. Owner Approved equivalent
  
- B. UTP Jack Modules
  - 1. Provide Category 6 jack modules to terminate both ends of each horizontal cable.
  - 2. Module shall exceed requirements of ANSI/TIA-568-C.2 Category 6, IEEE 802.3an-2006, and ISO 11801 Class E channel standards and exceed requirements of ANSI/TIA-568-C.2 Category 6 and IEC 61156-5 Category 6 component standards.
  - 3. Module shall meet requirements of IEEE 802.af and IEEE 802.3at for Power over Ethernet (PoE) applications.
  - 4. Module shall be 100% tested to ensure NEXT and RL performance and be individually serialized for traceability.
  - 5. Modules for DISD work area outlet locations shall be blue in color.
  - 6. Modules in DISD IDF patch panels shall be black in color.
  - 7. Approved products:
    - a. Ortronics OR-S226000 Series II, CAT6 modules
  
- C. Category 6 Patch Cords for IT Spaces (MDF/IDF)
  - 1. Provide Category 6 small diameter patch cords for voice and data ports within these locations.

2. Patch cord shall exceed ANSI/TIA-568-C.2 Category 6 and ISO 11801 Class E standards.
  3. Shall meet requirements of IEEE 802.af and IEEE 802.3at for PoE applications in bundle sizes of no more than 40 patch cords.
  4. Each patch cord shall be 100% performance tested and wired T568B.
  5. Patch cord shall be constructed of Category 6, 28 AWG UTP stranded cable and TX6™ PLUS Modular Plugs; plug contacts plated with 50 micro-inches of gold for superior performance.
  6. Patch cord plugs shall meet all applicable ANSI/TIA/EIA-968-A requirements and exceeds IEC 60603-7 specifications.
  7. Plugs shall use an integral pair manager to optimize performance and consistency by reducing untwisting of conductors within the plug.
  8. Patch cord shall perform in center of TIA/EIA component range, ensuring interoperability and excellent performance.
  9. Patch cord shall be labeled with an identification of performance level, length, and a quality control number.
  10. Provide a variety of 5', 7' and 10' length patch cords for CR/TR/IT Room locations. Include a quantity necessary to patch 50% of each available patch panel port:
    - a. 25% of the patch cords are to be 5' in length.
    - b. 50% of the patch cords are to be 7' in length.
    - c. 25% of the patch cords are to be 10' in length.
  11. Coordinate patch cord colors with the OAR.
  12. Approved products:
    - a. Ortronics OR-MC6xx-## clarity CAT6 Patch cords. (Where "xx" = length and "##" = color)
    - b. Owner approved equivalent
- D. Category 6 Patch Cords (Work Area Outlet faceplate)
1. Provide Category 6 patch cords for voice and data work area outlets.
  2. Patch cord shall exceed ANSI/TIA-568-C.2 Category 6 and ISO 11801 Class E standards.
  3. Shall meet requirements of IEEE 802.af and IEEE 802.3at for PoE applications.
  4. Each patch cord shall be 100% performance tested and wired T568B.
  5. Patch cord shall be constructed of Category 6, 24 AWG UTP stranded cable and TX6™ PLUS Modular Plugs; plug contacts plated with 50 micro-inches of gold for superior performance.
  6. Patch cord plugs shall meet all applicable ANSI/TIA/EIA-968-A requirements and exceeds IEC 60603-7 specifications.
  7. Plugs shall use an integral pair manager to optimize performance and consistency by reducing untwisting of conductors within the plug.
  8. Patch cord shall perform in center of TIA/EIA component range, ensuring interoperability and excellent performance.
  9. Patch cord shall be labeled with an identification of performance level, length, and a quality control number.
  10. Provide a quantity of 10' length patch cords for every port on every work area outlet faceplate.
  11. Provide plenum rated patch cords for work area outlets installed above the ceiling and not patched inside of a raceway (i.e. the patch cord is exposed inside the plenum). These scenarios include, but are not limited to:

- a. Wireless access point locations
- b. CCTV camera locations
12. Coordinate patch cord colors with the OAR.
13. Approved products:
  - a. Ortronics OR-MC6xx-## clarity CAT6 Patch cords. (Where "xx" = length and "##" = color)
  - b. Owner approved equivalent

## 2.5 WORK AREA OUTLET PRODUCTS

- A. Wall Mount Faceplates
  1. Provide wall mount faceplates for voice and data work area outlets.
  2. Faceplate shall accept two (2), four (4) or six (6) Mini-Com® Modules for UTP, fiber optic, and audio/video, which snap in and out for easy moves, adds, and changes.
  3. Include label/label covers for easy port identification.
  4. Raised rail design for aesthetic appeal.
  5. Faceplate shall be white in color.
  6. Approved products:
    - a. Ortronics OR-40300158 Series II Faceplate.
    - b. Owner approved equivalent.
- B. Wall Phone Plates
  1. Provide faceplates for wall phone locations.
  2. Faceplate shall be of stainless steel construction.
  3. Faceplate shall include mounting studs on plate which are positioned to mount standard wall mount telephones with keystone adaptation flush to wall surface.
  4. Include a Category 6 TX PLUS keystone jack module.
  5. Approved products:
    - a. Owner approved equivalent
- C. Stainless Steel Faceplates
  1. Provide stainless steel faceplates in mechanical, electrical or unfinished spaces.
  2. Faceplate shall be of stainless steel construction.
  3. Faceplate shall accept two (2), four (4) or six (6) Modules for UTP, fiber optic, and audio/video, which snap in and out for easy moves, adds, and changes.
  4. Include label/label covers for easy port identification.
  5. Approved products:
    - a. Owner approved equivalent
- D. Surface Mount Outlet Box
  1. Provide surface mount outlet boxes for work area outlet locations where outlets cannot be recessed.
  2. Shall accept Modules for UTP, fiber optic, and audio/video, which snap in and out for easy moves, adds, and changes.
  3. Mount easily with supplied mounting screws, adhesive tape or optional magnet.
  4. Cable entry from side and rear knockouts and from opening in center of base.
  5. Outlet box shall be white in color.
  6. Approved products:
    - a. Owner approved equivalent

- E. Furniture Faceplate:
  - 1. Provide faceplates for work area outlet locations inside of modular furniture.
  - 2. Shall accept Modules for UTP, fiber optic, and audio/video, which snap in and out for easy moves, adds, and changes.
  - 3. Coordinate the exact faceplate assembly with the furniture manufacturer.
  - 4. Faceplate shall be black in color.
  - 5. Approved products:
    - a. Owner approved equivalent
  
- F. Blank Modules
  - 1. Populate any unused faceplate module openings with blank modules.
  - 2. Blank module color shall match the faceplate color.
  - 3. Populate any unused patch panel module openings with blank modules.
  - 4. Blank module color shall match the patch panel color.
  - 5. Approved products:
    - a. Ortronics OR-40300164 Blank Module, white
    - b. Owner approved equivalent

## 2.6 PATCH PANEL PRODUCTS

- A. Patch Panels
  - 1. Provide modular patch panels in MDF/IDF locations for all horizontal cabling.
  - 2. Patch panel shall accept Modules for UTP, fiber optic, and audio/video, which snap in and out for easy moves, adds, and changes.
  - 3. Use of two label pocket faceplates allowing both port and panel identification.
  - 4. Can be clearly identified with the PanTher™ LS8E or Cougar™ LS9 Hand-Held Thermal Transfer Printers.
  - 5. Use either 24-port or 48-port patch panels in the IDF as required by cable counts.
  - 6. Approved products:
    - a. Ortronics PHA66U48 Patch Panel, 48 port
    - b. Ortronics PHA66U24 Patch Panel, 24 port
    - c. Owner approved equivalent.
  
- B. Strain Relief Bars
  - 1. Install one strain relief bar behind each 24 ports of each patch panel.
  - 2. Acceptable products:
    - a. Leviton 49005-DMB
    - b. Owner Approved Equivalent
  
- C. Horizontal Wire Managers
  - 1. Place horizontal cable managers above and below each patch panel on/in each rack/frame. The horizontal cable manager will guide patch/equipment cords between the vertical cable manager and individual network port connections.
  - 2. The horizontal cable manager shall match the rack-mount width of the rack(s)/frame(s).

3. The horizontal cable manager shall attach to the front or rear of the rack/frame with screws and shall be sized to fit in standard EIA-310-D or EIA-310-E Universal rack-mount spacing (1-3/4" high U).
4. The horizontal cable manager shall be sized to match cabling requirements. Provide a minimum of 1U of horizontal cable management for every 2U of connectivity. Cables must be able to access the cable manager so that no ports are blocked by the cables.
5. A single horizontal cable manager may be used to support multiple patch panels as long as it is sized to match cable fill requirements. Cables must be able to access the cable manager so that no ports are blocked by the cables.
6. The horizontal cable manager shall be a single-sided C-shaped trough with a cover. 2U and 3U high cable managers shall have three edge-protected oval openings at the rear to facilitate front-to-rear cabling through the horizontal manager. The front of the cable manager shall have T-shaped cable guides along the top and bottom surfaces of the cable manager. Evenly spaced cable openings in between the T-shaped cable guides shall allow cables to enter/exit the cable manager from/into the rack-mount space. The cover shall be removable, hinged to open up or down and shall snap on to secure the cover in the closed position.
7. The horizontal cable manager shall be delivered individually boxed, and available in the width(s) and height(s) as specified below and in the contract documents.
8. The horizontal cable manager shall be manufactured from steel, aluminum and plastic.
9. Finish shall be epoxy-polyester hybrid powder coat paint in the color as specified below and in the contract documents. Edge-protectors, T-shaped cable guides and latch hardware is black.
10. Acceptable products:
  - a. Chatsworth Products, Inc.
  - b. Panduit Products, Inc.
  - c. Owner Approved Equivalent

## 2.7 MISCELLANEOUS PRODUCTS

### A. Cable Ties

1. Provide "hook & loop" cable ties for bundling cables.
2. The material shall consist of nylon loops with polypropylene hooks.
3. Use plenum-rated ties in plenum spaces.
4. Approved products:
  - a. Panduit TTS-20R0 Hook & Loop Roll, Low Profile, 20'L, .75"W, Black
  - b. Panduit HLSP\*S-X0 Hook & Loop Cable Tie, Plenum
  - c. Owner approved equivalent.

## PART 3 – EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify conduit, raceways, boxes, fittings and bodies are properly installed as described in Division 26.



- B. Verify grounding and bonding following Section 270526.
- C. Verify supporting devices are properly installed following Section 270528.
- D. Verify conduit has a minimum 1-inch diameter for UTP home runs.
- E. All protected telecommunication terminations require bonding, grounding and a busbar.

### 3.2 INSTALLATION

#### A. General

1. Cables shall be pulled in accordance with the manufacturers recommended practices and in compliance with the NEC and the BICSI Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual. Planning and care shall be taken to prevent abuse and damage during the handling or installation phase. Specified minimum cable bend radius shall be met without deviation.
2. Pull cables simultaneously where more than one is being installed in same raceway. Use pulling compound or lubricant where necessary. Compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Use pulling means including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket weave wire/cable grips that will not damage media or raceway.
3. Protect cable from tension, compression, torsion, bending, squeezing and vibration. Do not pull cables improperly or exceed the Manufacturer's tensile rating. This value shall be not more than thirty-two (32) foot pounds. force (provide breakable link for all cable pulling). There shall be no coils of excess cable left in the ceilings, cable trays, or raised floor areas unless specified otherwise. A trailer pull string shall be left in all conduits before and after cables have been installed. The cabling within the wiring closets/cabinets shall be routed and dressed neatly to their termination points such that no excess cable is present. As cables are pulled into the cabinet, bundle them in groups with Velcro type straps according to their terminating row position. Strap exposed cables for strain relief at the termination in the communications rooms.
4. All strapping and lashing of cable within the IDF(s) shall be made with "Velcro" type straps for easy access to cable bundles to facilitate future "adds and changes". No plastic tie-wraps will be allowed for support of cable.
5. All cabling will be rated for a minimum operation range of -20°C to 75°C
6. All floor and wall penetrations shall be fire-stopped in accordance with local codes and restrictions.
7. New cabling will be installed in cable tray, conduit, and/or J-hooks throughout entirety of cable path.

#### B. Horizontal Cable

1. Install voice and data cable locations and configurations as depicted on drawings.
2. Test all cable prior to installation. Upon failure to perform testing, the installer shall accept the cable as good and assume all liability for the replacement of the cable should it be found defective at a later date.
3. All conformance standards must be certified for multipair and individual cable runs.
4. Jacketing and insulation must satisfy the Underwriter's Laboratories (UL) listed fire rated cable insulation requirements in plenum areas.

5. Any pulling compound or lubricant used in cable installation must not deteriorate the conductor or the insulation. Provide 3M type WLC or an approved equal.
6. Copper cable runs shall not exceed 295 feet. All runs shall be continuous. No splicing is allowed.
7. The Contractor shall install copper cable with a minimum bend radius of six times the diameter of the cable.
8. Provide a 10-foot, patch cable with RJ-45 connectors for 50% of each work area outlet insert installed. Provide a combination of 5, 7 and 10-foot patch cords for each termination in the MCR/MER/TR rooms, as required on the contract drawings. The patch cable rating and connector shall match the horizontal cable/connector rating.
9. Install 10-feet of spare copper cable (service loop) in each closet prior to termination. Provide Velcro type tie wrap for cable support and organization.
10. Install minimum 12-inches of spare copper cable in ceiling plenum prior to dropping down wall to outlet. Support slack to structure with J-Hook and Velcro ties. If there is no plenum, loop shall be located in box prior to termination. Provide box of sufficient size to accommodate spare cable, termination equipment if applicable and maintain bending radius.
11. Install 10-feet of spare copper cable (service loop) at each above ceiling outlet prior to termination. Provide Velcro type tie wrap for cable support and organization.
12. All horizontal cable shall be rated for plenum use.
13. The maximum pulling tension for 4-pair 23 AWG horizontal UTP cables shall not exceed 32 foot pounds. The Contractor shall provide a tension meter during the pulling of all cables. If the meter shows that the tension has exceeded 32 foot pounds, the Contractor shall discard the cable and pull new cable.

### 3.3 WORKSTATION TERMINATION

- A. At the workstation termination point, cables shall be routed and dressed to provide a service loop in case re-termination is necessary. Leave 12 inches of slack at the junction box. Provide strapping of voice and data cable to provide strain relief of cable in relation to outlet termination.
- B. Each horizontal workstation cable shall terminate on a "Mini-Com" modular jack connector and attached to the outlet faceplate. All unused faceplate ports will have a blank insert.
- C. The Contractor shall adhere to the latest termination procedures as specified by manufacturer's instructions.
- D. Follow TIA/EIA 568-A termination procedures.

### 3.4 PATCH SYSTEM

- A. Each horizontal data cable will terminate on a "Mini-Com" modular jack, inserted into the patch panel module. Horizontal termination of individual data cables within the communications room shall be the same as aforementioned termination procedures for the workstation cables.

- B. Mount the distribution panels starting at the upper most position of the racks/rails beginning with contractor provided fiber patch panels. Allow for sufficient space between the distribution panels to allow for horizontal wire managers and cross connect component installation. Provide a detail of your elevation plan to the OWNER or Owner's Representative before proceeding.
- C. Each patch panel shall have a strain relief bar placed to support the CAT6 cables as they lace into the rear of the patch panel.
- D. Ensure a horizontal organizer is placed at the top of the first patch panel. Then in between each patch panel there shall be a horizontal organizer. Below the last patch panel there shall be a horizontal organizer.
- E. Provide and install Category 6 patch cables (as described in parts list) for channel testing. Two (2) patch cables will be provided and installed for each data link. Ten foot cables used for WAO and a combination of five/seven/ten foot cables for IT space patching.
- F. Small diameter patch cords, which are installed in the IT spaces (IDF) shall be installed in a manner as to limit the bundling of patch cords to no more than 40 patch cords.

### 3.5 LABELING

- A. Comply with DISD standards as currently done at Thomas Marsh MS.

### 3.6 TESTING

- A. Copper Media Testing:
  - 1. Contractor shall utilize personnel trained in the operation of the following Level II rated test equipment:
    - a. Agilent WireScope Pro Series
    - b. Fluke DTX-1800 Series
    - c. Ideal LanTEK II
    - d. Or approved equal
  - 2. All cables and termination hardware shall be 100% tested for defects in installation and to verify cable channel performance under installed conditions. The Contractor prior to system acceptance shall verify all conductors of each cable useable. Any defect in the cable system installation including but not limited to cable, connectors, patch panels and connector blocks shall be repaired or replaced in order to ensure 100% useable conductors in all cables installed.
  - 3. Perform end to end link testing of all cabling and connections with specified equipment and certify as meeting the criteria as defined in Category 6 UTP cabling systems within the most current publication of TIA/EIA 568-B.
  - 4. Provide equipment calibration reports with test results.
  - 5. Provide 72 hours' notice to the OAR prior to testing.

### 3.7 CLEANING

- A. Upon completion of the installation, make all components free of any oil, grease, dust and debris.
- B. Work areas will be cleaned at the end of each work day and a final cleanup will occur at project completion.

### 3.8 DOCUMENTATION

- A. Electronic submittal, via CD ROM, of required cable test results, As-Built drawings, and warranty information will be submitted to the Owner or Owner's representative at least ten (10) working days before Certificate of Occupancy is awarded. CAD files will be submitted in Micro Station (.dgn) or AutoCAD (.dwg) format. When proprietary software is needed to view cable test results, the contractor will provide a licensed copy for DISD IT Department. The Contractor is responsible for providing the installed wiring infrastructure data on a CD in Microsoft Excel (.xlsx) format. The Contractor shall coordinate the specific document requirements with DISD IT Department.

### 3.9 ACCEPTANCE

- A. Review test results and conduct a final inspection and punch list walk-thru with Owner and/or OAR, to inspect installation and obtain concurrence. Concurrence does not waive the responsibility of the Contractor to correct deficiencies.

END OF SECTION 27 15 00

## SECTION 27 41 16 – AUDIO VIDEO SYSTEMS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Provide all labor, materials, and equipment for the complete installation of Work called for in the Contract Documents.
- B. This section contains the Audio Video (AV) System technical specifications. The associated Drawing Set, including the General Notes, further specifies the system and is part of the technical specifications.
- C. The Audio Video Systems may include, but are not limited to, the following types of devices:
  - 1. Audio Equipment
  - 2. Video Equipment
  - 3. Control Equipment
  - 4. Equipment Racks and Accessories
  - 5. Cables, Signal Extenders, and Accessories
- D. The Contractor shall integrate the AV System with other building systems. Integration shall include software and hardware components as described below and in this section.
  - 1. Local Area Network (LAN) for AV Control: The Contractor shall connect and program AV control devices operating on the LAN. The Contractor shall coordinate all network requirements with the Owner's Representative prior to implementation.
  - 2. Mounting: The Contractor shall coordinate the mounting location of AV devices with other building trades. Coordination shall include the mounting location of the device, mounting hardware, back boxes, and other nearby equipment.
    - a. Where input panels are flush mounted in work surfaces, coordinate the location and mounting with other AV devices, voice/data outlets, electrical receptacles, and furniture or millwork. Refer to device specifications for additional mounting requirements.
    - b. Where display devices are mounted, coordinate the location of AV back boxes, voice/data outlets, and electrical receptacles, with the exact mounting hardware to be installed, and provide clear access to cables and connectors.

#### 1.2 PROFESSIONAL REFERENCES

- A. Comply with provisions of Division 01.

#### 1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Refer to Section 27 05 00.
- B. Refer to Section 27 15 00.

- C. Refer to Section 27 51 13.

#### 1.4 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. The Contractor shall provide AV Systems as detailed on the drawings and the project specifications, inclusive of the input source devices, signal transportation infrastructure, switching and scaling devices, signaling and control devices, output display devices, cabling, and all associated accessories required for a complete and working system.
- B. The Contractor shall provide all equipment, material, software, programming, labor and services required to construct and install the AV Systems based on these specifications and design drawings including, but not limited to:
  - 1. Submittals, as specified herein
  - 2. Equipment, materials, software, labor and services not specifically mentioned or shown, which may be necessary for the installation and full operation of the AV system.
  - 3. Hardware as specified for the system, including any required for a complete and working system which may not be listed
  - 4. Installation and setup of the system hardware and software including all programming.
  - 5. Software specified or required to make the system fully operational, including the provision of IP addresses and firewall provisions.
  - 6. Final connection of hardware to power, infrastructure termination, and patch cords connecting system equipment to the data outlets and other network communication equipment.
  - 7. As-Built documentation for all AV hardware and software components as specified herein.
  - 8. Asset tagging and completion of inventory control sheet, as specified herein.
  - 9. Test plans, system testing, and commissioning as specified herein.
  - 10. System warranty as specified herein.
  - 11. Training as specified herein.
  - 12. Maintenance and support as specified herein.

#### 1.5 DEFINITIONS AND TERMS

- A. Trade association names and communications terminology are frequently abbreviated. The following acronyms or abbreviations may be referenced within this Section:
  - 1. AFF Above Finished Floor
  - 2. AHJ Authority Having Jurisdiction
  - 3. AWG American Wire Gauge
  - 4. AVIXA Audiovisual and Integrated Experience Association
  - 5. BICSI Building Industry Consulting Service International
  - 6. CMR Communications Riser Cable
  - 7. CMP Communications Plenum Cable
  - 8. CTS Certified Technology Specialist
  - 9. DSP Digital Signal Processor
  - 10. EDID Extended Display Identification Data
  - 11. EMI Electromagnetic Interference
  - 12. HD High Definition
  - 13. HDCP High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection

14.	HDMI	High-Definition Multimedia Interface
15.	Gbps	Gigabits per second
16.	IEEE	Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers
17.	ISO	International Standards Organization
18.	LAN	Local Area Network
19.	LCD	Liquid Crystal Display
20.	LED	Light-Emitting Diode
21.	OLED	Organic Light-Emitting Diode
22.	NECA	National Electrical Contractors Association
23.	NEMA	National Electric Manufacturers Association
24.	RFP	Request for Proposal
25.	SPL	Sound Pressure Level
26.	STD	Standard
27.	STP	Shielded Twisted Pair
28.	UL	Underwriters Laboratories
29.	UTP	Unshielded Twisted Pair
30.	VESA	Video Electronics Standards Association

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

### A. Qualifications

1. Manufacturer
  - a. Equipment and materials shall be a standard product of manufacturers regularly engaged in the manufacture and installation of that type of equipment for a minimum of (5) years.
  - b. The equipment and materials shall be the manufacturer's latest standard design.
  - c. Items of the same classification shall be by the same manufacturer and shall be the same series and model. This requirement includes equipment, modules, assemblies, parts, and components.
2. Supplier
  - a. Equipment and materials shall be a standard product of suppliers regularly engaged in the supply of that type of equipment and shall be the manufacturer's latest standard design.
  - b. Items of the same classification shall be supplied by the same manufacturer. This requirement includes equipment, modules, assemblies, parts, and components.
3. Contractor
  - a. The Contractor must have been in the business of selling and installing similar systems for a minimum of three (3) years.
  - b. The Contractor shall have been actively engaged in installing, maintaining and operating similar systems and services as outlined in the Specifications.
  - c. Provide an AVIXA CTS certified professional for oversight on this project. This person does not have to be working on-site but must be accessible to answer questions and provide weekly status reports. The CTS shall be a full-time employee of the Contractor.
  - d. Provide project manager with a minimum of ten (10) years field experience in installation of audiovisual systems and infrastructures. Project manager shall be assigned for the duration of the project and shall not be replaced without written consent from the Owner.

4. Installers
  - a. All lead technicians performing installation shall have a minimum of two (2) years of experience on the proposed system and be manufacturer certified on all hardware/software applications.
5. Material and Work specified herein shall comply with the applicable requirements within the latest version or release of the following:
  - a. NECA 1 – Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction, 2015
  - b. ANSI/TIA-568.0 – Generic Telecommunications Cabling for Customer Premises
  - c. ANSI/TIA-568.1 – Commercial Building Telecommunications Infrastructure Standard
  - d. ANSI/TIA-606 – Administration Standard for Telecommunications Infrastructure
  - e. ANSI/TIA-607 – Generic Telecommunications Bonding and Grounding (Earthing) for Customer Premises
  - f. NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code
  - g. UL 13 – Standard for Safety for Power-Limited Circuit Cables
  - h. UL 444 – Standard for Safety for Communications Cables
  - i. UL 497B – Standard for Protectors for Data Communications and Fire-Alarm Circuits
  - j. IEEE 802 – Local Area Network Standard
  - k. Title 47 CFR Part 15 – Radio Frequency Devices
  - l. BICSI – Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual
  - m. AVIXA-F501.01:2015 - Cable Labeling for AV Systems
  - n. AVIXA-V202.01:2016 - Display Image Size for 2D Content in AV Systems
  - o. AVIXA-A102.01:2017 - Audio Coverage Uniformity in Listener Area
  - p. AVIXA-F502.01:2018 - Rack Building for Audiovisual Systems
  - q. ANSI/INFOCOMM-2M-2010 - Standard Guide for AV System Design and Coordination Processes
  - r. ANSI/INFOCOMM-3M-2011 - Projected Image System Contrast Ratio
  - s. ANSI/INFOCOMM-4:2012 - Audiovisual Systems Energy Management
  - t. ANSI/INFOCOMM-10:2013 - Audiovisual Systems Performance Verification
  - u. Applicable codes and directives of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Certifications

1. UL Compliance and Labeling: Provide system components which are UL listed and labeled.

C. Work:

1. The Work shall be performed in compliance with the applicable manufacturer's installation instructions, Standards, and certifications listed herein, the Contract Documents, and governing codes and regulations of the authorities having jurisdiction.
2. The drawing and specification requirements govern where they exceed Code and Regulation requirements.
3. Where requirements between governing Codes and Regulations vary, the more restrictive provision applies.
4. Nothing in the Contract Documents grants authority or permission to disregard or violate any legal requirements.



## 1.7 CONFLICTS

- A. This installation shall be made in strict accordance with the Specifications, Drawings, any applicable codes, referenced publications and standards. In case of conflicts between the aforementioned, notify the Owner in writing prior to commencement of affected work.

## 1.8 PERMITS

- A. The Contractor shall secure and pay for all necessary permits and fees required for the execution of this Work. Work will not start until all permit applications are approved.

## 1.9 SCHEDULING

- A. The Contractor shall comply with all scheduling requests established by Owner, both prior to commencing Work, and during construction. The Contractor shall provide a detailed schedule of work to be performed. This schedule shall be submitted with the bid and, if accepted, will be used to track work status.
- B. Work should be scheduled not to interfere with day-to-day operations within the facility. Operations vary by area and should be given careful consideration in relation to the schedule.
- C. The successful Contractor for all or any portion of the work described by this RFP package will be responsible for achieving a complete and fully functional installation on or before the contract scheduled completion date.

## 1.10 REQUIREMENTS

- A. All references to manufacturers, model numbers and other pertinent information herein are intended to establish standards of performance and quality of construction. The Owner must approve material submittal and substitutions in writing prior to Contractor's ordering of material.
- B. Verification that all the components specified and installed meet the criteria specified by the respective component manufacturer, supplier and designer is the responsibility of the Contractor.
- C. All materials proposed and provided by the Contractor must be new and unused. Materials refers to all hardware, software, equipment, cabling, accessories and incidentals.
- D. All installation tools, special equipment and testing apparatus required to accomplish field connections and related work as described herein shall be furnished by the Contractor at no additional cost.
- E. The requirements as given in this document are to be adhered to unless revised by the Owner in writing.
- F. The Owner reserves the right to waive these requirements at any time.

## 1.11 SUBMITTALS

- A. Comply with provisions of Division 01.
- B. Comply with provisions of Section 27 05 00.
- C. In addition to the requirements of Section 27 05 00, the Contractor shall provide the following shop drawings:
  - 1. Produce Shop Drawings for ALL audio-video systems. This shall include the following, such that any component, wire, or piece of equipment added to the system may be easily identified by going to the actual equipment and making reference to this information.
    - a. Functional Block Diagram
      - 1) Provide overall block diagrams showing the major interconnections between components and subsystems. This should include cable type, connector type, and equipment locations, with components labeled as in the floorplans, wiring diagrams, elevation and arrangement drawings.
    - b. Plan Drawings
      - 1) Provide floor plans and reflected ceiling plans showing the location of all components in the system.
    - c. Arrangement Drawings
      - 1) Provide Drawings showing the physical arrangement of all major system components. This includes, but not limited to, the proposed routing and its location relative to building structure (columns, floor or ceiling) and its relationship to electrical, mechanical elements.
      - 2) Provide elevation drawings of all rack mounted and wall mounted equipment, showing the location of each component in the rack and on the wall. Components shown shall be identified as in the functional block diagrams.
    - d. Wiring Diagrams
      - 1) Provide wire-by-wire diagrams showing all field installed interconnections. The wire color and identification on the diagrams shall agree with the wire and wire markers installed on the equipment.
    - e. Control System Interface
      - 1) Provide images with brief narrative indicating the proposed touchscreen control interfaces' intended Graphical User Interface (GUI). The GUI shall be an intuitive custom interface that shall be designed in collaboration with the Owner and Owner's Representative. The Contractor shall conduct no less than two workshops (initial, finish/approval) with the Owner and submit shop drawings with operational narrative and/or flow diagram indicating the functionality for the Touchscreen GUI.
- D. Provide product data for the following:
  - 1. Product data consisting of manufacturers specifications for each type of product to be installed, and all applicable manufacturer certifications supporting compliance with stated Specifications.

2. Manufacturer's certificate of acceptance of the qualifications of the installing Contractor to install, test and maintain the manufacturer's equipment.
  3. Proposed format of as-built documentation
- E. Contractor shall not utilize the Consultants' original design drawings in the submittal or shop drawing process. Contractor shall develop their own original shop drawings.
- F. Provide complete product data submittal and shop drawing submittal packages simultaneously, as separate packages.

#### 1.12 INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY

- A. Patents: Should patented articles, methods, materials apparatus, etc., be used in this Work, the Contractor shall acquire the right to use same. The Contractor shall hold the Owner and their agents harmless for any delay, action, suit, or cost growing out of the patent rights for any device on this Project.
- B. Copyrights: Should copyrighted software be used in this Work, the Contractor shall acquire the right to use same. The Contractor shall hold the Owner and their agents harmless for any delay, action, suit, or cost growing out of the copyrights for any software on this Project.
- C. License to Use: All software required for the complete operation of the system as specified herein shall be delivered with either full Ownership transferred to the Owner or a non-time limited License to use on each machine it is installed on, including the right to make backup copies.
- D. Software Master Source Code: The Owner shall be provided with the master source code and configuration files for all system specific software. The intent is to provide everything required allowing the Owner to edit and re-configure the system with any changes.

#### 1.13 MATERIAL PURCHASES

- A. Latest Technology
1. Products and materials shall be purchased by the Contractor in a timely manner to meet construction schedules but shall not be purchased so far advanced of the date(s) of installation that they become technologically obsolete or replaced with newer technologies.
  2. In the event the manufacturer(s) of submitted products and materials have upgraded or replaced their products and materials with newer or improved technologies at the time of purchase, the newer or improved products or materials shall be provided unless they are incompatible with the rest of system, or so directed by the Design Consultant.
  3. Latest technology products and materials shall be operationally and functionally equivalent or superior to the submitted products and materials. These products shall be submitted to the Design Consultant for approval, before ordering.

#### 1.14 WARRANTY

- A. **Manufacturer Warranty:** Provide the manufacturer's standard maintenance and support services for all hardware and software associated with this system at no additional charge for a period of not less than one (1) year. Replacement of equipment shall be included in the Contractor's System Warranty.
- B. **Contractor's System Warranty:** The Contractor shall guarantee all labor, workmanship, and materials for a period of one (1) year from the date of Final Completion unless noted otherwise for specific systems. Should a failure occur within the Warranty period to the system, the Contractor shall provide all labor and materials necessary to restore the system to the condition required for the final test and Final Completion for this Contract, at no cost to the Owner.
  - 1. **Emergency Warranty work** shall include the repair or replacement of components which fail during the warranty period excluding equipment damaged or rendered unserviceable due to apparent and provable misuse, abuse, vandalism or negligence by the Owner's employees or the public. Apparent and provable as used herein shall mean that the physical evidence indicates what and who caused the damage, e.g., lightning strike, liquid damage, someone other than the Contractor's technician, etc.
  - 2. **Tie ins:** During the Warranty period, additional components may be connected to the systems. New devices will be connected in the same manner as shown on the Drawings for this Contract and the existence of the new connections shall not void this Warranty guarantee.
- C. **Extended Warranty and Maintenance Period:** Contractor shall provide a separate line-item price for an extended Warranty and Operations Maintenance Services Agreement for all the Systems as a whole.

#### 1.15 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Handle equipment and components carefully to avoid breakage, impact, denting and scoring finishes. Do not install damaged equipment. Replace and return damaged units to equipment manufacturer.
- B. Equipment delivered to the job site shall be opened and inspected immediately upon arriving and compared to the approved Shop Drawing submittal and checked for defects. If the equipment is not correct, the equipment shall be returned to the manufacturer immediately and a new order for the approved equipment shall be placed at no cost to the Owner.
- C. Equipment and components shall be protected from the weather, humidity, temperature variations, dirt, dust, or other contaminants. Equipment damaged prior to Final Completion shall be replaced at no cost to the Owner.

#### 1.16 ADD-ALTERNATE PRICING

- A. Contractor shall provide additional prices for add/alternate of the following items:
  - 1. **Extended Warranty and Operations Maintenance Services Agreement** for the system, as a whole, for the following lengths of time. Include a description of the daily, weekly, monthly, and/or annual preventative maintenance schedule, response times, and other pertinent information.
    - a. **One (1) Year**

b. Two (2) Years

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 GENERAL

A. The products specified in this document do not necessarily constitute the exhaustive list of products required to complete the statement of work. Except where described in the SUMMARY subpart of this document, the Contractor is responsible for providing any other parts and materials needed to deliver a complete and working system.

### 2.2 ACCEPTABLE DISTRIBUTORS

A. Contractor shall procure all components through an approved distribution channel to preserve the manufacturers' warranties.

### 2.3 MANUFACTURERS

A. Available Manufacturers for Audio Visual System Equipment and Cabling: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products are subject to approval by the Engineer.

B. Acceptable Manufacturers:

1. Crestron
2. Draper
3. Epson
4. Harman
5. Shure
6. Tascam
7. Owner Approved Equivalent

C. Refer to Basis of Design for individual product examples to understand the Standard of Quality required. Where a basis of design is not provided, the contractor shall provide a product which meets the performance requirements. Any substitutions require approval in writing by the Owner's Authorized Representative.

### 2.4 GENERAL HARDWARE REQUIREMENTS

A. All hardware requirements given are the minimum requirements. Contractor's product shall meet or exceed these requirements. All devices shall be the manufacturer's latest model at the time of the equipment submittal. Additionally, the hardware selected shall meet the operational, functional, and performance requirements specified herein.

B. Approved Equal Substitution: The Contractor may propose an Owner Approved Equal device that meets or exceeds the specifications. Requests for hardware substitution shall be submitted in writing to the Design Consultant and Owner's Authorized Representative, and include the hardware cut sheet and the exact configuration being proposed, including any related input, output, control, and mounting equipment.

- C. Environmental Rating: Equipment shall be rated for continuous operation under the ambient environmental temperature, humidity, and vibration conditions encountered at the installed location. For devices located in harsh environments such as interior uncontrolled or exterior environments, the Contractor shall provide the necessary housings or enclosures to ensure proper equipment operation and performance. The equipment shall be designed for installation in the environment, based upon installation location:
1. Interior controlled environment: 15 to 45 degrees C dry bulb and 20 to 80 percent relative humidity, non-condensing. Interior office areas shall be considered this type of environment.
  2. Exterior environments: -20 degrees to 70 degrees C dry bulb and 5 to 100 percent relative humidity, condensing.
- D. Accessories: Contractor is responsible for providing fans, shelves, drawers, special power wiring, ground connections, cables, connectors, appurtenances, and adapters of any kind necessary to accommodate the system installation, operation, testing, or maintenance. This includes those accessories required for a clean and organized installation.

## 2.5 AV SYSTEM ARCHITECTURE

- A. The Audio Video Systems shall be integrated systems comprised of video, audio, and control equipment. The input, routing, processing, distribution, output and control of the Audio Video Systems shall be seamless from the user's perspective.
1. Video: The input, routing, distribution, and output shall be at a minimum digital High Definition 1080p (1920x1080 pixels). Digital system sources may include input panels, computer workstations, media players and video conferencing. Outputs may include LCDs and/or projectors. Typical video transport methods utilized may include:
    - a. HDMI transmission over twisted pair
    - b. HDMI transmission over ethernet
  2. Audio: Digital or analog input sources shall be processed using a digital signal processor with full software-based sound editing and mixing capabilities, routed to an amplifier, and distributed to speaker zones. Sound sources may include audio from input panels, computer workstations, media players and audio conferencing. Outputs shall include zoned speakers. Typical audio transport methods utilized may include:
    - a. HDMI transmission over twisted pair
    - b. Microphone level balanced mono audio
    - c. Line level balanced mono audio
    - d. 70.7-Volt distributed audio
  3. Control System: The control component of the AV Systems shall control the selection of video/audio routing. The user interface for the controls shall be touch screen or keypad controller. The AV Systems shall allow the user to select a source for display on the display(s), as well as control audio. Network communications shall utilize TCP/IP network protocol. Other common control methods which may be used include:
    - a. Voltage relay contact closure
    - b. Serial interface
    - c. Infrared communications shall NOT be used unless approved in writing by the Owner's Authorized Representative

## 2.6 AUDIO EQUIPMENT

### A. Column Array Loudspeakers

1. Furnish and install column array speakers as indicated in the drawing package for Local Audio-Video systems.
2. The speakers must include the following features:
  - a. Sixteen (16) 1" soft dome tweeters and eight (8) 5" high-power LF drivers
  - b. Constant directivity up to the highest frequencies and reduced out-of-coverage lobing
  - c. Vertical pattern coverage switchable between 45-degrees for medium throw coverage and 25-degrees for long-throw applications.
  - d. Sensitivity: 93 dB SPL 1W at 1m
  - e. Frequency Response: 70Hz to 18kHz
  - f. Dispersion: 150 degrees horizontally by 25 or 45 degrees vertically
  - g. Rated Power: 700 watts continuous power
  - h. Nominal Impedance: 4-ohms
  - i. Overall Assembly Dimensions: 54.8" H x 6.7" W x 9.4" D
  - j. Enclosure:
    - 1) Enclosure shall be designed and manufactured specifically for the driver.
3. Basis of Design: JBL Pro CBT 70J-1 + 70JE-1 System

### B. Stage Monitor Loudspeakers

1. Furnish and install stage monitor speakers as indicated in the drawing package for Local Audio-Video systems.
2. The speakers must include the following features:
  - a. 12" 2-way speaker with 2.5" diameter edgewound voice coil
  - b. 1" polymer diaphragm compression driver
  - c. Sensitivity: 98 dB SPL 1W at 1m
  - d. Frequency Response: 75Hz to 20kHz
  - e. Dispersion: 90-degrees by 50-degrees
  - f. Rated Power: 250 watts continuous power
  - g. Nominal Impedance: 8-ohms
  - h. Overall Assembly Dimensions: 23" x 15.7" x 12.8"
  - i. Enclosure:
    - 1) Enclosure shall be designed and manufactured specifically for the driver.
3. Basis of Design: JBL Pro JRX212

### C. Audio Amplification

1. Furnish and install a Class D audio amplifier for connection of speakers.
2. High-Quality Sound Reproduction: The system shall provide clean audio, free from noises such as pops, clicks, hiss/hum and access/disconnect tones at all loudspeakers at all times during operation including standby mode. Distortion shall be within specified limits.
3. Performance Criteria: Coverage of amplified sound shall be within the following specified limits. Sound levels (20Hz – 20KHz) shall be no less than 12dB over ambient and shall not vary more than 3dB throughout a zone.
4. Amplifier shall include complete self re-setting protection against short circuit, improper load, and over temperature conditions. Input level controls shall be

provided. THD+N shall be no more than 0.35%. S/N ratio shall be greater than 100 dBA.

5. Input: balanced mono, 3.5 mm captive screw
6. Output: 4- or 8-ohm mono, captive screw
7. Power: 120V, 60Hz
8. Mounting: Rack mounted using rack-mount accessories
9. Control: Voltage Relay
10. Basis of Design: Crown DCi 4|600

D. Wireless Microphone System

1. Provide the following types of wireless microphone kits as indicated in the drawings:
  - a. single-channel wireless microphone kit with a handheld wireless microphone
2. The wireless microphones should utilize digital wireless transmission, and be battery powered.
3. Basis of design: Shure SLXD24/SM58, with UA844+ antenna distribution system

E. Assistive Listening System

1. As required by building code, Contractor must provide an assistive listening system for use within the auditorium space. System shall include an FM-radio based transmitter, appropriate quantity of receivers, chargers, signage, coaxial antenna and coaxial antenna extension solution, rack mount accessories, and all other accessories for a complete and working system.
2. Basis of design: Williams AV FM 558-xx Pro (where xx=receiver quantity) and WCA 008-50 antenna extension kit

F. 16-Channel Mixer

1. Where required, provide a mixer pre-amp.
2. Mixer pre-amp shall feature:
  - a. Rack mountable design, no larger than 8U high
  - b. 16-channel, stereo mic/line mixer
  - c. Mic preamps with no less than 60-dB gain
  - d. +48V phantom power
  - e. THD less than 0.1%
3. Basis of design: Mackie 1604VLZ4

G. Parametric Equalizer

1. Where required, provide a parametric equalizer.
2. Equalizer shall feature:
  - a. Rack mountable design
  - b. No less than 31 band of 1/3-octave equalization
  - c. 10-Hz to 50-kHz frequency response
  - d. Greater than 112-dB dynamic range
  - e. Type III™ Noise Reduction
  - f. PeakPlus™ limiter
  - g. Minimum 2 year manufacturer warranty
3. Basis of design: DBX 2231

H. Commercial Grade CD Player

1. Provide a commercial grade CD player as indicated in the drawing set.
2. CD player shall feature:



- a. Rack mountable design
  - b. Compact disc and MP3 compatible
  - c. Bluetooth wireless receiver
  - d. Minimum 1 year manufacturer warranty
  3. Basis of design: Tascam CD-200BT
- I. Unbalanced-to-balanced Line Level Amplifier
1. Provide a line level audio amplifier as indicated in the drawing set.
  2. Line level audio amplifier shall feature:
    - a. Single channel, line level amplifier
    - b. Balanced or unbalanced audio inputs and outputs
    - c. Minimum 1 year manufacturer warranty
  3. Basis of design: RDL STA-1M with PS-24AS and MB-1
- J. Microphone and Accessories
1. Provide wired microphones, stands, and cables.
  2. This must include a minimum of three (3) Shure SM-58 microphones, three (3) Atlas MS-10C stands, and three (3) 25-foot cables.

## 2.7 VIDEO EQUIPMENT

- A. HDMI Extension
1. Provide an HDMI extension solution as indicated in the drawing set.
  2. Extension solution shall feature:
    - a. Point to point extension of HDMI with audio and RS-232 over a single category cable, no less than 295-ft of STP cable length.
    - b. Power over cable, from the HDMI transmitter to the HDMI receiver
    - c. 4K60 4:4:4 video
    - d. HDCP 2.3
  3. Basis of design: Crestron DigitalMedia 8G+
- B. Laser Projector
1. Provide a laser projector as indicated in the drawing set.
  2. Projector shall feature:
    - a. 10,000 lumens of brightness
    - b. Native WUXGA with 4K enhancement technology
    - c. Minimum 20,000 hour laser light source
    - d. Option lens accessories for various installation conditions
    - e. Minimum 2,000,000 : 1 contrast ratio
    - f. Black or white finish
    - g. Wall-mount installation accessories
  3. Basis of design: Epson EB-PU2010 (white/black) with required lens accessory
- C. Motorized Projection Screen
1. Provide a motorized projection screen as indicated in the drawing set.
  2. Projection screen shall feature:
    - a. Motorized operation
    - b. Low voltage switch, as well as RS-232 or Ethernet control
    - c. Below the ceiling enclosure
    - d. Tab-tensioned viewing surface
    - e. 16:10 aspect ratio, 198" diagonal size

- f. Matt White XT1000VB screen material
  - g. Custom black drop length, based upon installation environment and viewing angle. Coordinate exact black drop length with the architect prior to purchase.
3. Basis of design: Draper Acumen XL V Electric Screen

## 2.8 CONTROL EQUIPMENT

### A. AV Control Processor

1. Provide an AV control processor as indicated in the drawing set.
2. Control system shall provide the following features:
  - a. Ethernet or bi-directional serial control of each component requiring control
  - b. Each touchpanel shall be minimum 7" screen with custom, unique 'pages' and menu systems coordinated with and approved by the Owner during the submittal process.
  - c. Touchpanels shall provide two-way operation to allow live visual control feedback of the system status.
  - d. The control functions shall include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - 1) Passcode with multiple levels of User authorization
    - 2) Preset scene selections
    - 3) System power on/off
    - 4) Source Selection and Routing
    - 5) FOH Program Audio Controls (Volume up/down, Mute, etc)
    - 6) FOH Microphone Audio Controls (Volume up/down, Mute, etc)
    - 7) Stage Program Audio Controls (Volume up/down, Mute, etc)
    - 8) Stage Microphone Audio Controls (Volume up/down, Mute, etc)
3. The touchpanel controls shall be coordinated with the analog mixer controls. The intent is to simplify the operation of the system. Contractor shall work with the Owner to understand their operational requirements of the system.
4. Touchpanels shall include rack-mount installation kit or wall-mount kit for installation at the AV rack. Color shall be coordinated and approved prior to ordering via submittal process.
5. All controls shall be intuitive, and graphical in nature.
6. Firmware of all devices should be updated to the most recent version.
7. Coordinate all needs for IP addresses, firewall access, and other IT related needs with the Owner's IT department prior to installation.
8. Approved products:
  - a. Crestron RMC4 Processor and TSW-770 Touchpanel
  - b. Approved equivalent

## 2.9 EQUIPMENT RACKS AND ACCESSORIES

### A. Wall-Mount AV Rack

1. Provide and install a wall-mount AV rack.
2. AV rack shall be minimum 24-RU high, minimum 17" deep.
3. Approved products:
  - a. Middle Atlantic DWR-24-17

### B. Power Distribution Unit (PDU)

1. Provide a 1U PDU for the AV rack/cabinet.

2. PDU shall provide 30-amp, 120-volt power to 12 NEMA 5-15/20 outlets.
3. PDU shall utilize a locking L5-30 input connection.
4. PDU shall feature a two-digit input current meter (reporting in amps).
5. Basis of design: Tripplite PDUMH30

## 2.10 CABLES, SIGNAL EXTENDERS, AND ACCESSORIES

- A. Audio Signal Cables: Balanced Mono
  1. Cable shall be used to distribute balanced mono audio signals from field input devices to the audio processing headend.
  2. Rating: UL 725, Listed for plenum applications
  3. Conductor: Two (2) solid tinned copper conductors, overall shield, drain wire, and insulated. Size conductors as required for application, minimum 20-AWG.
- B. Audio Signal Cables: Speaker Circuits (4 Ohm and 8-Ohm)
  1. Cable shall be used to distribute amplified audio signals to loudspeakers.
  2. Rating: UL 725, Listed for plenum applications
  3. Conductor: Two (2) solid tinned copper conductors, insulated. Size conductors as required for application, per AVIXA standards and loudspeaker manufacturer recommendations.
- C. AV Control Cable: Voltage Relay/Contact Closure
  1. Provide manufacturer approved cable for AV voltage relays and/or contact closures.
  2. Coordinate cable and voltage type for relays provided by other Contractors, including the Fire Alarm interface and Paging interface.
- D. AV Low Voltage Power Supplies
  1. Provide only manufacturer approved low voltage power supplies, where separate power supplies are required.
  2. Input: 120 VAC
  3. Output: 12 or 24 VDC
  4. Mounting: Rack mounted or Surface mounted
- E. Miscellaneous Hardware, Materials, and Associated Equipment:
  1. Provide and install all hardware, materials, custom panels, wall boxes, floor boxes, rack panels and associated equipment for the complete installation of this system as designed.
  2. Rack Accessories: Provide all rack/cabinet mounting kits and accessories including, but not limited to, fixed shelves, locking slide shelves, horizontal tray, vertical cabling ring section, vertical mounting rail and bracing kits.
  3. Cable Accessories: Provide all adapters, connectors, patch cables, interconnects, and accessories as required to complete the installation of all systems as designed and specified.
    - a. Connectors, Adapters, Gender switchers, Patch panels, HDMI, HD-15, F-Type, XLR, 3.5mm mini type cables. Manufacturer: Crestron, Ortronics, or approved equal.

## 2.11 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. System Availability: At any given time, the overall AV shall be considered unavailable if the system is not available, not fully or accurately functional, or does not meet performance criteria for the given connection. All AV components shall execute, without degradation, at the scheduled periods and response times for the systems to be considered available.

## 2.12 EXTERNAL INTERFACES

- A. The Contractor shall coordinate with the Owner or the Owner's Representative for connectivity of the AV System(s) to the Fire Alarm and/or Paging systems.
- B. Contractor shall include any interfaces to external systems (e.g. Fire Alarm) which may be required by NFPA Code.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine conditions for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting the performance of the Audio/Visual Systems. Advise Consultant immediately in writing of any discrepancies between field conditions and drawings that affect subject Work. Do not proceed until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- B. The Drawings diagrammatically show cabling and arrangements of equipment fitting the space available without interference. If conditions exist which make it impossible to install Work as shown, recommend solutions and/or submit drawings to the Architect for approval, showing how the Work may be installed.

### 3.2 ASSET TAGGING

- A. All equipment of greater than \$1,000 value, and otherwise as directed by Owner, shall be asset tagged in the Owner's Inventory System by the Contractor. Asset tags and inventory control sheet are to be obtained from Owner. Signed, completed inventory control sheet detailing equipment description, location, serial number, label name, if any, and asset number assigned shall be included in as-built documents.

### 3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Installation shall include the delivery; unloading; setting in place; fastening to walls, floors, ceilings, counters, and other structures where required. Interconnecting wiring of the system components, equipment alignment and adjustments, and all other Work whether or not expressly required herein which is necessary to result in a complete operational system. Install system in accordance with National and/or Local applicable codes. Install equipment in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. During installation, and up to the date of final acceptance, the Contractor shall be under obligation to protect his finished and unfinished Work against damage and loss. In the

event of any such loss or damage, the Contractor shall replace or repair such Work or equipment at no cost to Owner.

C. Install plumb and level and secured in accordance with manufacturer’s instructions.

D. Additional requirements for the installation of Audio Video Systems:

1. Ensure firmware is updated to the most current release for all devices.
2. Form separate groups for the following:
  - a. Power.
  - b. Control cables.
  - c. Video cables.
  - d. Audio cables carrying signals less than -20 dBm.
  - e. Audio cables carrying signals between -20 dBm and +20 dBm.
  - f. Audio cables carrying signals above +20 dBm.
3. Route all cable and wiring within equipment racks, cabinets and millwork according to function, separating wires of different signal levels (microphone, line level, amplifier output, AC, control, etc.) by as much distance as possible. Neatly arrange, harness and bundle all cable with nylon ties.
4. Observe proper circuit polarity and loudspeaker wiring polarity. Clearly label connections and wires as to function and polarity. Wires patch panels and connectors as follows:

WIRE	CONNECTOR	SIGNAL
Red or White	Pin #2	Hi or POS
Black	Pin #3	Lo or Neg
Shield	Pin #1	Ground/ Common

5. Cables shall not be wired with a polarity reversal between connectors at either end. Take special care when wiring microphone cables to ensure that constant polarity is maintained.
6. Provide all circuits, balanced and floating, except as noted in these specifications or directed by the Owner at the time of final equalization and testing.
7. Make all solder connections with rosin-core solder. Use temperature-controlled soldering irons rated at least 60 watts for all soldering work. No soldering guns, gas or butane, or temperature-unregulated irons will be allowed on the job site. (The presence of such soldering tools on the job site will constitute evidence of solder connections made with unauthorized tools and will be grounds for rejection of all solder connections in the system and the subsequent re-work of same.)
8. When wiring within enclosures, provide adequate length of conductors. Bundle, and lace the conductors to terminal points with service loop. Provide and use lacing bars where appropriate. Cabling shall be neatly strapped, dressed, and adequately supported.
9. Make splices, taps, and terminations on numbered terminal strips in junction boxes, outlet boxes, and equipment enclosures.
10. The use of wire nuts at any point within the system is unacceptable. The sole exceptions are as follows:
  - a. AC circuit connections within equipment rack junction boxes.
  - b. Splicing outdoor speaker cables. These wire nuts shall be underground rated and filled with a silicone-based sealant.
11. Utilize plated or tinned copper spade lugs, of appropriate size to the application. Except for the use of mil spec lugs, all crimp connectors in audio paths shall be soldered as well as crimped. Only uninsulated lugs shall be used.

12. Speaker wiring terminating on amplifiers equipped with a screw-down terminal strips shall be connectorized with forked lugs
13. Install control circuits in accordance with NFPA 70 and as indicated. Provide the number of conductors as recommended by system manufacturer to provide control functions indicated or specified.
14. Install all cabling with a bend radius of no less than is recommended by the cable manufacturer.
15. All cables shall be marked with wrap-around number or letter cable markers at both ends with clear shrink tube covering the label. There shall be no unmarked cables at any place in the system. All cable markings shall correspond with system wiring diagrams and as-built documentation.

E. System Grounding:

1. Racks: Audio racks must not connect electrically to the conduits. All conduits terminating at the equipment rack must terminate through insulated fittings to isolate conduit grounds from the equipment rack grounds. Electrically isolate audio equipment racks from all grounds with the exception of a single low impedance connection to technical ground. Provide a copper grounding buss in each equipment rack for isolated technical grounding of all equipment. Connect the common point of each rack frame and that rack's grounding buss to the isolated technical ground common point via an insulated copper conductor no smaller than 6 AWG. Connect the frames of all audio equipment racks to the isolated technical ground buss.
2. Equipment: A separate 12-gauge copper insulated ground conductor shall connect the chassis of each piece of equipment to the ground buss. Connections to the buss shall be secured by machine screws at holes, which are drilled and tapped. All connections shall be properly crimped and soldered as provided elsewhere.
3. Under no conditions shall the AC neutral conductor, either in the power panel or in a receptacle outlet, be used for a system ground.
4. Ground equipment, conductor, and cable shields to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize to the greatest extent possible, ground loops, common mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments. Provide 0.1-ohm ground at main equipment location. Measure, record, and report ground resistance. Provide isolation transformers as necessary.

F. Equipment Ventilation:

1. The Contractor shall ensure that the installation of all equipment includes proper ventilation to meet the equipment manufacturer's warranty requirements. Where the ventilation does not meet the equipment manufacturer's requirements, the Contractor shall provide ventilation accessories necessary at no additional cost to the Owner.
  - a. This requirement applies to all equipment, including equipment which is installed within enclosures including, but not limited to, cabinets, podiums, millwork/casework, and credenzas. Where the enclosure is provided by the Owner, it remains the Contractor's responsibility to coordinate with the Owner and ensure that the equipment is properly ventilated at no additional cost the Owner.

3.4 TECHNICAL GROUNDING:

- A. All equipment within the technical power system will be grounded back to the technical reference ground using an isolated star grounding system. Technical ground is insulated and isolated from all other systems, except at the electrical connection where the master technical ground connects to the neutral bus, and ground electrode system at the service entrance equipment.

### 3.5 DOCUMENTATION

- A. Submit Closeout documentation in accordance with Division 01 of the Project Manual and any applicable supplements. The number of submittal sets required is the greater of either the requirements of Division 01 of the Project Manual, or a minimum of four (4) sets.
  - 1. Segregate documents into separate binders containing data relevant to operational, maintenance, and warranty issues.
  - 2. Provide above closeout documentation as an electronic file in PDF format.
  - 3. Contractor shall not utilize the Consultants' original design drawings in the closeout documentation process. Contractor shall develop their own original as-built drawings.
- B. Warranty and Maintenance:
  - 1. Record Drawings.

### 3.6 MAINTENANCE AND SUPPORT

- A. Contractor shall provide a price for an extended Warranty and Operations Maintenance Services Agreement for the Systems as a whole.
- B. Refer to WARRANTY located in Part 1 of this document for additional details.

### 3.7 TRAINING

- A. On-Site Training: A minimum of sixteen (16) hours of training shall be provided. The Contractor shall structure the course(s) to describe all systems, software and applications and support programs.
- B. The following training guidelines shall be followed:
  - 1. By means of training classes augmented by individual instruction as necessary, the Contractor shall fully instruct the Owner's designated staff in the operation, adjustment and maintenance of all products, equipment and subsystems. The Contractor shall be required to provide all training aids (e.g., notebooks, manuals, etc.).
  - 2. All training shall be completed a minimum of one week prior to the system becoming operational and utilized by the Owner. Training schedule is subject to the Owner's approval.
  - 3. Training shall be conducted by experienced personnel and supported by training aids. An adequate amount of training material shall be provided by the Contractor. The following is considered a minimum:
    - a. Operations and flow charts, overall block diagrams, and descriptive material with "screen shot" images for all software
    - b. Schematic drawings for each of the hardware components

- c. All procedure manuals, specification manuals, and operating manuals
- d. As-built drawings
4. Participants shall receive individual copies of technical manuals and pertinent documentation 7-days in advance of the training course.
5. The courses shall be scheduled such that the Owner's personnel can participate in all courses (no overlap).

### 3.8 ACCEPTANCE

- A. Arrange with the Owner to provide a quiet, controlled, and secure environment for the duration of system testing.
- B. The Contractor shall provide a complete rehearsed demonstration of all system operations. This demonstration shall include all needed test discs and signal sources. Include any required computer sources, DVD player, pre-recorded video test discs, CCTV feed, and CATV feed.
- C. Provide all test equipment required to complete the acceptance test. Phase analyzers, extension cables, tools, oscilloscopes, oscillators, test generators, including, but not limited to, a video test generator that emulates the computer scan frequencies required in these specifications, and all other miscellaneous equipment, shall be supplied by the Contractor as necessary to complete testing.
- D. Maintain and submit a check-off list of all required tests for reference by the Project Manager before the acceptance tests begin.
- E. The performance demonstration of the completed system includes the Contractor and the user media staff examining all cable trays, equipment placement, and rack wiring to ensure installation was completed in compliance with the specifications.
- F. During performance tests, equipment shall be operated under standard conditions as recommended by the manufacturer. The signal paths for performance standards shall be as follows:
  1. Video systems shall be tested from the most remote input connections for switchers through the most remote output connectors from the switchers.
  2. Control system shall be tested from the control interface (touch panel).
  3. The computer interfaces shall be tested using on-line signals from various computers. Demonstrate and test any and all floor box / wall outlet locations.
- G. This acceptance testing includes, but is not limited to the following:
  1. Check audio and video systems, including inputs and outputs, for compliance with performance standards.
  2. Check remote control functions from all origination points to all controlled locations for proper operation.
  3. Check all video systems for uniform brightness, focus, and compliance with the manufacturers published specifications.
  4. Adjust, balance and tune all equipment, as required, for optimum quality.
  5. Establish, index and tabulate normal settings for all level controls. These settings will be recorded on the final "as-built" system drawings for reference.



6. Check all functions of the video displays, video switcher, PC interfaces, and digital video scalers to ensure that the performance of these systems is in compliance with requirements.

END OF SECTION

## SECTION 27 51 13 – PAGING SYSTEM

### PART 1 GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. Replace the existing school intercom/paging system with a new system capable of providing two-way communication, distribution of emergency pages, background music, and speakers.
- B. Each new classroom is to have the ability to communicate with the office through a ceiling mounted loudspeaker(s).
- C. Intercom/paging system shall provide muting control for local sound systems during emergency page.
- D. The system shall be easy to learn and operate. All standard system programming shall be user friendly to allow the system administrator the ability to easily program system features. Furnish and install an intercom/paging system for instantaneous two-way communications and distribution of emergency pages, background music or other program material to speaker-equipped locations.
- E. Related work in other Sections of the Specifications. The 'related work' referred to in this paragraph is intended as a reference only and cannot be construed as actual work assignment for other trades. It is intended only as a reference for the cabling contractor's cognizance.
  - 1. Division 1- General Requirements.
  - 2. Section 27 05 00 - Common Work Results for Communications
  - 3. Section 27 05 26 - Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems
  - 4. Section 27 05 28 - Pathways for Communications Systems

#### 1.2 DESCRIPTIONS AND REQUIREMENTS

- A. The following is intended to further describe the Work and clarify design intent and is not an exhaustive description of the intercom/paging system.
- B. The Telecommunications Cabling Systems ("T" series) drawings, in addition to the attached DISD Intercommunication and Program System specifications, are an integral part of this Section.
- C. Contractor must coordinate with the project Architectural and Electrical drawings for the location and placement of all devices. If there is a conflict in device or outlet locations, verify the correct locations.
- D. In cases where this specification section conflicts with the DISD specifications, the DISD specifications will take precedence.
- E. Extend the existing campus intercom/paging system for instantaneous two-way communications and distribution of emergency pages, background music or other program material to speaker-equipped locations.

- F. All bids shall be on the basis of design equipment as specified herein.
- G. The work to be provided under this section consists of furnishing and installing all equipment, cabling, labor, supervision and services necessary for the installation of a complete and operating communication system consisting of intercommunication and public address as indicated in these specifications.
- H. Work Includes the following systems:
  - 1. Control system zone panels, switches, amplifiers, and equipment
  - 2. Loudspeakers
  - 3. Wiring and pathway
- I. Use materials and equipment that comply with referenced standards and manufacturers' standard design and construction, in accordance with published product information.
- J. Coordinate the features of all materials and equipment so they form an integrated system, with components and interconnections matched for optimum performance of specified functions.

### 1.3 RESPONSIBILITY AND RELATED WORK

- A. The Contractor's responsibility includes, but is not limited to, provision and installation of:
  - 1. The additional intercom/paging system headend components necessary to extend the existing system to the new building.
  - 2. All new speakers.
  - 3. Copper horizontal cabling to speakers.
  - 4. Main cross-connect facilities, wall field termination equipment and any other components required to provide a complete and working system.
  - 5. Markings, labels, tags, and identification of cables, racks, housings and components, which shall be executed in accordance with ANSI/TIA/EIA-606-A.
- B. The Contractor Shall:
  - 1. Provide labor, tools and transportation required to support the installation in accordance with the established time line and standards.
  - 2. Deliver submittals, shop drawings, and cable test records as specified herein.
  - 3. Obtain permits, licenses, or other municipal requirements and pay any fees required for the execution of this work.
  - 4. Coordinate with other trades to assure completeness of cable pathways including conduit systems, back boxes, junction boxes, AC power, Grounding and Bonding, where required.
  - 5. Execute all work in accordance to the National Electric Code, The National Electric Safety Code, and all applicable state codes, ordinances and regulations.
  - 6. Supply accessories and minor equipment items regularly required for a complete system, even if not specifically mentioned in these specifications or on the associated "T" series drawings, or the attached DISD specification without claim of additional payment.
  - 7. Perform installation and testing utilizing certified staff who are authorized to install and commission the specified system.
  - 8. Provide instruction to owner designated personnel on the system documentation and the proper methods of use and maintenance of the system and related components.

- C. Where Conflict exists between contract documents, the more stringent requirement shall prevail. Where conflict exists between contract documents, and a Code, the Code shall prevail.
- D. Discrepancies in part numbers or quantities shall be reported to The Owner prior to bid opening for clarification as necessary. Failing to provide such notification requires the Contractor to supply items and quantities according to the intent of the specifications and associated drawings without claim of additional payment.
- E. Notwithstanding any detailed information in the contract documents, it is the responsibility of the contractor to supply systems in full working order.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Contractor' Qualifications: A Firm experienced in the provision of systems similar in complexity to those required for this project
- B. Manufacturer's Qualifications: No less than 5 years continuous experience in the production of specified types of product, with production capabilities per applicable NEMA standards.
- C. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.
- D. Electrical Component Standard: Provide work complying with applicable requirements of NFPA 70 "National Electrical Code" including, but not limited to:
  - 1. Article 250, Grounding.
  - 2. Article 300, Part A. Wiring Method.
  - 3. Article 310, Conductors for General Wiring.
  - 4. Article 725, Remote Control, Signaling Circuits.
  - 5. Article 800, Communication Systems.
- E. NEMA SB 40-2008
  - 1. Covers the application, installation, location, performance and maintenance of school communications systems and their components associated with the life safety of students, faculty, administrative staff and all other occupants affiliated with educational facilities.
- F. EIA Compliance: Comply with the following Electronics Industries Association Standards:
  - 1. Sound Systems, EIA 160.
  - 2. Loudspeakers, Dynamic Magnetic Structures, and Impedance, EIA 299 A.
  - 3. Racks, Panels, and Associated Equipment, EIA 310 A.
  - 4. Amplifiers for Sound Equipment, SE 101 A.
  - 5. Speakers for Sound Equipment, SE 103.

#### 1.5 WORK

- A. The Work shall be performed in compliance with the applicable manufacturer's installation instructions, Standards, and certifications listed herein, the Contract Documents, and governing codes and regulations of the authorities having jurisdiction.

- B. The drawing and specification requirements govern where they exceed Code and Regulation requirements.
- C. Where requirements between governing Codes and Regulations vary, the more restrictive provision applies.
- D. Nothing in the Contract Documents grants authority or permission to disregard or violate any legal requirements.
- E. Coordinate exact location and installation of equipment, power, grounding, and raceway requirements with the Architect.

#### 1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. The Preconstruction Submittal is required to verify the Contractor will obtain the specified product, understands the processes and procedures, and understands the requirements to install, test, certify and create test record documentation for the specified paging system.
- B. The Submittal must include a technical description of the system being supplied, including installation manuals and shop drawings, indicating the locations of each device and cable pathways.
- C. The Contractor is to provide the quantity of submittals (sets) as specified in Division 1, General Requirements, or the minimal requirements as follows:
  - 1. Four (4) copies of documents such as installation schedules, valid copies of technician certifications, material lists, specification sheets, manuals and small size shop drawings as required. Two (2) copies of a CD containing all of the same information as these binders shall be submitted in Adobe® Portable Document Format (PDF).
- D. Contractor shall coordinate speaker baffle style, call button faceplate color, and clock enclosure color with General Contractor for compatibility with Electrical device cover plate color and texture. Approval must be obtained before purchasing and installing these devices.
- E. Assurance/Quality Control Submittals:
  - 1. Documentation of current certification for installers certified by the manufacturer of the submitted paging system. The Contractor shall have certified personnel on site during all work.
- F. Record drawings shall be kept on site. Record drawings shall include marked up floor plans showing speaker, call button and clock locations, type of cable, and cable label identification.

#### 1.7 CONTRACTOR CLOSE OUT SUBMITTALS

- A. These submittals must be submitted and approved prior to final billing and payment. They should be submitted within thirty days of completion of the project.
- B. Complete set of operation and maintenance manuals.

- C. Record drawings with as-built information and finalized versions of the shop drawings. These submittals shall be on the base plan as provided by the Architect or Owner. These submittals shall be three (3) copies in reproducible print form and one (1) in electronic format (AutoCAD).
  - 1. Plan drawings indicating locations and identification of call buttons.
  - 2. Telecommunications rooms (TR/IDF), and backbone (riser) cable runs.
  - 3. Cross-connect schedules main cross-connects, intermediate cross- connects, and horizontal cross-connects.
  - 4. Labeling and administration documentation to DISD labeling requirements.
  
- D. Manufacturer's system certification supporting the product warranty. Transfer manufacturer's warranties to the owner in addition to the General System Guarantee. Submit these warranties on each item in list form along with the certification test results. Detail specific parts within equipment that are subject to separate conditional warranty. Warranty proprietary equipment and systems involved in this contract during the guarantee period. Final payment shall not relieve the Contractor of these obligations.

#### 1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Ship product in its original container, to prevent damage or entrance of foreign matter.
- B. Handling and shipping in accordance with manufacturer's recommendation.
- C. Provide protective covering during construction, to prevent damage or entrance of foreign matter
- D. Replace at no expense to Owner, product damaged during storage, handling or the course of construction.

#### 1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Verify conditions on the job site applicable to this work. Notify Architect in writing of discrepancies, conflicts, or omissions promptly upon discovery.
- B. The Drawings diagrammatically show cabling and arrangements of equipment fitting the space available without interference. If conditions exist which make it impossible to install work as shown, recommend solutions and/or submit drawings to the Architect for approval, showing how the work may be installed.

#### 1.10 WARRANTY

- A. The installed system shall be provided with a minimum five (5) year manufacturer product warranty.
- B. The contractor shall guarantee the workmanship for at least one (1) year from the substantial completion date.
- C. Effect replacement or substitutions of equipment within 24 hours of first notification. Complete repairs to equipment within 72 hours. If repairs cannot be completed during this time period, or if ordering of parts is required, forward the owner every 72 hours, documentation of progress repairs. This repair capability is mandatory. Include costs anticipated to comply with this requirement in the bid.

### 1.11 USE OF THE SITE

- A. Use of the site shall be at the Owner's direction in matters in which the Owner deems it necessary to place restriction.
- B. Use of the site shall be at the Owner's direction in matters in which the Owner deems it necessary to place restriction.
- C. Access to building wherein the work is performed shall be as directed by the Owner.
- D. The Owner will occupy the premises during the entire period of construction for conducting his or her normal business operations. Cooperate with the Owner to minimize conflict and to facilitate the Owner's operations.
- E. Schedule necessary shutdowns of plant services with the Owner, and obtain written permission from the Owner. Refer to article – CONTINUITY OF SERVICES herein.
- F. Proceed with the work without interfering with ordinary use of streets, aisles, passages, exits, and operations of the Owner.
- G. All Contractor Personnel must check in with the General Contractor upon arrival and upon departure.

### 1.12 CONTINUITY OF SERVICES

- A. Take no action that will interfere with, or interrupt, existing building services unless previous arrangements have been made with the Owner's Representative. Arrange the work to minimize shutdown time.
- B. Owner's personnel will perform shutdown of operating systems. The Contractor shall give three (3) days' advance notice for systems shutdown.
- C. Should services be inadvertently interrupted, immediately furnish labor, including overtime, material, and equipment necessary for prompt restoration of interrupted service.

## PART 2 PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MANUFACTURERS:

- 1. Valcom
  - 2. Approved owner Equivalent
- B. Any substitutions that differ from DISD TDGs will need to be approved by the Owner per SECTION 01 25 00 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES.
  - C. It is the intent of these specifications to establish a standard or quality, function and features. The functions and features specified are vital to the operation of this facility. It shall therefore be the responsibility of the bidder to insure that the products and system components being proposed meet or exceed every standard set forth in these specifications.

### 2.2 CLASSROOM/CORRIDOR/EXTERIOR EQUIPMENT

A. Indoor Loudspeakers – Tile Replacement

1. Flush Ceiling Loudspeaker
  - a. No Visible Hardware After Installation
  - b. Acoustically-Correct Baffle Design Blends with Ceiling Tiles
  - c. Mar-Proof Baked White Epoxy Finish
  - d. Can Be Installed Before Ceiling Tile Installation
  - e. Speaker Tap Selector Control Mounted on Backbox
  - f. Speaker Type: 8 inch (20.3 cm) Permanent Magnet
  - g. Power Rating: 8 Watts RMS
  - h. Sensitivity: 93 dB @ 1 meter with 1 Watt input
  - i. Frequency Response: 65 to 17,000 Hertz
  - j. Magnet: 5 oz. (141.7 g) PM
  - k. Voice Coil Impedance: 8 ohms
  - l. Voice Coil Diameter: 0.75 inches (1.9 cm)
  - m. Transformer: 25V; taps at ¼, ½, 1, 2 and 4 Watts
  - n. Baffle: White, 22-gauge cold-rolled steel
  - o. Baffle Size: Width: 23-3/4" (60.3 cm)
  - p. Length: 11-3/4" (29.8 cm)
  - q. Depth: 3-3/8" (8.6 cm)
  - r. Weight: 4 lbs. 14 oz. (2.2 kg)

B. Indoor Ceiling Loudspeakers – Hard Ceiling

1. speaker assembly with round white baffle, speaker backbox, T-Bar Support
  - a. 8" Cone.
  - b. Frequency Response: 65 to 17,000 Hz.
  - c. Power Rated: 8 Watts.
  - d. Magnet: 5 Ounce.
  - e. Axial Sensitivity: 93 dB at 4 feet with 1 watt input.
  - f. 25 watt variable tap transformer.
  - g. Surface mounted speaker housings in areas so designated.
  - h. Bi directional.
  - i. Wall or ceiling mount.
  - j. Accommodates 8" speakers.
  - k. Provide ceiling tile bridge and backbox

C. Exterior Loudspeakers

1. Flush mounted horn
  - a. virtually impervious to weather or vandalism. It shall be of the double reentrant type with a power rating of 15 watts at full range. Frequency range shall be 480 to 14,000 Hz; dispersion angle shall be 180°; sound pressure level shall be 106dB at 1 watt at 1 meter.
  - b. The loudspeaker shall have impedance selection of 5000/2500/1300/666/333/89/45 ohms. Power taps shall be 1.0/2.0/3.8/7.5/15 watts for 70 volt line and .90/1.9/7.0/14 watts for 25 volt line.
  - c. The unit shall be weatherproof, constructed of treated heavy-gauge aluminum, with all exposed parts plated and sealed driver, line transformer and selector switch shall be mounted within the housing.
  - d. Wiring terminals shall be fully enclosed. A cork rubber gasket between speaker flange and mounting surface shall be provided. Finish shall be gray baked enamel.

D. Normal/Emergency Call Switch



1. Dual Level Call In switch
  - a. One (1) "Normal" call switch that shall activate a distinctive "NORM" level call from single button activation. The button shall be clearly mark "NORM" and will route the call-in to any one or more Administrative Telephones and/or Marquee Displays for quick and easy response from an administrative Telephone.
  - b. One (1) "Emergency" call switch that shall activate a distinctive "EMERGENCY" level call from single button activation. The button shall be red in color and shall be clearly marked "Emergency" and will route the call-in to any one or more Administrative Telephones and/or Displays for quick and easy response from and Administrative Telephone.
  - c. Call Switch will be mounted next to white board left or right by the teacher's desk
2. Furnish Wall Mount Attenuator in administrative areas and office as shown on project plans.

E. Control equipment

1. Program Control Console
  - a. Located in main office and principals for remote program activation
  - b. Middle Atlantic Slim 2 Series 19" Sloped Desktop Racks
  - c. EIA compliant Slim Desktop Turret Rack shall be Middle Atlantic Products model # 2-6M. Desktop Turret Rack shall offer 6 rack spaces.
  - d. Rack shall be constructed of 5/8" furniture grade MDF board with black wood grain laminate finish. Rubber feet shall be included with rack
  - e. Pre-installed front and rear rack rail shall be 10-32 threaded and constructed of 11-guage steel. Bottom trim panel shall be 16-guage steel with a durable black powder coat finish
  - f. Rack shall be warrantied to be free from defects in material or workmanship under normal use and conditions for a period of 7 years
  - g. IP Interactive console:
    - 1) Valcom VIP-893
    - 2) IP6000
    - 3) VE6023 Telephone Paging Server
    - 4) VE8090R Sip Intercom Controller
2. Denon-DN 300Z AM/FM CD Player
  - a. AM FM tuner:
    - 1) Tuning Range: AM-530 to 1710 KHz, FM – 87.5 to 107.9 MHz
    - 2) Antenna Input: 75 Ohms unbalanced
  - b. CD player:
    - 1) Frequency Response: 20-20,000 HZ
    - 2) S/N Ratio: 98 DB
    - 3) Wow and Flutter : Below measurable Limit
3. Program Line Input module and Universal Rack mounting kit
  - a. Encodes Analog Signals to Digital, IP-Based Data
  - b. Accepts Stereo or Mono Line Level Audio
  - c. Equipped with 3.5 mm Socket for Enhanced Compatibility
  - d. Connection Status Indicator LED
  - e. Mounts in Rack or Desktop
  - f. Digital Encryption of Control Signals for Excellent Security
  - g. Compliant with IEEE 802.3af Power Over Ethernet (PoE) Standard
  - h. UIL listed for enhanced compliance"

4. Amplifier and power supplies
  - a. Supply amplifiers and power supplies as necessary.
  - b. Approved Manufacturer
    - 1) Valcom
    - 2) Approved Owner equivalent

### 2.3 WIRELESS CLOCK SYSTEM

1. Provide a complete and satisfactory operating NTP synchronized wireless clock system with analog and/or digital secondary clocks.
2. The system is to be easy to learn and operate. All standard programming is to be user friendly to allow the system administrator to easily program the system features.
3. System components are to be hardwired. Battery clocks are not allowed.
4. The NTP synchronized Wireless System consists of a master transmitter located on the inside of the building, and an NTP receiver connected to a time server.
5. Provide clocks as shown on the drawing set.
  - a. Approved Manufacturers
    - 1) Valcom
    - 2) Approved Owner equivalent

## PART 3 EXECUTION

### 3.1 WIRING

- A. All cables installed in the entire complex shall be new.
- B. Each individual speaker circuit cable shall be PANDUIT CAT 5E PUR5504YL-UY (Yellow Jacket) in an overall PVC or Plenum Jacket as construction conditions dictate.
  1. One Cat5E cable shall carry signals for speaker, call switch, and secondary clock where applicable. Refer to 603101 Category Cabling Breakout Module in section 2.
  2. Optional applications can use a spare owner-furnished category cable
  3. Optional applications can use cross-connect to owner-furnished category cable from data patch panel.
- C. Corridor and outdoor speaker page only circuits shall be West Penn #25224B or 25225B as dictated by load and line loss.
- D. Clearly mark all cables and label all selector panels in numerical sequence.
- E. All wiring will be neat and all cables will be securely routed and fastened using bridle rings, "J" hooks, Tie Wraps and other approved supports. Under no circumstances will cables be fastened to the ceiling channel support wire.

### 3.2 COMMISSIONING

- A. Upon completion of system installation, sound contractor shall test each and every speaker for operation and proper level for area to be covered using a constant input signal through all call and measuring the level with a sound level meter.

- B. Field record drawings shall be furnished in electronic (DWG and PDF) format for maintenance personnel. Furnish SPL readings with field record drawings.
- C. The contractor shall test each and every speaker for operation and proper level during two-way communication, measuring the level with a sound level meter.
- D. Guarantee:
  - 1. The contractor shall guarantee the system from defects or materials and workmanship for at least one (1) year from the date of substantial completion of the general contractor.

### 3.3 TRAINING

- A. Upon completion of system installation, instruct personnel in the operation of the system of no less than eight hours.
- B. Furnish four hours of on-site personnel training on each of two separate site visits. Coordinate training with owner's representative.
- C. Provide letter of certification of instruction stating names of instructor and names of office representatives.

END OF SECTION

**SECTION 28 46 00  
FIRE DETECTION AND ALARM**

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**1.01 SECTION INCLUDES**

- A. Fire alarm system design and installation, including all components, wiring, and conduit.
- B. Transmitters for communication with supervising station.
- C. Replacement and removal of existing fire alarm system components, wiring, and conduit indicated.
- D. Maintenance of fire alarm system under contract for specified warranty period.

**1.02 RELATED REQUIREMENTS**

- A. Section 07 84 00 - Firestopping: Materials and methods for work to be performed by this installer.
- B. Section 08 33 23 - Overhead Coiling Doors: Coiling fire doors to be released by fire alarm system.
- C. Section 08 71 00 - Door Hardware: Electrically operated locks and door holder devices to be monitored and released by fire alarm system.
- D. Section 21 13 00 - Fire-Suppression Sprinkler Systems: Supervisory, alarm, and actuating devices installed in sprinkler system.
- E. Section 23 33 00 - Air Duct Accessories: Smoke dampers monitored and controlled by fire alarm system.

**1.03 REFERENCE STANDARDS**

- A. 36 CFR 1191 - Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines; current edition.
- B. ADA Standards - 2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design; 2010.
- C. IEEE C62.41.2 - IEEE Recommended Practice on Characterization of Surges in Low-Voltage (1000 V and less) AC Power Circuits; 2002 (Corrigendum 2012).
- D. NFPA 70 - National Electrical Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- E. NFPA 72 - National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code; Most Recent Edition Cited by Referring Code or Reference Standard.
- F. NFPA 101 - Life Safety Code; Most Recent Edition Adopted by Authority Having Jurisdiction, Including All Applicable Amendments and Supplements.
- G. UL 268 - Standard for Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Systems; Current Edition, Including All Revisions.

**1.04 SUBMITTALS**

- A. See Section 01 30 00 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.
- B. Proposal Documents: Submit the following with cost/time proposal:
  - 1. NFPA 72 "Record of Completion", filled out to the extent known at the time.
  - 2. Manufacturer's detailed data sheet for each control unit, initiating device, and notification appliance.
  - 3. Certification by Contractor that the system design will comply with Contract Documents.
  - 4. Proposed maintenance contract.
- C. Drawings must be prepared using AutoCad release.

1. Owner will provide floor plan drawings for Contractor's use; verify all dimensions on Owner-provided drawings.
- D. Evidence of designer qualifications.
- E. Design Documents: Submit all information required for plan review and permitting by authorities having jurisdiction, including but not limited to floor plans, riser diagrams, and description of operation:
1. Copy (if any) of list of data required by authority having jurisdiction.
  2. NFPA 72 "Record of Completion", filled out to the extent known at the time.
  3. Clear and concise description of operation, with input/output matrix similar to that shown in NFPA 72 Appendix A-7-5-2.2(9), and complete listing of software required.
  4. System zone boundaries and interfaces to fire safety systems.
  5. Location of all components, circuits, and raceways; mark components with identifiers used in control unit programming.
  6. Circuit layouts; number, size, and type of raceways and conductors; conduit fill calculations; spare capacity calculations; notification appliance circuit voltage drop calculations.
  7. List of all devices on each signaling line circuit, with spare capacity indicated.
  8. Manufacturer's detailed data sheet for each component, including wiring diagrams, installation instructions, and circuit length limitations.
  9. Description of power supplies; if secondary power is by battery include calculations demonstrating adequate battery power.
  10. Certification by either the manufacturer of the control unit or by the manufacturer of each other component that the components are compatible with the control unit.
  11. Certification by the manufacturer of the control unit that the system design complies with Contract Documents.
  12. Certification by Contractor that the system design complies with Contract Documents.
  13. Do not show existing components to be removed.
- F. Evidence of installer qualifications.
- G. Evidence of instructor qualifications; training lesson plan outline.
- H. Evidence of maintenance contractor qualifications, if different from installer.
- I. Inspection and Test Reports:
1. Submit inspection and test plan prior to closeout demonstration.
  2. Submit documentation of satisfactory inspections and tests.
  3. Submit NFPA 72 "Inspection and Test Form," filled out.
- J. Operating and Maintenance Data: See Section 01 78 00 for additional requirements; revise and resubmit until acceptable; have one set available during closeout demonstration:
1. Original copy of NFPA 72 with portions that are not relevant to this project neatly crossed out by hand; label with project name and date.
  2. Complete set of specified design documents, as approved by authority having jurisdiction.
  3. Additional printed set of project record documents and closeout documents, bound or filed in same manuals.
  4. Contact information for firm that will be providing contract maintenance and trouble call-back service.
  5. List of recommended spare parts, tools, and instruments for testing.
  6. Replacement parts list with current prices, and source of supply.
  7. Detailed troubleshooting guide and large scale input/output matrix.
  8. Preventive maintenance, inspection, and testing schedule complying with NFPA 72; provide printed copy and computer format acceptable to Owner.

9. Detailed but easy to read explanation of procedures to be taken by non-technical administrative personnel in the event of system trouble, when routine testing is being conducted, for fire drills, and when entering into contracts for remodeling.
- K. Project Record Documents: See Section 01 78 00 for additional requirements; have one set available during closeout demonstration:
  1. Complete set of floor plans showing actual installed locations of components, conduit, and zones.
  2. "As installed" wiring and schematic diagrams, with final terminal identifications.
  3. "As programmed" operating sequences, including control events by device, updated input/output chart, and voice messages by event.
- L. Closeout Documents:
  1. Certification by manufacturer that the system has been installed in compliance with manufacturer's installation requirements, is complete, and is in satisfactory operating condition.
  2. NFPA 72 "Record of Completion", filled out completely and signed by installer and authorized representative of authority having jurisdiction.
  3. Certificate of Occupancy.
  4. Maintenance contract.
  5. Report on training results.
- M. Maintenance Materials, Tools, and Software: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
  1. See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
  2. Furnish spare parts of same manufacturer and model as those installed; deliver in original packaging, labeled in same manner as in operating and maintenance data and place in spare parts cabinet.

#### **1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE**

- A. Designer Qualifications: NICET Level III or IV (3 or 4) certified fire alarm technician or registered fire protection engineer, employed by fire alarm control panel manufacturer, Contractor, or installer, with experience designing fire alarm systems in the jurisdictional area of the authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Installer Qualifications: Firm with minimum 3 years documented experience installing fire alarm systems of the specified type and providing contract maintenance service as a regular part of their business.
  1. Authorized representative of control unit manufacturer; submit manufacturer's certification that installer is authorized; include name and title of manufacturer's representative making certification.
  2. Installer Personnel: At least 2 years of experience installing fire alarm systems.
  3. Supervisor: NICET level III or IV (3 or 4) certified fire alarm technician; furnish name and address.
- C. Maintenance Contractor Qualifications: Same entity as installer or different entity with specified qualifications.
- D. Instructor Qualifications: Experienced in technical instruction, understanding fire alarm theory, and able to provide the required training; trained by fire alarm control unit manufacturer.
- E. Product Listing Organization Qualifications: An organization recognized by OSHA as a Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

#### **1.06 WARRANTY**

- A. See Section 01 78 00 - Closeout Submittals, for additional warranty requirements.

- B. Provide control panel manufacturer's warranty that system components other than wire and conduit are free from defects and will remain so for 1 year after date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Provide installer's warranty that the installation is free from defects and will remain so for 1 year after date of Substantial Completion.

## **PART 2 PRODUCTS**

### **2.01 MANUFACTURERS**

- A. Acceptable fire alarm system: Notifier NFS2-3030 with voice notification. The proposed alternate systems to be pre-approved by Dallas ISD designated representative, and Dallas ISD-Maintenance and Operations (M&O).
- B. Fire alarms system to have integral mass notification.
- C. Acceptable Fire Alarm Control Units and Accessories:
  - 1. Provide control units made by the same manufacturer.
- D. Initiating Devices and Notification Appliances:
  - 1. Same manufacturer as control units.
  - 2. Provide initiating devices and notification appliances made by the same manufacturer, where possible.
- E. Substitutions: See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements.
  - 1. For other acceptable manufacturers of control units specified, submit product data showing equivalent features and compliance with Contract Documents.
  - 2. For substitution of products by manufacturers not listed, submit product data showing features and certification by Contractor that the design will comply with Contract Documents.

### **2.02 FIRE ALARM SYSTEM**

- A. Fire Alarm System: Provide a new automatic fire detection and alarm system:
  - 1. Provide all components necessary, regardless of whether shown in Contract Documents or not.
  - 2. Protected Premises: entire building.
  - 3. Comply with the following; where requirements conflict, order of precedence of requirements is as listed:
    - a. ADA Standards.
    - b. The requirements of the State Fire Marshal.
    - c. The requirements of the local authority having jurisdiction.
    - d. Applicable local codes.
    - e. Contract Documents (drawings and specifications).
    - f. NFPA 101.
    - g. NFPA 72; where the word "should" is used consider that provision mandatory; where conflicts between requirements require deviation from NFPA 72, identify deviations clearly on design documents.
    - h. Dallas ISD Latest Technical Design Guidelines.
  - 4. The facility shall have an emergency voice alarm communication system. Digitally stored message sequences shall notify the building occupants that a fire or life safety condition has been reported. Message generator(s) shall be capable of automatically distributing up to eight (8) simultaneous, unique messages to appropriate audio zones within the facility based on the type and location of the initiating event. The Fire Command Center (FCC) shall also support Emergency manual voice announcement capability for both system wide or selected audio zones, and shall include provisions for the system operator to override automatic messages system wide or in selected zones.

5. The system shall be support additional, alternate Fire Command Centers, which shall be capable of simultaneous monitoring of all system events. Alternate Fire Command Centers shall also support an approved method of transferring the control functions to an alternate Fire Command Center when necessary. All Fire Command Centers shall be individually capable of assuming Audio Command functions such as Emergency Paging, audio zone control functions, and Firefighter's Telephone communication functions.
  6. Evacuation Alarm: Multiple smoke zones; allow for evacuation notification of any individual zone or combination of zones, in addition to general evacuation of entire premises.
  7. Voice Notification: Provide emergency voice/alarm communications with multichannel capability; digital.
  8. General Evacuation Zones: Each smoke zone is considered a general evacuation zone unless otherwise indicated, with alarm notification in all zones on the same floor, on the floor above, and the floor below.
  9. Program notification zones and voice messages as directed by Owner.
  10. Hearing Impaired Occupants: Provide visible notification devices in all public areas.
  11. Fire Command Center: Located in on-premises supervising station.
  12. Master Fire Alarm Control Unit: New, located per drawing.
  13. Two-Way Telephone: Provide two-way telephone service for the use of the fire service and others; provide jacks and two portable handsets.
  14. Combined Systems: Do not combine fire alarm system with other non-fire systems.
- B. Supervising Stations and Fire Department Connections:
1. Public Fire Department Notification: By on-premises supervising station.
  2. Remote Supervising Station: UL-listed central station under contract to facility.
  3. Fire alarm system is monitored by an AES-Multinet receiver at Dallas ISD's central monitoring system. Fire alarm systems are to report to central monitoring system via an AES 7788F/7744F series fire subscriber and AES 7794 AES-IntelliPro Fire or Dallas ISD approved equal. If the central monitoring system is not available, signal is to be sent to Southwest Dispatch or as directed by Dallas ISD designated representative. Provide twelve months of monitoring service required as part of the installation.
  4. Auxiliary Connection Type: Local energy.
- C. Circuits:
1. Initiating Device Circuits (IDC): Class A, style D.
  2. Signaling Line Circuits (SLC) Within Single Building: Class A, style 6.
  3. Signaling Line Circuits (SLC) Between Buildings: Class A, style 6.
  4. Notification Appliance Circuits (NAC): Class B, style Y.
  5. Provide a minimum of 6-foot separation (vertical and horizontal) between supply and return loops in all Class "A" wired circuits.
  6. City of Dallas requires Class "A" wiring to all initiating devices except addressable devices used to monitor the status of a suppression system.
- D. Spare Capacity:
1. Initiating Device Circuits: Minimum 25 percent spare capacity.
  2. Notification Appliance Circuits: Minimum 25 percent spare capacity.
  3. Speaker Amplifiers: Minimum 25 percent spare capacity.
  4. Fire Alarm Control Units: Capable of handling all circuits utilized to capacity without requiring additional components other than plug-in control modules.
- E. Power Sources:
1. Primary: Dedicated branch circuits of the facility power distribution system.
  2. Secondary: Storage batteries.
  3. Capacity: Sufficient to operate entire system for period specified by NFPA 72.



4. Each Computer System: Provide uninterruptible power supply (UPS).

### **2.03 EXISTING COMPONENTS**

- A. Existing Fire Alarm System: Remove existing components indicated on fire alarm shop drawings and incorporate remaining components into new system, under warranty as if they were new; do not take existing portions of system out of service until new portions are fully operational, tested, and connected to existing system.
- B. Clearly label components that are "Not In Service."
- C. Remove unused existing components and materials from site and dispose of properly.

### **2.04 FIRE SAFETY SYSTEMS INTERFACES**

- A. Supervision: Provide supervisory signals in accordance with NFPA 72 for the following:
  1. Sprinkler water control valves.
  2. Dry-pipe sprinkler system pressure.
  3. Dry-pipe sprinkler valve room low temperature.
  4. Elevator shut-down control circuits.
- B. Alarm: Provide alarm initiation in accordance with NFPA 72 for the following:
  1. Sprinkler water flow.
  2. Kitchen hood suppression activation; also disconnect fuel source from cooking equipment.
  3. Elevator lobby, elevator hoistway, and elevator machine room smoke detectors.
  4. Duct smoke detectors.
- C. Elevators:
  1. Elevator lobby, hoistway, and machine room smoke detectors: Elevator recall for fire fighters' service.
  2. Elevator Machine Room Heat Detector: Shut down elevator power prior to hoistway sprinkler activation.
  3. Sprinkler pressure or waterflow: Shut down elevator power prior to hoistway sprinkler activation.
- D. HVAC:
  1. Duct Smoke Detectors: Close dampers indicated; shut down air handlers indicated.
- E. Doors:
  1. Smoke Barrier Door Magnetic Holders: Release upon activation of smoke detectors in smoke zone on either side of door, upon alarm from manual pull station on same floor, and upon sprinkler activation on same floor. Refer to Section 08 71 00.
  2. Electromagnetic Door Locks on Egress Doors: Unlock upon activation of any alarm initiating device or suppression system in smoke zone that doors serve as egress from. Refer to Section 08 71 00.
  3. Overhead Coiling Fire Doors: Release upon activation of smoke detectors in smoke zone on either side of door, upon alarm from manual pull station on same floor, and upon sprinkler activation on same floor. Refer to Section 08 33 23.

### **2.05 COMPONENTS**

- A. General:
  1. Provide flush mounted units where installed in finish areas; in unfinished areas, surface mounted unit are acceptable.
  2. Provide legible, permanent labels for each control device, using identification used in operation and maintenance data.
- B. Fire Alarm Control Units (FACP): Analog, addressable type Notifier NFS2 - 3030 - intelligent Fire Alarm Control Panel with integrated voice notification. Main fire alarm control unit shall contain a microprocessor based Central Processing Unit (CPU) and power supply. The CPU

shall communicate with and control the following types of equipment used to make up the system: intelligent addressable smoke and thermal (heat) detectors, addressable modules, printer, annunciators, and other system controlled devices.

- C. The main FACP shall perform the following functions:
  - 1. Supervise and monitor all intelligent addressable detectors and monitor modules connected to the system for normal, trouble and alarm conditions.
  - 2. Supervise all initiating signaling and notification circuits throughout the facility by way of connection to addressable monitor and control modules.
  - 3. Detect the activation of any initiating device and the location of the alarm condition. Operate all notification appliances and auxiliary devices as programmed. In the event of CPU failure, all SLC loop modules shall fallback to degrade mode. Such degrade mode shall treat the corresponding SLC loop control modules and associated detection devices as conventional two-wire operation. Any activation of a detector in this mode shall automatically activate associated Notification Appliance Circuits.
- D. The FACP shall be capable of expansion via up to 10 SLC loops. Each module shall support up to 318 analog/addressable devices for a maximum system capacity of 3180 points. The Fire Alarm Control Panel shall include a full featured operator interface control and annunciation panel that shall include a backlit 640-character liquid crystal display, individual, color coded system status LEDs, and a QWERTY style alphanumeric keypad for the field programming and control of the fire alarm system.
- E. The FACP shall be capable of communicating on Noti-Fire-Net over a Local Area Network (LAN) or Wide Area Network (WAN) utilizing a peer-to-peer, inherently regenerative communication format and protocol. The network shall support communication speed up to 100 Mb and support up to 200 panels/nodes per network.
- F. Digital Voice Command Center
  - 1. The Digital Voice Command Center located with the FACP, shall contain all equipment required for all audio control, emergency telephone system control, signaling and supervisory functions. This shall include speaker zone indication and control, telephone circuit indication and control, digital voice units, microphone and main telephone handset.
  - 2. Function: The Voice Command Center equipment shall perform the following functions:
    - a. Operate as a supervised multi-channel emergency voice communication system. Operate as a two-way emergency telephone system control center.
    - b. Audibly and visually annunciate the active or trouble condition of every speaker circuit and emergency telephone circuit.
    - c. Audibly and visually annunciate any trouble condition for digital tone and voice units required for normal operation of the system.
    - d. Provide all-call Emergency Paging activities through activation of a single control switch.
    - e. As required, provide vectored paging control to specific audio zones via dedicated control switches.
    - f. Provide a factory recorded "library" of voice messages and tones in standard WAV. File format, which may be edited and saved on a PC running a current Windows operating system.
    - g. Provide a software utility capable of off-line programming for the DVC operation and the audio message files. This utility shall support the creation of new programs as well as editing and saving existing program files. Uploading or downloading the DVC shall not inhibit the emergency operation of other nodes on the fire alarm network.
    - h. Support an optional mode of operation with four analog audio outputs capable of being used with UL 864 fire-listed analog audio amplifiers and SLC controlled switching.

- i. The Digital Voice Command shall be modular in construction and shall be capable of being field programmable without requiring the return of any components to the manufacturer and without requiring use of any external computers or other programming equipment.
    - j. The Digital Voice Command and associated equipment shall be protected against unusually high voltage surges or line transients.
- G. Remote Annunciator panel: From same manufacturer as main control panel.
  1. Flush cabinet, NEMA 250, Type 1, annunciator functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit for alarm, supervisory, and trouble indications. Manual switching functions shall match those of fire-alarm control unit, including acknowledging, silencing, resetting, and testing.
  2. Display Type and Functional Performance: Alphanumeric display and LED indicating lights shall match those of fire-alarm control unit. Provide controls to acknowledge, silence, reset, and test functions for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals.
- H. Audio Amplifiers
  1. The Audio Amplifiers will provide Audio Power for distribution to speaker circuits.
  2. Multiple audio amplifiers may be mounted in a single enclosure, either to supply incremental audio power, or to function as an automatically switched backup amplifier(s).
  3. The audio amplifier shall include an integral power supply, and built-in LED indicators and controls.
  4. Adjustment of the correct audio level for the amplifier shall not require any special tools or test equipment.
  5. Includes audio input and amplified output supervision, back up input, and automatic switch over function, (if primary amplifier should fail).
  6. System shall be capable of backing up digital amplifiers.
  7. System shall be capable of backing up digital amplifiers.
  8. One-to-one backup shall be provided by either a plug-in amplifier card or a designated backup amplifier of identical model as the primary amplifier.
  9. One designated backup amplifier shall be capable of backing up multiple primary amplifiers mounted in the same or adjacent cabinets.
  10. Multi-channel operation from a single amplifier shall be supported by the addition of an optional plug-in amplifier card.
- I. Audio Message Generator (Prerecorded Voice)/Speaker Control:
  1. Each initiating zone or intelligent device shall interface with an emergency voice communication system capable of transmitting a prerecorded voice message to all speakers in the building.
  2. Actuation of any alarm initiating device shall cause a prerecorded message to sound over the speakers. The message shall be repeated four (4) times. Pre- and post-message tones shall be supported.
  3. A built-in microphone shall be provided to allow paging through speaker circuits.
  4. System paging from emergency telephone circuits shall be supported.
  5. The audio message generator shall have the following indicators and controls to allow for proper operator understanding and control:
    - a. Lamp Test
    - b. Trouble
    - c. Off-Line Trouble
    - d. Microphone Trouble
    - e. Phone Trouble
    - f. Busy/Wait
    - g. Page Inhibited

- h. Pre/Post Announcement Tone
- J. Initiating Devices:
  - 1. Addressable Systems:
    - a. Addressable Devices: Individually identifiable by addressable fire alarm control unit.
  - 2. Manual Pull Stations:
    - a. Provide 1 extra.
  - 3. Key Operated Pull Stations:
    - a. Provide 1 extra.
  - 4. Smoke Detectors:
    - a. Provide 1 extra.
  - 5. Duct Smoke Detectors and Remote Test Stations:
    - a. Provide 1 extra.
  - 6. Heat Detectors:
    - a. Provide 1 extra.
- K. Notification Appliances:
  - 1. Speaker Strobe:
    - a. Provide 1 extra.
  - 2. Weatherproof Speaker Strobe:
    - a. Provide 1 extra.
- L. Circuit Conductors: Copper or optical fiber; provide 200 feet (60 m) extra; color code and label.
- M. Surge Protection: In accordance with IEEE C62.41.2 category B combination waveform and NFPA 70; except for optical fiber conductors.
  - 1. Equipment Connected to Alternating Current Circuits: Maximum let through voltage of 350 V(ac), line-to-neutral, and 350 V(ac), line-to-line; do not use fuses.
  - 2. Initiating Device Circuits, Notification Appliance Circuits, and Communications Circuits: Provide surge protection at each point where circuit exits or enters a building; rated to protect applicable equipment; for 24 V(dc) maximum dc clamping voltage of 36 V(dc), line-to-ground, and 72 V(dc), line-to-line.
  - 3. Signaling Line Circuits: Provide surge protection at each point where circuit exits or enters a building, rated to protect applicable equipment.
- N. In addition to any built-in surge protection of the fire alarm panel, each fire alarm panel and power supply panel shall have an added surge protector installed. The secondary surge protection device must be installed in a manner that it is isolated a minimum of two feet from the panel as measured along the route of electrical travel. If data lines run between separate buildings, data line surge/spike protection is required on each data line where the line enters and/or exits each building (Refer to NFPA 72 section 12.2.4.2 and NFPA 4.10.7.7.1).
- O. Fire Alarm systems used for partial evacuation and relocation shall be designed and installed such that attack by fire within an evacuation signaling zone shall not impair control and operation of the notification appliances outside the evacuation signaling zone per section 23.10 of NFPA-72. Signaling line circuits used to control notification appliances in multiple evacuation signaling zones should be properly designed and installed so that one fire would not impair the signaling line circuit, rendering the notification appliances serving more than one evacuation signaling zone inoperative. Cabling is located inside the 2-hour rated electrical rooms and the risers inside the parking garage are in the DAS conduit in the rated concrete wall.
- P. The secondary power supply for the in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communication service shall be capable of operating the system under quiescent load for a minimum of 24-hours and then be capable of operating system during fire or other emergency condition for a period of 15 minutes at maximum connected load per NFPA-72 section 10.6.7.2.1.
- Q. Locks and Keys: Deliver keys to Owner.

1. Provide the same standard lock and key for each key operated switch and lockable panel and cabinet; provide 5 keys of each type
- R. Instruction Charts: Printed instruction chart for operators, showing steps to be taken when a signal is received (normal, alarm, supervisory, and trouble); easily readable from normal operator's station.
  1. Frame: Stainless steel or aluminum with polycarbonate or glass cover.
  2. Provide one for each control unit where operations are to be performed.
  3. Obtain approval of Owner prior to mounting; mount in location acceptable to Owner.
  4. Provide extra copy with operation and maintenance data submittal.

## **PART 3 EXECUTION**

### **3.01 INSTALLATION**

- A. Install in accordance with applicable codes, NFPA 72, NFPA 70, and Contract Documents.
- B. Conceal all wiring, conduit, boxes, and supports where installed in finished areas.
- C. Obtain Owner's approval of locations of devices before installation.
- D. Install instruction cards and labels.
- E. Main fire alarm control panel shall be located in the main administrative office.
- F. All fire alarm AC breakers to have lock-on devices installed per NEC.
- G. All fire alarm devices mounted to a suspended ceiling shall be securely fastened in place in accordance with NFPA 70, section 314.23. All fire alarm wiring and associated equipment must be installed in a neat and workmanlike manner.
- H. Integrity of single or multiple circuits providing interface between two or more control panels shall be verified. Interfaced equipment connections shall be tested by operating or simulating operation of the equipment being supervised. Signals required to be transmitted shall be verified at control panel per table 14.4.2.2 (22) of NFPA 72 2013 editions.
- I. The FACP general, supervisory, and trouble alarms must be annunciated to a constantly occupied area of the building or the system must be monitored in accordance with section 907.6.5 of the International Fire Code-2015 edition.
- J. A smoke detector must be provided at all fire alarm control units that are located in areas that are not continuously occupied per NFPA 72-2013 edition, section 10.15.

### **3.02 INSPECTION AND TESTING FOR COMPLETION**

- A. Notify Owner 7 days prior to beginning completion inspections and tests.
- B. Notify authorities having jurisdiction and comply with their requirements for scheduling inspections and tests and for observation by their personnel.
- C. Provide the services of the installer's supervisor or person with equivalent qualifications to supervise inspection and testing, correction, and adjustments.
- D. Prepare for testing by ensuring that all work is complete and correct; perform preliminary tests as required.
- E. Provide all tools, software, and supplies required to accomplish inspection and testing.
- F. Perform inspection and testing in accordance with NFPA 72 and requirements of local authorities; document each inspection and test.
- G. Correct defective work, adjust for proper operation, and retest until entire system complies with Contract Documents.
- H. Diagnostic Period: After successful completion of inspections and tests, Operate system in normal mode for at least 14 days without any system or equipment malfunctions.
  1. Record all system operations and malfunctions.

2. If a malfunction occurs, start diagnostic period over after correction of malfunction.
3. Owner will provide attendant operator personnel during diagnostic period; schedule training to allow Owner personnel to perform normal duties.
4. At end of successful diagnostic period, fill out and submit NFPA 72 "Inspection and Testing Form."

### **3.03 OWNER PERSONNEL INSTRUCTION**

- A. Provide the following instruction to designated Owner personnel:
  1. Hands-On Instruction: On-site, using operational system.
  2. Classroom Instruction: Owner furnished classroom, on-site or at other local facility.
  3. Factory Instruction: At control unit manufacturer's training facility.
- B. Administrative: One-hour session(s) covering issues necessary for non-technical administrative staff; classroom:
  1. Initial Training: 1 session pre-closeout.
- C. Basic Operation: One-hour sessions for attendant personnel, security officers, and engineering staff; combination of classroom and hands-on:
  1. Initial Training: 1 session pre-closeout.
- D. Detailed Operation: Two-hour sessions for engineering staff; assume NICET level I qualifications or equivalent; combination of classroom and hands-on:
  1. Initial Training: 1 session pre-closeout.
- E. Maintenance Technicians: Detailed training for electrical technicians, on programming, maintaining, repairing, and modifying; factory training:
  1. Initial Training: One 3-day session, pre-closeout.
- F. Furnish the services of instructors and teaching aids; have copies of operation and maintenance data available during instruction.
- G. Provide means of evaluation of trainees suitable to type of training given; report results to Owner.

### **3.04 CLOSEOUT**

- A. Closeout Demonstration: Demonstrate proper operation of all functions to Owner.
  1. Be prepared to conduct any of the required tests.
  2. Have at least one copy of operation and maintenance data, preliminary copy of project record drawings, input/output matrix, and operator instruction chart(s) available during demonstration.
  3. Have authorized technical representative of control unit manufacturer present during demonstration.
  4. Demonstration may be combined with inspection and testing required by authority having jurisdiction; notify authority having jurisdiction in time to schedule demonstration.
  5. Repeat demonstration until successful.
- B. Occupancy of the project will not occur prior to Substantial Completion.
- C. Substantial Completion of the project cannot be achieved until inspection and testing is successful and:
  1. Specified diagnostic period without malfunction has been completed.
  2. Approved operating and maintenance data has been delivered.
  3. Spare parts, extra materials, and tools have been delivered.
  4. All aspects of operation have been demonstrated to Owner.
  5. Final acceptance of the fire alarm system has been given by authorities having jurisdiction.
  6. Occupancy permit has been granted.

7. Specified pre-closeout instruction is complete.

### **3.05 MAINTENANCE**

- A. See Section 01 70 00 - Execution and Closeout Requirements, for additional requirements relating to maintenance service.
- B. Provide to Owner, at no extra cost, a written maintenance contract for entire manufacturer's warranty period, to include the work described below.
- C. Perform routine inspection, testing, and preventive maintenance required by NFPA 72, including:
  1. Maintenance of fire safety interface and supervisory devices connected to fire alarm system.
  2. Repairs required, unless due to improper use, accidents, or negligence beyond the control of the maintenance contractor.
  3. Record keeping required by NFPA 72 and authorities having jurisdiction.
- D. Provide trouble call-back service upon notification by Owner:
  1. Provide on-site response within 2 hours of notification.
  2. Include allowance for call-back service during normal working hours at no extra cost to Owner.
  3. Owner will pay for call-back service outside of normal working hours on an hourly basis, based on actual time spent at site and not including travel time; include hourly rate and definition of normal working hours in maintenance contract.
- E. Provide a complete description of preventive maintenance, systematic examination, adjustment, cleaning, inspection, and testing, with a detailed schedule.
- F. Maintain a log at each fire alarm control unit, listing the date and time of each inspection and call-back visit, the condition of the system, nature of the trouble, correction performed, and parts replaced. Submit duplicate of each log entry to Owner's representative upon completion of site visit.
- G. Comply with Owner's requirements for access to facility and security.

**END OF SECTION**

**1. SECTION 28 51 00**

**2. IN-BUILDING TWO-WAY EMERGENCY RESPONDER COMMUNICATION ENHANCEMENT SYSTEM (BDA OR FIBER DAS SYSTEM)**

**A. PART 1 GENERAL**

1. Provide an in-building two-way emergency responder communication enhancement system with signal amplification system to provide complete coverage in the building for the public safety agencies as required by the local AHJ (Authority Having Jurisdiction). System users shall receive and transmit radio signals from their portable radio units within the building. This shall be accomplished utilizing the following components:
  - a. Bi-Directional Amplifiers (Signal Boosters) / Fiber DAS Master & Remotes
  - b. Coaxial Cable / Fiber Cable
  - c. Antennas
  - d. Couplers
  - e. Connectors
  - f. Power splitters
  - g. Other components and interconnecting circuitry as required.
2. Existing buildings shall be provided with approved radio coverage for emergency responders as required per Section 1103.2 of the International Fire Code-2015 Edition. Where radio coverage is not adequate Section 510 allows for the installation of a wired emergency communication system.
3. The system shall comply with the requirements of UL2524 2nd edition standard for in-building 2-way emergency radio communication enhancement systems, NFPA 72 2013 edition, NFPA 1221 2016 edition and IFC 2015 or later, as referenced.
4. The entire system shall meet the requirements of the fire department, the building department and all other agencies and authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ).
5. The work in this section shall include the responsibility for all permit requirements with the AHJ. Where filings require engineer's signature, documents shall be submitted for his review and signature. This responsibility shall include furnishing of required quantities of floor plans, descriptive notes and/or specifications, wiring diagrams, shop drawings and amendment forms.
6. Early completion of the in-building two-way emergency responder communication enhancement system will be required to permit a certificate of occupancy to be obtained in a timely manner.
7. Any permits necessary for the installation of the work shall be obtained prior to the commencement of the work. all permit costs and inspection fees shall be included.
8. The in-building two-way emergency responder communication enhancement system shall use a Honeywell signal booster or approved equal with UL2524 2nd edition listing from an Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) approved nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL), NFPA 72, NFPA 1221 and IFC 2015 or later compliance.



## B. PART 2 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

1. In-building two-way emergency responder communication enhancement systems for emergency responders are an integral component of the life safety equipment of a building or structure. The primary function is to provide reliable emergency responder communications at the required signal strength within the specified areas.
2. Critical Areas such as emergency command center, fire pump room, exit stairs, exit passageways, elevator lobbies, standpipe cabinets, sprinkler sectional valve locations and similar critical areas as specified by AHJ shall be provided with 99% floor area radio coverage.
3. General building areas shall be provided with 95% radio coverage, or as specified by AHJ. The

In-building two-way emergency responder communication enhancement system must provide the following signal strengths:

- a. Minimum DAQ of 3.0 or better and equivalent Signal to Interference Noise Ratio (SINR) applicable to the technology for either analog or digital.
  - b. Downlink - Minimum signal strength of -95 dBm throughout the coverage area.
  - c. Uplink - Minimum signal strength of -95 dBm received at the AHJ Radio System or as otherwise required by the AHJ.
4. Buildings and structures that cannot support the required level of radio coverage shall be equipped with a radiating cable system, a distributed antenna system with Federal Communication (FCC) – certified signal boosters to achieve the required adequate radio coverage per IFC Section 510.4.2.1.
  5. The system shall be complete with all components and wiring required for compliance with all applicable codes and regulations, and for its operations described hereinafter.
  6. An approved manufacturer or a qualified and approved vendor shall supply, test and determine locations of components which are required for proper operation as well as to supply, install, test and certify the performance of the complete system. Vendor qualifications must be acceptable to the AHJ.
  7. Design shall include iBwave software-simulated radio propagation modeling with heat maps showing predicted signal coverage levels within the building. The iBwave design shall be done by iBwave level 2 or higher certified personnel.
  8. All tests shall be conducted, documented, and signed by a person in possession of an FCC General Radio Telephone Operators License. All testing personnel shall be certified and authorized by the signal booster manufacturer in the installation and operation of their equipment. Personnel qualifications must be acceptable to the AHJ.
  9. The system design shall be based on the Honeywell line of Public Safety Signal Boosters / Fiber DAS or equivalent UL2524 2nd Edition. NFPA 72, NFPA 1221, IFC and FCC certified to establish standards of quality for materials and performance. The naming of a specific manufacturer or a catalog number does not waiver any requirement or performance of

individual components described in the specifications.

10. Assembly and installation of all components of the In-building Two-way Emergency Responder Communication Enhancement System shall comply with all applicable sections of the National Electrical Code.
11. Survivability from attack by fire shall meet requirements of NFPA 72, NFPA 1221, IFC or as required by the local jurisdiction.
12. The system must comply with all applicable sections of the FCC rules. Signal booster / Fiber DAS Master/Remote shall have FCC certification prior to installation.
13. Antenna isolation shall be maintained between the donor antenna and all inside antennas (DAS) to a minimum of 20dB under all operating conditions.

### **C. PART 3 TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS AND PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

1. The system specified shall be based upon Honeywell line of Public Safety UL2524 2nd Edition, NFPA72, NFPA 1221, IFC compliant signal boosters / Fiber DAS Master/Remote.
2. The system shall be Public Safety type with Class A or Class B signal booster or Fiber DAS Master/Remote, as designated by the FCC or as required by the AHJ.
3. The secondary power supplies, battery chargers and system monitoring shall be fully compliant with UL2524 2nd Edition, NFPA 72, NFPA 1221 and IFC. The signal booster shall have both the primary and the secondary power supplies within a waterproof, type-4 approved enclosure.
4. All signal boosters and other active system components must have FCC certification prior to installation. The equipment FCC ID must be displayed on the product as required by the FCC.
5. The digital signal booster shall be capable of field configuration via programmable software for the frequency channels with adjustable bandwidths as specified by the AHJ.
6. 700MHz & 800MHz + FirstNet Band 14, VHF, UHF signal boosters shall support both Class A and Class B operation. Signal boosters shall be channel selective type with 150KHz, 100KHz, 75KHz, 62.5KHz, 50KHz, 37.5KHz, 25KHz, and 12.5KHz. channel bandwidth options. Non-selective wide-band signal boosters shall not be accepted, unless required to cover multiple channels within the same band.
7. Signal Boosters shall have oscillation suppression circuitry to protect the public safety radio system in case of system malfunction or other causes. This signal booster circuitry shall allow real time automated oscillation correction and immediate detection capable of generating an oscillation alarm, combined with programmable limited operation or auto-shutdown if performance migration fails.
8. Signal Boosters must have uplink noise suppression function to eliminate uplink noise while in standby (i.e. no radio transmission from within a building). Systems that produce any measurable level of uplink noise while in standby shall not be acceptable.
9. Signal booster must have uplink, and downlink squelch per channel per timeslot.

10. Signal Booster gain shall be rated at minimum of 85dB +/- 2.0dB and the gain shall be adjustable in a minimum of 28dB range. System gain shall be set and documented at the time of the final system test.
11. Maximum propagation delay of the signal booster system shall be adjustable in the signal booster to comply with system requirement or as specified by the AHJ. Signal booster shall offer filter delay options. Maximum propagation delay shall be within the minimum Range of 3.5µS (microseconds) to a maximum of 61.5µS (microseconds).
12. Signal Booster shall produce no more than a maximum of 9dB noise throughout its published operable uplink gain range.
13. The signal booster system shall include built-in automatic supervision of malfunctions of the signal booster and battery systems as per NFPA 1221, NFPA 72 and IFC. Non-OEM equipment add-ons and modifications to comply with this specification shall not be acceptable.
14. A dedicated supervised monitoring/annunciator panel shall be provided within the emergency command center next to the fire alarm panel / annunciator or other location as designated by AHJ to annunciate the status of all signal booster locations. The monitoring panel shall provide visual and labeled indication of the following for each signal booster:
  - a. Normal AC power
  - b. Signal booster trouble
  - c. Antenna Failure
  - d. Loss of normal AC power
  - e. Failure of battery charger
  - f. Low battery capacity
  - g. Active System component failure
15. Signal booster shall meet Buy American compliance requirements
16. For signal booster to be supervised by any FACP, the signal booster system shall be Honeywell branded model with universal normally open relays for connection to external monitoring modules.
17. External filters, duplexers, power supplies or other non-OEM additions or modifications of the original equipment shall not be acceptable with the exception where technically required so long as it does not violate the UL2524 2nd edition certification. If required, the external filters should be manufactured or certified by the manufacturer.
18. All signal booster components shall meet the following requirements:
  - a. NEMA-4 Type waterproof Cabinet.
  - b. Be electronically supervised and monitored b a supervisory service or sound an audible alarm signal at a constantly attended location.
  - c. Battery System contained in MEMA-4 type waterproof cabinet.
  - d. Equipment shall have FCC certification prior to installation.
  - e. All enclosures shall be painted red with external labeling as required by the AHJ.

#### **D. PART 4 INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS**

1. Installation of all components of the In-building Two-way Emergency Responder Communication Enhancement System shall comply with all applicable sections of the National Electrical Code NFPA-70, NFPA-72,

- NFPA 1221, IFC or as required by the local AHJ.
2. The installation of the public safety radio coverage system shall be in accordance with section 510.5 of the IFC 2015 edition. Amplification systems capable of operating on frequencies licensed to any public safety agency by the FCC shall not be installed without prior coordination and approval of the Fire Code Official.
  3. The emergency responder radio coverage system installation and components shall also comply with all applicable federal regulations including, but not limited to FCC47 CFR Part 90.219.
  4. All installed systems will need prior written approval from the FCC license holder of the systems being re-amplified and must meet their established criteria for installation prior to the system installation.
  5. Installed systems shall be registered with the FCC signal booster registry where required.
  6. The minimum qualifications of the system designer and lead installation personnel shall include both the following:
    - a. A valid FCC-issued general radio operator's license.
    - b. Certification of in-building system training issued by a nationally recognized organization, school or a certificate issued by the manufacturer of the equipment being installed.
  7. At least 2 independent and reliable power supplies shall be provided as specified in NFPA 72, NFPA 1221 and IFC.
  8. The primary power source shall be supplied from a dedicated twenty (20) ampere branch circuit and comply with NFPA-70 National Electrical Code, NFPA 72 and NFPA 1221 2016 edition. The signal booster shall be equipped with a secondary source of power. The secondary source of power shall be a battery system with a dedicated battery charger powered by a separate, dedicated twenty (20) ampere branch circuit. The secondary power supply shall power on automatically when the primary power source is lost. The secondary source of power shall be capable of operating the in-building two-way emergency responder communication enhancement system for a period of at least 24 hours. The battery system shall automatically charge in the presence of external power input. Battery charger and all other electronic components must be fully enclosed in a waterproof Type-4 approved enclosure. Batteries shall be enclosed in a NEMA-4 rated enclosure. External UPS (Uninterruptable Power Supplies) are not acceptable.
  9. Amplification systems capable of operating on frequencies licensed to any public safety agency by the FCC shall not be installed without prior coordination and approval of the fire code official per IFC section 510.5.1.
  10. RF Coaxial Cable shall be a listed, CMP plenum or armored plenum coaxial cable or 2-hour fire rated plenum coaxial cable. Non-plenum cable can be used when installed in a metallic raceway. The cable classification shall be clearly marked on the outer surface of the cable regular intervals.
  11. Penetrations into or through interior exit stairways not used for sprinkler piping, standpipes, stairwell electrical raceways or fire department communication shall be prohibited per Section 1023.5 of the IFC Code-

2015 edition.

**E. PART 4 ACCEPTANCE AND TEST PROCEDURES**

1. Acceptance testing for an in-building two-way emergency responder communication enhancement system is required upon completion of installation.
2. Where an emergency responder radio coverage system is required, and upon completion of the installation, the building owner shall have the radio system tested to verify that two-way coverage on each floor of the building is not less than 90%. The test procedure shall be conducted per Section 510.5.3 of IFC-2015 edition.
3. The coverage testing shall be done in accordance with NFPA 72, NFPA 1221, IFC and as required by the local AHJ.
4. All tests shall be conducted, documented, and signed by a person in possession of a current FCC General Radio Operator License.
5. All test records along with system diagrams, iBwave design, equipment specifications, user manuals, RF link budget calculations, battery backup calculation and other design data shall be submitted upon completion of the project, and as required by the AHJ.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 28 55 00

### RF SURVEY FOR IN BUILDING TWO-WAY EMERGENCY RESPONDER COMMUNICATION ENHANCEMENT SYSTEM

#### PART 1 GENERAL

##### 1.01 SUMMARY

- A. The purpose of this specification is to establish the requirements and standards for initial survey for public safety radio signal strength per NFPA and IFC.
- B. Survey should be performed after the building is substantially completed, and prior to start of installation of electrical wiring. The entire system shall meet the requirements of the fire department, the building department and all other agencies and authorities having jurisdiction (AHJ).
- C. Conduct a survey using a RF Spectrum Analyzer, a calibrated, system-compatible radio or another suitable instrument with traceable certificate of calibration to analyze the RF signal strength of Emergency Responder Radio Signal into the building and determine if amplification of the signal is required. Both inbound and outbound signal strength shall be determined, measured, calculated and documented as required by code.

##### 1.02 SURVEY CRITERIA IF REQUIRED

- A. The required Public Safety Radio Signal Level inside the Owner's facility must be determined per code, ordinance or AHJ.
- B. Survey shall be performed by an FCC licensed technician holding a current GROL license. Honeywell Fire Systems have distributors that meet these requirements.

##### 1.03 REGULATIONS

- A. Codes, regulations and standards referenced in the Section are:
  - 1. NFPA 1 – The National Fire Code (including Annex O from 2009)
  - 2. NFPA 70 – The National Electrical Code
  - 3. IFC 510- Emergency Responder Radio Coverage
  - 4. NFPA 101, Life Safety Code, the Ohio Building Code, and Local Code and Building Authority requirements.
  - 5. NFPA 72 National Fire Alarm Code.
  - 6. FCC 47 CFR Private Land Mobile Radio.
  - 7. 90.219 Services-Use of Signal Boosters.
  - 8. ICC International Fire Code, Code and Commentary.
  - 9. Local or State Promulgated Fire Code.
  - 10. ADA "Americans with Disabilities Act".
  - 11. FCC's OET 65 Standards "Guidelines for Human Exposure to Radio Frequency Electromagnetic Fields".
  - 12. FCC Rules Part 22, Part 90 and Part 101.
  - 13. NFPA 1221 2016 Edition or later.
  - 14. International Building Code 2012 / 2015 / 2018 or later.
  - 15. UL 2524 2nd Edition.

## 1.04 DEFINITIONS

16. Bi-Directional Amplifier BDA / Fiber DAS Master/Remote: Device used to amplify band-selective or multi-band RF signals in the uplink, to the base station and in the downlink from the base station to subscriber devices for enhanced signals and improved coverage.
17. In-building Two-way Emergency Responder Communication Enhancement System: A two-way radio communication system installed to assure the effective operation of radio communications systems for fire, emergency medical services, or law enforcement agencies within a building or structure. A system used by firefighters, police, and other emergency services personnel.
18. FCC: Federal Communications Commission
19. OET 65 Standards: FCC's Bulletin 65 provides Guidelines for Human Exposure to Radio Frequency Electromagnetic Fields.
20. Public Safety/First Responder: Public Safety or First Responder agencies that are charged with the responsibility of responding to emergency situations. These include, but are not limited to law enforcement departments, fire departments, and emergency medical companies.
21. RSSI: Received signal strength indicator RSSI is a measurement of the power present in a received radio signal.
22. BER: Bit Error Rate is the number of bit errors per unit time.
23. GROL- FCC General Radio Operators License.
24. ERCES- Emergency Responder Communication Enhancement System.
25. DAS-Distributed Antenna System.

## PART 2 EXECUTION

### A. Testing Procedures

1. Minimum Signal Strength: For testing system signal strength and quality, the testing shall be based on the. -95dBm nominal signal at 100%.
2. Spectrum Analyzer or Calibrated Handheld Radio or Scanning Receiver shall be used as basis for signal measurements or other method as approved by AHJ.
3. Testing should be based on a minimum of 20 grid locations per floor OR maximum of 1600 SQ ft. areas if the floor exceeds 32,000 Sq. Ft. Also, testing should include all critical areas per NFPA. See 1.02 of this specification and NFPA 72 2013 or NFPA 1221 2016. OR per any method determined by the AHJ, local code or ordinance.
4. A minimum signal strength of -95 dBm shall be provided throughout the coverage area for both uplink and downlink by the Local Fire Department.
  - a. RSSI measurement only.

## PART 3 SURVEY SUBMITTALS

### A. Submit testing data for each level of the building.

1. An RF measurement drawing of each floor of the building which indicates relative RF field strength for each frequency band of interest must be submitted to the AHJ.
2. The drawing should clearly indicate the areas that have passed or failed based on the above parameters.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 31 10 00

### SITE CLEARING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED CONDITIONS
- A. Provisions established within the 00 72 00 General Conditions and 00 73 00 Supplementary Conditions, Division 1 - General Requirements, and the Drawings are collectively applicable to this Section.
- 1.2 SUMMARY
- A. This Section includes the following:
1. Protection of existing trees.
  2. Removal of trees and other vegetation.
  3. Topsoil stripping.
  4. Clearing and grubbing.
  5. Removing above-grade improvements.
  6. Removing below-grade improvements.
- 1.3 PROJECT CONDITIONS.
- A. Traffic: Conduct site clearing operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks or other occupied or used facilities without permission from authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Protection of Existing Improvements: Provide protection necessary to prevent damage to existing improvements indicated to remain in place.
1. Protect improvements on adjoining properties and on Owner's property.
  2. Restore damaged improvements to their original condition, as acceptable to property owners.
- C. Protection of Existing Trees and Vegetation: Protect existing trees and other vegetation indicated to remain in place, against unnecessary cutting, breaking or skinning of roots, skinning or bruising of bark, smothering of trees by stockpiling construction materials or excavated materials within drip line, excess foot or vehicular traffic, or parking of vehicles within drip line. Provide temporary guards to protect trees and vegetation to be left standing.
1. Water trees and other vegetation to remain within limits of contract work as required to maintain their health during course of construction operations.
  2. Provide protection for roots over 1-1/2" diameter that are cut during construction operations. Coat cut faces with an emulsified asphalt, or other acceptable coating, formulated for use on damaged plant tissues. Temporarily cover exposed roots with wet burlap to prevent roots from drying out; cover with earth as soon as possible.
  3. Repair or replace trees and vegetation indicated to remain which are damaged by construction operations, in a manner acceptable to Architect. Employ a licensed arborist to repair damages to trees and shrubs.

#### PART 2 – PRODUCTS (Not Used)

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 SITE CLEARING
- A. General: Remove trees, shrubs, grass and other vegetation, improvements, or obstructions as required to permit installation of new construction. Remove similar items elsewhere on site or premises as specifically indicated. "Removal" includes digging out and off-site disposing of stumps and roots.
1. Cut minor roots and branches of trees indicated to remain in a clean and careful manner, where such roots and branches obstruct installation of new construction.
- B. Topsoil: Topsoil is defined as friable clay surface soil found in a depth of not less than 4". Satisfactory topsoil is reasonably free of subsoil, clay lumps, stones, and other objects over 2" in diameter, and without weeds, roots, and other objectionable material.
1. Strip topsoil to whatever depths encountered in a manner to prevent intermingling with underlying subsoil or other objectionable material.
    - a. Remove heavy growths of grass from areas before stripping.
    - b. Where existing trees are indicated to remain, leave existing topsoil in place within drip lines to prevent damage to root system.
  2. Stockpile topsoil in storage piles in areas indicated or directed. Construct storage piles to provide free drainage of surface water. Cover storage piles, if required, to prevent wind erosion.



SBLM Architects

Project No: 023569.00

3. Dispose of unsuitable or excess topsoil same as specified for disposal of waste material.
  - C. Clearing and Grubbing: Clear site of trees, shrubs and other vegetation, except for those indicated to be left standing.
    1. Completely remove stumps, roots, and other debris protruding through ground surface.
    2. Use only hand methods for grubbing inside drip line of trees indicated to remain.
    3. Fill depressions caused by clearing and grubbing operations with satisfactory soil material, unless further excavation or earthwork is indicated.
    4. Place fill material in horizontal layers not exceeding 6" loose depth, and thoroughly compact to a density equal to adjacent original ground.
  - D. Removal of Improvements: Remove existing above-grade and below-grade improvements as indicated and as necessary to facilitate new construction.
    1. Abandonment or removal of certain underground pipe or conduits may be indicated.
- 3.2 DISPOSAL OF WASTE MATERIALS
- A. Burning on Owner's Property: Burning is not permitted on Owner's property.
  - B. Removal from Owner's Property; Remove waste materials and unsuitable or excess topsoil from Owner's property.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 31 20 00

### EARTH MOVING

#### PART 1 – GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED CONDITIONS
- A. Provisions established within the 00 72 00 General Conditions and 00 73 00 Supplementary Conditions, Division 1 - General Requirements, and the Drawings are collectively applicable to this Section.
  - B. Obtain copies of the Geotechnical Report for this project and comply with specific recommendations for subgrade preparation and site drainage described therein.
- 1.2 GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF WORK INCLUDED
- A. Coordinate work of this Section with work of other sections as required to properly execute work and as necessary to maintain satisfactory progress of work of other Sections.
  - B. Excavate materials to required subgrades or to effect moisture conditioning as noted on plan by civil engineer.
  - C. Removal of existing below grade improvements that occur within excavations.
  - D. Filling, backfilling, compaction, and rough grading of site to required subgrades.
  - E. Providing off-site suitable fill materials.
  - F. Dewatering, until permanent drainage system is operational.
  - G. Disposal of excess and unsuitable excavated materials.
  - H. Providing adequate dust control measures as necessary to maintain streets in clean condition from excavation site to disposal location.
  - I. Providing adequate protective measures for public, workmen, adjacent streets, buildings and utilities.
  - J. Lime stabilization for pavement and as a cap to moisture loss in conditioned soils, as specified in the Geotechnical Report, if required.
- 1.3 REFERENCES
- A. American Society for Testing and Materials: (Latest Editions)
    - 1. ASTM C 33, Concrete Aggregates.
    - 2. ASTM D698, Moisture-Density Relations of Soils and Soil- Aggregate Mixtures, Using 5.5-lb. (2.5 kg.) Rammer and 12-in. (304.8-mm) Drop.
    - 3. ASTM D 1556, Density of Soil in Place by the Sand- Cone Method.
    - 4. ASTM D2167, Density of Soil in Place by the Rubber-Balloon Method.
    - 5. ASTM D 2922, Density of Soil and Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth.)
    - 6. ASTM D 3017, Moisture Control of Soil and Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth.)
- 1.4 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS
- A. Comply with rules, regulations, laws, and ordinances of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - B. Notify Department of Public Works - Field Operations, Director of Traffic Control, and Police Department. Make necessary arrangements and obtain their approval of routes used by hauling equipment. Obtain required permits for traffic control during hauling operations.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Testing Laboratory Services:
    - 1. A soil testing and inspecting service is to be engaged for quality control testing during fill and backfill operations. The Contractor shall provide the Testing Laboratory with a copy of the Geotechnical Report prepared for this project to be used as a reference.
    - 2. Submit soil materials proposed for backfill to laboratory for testing.
      - a. Laboratory will determine suitability of materials to be used.
      - b. Laboratory will submit test results and recommendations.
    - 3. Advise testing laboratory two days in advance of operations.
    - 4. Tests will be executed immediately prior to covering of compacted areas.
    - 5. When tests indicate compaction does not meet requirements, remove fill and backfill completely, dry out or moisten as necessary and recompact.
      - a. Retest recompact areas.
      - b. Repeat until tests indicate compliance with specified requirements.
      - c. Provide reworking and retesting at no additional compensation.
    - 6. Permissible Tolerations: Finish excavations, fills, and grade within a tolerance of 0.05 foot above or 0.10 foot below required grades. Do not leave depressions in graded areas.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's descriptive literature and recommended installation instructions for filter fabric, and drainage matting.
- B. Samples: Submit minimum, 10 lb., samples of each type of fill material to be used. Forward samples to testing laboratory, packed tightly in containers to prevent contamination.
- C. Test Reports: If recent test results are available for proposed fill materials, submit to testing laboratory in lieu of samples. Test results are to clearly indicate types of materials and composition, hardness, compatibility and suitability for proposed usage.
- D. Laboratory Test Reports for following:
  - 1. Test reports on borrow material.
  - 2. Field density reports.
  - 3. One optimum moisture-maximum density curve for each type soil encountered.
  - 4. Materials certificate stating materials acceptable for fill and backfill.

1.7 SUBSURFACE INVESTIGATION

- A. Owner and Architect make no representation regarding character and extent of soil data or other surface or subsurface data and conditions which may be encountered during work and no guarantee as to accuracy or validity of interpretation of such data or conditions is made or intended.

1.8 PROTECTION

- A. Provide, erect, and maintain all lights, barricades, warning signs, and guards as necessary.
- B. Provide adequate protective measures to protect existing adjacent construction, including buildings, streets, walks, utility lines, the public and workmen.
- C. Protect all reference points, bench marks, and monuments from dislocation, damage, or being destroyed.
- D. Survey adjacent structures and improvements, establishing exact relocations at fixed points to act as bench marks. Clearly identify bench marks and record existing elevations. Locate datum level used to establish bench mark elevations sufficiently distant so as to be not affected by movement resulting from excavation operations.
- E. During excavation, resurvey bench marks, employing a Registered Professional Land Surveyor. Maintain accurate log of surveyed elevations for comparison with original elevations.
- F. Exercise care during excavations as excessive withdrawal of ground water and lowering of ground water table may adversely affect stability and integrity of existing buildings and structures in vicinity or induce settlement in them through loss of ground (soil or earth), or settlement due to lowering of ground water under them.
- G. Damage to buildings, structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities in vicinity resulting from these operations will be Contractor's responsibility; provide whatever measures as necessary to prevent damages from occurring.
- H. Keep adjacent streets and hauling routes free from soils and debris deposited thereon as results of this work. Clean debris as necessary.
- I. Repair or replace work damaged or destroyed while performing work of this Section.

1.9 PROTECTION OF EXCAVATIONS

- A. Protect excavations to prevent cave-ins or loose dirt from falling into excavations and to ensure against damage to existing streets, paving buildings, other structures, and utility lines when excavation and grading work occurs adjacent to or below same.
- B. Protect bottom of excavations and soil around and beneath foundations from frost and water.
- C. Grade around excavation to prevent surface water runoff into excavated area.
- D. Provide dewatering system as necessary to keep excavations dry at all times until permanent pumping and discharge systems are fully operational.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Below Grade Wall Backfill: Free draining sand or sandy gravel, with a maximum particle size of 2 inches and less than 5 percent passing the no. 200 sieve.
- B. Select fill: A sandy clay or clayey sand with a liquid limit less than 35 and a plasticity index between 5 and 15.
- C. Onsite Fill: On-site material approved by the soils Engineer.
- D. Imported Fill: Soil with a liquid limit less than 50 with no roots, vegetation or other undesirable matter, and no rocks large than 4 inches in diameter.

- E. Filter Fabric: Permeable polypropylene or polyester construction, not less than 4.0 oz/sq.yd., 140N or 700X Drainage Fabric by Mirafi, Inc., Type T-140-N Stabilenka by American Enka Company, Typar Style 3401 by Dupont, or approved equivalent.
- F. Drainage Matting:
  - 1. High-impact polystyrene waffle-like core with filter fabric bonded on one side, and core perforated in areas of foundation weeps; Miradrain by Mirafi Inc., Charlotte, North Carolina, or Eljen Prefabricated Drainage Structures by Eljen Development Corporation, Storrs, Connecticut or approved equivalent
  - 2. Compression-resistant open nylon matting with filter fabric bonded on one side, Type 9120 Enkadrain by American Enka Company, Enka, North Carolina.
- G. Topsoil: Fertile, friable, natural loam surface soil free of subsoil, clay lumps, brush, weeds, roots, stones and other litter.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 PREPARATION AND LAYOUT**

- A. Work shall be laid out by a Registered Professional Land Surveyor. Establish extent of site grading by area and elevation; designate and identify datum elevation. Set required lines and levels.
- B. Verify elevations, dimensions, and actual conditions at site. Refer discrepancies to Architect for interpretation or necessary modifications.
- C. Maintain bench mark, monuments, and other reference points.

#### **3.2 UTILITIES**

- A. Before starting site grading, establish location and extent of underground utilities occurring in work area.
- B. Notify utility companies to remove and relocate lines which are in way of site grading.
- C. Remove abandoned utility service lines from areas of site grading; cap, plug or seal such lines and identify their location and grade.
- D. On Project Record Documents accurately locate and record abandoned and active utility lines rerouted or extended.

#### **3.3 PUMPING AND DRAINAGE**

- A. Provide adequate provisions for prompt removal of water accumulating in excavations, including temporary sumps, well points, pumps, drain lines, and other equipment or appurtenances as necessary.
- B. Keep excavations free from water at all times and prevent water from interfering with progress or quality of work.
- C. Drain site to temporary sumps and silt settling basins, and remove accumulated water by pumping to storm sewers. Excavate in sequence that will provide drainage to sumps at all times.
- D. When pumping water from excavated areas, take special precautions to avoid undermining of contiguous property by withdrawal of sand, soil, or any other supporting materials from areas below surfaces of such property.

#### **3.4 EXCAVATION**

- A. Excavate subsoil in accordance with lines and levels required for construction of site work. In areas where soil is to be moisture – conditioned remove existing soil to the top of the limestone or clayey sand layer.
- B. Remove existing foundation, foundation mats, footings, catch basins, manholes, underground piping, abandoned utilities, and other below grade improvements that occur within excavated areas.

#### **3.5 BACKFILLING**

- A. Ensure areas are free from debris, snow, ice and water, and that ground surfaces are not in frozen condition.
- B. Backfill areas to grades, contours, levels, and elevations indicated.
- C. Backfill systematically and as early as possible to allow maximum time for natural settlement and compaction.
- D. Place fill materials in horizontal layers not exceeding 9" loose depth and uniformly compact. Use a method so as not to disturb or damage building drainage systems and waterproofing systems.
- E. Maintain optimum moisture content of backfill materials to attain specified compaction density. Moisten materials as necessary.
- F. Settlement or washing that occurs in backfilled areas prior to acceptance of work shall be repaired and grades re-established to required elevations and slopes.

#### **3.6 RECONDITIONING SUBGRADE**

- A. Prior to beginning paving operations, any vegetation should be removed to a depth of at least 6".
- B. The exposed surface should then be scarified to a minimum depth of 6" and recompacted to a minimum of 95% of the maximum dry density as determined by ASTM D 698 (Standard Proctor Test) at a moisture

content between the optimum moisture value and 4% above optimum, unless other wise specified in the Geotechnical Report.

- C. In the event that additional fill is necessary to bring parking areas to grade, it should be placed in less than 8" loose lifts and compacted as indicated above.
- D. The subgrade should be in a moist condition at the time concrete is deposited thereon.
- E. Using coarse sand (sand cushion) as a leveling material is not allowed.

### 3.7 FULL DEPTH RECONDITIONING

- A. Site clay soils shall be reconditioned to their full depth adjacent to the perimeter of the building where there is no basement or underground parking. This shall extend out from the building foundation a minimum of 5 feet (farther where shown on the drawings).
- B. This reconditioning of site clay soils is in addition to that specified elsewhere under the building.
- C. Remove the clay to expose limestone or clayey sand (typically 7 to 9 feet below existing grade).
- D. The excavated clays shall be moisture conditioned, replaced in loose lifts not exceeding 9 inches and compacted.
- E. Compaction shall be 92 to 96 percent of the materials maximum standard proctor dry density (ASTM D-698) at a workable moisture content of at least 3 percent above optimum.

### 3.8 GRADING

- A. Establishment of grades: The Contractor shall be responsible for establishment of all grades by means of grade stakes placed at pavement corners at all abrupt changes of grade and elsewhere as required.
- B. Grading: Grade to elevations required by drawings. Remove soft and unstable material which will not readily compact when rolled or tamped. Fill resulting depressions with stable material and roll until required compaction is obtained. At intermediate points for which finish grades are not indicated, finish grades shall be of uniform level or slope between points for which elevations are given. Make certain that finish grades slope away from buildings in all directions to assure positive drainage as specified in the Geotechnical Report.

### 3.9 SURPLUS MATERIALS

- A. Remove excavated and excess materials from site. Legally dispose of off construction site.

### 3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of compacted fill materials will be performed by testing laboratory. Refer to Division 1. Testing will be performed to least encumber performance of work.
- B. Coordinate provisions for and sequence of testing with Testing Laboratory. Notify testing laboratory and allow sufficient time to perform density tests.
- C. Testing Laboratory will establish moisture density relationships of soils in accordance with ASTM D 698, D 3017, or D 3017.
- D. Testing Laboratory will perform in-place density test in accordance with ASTM D 1556, D 2167, D 2922, or other acceptable density tests.
- E. If, during progress of work, tests indicate that compacted materials do not meet specified requirements, remove defective work, replace and retest.
- F. Ensure compacted fills are tested before proceeding with placement of surface materials.

### 3.11 CLEANING

- A. Clean debris caused by excavation and backfill work. Keep premises and adjacent streets clean and neat.
- B. Leave stockpile areas completely free of excess fill materials.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 31 22 00

### GRADING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.1 RELATED REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with Conditions of the Contract, Division 1 - General Requirements, and referenced documents.
- B. Related Conditions: Provisions established within the 00 72 00 General Conditions and 00 73 00 Supplementary Conditions, Division 1 - General Requirements, and the Drawings are collectively applicable to this Section.
- C. Obtain copies of the Geotechnical Report for this project and comply with specific recommendations for subgrade preparation and site drainage described therein.

##### 1.2 GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF WORK INCLUDED

- A. Coordinate work of this Section with work of other sections as required to properly execute work and as necessary to maintain satisfactory progress of work of other Sections.
- B. Excavate materials to required subgrades as noted on plan by civil engineer.
- C. Removal of existing below grade improvements that occur within excavations.
- D. Filling, backfilling, compaction, and rough grading of site to required subgrades.
- E. Providing off-site suitable fill materials.
- F. Dewatering, until permanent drainage system is operational.
- G. Disposal of excess and unsuitable excavated materials.
- H. Providing adequate dust control measures as necessary to maintain streets in clean condition from excavation site to disposal location.
- I. Providing adequate protective measures for public, workmen, adjacent streets, buildings and utilities.
- J. Lime stabilization for pavement, as specified in the Geotechnical Report, if required.

##### 1.3 REFERENCES

- A. American Society for Testing and Materials: (Latest Editions)
  - 1. ASTM C 33, Concrete Aggregates.
  - 2. ASTM D698, Moisture-Density Relations of Soils and Soil- Aggregate Mixtures, Using 5.5-lb. (2.5 kg.) Rammer and 12-in. (304.8-mm) Drop.
  - 3. ASTM D 1556, Density of Soil in Place by the Sand- Cone Method.
  - 4. ASTM D2167, Density of Soil in Place by the Rubber-Balloon Method.
  - 5. ASTM D 2922, Density of Soil and Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth.)
  - 6. ASTM D 3017, Moisture Control of Soil and Soil-Aggregate in Place by Nuclear Methods (Shallow Depth.)

##### 1.4 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Comply with rules, regulations, laws, and ordinances of authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Notify Department of Public Works - Field Operations, Director of Traffic Control, and Police Department. Make necessary arrangements and obtain their approval of routes used by hauling equipment. Obtain required permits for traffic control during hauling operations.

##### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Laboratory Services:
  - 1. A soil testing and inspecting service is to be engaged for quality control testing during fill and backfill operations. The Contractor shall provide the Testing Laboratory with a copy of the Geotechnical Report prepared for this project to be used as a reference.
  - 2. Submit soil materials proposed for backfill to laboratory for testing.
    - a. Laboratory will determine suitability of materials to be used.
    - b. Laboratory will submit test results and recommendations.
  - 3. Advise testing laboratory two days in advance of operations.
  - 4. Tests will be executed immediately prior to covering of compacted areas.
  - 5. When tests indicate compaction does not meet requirements, remove fill and backfill completely, dry out or moisten as necessary and recompact.
    - a. Retest recompact areas.
    - b. Repeat until tests indicate compliance with specified requirements.
    - c. Provide reworking and retesting at no additional compensation.
  - 6. Permissible Tolerations: Finish excavations, fills, and grade within a tolerance of 0.05 foot above or 0.10 foot below required grades. Do not leave depressions in graded areas.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's descriptive literature and recommended installation instructions for filter fabric, and drainage matting.
- B. Samples: Submit minimum, 10 lb., samples of each type of fill material to be used. Forward samples to testing laboratory, packed tightly in containers to prevent contamination.
- C. Test Reports: If recent test results are available for proposed fill materials, submit to testing laboratory in lieu of samples. Test results are to clearly indicate types of materials and composition, hardness, compactibility and suitability for proposed usage.
- D. Laboratory Test Reports for following:
  - 1. Test reports on borrow material.
  - 2. Field density reports.
  - 3. One optimum moisture-maximum density curve for each type soil encountered.
  - 4. Materials certificate stating materials acceptable for fill and backfill.

1.7 SUBSURFACE INVESTIGATION

- A. Owner and Architect make no representation regarding character and extent of soil data or other surface or subsurface data and conditions which may be encountered during work and no guarantee as to accuracy or validity of interpretation of such data or conditions is made or intended.

1.8 PROTECTION

- A. Provide, erect, and maintain all lights, barricades, warning signs, and guards as necessary.
- B. Provide adequate protective measures to protect existing adjacent construction, including buildings, streets, walks, utility lines, the public and workmen.
- C. Protect all reference points, bench marks, and monuments from dislocation, damage, or being destroyed.
- D. Survey adjacent structures and improvements, establishing exact relocations at fixed points to act as bench marks. Clearly identify bench marks and record existing elevations. Locate datum level used to establish bench mark elevations sufficiently distant so as to be not affected by movement resulting from excavation operations.
- E. During excavation, resurvey bench marks, employing a Registered Professional Land Surveyor. Maintain accurate log of surveyed elevations for comparison with original elevations.
- F. Exercise care during excavations as excessive withdrawal of ground water and lowering of ground water table may adversely affect stability and integrity of existing buildings and structures in vicinity or induce settlement in them through loss of ground (soil or earth), or settlement due to lowering of ground water under them.
- G. Damage to buildings, structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities in vicinity resulting from these operations will be Contractor's responsibility; provide whatever measures as necessary to prevent damages from occurring.
- H. Keep adjacent streets and hauling routes free from soils and debris deposited thereon as results of this work. Clean debris as necessary.
- I. Repair or replace work damaged or destroyed while performing work of this Section.

1.9 PROTECTION OF EXCAVATIONS

- A. Protect excavations to prevent cave-ins or loose dirt from falling into excavations and to ensure against damage to existing streets, paving buildings, other structures, and utility lines when excavation and grading work occurs adjacent to or below same.
- B. Protect bottom of excavations and soil around and beneath foundations from frost and water.
- C. Grade around excavation to prevent surface water runoff into excavated area.
- D. Provide dewatering system as necessary to keep excavations dry at all times until permanent pumping and discharge systems are fully operational.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Controlled Backfill and Engineered Fill: Free-draining granular material with less than 3% passing a No. 200 sieve and less than 30% passing No. 40 sieve, non plastic. All granular backfill shall be approved by the testing laboratory.
- B. Filter Fabric: Permeable polypropylene or polyester construction, not less than 4.0 oz/sq.yd., 140N or 700X Drainage Fabric by Mirafi, Inc., Type T-140-N Stablenka by American Enka Company, Tyvar Style 3401 by Dupont, or approved equivalent.
- C. Drainage Matting:

1. High-impact polystyrene waffle-like core with filter fabric bonded on one side, and core perforated in areas of foundation weeps; Miradrain by Mirafi Inc., Charlotte, North Carolina, or Eljen Prefabricated Drainage Structures by Eljen Development Corporation, Storrs, Connecticut or approved equivalent
  2. Compression-resistant open nylon matting with filter fabric bonded on one side, Type 9120 Enkadrain by American Enka Company, Enka, North Carolina.
- D. Topsoil: Fertile, friable, natural loam surface soil free of subsoil, clay lumps, brush, weeds, roots, stones and other litter.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 PREPARATION AND LAYOUT**

- A. Work shall be laid out by a Registered Professional Land Surveyor. Establish extent of site grading by area and elevation; designate and identify datum elevation. Set required lines and levels.
- B. Verify elevations, dimensions, and actual conditions at site. Refer discrepancies to Architect for interpretation or necessary modifications.
- C. Maintain bench mark, monuments, and other reference points.

#### **3.2 UTILITIES**

- A. Before starting site grading, establish location and extent of underground utilities occurring in work area.
- B. Notify utility companies to remove and relocate lines which are in way of site grading.
- C. Remove abandoned utility service lines from areas of site grading; cap, plug or seal such lines and identify their location and grade.
- D. On Project Record Documents accurately locate and record abandoned and active utility lines rerouted or extended.

#### **3.3 PUMPING AND DRAINAGE**

- A. Provide adequate provisions for prompt removal of water accumulating in excavations, including temporary sumps, well points, pumps, drain lines, and other equipment or appurtenances as necessary.
- B. Keep excavations free from water at all times and prevent water from interfering with progress or quality of work.
- C. Drain site to temporary sumps and silt settling basins, and remove accumulated water by pumping to storm sewers. Excavate in sequence that will provide drainage to sumps at all times.
- D. When pumping water from excavated areas, take special precautions to avoid undermining of contiguous property by withdrawal of sand, soil, or any other supporting materials from areas below surfaces of such property.

#### **3.4 EXCAVATION**

- A. Excavate subsoil in accordance with lines and levels required for construction of site work.
- B. Remove existing foundation, foundation mats, footings, catch basins, manholes, underground piping, abandoned utilities, and other below grade improvements that occur within excavated areas.

#### **3.5 BACKFILLING**

- A. Ensure areas are free from debris, snow, ice and water, and that ground surfaces are not in frozen condition.
- B. Backfill areas to grades, contours, levels, and elevations indicated.
- C. Backfill systematically and as early as possible to allow maximum time for natural settlement and compaction.
- D. Place fill materials in horizontal layers not exceeding 9" loose depth and uniformly compact. Use a method so as not to disturb or damage building drainage systems and waterproofing systems.
- E. Maintain optimum moisture content of backfill materials to attain specified compaction density. Moisten materials as necessary.
- F. Settlement or washing that occurs in backfilled areas prior to acceptance of work shall be repaired and grades re-established to required elevations and slopes.

#### **3.6 RECONDITIONING SUBGRADE**

- A. Prior to beginning paving operations, any vegetation should be removed to a depth of at least 6".
- B. The exposed surface should then be scarified to a minimum depth of 6" and recompact to a minimum of 95% of the maximum dry density as determined by ASTM D 698 (Standard Proctor Test) at a moisture content between the optimum moisture value and 4% above optimum, unless other wise specified in the Geotechnical Report.
- C. In the event that additional fill is necessary to bring parking areas to grade, it should be placed in less than 8" loose lifts and compacted as indicated above.



- D. The subgrade should be in a moist condition at the time concrete is deposited thereon.
- E. Using coarse sand (sand cushion) as a leveling material is not allowed.

3.7 GRADING

- A. Establishment of grades: The Contractor shall be responsible for establishment of all grades by means of grade stakes placed at pavement corners at all abrupt changes of grade and elsewhere as required.
- B. Grading: Grade to elevations required by drawings. Remove soft and unstable material which will not readily compact when rolled or tamped. Fill resulting depressions with stable material and roll until required compaction is obtained. At intermediate points for which finish grades are not indicated, finish grades shall be of uniform level or slope between points for which elevations are given. Make certain that finish grades slope away from buildings in all directions to assure positive drainage as specified in the Geotechnical Report.

3.8 SURPLUS MATERIALS

- A. Remove excavated and excess materials from site. Legally dispose of off construction site.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing of compacted fill materials will be performed by testing laboratory. Refer to Division 1. Testing will be performed to least encumber performance of work.
- B. Coordinate provisions for and sequence of testing with Testing Laboratory. Notify testing laboratory and allow sufficient time to perform density tests.
- C. Testing Laboratory will establish moisture density relationships of soils in accordance with ASTM D 698, D 3017, or D 3017.
- D. Testing Laboratory will perform in-place density test in accordance with ASTM D 1556, D 2167, D 2922, or other acceptable density tests.
- E. If, during progress of work, tests indicate that compacted materials do not meet specified requirements, remove defective work, replace and retest.
- F. Ensure compacted fills are tested before proceeding with placement of surface materials.

3.10 CLEANING

- A. Clean debris caused by excavation and backfill work. Keep premises and adjacent streets clean and neat.
- B. Leave stockpile areas completely free of excess fill materials.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 31 23 33

### TRENCHING AND BACKFILLING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED CONDITIONS
- A. Provisions established within the 00 72 00 General Conditions and 00 73 00 Supplementary Conditions, Division 1 - General Requirements, and the Drawings are collectively applicable to this Section.
- 1.2 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Compaction: ASTM D698.
- B. Contractor will hire an independent soils laboratory to conduct in place moisture-density tests to insure that all work complies with this specification.
1. Notify Owner's representative at least 2 weeks prior to anticipated date of testing.
  2. Contractor will pay additional cost if work is delayed due to his failure to notify Owner's agent as specified above.
- C. Comply with all aspects of "Safety Rules & Regulations for Excavation" by State law and OSHA Safety and Health Standards 29 CFR 1926/1910.
- 1.3 JOB CONDITIONS
- A. Verify location and existence of all underground utilities.
1. Omission or inclusion of located utility items on drawings does not constitute non-existence or definite location.
  2. Secure and examine local utility surveyor records for available location data.
- B. Protect existing utilities from damage due to any construction activity.
1. Repair all damages to utility items.
- C. Avoid overloading. Keep surcharge sufficient distance back from edge of excavation to prevent slides or caving. Maintain and trim excavated materials in such a manner to be as little inconvenience as possible to public and adjoining property owners.
- D. Provide full access to public and private premises, to fire hydrants, at street crossings, sidewalks and other points as designated by Engineer to prevent serious interruption of travel.

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 MATERIALS
- A. Backfill material: As approved by the City or Civil Engineer.
1. Free of rocks, tree roots, sod or other organic matter, and frozen material.
  2. Moisture content at time of placement: -1 to +3% of optimum moisture content, as specified in accordance with ASTM D698.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 GENERAL
- A. Remove and dispose of materials determined by the City or Civil Engineer to be unsuitable.
- B. Trench, backfill and compact for all underground utilities.
- 3.2 SHORING AND BRACING
- A. Contractor shall design (using a Professional Engineer registered in the State of Texas), install and provide as necessary to prevent cave-ins and slides, or as a protection for workmen in trenches and other excavation. Shoring and bracing shall remain in place as long as required for safety and shall be removed only as backfill is placed. Comply with all Municipal, State, and Federal requirements.
- 3.3 TRENCH EXCAVATION
- A. Excavate trenches by open cut method to depth indicated and necessary to accommodate the work.
1. Permission may be granted for tunnel work for crossing under crosswalks, driveways or existing utility lines.
- B. Open no more than 300 LF of trench at one time, or as required by the City or Civil Engineer. Failure to comply may necessitate shutdown of entire project until backfilling is performed.
- C. Carry rock excavations minimum of 12" below indicated grades.
- D. Avoid over-excavating below indicated grades unless required to remove unsuitable material.
- E. Back-fill over-excavations in firmly compacted 6" lifts.

- F. Trench size: Excavate only sufficient width to accommodate free working space.
1. Cut trench walls vertically from bottom of trench to top of pipe, conduit, or utility service.
  2. Trench width at top of pipe or conduit may not exceed outside diameter of utility service by more than following dimension:

Overall Diameter of Utility Service	Excess Dimension
33" and less	29"
more than 33"	60"

- G. Keep trenches free of water.
- H. Brace and sheet trenches as soil conditions dictate. Do not remove until backfilling has progressed to a stage that no damage to piping, utility service, or conduit will result due to removal.

### 3.4 PREPARATION FOR PIPE LAYING

- A. See drawings and specific pipe material sections for embedment requirements.
- B. When discrepancy exists between those requirements and these specifications, provide type of embedment which provides greatest load factor.
- C. Types of embedment:
1. Class A: Concrete cradle.
    - a. Load factors:
      - (1) 2.2 - Lightly Tamped.
      - (2) 2.8 - Carefully tamped.
      - (3) 3.4 - Reinforced Concrete with  $p=0.4\%$ .
  2. Class 4: Concrete arch type bedding.
    - a. Load factors:
      - (1) 2.8 - Plain Concrete.
      - (2) 3.4 - Reinforced Concrete with  $p=0.4\%$ .
      - (3) 4.8 - Reinforced Concrete with  $p=1.0\%$ .
  3. Class B: First-class bedding.
    - a. Shaped bottom with tamped backfill, or:
    - b. Compacted granular bedding with tamped backfill.
    - c. Load factor:
      - (1) 1.9 - Carefully compacted backfill.
  4. Class C: Ordinary bedding.
    - a. Granular bedding with tamped backfill.
    - b. Load factor:
      - (1) 1.5 - Lightly compacted backfill.
- D. Form bell holes in trenches such that only barrel of pipe is firmly supported by bedding material.

### 3.5 BACKFILLING

- A. Do not backfill until all tests are performed on system. Test system in sections.
- B. Hand or pneumatic tamp backfill around and over pipe in lifts approximately 4 to 6" loose lifts.
- C. Compact to density specified, so pipe will not be damaged.
- D. Exercise care in backfilling operations to avoid displacing pipe joints either horizontally or vertically and to avoid breaking pipe.
- E. Do not water flush for consolidation.

### 3.6 COMPACTION

- A. Compact all trench backfill in areas under paved roads, parking areas, sidewalks and other structures as directed by the City or Civil Engineer to at least 95% of maximum dry density or as indicated.
- B. In locations where trench will not be under paved areas, compact backfill to minimum 90% of maximum dry density or as indicated.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 31 25 00

### EROSION & SEDIMENTATION CONTROLS

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

- 1.1 RELATED CONDITIONS
- A. Provisions established within the 00 72 00 General Conditions and 00 73 00 Supplementary Conditions, Division 1 - General Requirements, and the Drawings are collectively applicable to this Section.
- 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK
- A. This section will consist of the completion and implementation of a Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP).

#### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

- 2.1 MATERIALS
- A. All materials shall be as specified or meeting the specifications as outlined in the North Central Texas Council of Governments Manual – “Storm Water Quality Best Management Practices for Construction Activities and the Standard Specifications for Public Works Construction.”
- B. All procedures and materials used for erosion control shall be approved by the City.

#### PART 3 - EXECUTION

- 3.1 GENERAL
- A. It shall be the contractor's responsibility to use whatever means are necessary to control and limit silt and sediment leaving this site. Specifically, the contractor shall protect all public street, alleys, streams, storm drain systems and inlets from erosion deposits. The contractor shall comply with storm water pollution prevention management practices per the City and Texas Commissions on Environmental Quality.
- B. Prior to commencing any construction, perimeter silt fence shall be installed at the locations shown on the plans and a stabilized construction entrance will be constructed per the Erosion Control and Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plans as applicable.
- 3.2 INSTALLATION
- A. Grasses used to vegetate the site must be suitable for use under local climate and soil conditions. In general, hydro seeding or sodding bermuda grass is acceptable during the summer months (May 1 to August 30). Winter rye or fescue grass may be planted during times other than the summer months as a temporary measure until such time as the permanent planting can be made.
- B. As inlets are completed, temporary sediment barriers and inlet protection shall be installed in accordance with the City Specifications.
- C. At the completion of the paving and final grading, the disturbed area(s) shall be revegetated in accordance with the plans and specifications.
- D. Silt fence and inlet sediment barriers shall remain in place until revegetation has been completed.
- E. Disturbed areas that are seeded or sodded shall be checked periodically to see that grass coverage is properly maintained. Disturbed areas shall be watered, fertilized, and reseeded and resodded, if necessary.
- F. If the erosion control is removed for construction and/or access purposes, the contractor shall replace it at the end of each work day.
- G. Erosion protection may be added or deleted per the City.
- H. If off-site soil borrow or spoil sites are used in conjunction with this project, this information shall be disclosed and shown on the Erosion Control Plan. Off-site borrow and spoil areas are considered a part of the project site and therefore shall comply with the City erosion control requirements. These areas shall be stabilized with permanent ground cover prior to final approval of the project.
- I. Erosion control facilities and stabilization measures shall be provided and maintained by a qualified contractor or contractors experienced in providing said facilities and services.
- J. Accumulated sediment shall be periodically removed from silt fences as required in order to maintain the effectiveness of the installation.
- K. Silt fencing, when used, shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturers recommendations and in accordance with the details on these plans.
- L. Upon completion of paving and drainage construction, final lot grading and general cleanup, all on-site street

- parkways (the area from the back of curb to the R.O.W. line) and adjacent street parkways disturbed by the construction shall be stabilized by Sod, Seeding or Hydromulching and shall conform to local City Standards and Specifications or Texas Department of Transportation Specifications. Stabilized parkways subsequently disturbed by utility comply contractors shall be repaired by the utility company or its contractor.
- M. Off-site utility construction shall be performed in a manner consistent with the requirements of this plan relative to preventing storm water pollution. Upon completion of trench backfilling and general cleanup, and soil areas disturbed by the construction shall be promptly stabilized.
  - N. Upon completion of all utility and paving construction and prior to finish grading, all soil contaminated by construction operations and construction waste material shall be removed from the site and disposed of at an appropriate authorized landfill or waste disposal facility.
  - O. If any contractor sees any violation of this plan by an operator or another contractor, he shall then notify the operator or contractor in violation as well as the facility operator.
  - P. A copy of the Notice of Intent (NOI) and a copy of the Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan must be kept and maintained on the construction site.
  - Q. Stabilization measures are to be inspected at a minimum once every 14 days and within 24 hours after any rainfall greater than 0.5 inches. Inspection reports shall be maintained by the contractor and made part of the plan.
  - R. The contractor shall adopt appropriate construction site management practices to prevent the discharge of oils, grease, paints, gasoline, and other pollutants to the storm water system.
  - S. The Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) must be signed by the owner and contractor (as co-permittees) and retained on-site. The permittee shall post a notice near the main entrance of the construction site with the following information: 1) the NPDES permit number for the project or a copy of the NOI if a permit number has not been assigned; 2) the name and contact of the location contact person; 3) a brief description of the project; and 4) the location of SWPPP if the site is inactive or does not have an on-site location to store the plan.
  - T. The permittee is also responsible for amending or updating the SWPPP as construction activities progress and site conditions change.
  - U. Both the owner and contractor are responsible for reviewing the rules and requirements as outlined in the Texas Pollutant Discharge Elimination System General Permit No. TXR 150000 issued on February 19, 2013.
  - V. The permittee is also responsible for notifying the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality Director of the "person or specifically described position as an authorized person for signing reports, storm water pollution prevention plans, certificates, or other information requested by the Director or required by the permit" other than the NOI. Referenced tests, Material standards and specifications are the minimum requirements. The Contractor will meet the requirements and recommendations of the applicable portions of the standards listed. Where compliance with two (2) or more industry standards or requirements are specified, and the overlapping of those different or conflicting minimums for levels of quality, the most stringent requirements is intended and will be enforced. The Contractor shall notify the Owner of any conflicts that are to be resolved.
    - 1. City Standard Specifications and Details, Current Edition.
    - 2. North Central Texas Council of Governments (COG) Standard Specifications for Public Works Construction, Current Edition and Amendments.
    - 3. Texas Highway Department Standard Specification for Construction of Highways, Streets and Bridges, Current Addition and Amendments.
    - 4. American Associations of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO), Current Editions.
    - 5. American Water Works Associations (AWWA), Current Editions.
    - 6. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM), Current Edition.

Any Reference to Methods of Measurement or Payment in Reference Standards or Specifications are not applicable.

#### END OF SECTION

**SECTION 32 01 13**  
**PAVEMENT SEALING**

**PART 1 – GENERAL**

- 1.1 SECTION INCLUDES
  - A. Engineered resin emulsion sealcoat slurry over asphaltic concrete paving.
- 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS
  - A. Section 321216 Asphaltic Concrete Paving
  - B. Section 321723.13 Pavement Marking
  - C. Section 320117 Repairing Asphaltic Concrete Pavements
  - D. Section 320117.61 Crack Sealing
- 1.3 REFERENCES
  - A. American Society for Testing Materials (ASTM)
    - 1. C 136 Method for Sieve Analysis of Fine and Coarse Aggregates
    - 2. D 244 Standard Test Method for Emulsified Asphalts
    - 3. D 2939 Method for Testing Emulsified Bitumens used as Protective Coatings
    - 4. D 3910 Practices for Design, Testing, and Construction of Slurry Seal
  - B. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO)
    - 1. T-04481 - Method for Testing the Solubility of Bituminous Materials in Organic Solvents.
- 1.4 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION
  - A. Provide primer in all areas.
  - B. Provide two (2) applications of the coating (engineered resin emulsion slurry) in all areas.
  - C. Provide third coat in high traffic areas as shown in schedule and on drawings.
- 1.5 SUBMITTALS
  - A. Product Data
    - 1. Submit manufacturer's printed Product Data Sheet.
- 1.6 PROJECT/SITE CONDITIONS
  - A. ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS
    - 1. Apply coating when pavement temperature is at least fifty (50) degrees F. and air temperature is fifty (50) degrees F. and rising.
    - 2. Apply coating during dry weather and when rain is not anticipated within eight (8) hours after application is completed.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

- 2.1 MANUFACTURER
  - A. Neyra Industries, Inc., Cincinnati, Ohio: PaveShield®
- 2.2 MATERIALS
  - A. Sealer: PaveShield®
    - 1. An engineered resin emulsion specifically formulated to extend pavement life.
  - B. Crack Sealant: Thermo-Seal PLS™
    - 1. Hot applied, elastomeric type crack sealant compatible with pavement coating.
  - C. Pavement Primer: Polyprime
    - 1. Acrylic based, primer compatible with pavement coating.
  - D. Oil Spot Primer: Neyra Oil Seal
    - 1. Water based acrylic oil spot primer compatible with pavement coating.
  - E. Sand: As recommended in printed data sheets by sealer manufacturer.
    - 1. Washed dry silica sand free of dust, trash, clay, organic materials or other contaminants.
    - 2. Gradation: To have an American Foundry Society grain fineness number that is no less than fifty (50) and no more than seventy (70), when tested in accordance with ASTM C 136.
  - F. Mixing Water
    - 1. Potable and free from harmful soluble salts.
    - 2. Temperature of the water: minimum fifty degrees (50) F.

2.3 EQUIPMENT

- A. Use equipment that keeps the mixture homogeneous at all times and is capable of applying required coating weights evenly over entire width of application mechanism to provide a uniformly coated surface.

2.4 MIXES

- A. PaveShield®: Add five (5) pounds of sand to the engineered resin emulsion, and mix with power equipment to a homogeneous coating.
- B. PaveShield®: Add water to the coating mix as required for application, quantity not to exceed thirty five (35) percent of engineered resin emulsion.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Inspect existing paving surfaces for condition and defects that will adversely affect quality of work, and which cannot be put into an acceptable condition through normal preparatory work as specified.
- B. Do not place coating over unsound oil spots softened by fuel or oil. If this condition exists, notify Architect/Engineer.
- C. Starting installation constitutes Contractor's acceptance of surface as suitable for installation.

3.2 PREPARATION - AGED PAVEMENT

- A. Repairing Asphaltic Concrete Pavement: Repair areas shown in schedule according to Section 0117.61.
- B. Crack Sealing: Apply crack sealant as detailed in Section 320117.61.
- C. Cleaning
  - 1. Clean pavement surface prior to applying primer coat and coating.
- D. Protection
  - 1. Protect adjacent curbs, walks, fences, and other items from receiving primer and coating.
- E. Oil Spots
  - 1. Clean oil spots and treat with oil spot primer.
- F. Priming
  - 1. Apply a diluted mixture of one (1) part primer and two (2) parts water at the rate of 0.03 to 0.06 gallons per square yard.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply all coats uniformly at a rate of 0.14 - 0.17 gallons per square yard using mixed and diluted material.
- B. Each coat to cure sufficiently to take traffic without scuffing.
- C. Allow final coat to cure a minimum of twenty four (24) hours under good drying conditions before allowing traffic.

3.4 CLEANING AFTER APPLICATION

- A. Remove primer and coating from surfaces other than those requiring primer and coating.

3.5 PROTECTION

- A. Barricade coated area until the coating has dried sufficiently for traffic.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 32 13 13**  
**CONCRETE PAVING**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

- 1.1 RELATED CONDITIONS
  - A. Provisions established within the 00 72 00 General Conditions, the 00 73 00 Supplementary Conditions, the General Requirements (Sections of Division 1) and the Drawings are hereby made a part of this Section.
- 1.2 SCOPE
  - A. This Section includes labor, material, equipment and related services necessary to furnish and install paving, including sidewalks, and surfacing indicated on the Drawings or specified herein.
- 1.3 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED ELSEWHERE
  - A. Subgrade Preparation - Section 31 22 00, Grading.
  - B. Drainage Items - Section 33 40 00, Storm Drainage Utilities.
  - C. Concrete - Section 32 13 13, Cast-in-Place Concrete.
- 1.4 REFERENCE STANDARDS
  - A. Meet requirements and recommendations of applicable portions of the Standards listed:
    - 1. City Standard Details and Specifications.
    - 2. North Central Texas Council of Governments (COG) Standard Specifications for Public Works Construction, Current Edition and Amendments.
    - 3. Texas Highway Department Standard Specification for Construction of Highways, Streets and Bridges, 1995 (THD).
    - 4. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO).
    - 5. American Water Works Associations (AWWA), Current Editions.
    - 6. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM), Current Edition.
  - B. Any reference to methods of measurement or payment in reference specifications are not applicable. In event of conflict this specification applies.
- 1.5 MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS
  - A. Referenced tests, material standards and specification are minimum requirements.
- 1.6 SOURCE LOCATIONS
  - A. Identify location of sources of each required material and of batching plant and ready-mix (if applicable).
- 1.7 SUBMITTALS
  - A. Submit Test Reports, Product Data, Mix Design etc. to the Engineer.
  - B. PRODUCT DATA
    - 1. Submit material source and ready-mix plant location(s) for approval.
    - 2. Submit type and size of equipment to be used for each required operation.
    - 3. Submit test panels for exposed aggregate surfaces.
  - C. CONCRETE TEST REPORTS AND MIX DESIGNS
    - 1. As specified in Section 03 30 00.
  - D. DELIVERY TICKETS
    - 1. As specified in Section 03 30 00.

**PART 2 - PRODUCTS**

- 2.1 PORTLAND CEMENT
  - A. Portland cement shall be Type 1 of a standard brand of cement and shall conform to the applicable provisions of Texas Highway Department Standard Specification, Item 360, "Concrete Pavement."
- 2.2 AGGREGATES FOR CONCRETE
  - A. Shall be considered as either fine or coarse and shall meet the requirements of the City Standard Specification.
- 2.3 CONCRETE



- A. Shall be composed of Portland cement, coarse aggregate, fine aggregate, water, mineral filler and/or admixtures if permitted by the Engineer. Concrete shall have a minimum compressive strength, at 28 days, of not less than 3500 psi (or as noted on the plans) 5" concrete thickness and not less than 3500 psi (or as noted on the plans) for 6" concrete thickness, and a slump from 3 to 5". Measuring materials, batching, and mixing shall conform to ASTM C94. Air entrainment shall be between 5% and 7%.
- 2.4 REINFORCING STEEL
  - A. Shall conform to ASTM A615, Grade 40 or 60.
- 2.5 CONCRETE CURBS/GUTTERS
  - A. Conform to requirements of City Standard Specification.
- 2.6 CONCRETE WALKS
  - A. Conform to requirements of City Standard Specification.
- 2.7 PAVING EXPANSION JOINTS
  - A. Hot poured elastic type sealant, ASTM D1190, over bituminous non-extruding, impregnated cane fiber board, ASTM D1751. Thickness as indicated for exterior concrete paving and slabs.
- 2.8 SIDEWALK EXPANSION JOINTS
  - A. Pourable to component synthetic polymer type sealant, ASTM D1850, over ethafoam joint material (foamed polyethylene) by Dow Chemical Co., Midland, Michigan. Make minimum of 1/2" deep or as detailed.
- 2.9 POLYVINYL CHLORIDE PIPE (PVC) PIPE
  - A. PVC pipe shall be Schedule 40 and shall conform to commercial standard CS 256-63. PVC compounds are restricted to PVC 1120 and PVC 1220.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 INSPECTION
  - A. Examine the areas and conditions under which paving and surfacing operations are to be performed. Do not proceed with the Work until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.
- 3.2 COORDINATION
  - A. Coordinate paving and surfacing operations to protect both existing and new concurrent construction.
- 3.3 ALIGNMENT AND GRADE STAKES
  - A. Provide necessary alignment and grade stakes to do work. Set stakes at maximum intervals of 50' for roads, walks, or parking aisles (gutters and crown) and every 2500 square feet for parking areas, and at spot elevations shown on drawings.
- 3.4 SUBGRADE VERIFICATION/PREPARATION FOR CONCRETE PAVING
  - A. Recompact the upper six inches of the subgrade as specified in Section 31 22 13 and prepare the subgrade for paving. The subgrade is defined as that portion of the roadbed upon which the paving or base is to be placed. The subgrade shall be finished to the lines, grades and section shown on the Drawings. All soft, yielding material, clods or other material shall be removed and replaced with suitable material or the condition otherwise satisfactory corrected.
- 3.5 COMPACTION DENSITY
  - A. Compact subbases under paving as specified in Section 31 20 00 – Earth Moving, and on the grading plans
- 3.6 COMPACTION EQUIPMENT
  - A. Comply with the following minimum requirements.
    1. Tamping Roller - 200 psi per tamper foot.
    2. Pneumatic Tire Roller - 150 to 250 lbs. Per inch of overall width.
    3. Steel Wheeled Roller - 8 tons total weight.
    4. Vibratory Compactor - as approved.
- 3.7 CONCRETE – GENERAL
  - A. Conform to applicable requirements City Standard Specifications, except as otherwise specified herein.
  - B. Excavate, shape and compact subgrade for suitable bearing surface. Remove any unacceptable material.

- Remove roots occurring within 12" or nearest concrete surface. Fill depressions with acceptable material and compact.
- C. Provide suitable forms of metal, wood or as approved to contain concrete to indicated line, grade and shape until set. Provide face forms for curb and other section free of defects and conforming to indicating shapes. Provide side forms to full depth of concrete. Use approved flexible forms or curved forms of proper radius on curves having a radius of 150' or less.
  - D. Coat forms with form treating material prior to placing concrete to prevent concrete damage during form removal.
  - E. Concrete Mixing
    - 1. ACI 301, Chapter 7, ready-mixed unless Engineer gives permission to site mix.
  - F. Concrete Placing
    - 1. Place construction and control joints as indicated on Drawings and as specified.
    - 2. Immediately before concrete placement, thoroughly wet moisture absorbing material that will be in contact with the concrete.
    - 3. Place concrete in forms without segregation. Vibrate to remove voids. Strike off concrete and float smooth.
    - 4. Do not place concrete as specified.
    - 5. Finish concrete as specified.
    - 6. Place backfill using required material as soon as possible without damaging concrete.
    - 7. Repair or remove and replace damaged concrete as directed. Conform to ACI 301, Chapter 9.
  - G. Curing
    - 1. ACI 301, Section 5 use waterproof sheet materials or liquid membrane.
- 3.8 CONCRETE CURB AND GUTTER
- A. Conform to City Standard Specification.
  - B. General
    - 1. Concrete curb and gutter shall be constructed at the locations shown on the Drawings and shall conform to the cross sections shown on the Drawings.
  - C. Forms
    - 1. Forms shall be either wood or metal, straight, free of warp, and of a depth equal to the depth and thickness of the finished work. Hold firmly in place with stakes or pins so that no movement of the forms will result from the pressure of the concrete or manipulations necessary to finish the concrete. Forms shall be thoroughly cleaned and oiled before concrete is deposited. Forms shall be carefully removed so as not to damage the new concrete.
  - D. Reinforcement
    - 1. Reinforcing steel shall be placed where indicated on the Drawings. Reinforcing steel shall be free of rust, mill scale, dirt oil or other coatings. Metal chairs or precast blocks shall be used to hold the reinforcing steel in the proper plane. All reinforcing steel intersections shall be securely tied with wire.
  - E. Concrete Mix
    - 1. Concrete for curb and gutter shall conform to the applicable provisions of City and shall have a minimum compressive strength of 3500 psi at 28 days (or as noted on the plans).
  - F. Placing Concrete
    - 1. Concrete shall be place as nearly as practicable in its final position to avoid segregation due to rehandling or flowing. Concrete which is partially hardened or been contaminated by foreign material shall not be placed in the work, nor shall retempered concrete be used.
    - 2. No concrete shall be place when the air temperature is 40°F and falling, but it may be placed when the air temperature is 35°F and rising. The air temperature will be taken in the shade away from artificial heat.
    - 3. Concrete shall be transported in agitating mixers as rapidly as possible. When the air temperature is above 90°F, no concrete shall be used in which 45 minutes have elapsed from the time the water is added until the concrete is placed in the forms. When the air temperature is below 90°F, 60 minutes may be substituted above. If cement dispersing agents are used, the above times may be increased by 30 minutes.
    - 4. Concrete shall be thoroughly compacted during and immediately after placing by vibrating the concrete internally by means of mechanical vibrating equipment.
  - G. Joints
    - 1. Curb and gutter shall be poured in sections not longer than 90' unless otherwise shown on the Drawings. Each section shall be separated by a premolded or board joint conforming to the cross

sections specified. Curb and gutter shall be marked into separate subsections, each not exceeding 10' in length, by use of approved jointing tool.

- H. Finishing
  - 1. Curb and gutter shall be finished in conformance with the City Standard Specifications.
- I. Curing Concrete
  - 1. Immediately after the finishing of the concrete surface and after free surface moisture has disappeared, the concrete shall be sprayed uniformly with an approved curing compound.

### 3.9 CURB/GUTTER MACHINE PLACEMENT

- A. At Contractor's option, place curbs by use of an approved curb machine, using approved shapes, that will produce a finished project meeting standards of dimension, quality, and appearance as would be achieved by cast in place procedures. Hand finish surfaces as needed to provide required finish and texture.
- B. Finish concrete to give uniform appearance in surface contour and texture.
- C. Maximum Allowable Deviation: 3/16" when checked with a 10 foot straight edge. Remove and replace any curb exceeding stated deviation.
- D. Maintain design flow line of gutters to avoid low spots trapping water. Remove low spots by grinding and retexturing.

### 3.10 ON GRADE CONCRETE

- A. Conform to the City Standard Specification.
- B. The contractor may use a mix design currently being used on any City project which meet these Specifications.
- C. Place expansion joints as indicated on Drawings. In addition, place where concrete surrounds or adjoins any existing fixed objects such as fire hydrants, columns, building foundations, and other rigid structures.
- D. Maximum Allowable Deviation of Formed Edges from Indicated Location: 1/2". Maximum Allowable Deviation of Surface: 1/4" when checked with a ten foot straight edge. Remove to nearest joint and replace any walk or slab exceeding stated deviations.
- E. Slope walks and slabs away from buildings as indicated but not less than 1/8" per foot. Maintain design drainage grades to avoid low spots trapping water.
- F. After water sheen has disappeared, lightly brush surface to a uniform texture unless otherwise indicated or directed. Edge joints to provide a smooth border around each panel.

### 3.11 FINISHES

Exposed aggregate finish.

- A. Float surfaces to required lines and grades.
- B. Wash aggregate prior to placing. While concrete is still plastic broadcast moistened finish aggregate uniformly over surface to depth of single stone.
- C. Roll surfaces to fully embed aggregate.
- D. Wash and brush surfaces to remove overlying cement matrix and expose aggregate. Use chemical retarder if required to extend working time.
- E. Match approved mock up.

### 3.12 CONCRETE TESTING

- A. Slump and compression cylinders as specified under Section 03 30 00.

### 3.13 CONDUITS

- A. PVC piping shall be installed a minimum depth of 24" below the final paving grade at the locations shown on the Drawings. PVC conduit shall be as detailed on the Drawings. All backfill shall be compacted to 95% Standard Proctor Density.

### 3.14 CLEANING UP

- A. Upon completion of the Work, clean up work areas by removing debris, surplus material and equipment from the Site. Paved surfaces shall be swept clean and curbs shall be backfilled.

### 3.15 GUARANTEE

- A. The Contractor shall furnish, at no cost to the Owner, a one year guarantee on paving, which shall cover defects in materials and workmanship, and shall cover repair and maintenance during the building

SBLM Architects  
Project No: 023569.00

construction period. The guarantee shall be one year from the final acceptance of the pavement by the Owner.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 33 10 00**

**WATER UTILITIES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

- 1.1 RELATED CONDITIONS
- A. Provisions established within the 00 72 00 General Conditions and 00 73 00 Supplementary Conditions, Division 1 - General Requirements, and the Drawings are collectively applicable to this Section.
- 1.2 SCOPE RELATED CONDITIONS: Work included in this section, while not all inclusive but listed as a guide, shall include:
- A. Furnishing all labor, tools, materials, and incidentals required to complete the work.  
B. Installation of water mains, service lines, appurtenances and connections to existing system.  
C. Testing and sterilization of water system.  
D. Clean up.
- 1.3 STANDARDS
- A. Standards will as a minimum meet the requirements and recommendations of applicable portions of the standards listed. See Section 01 01 42 19 Reference Standards.
- B. Meet requirements and recommendations of applicable portions of the Standards listed:
1. City Standard Details and Specifications.
  2. North Central Texas Council of Governments (COG) Standard Specifications for Public Works Construction, Current Edition and Amendments.
  3. Texas Highway Department Standard Specification for Construction of Highways, Streets and Bridges, 1995 (THD).
  4. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO).
  5. American Water Works Associations (AWWA), Current Editions.
  6. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM), Current Edition.

**PART 2 - MATERIALS**

- 2.1 All materials shall conform to City specifications.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 GENERAL: The Contractor shall comply with all requirements of the City's Public Works Department Standards and Specifications regarding materials and installation of work specified herein.
- 3.2 EXCAVATION: The Contractor shall excavate all materials encountered regardless of the difficulties encountered. The ditch shall be no greater in width or depth than is necessary to permit construction in accordance with the Plans and these Specifications. The maximum width of trench at top of pipe without sheeting, shoring and bracing shall be not more than the external diameter of pipe plus 16 inches.

The Contractor shall determine the need for sheeting and bracing to safeguard the workmen. When sheeting and bracing are necessary the trench or excavation shall be dug to such width that proper allowance is made for the space occupied by the sheeting. All sheeting, shoring and bracing shall have sufficient strength and rigidity to withstand the pressure exerted and protect all persons or property from injury or damage. Sheeting, shoring and bracing endanger new or existing structures. All holes or voids left by the removal of sheeting shall be backfilled.

Soft, spongy or otherwise unstable materials which will not provide a firm foundation for the pipe shall be removed and replaced to the extent required by the City or Civil Engineer.

The material thus removed shall be replaced with suitable selected material from the excavation or other sources approved by the City or Civil Engineer, and shall be compacted as proved in these Specifications. When unstable conditions are not corrected by the above means, the Contractor shall be required to use crushed rock, gravel or concrete foundations. The type of foundation shall be determined by the City or Civil Engineer. There will be no extra compensation for this work.

- 3.3 **BEDDING:** The bedding for pipe shall provide a firm foundation of uniform density throughout the entire length of the pipe. Recesses for bells of the pipe shall be excavated for every joint and shall be of sufficient size and depth to relieve the bell of the load, permitting the barrel of the pipe to lay firmly throughout the entire length. The pipe positively will not be supported on blocks in order to raise the bell.

Earth bedding shall be used unless another type is designated on the Drawings. The pipe shall be placed on the natural undisturbed earth foundation which has been carefully shaped to fit the lower part of the conduit for not less than 1/4 of its circumference. When rock, shale or boulders are encountered in the trench, they shall be removed to a depth of six (6) inches below the grade lines and the trench shall be refilled with crushed rock, gravel or granular material up to the original grade and tamped into place. Bell holes will be required as above.

Other types of bedding and embedment shall be provided when designated on the Drawings.

- 3.4 **BACKFILL:** After the pipe has been installed and embedded as designated on the drawings, selected material from the excavation at optimum to -1 to 4% above optimum moisture content, shall be placed in layers not exceeding six (6) inches loose depth layers and compacted by approved methods to a density of not less than 95% standard proctor density.

3.5 **WATER MAIN CONSTRUCTION**

A. **WATER JETTING WILL NOT BE PERMITTED.**

- B. **Installing Ductile Iron (DI) Water Pipe:** Pipe shall be installed according to the Standard Specification and the manufacturer's recommendations.

Whenever necessary to deflect pipe from a straight line, either in the vertical or horizontal place, to avoid obstructions, to plumb stems, or for other reasons, the degree of deflection shall not exceed that recommended by the pipe manufacturer.

No pipe shall be laid in water, or when the trench conditions or the weather is unsuitable for such work, except when approved by the City or Civil Engineer.

- C. **Installation of Gate Valves:** All Valves for the water distribution main shall be gate valves and shall be installed at the location indicated on the Drawings or as directed by the City or Civil Engineer. Valves shall be set with the stems true vertical. After valves have been installed and adjusted they shall be tested for operation under maximum operating pressure. Valve bases shall be installed so that covers are flush with the proposed finished ground surface.
- D. **Fire Hydrant Installation:** Fire hydrants shall be located as shown on the drawings, or as directed by the City or Civil Engineer and shall be set truly vertical.
- E. **Sterilization:** Sterilization of water mains and service lines shall be performed by the Contractor as required by the AWWA Standard Specifications. The Contractor will pay for all testing and sterilization.

**END OF SECTION**

**SECTION 33 30 00**

**SANITARY SEWERAGE UTILITIES**

**PART 1 - GENERAL**

- 1.1 RELATED CONDITIONS
- A. Provisions established within the 00 72 00 General Conditions and 00 73 00 Supplementary Conditions, Division 1 - General Requirements, and the Drawings are collectively applicable to this Section.
- 1.2 SCOPE RELATED CONDITIONS: Work included in this section, while not all inclusive but listed as a guide, shall include:
- A. Furnishing all labor, tools, materials, and incidentals required to complete the work.
- B. Installation of sanitary sewer line, manholes and cleanouts.
- C. Testing of sanitary sewer system.
- D. Clean up.
- 1.3 STANDARDS
- A. Standards will as a minimum meet the requirements and recommendations of applicable portions of the standards listed. See Section 01 42 19 Reference Standards.
- B. Meet requirements and recommendations of applicable portions of the Standards listed:
1. City Standard Details and Specifications.
  2. North Central Texas Council of Governments (COG) Standard Specifications for Public Works Construction, Current Edition and Amendments.
  3. Texas Highway Department Standard Specification for Construction of Highways, Streets and Bridges, 1995 (THD).
  4. American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO).
  5. American Water Works Associations (AWWA), Current Editions.
  6. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM), Current Edition.

**PART 2 - MATERIALS**

- 2.1 All materials shall conform to City specifications.

**PART 3 - EXECUTION**

- 3.1 GENERAL: The Contractor shall comply with all requirements of the City of Public Works Department Standards and Specifications regarding materials and installation of work specified herein.
- 3.2 EXCAVATION: The Contractor shall excavate all materials encountered regardless of the difficulties encountered. The ditch shall be no greater in width or depth than is necessary to permit construction in accordance with the Plans and these Specifications. The maximum width of trench at top of pipe without sheeting, shoring and bracing shall be not more than the external diameter of pipe plus 16 inches.

The Contractor shall determine the need for sheeting and bracing to safeguard the workmen. When sheeting and bracing are necessary the trench or excavation shall be dug to such width that proper allowance is made for the space occupied by the sheeting. All sheeting, shoring and bracing shall have sufficient strength and rigidity to withstand the pressure exerted and protect all persons or property from injury or damage. Sheeting, shoring and bracing endanger new or existing structures. All holes or voids left by the removal of sheeting shall be backfilled.

Soft, spongy or otherwise unstable materials which will not provide a firm foundation for the pipe shall be removed and replaced to the extent required by the City or Civil Engineer.

The material thus removed shall be replaced with suitable selected material from the excavation or other sources approved by the City or Civil Engineer, and shall be compacted as proved in these Specifications. When unstable conditions are not corrected by the above means, the Contractor shall be required to use crushed rock, gravel or concrete foundations. The type of foundation shall be determined by the City or Civil Engineer. There will be no extra compensation for this work.

- 3.3 **BEDDING:** The bedding for pipe shall provide a firm foundation of uniform density throughout the entire length of the pipe. Recesses for bells of the pipe shall be excavated for every joint and shall be of sufficient size and depth to relieve the bell of the load, permitting the barrel of the pipe to lay firmly throughout the entire length. The pipe positively will not be supported on blocks in order to raise the bell.

Earth bedding shall be used unless another type is designated on the Drawings. The pipe shall be placed on the natural undisturbed earth foundation which has been carefully shaped to fit the lower part of the conduit for not less than 1/4 of its circumference. When rock, shale or boulders are encountered in the trench, they shall be removed to a depth of six (6) inches below the grade lines and the trench shall be refilled with crushed rock, gravel or granular material up to the original grade and tamped into place. Bell holes will be required as above.

Other types of bedding and embedment shall be provided when designated on the Drawings.

- 3.4 **BACKFILL:** After the pipe has been installed and embedded as designated on the drawings, selected material from the excavation at optimum to -1 to 4% above optimum moisture content, shall be placed in layers not exceeding six (6) inches loose depth layers and compacted by approved methods to a density of not less than 95% standard proctor density.

3.5 **SEWER MAIN CONSTRUCTION**

- A. **Pipe:** Pipe shall be protected during handling against impact shocks and free fall. The pipe shall not be dragged across a hard surface or rolled over sharp or rough objects.

Before being lowered into the trench, all sections of pipe shall be inspected for defects. Defective, damaged or unsound pipe shall be rejected. Laying shall begin at the lowest point with the spigot end pointing in the direction of flow. Pipe shall be laid accurately on the line and grade shown on the Drawings on bedding of the type shown on the Drawings.

Pipe sockets and barrel shall be clean and free from dirt at the time of jointing. The pipe shall be tightly butted together. All pipe shall be so laid that the contact in the joint between two lengths of pipe shall be uniform throughout the circumference of the joint. Curves in the alignment as indicated on the Drawings shall be made with standard pipe by pulling on the outside edge of the pipe away from the seat to make a smooth joint. Where curves are sharp, a standard or special made bend will be used. When the pipe has been checked for line and grade, enough backfill shall be placed on both sides of the pipe to hold it firmly in position.

Openings at the end of a day's work, openings in wyes, deep cut connections, laterals, cleanouts, etc., shall be capped and sealed water tight with G-K compound.

- B. **Wye Branches:** Wye branches for service lines shall be installed where shown on the Drawings. All Wye branches for service lines shall be six (6) inches in diameter unless otherwise shown on the Drawings. Cutting into the sewer main for connections will not be permitted. Wye branches for service lines shall be blocked before backfilling.
- C. **Manholes:** Shall be constructed as detailed on the Drawings. Bricks used in manhole construction shall be clean and thoroughly wetted shortly before they are laid. The flow channel shall be true to line and grade. It shall be troweled to a smooth, hard finish. Cast iron frames and covers shall be embedded in a full bed of mortar and shall have a full bearing with toe at the established grade. Precast manholes shall be constructed as shown on the drawings.
- D. **Cleanouts:** Shall be constructed with 27" Wye. A cast iron casting with "cleanout" printed on the cover shall be set over the top of the cleanout and set to the established grade.
- E. **Sewer Tests:** The Contractor shall include in his bid price all costs of required testing to complete the work.
- F. **Cleaning up:** Upon completion of the work covered by this Section, the Contractor shall clean up all work areas by removing all debris, surplus materials and equipment from site. The ground surface will be restored to its original position as nearly as possible.

**END OF SECTION**



**DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
CONSTRUCTION SERVICES**

# **Project Manual**

**VOLUME 1 OF 2**

**CSP 207837**

**Org 054 – Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy - Renovation**



**A/E FIRM  
SBLM Architects**

**MEP: Campos Engineering  
Technology: TLC Engineering**

**Civil: RLG Consulting Engineers  
Structural: Giesler Partners Consulting  
Engineers**

**12/05/2024**

**DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
CONSTRUCTION SERVICES**

**Project Manual**

VOLUME 1 OF 2

**CSP 207837**

**Org 054 – Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy - Renovation**



**A/E FIRM  
SBLM Architects**

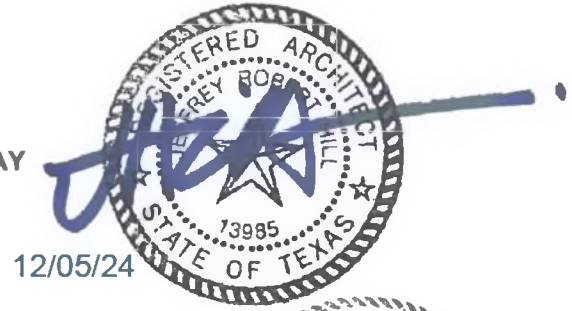
**12/05/2024**

ARCHITECT AND CONSULTANTS SEALS PAGE

ARCHITECT:

SBLM ARCHITECTS

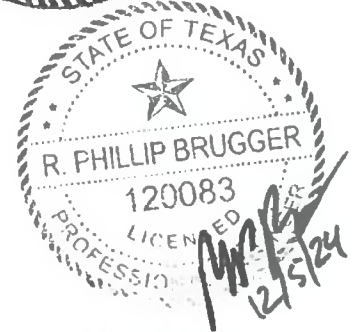
JEFFREY HILL, AIA  
16910 DALLAS PARKWAY  
SUITE 216  
DALLAS, TX 75248  
(469)554-7770



CIVIL ENGINEER:

RLG CONSULTING ENGINEERS

R. PHILLIP BRUGER, PE  
12001 N. CENTRAL EXPRESSWAY  
SUITE 300  
DALLAS, TX 75201  
(214)739-8100



STRUCTURAL ENGINEER:

GEISLER PARTNERS

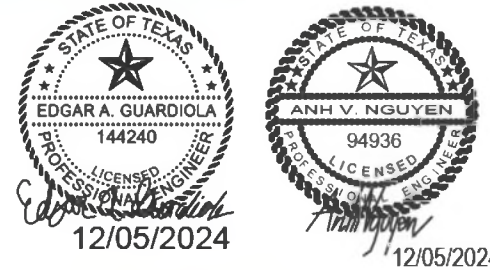
KRISTINA F. GEISLER-NORDHOLM, PE  
12001 N. CENTRAL EXPRESSWAY  
SUITE 301  
DALLAS, TX 75201  
(469)404-7404



MEP ENGINEER:

CAMPOS ENGINEERING

EDGAR A. GUARDIOLA – MECHANICAL & PLUMBING  
ANH NGUYEN - ELECTRICAL  
1331 RIVER BEND DRIVE  
DALLAS, TX 75247  
(214)696-6291



TECHNOLOGY ENGINEER:

TLC ENGINEERING SOLUTIONS

AMBER SMITH  
1255 CORPORATE DRIVE, SUITE 100  
IRVING, TX 75038  
(972)887-5566



## SECTION 00 01 10 – TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

### VOLUME 1

#### Division 0

00 01 00	Project Manual Cover
00 01 01	Project Title Page
00 01 07	Seals Page
00 01 10	Table of Contents
00 01 15	List of Drawing Sheets
00 11 13	Advertisement for CSP

#### **Proposal Requirements**

00 11 17	Intention to Propose Form
00 21 13	Instructions to Proposers

#### **Project Information**

00 31 00	Available Project Information
00 31 18	School Operation Parameters Statement

#### **Proposal Documents**

00 41 10	Overall Proposal Packaging Checklist
00 41 11 (a)	Materials Escalation Price Reconciliation Form
00 41 11	Proposal Form – Base Bid (Part 1-A of the CSP)
00 41 12	Proposal Form – Alternates and Unit Pricing (Part 1-C of the CSP)
00 41 13	Technical Proposal (Part 1-B of the CSP)
00 43 13	Proposal Guarantee Bond (Part 1-A of the CSP)
00 45 00	DISD Required forms combined (Part 1-A of the CSP)
00 45 20	Certificate of Non-Discrimination (Part 1-A of the CSP)
00 45 22	Notification of Hazardous Materials Affidavit (Part 1-A of the CSP)
00 45 23	Family Conflict of Interest Questionnaire (Part 1-A of the CSP)
00 45 39	MWBE Compliance Guidelines and Forms (Part 2 of the CSP)

#### **Contract Forms**

00 43 43	Prevailing Wage Rates Schedule
00 52 10	Standard form of Agreement between Owner and Contractor
00 52 11	General Conditions of the Contract for Construction
00 55 00	Notice to Proceed Forms
00 61 13	Performance Bond Form
00 61 16	Payment Bond Form
00 73 19	Dallas Independent School District Construction Minimum Safety Program Guidelines Manual

#### Division 1

#### **General Requirements**

01 10 00	Summary of Work
01 21 00	Allowances
01 22 00	Unit Prices
01 23 00	Alternates
01 25 00	Substitution Procedures
01 29 00	Payment Procedures
01 29 73	Schedule of Values
01 31 00	Project Management and Coordination
01 32 00	Construction Progress Documentation
01 32 16	Construction Progress Schedule
01 32 33	Photographic Documentation
01 33 00	Submittal Procedures
01 35 43	EPA Lead-Based Paint Renovation, Repair, and Painting Program

## SECTION 00 01 10 – TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

01 40 00	Quality Requirements
01 42 00	References
01 42 19	Reference Standards
01 45 23	Testing Adjusting and Balancing for HVAC – (updated 1-28-2020 Final)
01 50 00	Temporary Facilities and Controls
01 52 14	Temporary Facilities for Students
01 60 00	Product Requirements
01 73 00	Execution
01 77 00	Closeout Procedures & Checklist
01 78 23	Operation and Maintenance Data
01 78 39	Project As-Builts & Record Documents
01 79 00	Demonstration and Training
01 91 00	General Cx Requirements (1-28-20 Final)
01 92 00	Hazmat Report
01 93 00	Geotechnical Report

### **VOLUME 2**

#### **Division 2**

##### **Existing Conditions**

02 41 13	Selective Site Demolition
02 41 19	Selective Demolition
02 41 19.27	Selective Demolition of Existing Communication Systems

#### **Division 3**

##### **Concrete**

03 20 00	Concrete Reinforcement
03 30 00	Cast in Place Concrete

#### **Division 4**

##### **Masonry**

04 01 10	Masonry Cleaning
04 01 20.63	Brick Masonry Repair
04 01 20.64	Brick Masonry Repointing
04 22 00	Concrete Masonry Units
04 26 13	Masonry Veneer

#### **Division 5**

##### **Metals**

05 12 00	Structural Steel
05 50 00	Metal Fabrications

#### **Division 6**

##### **Wood, Plastics and Composites**

06 10 00	Rough Carpentry
06 10 53	Miscellaneous Carpentry

## SECTION 00 01 10 – TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

### Division 7

#### Thermal and Moisture Protection

07 92 00 Sealant Joints

### Division 8

#### Openings

08 11 13 Hollow Metal Doors and Frames  
08 14 16 Flush Wood Doors  
08 51 13 Aluminum Windows  
08 71 00 Door Hardware  
08 80 00 Glazing

### Division 9

#### Finishes

09 29 00 Gypsum Board  
09 30 13 Ceramic Tile  
09 51 23 Acoustical Tile Ceilings  
09 65 19 Resilient Tile Flooring  
09 91 13 Exterior Painting  
09 91 23 Interior Painting

### Division 10

#### Specialties

10 26 00 Wall and Door Protection  
10 28 00 Toilet, Bath, and Laundry Accessories

### Division 11 through 20 - Not Used

### Division 21

#### Fire Suppression

21 05 00 Common Work Results for Fire Suppression  
21 08 00 Commissioning of Fire Protection Systems

### Division 22

#### Plumbing

22 05 17 Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping  
22 05 23 General-Duty Valves for Plumbing Piping  
22 05 29 Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment  
22 05 53 Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment  
22 07 19 Plumbing Piping Insulation  
22 10 05 Plumbing Piping  
22 10 06 Plumbing Piping Specialties  
22 11 16 Domestic Water Piping  
22 11 23 Domestic Water Pumps  
22 30 00 Plumbing Equipment  
22 40 00 Plumbing Fixtures

## SECTION 00 01 10 – TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

### Division 23

#### Heating, Ventilating, And Air-Conditioning (HVAC)

23 00 10	Basic Mechanical Requirements
23 05 13	Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment
23 05 19	Meters and Gages for HVAC Piping
23 05 23	General Duty Valves for HVAC Piping
23 05 29	Hangers and Support for HVAC Equipment
23 05 53	Mechanical Identification
23 05 93	Testing, Adjusting and Balancing for HVAC
23 07 19	HVAC Piping Insulation
23 08 00	Commissioning of HVAC
23 09 00	Instrumentation and Control for HVAC
23 09 23	Energy Management Control System (Bacnet Ip/Tridium)
23 09 25	Variable Frequency Drives
23 21 13	Hydronic Piping
23 21 23	Hydronic Pumps
23 23 00	Refrigerant Piping
23 25 00	HVAC Water Treatment
23 31 00	HVAC Ducts and Casings
23 33 00	Air Duct Accessories
23 34 23	HVAC Power Ventilators
23 37 00	Air Outlets and Inlets
23 65 13	Forced Draft Cooling Towers
23 73 13	Central-Station Air-Handling Units
23 74 13	Packaged Outdoor Central-Station Air-Handling Units
23 81 19	Self Contained Air Conditioners
23 81 26.13	Small Capacity Split-System Air Conditioners

### Division 24 through 25 - Not Used

### Division 26

#### Electrical

26 05 05	Selective Demolition for Electrical
26 05 13	Medium-Voltage Cables
26 05 19	Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables
26 05 26	Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems
26 05 29	Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems
26 05 33.13	Conduit for Electrical Systems
26 05 53	Identification for Electrical Systems
26 05 73	Power System Studies
26 08 00	Commissioning of Electrical Systems
26 09 23	Lighting Control Devices
26 27 26	Wiring Devices
26 28 13	Fuses
26 28 16.13	Enclosed Circuit Breakers
26 28 16.16	Enclosed Switches
26 29 13	Enclosed Controllers
26 43 00	Surge Protective Devices
26 51 00	Interior Lighting
26 56 00	Exterior Lighting

## SECTION 00 01 10 – TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

### Division 27

#### Communications

27 05 00	Common Work Results for Communications
27 05 26	Grounding and Bonding Communication Systems
27 05 28	Pathways for Communications Systems
27 15 00	Communications Horizontal Cabling
27 41 16	Audio Video Systems
27 51 13	Paging System

### Division 28

#### Electronic Safety and Security

28 46 00	Fire Detection and Alarm
28 51 00	In Building Two Way Emergency Responder Communication Enhancement System (BDA or Fiber DAS System)
28 55 00	RF Survey for In Building Two Way Emergency Responder Communication Enhancement System

### Division 29 through 30 - Not Used

### Division 31

#### Earthwork

31 10 00	Site Clearing
31 20 00	Earth Moving
31 22 00	Grading
31 23 33	Trenching and Backfilling
31 25 00	Erosion and Sedimentation Controls

### Division 32

#### Exterior Improvements

32 01 13	Pavement Sealing
32 13 13	Concrete Paving

### Division 33

#### Utilities

33 10 00	Water Utilities
33 30 00	Sanitary Sewerage Utilities

END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS



## SECTION 00 01 15 – LIST OF DRAWING SHEETS

---

The list below is a description of the documents provided to the contractor as part of this Request for Competitive Sealed Proposal – 207837

### Org 054 – Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy - Renovation

#### Drawings:

##### General:

G000A	Cover Sheet
G000B	Project Index
G001A	General Notes
G001B	Responsibility Matrix
G002	Ada Requirements
G003	Architectural Life Safety Plan – Level 1
G004A	Architectural Phasing Plan – Level 1
G004B	Architectural Phasing Plan – Level 2
G004C	Architectural Phasing Plan – Level 3

##### Civil:

C04.01	Demolition Plan
C10.01	Private Utility Plan

##### Architectural:

AD101	Demolition Floor Plan – Level 1
AD102	Demolition Floor Plan – Levels 2 & 3
AD103	Demolition Floor Plan Ref. Images – Level 1, 2, & 3
AD111	Demolition Reflected Ceiling Plan – Level 1
AD112	Demo Reflected Ceiling Plans – Level 2 & 3
AD113	Demolition RCP Images – Level 1, 2, & 3
AD401	Enlarged Demolition Floor Plan – Admin
AD411	Enlarged Demo RCP – Admin
AS01	Architectural Site Plan
A101	Floor Plan – Level 1
A102	Floor Plans – Level 2 & 3
A103	Architectural Roof Plan – Level 4
A111	Reflected Ceiling Plan – Level 1
A112	Reflected Ceiling Plans – Level 2 & 3
A201	Exterior Elevation
A202	Exterior Elevation
A203	Exterior Elevations & Ref. Images
A311	Partition Types & Wall Sections
A401	Enlarged Floor Plan – Admin
A411	Enlarged Reflected Ceiling Plan – Admin
A501	Enlarged Plans & Elevations – Staff RR
A502	Enlarged Floor Plans – Principal's Office & Admin
A503	Casework & Millwork Details
A601	Door Types, Hardware & Schedules
A602	Window Types & Schedules
A603A	Door & Window Details
A603B	Partition Bracing Details
A604	Finish Schedule, Details, & Accessories
A605A	Finish Plan – Level 1 Quadrant A
A605B	Finish Plan – Level 1 Quadrant B
A605C	Finish Plan – Level 1 Quadrant C
A605D	Finish Plan – Level 1 Quadrant D

## SECTION 00 01 15 – LIST OF DRAWING SHEETS

---

A606A Finish Plan – Level 2 Quadrant A  
A606B Finish Plan – Level 2 Quadrant B  
A607 Finish Plan – Level 3

### **Structural:**

S1.00 Structural Notes  
S2.01 Level 1 Structural Plan  
S2.04 Structural Roof Plan

### **Mechanical:**

M0.01 Mechanical Symbol Legend  
M0.02 Mechanical General Notes  
MD3.01 Mechanical First Floor Demolition Plan  
MD3.02 Mechanical Second Floor Demolition Plan  
MD3.03 Mechanical Third Floor Demolition Plan  
MD3.04 Mechanical Roof Demolition Plan  
MD4.00 Mechanical Demolition Piping Plan  
MD5.00 Mechanical Enlarged Demolition Plans – Level 1  
MD5.01 Mechanical Enlarged Demolition Plans – Level 1  
MD5.02 Mechanical Enlarged Demolition Plans – Level 1  
MD5.03 Mechanical Enlarged Demolition Plans – Level 2  
MD5.04 Mechanical Enlarged Demolition Plans – Level 3  
MD6.00 Mechanical Enlarged Demolition Piping Plan  
M4.01 Mechanical First Floor Plan  
M4.02 Mechanical Second Floor Plan  
M4.03 Mechanical Third Floor Plan  
M5.00 Mechanical Enlarged Plans – Level 1  
M5.01 Mechanical Enlarged Plans – Level 1  
M5.02 Mechanical Enlarged Plans – Level 1  
M5.03 Mechanical Enlarged Plans – Level 2  
M5.04 Mechanical Enlarged Plans – Level 3  
M6.00 Mechanical Piping Plan  
M6.01 Mechanical Enlarged Piping Plan  
M7.01 Mechanical Roof Plan  
M8.00 Mechanical Controls  
M8.01 Mechanical Controls  
M8.02 Mechanical Controls  
M9.01 Mechanical Details  
M9.02 Mechanical Details  
M10.01 Mechanical Schedules

### **Electrical:**

E0.01 Electrical Symbol Legend  
E0.02 Electrical General Notes  
ED1.01 Electrical Demolition Site Plan  
E2.01 Electrical Site Plan  
ED3.01 Electrical First Floor Demolition Plan  
ED3.02 Electrical Second Floor Demolition Plan  
ED3.03 Electrical Third Floor Demolition Plan  
ED3.04 Electrical Roof Demolition Plan  
ED3.05 Lighting First Floor Demolition Plan  
ED3.06 Lighting Second Floor Demolition Plan  
ED3.07 Lighting Third Floor Demolition Plan  
E4.01 Electrical First Floor Power Plan  
E4.02 Electrical Second Floor Power Plan  
E4.03 Electrical Third Floor Power Plan

## SECTION 00 01 15 – LIST OF DRAWING SHEETS

---

ED5.00	Electrical Demo Enlarged Plans
E5.01	Electrical First Floor Lighting Plan – Area A
E5.02	Electrical First Floor Lighting Plan – Area B
E5.03	Electrical Second Floor Lighting Plan – Area A
E5.04	Electrical Second Floor Lighting Plan – Area B
E5.05	Electrical Third Floor Lighting Plan – Area A
E5.06	Electrical Third Floor Lighting Plan – Area B
E5.07	Site Plan Lighting Controls
E5.08	First Floor Lighting Controls – Area A
E5.09	First Floor Lighting Controls – Area B
E5.10	Second Floor Lighting Controls – Area A
E5.11	Second Floor Lighting Controls – Area B
E5.12	Third Floor Lighting Controls – Area A
E5.13	Third Floor Lighting Controls – Area B
E6.00	Electrical Enlarged Plans
E7.01	Electrical Roof Plan
E9.01	Lighting Control Details
E9.02	Lighting Control Details
E9.03	Lighting Control Details
E9.04	Lighting Control Details
E10.01	Electrical Schedules and Details
E10.02	Electrical Schedules
E10.03	Electrical Schedules

### **Plumbing:**

P0.01	Plumbing Symbols and Abbreviations
P0.02	Plumbing General Notes
PD3.00	Plumbing Under Floor Demolition Plan
PD3.01	Plumbing First Floor Demolition Plan
PD3.02	Plumbing Second Floor Demolition Plan
PD3.03	Plumbing Third Floor Demolition Plan
PD3.04	Plumbing Roof Demolition Plan
P4.00	Plumbing Under Floor Plan
P4.01	Plumbing First Floor Plan
P4.02	Plumbing Second Floor Plan
P4.03	Plumbing Third Floor Plan
P4.04	Plumbing Roof Plan
P8.01	Plumbing Details
P9.01	Plumbing Schedules

### **Fire Alarm:**

FA4.00	Fire Alarm Site Plan
FA4.01	Fire Alarm First Floor Plan
FA4.02	Fire Alarm Second Floor Plan
FA4.03	Fire Alarm Third Floor Plan

### **Fire Protection:**

FP4.01	Fire Protection First Floor Plan
--------	----------------------------------

### **Data:**

TN000	Technology Abbreviations and Notes
TN001	Technology Symbols and Systems Matrix
TND01	Demolition Floor Plan – Level 1
TND02	Demolition Floor Plan – Level 2 & 3
TND401	Technology Enlarged Plan – Entrance Area
TND402	Technology Enlarged Plan – Auditorium

## SECTION 00 01 15 – LIST OF DRAWING SHEETS

---

TN101	Floor Plan – Level 1
TN102	Floor Plan – Level 2 & 3
TN111	Reflected Ceiling Plan – Level 1
TN112	Reflected Ceiling Plan – Level 2 & 3
TN401	Technology Enlarged Plan – Entrance Area
TN402	Technology Enlarged Plan – Auditorium
TN403	Technology Enlarged Plan – Level 1 IDFs
TN404	Technology Enlarged Plan – Level 2 IDFs
TN500	Technology Details
TN501	Technology Door Details
TN502	Technology Camera Details



The Dallas Independent School District ("District") is soliciting Competitive Sealed Proposals ("CSP") from qualified sources relative to the provision of the following request For Competitive Sealed Proposals ("CSP"). This procurement will be managed under the Dallas ISD Construction Services department.

For information on how to obtain the CSP documents, go to the District's **Construction Services** website <http://www.dallasisd.org>. Click on "Departments;" click on "Construction Services/Bond Office;" click on "Bond Vendor Opportunities;" then click on the bid package number. Follow the Document Distribution instructions to obtain the CSP documents. The CSP documents contain the necessary information to submit a CSP to the District, including construction documents, selection criteria, estimated budget, project scope, schedule, and other information that contractors may require to respond to the request.

Please return the "Intention to Propose" form (Specification Section 00 11 17) to the Construction Services Procurement Director listed on the form.

CSP #	Description	Closing Date	Buyers Initials
207837	Org 054 – Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy - Renovation	1/28/2025	DBE

**A pre-proposal meeting will be held via Google Meet at 10:00 AM on Thursday January 9, 2025 for all interested parties. This meeting is not mandatory, but information discussed will be extremely helpful in preparation of the proposal.**

**Google Meet Information**

Meeting ID

[meet.google.com/xnf-mrec-ggy](https://meet.google.com/xnf-mrec-ggy)

Phone Numbers

(US)+1 786-618-2355

PIN: 179 854 466#

All general contractors and sub-contractors are encouraged to attend this meeting. Contractors will meet A/E(s) and PM at the school to start site tour. The following is the schedule for the site tour:

School Org#	School Name	Date	Time	School Address, Location of Meeting
Org 054	Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy	January 9, 2025	3:30 PM	3838 Crown Shore Dr. Dallas, TX 75244

All Construction Services procurements must be physically delivered to the Construction Services office, at the Linus D. Wright Dallas ISD Administration Building 9400 North Central Expressway, Suite 800 Dallas, TX 75231. (Call 972.925.7200 for directions). Delivery to other locations will result in rejection of a CSP.

Completed CSP Package **Part 1-A, 1-B and 1-C are due on Tuesday, 1/28/2025 at 2:00 PM** (local time).

Completed CSP Package **Part 2 is due on Wednesday, 1/29/2025 at 3:00 PM** (local time).

**Any materials received after the respective closing dates / times will not be considered.**

The District will open and read the names of the proposers and prices submitted in responsive CSPs beginning at 3:00 P.M. local time upon submittal of Part 2 of the Package, via Google Meet.

**Google Meet Information**

Meeting ID

[meet.google.com/gdm-vcni-cgy](https://meet.google.com/gdm-vcni-cgy)

Phone Numbers

(US)+1 915-235-0095

PIN: 768 732 047#

No further information will be officially released until after the date the Agenda is publicized for the Board of Trustees briefing.

The right is reserved to reject any or all bids, proposals, CSPs or statements of qualification and to waive technicalities.

The Dallas Independent School District is committed to the ideals of equal opportunity in all its business endeavors.

The Dallas Independent School District's Construction Services projects have a 30% Minority and Women-Owned Business Enterprise (M/WBE) construction goal.

**RUN TWO TIMES ONLY AS FOLLOWS:**

**12/15/2024 and 12/22/2024**



**DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
PROCUREMENT SERVICES – CONSTRUCTION SERVICES**

**DOCUMENT DISTRIBUTION**

**CONSTRUCTION SERVICES**

**CSP 207837**

**Org 054 – Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy - Renovation  
J054\_P1000\_1**

**SOLICITATION TIMELINE:**

Issue Date:	12/15/2024
First Advertisement Date	12/15/2024
Second Advertisement Date	12/22/2024
Preproposal Meeting	01/09/2025 at 10:00 AM CST
Question Deadline	01/13/2025
Question Responses from the District	01/14/2025
CSP Response Due Dates Pt 1-A and Pt 1-B	01/28/2025 at 2:00 PM CST
CSP Response Due Date Pt 2	01/29/2025 at 3:00 PM CST
CSP Evaluation	02/04/2025
Anticipated Board Approval	03/20/2025

1. DOCUMENT DISTRIBUTION:

The attached "Document Distribution" page details how documents and addenda will be distributed.

2. ESTIMATED CONSTRUCTION BUDGET INCLUDING ALLOWANCES:

**Total Estimated Construction Budget (CCL + IC+ Allowances) for CSP 207837 \$8,594,265.00**

3. Scope of Work. The Work consists of:

Org 054 – Thomas C. Preparatory Academy - Project consists of the following:

**Architectural**

1. New secure vestibule to be created including rearrangement of adjacent office spaces, inclusion of new storefront, rearrangement of doors, and inclusion of infrastructure for security equipment.
2. Replace exterior waterproofing/sealant joints, including at door and wall penetrations to eliminate leaks and condensation drainage damage.
3. Replace vinyl composite tile (VCT) flooring and base at 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> floor corridors per District Standards. 3<sup>rd</sup> floor is new and is to remain as-is.

4. Paint all previously painted interior surfaces. Repair/patch walls prior to painting (except at areas of renovation). Scope to include all areas of school.
5. Replace outdated exterior windows with new energy-efficient window assemblies. Refer to drawings for exact locations.
6. New way-finding site signage to be installed to meet DISD standards.
7. Replace damaged center mullion between gyms 123 and 124.
8. Replace mechanical room M3 door for code compliant access.
9. Repair damaged door hardware at exterior door to chiller.

### **Structural**

1. Misc. - Provide supplemental repairs as required for other scopes.

### **Mechanical**

1. Replace kitchen hood and fans.
2. Replace existing condenser piping, condenser pump, controls, and cooling tower in its entirety.
3. Remove and replace AHUs. Refer to drawings for exact locations and quantity. AHU 3 & 4 to be included as Add Alternate #8.
4. Replace fans, supply, roof mount, side wall mount, downblast, etc. Refer to drawings for exact locations and quantity.
5. Replace DX split system due to age and performance of existing equipment.
6. Replace IDF/MDF air conditioning. Refer to drawings for exact location and quantity.
7. Replace RTUs, refer to drawings for exact location and quantity. Existing controls are Distech and to remain as is. Scope to be included as Add Alternate #3.

### **Electrical**

1. Demo and replace existing fire alarm system. Scope to include entire school, including portables throughout site.
2. Install exterior lighting controls for new exterior lights. See E3 for reference.
3. Install exterior lighting with LED lighting. New lighting to be installed to meet code requirements and DISD standards.
4. Remove existing interior lighting controls and replace with new lighting controls will be installed to meet current standards in coordination with new interior LED lighting. Scope will also include occupancy sensors, dimming control of new LED lighting, and multi-zone switching. 3<sup>rd</sup> floor lighting to be listed as add alternate E4-Alt.
5. Replace interior lights with LED lighting. Scope includes approximately (1,565 fixtures) throughout school. Lighting to be replaced to meet current code requirements and DISD standards. 3<sup>rd</sup> floor listed as add alternate E5-Alt.
6. Replace intercom system.
7. Replace existing AV system for the Auditorium with a new system.

### **Electrical Safety & Security**

1. Provide TDG compliant security system at front entry including door buzzer, card readers, door contacts, and weapon's management system to secure reception and vestibule.

### **Plumbing**

1. Install new washer/dryer connections. Per DISD requests, the new dryer should be electric in lieu of gas.
2. Demo and replace sanitary sewer piping. Scope is limited to crawl spaces only, except at the kitchen.
3. Replace exterior hose bibs due to age and condition.
4. Inspect acid dilution tank, replace limestone media.
5. Install makeup water system for cooling tower to meet current DISD standards.
6. Install branch isolation valves for restrooms and kitchen to meet DISD requests and standards.
7. Replace (2) water fountains adjacent to the gymnasium spaces to meet current DISD standards. Includes installation of floor drains and bottle fillers. Scope to be included as Add Alternate #2.
8. Replace (2) additional water fountains throughout school, including floor drains and bottle fillers. Scope to be included as Add Alternate #5.
9. Replace piping from water meter back to the double check inside the building.
10. Replace domestic cold-water piping in the central plant with copper.
11. Replace sanitary sewer line from within the property line up to the building entrance.



4. Contact Information:

Technical questions and all other questions related to this solicitation are to be referred to:

**Attention:**  
**Email:**

**Dallas ISD Procurement Services**  
[ProcurementCS@dallasisd.org](mailto:ProcurementCS@dallasisd.org)

Please notate the solicitation number **CSP 207837** in the subject line of your email.

**DOCUMENT DISTRIBUTION  
CSP PACKAGE 207837**

Documents will be distributed as follows:

Hard copy and file distribution are provided, beginning Monday, December 16, 2024

<b>Printing Company Name:</b>	<b>Lawton Reprographics</b>
<b>Attention:</b>	<b>Greg Howard</b>
<b>Address:</b>	<b>14305 Inwood Rd.</b>
<b>City, State and Zip</b>	<b>Dallas, TX 75244</b>
<b>Phone:</b>	<b>972-980-2957</b>
<b>Email:</b>	<b>orders@lawtonrepro.com</b>

Any addendum issued will be listed or posted at the **Dallas ISD Construction Services** website <http://www.dallasisd.org/> **Click on “Departments”**; **click on “Construction Services/Bond Office”**; **click on “Bond Vendor Opportunities”**; then click on the bid package number. Any and all addenda that are too large in size for the website will not be posted on the District website. However, all such addenda will be listed on the website with the date of issuance of each addendum, and instructions to proposers for procuring such addenda from Lawton Reprographics.

Documents are available as follows:

- **Full size sets of plans and specifications and USB drives of the same information and details are available for purchase at the Printing Company noted above. Purchase price must be obtained directly from the Printing Company.**
- **The purchases of additional USB drives of proposal documents in PDF format are available only to purchasers of at least one (1) full size plans and specifications. Purchase price must be obtained directly from the Printing Company.**
- **Addenda will be available from the Printing Company for purchase. Purchase price must be obtained directly from the Printing Company.**

Delivery pricing can be obtained from Lawton Reprographics.

The bidder or proposer is responsible for obtaining all Addenda prior to submitting a bid or proposal to the District.

A list of Plan Rooms and other entities that have documents available for viewing are as follows:

**DRAWINGS AND SPECIFICATIONS ARE AVAILABLE AT THE FOLLOWING:**

**Dallas/Fort Worth Minority Supplier Development Council**

Sha'Ron Richardson

[construction@dfwmsdc.com](mailto:construction@dfwmsdc.com)

214-630-0747  
8828 N. Stemmons Freeway, Ste. 550  
Dallas, TX 75247

**Regional Hispanic Contractors Association**

John H. Martinez

[john@regionalhca.org](mailto:john@regionalhca.org)

972-786-0909  
3918 North Hampton Rd.  
Dallas, TX 75212

**Regional Black Contractors Association of North Texas, Inc.**

John Proctor

[info@blackcontractors.org](mailto:info@blackcontractors.org)

214-565-8946  
2627 Martin Luther King Jr. Blvd,  
Dallas, TX 75215

**Fort Worth Hispanic Chamber of Commerce**

Gilbert Juarez

[gilbert@pic-printing.com](mailto:gilbert@pic-printing.com)

<https://www.fwhccplanroom.com/>

817-625-5411  
1327 N. Main Street  
Fort Worth, TX 76164

**Greater Dallas Hispanic Chamber of Commerce**

Gabriela Carvallo

[gabriela@gdhcc.com](mailto:gabriela@gdhcc.com)

214-521-6007  
1402 N. Corinth St., Ste 225  
Dallas, TX 75215

**Construction Connect**

Michael Stubbs

[Content@ConstructConnect.com](mailto:Content@ConstructConnect.com)

800-364-2059  
30 Technology Parkway South, Ste 100  
Norcross, GA 30092

**Dodge Data & Analytics formerly McGraw-Hill Construction Dodge**

[support@construction.com](mailto:support@construction.com)

877-784-9556  
4300 Beltway Place, Ste. 180  
Arlington, TX 76018

**Dallas Black Chamber of Commerce**

Tigist Solomon

[tsolomon@dbcc.org](mailto:tsolomon@dbcc.org)

214-702-6652  
2922 Martin Luther King Jr. Blvd., Building A, Ste. 104  
Dallas, TX 75215

**Fort Worth Metropolitan Black Chamber of Commerce**

Jeremiah Anderson

[janderson@fwmbcc.org](mailto:janderson@fwmbcc.org)

817-871-6558  
1150 South Fwy, Ste. 211  
Fort Worth, TX 76104

**Virtual Builders Exchange, LLC**

Heidi Shaffer

[heidi@virtualbx.com](mailto:heidi@virtualbx.com)

210-564-6900  
4047 Naco Perrin, Ste.100  
San Antonio, TX 78217

**SECTION 00 11 17 – INTENTION TO PROPOSE FORM**

---

Please return this Intention to Propose Form within **Five (5) Days** of receipt of this Request for Competitive Sealed Proposal Package. Doing so will enable us to keep a record of interest in this project. It is your responsibility to continue to monitor the District Website for any modifications or addenda issued prior to the submittal deadline. Email this form to:

ATTN: **Dallas ISD Procurement Services c/o Bond/Construction Services**  
Linus D. Wright Dallas ISD Administration Building  
9400 North Central Expressway, Suite 800  
Dallas, TX 75231  
E-mail: [ProcurementCS@dallasisd.org](mailto:ProcurementCS@dallasisd.org)

Subject: Dallas ISD Construction Services  
CSP 207837

Dear **Procurement Services**:

We hereby acknowledge receipt of the proposal documents for the above referenced COMPETITIVE SEALED PROPOSAL (CSP) Package, and confirm that:

(Check appropriate box)

We do intend to submit a proposal for this work. We understand that this proposal will be prepared by us at no cost or obligation to: SBLM Architects or Dallas ISD.

We do not intend to submit a proposal on this work. The reason(s) we decline to offer a proposal is as follows:

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Yours sincerely,

\_\_\_\_\_  
Name

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Firm

\_\_\_\_\_  
Title

\_\_\_\_\_  
Phone

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

\_\_\_\_\_  
Fax

\_\_\_\_\_  
Email Address

## SECTION 00 21 13 – INSTRUCTIONS TO PROPOSERS

---

### 1.01 GENERAL INFORMATION

#### 1.01.1. Scope

In accordance with the Texas Government Code Chapter 2269 the Dallas ISD is requesting Competitive Sealed Proposals (CSP) from general construction contractors. The following instructions by the Dallas Independent School District are intended to afford proposers an equal opportunity to participate in the proposal process.

#### 1.01.2. Discrepancies and Interpretations

Proposer must notify the Architect/Engineer during procurement, at least ten (10) business days prior to the scheduled Proposal opening date, with any questions arising out of the drawings or specifications or if discrepancies, ambiguities or omissions are found in the Proposal documents, or if further information or interpretation is desired.

Answers to inquiries will be provided in writing to all proposers in addenda form. All provisions and requirements of such addenda will supersede or modify affected portions of the Proposal documents. All addenda will be incorporated into and bound with the Contract Documents. No other explanation or interpretation will be considered binding.

#### 1.01.3. Submittal Procedures

Submit the Proposal in sealed packages of sufficient size to hold all of the copies of the Proposal documents. These should be packaged following the instructions in Specification Section 00 41 10 – Overall Proposal Packaging Checklist.

Provide a properly formatted label, using page one of the advertisement, on the exterior of the Proposal envelope or package providing the proposer's identification including due date and time.

If the Proposal is submitted by mail, place the sealed Proposal package in a mailing envelope addressed as required in this section. Delivery of the Proposal prior to the advertised time set for the Proposal opening is the responsibility of the proposer. Dallas ISD is not responsible for mail delivered from the post office.

#### 1.01.4. Preparation of Competitive Sealed Proposals

The Proposal must be based on conditions at the project site, the project Drawings, the project manual and any addenda issued.

All original Proposal Forms must be authoritatively executed and submitted on the Proposal forms furnished by Dallas ISD.

If the **Technical Proposal** form does not provide sufficient space to adequately respond to a question, the proposer should attach additional 8 1/2" X 11" white paper sheets as required, referencing the page and question numbers to which the response pertains.

A Proposal with omissions, alterations, conditions, or carrying riders or other qualifiers which modify the Proposal form may result in the proposal being deemed as non-responsive.

If the proposer chooses to issue a "No Response" (N/R) to a question on the Proposal, an explanation of this action is required. Failure to do so may be viewed by Dallas ISD as incomplete and may subject the entire Proposal to rejection.

Only one proposal shall be submitted by each proposer. If two or more Proposals are submitted, either in one envelope or in separate envelopes, such multiple Proposals will be deemed as non-responsive. The blank Proposal form bound in the Specification is for the proposer's information reference only.

## SECTION 00 21 13 – INSTRUCTIONS TO PROPOSERS

---

Facsimile or emailed proposals will not be accepted and modifications are not allowed. Any modifications not inside the proposal envelopes/packages will not be considered part of the Contractor's proposal.

The proposer will receive no compensation or reimbursement of expenses incurred in the preparation of this Proposal.

Dallas ISD reserves the right to reject any or all Proposals. Dallas ISD also reserves the right to waive errors and omissions in any proposal if it deems it in the best interest of Dallas ISD to do so.

### 1.01.5. Public Information and Notice of Confidentiality

Dallas ISD considers all Proposal information, documentation and supporting materials submitted in response to this Request for Competitive Sealed Proposal to be non-confidential and / or non-proprietary in nature, and therefore, shall be subject to the public disclosure under the Texas Public Information Act (*Texas Government Code*, Sec. 552.001, et seq.) after the award of the contract. Exceptions to this are listed in this Project Manual.

The Proposer must identify and designate those portions of their technical Proposal which contain trade secrets or other proprietary data. If the Proposal includes such data, the proposer shall:

Mark the cover sheet of the Technical Proposal with the following phrase: "This Proposal includes data that shall not be disclosed outside Dallas ISD, and the A/E design team and shall not be duplicated, used or disclosed in whole or in part for any purpose other than to evaluate this Proposal."

Mark each sheet and the specific data on that sheet that the proposer wishes to restrict with the following phrase: "Use or disclosure of this specifically marked data is subject to the restrictions regarding confidentiality cited on the cover sheet of this Proposal."

### 1.01.6. Proposal Guaranty Bond

A Proposal bond on Dallas ISD Proposal Guarantee Bond Form, from a Surety authorized to transact business in the State of Texas, in the amount of not less than ten percent (10%) of the greatest total amount of the proposed contract amount (Base Price plus all Allowances), payable without recourse to the order of the Dallas ISD Board of Trustees, must accompany the Proposal as a guarantee that, if awarded the Contract, the proposer will promptly enter into and execute the Contract and Performance and Payment Bonds on the forms provided.

The Proposal Guarantee Bond must be accompanied by a properly dated and executed Power of Attorney with a raised Surety seal on each document. Failure to do so will constitute an irregular Proposal which may be deemed as non-responsive. Use of a Surety company's bond form is not acceptable and may result in the Proposal being deemed as non-responsive.

Should the successful proposer fail to execute and return to Dallas ISD, the Contract and Bonds within ten (10) calendar days after the date of transmittal of the Contract Documents for execution, the Proposal Guaranty becomes the property of Dallas ISD.

No cashier's checks, official checks, or other items will be accepted. Only a Proposal Guaranty Bond as described in this paragraph for proposal security.

### Deadline for Signing Contract and DALLAS ISD's Rights if Delay

**The completion of this Project is crucial and must remain on a timely schedule. In order to keep the Project on a judicious schedule, the selected proposer must:**

- a. **Sign the Contract no later than ten (10) calendar days after the date of Board approval when the selected proposer has been notified that it is the successful proposer, and**

## SECTION 00 21 13 – INSTRUCTIONS TO PROPOSERS

---

- b. Provide the safety plan for the Project and all required bonds and insurance no later than five (5) business days after the successful proposer has signed the contract.**

**If the selected proposer fails to meet the district’s specified deadline of ten (10) calendar days, the Dallas ISD has the right to:**

- a. Award the contract to the next successive responsive proposer subject to the district’s ranking and evaluation.**

### **1.01.7. Insurance**

Original Certificates of Insurance, as well as copies of the original insurance policies and endorsements as required by the contract documents are due not later than 5 business days after execution of contract by the owner.

### **1.01.8. Ownership of the Competitive Sealed Proposal and Contractor’s Proprietary Information**

Submitted Proposals, documentation and supporting materials shall become the property of Dallas ISD.

### **1.01.9. Site Investigation**

It is the responsibility of each proposer to examine the project site, existing improvements, and adjacent property and be familiar with existing conditions, and the full scope of the work before submission of a Proposal. By submitting a proposal, the Proposer certifies his acceptance of this requirement.

After investigating the project site and comparing the Drawings and Project Manual with the existing conditions, the proposer should immediately notify the A/E of any conditions for which requirements are not clear; or about which there is any question regarding the extent of the Work involved.

Should the successful proposer fail to make the required investigations and should a question arise after award of contract as to the extent of the Work arising from existing conditions, the A/E will review the issues and make a recommendation to the Project Manager.

Requests for site visits by individual proposers after the formal Pre-Proposal Meeting for the purpose of evaluating and preparing a proposal, will not be accommodated. State law requires proper background checks and badging or accompaniment by District personnel for site visits. It is not practical for the District to provide such accompaniment for individual proposers outside the prescribed Pre-Proposal and Site Visit parameters. Therefore the only viable and appropriate opportunity for viewing the site prior to the proposal date is to attend the Pre-Proposal Meeting and Site Visits.

### **1.01.10. Evaluation and Contract Award Process**

Proposals will be opened publicly to identify the names of the proposer and their respective proposed contract amount (Base Price which includes all Allowances) beginning at 3:00pm Central time upon submittal of Part 2. Other contents of the Proposals will be afforded security sufficient to preclude disclosure of the contents prior to award.

The Proposal Evaluation Committee will evaluate the Proposals. The criteria for evaluation and selection of the successful proposer for this award will be based upon the factors listed in the Evaluation Criteria herein and in the Request for Competitive Sealed Proposal documents.

The Proposal Evaluation Committee consists of the following:

- Construction Services Staff (“CSS”)

## SECTION 00 21 13 – INSTRUCTIONS TO PROPOSERS

---

- M/WBE (“M/WBE”)  
DALLAS ISD M/WBE Program Manager
- Construction Proposal Evaluators (“CPE”)  
Five (5) Owner Representatives and or other in-house staff (as assigned)
- Safety Manager Consultant (“SM”)

After opening the Proposals, the Proposal Evaluation Committee will evaluate and rank each Proposal with respect to the published selection criteria. This ranking will be used to make an advisory recommendation to the Dallas ISD Board of Trustees and is subject to their approval. Per Texas Government Code Ch. 2269, Dallas ISD may negotiate a contract with the selected proposer offers for cost adjustment and other elements of the Proposal. Other than the data read at the Proposal opening, Dallas ISD will endeavor not to disclose any information derived from the Proposals submitted by competing firms in conducting such discussions. The selected Contractor will be required to sign the Dallas ISD Contract form once the district’s Board of Trustees grant the formal recommendation for award at the particular monthly publicly held Board meeting.

If Dallas ISD determines that it is unable to reach a satisfactory agreement with the first ranked proposer, Dallas ISD will formally and in writing, terminate discussions with that proposer. Dallas ISD will then proceed with negotiations with each successive proposer as they appear in the order of ranking until an agreement is reached, or until Dallas ISD has rejected all Proposals. After termination of discussions with any proposer, Owner will not resume discussions with that proposer.

Following execution of a contract agreement between Dallas ISD and the successful contractor(s), the proposers will be notified about the outcome of the selection process.

The award or rejection action regarding this Proposal is at the sole discretion of Dallas ISD. Dallas ISD makes no warranty regarding that a contract will be awarded to any proposer.

If a Contract is awarded, it will be awarded to the proposer offering the best value to Dallas ISD. Dallas ISD is not bound to accept the lowest priced Proposal, if that Proposal is judged and or determined not to be the best value for Dallas ISD.

### 1.02.1 RECEIPT OF PROPOSALS

See Specification Section 00 41 10 Overall Proposal Packaging Checklist - for packaging instructions and Section 00 11 13 Advertisement for CSP for proposal receipt instructions and details

### 1.03.1 ADDENDA, ALLOWANCES, ALTERNATES AND UNIT PRICES

**Addenda.** Contractors are required to acknowledge receipt of all addenda issued prior to the Proposal due date. Failure to acknowledge all addenda in the Proposal Form will result in the Proposal being deemed as non-responsive.

**Allowances.** Contractors are required to include the Allowances described in Section 01 21 00 in the Base Proposal. Refer to the General, Supplementary and Other Conditions of the Contract for Construction for other related details on allowances.

**Contingency Allowance.** All construction contracts shall contain an Owner Controlled Contingency Allowance (OCCA). The contingency allowance is to be used only for expenditures which do not require a change order. The contingency allowance may be used to pay for changes in the work including but not limited to those resulting from hidden or unforeseen conditions.

The contingency allowance may be used to pay claims. Use of the contingency allowance must be authorized in advance by the Owner’s Project Manager. Refer to Specification Section 00 41 11, for the contingency allowance. The contractor shall not be entitled to markups or profit related to use of the Owner Controlled Contingency Allowance.



## SECTION 00 21 13 – INSTRUCTIONS TO PROPOSERS

---

**Alternates.** Contractors are required to submit prices for the Alternates described in Section 01 23 00 to add work or to deduct work from the Base Proposal. Contractor shall be responsible for any changes in the Work affected by acceptance of Alternates. Refer to Drawings and Technical Specifications Sections for items of work affected by Alternates. Election of Alternates will be exercised at the option of the Owner. Contractor will include as part of each alternate, miscellaneous devices, accessory objects and similar items incidental to, or required for, a complete installation. The amount shown in Specification Section 00 41 12 for each alternate shall include all plant, labor, material, equipment, overhead, profit, insurance and other costs incidental to the performance under the alternate. Failure to provide this information as an alternate is unacceptable and may result in the Proposal being deemed as non-responsive.

**Unit Prices.** Contractors are required to submit unit prices for any items that are listed in Spec. Section 01 22 00. The amount shown in Specification Section 00 41 12 for each unit price listed task/item shall include all overhead, profit, insurance and other costs incidental to the performance of the listed task/item. Failure to provide the requested unit pricing may result in the Proposal being deemed as non-responsive.

### 1.04.1 EVALUATION CRITERIA

Evaluation for ranking of firms submitting proposals will be based on the criteria shown in the following table (the weighting of each item by the points shown indicate the relative importance of each item and shall be utilized in the ranking of Proposal). Carefully review the submittal requirements, as failure to submit a Proposal in the proper format and in proper number may cause that Proposal to be rejected. The selection shall follow the Texas Government Code Chapter 2269, Contracting and Delivery Procedures for Construction Projects. The firm that offers the best value to the district based on published selection criteria and on its ranking evaluation will be selected. The District shall first attempt to negotiate a contract with the selected firm. Should negotiations be unsuccessful, the firm will be notified in writing of the decision to end negotiations, and the District will proceed to the next firm in the order of selection ranking until a contract is reached or all proposals are rejected. Based upon the proposal material submitted, the following criteria will be used to evaluate firms.

## SECTION 00 21 13 – INSTRUCTIONS TO PROPOSERS

Criteria Number	Criteria Description	Category Value
<b>1</b>	<b>Purchase Price</b>	
1a	1 Proposal Price - This section will be scored according to published formula by Construction Services Procurement personnel and provided for all evaluators:	40 points
	<b>Category Total:</b>	<b>40 points</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Reputation of Vendors and of the Vendor's Goods or Services</b>	
2a	References – Designated evaluators will check references to score this section:	5 points
	<b>Category Total:</b>	<b>5 Points</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>The Quality of the Vendor's Goods or Service</b>	
3a	Safety Plan, and Insurance Rate Modifier (IRM):	5 points
3b	Proposed Project Team(s) and Management approach to proposed projects:	12 Points
	<b>Category Total:</b>	<b>17 Points</b>
<b>4</b>	<b>The Extent to which the Goods or Services Meet the District's Needs</b>	
4a	General Contractor's current/past K-12 new or renovation construction experience:	10 points
4b	Proposed Construction schedule and phasing plan:	5 points
	<b>Category Total:</b>	<b>15 points</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>The Vendor's Past Relationship with the District</b>	
5a	N/A	0 points
	<b>Category Total:</b>	<b>0 points</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>The impact on the Ability of the District to Comply with Laws and Rules Relating to Historically Underutilized Businesses (M/WBE)</b>	
6a	Proposer demonstrated a commitment to the district's M/WBE program by providing enhancements to the administration of the proposer's contracting process for the work to be done by M/WBE firms. Examples of this commitment may include any of the following: expedited payments, Mentor Protege Programs, early release of retainage, expanding the pool of diverse subcontractors to firms that have not done business with the district, etc.	3 Points
6b	Proposer submitted a list of two (2) M/WBE subcontractor references.	2 Points
6c	Proposer is a certified M/WBE OR Proposer submitted a Joint Venture Agreement with a certified M/WBE OR Proposer submitted a Prime Subcontractor Teaming Agreement with a certified M/WBE.	5 Points
6d	Proposer submitted a diverse list of certified M/WBE subcontractors, subconsultants or suppliers that meets or exceeds the districts M/WBE aspirational goal in meaningful and significant roles OR Proposer demonstrated outreach designed to meet the M/WBE project goals with a diverse M/WBE team of subcontractors, suppliers and subconsultants.	5 Points
6e	Proposer demonstrated a comprehensive framework and understanding of the district's M/WBE program by: providing a written and detailed M/WBE compliance plan, designating a high ranking individual who will be responsible for M/WBE contract compliance, monitoring and reporting, ensuring no unauthorized changes to M/WBE subcontractors, adhering to the M/WBE commitment and subcontractor payment terms, executing the M/WBE subcontracting schedule, complying with the districts M/WBE Program.	5 Points
	<b>Category Total:</b>	<b>20 Points</b>
<b>7</b>	<b>The Total Long-Term Cost to the District to Acquire the Vendor's Goods and Services</b>	
7a	Financial status of the vendor (as rated by Dun & Bradstreet):	3 Points
	<b>Category Total:</b>	<b>3 Points</b>
<b>8</b>	<b>Any other Relevant Factor Specifically Listed in the Procurement Document</b>	
8a	N/A	0 points
	<b>Category Total:</b>	<b>0 points</b>
	<b>Total</b>	<b>100 Points Maximum</b>

## SECTION 00 21 13 – INSTRUCTIONS TO PROPOSERS

### <sup>1</sup> Proposed Pricing Formula:

Maximum Score = Minimum Score = Zero (0)

Forty (40)

Notes: Low Bidder can only receive the full 40 points if at or under the advertised Construction Budget Estimate (A7)

Notes: Bids that are under budget will only lose 1 point per % from Low Bidder (Column G)

Notes: Bids that are over budget will be penalized 1 point per % from Low Bidder to the Budget & 2 points per % from the Budget

Notes: The low bidder is awarded points up to 20% over budget. If Low bid is 20% or more over Construction Budget Estimate (A7), no bidder shall receive any points for price.

NOTE: If all bidders are 20% or more over budget resulting no points being awarded, Dallas ISD shall use an alternative price evaluation formula to award points for the bids received. Low bidder will be awarded 5 points and each bidder will lose 1 point per percent from the low bid.

Formula =  $P10 - G10 * 100$  P = Max Points Allowed (40) G = % from Low Bid

#### **Step 1- Determine Low Bidder (Column C)**

Formula =  $=IF(Bid=\$E\$6,"Low Bidder",-)$

E6 = Low Bid

#### **Step 2- Calculate Bid Delta (\$) from Budget (Column D)**

Formula =  $=Bid - \$A\$7$

A7 = Construction Budget Estimate

#### **Step 3- Calculate Bid Delta (%) from Budget (Column E)**

Formula =  $=ROUND((Bid - \$A\$7)/\$A\$7,2)$

A7 = Construction Budget Estimate

#### **Step 4- Determine if Bid is Over or Under Budget (Column F)**

Formula =  $=IF(Bid <= \$A\$7, "Under Budget", "Over Budget")$

A7 = Construction Budget Estimate

#### **Step 5- Calculate Bid Delta (%) from Low Bid (Column G)**

Formula =  $=IF(C10="low bidder",0,ROUND(E10 - MIN(\$E\$10:\$E\$40),2))$

C10 = Low Bidder vs Not Low Bidder

#### **Step 6- Calculate Points Lost for Bids Under Budget. (Column H)**

Bid Proposals that are **UNDER** the Construction Budget Estimate provided will be scored with an escalator of 1. 1 Point Per Percent from low bid will be deducted from max points of 40.

Pricing Formula =  $=IF(C10="low bidder",0,IF(F10="under budget",ROUND((G10*100)-K10,0),IF(MIN(\$E\$10:\$E\$40)>0%,0,ROUND(-MIN(\$E\$10:\$E\$40)*100,0))))$

Under Budget

#### **Step 7- Calculate Points Lost for Bids Over Budget. (Column K)**

Bid Proposals that are **OVER** the Construction Budget Estimate provided will be scored with an escalator of 1 from the Low Bid to the Budget and an Escalator of 2 from the Budget to their bid. 1 Point Per Percent from the low bid will be deducted from low bid to budget & 2 points per percent from budget to their amount from max points of 40.

Pricing Formula =  $=IF(F10="under budget",0,IF(F10="OVER BUDGET",IF(C10="low bidder",ROUND((E10*100),0),ROUND((E10*100),0))))$

#### **Step 8- Add Multiplier to Points Lost for Bids Over Budget (Column M)**

Bid Proposals that are **OVER** the Construction Budget Estimate provided will be scored with an escalator of 1 from the Low Bid to the Budget & an Escalator of 2 from the Budget to their bid. 1 Point Per Percent from low bid will be deducted from low bid to budget & 2 points per percent from budget to their amount from max points of 40.

Pricing Formula =  $=IF(C10="low bidder",K10*2,IF(F10="under Budget",0,(E10*100)*2))$

#### **Step 9- Calculate Total Points Lost (Column N)**

Add Points Lost from Step 7 (Column J) + Points Lost from Step 8 (Column M)

Pricing Formula =  $=J10+M10$

#### **Step 10- Calculate Total Points Awarded (Column Q)**

Subtract Points Lost from Max Points of 40

Pricing Formula =  $=IF(C10="low bidder",K10*2,IF(F10="under Budget",0,(E10*100)*2))$

C10 = Low Bidder vs Not Low Bidder

## SECTION 00 31 00 - AVAILABLE PROJECT INFORMATION

---

### 1.01 PROJECT NAME/ADDRESS

CSP 207837, consisting of improvements to:

Org #	PROJECT NAME	PROJECT TYPE	ADDRESS
Org 054	Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy	Renovation	3838 Crown Shore Dr. Dallas, TX 75244

### 1.02 OWNER

Dallas Independent School District  
Construction Services  
Linus D. Wright Dallas ISD Administration Building  
9400 N. Central Expressway Suite 800  
Dallas, TX 75231

#### State Notification-

- A copy of the 10-day Abatement and/or Demolition notification submitted to the State, must be forwarded to the following departments within reasonable time frame:
- Dallas ISD Environmental-[DDANIELS@dallasisd.org](mailto:DDANIELS@dallasisd.org)
- Bond Safety Department- [almeza@dallasisd.org](mailto:almeza@dallasisd.org)

#### Guidelines for Facility Owner Section-

- 10-day Abatement and Demolition State Notification, the below information must be included on **the facility owner section:**
- Name: Dallas Independent School District- Construction Services
- Attention: Contract Manager
- Address: 9400 N US 75-Central EXPY, STE 800 Dallas, TX 75231

### 1.03 OWNER'S PROJECT MANAGER (PM)

**Zafar Syed** will be the Owner's Project Manager (PM) for the management of planning, design, permitting, construction, and post-construction for this CSP. All correspondence and communication during the contract finalization, construction and post-construction processes shall be directed to the Architect/Engineer firm (A/E) with copy to **Zafar Syed**. During construction, the PM shall have authority to act on behalf of Dallas ISD for Owner related direction.

#### **Zafar Syed, Project Manager**

Dallas Independent School District  
Construction Services  
Linus D. Wright Dallas ISD Administration Building  
9400 N. Central Expressway Suite 800  
Dallas, TX 75231  
Phone: **972-925-7376**  
E-mail: **C264@dallasisd.org**

### 1.04 ARCHITECT/ENGINEER FIRM (A/E)

**SBLM Architects** has been retained by Dallas ISD as the primary Architect/Engineer (A/E) for this bid package. All Drawings and Specifications have been prepared by the Architect/Engineer

**SECTION 00 31 00 - AVAILABLE PROJECT INFORMATION**

(A/E), including those dated **12/05/2024**. All correspondence and communication regarding these documents shall be directed to the Architect/Engineer (A/E) with a copy to Project Manager.

**SBLM Architects**  
**16910 Dallas Parkway, Suite 216,**  
**Dallas, TX 75248**  
 Main Contact: **Jeffrey Hill**  
 Phone: **469-554-7770**  
 Fax: **469-554-7775**  
 Email: **jhill@sblm.com**

**1.05 Summary of Work.** See related Section 01 10 00 Summary of Work

**1.06 Project Schedule.** The Contractor shall diligently prosecute and achieve Substantial Completion of the Work no later than as shown below.

<b>Org # -SCHOOL NAME and PROJECT TYPE</b>	<b>SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION</b>	<b>Final COMPLETION</b>
Org 054 – Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy – Renovation	NTP + 365 Days	60 days after Substantial

A Notice to Proceed (NTP) will be required before any work may commence. The NTP will be issued to the contractor when signed contracts, and any other required forms required, are returned to the Owner with valid bonds and insurance

A separate contract will be issued by Dallas ISD for each school. The Contractor will be required to provide Payment and Performance Bonds for each contract. Contractor shall be responsible for all permit costs including plan review fees.

**1.07 Estimated Construction Budget (including allowances).** The estimated construction budget for each school and total for the package is shown in the table below. The Owner reserves the right to reject any and all proposals if they exceed the estimated construction budget amount. The total base proposal amount for the package, which includes the listed allowances, will be considered in the evaluation of the Contractor’s proposal.

For accounting purposes each school construction budget stands alone. In Section 00 41 11 Proposal Form Base – Base Bid (Part 1-A of the CSP), Proposers are required to enter a cost per school breakdown of their proposed Base Bid amount including allowances so that the cost per school can be verified against the per school budget during negotiations. These breakdowns are not for evaluation purposes and will not be read at the proposal opening.

<b>School Org #</b>	<b>School Name and Project Type</b>	<b>Construction Cost Limitation (CCL)</b>	<b>In Contract Owner Controlled Contingency (IC)</b>	<b>Total Other Owner Allowances</b>	<b>Estimated Construction Budget (CCL + IC + Allowances)</b>
Org 054	Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy – Renovation	\$8,029,514.00	\$409,251.00	\$155,500.00	\$8,594,265.00

- 1.01 **Student Safety is Priority-One.** The General Contractor (“the Contractor”) has the duty of care to perform the Work safely. The Dallas ISD Safety Program and School Operational Parameters are incorporated into the Project Contract Documents. **Under the AIA 101 and 201, the Contractor’s Superintendent is the person responsible for the daily safe execution of the Work.** The Contractor recognizes the critical need for the safety of all persons involved with the construction project, and most specifically the safety of students and the campus staff, and the need to conduct any and all construction operations in such a way as to NOT endanger the students and to NOT DISRUPT THE SCHOOL OPERATIONS.

The Contractor’s Superintendent will plan his work with the students’ safety as priority one. **On a daily basis, the Contractor will plan and execute his work (in coordination with the campus Principal, but under DISD Construction Services direction) with the utmost care to not endanger the students’ safety or the schools’ operations. To this end, for each active project, the Contractor’s safety manager and the Contractor’s job site specific safety person MUST attend each DISD monthly Safety Committee Meeting. The PMF PM will also attend.**

Daily Contractor Operations:

- Prior to the start of each work shift, daily jobsite specific Job Hazard Analysis (JHAs) will be provided by the Contractors’ subs and reviewed by the Contractor.
- Prior to the end of each work shift, the Contractor’s Superintendent will walk the site, and take the requisite action, to physically field verify that the campus has been made safe for student occupancy (the following morning), to protect the Work, materials and equipment from vandalism and theft. All gates and doors must be secured, and all warning signs must be posted.
- And at the end of the workday, the Contractor WILL audit the campus life safety systems and then call Central Control at 214.932.5627, to confirm to Central Control that the fire alarm system and security systems are back on normal operations.
- **The Contractor will not rely on DISD (“the Owner”) staff, school personnel, or PMF PM to perform his end of shift duties of making the campus safe for occupancy and auditing the life safety systems.**

**The Superintendent must have OSHA 30-Hour Training and must be proficient in enforcing the Dallas ISD Safety Program and School Operations Parameters.** Each Foreman, that will be working on site, must have the OSHA 10-Hour Training.

- 2.01 **School Operating Hours.** For Contractor construction purposes, access to school facilities shall be limited during the school’s normal working hours. During school operating hours, student occupancy and use is priority one. **And during normal hours, on a daily basis, the Contractor will plan and execute his work (in coordination with the campus Principal, but under DISD Construction Services direction) with the utmost care to not endanger the students’ safety or the schools’ operations.** To this end, during school operating hours, the Contractor will incorporate student safety as priority one in his daily task specific Job Hazard Analysis (“JHAs”) and there will be no digging during normal school operating hours.

- 3.01 **Normal hours** are defined as the time and days when DISD provides for custodial staff to be on site. The cost for DISD custodial staff, during normal working hours on normal working days, shall NOT be included in the Contractor’s proposal. During procurement, the Contractor is free to call the campus to inquire as to the campus normal hours of operation. The DISD School calendar is readily available on the Dallas ISD website with a listing of the campus working days.

- 4.01 **After Hours Access.** The campus custodian must be on site when the Contractor is working after hours. **The Contractor is responsible for all after-hours custodial costs.** This cost shall be included in the Contractors proposal price. After hours are defined as the time when DISD does not have custodial staff on site. The Contractor will incur custodial overtime costs, at the rate of \$30 per hour, for DISD custodial staff presence at the school site. The Contractor will not rely on DISD

(“the Owner”) staff or school to perform the Contractor’s housekeeping duties. Custodial staff will be on site only to allow the Contractor access to the campus. Custodial staff will not perform cleanup work for the Contractor.

**The Contractor is responsible for all after-hours custodian costs on days and times including but not limited to nights, weekends, DISD non-working days, and holidays.** Any request by the Contractor to enter areas of the school, after normal operating hours, shall be coordinated and approved in advance per the (5) step process outlined on the DISD ‘After Hours Access Request Form’.

The contractor shall utilize the After-Hours Access Request form and submit said form to DISD at least two (2) working days prior to the needed access date. Contractor shall submit copies of each fully executed form(s) to the Project Manager (“PMF”) via email each day and during each weekly progress meetings so that they may be attached to the meeting minutes. Upon request, the PMF PM will provide the After-Hours Access Request form to the Contractor in electronic format. **After execution of the Work, the Contractor must email all custodial forms to the PMF prior to leaving the site. Noncompliance will require the Contractor to daily hand deliver (the following morning) the end of the day executed OT form to the bond office.**

- 5.01 **Holidays, Spring, Summer, Fall, and Winter Break Operations.** The Contractor will explicitly show each holiday, spring, summer, fall, and winter break and each SPA on his schedule. The Contractor will plan the project’s construction operations to perform major portions of the Work after hours, during holidays, and at times when the campus is NOT occupied. The heating scope should be performed during the summer and the cooling scope should be performed during the heating season.

The DISD School Calendar is available on the Dallas ISD website with a listing of all the holidays and breaks. Any requirement by the Contractor to enter areas of the school during the evenings, non-working days, and holidays shall follow the (5) step process outlined on the DISD ‘After Hours Custodial Request Form’ and the area will be made safe for student occupancy (the following morning).

- 6.01 **Summer School Status.** The Contractor will plan the construction Work to perform major portions of the Work during the summer, after hours, during holidays, and at times when the campus is NOT occupied. The heating scope should be performed during the summer and the cooling scope should be performed during the heating season. The Dallas ISD School Calendar is available on the Dallas ISD website with a listing of all the holidays and breaks.

To the extent feasible, the Owner will plan NOT to have summer school at school sites affected by construction. Select campuses may have summer programs and or early school start dates. **Upon mobilization to the campus, it is the Contractor’s responsibility to coordinate with the campus Principal to phase the Work in such a way as to incorporate summer programs and or early campus start dates into the project Work schedule.**

**WHEN WORKERS AND DISD TEACHERS/STAFF ARE BOTH WORKING IN THE SAME AREA, THE CONTRACTOR’S SUPERINTENDENT (OR SAFETY MANAGER) WILL HAVE THE STAFF & STUDENTS SAFETY AS PRIORITY ONE. SPECIFICALLY, (2) WEEKS BEFORE THE STUDENTS RETURN FROM SUMMER BREAK, THE CONTRACTOR WILL TRANSITION FROM DAY TO NIGHT WORK. DURING THIS TWO-WEEK PERIOD, IF FOR ANY REASON THE CONTRACTOR HAS TO WORK DURING THE DAY THEN THE CONTRACTOR’S SUPERINTENDENT (OR SAFETY MANAGER) WILL WALK, MONITOR, AND COMMAND AND CONTROL HIS WORKFORCE UNDER THE EXPLICIT SCOPE OF MONITORING TO KEEPING THE STAFF/STUDENTS SAFE.**

- 7.01 **State Testing Dates.** The Contractor will NOT be allowed to perform construction activities during critical achievement test periods. After hours work will NOT be allowed on testing days. During state testing periods, the Contractor’s Superintendent will be required be on site prevent his workers from being on site during testing periods. The campus State testing dates are campus specific. **Upon mobilization to the campus, it is the Contractor’s responsibility to coordinate**

**with the campus Principal to inform himself of the requisite state testing days and to explicitly include said campus testing dates into the project Work schedule.**

For each calendar year, Contractor shall allow for a minimum of 11 testing days for Elementary Schools, 18 testing days for Middle Schools and 23 testing days for High Schools. Actual testing days and dates may vary for each school and must be confirmed with the respective school Principal.

The System-wide Testing Schedule may be available under the School Calendar on the Dallas ISD website. The Contractor should consult this calendar to determine the number of testing days that will take place during the duration of the Project and the Contractor shall include those days in his proposal.

- 8.01 **The Contractor Will Not Disrupt the Campus Utilities, Critical Systems, or Critical Areas of Operation.** The Contractor has the duty of care to perform the Work safely and in a manner to NOT impact the campus Critical systems and to not disrupt school operations. The campus critical systems and areas of operation are areas/systems that are required for campus occupancy. **The campus critical systems include but are not limited to the campus air conditioning systems, the campus utilities (water, sewer, electrical, etc.), the campus life safety systems, the internet, the MDF/IDF rooms, and critical areas such as the kitchen and the campus admin areas.** Any renovation work that would require a shutdown of a critical system or impact an area of operation MUST be accomplished during after hours, weekends, non-working days, holidays, and other times when the school is not in operation. All critical system and areas of operation shutdown SPAs must be shown on the project schedule and planned for in advance so that the campus is ready for student occupancy. To this end, the Contractor must provide DISD with a written Critical System Safe Plan of Action (“Critical System SPA”) notification no less than 10 calendar days in advance.

A shutdown of a critical system requires written Owner approval. **The Contractor will not impact a critical system or a critical area of operation without explicit written approval from the Owner.** To this end, the Contractor MUST provide a written Critical Systems and Areas of Operation Safe Plan of Action (“Critical System SPA”) and MUST decide for temporary systems or services that are acceptable to the Owner. The Contractor must provide temporary power for the campus life safety systems. During an electrical power shutdown, the life safety and campus security systems must remain operational under temporary power. And during power shutdowns the campus food must be refrigerated under temporary power to prevent spoilage.

- 9.01 **10-Day Notice of Power Shutdown.** The Contractor has the duty of care to perform the Work safely and in a manner to NOT damage the Owner’s equipment. **To this end, the Contractor must provide the Owner with a written proposed Power Shutdown Safe Plan of Action (“Power Shutdown SPA”) no less than 10 calendar days in advance of the shutdown.** The COMPLETE proposed SPA will be transmitted via email to both the Project Management Firm PM (PMF) and the DISD Safety Manager. After review by the Owner’s Safety Manager (with 10 calendar days in advance notice), the PMF PM will transmit said Power Shutdown SPA to DISD’s Contract Manager, DISD Central Maintenance Office, the A/E team, and the campus custodial staff. All utilities shutdowns must be shown on the project schedule.

During electrical power shutdowns, the life safety and campus security systems must remain operational. The Contractor must provide temporary power for the campus life safety systems. And during power shutdowns the campus food must be refrigerated under temporary power to prevent spoilage.

- 10.01 **Worker Identity Badges.** The Contractor must provide each construction workers with a DISD approved third party issued identification badge, that shall be worn, visibly at all times while the worker is present on the campus construction site. **All workers must undergo a background check via Dallas ISD’s approved third party vendor. After badging, prior to being allowed on site, each worker must attend a 2-hour DISD Safety Orientation. The Contractor is responsible for all badging and safety orientation costs.**



- 11.01 **Construction Fencing, Parking and Staging Areas.** Because the Work is a Phased project, the Contractor SHALL include the cost of all hard barriers and signage in his bid. The Contractor SHALL include the cost of covered walkways in his bid. The Contractor SHALL provide hard barriers and signage at his own cost. No CAEAs or additional funds will be provided to the Contractor for fencing, signage, parking, relocation of the jobsite trailer and or relocation of the staging areas.

Six-foot fencing and privacy cloth SHALL be provided to enclose the Contractor's laydown areas and job site trailer. Contractor site activities, storage offices, and fabrication shall be limited to the areas enclosed by construction fences. Contractor parking SHALL be limited to the area enclosed by the construction fence or other Owner approved areas adjacent to school property. The Contractor SHALL include the cost of offsite parking for his workers in his bid.

**Because the Work is a Phased project, the Contractor shall include the cost of all required hard barriers and signage in his bid.** The Contractor will incorporate all costs associated with deenergizing and or relocating hard barriers, electrical exit signs, etc. for each phase of the phased Work. The Contractor must coordinate all temporary barriers with the Fire Marshall. As the Contractor shuts down a part of the school, the Contractor SHALL erect, at his own cost, a floor to ceiling barricade to completely separate his work area from the campus occupants. The barrier shall be made of 3/4" plywood, it shall extend from floor to ceiling, wall to wall, shall have a door that can be locked, and shall be painted on the Owner's side. This barrier shall remain in place until the Work is completely finished. Safety warning signage shall be displayed near the temporary barrier. Temporary construction barriers and safety signage must be provided at tie-ins from Additions to existing structures.

- 12.01 **Fire Alarm System Maintenance, Operation, Removal and Certification.** Life Safety Systems are critical systems for occupancy and may only be disabled under a SPA and WRITTEN Owner approval. The Contractor shall be responsible for all costs and coordination of any disconnection, removal, shunting, reconnection, testing, and re-certification of the fire alarm and security systems as required to accomplish the Work. The Contractor is responsible for maintaining the existing fire alarm system, security system, and life safety systems operational throughout construction duration. If the Contractor requires the temporary or permanent relocation of fire alarm devices in order to complete the Work, then Contractor shall be responsible for notifying the PMF Project Manager and utilizing DISD's Vendor (if the system is under warranty) to disconnect, remove, secure, protect, reinstall, re-test and re-certify said equipment or system. If no vendor is indicated (or it is not under warranty), then the Contractor may select a qualified fire alarm vendor of his choosing. The Contractor is responsible for all costs and coordination of any disconnection, removal, shunting, reconnection, testing, and re-certification of the fire alarm system required to accomplish the Work and to receive the requisite green tag or certificates from the applicable Fire Department.

**Anytime an existing fire alarm system or security system is disabled, prior to leaving the site for the day, the Contractor must contact Dallas ISD's Safety and Security Central Control at 214.932.5627.** The Contractor will be required to provide his name, company, cell phone number, the reason for placing the system in trouble and how long the system will be disabled. The fire alarm and or the security system will not be left disabled overnight. **At the end of the workday, the Contractor must audit the campus life safety systems and call Central Control at 214.932.5627, to confirm that he has place the fire alarm system and security systems back on normal operations.** The Contractor will not rely on DISD ("the Owner") staff or school security personnel to perform this duty.

Contractor shall comply with the following time restrictions, when scheduling Fire Alarm inspections, and placing the life safety systems on TEST, **that require contact with DISD Central Control.** The Contractor will be responsible for any and all costs associated with said inspections (including but not limited to scheduling the Fire Marshal, City or any other personnel needed for this inspection).

- 7:00 AM - 9:00 AM (Arrival): Fire Inspections can occur before 7:00 AM or after 9:00 AM
- 2:30 PM - 4:00 PM (Dismissal): Fire Inspections can occur before 2:30 PM or after 4:00 PM

- 13.01 **Technology/Communications.** The Contractor has the duty of care to perform the Work in a manner to NOT damage the Owner's equipment. To this end, the Contractor must provide DISD with a written Power Shutdown Safe Plan of Action ("Power Shutdown SPA") notification of power or other utility shutdown no less than 10 calendar days in advance of the shutdown.

Contractor is responsible for any damages or changes to the existing technology/communication system throughout the duration of the construction and must make any appropriate repairs. If the Contractor requires the temporary or permanent relocation of technology in order to complete his work, then the Contractor is responsible for notifying Dallas ISD and completing all disconnections, removals, temporary facilities, security, protection, re-installation, re-testing and re-certification, etc. to maintain the system. The original warranty will need to be maintained / restored. Contractor is responsible for all costs and coordination.

- 14.01 **Water and Electrical Utilities.** On new construction projects, the Contractor shall provide and pay for all temporary and permanent utility services necessary for the execution and completion of the Work. On new construction projects, where new utility services are being installed, the Contractor shall establish temporary utility accounts and pay for said temporary utility costs for the duration of the project (until Substantial Completion). Utility costs paid by the Contractor after Substantial Completion shall be reimbursed by the District.

On renovation projects, the contractor is allowed to use temporary power and water from the existing school for the Work inside the building.

- 15.01 **Off-Limit School Areas.** The Contractor shall provide for hard barriers between his work and the campus occupants. When working in the existing building, the Contractor shall not use the school's cafeteria, telephones, restrooms, vending machines, staff parking lots or any other school facility. The Contractor shall include in his bid, the cost for temporary worker restrooms and the costs for offsite parking.

- 16.01 **No Overhead Lifting and No Trenching During Normal School Hours.** The Contractor shall NOT perform overhead lifting activities over areas occupied by students, school personnel, or visitors. The Contractor recognizes the critical need for the safety of all persons involved with the construction project, most specifically the students and the campus staff, and the need to conduct any and all construction operations in such a way as to NOT endanger the students and to NOT DISRUPT THE SCHOOL OPERATIONS. **Any Work that would require lifting over an occupied area or excavating MUST be accomplished during after hours, weekends, non-working days, holidays, and other times when the school is NOT in operation.** Roofing kettle operations will not be allowed to commence while the campus is occupied.

**The Contractor shall NOT perform any trenching or excavating activities during regular school hours.** Prior to digging, the Contractor shall perform a GPR and overlay the utilities finding over the Work areas. One week prior to any planned excavation or trenching, the Contractor shall conduct a Pre-Dig meeting (on site) with all the subs involved. Agenda will include a discussion about the GPR findings, the scope and review of the existing underground utilities as it relates to the planned trenching / excavation. At the pre-dig meeting, Contractor shall present a contingency plan if any utility is struck during execution of such work. The GPR findings overlay will be shared with all subcontractors and will be posted for worker ready reference at the jobsite trailer.

**All utilities must first be hand dug, to field verify the depth and location of said line. Only after field verifying the depth and location, may the Contractor use mechanical equipment to excavate.**

- 17.01 **Delivery of Materials and Equipment.** The Contractor shall issue a directive to all of his subcontractors that deliveries for this project shall be made to the Contractor and not to the campus office or to DISD personnel. It will be the Contractor's responsibility to replace, at his own cost, equipment or deliveries that are lost because of noncompliance with said delivery requirements.

## SECTION 00 31 18 – SCHOOL OPERATIONS PARAMETERS STATEMENT

---

- The Contractor will also direct his subcontractors to NOT make deliveries during student arrival, student departure and on student testing days.
- 18.01 **Owner’s Right to Salvaged Items.** Dallas ISD reserves the right to salvage any and all materials. The Contractor shall notify the Owner at least 4 weeks prior to the start of demolition (in each area where demolition will be performed). During said 4 weeks, the Owner may furnish a list of items to be salvaged, labeled, logged, and delivered to a place of DISD’s choosing. Upon request, the Contractor will provide a receptacle acceptable to DISD for said salvageable items.
- 19.01 **Equipment Access.** During installation of new chilled water, hot water lines, new VAVs, AHUs, RTUs, Boilers, etc. the Contractor will install the new work in a way where he provides the requisite equipment access at each service side panel in accordance with the manufacturer’s recommendation. The Contractor will account for insulation thickness, all existing and new above ceiling MEP and will coordinate his work prior to installation of new equipment. Please refer to the Contract Documents for specific details and preinstall meetings.
- 20.01 **Removal of Fixed Furnishings, Fixtures or Equipment.** The Contractor is responsible for the cost of removal, cataloguing, protection and the re-installation of fixed furnishings, fixtures or equipment required by the Contractor for the execution of his Work. The Contractor will include in his base bid, the costs to relocate and protect from damage said furniture, equipment, and property within any given room.
- 21.01 **Moveable Furnishings or Equipment.** This is a phased project. The Contractor will be responsible for any relocation of furniture or school property within any given room as necessary to perform the Work. The Contractor will include in his base bid, the costs to relocate and protect from damage said furniture, equipment, and property within any given room. The Contractor must obtain written approval to relocate furnishings or equipment within the room from the Owner via the PMF PM.
- 22.01 **I.T. Equipment and Safety/Security Equipment.** The Contractor SHALL coordinate a preinstallation meeting between DISD IT, the Contractor and the PMF PM. The Owner will be responsible for moving I.T. equipment and chemicals from science labs, when necessary. A pre-move meeting will be held at least five (5) days prior to any move requiring the Owner’s involvement. If required, to accommodate significant demolition and construction activities, DISD will provide and the PMF will manage a moving services vendor to relocate movable furnishings and equipment out of each phased classroom area and into temporary facilities. The Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating the phasing of the Work with the Owner’s moving vendor. Contractor will be responsible for the protection of any furnishing or equipment remaining in the Work areas.
- 23.01 **Tobacco and Alcohol Products Prohibited.** Use of all tobacco, alcohol and illegal uncontrolled substances is prohibited on Dallas ISD property. The Contractor will take daily action to enforce compliance.
- 24.01 **The Contractor Will Not Interact with Students/Campus Staff.** This is a phased project. The Contractor will install hard barriers between his Work and the campus occupants. As the Work progresses, the Contractor will move or relocate the hard barriers are required to prevent worker/student/staff interaction. The Contractor shall issue daily instructions to all of his subcontractors to refrain from interactions with students and campus staff.
- 25.01 **The Contractor Will Not Use Existing School Facilities.** Construction crews MUST stay away from all areas existing school facilities that are not within the limit of the designated work area. When working in the existing building, the Contractor shall not use the school’s cafeteria, telephones, restrooms, vending machines, staff parking lots or any other school facility. The Contractor shall include in his bid, the cost for temporary worker restrooms and the costs for offsite parking. The Contractor shall issue instructions to all of his subcontractors to avoid interactions with students and campus staff. The Contractor will not rely on DISD (“the Owner”) staff or school security personnel to perform his duties.

26.01 **Pressurized Testing.** Repressurizing of an existing system will be accomplished gradually and methodically and in a way that it does not damage the existing infrastructure. The Contractor has the duty of care to perform the Work safely and in a manner to NOT impact the campus Critical systems. Pressurized testing, on MEP systems, shall be done after hours, weekends, non-working days, holidays, and other times when the school is not in operation by Dallas ISD that occupied areas are not impacted, directly or indirectly, due to the testing.

27.01 **No Roofing Work Activities Allowed Over Occupied Areas.** On a daily basis, the Contractor will plan and execute his work with the utmost care to not endanger the students' safety or the campus operations. Activities that may cause a hazard to the below occupants is restricted. To this end, prior to the start of each work shift, daily jobsite specific Job Hazard Analysis (JHAs) will incorporate this requirement. NO roofing work or hot work is allowed, regardless of the extent, when the campus is occupied. Specifically, roof work not allowed while the campus is occupied includes, but is not limited to roof coring, roof drilling, installation of roofing electrical and plumbing pipes, no installation of roof blocking, no installation of gas lines or equipment curbs, no installation of flashing, no roof demolition activities, no placing materials on the roof, and no maintenance or warranty work that would require changing of a piece of equipment.

Minimal inspections and maintenance activity are allowed. For example, activities that would require a workman to access the roof and make minor adjustments or to change a small blower. Said activity must be coordinate in advance.

28.01 **Demolition Activities Will Be Conducted With Student Safety As Priority One.** On a daily basis, the Contractor will plan and execute his demolition work with the utmost care to not endanger the students' safety or the campus operations. Prior to the start of each work shift, daily jobsite specific Job Hazard Analysis (JHAs) will be provided, and the Asbestos report will be reviewed so as to prevent an asbestos release. And during abatement demolition and containment, the MEP chilled water lines, electrical lines, low voltage, fire suppression lines, etc. will be temporarily supported by the abatement contractor. This cost will be part of the contractor's base scope and will be included in his bid.

29.01 **Phased Project With Student Safety As Priority One.** On a daily basis, the Contractor will plan and execute his work with the utmost care to not endanger the students' safety or the campus operations. Prior to the start of each work shift, daily jobsite specific Job Hazard Analysis (JHAs) will be provided.

Since the school buildings will be in use during construction, the Work shall be conducted in phases as proposed in the Contract Documents phasing drawings. **Phasing proposed by the Contractor during procurement will be deemed proposed and not as accepted.** After the Notice to Proceed ("NTP") is issued to the Contractor, the Contractor's proposed phasing will be reviewed by the PMF Project Manager. The PMF PM will make a recommendation for DISD Contract Manager acceptance or rejection. **If proposed phasing plan is rejected by the PMF PM or DISD Contract Manager, then the phasing plan in the Contract Documents stands.**

**Because the Work is a Phased project, the Contractor will include the cost of all required hard barriers and signage in his bid.** The Contractor will incorporate all costs associated with demoing and or relocating hard barriers, electrical exit signs, etc. for the phased Work. The Contractor must coordinate all temporary barriers with the Fire Marshall. As the Contractor closes down a part of the school, the Contractor SHALL erect (at his own cost) a floor to ceiling barricade to completely separate his work areas from the campus occupants. Said barrier shall be made of 3/4" plywood, shall extend from floor to ceiling, shall be installed from wall to wall, shall have a door that can be locked, and shall be painted on the Owner's side. Hard barrier will remain in place and be relocated as work progresses until the Work is completely finished. The door will be kept secured to prevent students from entering construction areas.

30.01 **Project Schedule.** The Contractor will plan and execute his work with the utmost care to not endanger the students' safety or the campus operations. The Contractor will explicitly show each holiday, spring, summer, fall, winter break and each SPA on his schedule. The Contractor will plan

the construction Work to perform major work activities after hours, during holidays, and at times when the campus is NOT occupied.

Even though DISD does not operate its HVAC systems as true 4 pipe system, most DISD campuses have a 4-pipe system. Hence, the cooling scope should be performed during the heating season and the heating scope should be performed during the summer. These activities must be planned in advance and shown on the project schedule. The cooling portion of the work that is performed during the summer break must be fully operational by the time the teachers return from their summer break. The heating work that is performed during the winter holidays must be fully operational by the time the students return.

The Project Schedule must show that during the summer break, 2 weeks prior to students' arrival, the contractor will shift to working nights, weekends, DISD non-working days, and holidays. 2 weeks prior to students arrival, the teachers will occupy the campus during the day to prepare their classrooms for student use.

The Contractor must plan in advance and show on the project schedule all Dallas ISD Safety Manual high risk SPAs including but not limited to Pre Crane, Pre-Dig, Pre-Crawlspace, Pre-Dig, and Pre-Utility SPAs.

**31.01 Weekly Owner, Architect, Contractor ("OAC Meetings").** The Contractor's Project Manager and Superintendent MUST attend all weekly OACs. Missing more than 2 OACs will be grounds for replacing the Contractor's Project Manager and or Superintendent.

On a weekly basis the Contractor will organize and host an Owner, Architect, and Contractor ("OAC") progress meeting. At said meeting the Contractor will provide all attendees a hard copy of the project schedule, a copy of the 3 week look ahead, the RFI Log, the ASI Log, the PCO Log, the Submittals Log, and a hard copy of the Equipment Long Lead Items List. After the OAC meeting, the Owner, Architect, and the Contractor will walk the site to review installed work.

**32.01 DISD Monthly Safety Meeting.** For each active project (that has not reached Substantial Completion), the Contractor's Safety Manager and the Contractor's job site Superintendent MUST attend each DISD monthly Safety Committee Meeting. Noncompliance with said requirement will be grounds for replacing the Contractor's Safety Manager and or Contractor's Site Safety Person.

**33.01 Inclement Weather SPAs.** The Contractor will comply with DISD Inclement Weather SPA reporting requirements. The Contractor's Project Manager and Superintendent on a daily basis will monitor the weather to mitigate the damage to DISD property. The Contractor will take proactive action to prevent water intrusion. When HVAC or roofing work is in progress, the Contractor will temp in his Work to prevent water intrusion.

**34.01 Jobsite Trailer Postings.** On a weekly basis, the Contractor will plan and execute his work with the utmost care to not endanger the students' safety and to provide his subcontractors the most up to date project information available. To this end, the below items will be posted immediately adjacent to the job trailer entrance:

- The Project Team's Contact List w/Phone Numbers and Email.
- A Complete Copy of the Operations Parameters.
- A Colored Copy of The Most Recent GPR Report.
- A Site Map Showing the Location of each Utility Shutdown Valve.
- A Copy of the Project Baseline Schedule
- A Copy of the 3 Week Lookahead Schedule.
- A Copy of the Project's Phasing Plan.
- A hard copy of the last OAC Hand Outs.

**On a daily basis, the Contractor will plan and execute his work (in coordination with the campus Principal, but under DISD Construction Services direction) with the utmost care to not endanger the students' safety or the campus operations.**

Prior to the start of each work shift, daily jobsite specific Job Hazard Analysis (JHAs) will be provided. And, prior to the end of each work shift, the Contractor's Superintendent will walk the site, and take the requisite action, to make the campus safe for student occupancy (the following day), to protect the Work, materials and equipment from vandalism and theft. And at the end of the workday, the Contractor's Superintendent will check all the life safety systems and then call Central Control at 214.932.5627, to confirm that the fire alarm and security systems are operational. The Contractor will not rely on DISD ("the Owner") staff or school security personnel to perform his duties.

35.01 **Lessons Learned.** For each active project, the Contractor must incorporate the below lessons learned into the planning and execution of the Work.

- 1) This is a phased project. The roof, windows, floors, and ceiling demolition and abatement scope will be phased by wing. Demo of the entire campus roof, windows, floors, and ceiling demolition and abatement scope will NOT be allowed at once.
- 2) The Contractor's Superintendent will plan his work with the students' safety as priority one. If the work endangers campus operations, it must be performed after hours, on weekends, holidays or times when the campus is not occupied.
- 3) **During the Summer Break, the Contractor PM and Superintendent are not allowed to take vacation. Noncompliance with said requirement will be grounds for replacing the PM and or Superintendent.**
- 4) All long lead item submittals must be driven to conclusion within 90 days of the Notice to Proceed. The project submittals must be driven to conclusion within 120 days of the notice to proceed.
- 5) Immediately after mobilizing, the Contractor will audit all of the school's life safety systems (Fire Alarm and Security Panels) and the Contractor will provide DISD will a video of any deficiencies. It will be assumed that all the systems are in perfect condition if the Contractor does not provide said video within 30 days from mobilization. At this point the Contractor will be responsible for any and all costs to repair the life safety systems.
- 6) For new building additions and or new building construction work any utilities work that would require a shutdown of a critical system or impact an area of operation MUST be accomplished after hours, weekends, non-working days, holidays and other times when the school is not in operation. All utilities must first be hand dug, to field verify the depth and location of said line. Only after field verifying the depth and location, may the Contractor use mechanical equipment to excavate.
- 7) Jurisdictional inspections shall be coordinated with the campus to not impact campus operations. The Contractor is required to include the costs of all inspection whether during normal of after-hours in his bid.

**SECTION 00 31 18 – SCHOOL OPERATIONS PARAMETERS STATEMENT**

**REIMBURSABLE**

**Fund Code:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Dallas Independent School District  
Construction Services**

**After Hours-Work, Holidays and/or Holidays Authorization Form: General Contractor(s)**

**SECTION A. GENERAL INFORMATION**

Contract P.O.#: \_\_\_\_\_ TEA/ORG. #: \_\_\_\_\_ School Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Contractor Name: \_\_\_\_\_ Contractor Person In-Charge: \_\_\_\_\_

Scope: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Dallas ISD Operations Employee: \_\_\_\_\_ Biometric Code: \_\_\_\_\_

Cellular Number for Dallas ISD Operations Employee: \_\_\_\_\_

**SECTION B. PRE-WORK NOTIFICATION:**

Date of Scheduled Work: \_\_\_\_\_ Hours of Scheduled Work: \_\_\_\_\_

Time Scheduled From \_\_\_\_\_ To \_\_\_\_\_

Contractor Person-In-Charge Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Dallas ISD Program Administrator Approval: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

**SECTION C. POST-WORK CERTIFICATION:**

Date of Actual Work \_\_\_\_\_

Time Actually worked From \_\_\_\_\_ To \_\_\_\_\_ Biometric Clock Used – Check 'X' if Yes  
If Not Used – See Step 3 below

Hours of Actual Work \_\_\_\_\_

Contractor Person-In-Charge Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Dallas ISD Operations Employee Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

**PROCESS FOR PRE-WORK NOTIFICATION AND POST-WORK CERTIFICATION:**

Step 1. At least two (2) working days prior to scheduled access, Contractor shall fill out Sections A & B, sign Section B, and email the form to Program Management Firm who will obtain Dallas ISD Program Administrator Approval. Contractor will be provided name of the Operations employee by the Program Management Firm.

Step 2. Contractor and Operations employee from Dallas ISD will meet at main entry of building at the scheduled start time.

- Contractor must notify Program Management Firm within 24 hours or pre-arranged date if contractor is unable to work.
- In case of work being cancelled for some reason, Contractor shall fill out the actual hours in Section C as "0" and email the form to the Program Management Firm.

Step 3. Upon completion of the scheduled day(s)'s work, Contractor shall complete Section C on the same form; Contractor and the Operations employee shall sign Section C; and Contractor shall send the completed form, no later than one (1) business day after execution of work, (all sections completed and signed off) to Program Management Firm. Please use a cover sheet for this step, which shows your name and contact number.

- Section C – Contractor to verify with Operations employee if Biometric Clock was used. If not used, Operations employee must complete and provide District's Non-Exempt Attendance Report with an explanation why Biometric Clock was not used.

Step 4. Contractor shall submit copies of completed and fully executed form(s) for a given month, with the respective application for payment on a monthly basis.

Step 5. **Dallas ISD shall make payment to the Operations employee(s) based on the standard compensation procedures for Dallas ISD in accordance with the "Fair Labor Standards" Act. Final Payment to the Contractor will be reduced by the reimbursement amount.**

**Failure to follow all these steps listed above will result in:**

- Pre-Work Notification:** If the Contractor does not obtain the Dallas ISD Program Administrator approval at least two (2) working days prior to the requested scheduled access, overtime will not be worked for the day or days expected.
- Post-Work Notification:** After the work has been completed the signed off form must be submitted the next day. If the completed form is not submitted timely the District may consider the removal of the Contractor's Person-In-Charge from the project.
- Failure to comply with the District's requirements may have a negative impact on the Contractor's ability to be assigned future work for the District.

**Dallas Independent School District**  
**Bond Program**  
**Scheduled Utility Shutdown Authorization Form: General Contractor(s)**

**SECTION A. GENERAL INFORMATION:**  \*Permanent       Temporary

School Name and Org. #: \_\_\_\_\_

Bond Program Manager (PM) Name: \_\_\_\_\_

General Contractor (GC) Person In-Charge: \_\_\_\_\_

Sub-Contractor (SUB) Person In-Charge:      (Name) \_\_\_\_\_      (Contact No.) \_\_\_\_\_

**SECTION B. PRE-WORK NOTIFICATION:**

Utility System(s) to Be Shut down: \_\_\_\_\_

Utility Meter number \_\_\_\_\_

Description of Work Performed: \_\_\_\_\_

Describe Procedure for Shutdown: \_\_\_\_\_

Safety Measures/ Precautions for Shutdown: \_\_\_\_\_

Date/ Time **Requested** for Shutdown:      \_\_\_\_\_      \_\_\_\_\_      \_\_\_\_\_      \_\_\_\_\_  
Shutdown Date                  Shutdown Time                  Restart Date                  Restart Time

*It is requested that the noted building system(s) be allowed for "shutdown" by the General Contractor to allow for our tie-in of services for the Project as enumerated below. We note that five (5) days advance notice is required as a minimum. I hereby certify that the required work has been coordinated and scheduled to achieve completion within the requested time-period.*

SUB Person-In-Charge:      \_\_\_\_\_      (Sign) \_\_\_\_\_      (Date) \_\_\_\_\_

GC Person-In-Charge:      \_\_\_\_\_      (Sign) \_\_\_\_\_      (Date) \_\_\_\_\_

Bond Program Manager (PM) Approval:      \_\_\_\_\_      (Sign) \_\_\_\_\_      (Date) \_\_\_\_\_

DISD Project Manager Approval:      \_\_\_\_\_      (Sign) \_\_\_\_\_      (Date) \_\_\_\_\_

**SECTION C. POST-WORK CERTIFICATION:**

**Actual** Date/ Time for Shutdown:      \_\_\_\_\_      \_\_\_\_\_      \_\_\_\_\_      \_\_\_\_\_  
Shutdown Date                  Shutdown Time                  Restart Date                  Restart Time

GC Person-In-Charge Certification:      \_\_\_\_\_      (Sign) \_\_\_\_\_      (Date) \_\_\_\_\_

Bond Program Manager (PM) Certification:      \_\_\_\_\_      (Sign) \_\_\_\_\_      (Date) \_\_\_\_\_

DISD Project Manager Certification:      \_\_\_\_\_      (Sign) \_\_\_\_\_      (Date) \_\_\_\_\_  
(Sign)

DISD Sustainability Certification:      \_\_\_\_\_



**SECTION D. PROCESS FOR SCHEDULED UTILITY SHUTDOWN AUTHORIZATION**

- A. The General Contractor is to complete the *Utility Shutdown Request Form*, at least **5 working days** prior to the scheduled utility shutdown, and submit it to the respective Bond Program Manager for approval.
- B. The Bond Program Manager (PM) will review and approve submitted *Utility Shutdown Request Form* and forward to the respective Dallas ISD Project Manager for approval.
- C. The Dallas ISD Project Manager will review and approve form and return to the PM.
- D. PM forwards approved form to Director/Maintenance Solutions and notifies Deputy Chief Director, Emergency Operations and Bond Program Safety Manager.

**Note:** All scheduled shutdown requests will require a jobsite meeting with the Program Manager and the School staff 48 hours in advance to discuss the outage procedures and status of all District departments involved on the shutdown request.

**Note:** For electrical shutdowns (Scheduled/ involuntary), when required for building operations, the General contractor must supply a power generator to keep the telephones, data and alarms working at all times.

**\*Permanent shutdowns are facilities or specific meters that will not require power/ utility to be restored.**

## SECTION 00 41 10 – OVERALL PROPOSAL PACKAGING CHECKLIST

---

- 1.01 Proposers are to package all submittal information as follows. Documents should be bound in 3 ring binders with tabs for each section of the proposal form. Do not spiral or GBC bind the documents.
- 2.01 Both Parts of the Proposal response shall be labeled as follows:

**Proposal for CSP 207837  
Org 054 – Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy – Renovation**

**Due 1/28/2025  
Time Due: 2:00pm  
Part 1-A, 1-B, 1-C  
<<Name of Proposer>>**

**Please Note: Part 1-C Proposal Form- Alternates & Unit Pricing (Section Div 00 41 12) - Should the solicitation contain an opportunity for alternate pricing, please ensure that the Section Part 1-C Proposal Form – Alternates & Unit Pricing Section 00 41 12 is submitted in an individually sealed envelope labeled accordingly with the specified CSP number, CSP title and Part 1-C Proposal Form – Alternates & Unit Pricing. *Alternates Pricing will not be opened by the District unless the District engages in negotiations with the vendor submitting the alternate pricing package.***

**Due 1/29/2025  
Time Due: 3:00pm  
Part 2  
<<Name of Proposer>>**

**Proposals will be read at 3:00pm following the receipt of Part 2**

- 3.01 Part 1-A of the Proposal shall contain completed Specification Sections  
00 41 11 Proposal Form – Base Bid (with all addenda acknowledged)  
00 43 13 Proposal Guarantee Bond Form  
00 45 00 Dallas Independent School District Required Forms Package  
00 45 20 Certificate of Non-Discrimination  
00 45 22 Notification of Hazardous Materials Affidavit Form  
00 45 23 Family Conflict of Interest Questionnaire (CIQ)  
*Submit one (1) original of each Section for Part 1-A.*
- 4.01 Part 1-B of the Proposal shall contain completed Specification Section  
00 41 13 Technical Proposal Form  
*Submit one (1) original, and one (1) copy of each Section for Part 1-B and one (1) soft copy (electronic) via flash drive or USB of each Section for Part 1-B, Section 00 41 13 Technical Proposal Form section.*
- 5.01 Part 1-C of the Proposal shall contain completed Specification Sections  
00 41 12 Proposal Form – Alternates and Unit Pricing  
*Submit one (1) original of each Section for Part 1-C in a separate, sealed envelope marked according to the specifics noted in Section 2.01 on this page.*
- 6.01 Part 2 of the Proposal shall contain completed Specification Sections  
00 45 39 M/WBE Program Compliance Guidelines and Forms  
*Submit one (1) original, one (1) copy, and one (1) soft copy (electronic) in either CD Rom or flash drive of each Section for Part 2.*



## Materials Escalation Price Reconciliation Form

The intent of this document is to establish guidelines to reasonably reconcile **ONLY** the Project's materials cost escalation. No overhead, profit, or insurance costs are to be included. The Contractor has a duty to mitigate Materials Cost Escalation. Therefore, as a condition precedent to any cost adjustments, the Contractor must comply with establishing the Project Baseline Schedule as required under Division 1 of the Project's Contract Documents. All terms shall have the same meaning as defined in the executed AIA Agreement for this project.

**1. DELIVERY METHODS:**

- Competitively Sealed Proposal (CSP)
- Construction Manager at Risk (CMAR, CMaR, CM@Risk)

**2. PARTIES**

- DISD (Owner)
- Program Management Firm (PMF, Program Manager, PM)
- Architect or Engineer of Record (A/E)
- Contractor (GC)

**3. PROJECT**

- a. ORG# \_\_\_\_\_ PROJECT NAME : \_\_\_\_\_
- b. Notice to Proceed (NTP) Date: \_\_\_\_\_
- c. Date City Permits Ready for GC Pick Up: \_\_\_\_\_
- d. Date of Escalation of Materials Document Submission to Owner: \_\_\_\_\_

**4. PRICE IMPACTED MATERIALS:** It is understood that vendors providing materials to the Owner's Project may be experiencing industry wide economic fluctuations that affect the price, availability, delivery, and execution of the Project. The intent of this document is to reasonably reconcile **ONLY** the Project's materials cost escalation. This form will be used by the Owner to provide a good faith adjustment of market price impacted materials.

**5. PROJECT BASELINE:** Compliance with establishing the project baseline will be a condition precedent to requesting Owner approval of a materials cost escalation . The Contract Documents (Drawings, Specs, and Contract) establish the elements required to establish the project baseline. The Contractor has a duty to mitigate Materials Cost Escalation.

**6. PRICE INCREASE:** In the event of a Materials' Price INCREASE, the Contract Price shall be reasonably adjusted to reconcile the Materials' Price INCREASE.



## Materials Escalation Price Reconciliation Form

7. **PRICE DECREASE:** In the event of a Materials' Price DECREASE, the Contract Price shall be reasonably adjusted to reconcile the Material's Price DECREASE.
  
8. **LIMITATION ON CONTRACT PRICE ADJUSTMENT:** Regardless of Proposed Materials' Price Increases or Decreases, the Contract Price shall not be adjusted by more than \_\_\_\_\_ % percent of the original Contract Price or any other restrictions on cost increases found in State law or the terms of the contract between Owner and Contractor.
  
9. **NO ADJUSTMENT FOR MATERIALS QUANTITIES:** No adjustments will be made for changes in materials quantities. The intent of this document is to reconcile ONLY materials costs.
  
10. **SCHEDULE OF VALUES & PAYMENT:** Payment for adjustments will be in accordance with the executed AIA Agreement, change orders, or CAEAs for this project. Similar to other Owner Cost/Credits, in accordance with Division 1 of the Specifications, the cost or the credit for materials reconciliation will be shown as a line item in the Project's Pay Application's Schedule of Values.

---

**OWNER (DISD)**

---

**CONTRACTOR (GC)**

---

**ARCHITECT (A/E)**



Materials Escalation Price Reconciliation Form

**EXHIBIT "MATERIALS ESCALATION" – BASELINE PRICE Matrix**

The intent of this document is to establish a Baseline so that the materials escalation costs may be subsequently reconciled. To establish an objective cost baseline, the Contractor must provide the Owner a date stamped copy of the actual materials costs proposal from the materials vendor/manufacturer.

1. Price Impacted Material: \_\_\_\_\_

Date of Price: \_\_\_\_\_

Baseline Price: \_\_\_\_\_ (Unit)

Pricing Method: \_\_\_\_\_

Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

2. Price Impacted Material: \_\_\_\_\_

Baseline Price: \_\_\_\_\_ (Unit)

Pricing Method: \_\_\_\_\_

Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

3. Price Impacted Material: \_\_\_\_\_

Baseline Price: \_\_\_\_\_ (Unit)

Pricing Method: \_\_\_\_\_

Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

4. Price Impacted Material: \_\_\_\_\_

Baseline Price: \_\_\_\_\_ (Unit)

Pricing Method: \_\_\_\_\_

Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

5. Price Impacted Material: \_\_\_\_\_

Baseline Price: \_\_\_\_\_ (Unit)

Pricing Method: \_\_\_\_\_

Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:



## Materials Escalation Price Reconciliation Form

6. Price Impacted Material: \_\_\_\_\_

Baseline Price: \_\_\_\_\_ (Unit)

Pricing Method: \_\_\_\_\_

Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

7. Price Impacted Material: \_\_\_\_\_

Baseline Price: \_\_\_\_\_ (Unit)

Pricing Method: \_\_\_\_\_

Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

8. Price Impacted Material: \_\_\_\_\_

Baseline Price: \_\_\_\_\_ (Unit)

Pricing Method: \_\_\_\_\_

Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

9. Price Impacted Material: \_\_\_\_\_

Baseline Price: \_\_\_\_\_ (Unit)

Pricing Method: \_\_\_\_\_

Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

10. Price Impacted Material: \_\_\_\_\_

Baseline Price: \_\_\_\_\_ (Unit)

Pricing Method: \_\_\_\_\_

Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

11. Price Impacted Material: \_\_\_\_\_

Baseline Price: \_\_\_\_\_ (Unit)

Pricing Method: \_\_\_\_\_

Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:



## Materials Escalation Price Reconciliation Form

12. Price Impacted Material: \_\_\_\_\_

Baseline Price: \_\_\_\_\_ (Unit)

Pricing Method: \_\_\_\_\_

Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

13. Price Impacted Material: \_\_\_\_\_

Baseline Price: \_\_\_\_\_ (Unit)

Pricing Method: \_\_\_\_\_

Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

14. Price Impacted Material: \_\_\_\_\_

Baseline Price: \_\_\_\_\_ (Unit)

Pricing Method: \_\_\_\_\_

Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

15. Price Impacted Material: \_\_\_\_\_

Baseline Price: \_\_\_\_\_ (Unit)

Pricing Method: \_\_\_\_\_

Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

16. Price Impacted Material: \_\_\_\_\_

Baseline Price: \_\_\_\_\_ (Unit)

Pricing Method: \_\_\_\_\_

Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:

17. Price Impacted Material: \_\_\_\_\_

Baseline Price: \_\_\_\_\_ (Unit)

Pricing Method: \_\_\_\_\_

Provide Copy of Manufacturer Docs:



Materials Escalation Price Reconciliation Form

1454765-v1/12396-124000



**SECTION 00 41 11 – PROPOSAL FORM – BASE PROPOSAL**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

**COMPETITIVE SEALED PROPOSAL (Part 1A)  
to  
DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
FOR THE FOLLOWING WORK:**

**PART 1. General Information**

Competitive Sealed Proposal (CSP) 207837, consisting of improvements to:

<b>ORG #</b>	<b>PROJECT NAME</b>	<b>PROJECT TYPE</b>	<b>ADDRESS</b>
Org 054	Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy	Renovation	3838 Crown Shore Dr. Dallas, TX 75244

**PART 2. Proposal Form**

**2.01 Agreement of Proposal Submittal**

The undersigned, as a designated representative of the proposer, declares such firm is the only entity, as principal, with any interest in this Proposal, and the Proposal is made without collusion with any other entity.

The proposer affirms that the form of Contract, Instructions for Competitive Sealed Proposals, Supplemental Instructions for Competitive Sealed Proposal, Addenda, selection criteria, weighting/scoring system, estimated budget, Specifications, and the Drawings pertaining to this Proposal have been examined and the firm has also examined the locations, conditions, and classes of materials for the proposed Work and agrees to provide all necessary labor, materials, plant and equipment, machinery, tools, apparatus and construction means to accomplish the Work described in the Contract Documents in the manner prescribed.

The proposer agrees the quantities of Work to be performed and materials to be furnished may be increased or decreased as may be considered necessary, in the sole opinion of Dallas ISD's designated representative, to complete the Work as planned and contemplated. Adjustment for changes in Work will be in accordance with the General Conditions.

Proposal amounts must be shown in both words and figures. In case of discrepancy, the amount shown in words will govern.

**2.02 Addenda**

The proposer acknowledges receipt and incorporation of the following addenda into this Proposal. Proposer is to fill in the Addenda # and date and initial in the box to show receipt.

**CSP 207837**

<b>Addendum No.</b>	<b>Addendum No.</b>	<b>Addendum No.</b>	<b>Addendum No.</b>

## SECTION 00 41 11 – PROPOSAL FORM – BASE PROPOSAL

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

### 2.03 Withdrawal of Proposals

A Proposal may be withdrawn only upon written request by the proposer or his duly authorized representative, provided such request is received by the Owner at the place designated for receipt of Proposals and prior to the time fixed for the opening of Proposals.

No Proposal may be withdrawn after the time fixed for the opening of Proposals for a period of 90 days.

### 2.04 Award of Contract

The proposer to whom the award of a Contract is made will be promptly notified following Board action. If a proposer, (a) withdraws his Proposal within 90 days after the date and time fixed for the opening of Proposals in the Advertisement for Proposals, or, (b) fails or refuses to execute the Agreement, or other required forms within ten (10) days after the same are presented to him for signature, or (c) fails or refuses to furnish properly executed Performance and Payment Bonds, and certification of required insurance upon the execution of the Agreement, the Owner may award the Work to another proposer or may re-solicit the contract. The Proposal Bond is forfeited if Proposal is withdrawn after the Proposal opening, or Contract Documents are not executed in accordance with the above requirements.

The Owner reserves the right to reject any or all Proposals and to waive any irregularities in any Proposal received. The Owner further reserves the right to limit the number of contracts awarded and/or to be performed concurrently to any one Contractor if such appears to be in the best interest of the District. Awards will be per published criteria and weights. Price is only 40% of the evaluation criteria, and awards may be made to other than the low dollar proposer.

### 2.05 Notice To Proceed (NTP) and Notice of Intent to Award (NIA)

The Contractor shall not commence the Work under this Contract until execution of the Notice to Proceed (NTP) duly signed by Dallas ISD's designated representative.

The Contractor shall acknowledge that a Notice of Intent to Award (NIA) may be issued at the Owner's discretion. The purpose of the NIA is to expedite pre-construction activities. Upon receipt of the duly signed NIA, the Contractor shall promptly proceed with the activities listed and authorized by the NIA.

### 2.06 Collusion, Litigation, Default, Competency

By completing and submitting a Proposal, the proposer agrees to comply with the requirements of the following paragraph. A proposer who subsequently does not agree to comply with these requirements may be disqualified. The responses to the items of the Contractor's Qualification Statement will be used in evaluation of the Proposals on the project.

Proposers may be disqualified, and their proposals not considered for any of the following specific reasons:

1. Reason for believing collusion exists among proposers.
2. Reasonable grounds for believing that any proposer is interested in more than one proposal for the work contemplated.
3. The proposer is involved in any litigation against the Board.
4. The proposer is in arrears on any existing contract with Dallas ISD or has defaulted on a previous contract with Dallas ISD.

**SECTION 00 41 11 – PROPOSAL FORM – BASE PROPOSAL**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

- 5. Lack of competency as revealed by the financial statement, experience and equipment questionnaires, or omission of required proposal submittals.
- 6. Uncompleted work which, in the judgment of the Board, will prevent or hinder the prompt completion of this Work, if awarded.
- 7. Inaccurate information or circumstances that establish reasonable grounds for belief that the proposer is not a “responsible proposer” include, but are not limited to the below examples:
  - a. Incomplete Bid Submittal – e.g., Missing Base Bid proposal number.
  - b. Incorrectly Calculated Total Base Bid - Proposal plus Owner’s Controlled Contingency **MUST** add up to Total Base Bid. Please double check to confirm compliance.

By entering into a contract with Dallas ISD, the proposer agrees that (1) Work on the project will begin upon receipt of the Notice to Proceed, (2) Contractor will participate as a team member in cooperation with the Architect/Engineer (A/E) and Owner, (3) The Work will not interfere with normal instructional and learning programs of the school, (4) The Contractor will assign a full time competent superintendent for each school in the CSP and that same superintendent(s) shall remain for the duration of the contract, contingent upon that person’s continued employment with the Contractor, (5)The Contractor will furnish and pay for the Bid, Performance, and Payment Bonds.

- Projects of \$25,000 and under: Bid bond is required
- Projects over \$25,000 and up to and including \$100,000: Bid and Payment Bond is required
- Projects over \$100,000: Bid, Performance and Payment Bonds are required

**2.07 Ultimate Corporate Ownership**

Is proposer a corporation? Check One, Yes \_\_\_\_ No \_\_\_\_

Proposer’s legal name and address of principal place of business:

---

---

Ultimate parent company or majority owner’s name and address of principal place of business:

---

---

**SECTION 00 41 11 – PROPOSAL FORM – BASE PROPOSAL**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

**2.08 Contractor’s Price (40 Points out of 100 Possible Points in the Selective Criteria)**

The Proposer’s Price is defined as the total amount, including Cost of the Work and allowances, for the performing or causing to be performed all Work including labor and materials, necessary to build, construct, erect and equip in accordance with the Contract Documents, Drawings, and Specifications.

Contractor agrees to base its price on the proposed completion schedule and the phasing plan presented in the contract documents. The Contractor may, at their option, propose a project duration that is of less duration and indicate this duration in the box below (See **Proposer’s Proposed Substantial Completion Date** box below). However, the duration proposed by the Contractor must be based upon the number of phases identified in the contract documents and must not be predicated upon the use of additional temporary swing space other than the swing space identified in the contract documents. Contract documents identify the number of existing classrooms or temporary portable buildings available to the contractor for swing space.

Base proposal is defined as the Cost of the Work not including allowances or alternates.

(Amount shall be shown in both words and numbers; in the event of discrepancies, the words will govern.)

<b>A</b>	<b>Proposer’s Price for all schools in CSP 207837, which includes the Allowances as per item 2.09 below:</b>	
	_____	\$ _____
	_____	<b>Dollars</b>

**Proposer’s Price Breakdown (to be completed by proposer):**

<b>Base Proposal minus Allowances:</b>	<b>\$</b>
<b>2.09 B: Owner Controlled Contingency Allowance:</b>	<b>\$409,251.00</b>
<b>2.09 C: Other Owner Allowances (provided by Owner, see 2.09 C below):</b>	<b>\$155,500.00</b>
<b>2.09 D: Proposer’s Abatement Cost included in 2.08 A (Abatement is to be included in GC Base scope price. The intent of this section is to show the breakout of the abatement cost.)</b>	
<b>2.08 A: Proposer’s Base Price plus (+) Allowances (should equal amount in Section 2.08 A above):</b>	<b>\$</b>

**SECTION 00 41 11 – PROPOSAL FORM – BASE PROPOSAL**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

**2.09 Allowance Items**

The following allowances are further described in Specification Section 01 21 00.

<b>B</b>	<b>Allowance Description: In Contract Owner Controlled Contingency (IC)</b>	<b>Dollar Amount (\$)</b>
Org 054	Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy	\$409,251.00

<b>C</b>	<b>Allowance Description: In Contract Owner Controlled Allowances</b>	
1	Interior Barrier Graphics	\$7,500.00
2	Exterior Construction Screening Graphics	\$8,000.00
3	Turnkey Security Scope (See section 01 21 00 for more details on allowance)	\$140,000.00

**2.10 Alternates**

This information is to be submitted with section 00 41 12 (Part 1-C of the CSP Package.)

**2.11 Unit Pricing**

This information is to be submitted with section 00 41 12 (Part 1-C of the CSP Package.)

**2.12 Breakout or Separate Pricing**

The successful Proposer shall provide a proposed preliminary schedule of values for each school within the CSP 3 days after Board award. In the chart below, the Proposer must provide the cost breakdown per school of the base price provided by the Proposer in paragraph 2.08A of this section

*The following information is requested for information and budget verification only and it is not the basis for the quantitative evaluation of this proposal.*

<b>School Org #</b>	<b>School Name and Project Type</b>	<b>Estimated Construction Budget</b>	<b>Proposer's Base Bid Proposal Breakdown per School</b>
Org 054	Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy - Renovation	\$8,594,265.00	

<b>Org #</b>	<b>School Name</b>	<b>Owner's Expected Substantial Completion Date</b>	<b>Proposer's Proposed Substantial Completion Date</b>
Org 054	Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy	NTP + 365 Days	

**SECTION 00 41 11 – PROPOSAL FORM – BASE PROPOSAL**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

**2.13 Liquidated Damages**

Time is of the essence in all Phases of the Work. It is specifically understood and agreed by and between Dallas ISD and Contractor that time is of the essence in the substantial completion of the Project.

The Contractor acknowledges and recognizes that Dallas ISD is entitled to full and beneficial occupancy and use of the completed work immediately following expiration of the Contract time. The Contractor further acknowledges and agrees that, if the Contractor fails to substantially, or cause the Substantial Completion of any portion of the Work within the Contract Time, the Owner will sustain actual damages as a result of such failure. The exact amount of such damages will be difficult to ascertain. Therefore, Dallas ISD and Contractor agree that, if the Contractor shall neglect, fail, or refuse to achieve substantial completion of the Work by the Substantial Completion date, subject to any proper extension granted by Dallas ISD, then Contractor agrees to pay to Dallas ISD the following sum(s) for each day in which such Work is not substantially completed, not as a penalty, but as liquidated damages, for the damages (“Liquidated Damages”) that would be suffered by Dallas ISD as a result of delay for each and every calendar day that the Contractor shall have failed to have substantially completed the Work as required herein.

	Liquidated Damages	* Dollars Per Calendar Day		
		Addition	Renovation	New
Org 054	Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy	0.025% of Construction Budget	0.025% of Construction Budget	0.025% of Construction Budget

**\* The Dallas ISD’s liquidated damages cost formula is 0.025% of the construction budget for the project, up to a maximum of \$1,500.00 per calendar day.**

**SECTION 00 41 11 – PROPOSAL FORM – BASE PROPOSAL**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

**PART 3. Execution**

**3.01 Proposal Form Execution**

Contractor's Firm Name (legal name)	
Federal Tax I. D. Number	
Contractor's Street Address	
Contractor's Phone Number	
Contractor's Fax Number	
Contractor's Email Address	

SUBMITTED BY:

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Corporation, Partnership, Individual, etc.)

Name of President of Corporation *or*  
Name of Principal Owner

Name of Secretary of Corporation  
(if applicable)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Corporation, Partnership, etc.,) is organized under the laws of the State of \_\_\_\_\_.

Firm: \_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
**Printed Name**

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

**Signature:** \_\_\_\_\_

Legal Address: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Affix Corporation Seal here (if applicable)

**SECTION 00 41 12 – PROPOSAL FORM – ALTERNATES AND UNIT PRICING**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

**COMPETITIVE SEALED PROPOSAL (Part 1C)  
to  
DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
FOR THE FOLLOWING WORK:**

**PART 1. General Information**

CSP PACKAGE 207837, consisting of improvements to:

<b>Org #</b>	<b>PROJECT NAME</b>	<b>PROJECT TYPE</b>	<b>ADDRESS</b>
Org 054	Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy	Renovation	3838 Crown Shore Dr. Dallas, TX 75244

**PART 2. Proposal Form**

**2.01 through 2.09**

Refer to Specification Section 00 41 11.

**2.10 Alternate Price Items**

The Contractor proposes the following sums as **additions to or deductions from** the Base Price amount for alternates. Failure to quote every item may cause the entire Proposal to be considered non-responsive. If there is no cost change in the alternate(s) pricing, the Contractor should enter "\$0.00" as the price for the alternate. Do not make an entry of N/A.

*All Alternates must be priced. Alternates are not listed in the order of preference.*

**Org 054 – Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy - Renovation**

No.	Alternate Description	Proposer's Add Price	Proposer's Deduct Price
001	ALTERNATE 1 – NOT USED	N/A	N/A
002	ALTERNATE 2 – Replace (2) water fountains adjacent to gymnasium. Refer to P4.01.		N/A
003	ALTERNATE 3 – Replace RTU 20 & RTU 24 as indicated in mechanical drawings. Refer to M7.01.		N/A
004	ALTERNATE 4 – NOT USED	N/A	N/A
005	ALTERNATE 5 – Provide (2) additional water fountains throughout school. Refer to P4.02.		N/A
006	ALTERNATE 6 – Replace 3 <sup>rd</sup> floor lighting as indicated in drawings. Refer to E5.05 & E5.06.		N/A
007	ALTERNATE 7 – Replace 3 <sup>rd</sup> floor lighting controls as indicated in drawings. Refer to E5.14 & E5.15.		N/A
008	ALTERNATE 8 – Replace AHUs 3 & 4. Refer to M7.01		N/A



**SECTION 00 41 12 – PROPOSAL FORM – ALTERNATES AND UNIT PRICING**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

**2.11 Unit Prices**

The Contractor proposes the following all-inclusive unit prices for the items/tasks. Failure to provide unit pricing for each item may result in the Proposal being deemed as non-responsive. Do not make an entry of N/A. All unit prices must be priced. Unit prices are not listed in order of preference.

**Org 054 – Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy - Renovation**

No.	Unit Price Item	Unit of measure	Proposer's Unit Price
	N/A		\$
	N/A		\$

**2.12 through 2.14**

Refer to Specification Section 00 41 11.

**SECTION 00 41 12 – PROPOSAL FORM – ALTERNATES AND UNIT PRICING**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

**PART 3. Execution**

**3.01 Proposal Form Execution (Part 1A)**

Contractor's Firm Name (legal name)	
Federal Tax I. D. Number	
Contractor's Street Address	
Contractor's Phone Number	
Contractor's Fax Number	
Contractor's Email Address	

SUBMITTED BY:

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Corporation, Partnership, Individual, etc.)

Name of President of Corporation *or*  
Name of Principal Owner

Name of Secretary of Corporation  
(if applicable)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Corporation, Partnership, etc.,) is organized under the laws of the State of \_\_\_\_\_.

Firm: \_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Legal Address: \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Affix Corporation Seal here (if applicable)

**SECTION 00 41 13 – TECHNICAL PROPOSAL FORM**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

**COMPETITIVE SEALED PROPOSAL (Part 1-B)  
to  
DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**

**PART 1. GENERAL**

**1.01 Contractor Firm Information**

Contractor's Firm Name (Legal Name)	
Contractor's Point of Contact with Signature Authority	
Street Address	
Phone Number	
Point of Contact Email Address	
Type of Business: <input type="checkbox"/> Corporation, <input type="checkbox"/> Partnership, <input type="checkbox"/> Sole proprietorship, <input type="checkbox"/> Joint Venture	
State of Incorporation	
In continuous business since (Date of Incorporation/ Years in Business):	
List other fully staffed offices or fully staffed branch offices of your organization:	
<u>Name</u>	<u>Branch Manager</u> <u>Telephone Number</u>
Corporate Officers, Partners, or Owners of Organization:	
<u>Name</u> <u>(Years)</u>	<u>Title</u> <u>Construction Experience</u>
Check box(es) corresponding to the nature of your business: <input type="checkbox"/> Large Business (100 or more employees) <input type="checkbox"/> Small Business (fewer than 100 employees) <input type="checkbox"/> Minority Owned Business; Certified with _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Women Owned Business; Certified with _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Other (Define) _____	
Has your organization ever defaulted or failed to complete any work awarded? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If yes, stipulate where and why:	
Has your organization ever paid liquidated damages or a penalty for failure to complete a contract on time? <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No If yes, stipulate where and why:	

**SECTION 00 41 13 – TECHNICAL PROPOSAL FORM**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

**SECTION 00 41 13 – TECHNICAL PROPOSAL FORM**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

**PART 2. TECHNICAL PROPOSAL**

*The Contractor is requested to submit a complete response to each of the items listed in this technical proposal form. If the question is not applicable, please provide a response after each question or section with the words: NOT APPLICABLE TO THIS PROJECT. Responses requiring additional space should be brief and submitted as an attachment to this section.*

**2. Reputation of Vendors and of the Vendor's Goods or Services (5 Points out of 100 Possible Points in the Selective Criteria)**

**2 a. References (5 Points of the 5 points Possible under Reputation of Vendors and of the Vendor's Goods or Services)**

Provide five projects, from five separate organizations, with appropriate references using the attached form. Answer the questions for each relevant project, with emphasis on school, educational, and/or renovation experience, that your organization has in-progress or completed in the last four years, using the format below:

*A member of the Evaluation Committee will verify the information with the references provided and may ask additional questions of the references. Contractor should ensure availability of the references after bid opening.*

**SECTION 00 41 13 – TECHNICAL PROPOSAL FORM**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

**Project No.** \_\_\_\_\_ :

Owner / Name and Location of Project:	
Type of Project: (Renovation, Remodeling, Addition, New Construction?)	
Procurement Method: (Competitive Bidding, CSP, CM at Risk, Other)	
Type of Contract: (Lump Sum, Cost Plus, T&M, other)	
Contract Amount: (at time of award)	
Final Contract Amount: (If in progress, contract amount to date)	
Contract Time: (at time of award)	
Percent Complete:	
Projected/Actual Completion Date:	
If completed, was the project completed on time? If in progress, is the project on schedule?	
What kind of delays occurred?	
Did Contractor operate in a safe manner? Was safety a priority to the Contractor?	
Reporting Tools used: (Daily reports, weekly reports, monthly reports)	
Superintendent's Name: Project Manager's Name:	
Owner* or Appropriate Owner's Representative** Reference Contact Name/Telephone/Email/Address:  *If reference iPros no longer employed by the Owner indicate current Employer and Title.  **Program Managers cannot be used as a reference from a past projects on one of their own current projects.	

**SECTION 00 41 13 – TECHNICAL PROPOSAL FORM**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

**Proposer should copy this form for use on 5 past projects.**

**3. The Quality of the Vendor's Goods or Service (17 Points out of 100 Possible Points in the Selective Criteria)**

**3 a. Safety Plan and Insurance Rate Modifier (IRM): (5 Points of the 17 points Possible under Criteria 3)**

A. List your organization's Insurance Rate Modifier (IRM) for the current year as obtained from your insurance agent. Copy of IRM from insurance agent to be attached as confirmation.

\_\_\_\_\_ current year IRM

B. Complete the matrix for the five past years, as obtained from OSHA No. 300 Log:

	Year	Year	Year	Year	Current Year
	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
Number of injuries and illnesses					
Number of lost time accidents					
Number of recordable cases					
Number of fatalities					
Number of employee direct hire fixed hours worked (round to 1,000's)					

C. Are regular project safety meetings held by Field Supervisor(s)? \_\_\_\_ Yes \_\_\_\_ No  
 If yes, frequency: \_\_\_\_ Weekly \_\_\_\_ Bi-Weekly \_\_\_\_ Monthly \_\_\_\_ As Needed

D. Are project safety inspections conducted? \_\_\_\_ Yes \_\_\_\_ No  
 If yes, who performs inspection? \_\_\_\_\_  
 How often? \_\_\_\_ Weekly \_\_\_\_ Bi-Weekly \_\_\_\_ Monthly \_\_\_\_ As Needed

E. Does your organization have a written safety program? \_\_\_\_ Yes \_\_\_\_ No  
 If yes, two copies of the full safety manual must be provided. Two CD-ROMs, each containing the safety manual in PDF format clearly marked as "Safety Manual" is preferred.  
 If no, then the contractor may adopt the Dallas ISD Safety manual. Will your organization adopt the DALLAS ISD Safety Manual? \_\_\_\_ Yes \_\_\_\_ No

**SECTION 00 41 13 – TECHNICAL PROPOSAL FORM**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

F a. Does your organization have a safety orientation program for new employees?

Yes  No

For employees promoted to Field Supervisor.  Yes  No

If yes, does your Supervisor Safety Program include instructions on the following topics?

	Yes	No
Safety work practices		
Toolbox safety meetings		
First aid procedures		
Accident investigation		
Fire protection		
HazCom Program		
Record keeping		
Emergency response procedures		
New worker orientation		

F b. Provide a resume of the Safety Manager.

G. Does your organization have a written Drug and Alcohol policy in place?  Yes  No

If yes, provide a copy of the policy as an attachment.

If no, please note when adopting the Dallas ISD safety manual, the contractor is also adopting the “Drug and Alcohol Policy” included within.

**3 b. Proposed Project Team(s) and Management approach to proposed projects and Contractor’s Pending Claims and or Litigation: (12 Points of the 17 points Possible under Criteria 3)**

*Please note that Dallas ISD requires a full-time superintendent to be assigned to each individual job site while Work is in progress, contingent upon the continued employment of those personnel by the Contractor. Contractor’s staffing approach and organization must reflect this requirement. Contractor may not make any changes to these personnel assignments without the prior approval of the Program Manager and the Owner.*

A. Provide a Staff Organization Chart depicting your staff roles, relationships, and responsibilities.

B. Identify the proposed key staff: Project Manager, Superintendent, Assistant Superintendent(s), Cost Estimator, Scheduler, Safety Manager, etc. by name and title and provide the following information for each. Include additional key staff, as necessary. Indicate which staff are assigned either on a full time or part time basis. For part time personnel, identify the percent of full-time



**SECTION 00 41 13 – TECHNICAL PROPOSAL FORM**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

participation. For example, Project Manager 50% of Full-time, Safety Manager 75% of Full-Time, Scheduler 25% of Full-Time, etc.

**Staff: Project Manager**

Name:	
Current Assignment: (Project name, client name and anticipated project completion date.)	
Total years of construction experience:	
Full Time or Part Time (For part time personnel, identify the percent of full-time participation. For example, Project Manager 50% of Full-time, etc.)	
Relevant experience with similar projects: (educational and/or renovations and/or additions as applicable)	
Years with the Organization:	

**Staff: Superintendent 1 – School Name:** \_\_\_\_\_

Name:	
Current Assignment: (Project name, client name and anticipated project completion date.)	
Total years of construction experience:	
Relevant experience with similar projects:	
Years with the Organization:	

**Staff: Superintendent 2 – School Name:** \_\_\_\_\_

Name:	
Current Assignment: (Project name, client name and anticipated project completion date.)	
Total years of construction experience:	
Relevant experience with similar projects:	
Years with the Organization:	

**SECTION 00 41 13 – TECHNICAL PROPOSAL FORM**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

**Staff: Superintendent 3 – School Name:** \_\_\_\_\_

Name:	
Current Assignment: (Project name, client name and anticipated project completion date.)	
Total years of construction experience:	
Relevant experience with similar projects:	
Years with the Organization:	

**Staff: Superintendent 4 – School Name:** \_\_\_\_\_

Name:	
Current Assignment: (Project name, client name and anticipated project completion date.)	
Total years of construction experience:	
Relevant experience with similar projects:	
Years with the Organization:	

**Staff: Superintendent 5 – School Name:** \_\_\_\_\_

Name:	
Current Assignment: (Project name, client name and anticipated project completion date.)	
Total years of construction experience:	
Relevant experience with similar projects:	
Years with the Organization:	

**Proposer should copy this form as needed to present information for all proposed staff.**

**C. CONTRACTOR'S PENDING CLAIMS AND/OR LITIGATION**

Attach a list of pending claims and/or litigation at time of submitting Proposal. (Show project name, owner, and summary explanation.)

**SECTION 00 41 13 – TECHNICAL PROPOSAL FORM**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

**4 The Extent to which the Goods or Services Meet the District's needs (15 Points out of 100 Possible Points in the Selective Criteria)**

**4 a. General Contractor's current/past K-12 new or renovation construction experience: (10 Points of the 15 points Possible under Criteria 4)**

Provide below the School District, School Name, Project Type, **Completion Date** and **Final Construction Value** for a **minimum of 5\*\*** K-12 Projects completed by your company **as a prime contractor**.

School District	School Name	Renovation, Addition, or New Const.	Completion Date	Final Construction Contract Value

*\*\*A separate sheet may be attached with additional projects.*

**4 b. Proposed Construction schedule and phasing plan: (5 Points of the 15 points Possible under Criteria 4)**

The Contractor understands that Dallas ISD desires that the Project be completed on or before the duration of the contract. The Contractor shall prepare and submit a proposed construction schedule for each of the schools in the CSP and present this schedule with Section 00 41 13. **Additions and Renovations work within a school must be broken out into two separate items.** This schedule may be as detailed as the Proposer would like but must have a minimum of schedule information (major construction phases, activities, and milestones) as is necessary to facilitate negotiations.

Provide, as an attachment to the Technical Proposal form, a GANTT chart depicting how you anticipate delivering the project in the time frame outlined in this proposal. Describe the scope of work to be completed in each phase of each school.

Note: Contractors may, as a Cost Saving Recommendation, offer for Dallas ISD's consideration, an alternative plan, which may alter the duration in the contract documents. However, any such proposal must be presented as a Cost Saving Recommendation in the Technical Proposal – Part B (Section 00 41 13). The contractor must clearly identify the alternative work schedule, alternative duration, and alternative base price. The evaluation committee will evaluate alternative plans and schedule and determine if the plans may benefit Dallas ISD.

**SECTION 00 41 13 – TECHNICAL PROPOSAL FORM**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

The Contractor's proposed schedule is a vital part of the evaluation process and sufficient information should be provided for Dallas ISD to assess the Contractor's time frame, work plan and approach.

- A. Describe the type of software utilized to prepare the construction schedules. (**Attach proposed project schedule**)

**SECTION 00 41 13 – TECHNICAL PROPOSAL FORM**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

5. N/A

**SECTION 00 41 13 – TECHNICAL PROPOSAL FORM**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

**6. The contractor is to complete all M/WBE Compliance forms in Section 00 45 39 for selection criteria 6. (Category Total: 20 Points of the 20 Points possible under Criteria 6.)**

**6a. Proposer demonstrated a commitment to the district's M/WBE program by providing enhancements to the administration of the proposer's contracting process for the work to be done be M/WBE firms. Examples of this commitment may include any of the following: expedited payments, Mentor Protégé Programs, early release of retainage, expanding the pool of diverse subcontractors to firms that have not done business with the district, etc. (3 points)**

**6b. Proposer submitted a list of two (2) M/WBE subcontractor references. (2 points)**

**6c. Proposer is a certified M/WBE, or Proposer submitted a Joint Venture Agreement with a certified M/WBE OR Proposer submitted a Prime Subcontractor Teaming Agreement with a certified M/WBE. (5 points)**

**6d. Proposer submitted a diverse list of certified M/WE subcontractors, subconsultants or suppliers that meets or exceeds the district's M/WBE aspirational goal in meaningful and significant roles OR Proposer demonstrated outreach designed to meet the M/WBE project goals with a diverse M/WBE team of subcontractors, suppliers and subconsultants. (5 points)**

**6e. Proposer demonstrated a comprehensive framework and understanding of the district's M/WBE program by: providing a written and detailed M/WBE compliance plan, designating a high ranking individual who will be responsible for M/WBE contract compliance, monitoring and reporting, ensuring no unauthorized changes to M/WBE subcontractors, adhering to the M/WBE commitment and subcontractor payment terms, executing the M/WBE subcontracting schedule, complying with the district's M/WBE Program guidelines, etc. (5 points)**

**SECTION 00 41 13 – TECHNICAL PROPOSAL FORM**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

**7. The Total Long-Term Cost to the District to Acquire the Vendor's Goods and Services (3 Points out of 100 Possible Points in the Selective Criteria)**

**7 a. Financial status of the vendor (as rated by Dun & Bradstreet):  
Category Total: (3 Points of the 3 points Possible under Criteria 7)**

- A. Provide the complete corporate or company name of your firm and the D-U-N-S Number as it is recorded with Dun & Bradstreet. This information will allow the owner to confirm that the correct reports are being used for the evaluation.

D-U-N-S Number: \_\_\_\_\_

**SECTION 00 41 13 – TECHNICAL PROPOSAL FORM**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

**C8. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION:**

*The following information must be provided to complete the evaluation of the Contractor's technical proposal.*

**A. DISCLOSURE OF INTERESTED PARTIES**

1. Disclosure of Interested Parties – In 2015, the Texas Legislature adopted House Bill 1295, which added section 2252.908 of the Government Code. The law states that a governmental entity or state agency may not enter into certain contracts with a business entity unless the business entity submits a disclosure of interested parties to the governmental entity or state agency at the time the business entity submits the signed contract to the governmental entity or state agency. The disclosure requirement applies to a contract entered into on or after January 1, 2016.

After Board of Trustee authorization, the successful Vendor will be required to complete an electronic Form 1295 on the Texas Ethics Commission website ([https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/whatsnew/elf\\_info\\_form1295.htm](https://www.ethics.state.tx.us/whatsnew/elf_info_form1295.htm)) prior to entering into a contract with the District in accordance with this statute. Additional information is available on the Texas Ethics Commission website at [www.ethics.state.tx.us](http://www.ethics.state.tx.us).

Submission of a response to this CSP indicates Respondent's acceptance and intended compliance with this requirement.



**SECTION 00 41 13 – TECHNICAL PROPOSAL FORM**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

PART 3. TECHNICAL PROPOSAL FORM EXECUTION

**3.01 Proposal Form Execution**

Contractor's Firm Name (legal name)	
Federal Tax I. D. Number	
Contractor's Street Address	
Contractor's Phone Number	
Contractor's Email Address	

SUBMITTED BY:

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Corporation, Partnership, Individual, etc.)

Name of President of Corporation *or*  
Name of Principal Owner

Name of Secretary of Corporation  
(if applicable)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Corporation, Partnership, etc.,) is organized under the laws of the State of \_\_\_\_\_.

Firm: \_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Legal Address: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Affix Corporation Seal here (if applicable)

**SECTION 00 43 13 – PROPOSAL GUARANTEE BOND**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

KNOW ALL MEN BY THESE PRESENTS, THAT we \_\_\_\_\_ as Principal, and \_\_\_\_\_ as Surety, are held and firmly bound unto the Board of Trustees, Dallas Independent School District, Dallas, Dallas County, Texas, hereinafter called the Obligee, in the penal sum of \_\_\_\_\_ Dollars (\$ \_\_\_\_\_), lawful money of the United States, for the payment of which sum well and truly to be made, we bind ourselves, our heirs, executors, administrators, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

THE CONDITION OF THIS OBLIGATION IS SUCH, that whereas the Principal has submitted the accompanying Competitive Sealed Proposal, dated \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_, being for the construction of \_\_\_\_\_ with appurtenances thereto, at Dallas, Dallas County, Texas, the kind and extent of work involved being set forth in detail in the proposed Contract Documents;

NOW, THEREFORE, if the Obligee shall accept the proposal of the Principal and the Principal shall enter into a Contract with the Obligee in accordance with the terms of such proposal, and give such bond or bonds as may be specified in the proposal or Contract Documents with good and sufficient surety for the faithful performance of such Contract and for the prompt payment of labor and material furnished in the prosecution thereof, or in the event of the failure of the Principal to enter such Contract and give such bond or bonds, if the Principal shall pay to the Obligee the difference not to exceed the penalty hereof between the amount specified in said proposal and such larger amount for which the Obligee may in good faith contract with another party to perform the Work covered by said proposal, then this obligation shall be null and void, otherwise to remain in full force and effect.

This Proposal Guarantee Bond applies to all contracts in excess of \$100,000 involving a contract for construction, alteration or repair of any public building or the completion or prosecution of any public work.

This Proposal Guarantee Bond must be payable to the awarding authority, Dallas Independent School District, as the named Obligee, and it must be approved as to form by such awarding authority.

Surety must be corporate surety duly authorized to do business in Texas.

This Proposal Guarantee Bond must be equal to 10% of the full amount of the contract which it secures. Power of Attorney from Corporate Surety should be attached to this Proposal Guarantee Bond.

**SECTION 00 43 13 – PROPOSAL GUARANTEE BOND**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the above bounded parties have executed this instrument under their several seals this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_, the name and Corporate Seal of each corporate party being hereto affixed and these presents duly signed by its undersigned representative, pursuant to authority of its governing body.

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Business Address)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Individual Principal)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Business Address)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Corporate Principal)

ATTEST:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Secretary

\_\_\_\_\_  
President

\_\_\_\_\_  
Business Address

\_\_\_\_\_  
Corporate Surety

ATTEST: \_\_\_\_\_

BY: \_\_\_\_\_

**PART 1 GENERAL**

**Schedule "A"**  
**Building Construction Prevailing Wage Rates 2012**  
**City of Dallas**

Building Construction Projects (does not include single-family homes and apartments).

*\*Use Schedule B - Current Engineering (Highway/Heavy) Construction Wage Determination For Paving and Utilities Incidental to Building Construction.*

**Schedule "A"**

<u>CLASSIFICATION</u>	<u>PREVAILING RATE</u>	<u>FRINGES</u>
Acoustical Installer	\$12.16	-----
Backhoe Operator	\$10.64	\$1.41
Bricklayer	\$21.06	\$7.18
Brick, Tender	\$8.60	\$1.30
Carpenter	\$23.15	\$8.20
Cement Mason/Concrete Finisher	\$11.38	-----
Drywall Hanger	\$11.71	-----
Electrician	\$24.50	12.25% + 4.70
Electrician, Cable Splicer	\$26.41	4.50 + 12.5%
Floor Layer, Carpet	\$13.13	-----
Front End Loader Operator	\$8.77	-----
Glazier	\$12.26	\$1.10
Mechanical Insulator	\$10.55	\$1.00
Laborer, Unskilled (Excluding Landscape Laborers)	\$7.58	\$1.30
Painter Brush & Spray	\$10.76	\$2.20
Painter doing drywall finishing only	\$10.42	-----
Paperhanger	\$11.30	\$2.20
Lather	\$17.38	\$1.04
Hydraulic Crane (35 tons & under)	\$23.70	\$9.35
Hydraulic over 35 tons, Derricks, Overhead Gentry, Stiffler, Tower, etc., and Cranes with Pile driving or Caisson Attachments	\$24.70	\$9.35
Plasterer	\$15.06	\$2.94
Plasterer tender	\$9.00	-----
Plumber	\$12.80	\$1.63
Roofer	\$9.45	\$1.04
Sheet Metal Worker (Including HVAC Duct Work)	\$12.80	\$2.05
Sprinkler Fitter (Fire Sprinkler)	\$25.84	\$16.47
Iron Worker, Structural	\$21.60	\$4.40
Iron Worker, Reinforcing	\$10.33	\$2.94
Tile Setter	\$13.75	----- --

**Schedule "B"**

00 43 43 PREVAILING WAGE RATES

---

<u>CLASSIFICATION</u>	<u>PREVAILING RATE</u>
Asphalt Distributor Operator	\$15.32
Asphalt Paving Machine Operator	\$13.99
Asphalt Raker	\$12.69
Broom or Sweeper Operator	\$11.74
Concrete Finisher -Paving and Structures	\$14.12
Concrete Paving Finishing Machine	\$16.05
Concrete Paving Saw Operator	\$14.48
Crane Operator, Lattice Boom 80 Tons or Less	\$17.27
Crane Operator, Lattice Boom over 80 Tons	\$20.52
Crane, Hydraulic 80 Tons or Less	\$18.12
Crawler Tractor	\$14.07
Electrician	\$19.80
Excavator, 50,000 Pounds or Less	\$17.19
Excavator, over 50,000 Pounds	\$16.99
Flagger	\$10.06
Form Builder/Setter, Structures	\$13.84
Form Setter -Paving & Curb	\$13.16
Foundation Drill Operator, Crawler Mount	\$17.99
Foundation Drill Operator, Truck Mount	\$21.07
Front End Loader 3 CY or Less	\$13.69
Front End Loader, over 3 CY	\$14.72
Laborer -Common	\$10.72
Laborer -Utility	\$12.32
Loader / Backhoe	\$15.18
Mechanic	\$17.68
Milling Machine	\$14.32
Motor Grader, Fine Grade	\$17.19
Motor Grader, Rough	\$16.02
Pavement Marking Machine	\$13.63
Pipe Layer	\$13.24
Reclaimer / Pulverizers	\$11.01
Roller, Asphalt	\$13.08
Roller, Other	\$11.51
Scraper	\$12.96
Servicer	\$14.58
Small Slipform Machine	\$15.96
Spreader Box	\$14.73
Steel Worker (Reinforcing)	\$16.18
Truck Driver -Lowboy -Float	\$16.24
Truck Driver -Off Road Hauler	\$12.25
Truck Driver -Single Axle	\$12.31
Truck Driver -Single or Tandem Axle Dump Truck	\$12.62
Truck Driver -Tandem Axle Tractor with Semi Trailer	\$12.86
Truck Driver -Transit Mix	\$14.14
Tunnel Boring Machine Operator (greater than 48")	\$13.61
Tunneling Machine Operator (48" or less)	\$9.16

00 43 43 PREVAILING WAGE RATES

---

Welder	\$14.84
Work Zone Barricade Servicer	\$11.68

If the construction project involves the expenditure of federal funds of \$2,000 or more, the minimum wages to be paid various classes of laborers and mechanics will be based upon the wages that will be determined by the Secretary of labor to be prevailing for the corresponding classes of laborers and mechanics employed on the project of a character similar to the contract work in the City of Dallas.

Except for work on legal holidays, the "General Prevailing Rate of Per Diem Wage" for the various crafts or type of workers or mechanics is the product of (A) the number of hours worked per day, except for overtime hours, times (B) the above respective rate per hour.

For legal holidays, the "General Prevailing Rate of Per Diem Wage" for the various crafts or type of workers or mechanics is the product of (A) one and one-half times the above respective rate per hour times (B) the number of hours worked on the legal holiday.

The "General Prevailing Rate for Overtime Work" for the crafts or type of workers or mechanics is one and one-half times the above respective rate per hour.

Under the provisions of Chapter 2258 of the Government Code, the contractor shall forfeit as a penalty to the entity on whose behalf the contract is made or awarded, sixty dollars (\$60.00) for each laborer, worker or mechanic employed, for each calendar day, or portion thereof, such laborer, worker or mechanic is paid less than the said stipulated rates for any work under the contract, by him, or by any subcontractor under him.

**Solicitation Number: CSP 207837**  
**Solicitation Title: Org 054 – Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy - Renovation**

**REPRESENTATION AND CERTIFICATION**

By submitting this Offer, the Offeror certifies that he/she is a responsible authorized officer of the company and certifies the accuracy of the following statements:

1. Represents that to the best of its knowledge it is not indebted to the District. **Indebtedness** to the District shall be basis for non-award and/or cancellation and/or termination of any award.
2. By signing this bid/proposal, vendor makes the assurance that vendor has not been debarred or suspended from conducting business with the US Government according to Executive Order 12549 entitled "**Debarment and Suspension.**"
3. Pursuant to the Texas Education Code, Subchapter B, Section 44.034, "**Notification of Criminal History**", a person or business entity that enters into a contract with a school district must give advance notice to the district if the person and/or an owner or operator of the business entity has been convicted of a felony. The notice must include a general description of the conduct resulting in the conviction of a felony. Subsection (b) states "a school district may terminate a contract with a person or business entity if the district determines that the person or business entity failed to give notice as required by Subsection (a) or misrepresented the conduct resulting in the conviction. The district must compensate the person or business entity for services performed before the termination of the contract." Subsection (c) this notice is not required of a publicly held corporation.
  1.  **My firm is a publicly held corporation, therefore, this reporting requirement is not applicable.**
  2.  **My firm is not owned nor operated by anyone who has been convicted of a felony.**
  3.  **My firm is owned or operated by the following individual(s) who has/have been convicted of a felony.**

**Name of Felon(s):** \_\_\_\_\_

**Details of Conviction(s):** \_\_\_\_\_

4. "**Non-Collusion Statement**" and "**Anti-Lobbying Certification**": "The undersigned affirms that they are duly authorized to execute this Representation and Certification, Offer, and/or Contract and that this company, corporation, firm, partnership, etc., or individual has not prepared this bid in collusion (*An agreement between two or more persons to deceive the school district or defraud the school district of its rights*) with any other bidder, school board member, or school district employee, and that the contents of this bid as to prices, quality of product, terms and/or conditions, etc., have not been communicated by the undersigned nor by any other employee, agent and/or representative of the company, corporation, firm, partnership, etc., or individual to any other person engaged in this type of business prior to the official opening of this bid for the intent or purpose of collusion." In accordance with Title 31, USC Section 1352, no attempt has been or will be made by this company's officers, employees, or agents to lobby, directly or indirectly, with the District's Board of Trustees between bid/proposal submission date and award by the Board.
5. The District promotes, to the maximum extent allowed by law, participation by **economically disadvantaged business enterprises** in all District competitive procurement. Are you a qualified economically disadvantaged business enterprise, historically underutilized business, or minority/women owned business enterprise?  
(check one)  Yes  No

**Type of Certification:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Issued by:** \_\_\_\_\_ **Date of Issue:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Please attach proof of certification to this submittal.** **Certified by:** \_\_\_\_\_

6. "**Conflict of Interest**": No officer, agent, or stockholder of the Offeror is a member of the staff, or related to any employee of the District except as noted herein: \_\_\_\_\_  
Texas Statute enacts disclosure requirements if certain school officials or family members receive a gift (other than gifts of food, lodging, transportation, or entertainment accepted as a guest) that had an aggregate value of \$250 or more over a twelve-month period that the district is considering or has awarded a contract for the sale or purchase of property, goods, or services. Has your firm, parent firm, subsidiary, and/or affiliate provided a gift (other than gifts of food, lodging, transportation, or entertainment accepted as a guest) that had an aggregate value of \$250 or more over a twelve-month period to any District official, administrator, and/or Board member?  Yes  No  
If yes, explain (the gift, name of individual receiving gift, date gift was provided, etc.). \_\_\_\_\_  
**(COMPLETE THE ATTACHED QUESTIONNAIRE FORM)**

7. Offeror agrees to the attached "**General Terms and Conditions**" and any "**Special Terms and Conditions**" (if applicable) of this solicitation and in case of conflict with other documents provided by Offeror, these General and/or Special Terms and Conditions take precedence and prevail unless specifically identified and changes are signed by both parties.
8. "**Insurance, Bonds**": Insurance and/or bond requirements are enumerated elsewhere in Contract documents. Submission of a certificate of insurance/bond by the undersigned (or an agent/broker on behalf of the undersigned) represents that the coverages and perils covered by the insurance/bond meet or exceed the requirements of the solicitation document and/or subsequent contract. The District may make reasonable reliance on the submitted certificate of insurance/bond. The certificate of insurance/bond must accurately reflect the policy coverages and will become a part of the Contract Documents and incorporated by reference, but the Contract terms/conditions and statement of work take precedence over any and all contents of the certificate of insurance/bond including, but not limited to, disclaimers, qualifications, etc. Failure to provide insurance/bond in accordance with Contract may be cause for termination for default and other remedies allowed by law and/or equity. Offeror must notify the District entity, in writing, by certified mail or personal delivery, within ten days after the vendor knew or should have known of any changes that materially affects the insurance/bond coverage.

**Solicitation Number: CSP 207837**  
**Solicitation Title: Org 054 – Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy - Renovation**

- 9. **“Workers Compensation”**: Offeror acknowledges that the District will NOT provide Workers Compensation coverage to the Offeror and Offeror represents to the District that all employees, subcontractors, agents, representatives, etc. of the Offeror who will provide products, goods, or services to the District will be covered by worker's compensation coverage for the duration of the Contract, that the coverage will be based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts, and that all coverage agreements will be filed with the appropriate insurance carrier or, in the case of a self-insured, with the commission's Division of Self-Insurance regulation. Providing false or misleading information may subject the contractor to administrative penalties, criminal penalties, civil penalties, or other civil actions.
- 10. **“Criminal Background Checks/Searches”**: Offeror represents that criminal background checks/searches have been conducted (or will be conducted prior to start of Work if required) in accordance with the General Terms and Conditions (Criminal Background Check) and “Instructions to School District Contractors Regarding Criminal History Background Searches Under Texas Education Code (TEC) 22.0834” (attached).
- 11. **“No Boycott of Israel”**. Offeror certifies that it (and any of its affiliates or parent company), does not, and will not, boycott Israel during the term of any contractual arrangement with DALLAS ISD. For purposes of any contractual arrangement with DALLAS ISD, “boycott Israel” means refusing to deal with, terminating business activities with, or otherwise taking any action that is intended to penalize, inflict economic harm on, or limit commercial relations specifically with Israel, or with a person or entity doing business in Israel or in an Israeli-controlled territory, but does not include an action made for ordinary business purposes.
- 12. **“Prohibition of Contracts Engaged in Business with Iran, Sudan, or Foreign Terrorist Organizations”**. Offeror certifies that it is not a company identified by the Texas Comptroller as a company known to have contracts with or provide supplies or services to a foreign terrorist organization.
- 13. **“Transactions with an Abortion Provider or Affiliate”**. Offeror certifies that it is not an abortion provider nor an affiliate of such a provider as noted in Texas SB 22, codified in Texas Government Code Chapter 2273, and effective September 1, 2019. If this provision is violated by Offeror, Agreement and/or taxpayer resource transaction is voidable by Dallas ISD and Offeror agrees to defend and indemnify Dallas ISD against any action brought by the Office of the Attorney General for a violation of Section 2273.003.

I, the undersigned officer or authorized agent for the firm named below, certify that the information provided herein has been reviewed by me and is true to the best of my knowledge.

Company Name: \_\_\_\_\_ Submitter's Name/Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Email Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Submitter's Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ Telephone No. \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_ City, State and Zip Code: \_\_\_\_\_

Fax No. \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

**THIS SHEET MUST BE COMPLETED, SIGNED, AND RETURNED WITH FIRM'S OFFER.**



Notice to Offerors  
Conflict of Interest Disclosure Statements  
Texas Local Government Code, Chapter 176

Offerors are required to file a Conflict of Interest Questionnaire with the District if a relationship exists between the Offeror's company and an officer of the District. Offerors are encouraged to review and become familiar with all disclosure requirements of Texas Local Government Code, Chapter 176. Conflicts of interest exist if:

1. the person has employment or other business relationship with the local government officer or a family member resulting in the officer or family member receiving taxable income; or
2. the person has given the local government officer or family member one or more gifts (excluding food, lodging, transportation, and entertainment) that have an aggregate value of more than \$250 in the twelve- month period preceding the date the officer becomes aware of an executed contract or consideration of the person for a contract to do business with the District.

Disclosure is required from Offerors regarding each affiliation or business relationship between the Offeror and:

1. an officer of the District;
2. an officer of the District that results in the officer or family member receiving taxable income;
3. an officer of the District that results in the Offeror receiving taxable income that does not come from the District;
4. a corporation or other business entity in which an officer of the District serves as an officer or director, or holds an ownership interest of 10% or more;
5. an employee or Offeror of the District who makes recommendations to an officer of the District regarding the expenditure of money;
6. an officer of the District who appoints or employs an officer of the District that is the subject of the questionnaire; and
7. any person or entity that might cause a conflict of interest with the District.

**If a conflict exists, forms must be filed:**

1. No later than the seventh business day after the date that the person begins contract discussions or negotiations with the government entity, or submits to the entity an application, response to a request for qualification or bid, correspondence, or other writing related to a potential agreement with the entity.
2. The Offeror also shall file an updated questionnaire:
  - a. not later than September 1 of each year in which a covered transaction is pending, and
  - b. the seventh business day after the date of an event that would make a statement in the questionnaire incomplete or inaccurate.
3. A Offeror is not required to file an updated questionnaire if the person had filed an updated statement on or after June 1, but before September 1 of the year.

Officers of the Dallas Independent School District are:

Lance Currie (District 1)  
Sarah Weinberg (District 2)  
Dan Micciche (District 3)  
Camille D. White (District 4)  
Maxie Johnson (District 5)  
Joyce Foreman (District 6)  
Ben Mackey (District 7)  
Joe Carreon (District 8)  
Ed Turner (District 9)  
Stephanie Elizalde, Ed.D. Superintendent of Schools

If no conflict of interest exists, you must fill out Box 1 and type N/A on Box 3 of the CIQ form, sign and date it.

If you are required to file, send the completed form to Dallas Independent School District, Procurement Services Department, 9400 North Central Expressway Suite 1510, Dallas, Texas 75231

July 2022

**CONFLICT OF INTEREST QUESTIONNAIRE**  
**For vendor doing business with local governmental entity**

**FORM CIQ**

**This questionnaire reflects changes made to the law by H.B. 23, 84th Leg., Regular Session.**  
 This questionnaire is being filed in accordance with Chapter 176, Local Government Code, by a vendor who has a business relationship as defined by Section 176.001(1-a) with a local governmental entity and the vendor meets requirements under Section 176.006(a).  
 By law this questionnaire must be filed with the records administrator of the local governmental entity not later than the 7th business day after the date the vendor becomes aware of facts that require the statement to be filed. See Section 176.006(a-1), Local Government Code.  
 A vendor commits an offense if the vendor knowingly violates Section 176.006, Local Government Code. An offense under this section is a misdemeanor.

OFFICE USE ONLY	
Date Received	

**1 Name of vendor who has a business relationship with local governmental entity.**

**2**  **Check this box if you are filing an update to a previously filed questionnaire.** (The law requires that you file an updated completed questionnaire with the appropriate filing authority not later than the 7th business day after the date on which you became aware that the originally filed questionnaire was incomplete or inaccurate.)

**3 Name of local government officer about whom the information is being disclosed.**

\_\_\_\_\_

Name of Officer

**4 Describe each employment or other business relationship with the local government officer, or a family member of the officer, as described by Section 176.003(a)(2)(A). Also describe any family relationship with the local government officer. Complete subparts A and B for each employment or business relationship described. Attach additional pages to this Form CIQ as necessary.**

A. Is the local government officer or a family member of the officer receiving or likely to receive taxable income, other than investment income, from the vendor?

Yes       No

B. Is the vendor receiving or likely to receive taxable income, other than investment income, from or at the direction of the local government officer or a family member of the officer AND the taxable income is not received from the local governmental entity?

Yes       No

**5 Describe each employment or business relationship that the vendor named in Section 1 maintains with a corporation or other business entity with respect to which the local government officer serves as an officer or director, or holds an ownership interest of one percent or more.**

**6**  Check this box if the vendor has given the local government officer or a family member of the officer one or more gifts as described in Section 176.003(a)(2)(B), excluding gifts described in Section 176.003(a-1).

**7**

\_\_\_\_\_  
 Signature of vendor doing business with the governmental entity

\_\_\_\_\_  
 Date

**CONFLICT OF INTEREST QUESTIONNAIRE**  
**For vendor doing business with local governmental entity**

A complete copy of Chapter 176 of the Local Government Code may be found at <http://www.statutes.legis.state.tx.us/Docs/LG/htm/LG.176.htm>. For easy reference, below are some of the sections cited on this form.

**Local Government Code § 176.001(1-a):** "Business relationship" means a connection between two or more parties based on commercial activity of one of the parties. The term does not include a connection based on:

- (A) a transaction that is subject to rate or fee regulation by a federal, state, or local governmental entity or an agency of a federal, state, or local governmental entity;
- (B) a transaction conducted at a price and subject to terms available to the public; or
- (C) a purchase or lease of goods or services from a person that is chartered by a state or federal agency and that is subject to regular examination by, and reporting to, that agency.

**Local Government Code § 176.003(a)(2)(A) and (B):**

(a) A local government officer shall file a conflicts disclosure statement with respect to a vendor if:

\*\*\*

(2) the vendor:

(A) has an employment or other business relationship with the local government officer or a family member of the officer that results in the officer or family member receiving taxable income, other than investment income, that exceeds \$2,500 during the 12-month period preceding the date that the officer becomes aware that

(i) a contract between the local governmental entity and vendor has been executed;

or

(ii) the local governmental entity is considering entering into a contract with the vendor;

(B) has given to the local government officer or a family member of the officer one or more gifts that have an aggregate value of more than \$100 in the 12-month period preceding the date the officer becomes aware that:

(i) a contract between the local governmental entity and vendor has been executed; or

(ii) the local governmental entity is considering entering into a contract with the vendor.

**Local Government Code § 176.006(a) and (a-1)**

(a) A vendor shall file a completed conflict of interest questionnaire if the vendor has a business relationship with a local governmental entity and:

(1) has an employment or other business relationship with a local government officer of that local governmental entity, or a family member of the officer, described by Section 176.003(a)(2)(A);

(2) has given a local government officer of that local governmental entity, or a family member of the officer, one or more gifts with the aggregate value specified by Section 176.003(a)(2)(B), excluding any gift described by Section 176.003(a-1); or

(3) has a family relationship with a local government officer of that local governmental entity.

(a-1) The completed conflict of interest questionnaire must be filed with the appropriate records administrator not later than the seventh business day after the later of:

(1) the date that the vendor:

(A) begins discussions or negotiations to enter into a contract with the local governmental entity; or

(B) submits to the local governmental entity an application, response to a request for proposals or bids, correspondence, or another writing related to a potential contract with the local governmental entity; or

(2) the date the vendor becomes aware:

(A) of an employment or other business relationship with a local government officer, or a family member of the officer, described by Subsection (a);

(B) that the vendor has given one or more gifts described by Subsection (a); or

(C) of a family relationship with a local government officer.

**Solicitation Number: CSP 207837**  
**Solicitation Title: Org 054 – Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy - Renovation**

Dallas ISD, 9400 North Central Expressway, Dallas, TX 75231

**FELONY CONVICTION NOTICE**

Statutory citation covering notification of criminal history of contractor is found in the Texas Education Code #44.034. Following is an example of a felony conviction notice:

**FELONY CONVICTION NOTIFICATION**

State of Texas Legislative Senate Bill No. 1, Section 44.034, Notification of Criminal History, Subsection (a), states “a person or business entity that enters into a contract with a school district must give advance notice to the district if the person or an owner or operator of the business entity has been convicted of a felony. The notice must include a general description of the conduct resulting in the conviction of a felony.”

Subsection (b) states “a school district may terminate a contract with a person or business entity if the district determines that the person or business entity failed to give notice as required by Subsection (a) or misrepresented the conduct resulting in the conviction. The district must compensate the person or business entity for services performed before the termination of the contract.”

**THIS NOTICE IS NOT REQUIRED OF A PUBLICLY-HELD CORPORATION**

I, the undersigned agent for the firm named below, certify that the information concerning notification of felony convictions has been reviewed by me and the following information furnished is true to the best of my knowledge.

- A.  My firm is a publicly-held corporation, therefore, this reporting requirement is not applicable.
- B.  My firm is not owned nor operated by anyone who has been convicted of a felony:
- C.  My firm is owned or operated by the following individual(s) who has/have been convicted of a felony:

Name of Felon(s): \_\_\_\_\_

Details of Conviction(s): \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Company Name: \_\_\_\_\_ Submitter's Name/Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_ City, State and Zip Code: \_\_\_\_\_

Email Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Submitter's Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ Telephone No. \_\_\_\_\_

Fax No. \_\_\_\_\_ 800 # (if available) \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

**Solicitation Number: CSP 207837**  
**Solicitation Title: Org 054 – Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy - Renovation**

**IDENTIFICATION BADGE(S)**

1. Identification Badge: Offeror’s employees, agents, and consultants and subcontractors, subject to the criminal history record review requirement shall be identified by a photographic identification badge.
2. If the Offeror is the person or owner or operator of the business entity, that individual may not self-certify regarding the criminal history record information and its review and must submit original evidence acceptable to the District with this Agreement showing compliance.
3. Pursuant to Dallas ISD’s Board Policy CJA (LOCAL) Purchasing and Acquisition:  
  
All contracts must comply with the requirements for criminal background checks. All vendors must give advance notice to the District if the person or an owner or operator of the business entity has been convicted of a felony. The notice must include a general description of the conduct resulting in the conviction of a felony. The District may terminate any resulting agreement if the District determines that the person or business entity failed to provide notice as required by this paragraph or misrepresented the conduct resulting in the conviction.
4. The above requirement is required for all suppliers who will provide a service to Dallas ISD and will be on District property. The background checks and badges must be done through the supplier’s company or the District’s third-party provider, Field Control Analytics at [www.fcbackground.com/clientsignup](http://www.fcbackground.com/clientsignup) using project code: VENDISD15 or be issued by the supplier’s company.

Company Name: \_\_\_\_\_ Submitter’s Name/Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_ City, State and Zip Code: \_\_\_\_\_

Email Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Submitter’s Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ Telephone No. \_\_\_\_\_

Fax No. \_\_\_\_\_ 800 # (if available) \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

**Instructions to School District Contractors  
Regarding Criminal History Background Searches  
Under TEC 22.0835**

TEC 22.0834 directs school district contractors (i.e., Company) to obtain state and national criminal history background searches on their employees who will have direct contact with students, and to receive those results through the DPS criminal history clearinghouse (Fingerprint-based Applicant Clearinghouse of Texas –FACT). In order for contractors to receive the information through FACT, they must first establish an account with the DPS for FACT clearinghouse access. The Company owner must sign a user agreement with the DPS. To obtain the user agreement and more information, Company must contact:

Access and Dissemination Bureau  
Texas Department of Public Safety  
Crime Records Service  
P. O. Box 149322  
Austin, Texas 78714-9322

Email: [FACT@txdps.state.tx.us](mailto:FACT@txdps.state.tx.us)  
Phone: (512) 424-2365

For fastest service, please email or call. State in the message that Company is a school district contractor and needs to have an account established for DPS FACT clearinghouse access. Please include:

Company Name  
Company Address  
Company Phone  
Name of Company point of contact  
Phone of Company point of contact  
Company email to be used for notification of FACT records and messages

The information in the DPS FACT Clearinghouse is confidential, and access must be restricted to the least number of persons needed to review the records. The account must include at least one designated supervisor to make necessary changes and to monitor the site's security and the access to the criminal history data retrieved. Additional users must be limited to those who need to request, retrieve, or evaluate data regarding the individual applicants.

**PLEASE NOTE:** After the Company signs the DPS User Agreement for FACT, DPS will provide the Company with a revised **FAST Fingerprint Pass** that Company will have to provide to its employees and applicants. Company's employees and applicants will use that **FAST Fingerprint Pass** when scheduling their FAST fingerprinting.

Company Name: \_\_\_\_\_ Submitter's Name/Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_ City, State and Zip Code: \_\_\_\_\_

Email Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Submitter's Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ Telephone No. \_\_\_\_\_

Fax No. \_\_\_\_\_ 800 # (if available) \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

**SECTION 00 45 20 – CERTIFICATE OF NON-DISCRIMINATION**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

**DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
CERTIFICATE OF NON-DISCRIMINATION**

In connection with the execution of this Contract, the Contractor shall fully comply with the District non-discrimination requirement cited below.

"The Dallas Independent School District does not discriminate on the basis of sex, disability, race, religion, color, age, gender, sexual orientation, and/or national origin in the educational programs or activities which it operates, and it is required by Title IX, Section 504, Title VII, and the Americans With Disabilities Act not to discriminate in such a manner. This policy not to discriminate extends to employment in and admission to such programs and activities."

Submittal to District of reasonable evidence of discrimination will be grounds for Termination of the Agreement. This policy does not require the employment of unqualified persons.

By the signing of this Certificate, the Contractor signifies that it does not maintain or provide for its employees any segregated facilities at any of its establishments, and that it does not permit its employees to perform their services at any location, under its control, where segregated facilities are maintained. It certifies further that it will not maintain or provide for its employees any segregated facilities at any of its establishments, and that it will not permit its employees to perform their services at any location, under its control, where segregated facilities are maintained. The undersigned agrees that a breach of this certification is a violation of the Equal Opportunity Clause in this proposed Contract. As used in this certification, the term 'segregated facilities' means any waiting rooms, work areas, rest rooms and wash rooms, restaurants and other eating areas, time clocks, locker rooms and other storage or dressing areas, parking lots, drinking fountains, recreation or entertainment areas, transportation, and housing facilities provided for employees which are segregated on the basis of race, creed, color, or national origin, because of habit, local custom, or otherwise. It further agrees that (except where it obtained identical certifications from proposed consultants for specific time period) it will obtain identical certification from proposed Subcontractors prior to the award of a Contract exceeding \$10,000.00 which are not exempt from the provisions of the Equal Opportunity Clause; that it will retain such certifications in its files; and that it will forward the following notice to such proposed Subcontractors (except where the proposed Subcontractors have submitted identical certifications for specific time periods): **Notice to Prospective Subcontractors of requirement for certification of non-segregated facilities.** A certification of non-segregated facilities, as required by the May 19, 1967 Order (32 FR. 7439, May 19, 1967) on elimination of segregated facilities, by the Secretary of Labor, must be submitted prior to the award of a Contract exceeding \$10,000.00 which is not exempt from the provisions of the Equal Opportunity Clause. The certification may be submitted either for each subcontract or for all subcontracts during a period (i.e., quarterly, semiannually, or annually).

Note: The penalty for making false statements in offers is prescribed in 18 U.S.C. 1001.11."

By:

Signature:

\_\_\_\_\_  
(PRINT NAME OF PERSON SIGNING FOR CONTRACTOR)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(CONTRACTOR REPRESENTATIVE SIGNATURE)

Date:

Contractor:

\_\_\_\_\_

**SECTION 00 45 22 – NOTIFICATION OF HAZARDOUS MATERIALS**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

STATE OF TEXAS

COUNTY OF DALLAS

Before me, the undersigned authority on this day personally appeared \_\_\_\_\_, known to me to be the person whose name is subscribed below, who, on oath stated:

“As the appropriate official of the company, contractor, or subcontractor submitting this affidavit in conjunction with a bid submitted to the Dallas Independent School District, I acknowledge that this company, contractor, or subcontractor has been notified that copies of the Asbestos Hazard Emergency Response Act (AHERA) for the school(s) where such company, contractor or subcontractor has contracted to perform work are available at the individual school library and at the Professional Library at the Dallas Independent School District, 9400 N. Central Expressway, Dallas, Texas 75231. I understand that it is our responsibility to familiarize ourselves with such plans and that it is our responsibility to inform every worker that we use on this project as to the availability of these plans.

We also acknowledge that we will be required to obtain written clearance from the Dallas Independent School District, Bureau of Hazardous Materials Management, prior to executing any work on this project.”

\_\_\_\_\_

Name of Company

Signature \_\_\_\_\_

Name \_\_\_\_\_

Title \_\_\_\_\_

STATE OF TEXAS

COUNTY OF DALLAS

Sworn to and subscribed before me at Dallas, Texas this the \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20 \_\_\_\_\_, A.D.

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public in and for Dallas County, Texas



## FAMILY CONFLICT OF INTEREST QUESTIONNAIRE

This Questionnaire must be completed by every individual or entity that contracts or seeks to contract with the District for the sale or purchase of property, goods, or services.

The questionnaire(s) required by this policy shall be filed with the Director of Procurement Services not later than the seventh (7<sup>TH</sup>) business day after the date that the individual or entity begins contracts discussions or negotiations with the District or submits to the District an application, response to a request for proposals or bids, correspondence, or other writing related to a potential agreement with the District. If the individual or entity becomes aware of new facts or change of facts that would make the completed questionnaire(s) inaccurate, the individual or entity shall file an amended questionnaire(s) within seven (7) days of the date the individual or entity first learned of the new facts or changes in facts.

Family or family relationship means a member of an individual's immediate family, including spouse, parents, children (whether natural or adopted), aunts, uncles, and siblings.

For individuals who contract or seek to contract with the District for the sale or purchase of any property, goods, or services:

Identify each and every family relationship between yourself (and any member of your family) and any full-time District Employee (and any member of such employee's family) (please include name and sufficient information that will allow proper identification of any named individual):

---

For entities that contract or seek to contract with the District for the sale or purchase of property, goods, or services:

Identify each and every full-time District employee (and any member of the employee's family) who serves as an officer or director of the entity, or holds an ownership interest of 10 per cent or more in the entity (please include name and sufficient information that will allow proper identification of any named individual):

---

If more space is required please attach a second page. If the answer to any question is none, or not applicable, please write "None" or "Not Applicable" in the space reserved for that answer.

"I certify that the answers contained in this questionnaire are true and correct."

Individual: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Entity: \_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

---

---

# **M/WBE Compliance Guidelines and Forms**

**Date Issued:  
June 17, 2020**

**Contact Info:  
M/WBE Department  
9400 N. Central Expressway  
Dallas, TX 75231  
972-925-4140  
972-925-4141 (Fax)  
Website: [www.dallasisd.org](http://www.dallasisd.org)  
Contact: Annie Partee  
972-925-7222 or 972-925-4143**

Read Carefully: The M/WBE Program requirements are applicable to any bidder/proposer, including minority, women, and non-minority owned firms. These forms should be attached to any bid/proposal totaling \$50,000 or more and are due at the time of bid/proposal opening.



# Minority Women Business Enterprise

www.dallasisd.org/mwbe | 972.925.4140 | mwbe@dallasisd.org



## Construction | Competitive Sealed Proposals (CSP) M/WBE Compliance Guidelines and Forms

The Information gathered from these forms will be used as part of the Minority/Women Business Enterprise (M/WBE) evaluation. Please visit our website at [www.dallasisd.org/mwbe](http://www.dallasisd.org/mwbe) for a fillable version of these forms.

To be completed and signed by the Prime Vendor			
Bid Title:		Bid/RFP Number:	
School:		Org. Number:	
Description of Work:			
Company Information			
Company Name:		Tax ID#:	
Is your company a Certified Minority or Woman Owned Business (M/WBE)?	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	If "Yes," include your current certification, ethnicity and gender information below. Dallas ISD recognized M/WBE Certification Agencies: Refer to Section 14 on Page 10. If "No," indicate your ethnicity & gender below.	
Certification Information			
M/WBE Certification Agency	M/WBE Certification Number	Ethnicity	Gender
Authorized Agent's Information			
*Authorized Agent's Name:			
Authorized Agent's Email:		Phone:	
Company Address:			
City:		State:	Zip:

\* Authorized Agent is a person who has the authority to enter into a legally binding contract with Dallas ISD.

**Required Signature.** The undersigned authorized agent agrees that he/she has read and understands the M/WBE Compliance Guidelines and Forms and that all information is correct to the best of his/her knowledge.

Authorized Agent's Signature (Sign below)	Date:
X	

Company Name: \_\_\_\_\_ Bid/RFP No.: \_\_\_\_\_

**Section 1. M/WBE Compliance Reporting**

The M/WBE Department has adopted the usage of B2G Now, a Diversity Management and Contract Compliance System, to assist with the management of the monthly compliance reporting requirement. Indicate the person who is knowledgeable about M/WBE utilization on this project below.

M/WBE Contact Person:	
Email:	
Phone:	

**Section 2. Diversity Plans**

Does your company have an Affirmative Action, Equal Employment Opportunity or Supplier Diversity Plan?

- Yes. If "Yes," attach a copy of your plan immediately following the M/WBE forms.
- No.

**Section 3. Workforce Composition**

Employee Category	African American		Asian		Hispanic		Native American		Non-Minority		Total Employees	
	Male	Female	Male	Female	Male	Female	Male	Female	Male	Female	Male	Female
Executive & Managerial												
Technical & Skilled												
Office & Clerical												
Other												
<b>TOTAL</b>												

**Section 4. M/WBE References**

List two (2) M/WBE companies that have performed work for your company.

Company Name:	
Contact Person:	
Email:	
Phone Number:	
Project Name:	

Company Name:	
Contact Person:	
Email:	
Phone Number:	
Project Name:	

**Section 5. Mentor Protégé Program**

Does your company currently participate in a Mentor Protégé Program as a mentor to an M/WBE company?  
Refer to Section 20 on Page 13 for additional information.

- Yes.** If “Yes,” attach a signed, dated and notarized copy of the Mentor Protégé Agreement and notarized minutes.  
 **No.**

**Section 6. Prime-Subcontractor Team**

Is your company bidding as a Prime-Subcontractor Team with a certified M/WBE company?  
Refer to Section 17 on Page 11 for additional information.

- Yes.** If “Yes,” identify the certified M/WBE company below. Attach a signed, dated and notarized Prime-Subcontractor Teaming Agreement.  
 **No.**

M/WBE Company	M/WBE Certification Agency	M/WBE Certification Number	Ethnicity/Gender

**Section 7. Joint Venture (JV)**

Is your company bidding as a Joint Venture (JV) with a certified M/WBE company?  
Refer to Section 18 on Page 12 for additional information.

- Yes.** If “Yes,” identify all partners (including your company\*) below and attach a signed, dated, and notarized Dallas ISD Master JV Agreement. Each JV partner (excluding your company) must complete Sections A through D on Page 4.  
 **No.**

Joint Venture Majority Partner*	
Company:	Contact Person:
Email:	Phone:
JV % Split:	

Joint Venture Partner		
Company:	Contact Person:	
Email:	Phone:	
M/WBE Certification Agency:		
M/WBE Certification Number:		
Ethnicity:	Gender:	JV % Split:

**COMPLETE SECTIONS A THROUGH D FOR EACH JOINT VENTURE PARTNER(S). USE ONE PAGE PER PARTNER**

**Section A. Diversity Plans**

Does your company have an Affirmative Action, Equal Employment Opportunity or Supplier Diversity Plans?

- Yes.** If "Yes," attach a copy of your plan immediately following the M/WBE Compliance Guidelines & Forms.
- No.**

**Section B. Workforce Composition**

Employee Category	African American		Asian		Hispanic		Native American		Non-Minority		Total Employees	
	Male	Female	Male	Female	Male	Female	Male	Female	Male	Female	Male	Female
Executive & Managerial												
Technical & Skilled												
Office & Clerical												
Other												
<b>TOTAL</b>												

**Section C. M/WBE References**

List two (2) M/WBE companies that have performed work for your company.

Company Name:	
Contact Person:	
Email:	
Phone Number:	
Project Name:	

Company Name:	
Contact Person:	
Email:	
Phone Number:	
Project Name:	

**Section D. Mentor Protégé Program**

Does your company currently participate in a Mentor Protégé Program, as a mentor to an M/WBE company?  
Refer to Section 20 on Page 13 for additional information.

- Yes.** If "Yes," attach a signed, dated and notarized copy of the Mentor Protégé Agreement and notarized minutes.
- No.**

**Section 8. Subcontractor and Prime Self-Performance Participation**

Will you use any subcontractors, sub consultants, suppliers (M/WBE and/or Non-M/WBE) as part of this bid/proposal?

Yes. I plan to utilize subcontractors as part of this bid/proposal. Complete Section 10 below.

No.

Will you self-perform the entire scope of work?

Yes. I plan to self-perform the entire scope of work with my own workforce. If you are a Certified M/WBE Prime complete Section 9 below.

No.

**Section 9. Certified M/WBE Prime Self-Performance**

**Certified M/WBE Prime Self-Performance**

If you are a Certified M/WBE Prime and will self-perform with your own workforce the management of the project, complete the Certified M/WBE Prime Self-Performance chart below. The work should be consistent with industry standards. The M/WBE Prime’s self-performance of a specialty trade or project scope of work shall be counted toward the goal, up to a maximum of 50% of the M/WBE project goal. Refer to Section 15 on Page 10 for additional information.

Certified M/WBE Prime Self-Performance		
Certified M/WBE Prime Company’s Name:		Contract Amount
Contact Person:		M/WBE %
Ethnicity:	Gender:	
Scope of Work:		

**Section 10. Subcontractor Utilization**

List all (minority and non-minority) subcontractors, suppliers, sub consultants, or sole proprietors that will be utilized in this bid/proposal. Only Certified M/WBE Prime Self-Performance and Certified M/WBE Subcontractors will be counted towards the M/WBE goals. If you will not utilize M/WBE subcontractors, complete Section 11 on Page 7. For information on the change of subcontractor policy refer to Section 16 on Page 11.

**Non-certified companies will not be counted towards the M/WBE goal.**

Subcontractor/Supplier Information		
Subcontractor/Supplier Company’s Name:		Contract Amount
Address:	City:	State:
Contact Person:		Zip:
Ethnicity:	Gender:	
Phone:	Email:	
M/WBE Certification Agency:	Certification #:	
Scope of Work:		

Additional Subcontractor/Supplier Information on the following page

Company Name: \_\_\_\_\_ Bid/RFP No.: \_\_\_\_\_

**Subcontractor/Supplier Information Continued**

Subcontractor/Supplier Company's Name:				Contract Amount	M/WBE %
Address:		City:	State:	Zip:	
Contact Person:					
Ethnicity:			Gender:		
Phone:			Email:		
M/WBE Certification Agency:			Certification #:		
Scope of Work:					
Subcontractor/Supplier Company's Name:				Contract Amount	M/WBE %
Address:		City:	State:	Zip:	
Contact Person:					
Ethnicity:			Gender:		
Phone:			Email:		
M/WBE Certification Agency:			Certification #:		
Scope of Work:					
Subcontractor/Supplier Company's Name:				Contract Amount	M/WBE %
Address:		City:	State:	Zip:	
Contact Person:					
Ethnicity:			Gender:		
Phone:			Email:		
M/WBE Certification Agency:			Certification #:		
Scope of Work:					
Subcontractor/Supplier Company's Name:				Contract Amount	M/WBE %
Address:		City:	State:	Zip:	
Contact Person:					
Ethnicity:			Gender:		
Phone:			Email:		
M/WBE Certification Agency:			Certification #:		
Scope of Work:					
Subcontractor/Supplier Company's Name:				Contract Amount	M/WBE %
Address:		City:	State:	Zip:	
Contact Person:					
Ethnicity:			Gender:		
Phone:			Email:		
M/WBE Certification Agency:			Certification #:		
Scope of Work:					
				<b>Total:</b>	

If you have additional subcontractors/suppliers make copies of this form.

Office Use Only			
Contract Amount	M/WBE Contract Total	M/WBE Percentage	M/WBE Coordinator



Company Name: \_\_\_\_\_ Bid/RFP No.: \_\_\_\_\_

**Certified M/WBE Subcontractor Performance.** The M/WBE subcontractors, suppliers, and/or vendors must be 1<sup>st</sup>, 2<sup>nd</sup> or 3<sup>rd</sup> tier subcontractors, suppliers, and/or vendors when calculating participation. In order to prevent double counting, the district will count the M/WBE subcontractor participation for the 1<sup>st</sup> tier firm. If the 1<sup>st</sup> tier isn't a certified M/WBE, the district will count the 2<sup>nd</sup> tier M/WBE subcontractor. If the 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> tier aren't certified M/WBEs, the district will count the 3<sup>rd</sup> tier M/WBE subcontractor. The expenditures by M/WBEs for materials or supplies toward M/WBE goals are calculated as follows:

	Type	M/WBE Percentage	Definition
A.	M/WBE Manufacturer	100%	Operates or maintains a factory or establishment that produces on the premises; the materials, supplies, articles, or equipment required under the contract.
B.	M/WBE Regular Dealer	60%	Owns, operates, or maintains a store, warehouse, in which the materials, supplies, articles or equipment are kept in stock, and regularly sold or leased to the public.
C.	M/WBE Representatives	Amount of Commission or Fees	Packagers, brokers, manufacturers' representatives

**Section 11. Good Faith Effort**

All district prime vendors are required to demonstrate positive and reasonable good faith efforts to subcontract with M/WBEs. **Complete this section if only non-M/WBE subcontractors will be utilized.**

	Yes	No
1. Was contact made with M/WBEs by telephone or written correspondence at least one week before the bid was due to determine whether any M/WBEs were interested in subcontracting and/or joint ventures?		
2. Were contracts broken down to provide opportunities for subcontracting?		
3. Was your company represented at a pre-bid/proposal conference to discuss, among other matters, M/WBE participation opportunities and obtain a list (not more than two months old) of certified M/WBEs?		
4. Was information provided to M/WBEs including, but not limited to bonding, lines of credit, technical assistance, insurance, scope of work, plans/specifications?		
5. Were subcontracting opportunities advertised in general circulation, trade associations, M/WBE focused media and/or minority chambers of commerce?		
6. Did you encourage non-certified M/WBEs to pursue certification status?		
7. Were negotiations conducted in good faith with interested M/WBEs?		
8. Were the services utilized of available minority and women, community organizations, contractor groups, local, state, and federal business assistance offices, and other organizations that provide assistance in the identification of M/WBEs?		
<p><b>Special Note:</b> The good faith efforts documentation is subject to an M/WBE audit. Upon request, you will be required to provide supporting documentation for the purpose of verifying your good faith efforts.</p>		

Company Name: \_\_\_\_\_ Bid/RFP No.: \_\_\_\_\_

**Section 12. Letter of Intent (LOI) [Not required with the initial bid/proposal]**

To be submitted at the contract negotiation meeting with the district, or as requested by the M/WBE Department. Complete one LOI form for each proposed M/WBE subcontractor.

Org/School: \_\_\_\_\_

**Prime vendors must submit a Letter of Intent for each M/WBE subcontractor who will be utilized to supply any services, labor or materials pursuant to the bid/proposal. If necessary, make copies.**

This Letter of Intent is submitted to confirm the intent of the prime vendor and subcontractor to conduct good faith negotiations toward a subcontract agreement, with terms agreeable to both parties, for the scope of work identified herein. The parties acknowledge that any obligation of the prime vendor to enter into a subcontract agreement with subcontractor is expressly contingent upon the prime vendor entering into a contract with Dallas ISD for the work as defined in the bid/proposal.

**This document must be completed in its entirety by the prime vendor and signed by both the prime vendor and the M/WBE subcontractor.**

*Any false statements or misrepresentations regarding information submitted on this form may be a criminal offense in violation of Section 37.10 of the Texas Penal Code.*

**A. M/WBE Subcontractor's Information:**

The M/WBE subcontractor \_\_\_\_\_ has been certified by a Dallas ISD recognized certification agency.

Name of Certifying Agency: \_\_\_\_\_ Certification #: \_\_\_\_\_ Ethnicity/Gender: \_\_\_\_\_  
Print or Type Certification Agency's Name

*Pursuant to district policy (CH Local), only M/WBEs who are currently certified with one of the Dallas ISD recognized certifying agencies (see Section 14 on Page 10 for listing) may be counted towards meeting the district's M/WBE goal at the subcontracting level.*

**The M/WBE subcontractor is prepared to perform the following services, labor, or materials listed in connection with the project:**

Scope of Work: \_\_\_\_\_

Price: \$ \_\_\_\_\_

<b>M/WBE Subcontractor Signature Required</b>		
Review the above information for accuracy prior to signing this Letter of Intent.		
X		
<small>Print or Type Name and Title of M/WBE Owner, President or Authorized Agent</small>	<small>Signature</small>	<small>Date</small>

**B. Prime Vendor's Information:**

Contact Person: \_\_\_\_\_ Company Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Address, City, State & Zip: \_\_\_\_\_

**Declaration of prime vendor/Declarant:**

I \_\_\_\_\_ HEREBY DECLARE AND AFFIRM that I am the \_\_\_\_\_  
Name of Declarant (Print or Type) Title of Declarant (Print or Type)

and am duly authorized to make this declaration on behalf of \_\_\_\_\_  
Company Name (Print or Type)

and that I have personally reviewed this Letter of Intent. To the best of my knowledge, information and belief, the facts and representations contained in this form are true and correct. The owner, president or authorized agent of the M/WBE firm signed this form, and no material facts have been omitted.

<b>Prime Vendor/Declarant Signature Required</b>		
Review the above information for accuracy prior to signing this Letter of Intent.		
X		
<small>Print or Type Name</small>	<small>Signature</small>	<small>Date</small>

**General Information regarding the M/WBE Compliance Guidelines and Forms**

The district’s aspirational M/WBE goal is **30%** for goods, services, and construction contracts. The district’s aspirational M/WBE goal for bond funded professional service contracts is **35%**. The district may assign a contract specific M/WBE goal in lieu of the aspirational goal. Review your solicitation documents to determine which M/WBE goal will apply. The established M/WBE goal is applicable to any change orders, additional services, modifications or revisions to the original contract.

**Section 13. During Bid/Proposal Submission**

**M/WBE Forms.** Submit the completed, signed, and dated M/WBE Compliance Guidelines & Forms by the due date. Include all M/WBE supporting documentation including, but not limited to M/WBE Certificates, Affirmative Action, Equal Employment Opportunity or Supplier Diversity Plan, signed, dated and notarized Joint Venture Agreement, Mentor Protégé Agreement and Minutes, or Prime-Subcontractor Teaming Agreement.

**M/WBE Scoring Criteria.** The district’s M/WBE Evaluation Scoring Criteria has been established as follows:

	<b>M/WBE Criteria</b>	<b>Maximum Point Allocation</b>
<b>A.</b>	Proposer demonstrated a commitment to the district’s M/WBE program by providing enhancements to the administration of the proposer’s contracting process for the work to be done by M/WBE firms. <i>Examples of this commitment may include any of the following: expedited payments, Mentor Protégé Programs, early release of retainage, expanding the pool of diverse subcontractors to firms that have not done business with the district, etc.</i>	3
<b>B.</b>	Proposer submitted a list of two (2) M/WBE subcontractor references.	2
<b>C.</b>	Proposer is a certified M/WBE <b>OR</b> Proposer submitted a Joint Venture Agreement with a certified M/WBE <b>OR</b> Proposer submitted a Prime Subcontractor Teaming Agreement with a certified M/WBE.	5
<b>D.</b>	Proposer submitted a diverse list of certified M/WBE subcontractors, subconsultants or suppliers that meets or exceeds the district’s M/WBE aspirational goal in meaningful and significant roles <b>OR</b> Proposer demonstrated outreach designed to meet the M/WBE project goals with a diverse M/WBE team of subcontractors, suppliers and subconsultants.	5
<b>E.</b>	Proposer demonstrated a comprehensive framework and understanding of the district’s M/WBE program by: providing a written and detailed M/WBE compliance plan, designating a high ranking individual who will be responsible for M/WBE contract compliance, monitoring and reporting, ensuring no unauthorized changes to M/WBE subcontractors, adhering to the M/WBE commitment and subcontractor payment terms, executing the M/WBE subcontracting schedule, complying with the district’s M/WBE Program guidelines, etc.	5
	<b>Total Points</b>	<b>20</b>

**Subcontractor Utilization.** Complete Section I0 on Page 5 for the subcontractors you plan to utilize. Attach a copy of the current M/WBE certificate or proof of M/WBE certification for each M/WBE subcontractor. Contact the M/WBE Department if you would like a listing of certified M/WBE subcontractors or suppliers.

#### Section 14. Recognized Certifying Agencies

The district accepts M/WBE certifications issued by:

North Central Texas Regional Certification Agency (NCTRCA)	State of Texas' Historically Underutilized Business (HUB)
D/FW Minority Supplier Development Council (DFW MSDC)	Women's Business Council Southwest (WBC SW)
Department of Transportation (DOT)	South Central Texas Regional Certification Agency (SCTRCA)
City of Houston	Corpus Christi Regional Transportation Authority
City of Austin	Small Business Administration (SBA 8A) or certified SDB
National Minority Supplier Development Council (NMSDC)	National Women's Business Enterprise Certification (WBENC)

*Other certifications may be considered on an individual basis. Only certified minority and women-owned companies will be counted towards the prime's M/WBE subcontracting goals. Vendors do not have to be a certified M/WBE to participate in the district's contracting and purchasing activities.*

#### Section 15. Certified M/WBE Prime Self-Performance

- The M/WBE prime must be a bona fide business with real and continuing ownership for more than a year prior to the solicitation and was not created merely for the purpose of meeting this evaluation criteria.
- The M/WBE prime must be certified at the time of submission of the proposal.
- The M/WBE prime must be economically independent, perform commercially useful functions and perform the management of the project or the specialty trade work, consistent with industry practices, with its own workforce.
- The M/WBE's self-performance of a specialty trade or project scope of work shall be counted toward the M/WBE goal, up to a maximum of 50% of the M/WBE project goal.

*For example, an M/WBE prime elects to self-perform the interior finish out painting which equals 10% of the project's total costs and the goal for the project is 30%. The M/WBE prime's participation will count 10% toward the M/WBE project goal of 30%. The remaining M/WBE subcontracting goal after applying the MWBE prime's self-performance on the project is a 20% M/WBE subcontracting goal.*

- If the M/WBE prime's self- performance exceeds the M/WBE contract goal, a maximum of 50% of the M/WBE project goal will be applied toward the goal.

*For example, the M/WBE prime self-performs the concrete work for the project and the concrete work is 30% of the total project costs. The MWBE prime's participation will count 15% toward the M/WBE project goal of 30%. The remaining M/WBE subcontracting goal after applying the M/WBE prime's self- performance on the project is a 15% MWBE subcontracting goal.*

#### Section 16. After Bid/RFP Submission

**Letter of Intent.** The awarded prime vendor who will subcontract portions of the work should complete the *Letter of Intent to Perform/Contract as an M/WBE Subcontractor* form (Section 12 on Page 8) for each proposed M/WBE subcontractor. The prime vendor will be required to provide the *Letter of Intent to Perform/Contract as an M/WBE Subcontractor* form at the contract negotiation meeting with the district, or as requested by the M/WBE Department.

**Changes to the List of Subcontractors.** A Request for Approval of Contract Change form must be submitted to the M/WBE Department for approval **prior** to any changes to the M/WBE subcontractor utilization listing in Section 10. A written justification and supporting documentation are required from the prime requesting the change. This applies after the Bid/RFP submission and throughout the contract duration.

**Subcontractor Payment.** The Prime vendor shall submit an M/WBE Pay Activity Report (PAR) indicating the amounts paid (along with required proof of payments) to its subcontractors with each pay application or as requested by the district.

- Acceptable proof of payments includes: (1) Emails from the Subcontractor verifying the payment amount, date paid, school name and/or org #, and project information (2) Partial Lien Releases, (3) Cancelled Checks, or (4) Proof of Electronic Funds Transfer;
- All Prime vendors must pay all submitted invoices, including retainage to subcontractors, suppliers, or entities within **10 days** of receiving payment from the district;
- No Prime vendor shall withhold a non-disputed subcontractor payment;
- No Prime vendor may withhold retainage greater than 5% from the subcontractor.

**Contract Execution between Prime Vendor and Subcontractor.** Prime vendor agrees to establish a written contract with each subcontractor. At minimum, the contract should include the scope of work, payment terms, prompt payment clause and retainage clause.

**Changes to the original M/WBE Commitment – After Contract Execution.** The prime vendor shall notify the M/WBE Department if the percentage of M/WBE participation falls below the level of participation represented in the contract. The prime vendor shall promptly notify the M/WBE Department within seven (7) days and obtain a listing of other certified M/WBE vendors to meet the commitment amount.

**Records Retention.** The prime vendor will be required to maintain records showing the subcontractor/supplier awarded contracts, subcontractor payment history, efforts to identify and award contracts to M/WBEs, and copies of executed contracts with M/WBEs. The contractor must provide access to books, records and accounts to authorized district, state and federal officials for the purpose of verifying M/WBE participation and good faith efforts. District contracts are subject to an M/WBE audit.

#### **Section 17. Prime-Subcontractor Teaming Agreement**

The Prime-Subcontractor Teaming Agreement will be evaluated based upon the below referenced criteria. The designated subcontractor in this agreement must be a certified M/WBE. There is a maximum of five (5) numerical points available.

Proposer submitted a teaming arrangement and/or strategic partnership with subprime contracting with a certified MWBE firm(s). The certified MWBE firm(s) provides prime management, control and supervision of a clear and distinct portion of the specialty trade(s) or project scope of work in a meaningful and significant role(s). Proposer will establish a teaming agreement which defines the minimum M/WBE subcontractor commitment. The teaming agreement defines what trade(s) the subcontractor will perform, and the subcontractor is certified in the respective subcontracting scope.

	<b>Teaming Agreement Scoring Analysis</b>	<b>Located on Page</b>	<b>Available Points</b>
<b>A.</b>	The teaming agreement provides the certified M/WBE firm(s) with prime management, control and supervision of a clear and distinct portion of the project scope of work in meaningful and significant roles.		2.00
<b>B.</b>	A pre-negotiated subcontract form is an exhibit to the teaming agreement.		1.00
<b>C.</b>	The teaming agreement contains a dispute resolution procedure.		0.50
<b>D.</b>	The teaming agreement only terminates upon owner non-select or owner non-award.		0.50
<b>E.</b>	The teaming agreement requires subcontract award to the M/WBE partner identified in the teaming agreement.		1.00
	<b>Total</b>		<b>5.00</b>

### **Section 18. Joint Venture Program Information**

The objective of the district’s Joint Venture (JV) Program is to further the development, growth, and capabilities of minority and women-owned businesses that allow such businesses to offer the district the best combination of performance, cost, and delivery of service. A Joint Venture is an association of two (2) or more companies with a certified minority or woman-owned business to form a new company. The Joint Venture parties are required to utilize the Dallas ISD’s Master Joint Venture Agreement. The agreement must be signed, dated and notarized by all Joint Venture parties. The Joint Venture does not replace a prime contractor’s responsibility to satisfy applicable M/WBE program requirements, including M/WBE goals.

Companies seeking to participate in a Joint Venture arrangement has the burden of demonstrating to the district, by a preponderance of the evidence, that it meets the requirements of Board Policy (CH) Local with respect to being an eligible Joint Venture for counting purposes. The district will analyze whether the stated Joint Venture is realistic considering the number of employees, experience, resources, certification type, and other resources that each party provides to the Joint Venture. The Joint Venture Partnership must include a certified M/WBE Partner, based on the percentage allocated, who is able to adequately bond the project, have the experience and resource to perform the services, labor or material listed.

The Joint Venture Partner(s) may provide co-surety bond or bonds in proportionate percentage to their ownership in the Joint Venture and to other parties are applicable in a form acceptable to the owner. The Joint Venture may also provide in a form acceptable to the owner any bond or bonds in the name of the Joint Venture in lieu of the co-surety arrangement; provide an Up Front Joint Agreement (SAA Form #1), and an executed copy of the indemnity agreement signed by all of the parties associated with the SAA Form #1.

A separate bank account in the name of the Joint Venture must be established by the Joint Venture. The bank account will require the signature of an authorized representative of each party or his or her designee for withdrawal by check or documented approval of an authorized representative for withdrawal by electronic means.

Refer to the district’s website at [www.dallasisd.org/mwbe](http://www.dallasisd.org/mwbe) for the required Dallas ISD's Master Joint Venture Agreement and Joint Venture Guidelines.

**Section 19. Construction M/WBE Joint Venture Scoring Analysis**

The Joint Venture (JV) Agreement will be evaluated based upon the below referenced criteria. One of the JV partners must be a certified minority or woman-owned business. There is a maximum of five (5) numerical points available. Refer to Section 18 on Page 12 for additional information.

The proposer must submit an approved, signed, dated, and notarized Dallas ISD Master Joint Venture Agreement. Any modifications to the Dallas ISD Master Joint Venture Agreement and amendments must be submitted for review with the proposal and include highlighted proposed changes or modifications to the agreement for review and approval of Dallas ISD’s M/WBE office.

<b>A. M/WBE Joint Venture Partner</b>	<b>Points</b>
Does it identify the distinct, clearly defined portion of the work provided by each M/WBE joint venture partner, in significant and meaningful ways? The work must be separate, clear and distinguishable. Specify the nature of the work and what it will entail. Complete exhibit A of the Dallas ISD Master Joint Venture Agreement.	3.00
<b>B. Staffing Plan</b>	
Does it provide a staffing plan to be determined per the established participation percentages indicating the number of employees to be provided by each M/WBE joint venture partner? This should include a project organizational chart and a resumé for each key personnel that includes length of employment, time serviced in their role(s), and experience within the industry. Complete exhibit B of the Dallas ISD Master Joint Venture Agreement.	1.00
<b>C. Financial and Bonding Information</b>	
Does it provide a letter from a financial institution or bonding surety company, substantiating the financial strength or bonding capacity of each M/WBE joint venture partner(s)? This document should commensurate each M/WBE joint venture partner(s) percentage split. Complete exhibit C of the Dallas ISD Master Joint Venture Agreement.	1.00
<b>Total Points</b>	<b>5.00</b>

**Section 20. Mentor Protégé Program Information**

The Minority/Women Business Enterprise (M/WBE) Department's Mentor-Protégé program aims to stimulate the growth of minority and women-owned businesses through education, business development, and training. A mentor should be willing to advise and support the protégé and help identify the needs and skills of the protégé. The Mentor Protégé Agreement, meeting minutes, progress reports, and deliverables should be signed by all parties, dated, and notarized.

**JOINT VENTURE AGREEMENT**

**BY AND BETWEEN**

---

**AND**

---

**AS**

\_\_\_\_\_, a Joint Venture JV

**FOR**

**Dallas Independent School District**

---



## JOINT VENTURE AGREEMENT

THIS AGREEMENT is made and entered into this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_ (the "Effective Date"), by and between \_\_\_\_\_ Inc. ("NAME"), a \_\_\_\_\_ ("STATE") corporation, whose business address is \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ ("CITY") , \_\_\_\_\_ ("STATE") \_\_\_\_\_ ("ZIP"); and \_\_\_\_\_, Inc. ("NAME"), a \_\_\_\_\_ ("STATE") corporation, whose business address is \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ ("CITY") , \_\_\_\_\_ ("STATE") \_\_\_\_\_ ("ZIP"), hereinafter referred to individually as a "Party" or collectively as the "Parties". The name of the Joint Venture shall be called \_\_\_\_\_ . All business of the Joint Venture shall be conducted under this name.

### Recitals

- A. The Parties have agreed to enter into a joint venture for the purpose of submitting a proposal, bid, solicitation or otherwise (the "Proposal") to provide owners representative services or work to the Dallas Independent School District in response to Bid/RFP/RFQ No. \_\_\_\_\_ entitled \_\_\_\_\_ (the "Solicitation"), which to the extent the Proposal is successful, will result in a contract with the Owner.
- B. The Parties desire to enter into this Agreement to fix and define between themselves their respective interests and responsibilities for the purposes of providing the requisite Services, Work, or both.
- C. The Parties affirm and agree that they shall participate in the preparation of the Proposal and pursue the Contract with each other, that no Party shall submit a competitive proposal or otherwise seek the award of the Contract contemplated herein either alone or with others without notice to the Parties to this Agreement and entering into a Non-Disclosure Agreement, and in reliance thereon have entered into this Agreement.
- D. The Parties agree and affirm to register the Joint Venture with the State and forward the Certificate of Filing and Tax Identification Number to the Dallas Independent School District, if the Joint Venture is awarded a Project with the Owner.
- E. The Parties affirm and agree the joint venture participation split represented in this Agreement and no employee or former employee [of less than one year], relative, affiliate or subsidiary company is listed or included as a joint venture partner.
- F. In the event the Parties agree to pursue other DISD projects as a joint venture, they will enter into an addendum to this Agreement, subject to District approval, identifying that project and any modified terms of this Agreement, if any, in connection with the pursuit or award of same.

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the mutual covenants contained herein, it is agreed as follows:

### Agreement

## **Article 1: Definitions and Interpretation**

1.1 Capitalized terms used in this Agreement shall have the meaning set forth below or as defined elsewhere in this Agreement.

- 1.2.1 “Agreement” means this document.
- 1.2.1 “Managing Business Party” the Joint venture partner designated to provide the accounting and financial services, on behalf of the Joint Venture required to reflect the conduct of the Joint Venture’s affairs
- 1.2.2 “Owner” means Dallas Independent School District.
- 1.2.3 “Contract” means any contract (together with any amendments, supplements or modifications thereto) awarded to the Joint Venture by the Owner for the performance of the Services, Work, or both, for the Project
- 1.2.4 “Deputy Project Manager” means the individual specifically designated pursuant to Article 3 of and charged with assisting the Project manager and Senior Project manager in the overall responsibility to direct the Joint Venture’s performance under the Contract.
- 1.2.5 “IRC” means the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 as amended as of the date of this contract.
- 1.2.6 “Joint Venture” means an association between \_\_\_\_\_, Inc., and \_\_\_\_\_, Inc. engaged in a solitary business enterprise for profit.
- 1.2.7 “Management Committee” means the group formed pursuant to Article 4 as the final authority of the Joint Venture and having the powers and duties as provided herein.
- 1.2.8 “Project” means the “DALLAS ISD” Construction” project the subject of the solicitation.
- 1.2.9 “Project Manager” or “Senior Project Manager” means the individual specifically designated pursuant to Article 3 of and charged with overall responsibility to direct the Joint Venture’s performance under the Contract.
- 1.2.10 “Proposal” means the proposal(s) submitted by the Joint Venture to the Owner to secure the award of the Contract for the Project. The Proposal shall include, but not limited to, all pursuit efforts, including any presentation or other interview. The term “Proposal” does not include task order specific proposals.
- 1.2.11 “Services” or “Work” means services or work under the Contract to be performed by the Joint Venture in furtherance of the Project.
- 1.2.12 “Task Order Contract” means a contract for services that does not procure or specify a firm quantity of services ( other than a minimum or maximum quantity) and that provides for the issuance of orders for the performance of tasks during the period of the contract. 1.2. Terms importing the singular include the plural and vice versa where the context requires.

1.3. The headings used in this Agreement are included for ease of reference only and shall not affect the construction or interpretation hereof.

## **Article 2: Association of the Parties**

2.1 Formation. The Parties hereby agree to form the Joint Venture pursuant to the provisions hereof for the limited purpose and scope set forth in this Agreement. The Parties hereby further agree to perform the Joint Venture’s responsibilities and obligations as an integrated team, providing staffing (including key

personnel) and resources generally in proportion to their respective interests in the Joint Venture as set forth in Article 5.

2.2 Purpose. This Joint Venture is entered into solely for the purpose of submitting the Proposal and, if the Contract is awarded to the Joint Venture, the performance of the Services, Work, or both, as identified in the Solicitation. The Parties agree that the Joint Venture is a temporary association and that it will not place any limitation or liability on the Parties beyond the specific undertakings contained in this Agreement.

2.3 Name. The Joint Venture shall operate under the name \_\_\_\_\_, a Joint Venture.

2.4 Duration. The Joint Venture will continue until dissolved in accordance with this Agreement. Subject to the foregoing, the Joint Venture shall:

2.4.1 dissolve automatically (i) should the Parties fail to agree as to the form, terms or conditions of the Proposal, (ii) if the Project is cancelled prior to award, or (iii) if the Contract is not awarded to the Joint Venture, but only after any challenge to the award of the Contract, by administrative protest or litigation (or appeal of a decision on such protest or litigation), is fully concluded without an award of the Contract to the Joint Venture, or

2.4.2 if awarded the Contract, be dissolved upon completion of all Services, Work, or both, required to be performed under the Contract, receipt of full payment of all sums for which the Joint Venture is entitled under the Contract, the settlement of all disputes and final accounting, and the expiration of all warranties and all other obligations arising in connection with the Contract.

2.4.3 if awarded the Contract, the Joint Venture shall not be dissolved, without thirty (30) days written notice and the prior written consent of the Dallas Independent School District

2.5 In the event the Contract is terminated, the Joint Venture shall conclude its affairs in an orderly manner at the earliest practicable date, subject to the requirements of Section 2.4 above. However, should the Services, Work, or both, be only suspended, the Joint Venture shall remain in effect during the period of such suspension.

2.6 The Parties agree that they shall cause the Joint Venture to sign the Contract promptly upon its being tendered for signature in a form mutually agreed upon by the Parties and the Owner.

2.7 Scope of Services or Work. The Services, Work, or both, to be performed by the Joint Venture shall generally be of the type and nature described in Exhibit A.

### **Article 3: Operation of the Joint Venture**

3.1 If required by applicable law or regulation, the Joint Venture shall be registered and licensed as a business in the jurisdiction where the Joint Venture's principal office is located.

3.2 The principal business address of the Joint Venture shall be \_\_\_\_\_ . Services may be performed in the Owner's offices, in the Joint Venture office, in the respective offices of the Parties or DALLAS ISD as authorized, at the project site or at such locations as the Parties may mutually agree upon.

3.3 All correspondence from the Owner regarding the Contract shall be sent to the Project Manager and/or \_\_\_\_\_ at the principal business address of the Joint Venture, with a copy provided to each of the Joint Venture members.

3.4 Initial Proposal Effort. Each Party will participate in preparing the Proposal required for the Contract under the direction of the Project Manager. Each Party will bear its own labor and travel costs associated

with this effort. Third party direct costs for expenses and other services such as video imaging, photography, document development, technical writing and editing, graphics, printing, and reproduction, as well as any specialty sub-consultant services, shall be shared between the Parties in proportion to each Party's Agreed Percentage of Participation as specified in Article 5; provided, however, that all Parties must pre-authorize any such expenditure.

3.5 Integrated Services. During the construction and pre-construction phase of the project, the Parties intend to perform the Services as an integrated organization with each Party providing competent personnel to the Joint Venture consistent with the staffing resource plan set forth in Exhibit B and as necessary to enable the Joint Venture to successfully perform the Services, Work, or both, in accordance with the terms of the Contract. In addition, and at the direction of the Management Committee, Services may be performed, in whole or in part, by consultants retained by the Joint Venture, one or more of the Parties, or both, and Work may be performed, in whole or in part, by subcontractors retained by the Joint Venture, one or more of the Parties, or both. Notwithstanding the foregoing, personnel assigned to the Joint Venture shall remain on the payroll of the assigning Party. The staffing resource plan may be amended from time to time as may be deemed necessary by the Management Committee. A Party may not remove from the Project or reassign to another project any "key personnel" listed on Exhibit B without the prior consent of the Management Committee and notice to the Director of the MWBE Department or his/her designee within five (5) business days from the date of removal or reassignment.

3.6 Subject to the limitation noted above with respect to key personnel, in the event that an individual assigned to the Project is unable or unwilling to perform the Services, the Work, or both, in a professional and timely manner, or if the Owner directs the Joint Venture to remove a particular individual from the Project, or if the Project Manager, in the good faith exercise of his/her discretion, determines that an individual should be removed from the Project, then the assigning Party shall replace such individual with a qualified employee reasonably acceptable to the Management Committee and, if applicable, the Owner. If the assigning Party cannot furnish a qualified substitute candidate within a reasonable period of time after the vacancy arises, then the vacancy shall be filled by an individual employed by the other Party.

3.7 Project Manager. Subject to the authority of the Management Committee and any limitations set forth herein, the Project Manager is the individual charged with responsibility to direct the Joint Venture's performance under the Contract. Subject to Owner approval (if required), \_\_\_\_\_ shall serve as the Project Manager during the term of the Contract, subject to the continuing approval of the Management Committee. If this individual, as determined by the Owner or the unanimous consent of the Management Committee, is unable to satisfactorily perform his duties as Project Manager, the Management Committee will nominate an employee of \_\_\_\_\_ - to serve as the successor Project Manager. In performing his duties, the Project Manager shall treat both Parties fairly and shall not discriminate in favor of either Party.

3.8 In addition to the other duties set forth herein, the Project Manager is to:

- 3.8.1 Serve as the primary interface between the Joint Venture and the Owner;
- 3.8.2 Ensure compliance with the DALLAS ISD MWBE Program requirements
- 3.8.3 Submit Change Orders to the Owner;
- 3.8.4 Report monthly, or as requested, to the Management Committee;
- 3.8.5 Oversee the Services, Work, or both, of the Joint Venture;
- 3.8.6 Prepare and maintain Project schedules;
- 3.8.7 Consult and confer with the Deputy Project Manager; and
- 3.8.8 Perform such additional duties as directed by the Management Committee.

3.9 Deputy Project Manager. The Deputy Project Manager shall be designated by the MWBE partner and will support and assist the Project Manager in the performance of his/her duties as set forth above. Subject to Owner approval (if required), \_\_\_\_\_ shall serve as the Deputy Project Manager during the term of the Contract, subject to the continuing approval of the Management Committee. If this individual, as determined by the Owner or the unanimous consent of the Management Committee, is unable to satisfactorily perform his duties as Deputy Project  
3.10 Manager, the Management Committee will nominate an employee of \_\_\_\_\_ MWBE Joint Venture Partner to serve as the successor Deputy Project Manager.

#### **Article 4: Joint Venture Organization**

4.1 \_\_\_\_\_ shall be responsible for the fiscal and administrative tasks of managing the business operations of the Joint Venture (the "Managing Business Party") and shall appoint an individual responsible for these tasks. As the Managing Business Party, \_\_\_\_\_ will appoint one of its Management Committee Members to act in the role of Chairperson of the Management Committee commencing on the effective date of this Agreement.

4.2 The Project Management Committee ("Management Committee") will be comprised of two or three (\_\_\_\_) representative from \_\_\_\_\_, and one (\_\_\_\_) representative from \_\_\_\_\_. The Parties individual representatives designated to comprise the Management Committee are referred to herein as the primary representative(s). The Managing Business Party shall designate an individual on the Committee as the Chairperson to manage the administrative and management functions of the Committee. In addition to its primary representatives or representative, each Party shall also name an alternative representative for its primary representatives or representative. A Party's alternative representative shall act in the capacity of its primary representative should its primary representative be unable to fulfill his or her duties as described herein. If not identified below, representatives shall be designated within thirty (30) days of the date of this Agreement by written notice to the other Party. A Party may change its designated representative(s) or alternate representative upon ten (10) days written notice to the other Party. No proxies shall be permitted. Each Party's designated primary and alternate representative(s) shall have full power and authority to act for and on behalf of the Party so appointing them with respects to all matters coming before the Management Committee.

4.3 Meetings of the Management Committee shall not be held unless each Party is represented. If the Parties representatives are not all available, the meeting shall stand adjourned and will be re-scheduled to the next earliest date acceptable to all Parties. While the Management Committee will always attempt to meet in person, telephonic or online meetings shall be allowed. The Parties shall endeavor to provide five (5) days written notice to each Party of scheduled meetings (in person, online or by telephone), except in the event of an emergency or immediate need. A Party's refusal or repeated failure to attend any scheduled Management Committee meeting shall at the other Party's sole discretion, constitute of default under this Agreement subject to the review and approval of the MWBE Director or his/her designee.

4.4 \_\_\_\_\_ representative(s) shall each have one (1) vote on matters coming before the Management Committee. The primary representative(s) from \_\_\_\_\_ shall each have one (1) vote each on matters coming before the Management Committee. A vote shall not be taken until each representative of a Party has communicated its position and expressed its questions, concerns, approval or disapproval of a matter. Each party agrees to work collaboratively to make decisions and solve problems in the best interest of the Joint Venture. In the event the Management Committee members cannot reach a unanimous decision on the business and operational matter(s) at hand requiring a Management Committee vote or resolution, the Chairperson will make the decision as majority partner, taking into account the risks and financial impacts to all parties and the Joint Venture. The final decision is applicable for all matters except for scope changes made by the Owner or settlement of claims and disputes. In these cases, if the Management Committee cannot develop a mutually agreeable solution, they shall submit any dispute to the Chief Executive Officer of the Joint Venture partners as provided for in Article 16. If, in the Project Manager's good faith judgment, immediate action is required in order to meet the Joint Venture's obligations under the Contract, the Project Manager may act without waiting for the resolution of the dispute,

subject to written notice and each Party's reservation of their respective right to seek recovery for the financial consequences arising from such action pending final resolution of the dispute. If any Party is in default (as defined in Article 12) under this Agreement, during the time of such default, its representative(s) shall not vote upon any issue, and such representative(s) shall not be included in the computation of eligible votes. Within one week of the Management Committee meeting, written meeting minutes regarding items discussed and actions taken at the meeting shall be prepared and distributed by the Chairperson of the Management Committee.

4.5 The Project Management Committee shall meet with the Project Manager or Senior Project Manager) and the Deputy Project Manager or Assistant Project Manager (and other project staff as mutually agreed upon by the Management Committee) quarterly or more frequently if deemed necessary.

4.6 The Project Manager shall have authority to conduct the business of the Joint Venture in accordance with the terms of this Agreement, but shall not have authority to, and shall not directly or indirectly without the unanimous consent and prior written approval of the Management Committee:

- 4.6.1. Enter into on behalf of the Joint Venture any third-party contractual arrangements or cause the Joint Venture to assume, incur, or become liable for any other obligations;
- 4.6.2. Make any investment in any other person or entity; make loans or guarantees, or otherwise extend or pledge credit to others;
- 4.6.3. Confess any judgment against the Joint Venture or compromise any debt due the Joint Venture except upon receipt of full payment;
- 4.6.4. Make any election for the Joint Venture under the then-current Internal Revenue Code, as amended, or any other applicable income tax legislation from time to time in force;
- 4.6.5. Commence any claim against the Owner with respect to amounts due under the Contract;
- 4.6.6. Commence any litigation; defend any action or claim against the Joint Venture by a third party; appeal any judgment or decision; or settle any litigation, action or claim to which the Joint Venture is a party;
- 4.6.7. Cause to be organized or acquired in whole or in part by the Joint Venture any corporation to carry out any activities of the Joint Venture; or
- 4.6.8. Exercise any of the authority vested in the Management Committee pursuant to Section 4.9 below.

4.7 In case it is necessary to settle a matter prior to the next scheduled or specially called meeting, the representatives may agree on a decision by notice to each other in accordance with the provisions of Article 23. Such decision will be included in the minutes of the next meeting of the Management Committee.

4.8 The representatives shall be deemed to be acting on behalf of his or her respective Party and no representative shall be liable to the Parties by reason of his or her actions as a member of the Management Committee, except where such representative's action constitutes gross negligence or actual fraudulent or dishonest conduct.

4.9 The Management Committee may delegate, in writing, such of its responsibilities and duties as it deems appropriate to the Project Manager, Senior Project Manager or the Managing Business Party, except that the Management Committee must act, *inter alia*, on the following matters of major consequence:

- 4.9.1 Timing and amount of distribution of Joint Venture profits and the Management Committee's right to demand additional cash reserves to cover potential losses;

- 4.9.2 Amount of revenue reserves, cash reserves, and contingent cost reserves to be retained by the Joint Venture;
- 4.9.3 Voluntary liquidation of the Joint Venture;
- 4.9.4 Third Party contractual arrangements or the incurring of other obligations in excess of \$10,000 by or on behalf of the Joint Venture;
- 4.9.5 Designation of a successor Project Manager or Deputy Project Manager;
- 4.9.6 Resolution of a dispute first referred to the Management Committee pursuant to the provisions of Article 16;
- 4.9.7 Review and approve all contractual transactions between the Parties (and their affiliates) and the Joint Venture; and
- 4.9.8 Take such other action and exercise such other authority as the Management Committee deems necessary to cause the Joint Venture to achieve its purposes consistent with good business practices and in compliance with all applicable laws and regulations.

4.10 The Joint Venture shall not have employees. The Parties shall provide all necessary personnel. A Party, at its own cost and expense, may retain necessary staff on an independent consultant basis to meet its personnel needs.

**Article 5: Interests of the Parties**

5.1 Except to the extent that this Agreement expressly provides to the contrary, the interests of the Parties in (i) any and all gains, losses, and liabilities that may result from the performance of the Contract or the Agreement, or both, (ii) any and all property, equipment, and other assets acquired by the Joint Venture, and (iii) any and all monies received in connection with the Contract, shall be determined proportionately in accordance with the Party's Agreed Percentage of Participation as set forth below.

**Agreed Percentage of Participation**

		_____%
		_____%
		_____%

5.2 The Parties acknowledge and agree that all liabilities and risks associated with the Project shall be shared pro rata according to the Agreed Percentage of Participation unless otherwise provided for herein. The MWBE Joint Venture partners proportionate share in the ownership shall be commensurate with their capital contribution, control, management, risks and ownership interest. For the avoidance of doubt, a Party's profits and losses arising out of the performance of self-performed subcontracting services, work, or both, for which it is responsible under this Agreement shall not be considered profits and losses of the Joint Venture.

5.3 The Parties shall appoint a Project Manager or Senior Project Manager to maintain and oversee the day to day work under the Contract. The Parties shall jointly select any necessary additional Project Managers, the Assistant Project Manager (the "APM") and/or Superintendents. The selected Project Managers and Superintendents shall be available at the Project site daily to supervise the work under the Contract. The MWBE Joint Venture Partner shall be assigned staff under the Contract in proportionate share of their respective ownership interest in the Joint venture. The Project manager shall submit the final staffing matrix confirming compliance with this section including all Project managers, Assistant Project managers and Superintendents to DALLAS ISD's MWBE office within 30 days of the Notice to Proceed.

5.4 The clear and distinct portion of the Scope of Work to be performed by \_\_\_\_\_, the MWBE Joint Venture partner and the estimated value of those services commensurate with the percentage ownership interest is as follows:

A detailed delineation of the Joint Ventures duties is outlined in Exhibit "A".

[ Please note that if the MWBE's scope of work is described as "participate in", "advise about", "assist in" or "consult", the work shall not be considered distinct or clearly defined for the purpose of analyzing the joint venture participation]

#### **Article 6: Execution of Bonding and/or Guarantees**

6.1 Each of the Parties agrees to execute all applications and indemnity agreements required by its sureties upon any bond or bonds required in connection with the Proposal and/or the Contract. Failure of a Party to execute any documentation necessary to effectuate the intent of this Article 6 shall constitute a default in accordance with Article 12 and entitle the non-Defaulting Party(ies) to appropriate relief as provided therein.

6.2 The Joint Venture partner(s) may provide co-surety bond or bonds in proportionate percentage to their ownership in the Joint Venture and to other Parties are applicable in a form acceptable to the Owner. The Joint Venture may also provide in a form acceptable to the Owner any bond or bonds in the name of the Joint Venture in lieu of the co-surety arrangement; provide an Up Front Joint Agreement (SAA Form #1), and an executed copy of the indemnity agreement signed by all of the Parties associated with the SAA Form #1.

#### **Article 7: Working Capital**

7.1 All necessary working capital, when and as required for the performance and prosecution of the Contract or operation of the Joint Venture as determined by the Project Manager and approved by the Management Committee, shall be furnished by the Parties in a timely manner and proportionately in accordance with their respective interests as set forth in Article 5. Each of the Parties recognizes that the failure of any Party to contribute its full proportionate share of working capital will have serious adverse consequences for the Joint Venture and imposes an unfair burden upon the other Party(ies). As to such working capital contribution, each of the Parties waives any rights of set-off it might otherwise possess and agrees to make the working capital contributions without set-off or deduction of any type. If any Party borrows funds to meet its obligation hereunder, such borrowing shall be the sole and separate obligation of the Party and shall not be the debt or obligation of the Joint Venture. No Party or its representatives shall have the power to pledge the credit of any other Party.

7.2 Any capital contributions requested by the Project Manager from the Parties shall be subject to the approval of the Management Committee. If such request is approved, the Management Committee shall give written approval thereof, with the manner of computation, to each Party. If, within thirty (30) days of receipt of such notice, either Party fails or is unable to provide its proportionate share of the funds required by the Joint Venture, such non-contributing Party shall be in default of this Agreement. In the event the non-contributing Party fails to cure its default within seven (7) days of the date of receipt of notice, the contributing Party shall be reimbursed from any profit due the non-contributing Party for the total amount of the funds contributed, but the ownership interest of the Joint Venture shall not be adjusted or changed unless the non-contributing Party is determined to be in default and fails to cure. The Management Committee has the discretion to waive a default under this Section.

#### **Article 8: Books and Records, Accounting and Bank Accounts**

8.1 Books and Records. The Parties acknowledge and agree that \_\_\_\_\_ will be the Managing Business Party and will provide at no additional costs the accounting and financial services required of the Joint Venture as approved and determined by the Management Committee. The Managing



Business Party, on behalf of the Joint Venture, shall keep proper books, records and accounts in which full, true and correct entries will be made of its transactions, on an accrual basis, in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, showing all costs, expenditures, sales, receipts, assets and liabilities, and profits and losses of the Joint Venture, and all other records required appropriately to reflect the conduct of the Joint Venture's affairs and the distributions provided for in Article 5. Each of the Parties shall be entitled to have its representatives examine and make copies (at its own expense) of any of the books or records of the Joint Venture at any reasonable time and without notice. The Joint Venture shall permit the use of electronic copies of its books and records. The books and records of the Joint Venture are to be retained after dissolution of the Joint Venture for such period or periods as may be required by law or the Contract, whichever is greater. The costs associated with accounting and record keeping for the Joint Venture (including federal reporting under Section 9.2 and tax matters under Section 17.6) shall be a Joint Venture cost.

8.2 Fiscal Year. The fiscal year of the Joint Venture shall commence on \_\_\_\_\_ and end on \_\_\_\_\_.

8.3 Audit. If required by the Management Committee or the Owner, the Managing Business Party shall employ, at the expense of the Joint Venture, an independent auditor acceptable to the Management Committee to conduct an audit of the financial statements, including the balance sheet and statements of income and cash flows and disclosures required under generally accepted accounting principles, of the Joint Venture each year and report to the Parties within ninety (90) days after the expiration of the fiscal year its opinion on such financial statements. Further, each Party may at its option and sole expense perform an annual audit of the Joint Venture books and records.

8.4 Reports. The Managing Business Party shall deliver to each Party:

8.4.1 Within thirty (30) days after each month period, a balance sheet and statement of income of the Joint Venture for the month;

8.4.2 Within thirty (30) days after the end of each fiscal quarter, a statement of cash flow for the Joint Venture;

8.4.3 At least two (2) weeks prior to each quarterly Management Committee meeting, a summary of the monthly financial information for the most recent completed months, and projections for the next three (3) quarters; and

8.4.4 With reasonable promptness, all such other information, reports, and projections as from time to time may reasonably be requested by either Party.

8.5 Bank Accounts. A separate bank account in the name of the Joint Venture will be established by the Joint Venture. The bank account will require the signature of an authorized representative of each Party or his or her designee for withdrawal by check or documented approval of an authorized representative of each Party or his or her designee for withdrawal by electronic means. All payments due the Joint Venture for performance of the Contract will be deposited in the account and all expenses incurred under the Contract will be paid from the account. All capital contributions made in cash and all of the Parties' other cash receipts shall be deposited in such account under such terms as directed by the Management Committee. No petty cash accounts for the Joint Venture are authorized. The Managing Business Party shall reconcile the bank account monthly and deliver a report to the Management Committee.

8.6 Disbursements from Bank Accounts. All withdrawals from the Joint Venture account will require written invoices, receipts, vouchers, or other acceptable documentation. All checks, drafts, or other orders of the payment of money, and all notes or other evidence of indebtedness issued in the name of the Joint Venture shall be signed by two (2) persons, each representing one of the Parties. Each Party shall designate an individual or individuals authorized on its behalf to provide such signatures.

8.7 Closing of Bank Account in Event of Default. In case of a material default by one of the Parties

under Article 12 of this Agreement, the then-existing Joint Venture account may be closed by the non-Defaulting Party(ies) and a new account opened in the name of the Joint Venture, but under the sole direction and control of the non-Defaulting Party(ies). Funds from the closed account shall be transferred to the new account and the then-existing account shall be closed. In such an event, the defaulting Party(ies) will no longer have any rights to the operation of the new bank account, unless and until it cures its default to the satisfaction of the non-Defaulting Party(ies).

8.8 Loans. Without the prior written consent of all Parties, the Joint Venture, the Management Committee, or any Party shall not:

8.8.1 directly or indirectly, borrow money or become otherwise obligated upon, or liable for, any monies borrowed in the name of the Joint Venture or the other Party(ies);

8.8.2 guarantee or act as surety for any obligation or liability (whether for borrowed money or otherwise), for any other person, firm or corporation.

8.9 Accounting Decisions. Subject to Section 8.1 above, all decisions for the Joint Venture as to accounting principles shall be made by the Management Committee consistent with Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (“GAAP”) with the concurrence of accounting or tax experts from each Party.

8.10 Final Accounting. Upon completion of the Project, payment of all sums due under any contract pertaining to the Project, and settlement of all outstanding obligations and liabilities on the part of the Joint Venture and their respective affiliated subcontractors, the Management Committee shall arrange for a final account to be prepared showing the total net profit earned, or loss incurred, by the Joint Venture. Unless otherwise agreed by the Parties, such final account shall be audited by a firm of accountants and agreed to by the Management Committee.

## **Article 9: Additional Obligations of the Parties**

9.1 The Joint Venture shall, in good faith, commit to achieve the minority and women owned business subcontracting goals as set forth within the Contract. The Joint Venture also agrees to comply with the MWBE Program guidance, rules and regulations.

9.2 Each Party shall use good faith efforts to provide and make available its expertise, technical resources, and information to the Joint Venture to effectuate the intent herein and in furtherance of satisfying the Joint Venture’s obligations to the Owner.

9.3 Contracting and Procurement. The Management Committee or its designee shall administer and manage all contracting, procurement, and financial activities for the Joint Venture and periodically update the Parties on the status of such activities. For the avoidance of doubt, the foregoing activities relate solely to the contracting, procurement, and financial activities of the Joint Venture and not such activities as undertaken by the Parties in furtherance of the Services, Work, or both, for which they are responsible under a Task Order Agreement.

9.4 Ownership Interest. Subject to the prior written approval of the District’s MWBE Department, each Party’s Ownership interest may be adjusted from time to time as provided in this Agreement. For purposes of this Agreement, the term “Pro Rata” means the ratio determined by dividing the Ownership interest of a Party to whom a particular provision of this Agreement is stated to apply by the aggregate Ownership interest of all the Parties.

9.5 Reporting Requirements. The Management Committee or its designee shall administer and manage all required state, local, and federal reporting activities for the Joint Venture, including MWBE goals, all in accordance with applicable DALLAS ISD regulations and guidelines. Each Party will be responsible for providing any required reporting information to the Managing Business Party in a timely manner to allow the timely submission of the combined data from each Party to the appropriate federal agency and/or electronic reporting system.

9.6 The Parties agree that, during the term of this Contract and for a period of one year thereafter, no Party to this Contract shall in any way intentionally induce or persuade an employee of another Party to this Contract to become an employee or agent of such Party.

#### **Article 10: Provision of Materials, Equipment, Supplies and Services**

10.1 The Parties intend that all materials, equipment, supplies, and services required in connection with the Contract will be provided by the Parties and that the Joint Venture will not acquire any materials, equipment, supplies, or services directly. In the event the Joint Venture shall procure any such materials, equipment, supplies, or services, such procurement shall be in accordance with any procurement guidelines, directives, and procedures issued or approved by the Management Committee. In addition, and to the extent applicable, any procurement activities by the Parties, Joint Venture, or both shall be conducted in accordance with applicable laws and regulations, as implemented through the Contract.

10.2 If any Party provides equipment or temporary facilities to the Joint Venture, the Party shall insure or self-insure such equipment or temporary facilities and the cost of such insurance or self-insurance shall be included in the equipment or facilities rate quoted to the Joint Venture. The Joint Venture and the other Parties will be identified as an additional insured on any such insurance when appropriate, as determined by the Management Committee.

#### **Article 11: Compensation**

11.1 In accordance with the billing period provided in the Contract, unless otherwise approved by the Management Committee, each Party shall prepare and submit by the tenth (10th) of each month, for Work performed during the prior month, invoices to the Joint Venture.

11.2 Each Party shall submit invoices in the manner required under the Contract. Each invoice shall be subject to the terms of the Contract.

11.3 The Project Manager, on behalf of the Joint Venture, will in turn prepare and submit invoices to the Owner in accordance with the provisions of the Contract and any applicable task order. Unless expressly agreed to by the Parties and permitted pursuant to the terms of the Contract, the Joint Venture shall not add any profit, fee, or other amounts to the invoices submitted by the Parties. The Parties may invoice the monthly staff costs for personnel incurred directly in the management and administration of the project subject to any restrictions in the terms of the Contract.

11.4 Subject to the provisions of Section 4.6, the Joint Venture will, upon receipt of payment from the Owner, deposit same in the Joint Venture bank account and within five (5) business days issue payments against such account to each Party for the amount(s) invoiced by each Party to the Joint Venture and allowed by the Owner, less any withholdings authorized by this Agreement and directed by the Management Committee. In the event the Owner pays less than the full amount due with respect to any invoice, such shortfall shall be allocated to the Party responsible for performing the specific Services, Work, or both, for which payment was withheld or, in the absence of information reasonably sufficient to determine the basis for such short payment, any shortfall shall be allocated between the Parties in proportion to their respective shares of the applicable invoice. No Party will unreasonably restrain or refuse to authorize withdrawal of funds for payment of proper invoices relating to performance of the Services, Work, or both.

11.6 Expenses incurred by the Parties in self performing Work under a Subcontract or Task Order Agreement shall not be considered Joint Venture expenses and, to the extent allowed under the Contract, may be included by the Parties in their respective invoices to the Joint Venture for Services provided, Work performed, or both. Unless stated otherwise in this Agreement or authorized in writing by the Management Committee, personnel expenses not directly related to the performance of the Project including but not limited to back office functions such as human resources, legal counseling and tax compliance of the Parties shall not be considered a Joint Venture expense.

11.7 Each Party shall have full and sole responsibility for the payment of any taxes, duties, fees, or assessments of any nature whatsoever levied upon it individually in connection with its Services, Work, or both, under a Task Order Agreement, including any personal income taxes levied or imposed on any of its employees or personnel or any of its subcontractor's employees or personnel.

11.8 All personnel involved in the performance of the Services, Work, or both, shall be employed by the Parties and shall remain in the employ of the respective Party. Each Party shall advance and pay all payroll costs and expenses incurred by reason of their respective personnel working in connection with the performance of the Services, Work, or both, and each Party agrees to indemnify and hold the Joint Venture and each other Party harmless from any claims and liabilities arising out of the responsibilities of that Party toward its employees, any of its related companies, and any of their personnel under all applicable laws, including labor and tax laws.

11.9 If a Party, with the prior written approval of the Management Committee, maintains a Joint Venture office dedicated exclusively for the management and administration of the DISD project independent of the Parties primary business office(s) and any of the other Party's(ies) personnel are located at the office during the duration of the project, the host Party may issue a quarterly invoice directly to the visiting Party(ies) for the pro rata cost of office space and furnishings utilized by visiting Party's(ies) personnel during the time they are engaged in the performance of Services, Work, or both, for this Joint Venture at such Joint Venture office.

11.10 The basis for the calculations of such invoices under Section 11.9 above shall be determined by the Management Committee. Such invoices shall not constitute a billing to, or on behalf of, the Joint Venture, but rather a billing directly between the Parties. The visiting Party shall pay such invoices within thirty (30) days of receipt of such invoice.

11.11 When Joint Venture funds are in excess of the needs of working capital required for the operation of the Joint Venture (as determined by the Management Committee), such excess funds, if any, shall be first applied to the return of funds advanced until such advances shall have been entirely repaid, and the balance of such excess shall be distributed as provided in Section 11.13 below, to each Party in accordance with such Party's Agreed Percentage of Participation as reflected in Article 5.

11.12 The Management Committee shall quarterly review the progress of the Services, Work, or both, and the Joint Venture's financial condition to determine whether Joint Venture profits, if any, should be distributed. If the Management Committee determines that earned profits and reserves for contingencies, including cash contributions, are adequate to meet the Joint Venture's needs, it may direct the Managing Business Party to distribute earned Joint Venture profit to the Parties based upon their respective Agreed Percentage of Participation. For the avoidance of doubt, payments to a Party for self-performed services related to the construction project, Work performed, or both, pursuant to a Task Order Agreement shall not be considered distributions of Joint Venture capital or profits.

11.13 The Management Committee shall establish cash reserves and revenue reserve funds to be retained by the Joint Venture from time to time in order to assure adequate funding for all Joint Venture obligations as they relate to future profits, losses, liabilities, and contract performance. At the direction of the Management Committee, the Project Manager shall invoice each of the Parties for approved reserves and capital contributions.

## **Article 12: Default and Insolvency**

12.1 If a Party shall be in default hereunder (as specified in Sections 4.3 (Management Committee meetings), 7.2 (capital contributions), 9.4 (Owner-issued notice of default), 25.8 (breach of covenants), or 25.9 (anti-bribery laws), or Article 15 (assignment and change of control)), and fail to promptly (but in no event more than seven (7) days thereafter) cure such default after written notice or demand; cease or otherwise fail to timely pay for goods or services (including labor), and fail to promptly (but in no event more than seven (7) days thereafter) cure such default after written notice or demand; cease to operate or terminate its business affairs; institute an insolvency proceeding under applicable law; permit the entry of

any order for relief under Chapter 7 of the Bankruptcy Code; or fail to cure a default hereunder after entry of an order for relief under Chapter 11 of the Bankruptcy Code, (such Party being hereinafter referred to as "Defaulting or Insolvent Party"), then from and after such date:

- 12.1.1 All acts, consents and decisions with respect to the performance of the Contract or the management of the Joint Venture shall thereafter be taken solely by the remaining Party without considering the Defaulting or Insolvent Party.
- 12.1.2 The participation of the Defaulting or Insolvent Party in the profits of the Joint Venture shall be limited to that proportion which the Defaulting or Insolvent Party's contributions to the working fund of the Joint Venture bear to the total of such contributions as same may be modified by and subject to the provisions of Section 7.2, but the Defaulting or Insolvent Party shall be charged with, and shall be liable for, any and all losses that may be suffered by the Joint Venture under the Contract, or any additions or supplements thereto or modifications thereof, to the full extent of the Defaulting or Insolvent Party's Percentage of Participation, set forth in Article 5.
- 12.1.3 The non-Defaulting Parties shall have the right to take over and complete the Services, Work, or both. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, the non-Defaulting Parties may, for the purpose of completing the Work, enter upon the site and take possession of all materials, equipment, scaffolds, tools, appliances and other items thereon, which have been purchased or provided for the performance of the Work, all of which the Defaulting or Insolvent Party hereby transfers, assigns and sets over to the non-Defaulting Parties for such purpose, and to employ any person or persons to complete the Work and provide all of the required labor, services, materials, equipment and other items. The non-Defaulting Parties may complete the Services in whatever fashion it deems most efficient and shall have the right to use the existing work product for purposes of completing the Project. In such event, the non-Defaulting Parties shall receive any and all payments, including fees, which would otherwise be due for such Services, Work, or both, and apply the proceeds thereof (i) to cover all expenses incurred by the non-Defaulting Parties in taking over and completing (by use of its own forces, subcontracting or otherwise) such Services, Work, or both and (ii) to establish a contingency fund to cover any and all outstanding warranties or other obligations of the non-Defaulting Parties with respect to such Services, Work, or both, or any other uncured defect or deficiency for which the non-Defaulting Parties are responsible.
- 12.1.4 The non-Defaulting Party shall have the right to establish a new Joint Venture bank account in accordance with Section 8.7 of this Agreement.

12.2 If a Party is in material default of the requirements of the Contract, including (i) failure to perform or progress the Services within the timeframe specified in the Contract; (ii) serious or repeated breaches of the safety requirements; or (iii) is in breach of the requirements of the Services to be provided, the Work to be performed, or both, by that Party and fails to cure such breach within seven (7) days after written notice or demand, then from and after such date, the non-breaching Party shall have the rights afforded it under Subsections 12.1.1 through 12.1.3 above. Nothing in this Agreement shall be interpreted or construed to relieve the defaulting Party from their obligations under this Agreement or their obligations under the Contract with the Owner.

**12.3** In the event of a default of this Agreement, the non-Defaulting Parties shall additionally be entitled to exercise all applicable remedies available to it, whether at law, in equity or otherwise, including an action to recover the losses sustained in excess of its proportionate share hereunder, specific performance, and the right to declare the Joint Venture dissolved and terminated without the necessity for judicial determination. Upon such dissolution, the non-Defaulting Parties shall immediately commence to wind up the Joint Venture's affairs, including completion of the aforesaid Contract, and shall liquidate the assets of the Joint Venture as promptly as reasonably possible.

## **Article 13: Liabilities**

13.1 The liability of the Parties under this Agreement shall be joint and several. Notwithstanding the foregoing, as between the Parties, any liability (whether to the Owner or any third party) that the Joint Venture or any Party (including its parental guarantor, if any) may incur arising from or relating to the Contract or the performance of Services, Work, or both, under the Contract or this Agreement shall be allocated as between the Parties in proportion to the Agreed Percentage of Participation of each Party, except as set forth below:

- 13.1.1 Liability or related losses caused by the negligence, gross negligence, willful misconduct, fraud, or violation of legislation, laws, ordinances, codes or regulations of a Party (including its officers, employees, agents, representatives, and subconsultants and subcontractors at any tier), shall be assumed by such Party;
- 13.1.2 In the event of a default by a Party, liability or losses sustained by the Joint Venture or the non-Defaulting Parties shall be assumed solely by the defaulting Party;
- 13.1.3 Liability or related losses resulting from claims made by an employee of a Party against the Joint Venture or each other Party based on the employee-employer relationship, including the payment of unemployment taxes, withholding taxes, and employment benefits, will be solely assumed by the Party by whom such person is employed;
- 13.1.4 Liability or related losses traceable directly to and caused by a Party (including its officers, employees, agents, representatives, and subconsultants and subcontractors at any tier) shall be assumed by that Party;
- 13.1.5 In the event of a breach by a Party in the performance of its obligations under this Agreement, liability or losses sustained by the Joint Venture, the non-breaching Party, or both, as a result of such breach shall be assumed solely by the breaching Party; and
- 13.1.6 Liabilities or related losses relating to third-party claims resulting from Services provided, Work performed, or both, jointly by the Parties (including their respective officers, employees, agents, representatives, and subconsultants and subcontractors at any tier) shall be allocated to each Party in accordance with each Party's respective, relative degree of fault or responsibility, as determined by an allocation of fault pursuant to either an agreement between the Parties or a finding made by the trier-of-fact in a judicial proceeding.

13.2 With respect to the liabilities allocated in Subsections 13.1.1 through 13.1.5 above, the Party to whom such liability is allocated shall defend, indemnify, and hold harmless the Joint Venture and each other Party from any and all such claims, losses, or liabilities set forth in such subsections (including reasonable attorneys' fees). With respect to the liabilities allocated in Subsection 13.1.6 above, each Party agrees to defend, indemnify, and hold harmless the Joint Venture and each other Party from any and all such claims, losses, and liabilities (including reasonable attorneys' fees) that are in excess of such other Party's relative degree of fault or responsibility, as determined by an allocation of fault pursuant to either an agreement between the Parties or a finding made by the trier-of-fact in a judicial proceeding.

13.3 With respect to any claims, losses, and liabilities not covered by Sections 13.1.1 through 13.1.6 above, each Party agrees to defend, indemnify, and hold harmless the Joint Venture and each other Party from any and all such claims, losses, and liabilities (including reasonable attorneys' fees) arising from or related to the Contract or the performance of the Work, Services, or both, under the Contract, or this Agreement that are in excess of such other Party's Agreed Percentage of Participation, irrespective of the contributory fault, negligence, or strict liability of the indemnified Party(ies).

13.4 If a dispute arises between the Parties as to the allocation of liability and/or related losses each Party should bear, each Party shall provisionally assume a share of such liability in proportion to its Agreed

Percentage of Participation until the dispute is resolved.

13.5 For any such claims, losses, and liabilities, the indemnifying Party's obligations regarding any defense thereof include only the reimbursement of the indemnified Party's(ies) reasonable defense costs incurred to the extent of the indemnifying Party's actual indemnity obligations hereunder.

#### **Article 14: Insurance**

14.1 The Parties agree that they will acquire all necessary insurance in connection with the award and performance of a Dallas ISD Contract, including but not limited to general liability or professional liability, builder's risk, worker's compensation or any other insurance required under the Contract. [Optional provisions in the alternative, the Parties agree to provide the specific operational insurance coverage as follows:

- 14.1.1 Workers' Compensation for statutory limits in compliance with the applicable state and federal laws;
- 14.1.2 Employer's Liability with a limit of \$ \_\_\_\_\_;
- 14.1.3 Commercial General Liability, including Products and Completed Operations, Contractual Liability, and Broad Form Property and Personal Injury Liability, with a combined single limit of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ per occurrence and in the aggregate;
- 14.1.4 Automobile Liability Insurance with a combined single limit of \_\_\_\_\_ for bodily injury and property damage with respect to vehicles either owned, non-owned, and leased by a Party in the performance of Services under the Contract or this Agreement;
- 14.1.5 Commercial General Liability Insurance in the amount of \_\_\_\_\_ per claim and in the aggregate \_\_\_\_\_;
- 14.1.6 Umbrella Liability in excess of (.2), (.3) and (.4) above, with an aggregate limit of \_\_\_\_\_ if required by the Contract. (Note: limit requirements can be satisfied by any combination of Primary and Excess coverage); and
- 14.1.7 Any insurance written on a "claims made" basis shall (a) have a retroactive date of no later than the earlier of the date of this Agreement or the earliest commencement of the Party's Services or Work in relation to the Project and (b) be maintained for at least 3 years after the latest completion of the Services or Work, or termination of the Contract, whichever is later.
- 14.1.8 Each Party shall endorse its Commercial General Liability, Automobile Liability, Contractor's Pollution Liability and, if applicable, Umbrella insurance policies to provide that the Joint Venture is an additional insured under its policies for that Party's interest in the Joint Venture. The other Party and, if required by the Contract, the Owner, shall also be included as an additional insured. Each Party's Professional Liability insurance policy shall, if necessary, be endorsed to include the liability of the insured arising out of the insured's interest in the Joint Venture.]

14.2 The policies and limits specified by Dallas ISD in the Contract represent the minimum coverage to be carried by each of the Parties hereunder. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if the Contract requires the Joint Venture and/or the Parties to maintain additional coverage and/or increased limits, the Parties shall be required to procure such additional insurance in accordance with the terms of the Contract.

14.3 Each Party hereby waives and shall obtain from all of its Commercial General Liability, Automobile Liability, Contractor's Pollution Liability and, if applicable, Umbrella insurance carriers a waiver of any rights of subrogation against each other Party and their directors, agents, employees, and assignees, with respect

to risks associated with the Services provided, Work performed, or both, pursuant to the Contract.

14.4 Unless noted otherwise or with the written approval of the Management Committee, the cost of any insurance required herein (including any deductibles and self-insured-retention amounts) shall be the responsibility of the Party procuring such coverage.

14.5 The Management Committee, in its discretion, shall be responsible for obtaining insurance for the Joint Venture for management risks such as Directors & Officers Liability, Fiduciary Liability, and any other insurance coverage deemed appropriate by the Management Committee, the cost of which shall be an expense of the Joint Venture.

14.6 Absent written approval from the Management Committee, all lower-tier subcontractors, whether retained directly by the Joint Venture or by a Party to the Joint Venture, shall be required to comply with the provisions of this Article 14.

#### **Article 15: Assignment or Change in Control**

15.1 Each Party is entering into this Agreement in reliance upon each other Party being and remaining a party to this Agreement. No Party to this Agreement shall, directly or indirectly, sell, assign, transfer, dispose of, pledge or hypothecate its rights, interest or obligations hereunder, or any part thereof, whether directly or by merger with or acquisition by another entity, in this Agreement, the Joint Venture, the Contract, or in any property or monies of the Joint Venture, except with the prior written consent of each other Party, and, if required by the Contract, with the prior written consent of the Owner. A "Change in Control" shall mean the sale of all or substantially all the assets of a Party; any merger, consolidation or acquisition of a Party with, by or into another corporation, entity or person; or any change in the ownership of more than fifty percent (50%) of the voting capital stock of a Party.

15.2 No Party shall, without the written consent of each other Party, assign, transfer or sublet any claims, causes of action or rights against each other Party arising from or under this Agreement; or any proceeds from claims arising from or under this Agreement or the Contract as security, collateral or the source of payment for any notes or liabilities to any third party; or any control of any claims or causes of action arising from or under this Agreement or the Contract without the written consent of each other Party.

15.3 Any such attempted sell, assignment, transfer, disposal, pledge, hypothecation, or sublet without the written consent of each other Party shall be void and confer no rights upon any third person and shall constitute a default hereunder. The provisions of this Article shall survive the completion or termination of this Agreement for any reason and shall remain enforceable between the Parties.

#### **Article 16: Disputes**

16.1 The Parties shall attempt in an amicable manner to adjust and settle any disagreement that may arise between them under or in connection with this Agreement. Any controversy or claim arising out of or relating to this Agreement will first be referred in writing to the Management Committee for its decision.

16.2 In the event any dispute between the Parties is not resolved by the Management Committee, either Party may submit such dispute to the Chief Executive Officer of each Party. Submittal of the dispute shall be in writing and summarize in detail the dispute or contested issues. Upon receipt of the dispute, the receiving Party shall designate within ten (10) days a responsible executive with authority to negotiate a settlement or resolution of any dispute. The Parties designated responsible executives for all Parties shall convene within thirty (30) days of the submittal at such location as the Parties may agree. The responsible executives shall hear such dispute at a time, place, and under such procedural rules as they may specify, and shall act only by unanimous consent. It is the intention of the Parties that the responsible parties shall mutually resolve disputes without litigation. However, nothing herein shall be deemed to require any Party to exhaust this procedure prior to exercising whatever rights it might have at law or equity and any litigation shall be stayed pending exhaustion of this dispute resolution procedure. The Parties recognize the possibility of deadlock from elevating the dispute or controversy to the Chief Executive Officer but intend



that through this mechanism, disputes may be discussed and resolved without the need of litigation.

16.3 If the dispute is not resolved in accordance with Section 16.2 above, the Parties shall submit their disputes to mediation within seven (7) days thereafter or as soon thereafter as may be arranged with the mediator. The Parties shall mutually agree to one mediator. In the event they cannot mutually agree to such a mediator, the mediator shall be selected under the Construction Industry Rules of the American Arbitration Association, unless otherwise agreed between the Parties.

16.4 If mediation is unsuccessful in resolving all disputes between the Parties or the dispute cannot be settled by mediation within sixty (60) days, then the Parties agree to consider the use of binding arbitration to resolve their dispute in the following manner or either Party may file a claim in a court of competent jurisdiction with venue in Dallas County. In the event the Parties agree to resolve their dispute by means of binding arbitration, the Parties shall mutually agree to one arbitrator. In the event they cannot mutually agree to such an arbitrator, one arbitrator shall be selected in accordance with the Construction Industry Rules of the American Arbitration Association, unless otherwise agreed between the Parties. The arbitrator thus selected shall thereafter proceed to ascertain the facts relating to such dispute and to make a determination thereof; the determination of the arbitrator shall be final, binding and conclusive upon the Parties and enforceable at law in a court having jurisdiction over the Party against whom enforcement of the arbitrator's decision is sought to be enforced. The then-current Construction Industry Rules of the American Arbitration Association will be applied.

16.5 Notwithstanding the foregoing, if and to the extent that a dispute between the Parties relates to a claim, controversy or dispute involving the Owner and/or the Contract (such that in the interest of judicial economy and to avoid the possibility of inconsistent judgments, a single dispute resolution proceeding is warranted), then the Parties agree that the dispute resolution provisions in the Contract, if any, shall apply and take precedence over the provisions of this Article 16.

16.6 The Parties shall not allow any dispute to affect or threaten the progress and completion of the Services, Work, or both. Each Party shall remain responsible for the performance of its obligations under this Agreement and the Contract and shall continue to perform and prosecute the Services, Work, or both, as directed by the Project Manager during any dispute resolution process notwithstanding any such dispute.

#### **Article 17: Distributions and Tax Allocations**

17.1 Subject to the terms and conditions of this Agreement, including Articles 11 and 12, distributions may be made to the Parties during the term of this Agreement at such times, in such amounts, and subject to such conditions as the Management Committee may from time to time determine.

17.2 Should the Joint Venture make any advances or loans to either Party, then distributions to be made pursuant to Section 17.1 above shall be applied in repayment of such advances or loans, together with interest, until repaid in full, notwithstanding the fact that such advances or loans may not then be due and payable according to the terms of any instrument evidencing such advance or loan.

17.3 No distribution shall be made pursuant to this Agreement if the making of such distribution would create an event of default under any loan agreement, any mortgage, or other security instrument to which the Joint Venture is subject, or otherwise materially adversely affect the ability of the Joint Venture to perform its obligations under any other agreement to which the Joint Venture is subject. Any distribution pursuant to this Article, to the extent not permitted by the previous sentence, shall be deferred until such time as it will not create an event of default or materially adversely affect the ability of the Joint Venture to perform its obligations. If any such distribution can at any time only be made in part, it shall be made to the Parties in proportion to the amounts that would have been paid to them but for this Article 17.

17.4 Except as provided in Section 17.1 above, and except for distributions upon termination or withdrawal as provided herein, the Joint Venture shall make no further distributions.

17.5 Tax Allocations. All gross income, gains, losses, deductions, and credits of the Joint Venture, as

determined for US federal income tax purposes, shall be allocated for such purposes among the Parties in the same proportions as the corresponding items of revenue, gains, losses, and expenses are allocated pursuant to Article 5 above.

17.6 Designation of Tax Matters Partner/Partnership Representative

17.6.1. Designation. The Management Committee shall designate an individual as the Tax Matters Partner within the meaning of IRC §6231(a)(7) as in effect for taxable years beginning on or before December 31, 2017 and the Partnership Representative within the meaning of IRC §6223(a) as in effect for taxable years beginning after December 31, 2017 and shall act in any similar capacity under applicable state, local, or foreign law (in such capacity and hereinafter, the “Tax Matters Partner”).

17.6.2. Elections. Except as otherwise expressly provided to the contrary in this Agreement, all tax elections, including federal, state, local, and foreign tax elections, shall be made by the Tax Matters Partner in its sole discretion. To the extent applicable, the Tax Matters Partner will make the small partnership election as described in IRC §6221(b) as in effect for taxable years beginning after December 31, 2017.

17.6.3. Expenses of Tax Matters Partner; Indemnification. The Tax Matters Partner shall be reimbursed for all reasonable expenses, including legal and accounting fees, claims, liabilities, losses, and damages, incurred in connection with any administrative or judicial proceeding with respect to the tax liability of the Parties attributable to this Agreement. The payment of any and all such then-existing expenses shall be made before any distributions are made to each Party. Neither the Tax Matters Partner nor any Party shall have any obligation to provide funds for such purpose.

17.7 Requirement to Prepare and File Tax Return. The Tax Matters Partner shall cause the preparation and timely filing of all tax and information returns required to be filed pursuant to the Internal Revenue Code and all other tax returns deemed necessary and required in each jurisdiction in which the Joint Venture does business. Copies of the returns, or pertinent information from the returns, shall be furnished to the Parties no later than two months before the extended due date of the Joint Venture’s federal income tax return. The Tax Matters Partner will direct that any tax imposed upon the partnership be paid by the partnership to federal, state, city or other municipalities as required by law.

17.8 Capital Structure of Joint Venture

Names of Party	Percentage Interests	Capital Contribution
_____	___ %	\$ _____
_____	___ %	\$ _____
_____	___ %	\$ _____

17.9 Amounts Withheld. All amounts withheld pursuant to the Internal Revenue Code or any provision of any state, local, or foreign tax law with respect to any payment, distribution, or allocation to the Parties shall be treated as amounts paid or distributed, as the case may be, to the Parties. The Joint Venture is authorized to withhold from payments and distributions, or with respect to allocations to the Parties, and to pay over to any federal, state, local, or foreign government, any amounts required to be so withheld

pursuant to the Internal Revenue Code or any provisions of any other federal, state, local, or foreign law, and shall allocate any such amounts to the Parties with respect to which such amount was withheld and shall offset amounts otherwise distributable to such Party.

**Article 18: Completion of Project, Division of Profit**

Upon completion of the Project, after providing for and paying all costs disbursed or incurred for its performance, and all other costs and charges required by the Contract and ordinarily and usually charged as costs in performance of such a Contract, including payment of all claims not secured by insurance, or by providing proper reserves for any such claims, which shall have either been brought against the Parties or may be reasonably anticipated, and after providing adequate reserves for any other contingency, if any, that shall be determined by the Management Committee to be reasonably necessary; and after repaying all sums advanced by the Parties for working capital, any undistributed profits thereafter remaining, resulting from the performance of the Contract, shall be distributed and divided between the Parties in accordance with their ratable proportion as determined under Articles 5, 7, and 12. Any reserves, when no longer required, or so much thereof as shall remain, shall be similarly distributed.

**Article 19: Successors and Assigns**

Subject to the foregoing provisions herein contained, this Agreement shall inure to the benefit of, and be binding upon the Parties, their successors, trustees, permitted assigns, receivers, and legal representatives, but shall not inure to the benefit of any other person, firm or corporation.

**Article 20: Entire Agreement**

20.1 This Agreement constitutes the entire understanding and Agreement between the Parties with respect to the subject matter hereof and supersedes all prior or contemporaneous representations, understandings or agreements of any kind, whether verbal or written.

20.2 This Agreement shall not be modified except by written amendment duly executed by authorized representatives of the Parties. Any such written amendments shall be forwarded to the district for review and approval. Each Party has had the opportunity to avail itself of legal advice and counsel. No Party shall be deemed to be the drafter or author of this Agreement. In the event this Agreement is subject to interpretation or construction by a court of law or panel of arbitration, such court or panel shall not construe this Agreement or any portion hereof against either Party as the drafter of this Agreement.

20.3 Failure of a Party to insist upon strict and punctual performance of any terms or conditions of this Agreement shall not be construed to constitute a waiver of, or estoppel against, any other Party later asserting the right to require such performance. Neither shall a waiver or estoppel in one instance constitute a waiver or estoppel with respect to a later default, whether similar or dissimilar in nature.

20.4 If any provision of this Agreement is held invalid or unenforceable by any court of competent jurisdiction, the other provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

**Article 21: Confidential Information**

21.1 Subject to any applicable requirements of the Contract, 1) information relating to this Agreement or the Contract which is gathered, exchanged, or otherwise obtained by the Parties during the term of this Agreement shall be maintained in confidence and shall not be utilized except for purposes in furtherance of this Agreement and the exercise of rights, obligations, duties, and privileges set forth herein; and 2) such information will not be disclosed to any third parties or to a Party's own personnel except where there is good faith need to know; provided however, that no Party shall be liable for any utilization or disclosure if the information falls into any of the following categories:

21.1.1. Information which at the time of disclosure is or thereafter becomes within the public

domain other than by reason of the disclosing Party's breach of this Agreement.

21.1.2. Information that prior to disclosure hereunder was already in the recipient's possession and was not the subject of any confidentiality obligation of the disclosing Party.

21.1.3. Information which, subsequent to disclosure hereunder, is obtained by the disclosing Party from a third party lawfully in possession of such information and which information is not subject to a confidentiality obligation.

21.2 For the purposes of this Agreement, specific information disclosed shall not be deemed to be in the public domain or in the prior possession of the disclosing Party merely because it is embraced by more general information in the public domain or by more general information in the prior possession of the Party.

21.3 Nothing herein shall be construed as giving a Party any right, title, interest in, or ownership of information, or any portion thereof, that is now or is hereafter covered by any patent or license. The Parties' rights in respect thereof shall be subject to all rights of the patent owner and/or licensor.

21.4 A Party shall not be restricted in releasing information in response to a subpoena, court order, or similar legal process, but shall, if not restricted under a subpoena, court order, or similar legal process, promptly notify each other Party of the request or order for information before responding to same and provide each other Party with a copy thereof so that each other Party may take such action as it deems appropriate to protect its information.

21.5 Except as otherwise provided herein or in the Contract, engineering documents, drawings, and specifications prepared by a Party as part of the Services, Work, or both, shall be the property of the Party preparing same. A Party shall retain all right, title, and interest in its standard drawings and details, designs, specifications, databases, computer software and any other proprietary property ("Party Data"). To the extent the work product contains or requires the use of Party Data by any other Party, the owning Party hereby grants to the other Party(ies) a non-exclusive, non-transferrable and royalty free license to use such Party Data solely for the purposes for which the work product was developed under the Contract.

21.6 The confidentiality obligations provided in this Article 21 shall survive the termination or expiration of this Agreement and remain binding upon the Parties for two (2) years following the termination of this Agreement or completion of the Contract, whichever is later.

21.7 No news release, including photographs and films, public announcement, denial, or confirmation shall be made by a Party concerning the subject matter of this Agreement without first obtaining the consent of each other Party and, if applicable, the Owner.

## **Article 22: Applicable Law**

This Agreement shall be governed and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of Texas, without reference to its conflict of laws principles.

## **Article 23: Miscellaneous**

23.1 Records; Generally. Each Party agrees to keep accurate and complete cost, correspondence, and other records related to this Agreement. Each Party further agrees to make such records available to each other Party upon ten (10) calendar days' written notice. The joint venture parties agree to maintain records showing the subcontractor/supplier awards, subcontractor payment history, efforts to identify and award contracts to M/WBEs, and copies of executed contracts with M/WBEs. The joint venture parties agree to provide access to books, records and accounts to authorized district, state and federal officials for the purpose of verifying M/WBE participation and good faith efforts.

23.2 Financial Records.

23.2.1 All financial records and proprietary or confidential information of each Party to which the Joint Venture or the other Party(ies) has/have access shall be held and retained by the Joint Venture and such other Party(ies) in strict confidence and not be disclosed without the prior written consent of the Party to whom such records or information belong.

23.3 Other Business Activities. During the term of this Joint Venture, each of the Parties may, and shall be free to, participate and engage in any other business activities, subject to any applicable organizational and personal conflict of interest rules or regulations. Nothing in this Agreement shall restrict, or be construed as a limitation of the powers or rights of any Party hereto to pursue other unrelated opportunities or Projects at the District or enter into other joint venture arrangements for its sole benefit independent of the solicitation the subject of this Agreement.

23.4 Notice. Any notice required or permitted to be given under this Agreement shall be deemed served if sent by registered mail, personal delivery, or other means whereby receipt is acknowledged to the following addresses or such other addresses as the Parties may designate:

For _____	_____
Attention:	_____
Telephone:	_____
For _____:	_____
Attention:	_____
Telephone:	_____
For _____:	_____
Attention:	_____
Telephone:	_____

23.5 Waiver of Consequential Damages. No Party shall be liable to the other Parties for any special, indirect, punitive, exemplary, incidental, or consequential damages of any nature, including loss of actual or anticipated profits or revenues, loss of opportunity, loss by reason of shutdown, non-operation, increased expense of manufacturing or operation, loss of use, cost of capital, damage to or loss of property or equipment, or claims of customers, regardless of whether due to or based upon contract, tort, negligence, or strict liability. The foregoing limitation of liability shall not apply to third party claims for which a Party is otherwise entitled to indemnity under this Agreement.

23.6 Nothing in this Agreement shall be deemed to create any right in anyone not a party and this Agreement shall not be construed in any respect to be a contract in whole or in part for the benefit of anyone not a party.

23.7 Counterparts. This Agreement may be executed in one or more counterparts, each of which will be deemed to be an original copy of this Agreement and all of which, when taken together, will be deemed to constitute one and the same agreement.

23.8. Recruitment of Employees. The Parties acknowledge the value of team performance and trust, both of which could be adversely impacted by movement of employees from one Party to another Party. Accordingly, the Parties agree that they will not initiate efforts aimed at hiring the other Parties personnel that are actively engaged in activities covered by this Agreement without prior consent of the other Party. Should an employee of one Party become an employee of another Party, that individual shall be barred from working on activities covered by the Agreement for a period of not less than twenty-four (24) months. The Management Committee may waive the 24-month period at its discretion. This section shall not restrict

the right of a Party to solicit generally in the media or other sources for required personnel nor prevent the hiring of an employee of one Party who independently seeks employment with another Party without personal solicitation by the other Party.

23.9 Representations, Warranties, and Covenants. Each Party represents, warrants, and covenants to each other Party, as of the Effective Date, as follows:

23.9.1 It is a duly organized and validly existing corporation in good standing under the laws of the state in which it is incorporated or formed; it is duly qualified to do business in each jurisdiction in which the nature of the business transacted by it requires such qualifications; it has all corporate powers as may be required to conduct its business and carry out the transactions contemplated hereby;

23.9.2 The execution and delivery of this Agreement and the performance by it of the transactions contemplated hereby have been duly authorized by all necessary corporate action and this Agreement constitutes a legal, valid, and binding obligation enforceable in accordance with its terms;

23.9.3 It has, and at all times during the term hereof shall maintain, all governmental authorizations necessary to perform its obligations under this Agreement and the Contract; and

23.9.4 There is no action, suit, proceeding, claim, or dispute pending or, to its knowledge, threatened against or affecting it or its assets before any governmental body that is reasonably expected to have a material adverse effect on it or its ability to perform its obligations under this Agreement or the Contract.

23.10 Marketing Efforts. The Parties acknowledge that marketing efforts related to the Contract need to be coordinated by and between the Parties. The Project Manager will be responsible for coordinating any such efforts. All marketing efforts directly associated with the Contract or this Agreement shall be coordinated through the Project Manager, who will decide whether a proposed Owner visit, or other marketing effort is necessary or appropriate.

23.11 Survival. The provisions of this Agreement which by their nature are intended to survive the termination or dissolution of the Joint Venture, including indemnities and any expressed limitations of or releases from liability, shall continue as valid and enforceable obligations of the Parties notwithstanding any such termination or dissolution.

#### **Article 24: Compliance**

24.1 Management Systems. Each Party shall use its own management systems to conduct and record its business for the Joint Venture. Such systems shall, at a minimum, include the following components: financial management, accounting, MWBE subcontractor payment tracking, procurement, property control, estimating, and contract administration. All management systems must comply with any applicable Contract requirements.

#### **Article 25: Anti-Bribery and Anti-Corruption Laws**

25.1 No Party shall, directly or indirectly, undertake nor cause nor permit to be undertaken any activity that:

25.1.1 is illegal under applicable law or regulation; or

25.1.2 would have the effect of causing the Joint Venture or the Parties or their respective subsidiaries or affiliates to be in violation of the applicable laws or regulations, including the U.S. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act or the UK Bribery Act, as applicable.

25.2 In connection with this Agreement, no Party shall give, offer, promise, or authorize, directly or indirectly, anything of value to:

25.2.1 an official, officer, employee or any other person acting in an official capacity for or on behalf of any government (including any department, agency, or instrumentality thereof), state-owned enterprise, international organization, or any subdivisions, agents or advisors thereto, whether paid or unpaid (any such person referred to collectively as "Official"), including the government(s) of the territories in which work will be performed hereunder;

25.2.2 any person(s) or party(s) while knowing or having reason to know that such thing of value is to be given, offered, or promised to an Official in order to:

25.2.2.1 influence any official act or decision, or;

25.2.2.2 induce an Official to do or omit to do any act in violation of his or her lawful duty, or;

25.2.2.3 induce an Official to use his or her influence to affect or influence a decision or act of any government, instrumentality, or international organization, or;

25.2.2.4 assist the joint venture or the Parties hereto or any other person in obtaining or retaining business for or with, or in directing business to the Parties or any other person, or;

25.2.2.5 obtain or secure an unfair or improper advantage for the joint venture or the Parties in any respect.

25.3 In connection with this Agreement, no Party shall make a contribution or give, offer, promise or authorize, directly or indirectly, anything of value to any political party, official of a political party or candidate for office on behalf of or associated with the joint venture or the Parties or in connection with the purpose of this Agreement or the contract with the Owner.

25.4 In connection with this Agreement, no Party shall engage in any acts of bribery, kickback or other improper inducement, including bribery of a person in the private sector. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, no Party shall give, offer, promise or authorize, either directly or indirectly, a financial or other advantage to any person to induce a person to perform improperly a relevant function or activity or to reward such improper performance or where the Party knows or believes that the acceptance of the advantage in itself constitutes the improper performance of a relevant function or activity.

25.5 No Party shall subcontract any part of the Services nor retain or engage a consultant to carry out sales or marketing obligations in connection with the scope of this Agreement without obtaining the JV Management Committee's prior written consent. The Joint Venture Management Committee shall have the right, in accordance with this Agreement, to reject a request to engage or retain any such consultant.

25.6 The Parties hereby covenant that neither they nor any of their respective officers, directors, agents or representatives or employees assigned to the Project an employee of the Owner or any governing body having jurisdiction over the Project. The Parties further covenant that no Official, political party official, or candidate for political office is deriving any benefit, directly or indirectly, from this JV Agreement. The Parties agrees to notify the Joint Venture Management Committee immediately of any changes to this covenant.

25.7 In no case shall any Party be obligated to take any action or make any payment to any other Party or anyone else that would cause the Joint Venture or the Parties to suffer a penalty or contravene applicable laws or regulations, including the laws of the territories in which work will be performed and those of the United States.

25.8 Notwithstanding any other provisions of this Agreement, if any Party breaches any of the covenants contained in this section, the other Parties shall have the right to immediately terminate this Agreement without penalty. In such instance, the breaching Party shall indemnify the other Parties and the Joint Venture for any penalties, losses, and expenses resulting from such breach of the provisions of this section.

25.9 Each Party agrees to promptly notify the Management Committee and the other Parties in the event it becomes aware of or discloses any potential violation of Anti-Bribery Laws in connection with this Agreement. In addition, a Party shall be in default of this Agreement if such Party is (i) found to have violated Anti-Bribery Laws by a governmental body empowered to make such a finding, or (ii) the subject of a governmental investigation involving violations of Anti-Bribery Laws in connection with this Agreement and the other Parties (that are not a target of such investigation), in their reasonable discretion, believe that the on-going investigation materially impairs the ability of the Joint Venture to provide the Services, perform the Work, or both, and/or complete the Contract.

*[SIGNATURES ON THE FOLLOWING PAGE]*

*NOTARY REQUIRED*



**IN WITNESS WHEREOF**, the Parties have caused this Agreement to be signed by their duly authorized representatives, in duplicate counterparts, each having the same effect, as of the date and year first above written.

-----

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

-----

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

-----

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

## EXHIBIT A

### Scope of Services

Identify the distinct, clearly defined portion of the work provided by each M/WBE joint venture partner. The work must be separate, clear and distinguishable. Specify the nature of the work and what it will entail. Describe the portion of the work or elements controlled by the M/WBE joint venture partner. Provide the estimated value of those services commensurate with the percentage ownership interest.

(1) General Description of Work to be Performed by the Joint Venture:

(2) Division of Work and Allocation of Responsibilities:

## **EXHIBIT B**

### **Project Management Staffing Plan**

Provide a staffing plan to be determined per the established participation percentages. Provide information relating to the approximate number of employees that will be required to perform the scope of work. Specify the number of employees to be provided by the M/WBE joint venture partner(s), titles, resumes and job responsibilities.

## EXHIBIT C

### Letter from Financial Institution or Bonding Surety Company

6.3 Provide documentation to substantiate the financial strength or bonding capacity of each M/WBE joint venture partner(s). This document should be commensurate of each M/WBE joint venture partner(s) percentage split. *Or* Provide an Up-Front Joint Agreement (SAA Form #1), and an executed copy of the indemnity agreement signed by all Parties associated with the SAA Form #1.

**STANDARD FORM OF AGREEMENT  
BETWEEN OWNER AND CONTRACTOR**

**A101**

# DRAFT AIA® Document A101™ – 2017

## Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor where the basis of payment is a Stipulated Sum

AGREEMENT made as of the **XX** day of **XXXXXX** in the year **20XX**  
(In words, indicate day, month and year)

BETWEEN the Owner:  
(Name, , address and other information)

The Dallas Independent School District, a political subdivision of the State of Texas  
Dallas, Texas  
9400 North Central Expressway  
Dallas, Texas 75231

and the Contractor:  
(Name, , address and other information)

<<GC Company Name>>  
<<GC Address>>  
<<GC City/State/Zip>>  
(###) ###-#### Phone

The Work, unless otherwise expressly stated, shall be considered as a single project  
(whether one or more campuses or facilities) and is generally described as  
follows:(Name and location)

<<BP# XXX:>>  
<<ORG #XXX XX Elementary School>>  
<<ORG Address>>  
<<Dallas, Texas 75XXX>>

The Architect is:  
(Name, address and other information)

<<A/E Company Name>>  
<<A/E Address>>  
<<A/E City/State/Zip>>  
(###) ###-#### Phone

The Program Manager is:  
(Name, address and other information)

<<Insert PMF Company Name>>  
3801 Herschel Avenue  
Dallas, TX 75219

The Owner and Contractor agree as follows.

**Version 3/25/2022 FINAL**

**ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:**  
The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

The parties should complete A101™-2017, Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds, contemporaneously with this Agreement. AIA Document A201™-2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, is adopted in this document by reference. Do not use with other general conditions unless this document is modified.

**ELECTRONIC COPYING** of any portion of this AIA® Document to another electronic file is prohibited and constitutes a violation of copyright laws as set forth in the footer of this document.

## TABLE OF ARTICLES

- 1 THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS
- 2 THE WORK OF THIS CONTRACT
- 3 DATE OF COMMENCEMENT AND SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION
- 4 CONTRACT SUM
- 5 PAYMENTS
- 6 DISPUTE RESOLUTION
- 7 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION
- 8 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS
- 9 ENUMERATION OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS
- 10 INSURANCE AND BONDS

### ARTICLE 1 THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

§ 1.1 The Contract Documents consist of this Agreement between Owner and Contractor, A101-2017, as amended (hereinafter the "Agreement"); Conditions of the Contract, as amended (General, Supplementary, and other Conditions, including but not limited to A201-2017, as amended); Contractor's proof of Payment and Performance Bonds and proof of insurance; all sections of the Project Manual and Construction Documents, Drawings, Specifications, Geotechnical Reports, Addenda issued prior to receipt of bids or proposals; other documents listed in this Agreement, and Modifications issued after execution of this Agreement. The Contract Documents form the Contract for Construction (the "Contract"), and are as fully a part of the Contract as if attached to this Agreement or repeated herein. The Contract represents the entire and integrated written agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, either written or oral. An enumeration of the Contract Documents, other than Modifications, appears in Article 9. Any reference to Contract Documents or any documents included in the Contract Documents and/or supplemented for this Project, shall refer to the Contract Documents as amended for this Project. This Agreement may not be amended or revised except by written agreement signed by the Owner and Contractor.

"Construction Documents" means: all Drawings, specifications, submittals, transmittals, deliverables, instructions to Contractors, and other documents, including those in electronic form, prepared by the Architect and the Architect's consultants and which set forth in detail the requirements for construction of the Project.

§ 1.2 This Agreement represents the entire and integrated agreement between the Owner and the Contractor and supersedes all prior negotiations, representations or agreements, either written or oral. Any revision, amendment, or modification to the Standard Form of this Agreement shall be valid, binding, and enforceable only if said revision, amendment or modification is made conspicuous by being underlined, lined-through, or highlighted in this Agreement signed by Contractor and the authorized representative of Owner's Board of Trustees. In the event of conflict, terms and conditions contained in the Agreement shall take precedence over terms and conditions contained in the General Conditions and the terms and conditions in the General Conditions shall take precedence over all other terms and conditions contained in the other Contract Documents. If the Request for Proposals and the Proposal are included in the Contract Documents, then the Request for Proposals shall take precedence over the Proposal, unless specifically agreed otherwise herein.

§ 1.3 The Board of Trustees, by majority vote, is the only representative of the Owner, an independent school district, having the power to enter into or amend a contract, to approve changes in the scope of the Work, to approve and execute a Change Order or Construction Change Directive modifying the Contract Sum, or to agree to an extension to the date of Substantial or Final Completion or to terminate a contract. The Owner designates the following as the individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of the Board of Trustees, following appropriate Board action: (*insert name and title of designee*) \_\_\_\_\_, or other Board designee.

§ 1.4 The Board designates the authorized representatives identified in Paragraph 8.3 to act on its behalf in other respects.

## ARTICLE 2 THE WORK OF THIS CONTRACT

Unless otherwise provided in these Contract Documents, the Contractor shall be responsible for performing or causing to be performed all Work including labor and materials, necessary to build, construct, erect and equip in accordance with the Contract Documents except to the extent specifically indicated in the Contract Documents to be the responsibility of others.

## ARTICLE 3 DATE OF COMMENCEMENT AND SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

§ 3.1 The date of commencement of the Work shall be:

*(Check one of the following boxes.)*

[ « » ] The date of this Agreement.

[ « X » ] A date set forth in a notice to proceed issued by the Owner.

The Agreement, including Conditions of the Contract, as well as all other Contract Documents that require signature of the Parties, including the A201-2017, as amended, must be signed first by the Contractor's representative. The Contractor shall have ten days from receipt of the documents requiring signature from the Owner to sign the Agreement and all other Contracts requiring signature to return to the Owner the signed documents along with proof of insurance and the Payment and Performance bonds. Once Owner has approved of the Contracts and the proof of insurance and the Payment and Performance bonds, Owner shall sign the Agreement and all other Contract Documents requiring signature of the parties. When Owner has signed and approved all required documents, District shall issue a Notice to Proceed to Contractor.

[ « » ] Established as follows:

*(Insert a date or a means to determine the date of commencement of the Work.)*

»

§ 3.2 The Contract Time shall be measured from the date of commencement of the Work.

### § 3.3 Substantial Completion

§ 3.3.1 Subject to adjustments of the Contract Time as provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall diligently prosecute and achieve Substantial Completion of the entire Worknot later than the Substantial Completion Date. The period for reaching the Substantial Completion Date shall begin to run from the Commencement Date and shall not include the Commencement Date. For additions and renovations the Substantial Calculation Date shall be established with the number of calendar days required to substantially complete the work, unless otherwise provided. For new schools the Substantial Completion Date shall be a specific date, unless otherwise provided.

§ 3.3.2 Subject to adjustments of the Contract Time as provided in the Contract Documents,

**Portion of Work**

Full

**Substantial Completion Date**

<<INSERT DATE>>

§ 3.3.3 If the Contractor fails to achieve Substantial Completion as provided in this Section 3.3, liquidated damages, if any, shall be assessed as set forth in Section 4.5.

## ARTICLE 4 CONTRACT SUM

§ 4.1 Subject to additions and deletions and other provisions in the Contract Documents, the Owner agrees to pay the Contractor for the Contractor's performance of the contract the following amount for construction and completion of the Work: **XXXXX DOLLARS AND XX CENTS (\$ 0.00).**



§ 4.2 Alternates

§ 4.2.1 Alternates, if any, included in the Contract Sum:

Item	Price
See Exhibit "A" attached	

§ 4.2.2 [Paragraph Deleted].

§ 4.3 Allowances, if any, included in the Contract Sum:  
(Identify each allowance.)

Item	Price
See Exhibit "C" attached	

§ 4.3.1 Owner Controlled Contingency Allowance:

All construction contracts shall contain a contingency allowance. The Owner Controlled Contingency Allowance is to be used only for expenditures which do not require a Change Order. The Owner Controlled Contingency Allowance may be used to pay for changes in the Work, including but not limited to those resulting from hidden or unforeseen conditions. The Owner Controlled Contingency Allowance may be used to pay claims. Use of the Owner Controlled Contingency Allowance must be authorized in advance by the Superintendent of Schools or designee. **XXXXX DOLLARS AND XX CENTS (\$ 0.00).**

§ 4.4 Unit prices, if any:

(Identify the item and state the unit price and quantity limitations, if any, to which the unit price will be applicable.)

Item	Units and Limitations	Price per Unit (\$0.00)
See Exhibit "B" attached		

§ 4.5 Liquidated damages, if any:

(Insert terms and conditions for liquidated damages, if any.)« § 4.5.1 Substantial Completion. Time is of the essence in all phases of the Work. It is specifically understood and agreed by and between Owner and Contractor that time is of the essence in the Substantial Completion of the Project and Owner shall sustain damages as a result of Contractor's failure, neglect or refusal to achieve said deadlines. Such damages are, and will continue to be, impracticable and extremely difficult to determine. Execution of this Agreement under these specifications shall constitute agreement by Owner and Contractor that the amounts stated below are the minimum value of the costs and damages caused by failure of Contractor to complete the Work within the allotted or agreed extended times of Substantial Completion, that such sums are liquidated damages and shall not be construed as a penalty, and that such sums may be deducted from payments due Contractor if such delay occurs. It is expressly understood that the said sum per day is agreed upon as a fair estimate of the pecuniary damages which will be sustained by the Owner in the event that the Work is not completed within the agreed time, or within the agreed extended time, if any, otherwise provided for herein. Said sum shall be considered as liquidated damages only and in no sense shall be considered a penalty, said damages being caused by, but not limited to, additional compensation for personnel, attorneys fees, architectural fees, engineering fees, program management fees, inspection fees, storage costs, food service costs, transportation costs, utilities costs, costs of temporary facilities, loss of interest on money, and other increased costs, all of which are difficult to exactly ascertain. Failure to complete the Work within the designated or agreed extended dates of Substantial Completion, shall be construed as a breach of this Agreement. It is expressly agreed as a part of the consideration inducing the Owner to execute this Agreement that the Owner may deduct from any Payment made to the Contractor a sum equal to

**XXXXX DOLLARS AND XX CENTS (\$ 0.00) / Day)**

per day for each and every additional calendar day beyond the agreed date of Substantial Completion.

§ 4.5.2. Final Completion. Timely final completion is an essential condition of this contract. Contractor agrees to achieve final completion of the Work within 60 days of the designated or extended substantial completion date. Final completion means actual completion of the Work, including any extras or Change Orders reasonably required

or contemplated under the Contract Documents other than warranty work as further defined in the Form of Contractor's Final Completion Notice attached hereto and incorporated herein as Exhibit "D".

»

§ 4.6 Other Allowances, if any, are as follows:

*(Insert provisions for bonus or other incentives, if any, that might result in a change to the Contract Sum.)*

See Exhibit "C" attached

## ARTICLE 5 PAYMENTS

### § 5.1 Progress Payments

§ 5.1.1 Based upon Applications for Payment submitted to the Architect by the Contractor and Certificates for Payment issued by the Architect, the Owner shall make progress payments on account of the Contract Sum to the Contractor as provided below and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

§ 5.1.2 The period covered by each Application for Payment shall be one calendar month.

<< »

§ 5.1.3 The Contractor shall concurrently submit monthly Applications for Payment to the Architect and Program Manager on AIA Form G702 for approval. Continuation sheets shall be submitted on AIA Form G703. If the Architect and Program Manager approve the application, then Architect shall submit a Certificate for Payment to the Owner. The Architect and Program Manager may require any additional information deemed necessary and appropriate to substantiate the Application for Payment. Materials that are verified to be on the jobsite or other approved location for use in the Project may also be incorporated into the Application for Payment. The Architect shall have seven (7) days from date of receipt from the Contractor of an Application for Payment to approve or reject all or any part of the Application for Payment. The Owner shall pay the undisputed amounts certified by the Architect and approved by the Program Manager and Owner to the Contractor within \_\_\_\_\_ ( 30 ) days of receipt of the Certificate for Payment from the Architect unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents. Undisputed amounts unpaid after the date on which payment is due shall bear interest pursuant to Texas Government Code Section 2251.025.

§ 5.1.4 Each Application for Payment shall be based on the most recent schedule of values submitted by the Contractor in accordance with the Contract Documents. The schedule of values shall allocate the entire Contract Sum, less any unused Owner's contingency, among the various portions of the Work. The schedule of values shall be prepared in such form, and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy, as the Architect and Program Manager may require. This schedule of values, unless objected to by the Architect and Program Manager, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's Applications for Payment.

§ 5.1.5 Applications for Payment shall indicate the percentage of completion of each portion of the Work as of the end of the period covered by the Application for Payment.

§ 5.1.6 In accordance with AIA Document A201™-2017, as amended, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, and subject to other provisions of the Contract Documents, the amount of each progress payment shall be computed as follows:

§ 5.1.6.1 The amount of each progress payment shall first include:

- .1 That portion of the Contract Sum properly allocable to completed Work as determined by multiplying the percentage completion of each portion of the Work by the share of the Contract Sum allocated to that portion of the Work in the schedule of values; and
- .2 That portion of the Contract Sum properly allocable to materials and equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the completed construction, or, if approved in advance by the Owner, suitably stored off the site at a location agreed upon in writing.
- .3

§ 5.1.6.2 The amount of each progress payment shall then be reduced by:

- .1 The aggregate of any amounts previously paid by the Owner;

- .2 The amount, if any, for Work that remains uncorrected and for which the Architect and Program Manager has previously withheld a Certificate for Payment as provided in Article 9 of AIA Document A201-2017, as amended;
- .3 Any amount for which the Contractor does not intend to pay a Subcontractor or material supplier, unless the Work has been performed by others the Contractor intends to pay;
- .4 For Work performed or defects discovered since the last payment application, any amount for which the Architect may withhold payment, or nullify a Certificate of Payment in whole or in part, as provided in Article 9 of AIA Document A201-2017, as amended, or amounts certified by the Architect and disputed by the Owner; and
- .5 Retainage withheld pursuant to Section 5.1.7.

**§ 5.1.7 Retainage**

**§ 5.1.7.1** For each progress payment made prior to Substantial Completion of the Work, the Owner shall withhold the following amount, as retainage, from the payment otherwise due:

*(Insert a percentage or amount to be withheld as retainage from each Application for Payment. The amount of retainage may be limited by governing law.)*

« Five Percent ( 5 %) »

If Owner is entitled to deduct liquidated damages, or any other damages or amounts provided in the Contract Documents, including clean-up fees, then Owner shall be entitled to deduct such liquidated damages, amounts and fees at any time. If Contractor fails or refuses to complete the Work, or has unsettled claims with Owner, any payment to Contractor shall be subject to deduction for such amounts as the Architect, if applicable, shall determine as the cost for completing incomplete Work and the value of unsettled claims.

**§ 5.1.7.1.1** [Paragraph Deleted.]

**§ 5.1.7.2** Reduction or limitation of retainage, if any, shall be as follows:

*(If the retainage established in Section 5.1.7.1 is to be modified prior to Substantial Completion of the entire Work, including modifications for Substantial Completion of portions of the Work as provided in Section 3.3.2, insert provisions for such modifications.)*

«NONE. »

**§ 5.1.7.3** Except as set forth in this Section 5.1.7.3, upon Final Completion of the Work, the Contractor may submit an Application for Payment that includes the retainage withheld from prior Applications for Payment pursuant to this Section 5.1.7.

**§ 5.1.8** [Paragraph Deleted.]

**§ 5.1.9** Except with the Owner's prior written approval, ~~or as otherwise provided in Section 9.3.2 of the AIA Document A201-2017~~, the Contractor shall not make advance payments to suppliers for materials or equipment which have not been delivered and stored at the site.

**§ 5.1.10** If Contractor fails or refuses to complete the Work, or has unsettled claims with Owner, any payment to Contractor shall be subject to deduction for such amounts as the Architect if applicable, shall determine as the cost for completing incomplete Work and the value of unsettled claims.

**§ 5.2 Final Payment**

**§ 5.2.1** Final payment, constituting the entire unpaid balance of the Contract Sum, minus disputed sums, authorized deductions and liquidated damages, shall be made by the Owner to the Contractor after

- .1 the Contractor has fully performed the Contract except for the Contractor's responsibility to correct nonconforming Work as provided in Article 12 of AIA Document A201-2017 as amended, and to satisfy other requirements, if any, which extend beyond final payment;
- .2
- .3 a final Certificate for Payment has been issued by the Architect and approved by the Program Manager; and
- .4 Dallas ISD Board of Trustees has voted to accept the Work and approve the Final Payment.

§ 5.2.2 The Owner's final payment of undisputed sums to the Contractor shall be made no later than 30 days after Dallas ISD Board of Trustees' vote approving Final Payment.

§ 5.3 Interest

Payments due and unpaid under the Contract shall bear interest pursuant to Texas Government Code Section 2251.025.

ARTICLE 6 DISPUTE RESOLUTION

§ 6.1

All disputes relating to this Agreement shall be resolved pursuant to the terms of Article 15 of the AIA Document A2012017, as amended.

§ 6.2 [Paragraph Deleted]

ARTICLE 7 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION

§ 7.1 The Contract may be terminated by the Owner or the Contractor as provided in Article 14 of AIA Document A201-2017 as amended.

§ 7.1.1 [Paragraph Deleted]

§ 7.2 The Work may be suspended by the Owner as provided in Article 14 of AIA Document ~~A201-~~2017 as amended.

ARTICLE 8 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

§ 8.1 Where reference is made in this Agreement to a provision of AIA Document A201-2017 as amended or another Contract Document, the reference refers to that provision as amended or supplemented by other provisions of the Contract Documents.

§ 8.2 The Owner's representative is the Superintendent of Schools or the Superintendent's designee:  
(Name, address, and other information)

<<Insert DPM Name>>  
Dallas Independent School District  
3801 Herschel Avenue  
Dallas, Texas 75219  
(###) ###-#### (Phone)  
<<Email: XXXXXXXX @dallasisd.org>>

§ 8.3 The Contractor's representative:  
(Name, address, email address, and other information)

<<GC Representative Name>>  
<<GC Representative Title>>  
<<GC Company Name>>  
<<GC Address>>  
<<GC City/State/Zip>>  
(###) ###-#### (Phone)  
<<Email: XXXX@XXX>>

§ 8.4 The Contractor's representative may not be changed without written consent of the District, which shall not be unreasonably withheld.

§ 8.5 Insurance and Bonds

§ 8.5.1 The Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance as set forth in Article 11 of AIA Document A201™-2017 as amended, ~~Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor where the basis of payment is a Stipulated Sum, Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds~~, and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

§ 8.5.2 The Contractor shall provide bonds as set forth in AIA Document ~~A101™-2017 Exhibit A~~ A201™-2017 as amended, and elsewhere in the Contract Documents.

§ 8.6 [Paragraph Deleted]

<< >>

§ 8.7 Other provisions:

«§ 8.7.1 This Agreement, in its entirety, is deemed performable in Dallas County, Texas. Any litigation to construe or enforce any term or condition of the Contract Documents shall be brought in the State Courts of Dallas County, Texas. In the event of such litigation, the prevailing party shall be entitled to recover reasonable attorney fees and cost of court.

§ 8.7.2 As a material consideration of the making of this Agreement, the modifications to this Agreement shall not be construed against the maker of said modifications.

§ 8.7.3 Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Agreement, or in any document forming a part hereof, there shall be no mandatory arbitration for any dispute arising hereunder

§ 8.7.4 Articles 1.5 and 1.6 of AIA Document A201-2017 as amended shall govern Contractor's use of the Construction Documents

§ 8.7.5 The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner for acts and omissions of the Contractor's employees, Subcontractors and their agents and employees, and other persons or entities performing portions of the Work for, or on behalf of, the Contractor or any of its Subcontractors. As part of that responsibility, Contractor shall enforce the Owner's alcohol-free, drug-free, tobacco-free, harassment-free and weapon-free policies and zones, which will require compliance with those policies and zones by Contractor's employees, subcontractors, and all other persons carrying out the Contract

§ 8.7.6 Contractor shall require all construction workers, whether Contractor's own forces or the forces of Contractor's subcontractors, to wear identification badges on the front of their persons during all times that they are on Owner's property. Such identification badges shall contain a current photograph and the worker's full name in a typeface large enough to be seen from a reasonable distance

§ 8.7.7 Contractor shall require all construction workers, whether Contractor's own forces or the forces of Contractor's subcontractors, to park their personal motor vehicles on Owner's property only in the parking places designated by the Owner. Any vehicles not parked in the appropriate locations shall be towed at the vehicle owner's sole expense.

§ 8.7.8 Contractor shall follow, and shall require all employees, agents or subcontractors to follow, applicable ordinances of the municipality in which the Project is located. In addition, if not covered by the municipality's tree ordinance, Contractor shall barricade and protect all trees on the Project

§ 8.7.9 Contractor shall institute a theft deterrence program designed to restrict construction worker access to properties of Owner that are currently in use, to maintain supervision of Contractor's and Contractor's subcontractor's forces, and to reimburse the Owner or those persons suffering a theft loss which results from Contractor's forces or Contractor's subcontractor's forces' actions, omissions, or failure to secure the Work or connecting or adjacent property of Owner.

§ 8.7.10 The Contractor may not assign its responsibilities, duties, obligations and rights under this Agreement, without the express written consent of the Owner. This does not prevent Contractor from engaging subcontractors to perform various phases of the Project, but Contractor shall be fully responsible to Owner for the work, actions and omissions of all such subcontractors

§ 8.7.11 This Agreement, in its entirety, shall be binding upon all the parties hereto, their respective successors, heirs, executors, administrators or assigns.

§ 8.7.12 Execution of this Agreement shall constitute approval and acceptance of all terms, covenants and conditions as modified and contained in the Contract Documents.

§ 8.7.13 This Agreement is subject to all applicable federal and state laws, rules, and regulations. Invalidity of any portion of this Agreement under the laws of the State of Texas or of the United States shall not affect the validity of the remainder of this Agreement.

§ 8.7.14 By signing this Agreement, the undersigned certifies as follows: "Under Section 231.006, Texas Family Code, the vendor or applicant certifies that the individual or business entity named in the contract, bid, or application is not ineligible to receive the specified grant, loan, or payment and acknowledges that this contract may be terminated, and payment may be withheld if this certification is inaccurate."

§ 8.7.15 Unless otherwise noted, terms in this Agreement shall have the same meaning as those in the edition of AIA Document A201-2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, as amended for the Project.

§ 8.7.16 To the extent that any portion of the Work requires a trench excavation exceeding five (5) feet in depth, in accordance with Texas Health and Safety Code Section 756.023(a), the Contractor shall fully comply, and shall require any applicable subcontractor to comply, with:

- .1 The Occupational Safety and Health Administration standards for trench safety in effect for the construction of the Work;
- .2 The special shoring requirements, if any, of the Owner; and
- .3 Any geotechnical information obtained by Owner for use by the Contractor in the design of the trench safety system.
- .4 Trench excavation safety protection shall be a separate pay item, and shall be based on linear feet of trench excavated. Special shoring requirements shall also be a separate pay item, and shall be based on the square feet of shoring used. Said cost shall be included within the Contract Sum.

§ 8.7.17 No delay or omission by Owner in exercising any right or power accruing upon the noncompliance or failure of performance by Contractor of any of the provisions of this Agreement shall impair any such right or power or be construed to be a waiver thereof. A waiver by Owner of any of the covenants, conditions or agreements hereof to be performed by Contractor shall not be construed to be a waiver of any subsequent breach thereof or of any other covenant, condition or agreement herein contained.

§8.7.18 Contractor stipulates that Owner is a political subdivision of the State of the Texas, and, as such, enjoys immunities from suit and liability as provided by the constitution and laws of the State of Texas. By entering into this Agreement, Owner does not waive any of its immunities from suit and/or liability, except as otherwise specifically provided herein, and as specifically authorized by law.

§ 8.7.19 By executing this Agreement, Contractor verifies that it does not boycott Israel, and it will not boycott Israel during the terms of this Contract.

§ 8.7.20 Contractor verifies and affirms that it is not a foreign terrorist organization as identified on the list prepared and maintained by the Texas Comptroller of Public Accounts. If Contractor has misrepresented its inclusion on the Comptroller's list, such omission or misrepresentation will void this Contract »

§ 8.7.21 All sums due hereunder are payable in Dallas, Dallas County, Texas.

§ 8.7.22 This Agreement, in its entirety, shall be binding on all the parties hereto, their respective successors, heirs, executors, administrators or assigns.

§ 8.7.23 Execution of this Agreement shall constitute approval and acceptance of all terms, covenants and conditions as modified and contained in the Contract Documents.

**ARTICLE 9 ENUMERATION OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS**

§ 9.1 This Agreement is comprised of the following documents:

- .1 ~~AIA Document A101™-2017~~, This executed 2017 edition of the Standard Form of Agreement Between Owner and Contractor, AIA Document A101™-2017, as amended.
- .2 ~~AIA Document A101™-2017, Exhibit A, Insurance and Bonds~~
- .3 ~~AIA Document A201™-2017~~, The General and Supplementary Conditions are the 2017 edition of the General Conditions of the Contract for Construction, AIA Document A201™-2017, as amended and attached to this Agreement.

<< >>

- .5 Drawings are as follows and are dated **MMMM DD, 20YY** unless a different date is shown below:  
See Exhibit "F" attached

Number	Title	Date

- .6 Specifications are those contained in the Project Manual dated as in subparagraph 9.1.8, and are as follows:

See Exhibit "E" attached

Section	Title	Date	Pages

- .7 Addenda, if any:

Number	Date	Pages
Addendum #1 with associated attachments	MMMM DD, 20YY	1 through XX
Addendum #2 with associated attachments	MMMM DD, 20YY	1 through XX
Addendum #3 with associated attachments	MMMM DD, 20YY	1 through XX

Portions of Addenda relating to bidding or proposal requirements are not part of the Contract Documents unless the bidding or proposal requirements are also enumerated in this Article 9.

- .8 Other Exhibits:  
(Check all boxes that apply and include appropriate information identifying the exhibit where required.)

[  ] AIA Document E204™-2017, Sustainable Projects Exhibit, dated as indicated below:  
(Insert the date of the E204-2017 incorporated into this Agreement.)

<< >>

[  ] The Sustainability Plan:

Title	Date	Pages

[  ] Supplementary and other Conditions of the Contract are those contained in the Project Manual dated:

Document	Title	Date	Pages
Project Manual	Volumes X & X of X	MMMM DD, 20YY	1 through XX

- .9 Other documents, if any, listed below:

(List here any additional documents that are intended to form part of the Contract Documents. AIA Document ~~A201™-2017~~ A201™-2017 as amended provides that the advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, sample forms, the Contractor's bid or proposal, portions of the Addenda relating to bidding or proposal requirements, and other information furnished by the Owner in anticipation of receiving bids or proposals, are not part of the Contract Documents unless enumerated in this Agreement. Any such documents should be listed here only if intended to be part of the Contract Documents.)

**See Exhibit "G" attached**

**ARTICLE 10 INSURANCE AND BONDS**

The Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance and provide bonds as set forth in Article 11 of AIA Document A201™-2017 as amended.

This Agreement is entered into as of the day and year first written ~~above.~~ above and shall be executed by the parties in one original document. The original document shall be retained by the Owner. One copy of the original shall be provided to the Contractor and one copy shall be provided to the Program Manager.

**DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT**

**<INSERT CONTRACTOR LEGAL NAME>**

\_\_\_\_\_  
**OWNER** (Signature)

**<<Insert DISD Signer Name & Title>>**

(Printed name and title)

\_\_\_\_\_  
**CONTRACTOR** (Signature)

**<<Insert GC's Signer Name & Title>>**

(Printed name and title)

Approved As To Form:

\_\_\_\_\_  
DALLAS ISD LEGAL COUNSEL (Signature) \_\_\_\_\_ Date



# DRAFT AIA® Document A101™ – 2017

## Exhibit A

### *Insurance and Bonds*

This Insurance and Bonds Exhibit is part of the Agreement, between the Owner and the Contractor, dated the « \_\_\_\_\_ » day of « \_\_\_\_\_ » in the year « 2022 »  
(In words, indicate day, month and year.)

for the following **PROJECT**:  
(Name and location or address)

« »  
« »

**THE OWNER:**  
(Name, legal status and address)

«Dallas Independent School District, a political subdivision of the State of Texas »  
«9400 North Central Expressway »  
«Dallas, Texas 75231 »

**THE CONTRACTOR:**  
(Name, legal status and address)

« »  
« »  
« »

The Architect:  
(Name, legal status, address and other information)

« »  
« »  
« »  
« »  
« »

### TABLE OF ARTICLES

- A.1 GENERAL
- A.2 OWNER'S INSURANCE
- A.3 CONTRACTOR'S INSURANCE AND BONDS
- A.4 SPECIAL TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Version 10/27/2022

#### **ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:**

The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

This document is intended to be used in conjunction with AIA Document A201™-2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction. Article 11 of A201™-2017 contains additional insurance provisions.

**ELECTRONIC COPYING** of any portion of this AIA® Document to another electronic file is prohibited and constitutes a violation of copyright laws as set forth in the footer of this document.

**ARTICLE A.1 GENERAL**

The Owner and Contractor shall purchase and maintain insurance, and provide bonds, as set forth in this Exhibit. As used in this Exhibit, the term General Conditions refers to AIA Document A201™-2017, General Conditions of the Contract for Construction.

**ARTICLE A.2 OWNER'S INSURANCE**

**§ A.2.1 General**

Prior to commencement of the Work, the Owner shall secure the insurance, and provide evidence of the coverage, required under this Article A.2. The copy of the policy or policies provided shall contain all applicable conditions, definitions, exclusions, and endorsements.

**§ A.2.2 Liability Insurance**

The Owner shall be responsible for purchasing and maintaining the Owner's usual general liability insurance.

**§ A.2.3 Required Property Insurance**

**§ A.2.3.1** Contractor shall provide builder's risk insurance as required in A.3.3.2.1.

**§ A.2.3.1.1 -**

*(NOT USED Indicate below the cause of loss and any applicable sub-limit.)*

Causes of Loss	Sub-Limit
«N/A »	

**§ A.2.3.1.2**

*(NOT USED Indicate below type of coverage and any applicable sub-limit for specific required coverages.)*

Coverage	Sub-Limit
«N/A »	

**§ A.2.3.1.3**

**§ A.2.3.1.4**

**§ A.2.3.2 Occupancy or Use Prior to Substantial Completion.** The Owner's occupancy or use of any completed or partially completed portion of the Work prior to Substantial Completion shall not commence until the insurance company or companies providing the insurance under Section A.3.3.2.1 have consented in writing to continuance or replacement of coverage. The Owner and the Contractor shall take no action with respect to partial occupancy or use that would cause cancellation, lapse, or reduction of insurance, unless they agree otherwise in writing.

**§ A.2.3.3 Insurance for Existing Structures**

If the Work involves remodeling an existing structure or constructing an addition to an existing structure, the Owner may purchase and maintain, until the expiration of the period for correction of Work as set forth in Section 12.2.2 of the General Conditions, property insurance, on a replacement cost basis, protecting the existing structure against direct physical loss or damage from the causes of loss identified in Section A.3.3.2, notwithstanding the undertaking of the Work. The Owner shall be responsible for all co-insurance penalties.

**§ A.2.4**

*(NOT USED Select the types of insurance the Owner is required to purchase and maintain by placing an X in the box(es) next to the description(s) of selected insurance. For each type of insurance selected, indicate applicable limits of coverage or other conditions in the fill point below the selected item.)*

[ «|» ] **§ A.2.4.1**

«|»

[  ] § A.2.4.2

[  ] § A.2.4.3

[  ] § A.2.4.4

[  ] § A.2.4.5

[  ] § A.2.4.6

[  ] § A.2.4.7



**§ A.2.5 Other Optional Insurance.**

The Owner may purchase and maintain the insurance selected below.

*(Select the types of insurance the Owner is required to purchase and maintain by placing an X in the box(es) next to the description(s) of selected insurance.)*

[  ] § A.2.5.1 **Cyber Security Insurance** for loss to the Owner due to data security and privacy breach, including costs of investigating a potential or actual breach of confidential or private information. *(Indicate applicable limits of coverage or other conditions in the fill point below.)*

[  ] § A.2.5.2 **Other Insurance**

*(List below any other insurance coverage to be provided by the Owner and any applicable limits.)*

**Coverage**

**Limits**

**ARTICLE A.3 CONTRACTOR'S INSURANCE AND BONDS**

**§ A.3.1 General**

**§ A.3.1.1 Certificates of Insurance.** The Contractor shall provide certificates of insurance acceptable to the Owner evidencing compliance with the requirements in this Article A.3 at the following times: (1) at least five business days after execution of the Contract documents and prior to commencement of the Work; (2) upon renewal or replacement of each required policy of insurance; and (3) upon the Owner's written request. An additional certificate evidencing continuation of commercial liability coverage, including coverage for completed operations, shall be submitted with the final Application for Payment and thereafter upon renewal or replacement of such coverage until the expiration of the periods required by Section A.3.2.1 and Section A.3.3.1. The certificates will show the Owner as an additional insured on all of Contractor's insurance policies, except Contractor's workers compensation insurance. These certificates and the insurance policies required by this Article shall contain a provision that coverages afforded under the policies will not be canceled, reduced, or restricted for any reason, other than nonpayment of premium, until at least 30 days' prior written notice of such cancellation, reduction, or restriction has been given to the Owner and Contractor. An additional certificate, policy, and endorsement evidencing continuation of liability coverage, including coverage for completed operations, shall be submitted with the final Application for Payment as required by Section 9.10.2 of the AIA A201-2017 General Conditions as amended for the Project, and thereafter upon renewal or replacement of such coverage. Information concerning reduction or restriction of

coverage on account of revised limits or claims paid under the General Aggregate, or cancellation or expiration of the insurance shall be furnished by written notice to the Owner from the Contractor within three business days of the date Contractor knew or should have known of the cancellation, reduction, or restriction. At least 30 calendar days prior to the date of expiration of any required insurance policy. Contractor shall provide Owner written notice of the impending expiration. In addition, Contractor shall also provide copies of all policies, declarations, and endorsements for such insurance to Owner as required by Section 11.0.2 of the 2017 AIA A201 General Conditions as amended for this Project.

**§ A.3.1.2 Deductibles and Self-Insured Retentions.** The Contractor shall disclose to the Owner any deductible or self-insured retentions applicable to any insurance required to be provided by the Contractor. If the insurance required by this Section A.3.1 is subject to deductibles or self-insured retentions, the Contractor shall be responsible for all loss not covered because of such deductibles or retentions. For any claim made against the Contractor's policies of insurance, the deductible shall not exceed \$2,500 for Contract Sum (or Guaranteed Maximum Price, if the Project is a Construction Manager at Risk project) of less than \$4 million. For a Contract Sum (or Guaranteed Maximum Price, if the Project is a Construction Manager at Risk project), of \$4 million or more, the deductible shall not exceed \$5,000.

**§ A.3.1.3 Additional Insured Obligations.** To the fullest extent permitted by law, the Contractor shall cause the commercial general liability coverage and any other insurance required by the Agreement, with the exception of Workers' Compensation insurance, to be endorsed to include (1) the Owner, the Architect, and the Architect's consultants as additional insureds for claims caused in whole or in part by the Contractor's negligent acts or omissions during the Contractor's operations; and (2) the Owner as an additional insured for claims caused in whole or in part by the Contractor's negligent acts or omissions for which loss occurs during completed operations. The additional insured coverage shall be primary and non-contributory to any of the Owner's general liability insurance policies and shall apply to both ongoing and completed operations. To the extent commercially available, the additional insured coverage shall be no less than that provided by Insurance Services Office, Inc. (ISO) forms CG 10 07 04, CG 20 37 07 04, and, with respect to the Architect and the Architect's consultants, CG 20 32 07 04.

### **§ A.3.2 Contractor's Required Insurance Coverage**

**§ A.3.2.1** The Contractor and the Contractor's subcontractors shall purchase and maintain such insurance as will protect them and the Owner from claims which may arise out of, or result from, the Contractor's operations under the Contract whether such operations be by Contractor or by any Subcontractor, or by anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts any of them maybe liable, in the following types and limits of insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. *(See also the insurance requirements included in Article 11 of the AIA A201-2017 General Conditions as amended for this Project).* The Contractor shall maintain the required insurance until the expiration of the period for correction of Work as set forth in Section 12.2.2 of the General Conditions.

*(DO NOT USE If the Contractor is required to maintain insurance for a duration other than the expiration of the period for correction of Work, state the duration.)*

The insurance required by this Section shall be written for not less than the limits of liability specified in the Contract Documents or required by law, whichever coverage is greater. Coverages, whether written on an occurrence or claims-made basis, shall be maintained without interruption from the date of commencement of the Work until the date of final payment and termination of any coverage required to be maintained after final payment, and, with respect to the Contractor's completed operations coverage, until the expiration of the period for correction of Work or for such other period for maintenance of completed operations coverage as specified in the Contract Documents. The limits of liability for such insurance shall be in at least the following amounts as specified below.

*(NOTE: Amounts of insurance coverage have been left blank so that Districts can enter the appropriate amounts for their Projects. DO NOT LEAVE ANY BLANK UNFILLED IF THAT COVERAGE IS REQUIRED OR CHOSEN FOR THE PROJECT. If a particular coverage will not be used for the Project, delete the unused section. If the District has questions on the appropriate amounts or types of coverage, it is strongly suggested that the District contact its legal counsel and insurance agent.)*

<< >>

### § A.3.2.2 Commercial General Liability

§ A.3.2.2.1 Commercial General Liability insurance for the Project written on an occurrence form with policy limits of not less than « One Million Dollars and no/100 » (\$ « 1,000,000 » ) each occurrence, « Two Million Dollars and no/100 » (\$ « 2,000,000 » ) general aggregate, and « Two Million Dollars and no/100 » (\$ « 2,000,000 » ) aggregate for products-completed operations hazard, providing coverage for claims including

- .1 damages because of bodily injury, sickness or disease, including occupational sickness or disease, and death of any person, with a sublimit not less than \$5,000 for medical expenses per person for bodily injury, included within the limits noted above;
- .2 personal injury and advertising injury with a limit not less than \$1,000,000, \$2,000,000 aggregate;
- .3 damages because of physical damage to or destruction of tangible property, including the loss of use of such property;
- .4 bodily injury or property damage arising out of the Work and out of completed operations, said coverage to be maintained for two years after Final Completion (to be maintained for a period of two years after Final Payment; Contractor shall continue to provide evidence of such coverage to Owner on an annual basis during this period and Owner shall be named by endorsement as an Additional Insured for such coverage) and must include Completed Operations coverage for Contractor, its sub-contractors, and Owner;
- .5 the Contractor's contractual liability, including but not limited to, indemnity obligations under Section 3.18 of the General Conditions; and
- .6 General Aggregate per Project endorsement.

§ A.3.2.2.2 The Contractor's Commercial General Liability policy under this Section A.3.2.2 shall not contain an exclusion or restriction of coverage for the following:

- .1 Claims by one insured against another insured, if the exclusion or restriction is based solely on the fact that the claimant is an insured, and there would otherwise be coverage for the claim.
- .2 Claims for property damage to the Contractor's Work arising out of the products-completed operations hazard where the damaged Work or the Work out of which the damage arises was performed by a Subcontractor.
- .3 Claims for bodily injury other than to employees of the insured.
- .4 Claims for indemnity under Section 3.18 of the General Conditions arising out of injury to employees of the insured.
- .5 Claims or loss excluded under a prior work endorsement or other similar exclusionary language.
- .6 Claims or loss due to physical damage under a prior injury endorsement or similar exclusionary language.
- .7 Claims related to residential, multi-family, or other habitational projects, if the Work is to be performed on such a project.
- .8 Claims related to roofing, if the Work involves roofing.
- .9 Claims related to exterior insulation finish systems (EIFS), synthetic stucco or similar exterior coatings or surfaces, if the Work involves such coatings or surfaces.
- .10 Claims related to earth subsidence or movement, where the Work involves such hazards.
- .11 Claims related to explosion, collapse and underground hazards, where the Work involves such hazards.

#### A.3.2.2.3

Coverage will include:

- Independent Contractors
- Premise operations
- Defense costs in addition to the limits
- X, C, and U coverage
- Broad form property damage including products/completed operations.

Contractual Liability sufficient to cover indemnity requirements in Section 3.18.1, subject to, policy terms and conditions

Contractor's Professional Liability endorsement CG 22 79 or equivalent (policy shall not contain a professional liability exclusion for "means and methods")

Additional insured, primary and non-contributing

If the additional insured endorsement maintained by the Contractor does not include completed operations coverage then the Contractor must purchase this coverage using form CG-20-37 (latest edition) or an equivalent form providing additional insureds with coverage for "completed operations".

Waiver of subrogation in favor of Owner, Program Manager and Architect

A standard ISO CGL 2001 occurrence coverage form or equivalent  
 No modification or restriction of the standard ISO CGL coverage form Paragraph I – “damage to your work”  
 exclusion. The “subcontractor exception” will not be removed via CG 22 94.  
 If there is work within fifty (50) feet of a railroad, endorse with CG 2417.

**§ A.3.2.3** Automobile Liability covering vehicles owned, and non-owned, hired, or any other vehicles used, by the Contractor, with policy limits of not less than «**1**» (\$ «**1**» ) than those stated below per accident, for bodily injury, death of any person, and property damage arising out of the ownership, maintenance and use of those motor vehicles along with any other statutorily required automobile coverage. (Note: Texas statutory minimum for school districts is \$100,000 per person, \$300,000 per occurrence, and \$100,000 property damage.) Such minimum limits shall be stated as follows, or in a combined single limit policy in the amount of at least \$1,000,000.

.1	Bodily Injury (per person)	\$300,000
.2	Bodily Injury (per accident)	\$300,000
.3	Property Damage	\$300,000

Business Automobile Liability (including owned, non-owned, hired, or borrowed vehicles);

Combined single limit \$300,000

Coverage will include:

- Contractual Liability
- Additional insured, primary and non-contributing
- Waiver of subrogation in favor of Owner, Program manager, and Architect
- Pollution liability which includes upset, overturn, and collision
- Motor Carrier Act Endorsement (MCS 90), if applicable.

**§ A.3.2.4** The Contractor may not achieve the required limits and coverage for Commercial General Liability and Automobile Liability through a combination of primary and excess or umbrella liability insurance. In no event shall any excess or umbrella liability insurance provide narrower coverage than the primary policy. The excess policy shall not require the exhaustion of the underlying limits only through the actual payment by the underlying insurers.

**A.3.2.4.1** Umbrella Excess Liability coverages shall be in at least the following amounts:

- .1 \$ each occurrence
- .2 \$ aggregate
- .3 Aggregate Per Project Endorsement

Limits as follows:

If Contract Sum is \$1,000,000 or less  
 \$1,000,000 each occurrence and \$2,000,000 annual aggregate

If Contract Sum is greater than \$1,000,000 up to \$5,000,000  
 \$5,000,000 each occurrence and annual aggregate

If Contract Sum is greater than \$5,000,000 up to \$10,000,000  
 \$10,000,000 each occurrence and annual aggregate

If Contract Sum is greater than \$10,000,000 to \$25,000,000  
 \$25,000,000 each occurrence and annual aggregate

If Contract Sum is greater than \$25,000,000  
 \$50,000,000 each occurrence and annual aggregate

Coverage will include:  
 Occurrence based form

Follow form of the primary coverage (commercial general liability, employer's liability, auto liability) except for per project aggregate  
Pay on behalf wording  
Completed Operations  
Waiver of subrogation to follow form of the primary  
Additional insured to follow form of the primary  
Annual aggregate limit  
A drop down feature

**§ A.3.2.5 Workers' Compensation .**

.1	State:	Statutory Benefits
.2	Employer's Liability	\$500,000 per accident \$500,000 disease, policy limit \$ 500,000 disease, each employee

Coverage will include:

Waiver of subrogation in favor of Owner, Program Manager and Architect  
Alternate Employers Endorsement, if applicable  
Voluntary Compensation endorsement  
All States coverage on an "if any" basis

**A.3.2.5.1 Texas Workers' Compensation Insurance.** A copy of a certificate of insurance, a certificate of authority to self-insure issued by the Texas Department of Insurance (TDI), or a coverage agreement (DWC-81, DWC-82, DWC-83, or DWC-84), showing statutory worker's compensation insurance coverage for the Contractor's employees providing services on a Project is required for the duration of the Project.

**A.3.2.5.1.1** Duration of the Project include the time from the beginning of the Work on the project until the Contractor's Work on the Project has been completed and accepted by the Owner.

**A.3.2.5.1.2** Persons providing services on the Project ("subcontractor" in Texas Labor Code Section 406.096) include all persons or entities performing all or part of the services the Contractor has undertaken to perform on the Project, regardless of whether that person has employees. This includes, without limitation, independent contractors, subcontractors, leasing companies, motor carriers, owner-operations, employees of any such entity, or employees of any entity that furnishes persons to provide services on the Project.

**A.3.2.5.1.3** Services include, without limitation, providing, hauling or delivering equipment or materials, or providing labor, transportation, or other services related to the Project. Services do not include activities unrelated to the Project, such as food/beverage vendors, office supply deliveries, and delivery of portable toilets.

**A.3.2.5.1.4** The Contractor shall provide coverage, based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts and filing of any coverage agreements, which meets the statutory requirements of Texas Labor Code 401.011(44) for all employees of the Contractor providing services on the Project for the duration of the Project.

**A.3.2.5.1.5** The Contractor must provide a certificate of coverage to the Owner prior to being awarded the Contract.

**A.3.2.5.1.6** If the coverage period shown on the Contractor's current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the Project, the Contractor must, prior to the end of the coverage period, file a new certificate of coverage with the Owner showing that coverage has been extended.

**A.3.2.5.1.7** The Contractor shall obtain from each person providing services on the Project, and provide to the Owner:

.1 A certificate of coverage, prior to that person beginning work on the Project, so the Owner will have, on file, certificates of coverage showing coverage for all persons providing services on the Project; and

.2 No later than seven days after receipt by the Contractor, a new certificate of coverage showing extension of coverage, if the coverage period shown on the current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the Project.

**A.3.2.5.1.8** The Contractor shall retain all required certificates of coverage for the duration of the Project and for one year thereafter.

**A.3.2.5.1.9** The Contractor shall notify the Owner, in writing by certified mail or personal delivery, within ten (10) days after Contractor knew or should have known, of any change that materially affects the provision of coverage of any person providing services on the Project.

**A.3.2.5.1.10** The Contractor shall post on each Project site a notice, in the text form and manner prescribed by the TDI, informing all persons providing services on the Project that they are required to be covered, and stating how a person may verify coverage and report lack of coverage.

**A.3.2.5.1.11** The Contractor shall contractually require each person with whom it contracts to provide services on the Project to:

.1 Provide coverage, based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts and filing of any coverage agreements, which meets the stator requirements of Texas Labor Code 401.011(44) for all of its employees providing services on the Project for the duration of the Project:

.2 Provide to the Contractor, prior to that person beginning work on the Project, a certificate of coverage showing that coverage is being provided for all employees of the person providing services on the project for the duration of the Project;

.3 Provide the Contractor, prior to the end of the coverage period, a new certificate of coverage showing extension of coverage, if the coverage period shown on the current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the Project;

.4 Obtain from each other person with who it contracts, and provide to the Contractor:

.1 A certificate of coverage, prior to the other person beginning work on the Project; and  
.2 A new certificate of coverage showing extension of coverage, prior to the end of the coverage period, if the coverage period shown on the current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the Project.

.5 Retain all required certificates of coverage on file for the duration of the Project and for one year thereafter;

.6 Notify the Owner in writing by certified mail or persona delivery, within ten (10) days after the person knew or should have known, of any change that materially affects the provision of coverage of any person providing services on the Project; and

.7 Contractually require each person with whom it contracts to perform as required by items 1 - 6, with the certificates of coverage to be provided to the person for whom they are providing services.

**A.3.2.5.1.12** By signing this Contract or providing or causing to be provided a certificate of coverage, the Contractor is representing to the Owner that all employees of the Contractor who will provide services on the Project will be covered by worker's compensation coverage for the duration of the Project, that the coverage will be based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts, and that all coverage agreements will be filed with the appropriate insurance carrier, or, in the case of a self-insured, with the TDI's Division of Self-Insurance Regulation. Providing false or misleading information may subject the Contractor to administrative penalties, criminal penalties, civil penalties, or other civil actions.

**A.3.2.5.1.13** The Contractor's failure to comply with any of these provisions is a breach of contract by the Contractor that entitles the Owner to declare the Contract void if the Contractor does not remedy the breach within ten (10) days after receipt of notice of breach from the Owner.



**A.3.2.5.1.14** The coverage requirement recited above does not apply to sole proprietors, partners, and corporate officers who are excluded from coverage in an insurance policy or certificate of authority to self-insure that is delivered, issued or delivery, or renewed on or after January 1, 1996.

28 TAC § 110.110(i).

**§ A.3.2.6** Employers' Liability with policy limits not less than « Five Hundred Thousand Dollars and no/100 » (\$ « 500,000 » ) each accident, « Five Hundred Thousand Dollars and no/100 » (\$ « 500,000 » ) each employee, and « Five Hundred Thousand Dollars and no/100 » (\$ « 500,000 » ) policy limit.

**§ A.3.2.7**

**§ A.3.2.8** If the Contractor is required to furnish professional services as part of the Work, the Contractor shall procure Professional Liability insurance covering performance of the professional services, with policy limits of not less than « One Million Dollars and no/100 » (\$ « 1,000,000 » ) per claim and « One Million Dollars and no/100 » (\$ « 1,000,000 » ) in the aggregate. Contractor's Professional Liability, if applicable:

If the Work performed by the Contractor or its subcontractors will include some responsibility for design, the Contractor will purchase or cause to be purchased and maintained a professional liability policy. The limits of coverage will not be less than:

Coverage will include:

- A waiver of subrogation in favor of Owner, Program Manager and Architect
- A retroactive date that is the earlier of the start of design or the Work
- Coverage for negligent acts, errors or omissions arising out of design or engineering services
- An extended reporting period of 5 years after final completion

**§ A.3.2.9** If the Work involves the transport, dissemination, use, or release of pollutants, the Contractor shall procure Pollution Liability insurance, with policy limits of not less than « Three Million Dollars and no/100 » (\$ « 3,000,000 » ) per claim and « Three Million Dollars and no/100 » (\$ « 3,000,000 » ) in the aggregate

Contractors Pollution Liability, if applicable Contractor will purchase a policy covering third-party bodily injury, property damage, and loss of use claims, including clean-up costs, as a result of pollution conditions arising from contractor's operations and completed operations. Completed operations coverage will remain in effect through annual renewal for no less than 5 years after final completion of the Work. The limits of coverage will be not less than:

Coverage will include:

- Mold and other fungi and bacteria
- No exclusion for EIFS, if applicable
- Additional insured, primary and non-contributing
- A waiver of subrogation in favor of Owner, Program Manager and Architect
- A retroactive date no later than the start of the Work, if applicable.
- Occurrence form, if available.

**§ A.3.2.10** Coverage under Sections A.3.2.8 and A.3.2.9 may be procured through a Combined Professional Liability and Pollution Liability insurance policy, with combined policy limits of not less than « Four Million Dollars and no/100 » (\$ « 4,000,000 » ) per claim and « Four Million Dollars and no/100 » (\$ « 4,000,000 » ) in the aggregate.

**§ A.3.2.11** « » (\$ « » ) « » (\$ « » )

**§ A.3.2.12** Insurance for the use or operation of manned or unmanned aircraft, if the Work requires such activities, with policy limits of not less than « Ten Million Dollars and no/100 » (\$ « 10,000,000 » ) per claim and « Ten Million Dollars and no/100 » (\$ « 10,000,000 » ) in the aggregate.

### § A.3.3 Contractor's Other Insurance Coverage

§ A.3.3.1 Insurance selected and described in this Section A.3.3 shall be purchased from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

Contractor's insurance shall apply separately to each insured against whom claim is made or suit is brought, except with respect to the limits of the insurer's liability. The Contractor shall maintain the required insurance until the expiration of the period for correction of Work as set forth in Section 12.2.2 of the General Conditions, unless a different duration is stated below:

*(If the Contractor is required to maintain any of the types of insurance selected below for a duration other than the expiration of the period for correction of Work, state the duration.)*

<< >>

§ A.3.3.2 The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the following types and limits of insurance in accordance with Section A.3.3.1.

*(Select the types of insurance the Contractor is required to purchase and maintain by placing an X in the box(es) next to the description(s) of selected insurance. Where policy limits are provided, include the policy limit in the appropriate fill point.)*

- [  ] § A.3.3.2.1 Builder's Risk Property insurance in the amount of the Contract Sum which, if selected in this section A.3.3.2.1, relieves the Owner of the responsibility to purchase and maintain such insurance except insurance required by Section A.2.3.1.3 and Section A.2.3.3. The Contractor shall disclose to the Owner the amount of any deductible, and the Contractor shall be responsible for losses within the deductible. The Contractor shall provide the Owner with a copy of the property insurance policy or policies required. The Owner shall adjust and settle the loss with the insurer and be the trustee of the proceeds of the property insurance in accordance with Article 11 of the General Conditions unless otherwise set forth below:

*(DO NOT USE) Where the Contractor's obligation to provide property insurance differs from the Owner's obligations as described under Section A.2.3, indicate such differences in the space below. Additionally, if a party other than the Owner will be responsible for adjusting and settling a loss with the insurer and acting as the trustee of the proceeds of property insurance in accordance with Article 11 of the General Conditions, indicate the responsible party below.)*

**.1 Builder's Risk.** Unless otherwise provided, Contractor shall purchase and maintain, from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the state of Texas, a property insurance written on builder's risk "all-risks" completed value or equivalent policy form and sufficient to cover the total value of the entire Project on a replacement cost basis, including boiler and machinery insurance. Coverage, if not included in the base coverage, shall include coverage against the perils of fire, (with extended coverage) and physical loss or damage including, without limitation or duplication of coverage, lightning, collapse, earthquake, flood, wind storm, hurricane, hail, explosion, riot, civil commotion, smoke, aircraft, land vehicles, theft, vandalism, malicious mischief, falsework, testing and start-up, temporary buildings, debris removal including demolition occasioned by enforcement of any applicable legal requirements, and all other perils, and shall include materials stored on-site, off-site, and in transit. The Contractor's property insurance coverage shall be no less than the amount of the initial Contract Sum, plus the value of subsequent Modifications and labor performed and materials or equipment supplied by others. The property insurance shall be maintained until Final Completion, unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents or otherwise agreed in writing by the parties to this Agreement. This insurance shall include the interests of the Owner, Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors in the Project as insureds. This insurance shall include the interests of mortgagees as loss payees. Such coverage shall be primary coverage.

**.2 Causes of Loss.** The insurance required by this Section A.3.3.2.1 shall provide coverage for direct physical loss or damage, and shall not exclude the risks of fire, explosion, theft, vandalism, malicious mischief, collapse, earthquake, flood, or windstorm. The insurance shall also provide coverage for ensuing loss or resulting damage from error, omission, or deficiency in construction methods, design, specifications, workmanship, or materials. Sub-limits, if any, are as follows:

(Indicate below the cause of loss and any applicable sub-limit.)

**.3 Causes of Loss Sub-Limit.** Specific Required Coverages. The insurance required by this Section A.3.3.2.1 shall provide coverage for loss or damage to falsework and other temporary structures, and to building systems from testing and startup. The insurance shall also cover debris removal, including demolition, occasioned by enforcement of any applicable legal requirements, and reasonable compensation for the Architect's and Contractor's services and expenses required as a result of such insured loss, including claim preparation expenses. Sub-limits, if any, are as follows: (Indicate below type of coverage and any applicable sub-limit for specific required coverages.)

**.4 Adjustment of Loss.** The Owner, as a fiduciary, shall have power to adjust and settle any loss arising out of the Work, with insured, regardless of the purchaser of the insurance policy. The Contractor, upon receipt of proceeds, shall as fiduciary, pay all subcontractors their just shares of insurance proceeds received by the Contractor, and, by appropriate agreements, shall require subcontractors to make payment to their sub-subcontractors in similar manner. The Owner shall deposit, in a separate account, proceeds so received, which the Owner shall distribute in accordance with such agreement as the parties in interest may reach. If after such loss no other special agreement is made and unless the Owner terminates the Contract for convenience, then replacement of damaged property shall be performed by the Contractor with the insurance proceeds upon issuance of a Notice to Proceeds from the Owner.

**.5 Occupancy or Use Prior to Substantial Completion.** The Owner's occupancy or use of any completed or partially completed portion of the Work prior to Substantial Completion shall not commence until the insurance company or companies providing the insurance under Section A.3.3.2.1 have consented, in writing, to the continuance of coverage. The Owner and the Contractor shall take no action with respect to partial occupancy or use that would cause cancellation, lapse, or reduction of insurance, unless they agree otherwise in writing.

**.6 Employee Theft or Dishonesty.** If this Builder's Risk policy excludes Employee Theft or Dishonesty coverage, including Third Parties, Contractor shall obtain separate coverage sufficient to protect Owner's interest and in an amount agreeable to Owner.

**.7 Cancellation.** The insurance policies required by this Section A.3.3.2 shall contain a provision that coverages afforded under the policies will not be canceled for any reason, other than nonpayment of premium, or reduced or restricted due to a material change in coverage until at least 30 days prior written notice of such cancellation or material change has been given to the Owner. Contractor shall provide Owner 30 days prior written notice of the expiration of any policy required by Section A.3.1.1.

**.8 Construction Manager at Risk.** If Contractor is a Construction Manager at Risk. Then, as specified in each AIA A133 Exhibit A Amendment, the amount of Builder's Risk insurance coverage shall be an amount equal to the Guaranteed Maximum Price; otherwise, in the total amount of the Contract Sum.

**.9 Deductibles.** For any claim made against the builder's risk insurance, the deductible shall not exceed \$2,500 for a Contract Sum (or Guaranteed Maximum Price, if the Project is a Construction Manager at Risk project), of less than \$4 million. For a Contract Sum (or Guaranteed Maximum Price, if the project is a Construction Manager at Risk project), of \$4 million or more, the deductible shall not exceed \$5,000. Contractor shall be responsible for losses within such deductible amounts.

« »

[ « » ] § A.3.3.2.2 « » (\$ « » ) « » (\$ « » )

[ « » ] § A.3.3.2.3 « » (\$ « » ) « » (\$ « » )

[ « » ] § A.3.3.2.4 Insurance for physical damage to property while it is in storage and in transit to the

construction site on an “all-risks” completed value form.

[ <> ] § A.3.3.2.5

[ <> ] § A.3.3.2.6 Other Insurance

(List below any other insurance coverage to be provided by the Contractor and any applicable limits.)

Coverage

Limits

<>

§ A.3.4 Performance Bond and Payment Bond

The Contractor shall provide surety bonds, from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the jurisdiction where the Project is located, subject to the requirements of A201-2017, Article 11.1.2.1, as follows:

(Specify type and penal sum of bonds.)

Type

Penal Sum (\$0.00)

Payment Bond

<<\$ or 100% of the Contract Sum as amended

Performance Bond

\$ or 100% of the Contract Sum as amended>>

The form of Payment and Performance Bonds shall be subject to the requirements of Texas law, current as of the date of this Agreement.

ARTICLE A.4 SPECIAL TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Special terms and conditions that modify this Insurance and Bonds Exhibit, if any, are as follows:

<< See A201-2017, Article 11 >>

This Agreement entered into as of the day and year first written above.

OWNER

CONTRACTOR

Dallas Independent School District

**GENERAL AND SUPPLEMENTARY  
CONDITIONS OF THE CONTRACT FOR  
CONSTRUCTION**

**A201**

# DRAFT AIA® Document A201™ – 2017

## General Conditions of the Contract for Construction

for the following PROJECT:

(Name and location or address)

**BP# XXX: ORG #XXX XX Elementary School**  
School Address  
Dallas, Texas 75XXX

**THE OWNER:**

(Name, legal status and address)

**The Dallas Independent School District, a political subdivision of the State of Texas**  
9400 North Central Expressway  
Dallas, Texas 75231

**THE PROGRAM MANAGER:**

(Name, legal status and address)

**PMF Name**  
**PMF Address**  
**PMF City/State/Zip**

←→←→  
←→

**THE ARCHITECT:**

(Name, legal status and address)

**A/E Name**  
**A/E Address**  
**A/E City/State/Zip**

### TABLE OF ARTICLES

- 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS
- 2 OWNER
- 3 CONTRACTOR
- 4 ARCHITECT ADMINISTRATION OF THE CONTRACT
- 5 SUBCONTRACTORS
- 6 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS
- 7 CHANGES IN THE WORK
- 8 TIME
- 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION
- 10 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY

**ADDITIONS AND DELETIONS:**  
The author of this document has added information needed for its completion. The author may also have revised the text of the original AIA standard form. An *Additions and Deletions Report* that notes added information as well as revisions to the standard form text is available from the author and should be reviewed.

This document has important legal consequences. Consultation with an attorney is encouraged with respect to its completion or modification.

For guidance in modifying this document to include supplementary conditions, see AIA Document A503™, Guide for Supplementary Conditions.

**ELECTRONIC COPYING** of any portion of this AIA® Document to another electronic file is prohibited and constitutes a violation of copyright laws as set forth in the footer of this document.

- 11 INSURANCE AND BONDS
- 12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK
- 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS
- 14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT
- 15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES

Version 10/27/2022



## INDEX

(Topics and numbers in bold are Section headings.)

### Acceptance of Nonconforming Work

9.6.6, 9.9.3, **12.3**

Acceptance of Work

9.6.6, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 12.3

### Access to Work

**3.16**, 6.2.1, 12.1

Accident Prevention

10

Acts and Omissions

3.2, 3.3.2, 3.12.8, 3.18, 4.2.3, 8.3.1, 9.5.1, 10.2.5,

10.2.8, 13.3.2, 14.1, 15.1.2, 15.2

Addenda

1.1.1

Additional Costs, Claims for

3.7.4, 3.7.5, 10.3.2, 15.1.5

### Additional Inspections and Testing

9.4.2, 9.8.3, 12.2.1, **13.4**

### Additional Time, Claims for

3.2.4, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.10.2, 8.3.2, **15.1.6**

### Administration of the Contract

3.1.3, **4.2**, 9.4, 9.5

Advertisement or Invitation to Bid

1.1.1

Aesthetic Effect

4.2.13

### Allowances

**3.8**

### Applications for Payment

4.2.5, 7.3.9, 9.2, **9.3**, 9.4, 9.5.1, 9.5.4, 9.6.3, 9.7, 9.10

Approvals

2.1.1, 2.3.1, 2.5, 3.1.3, 3.10.2, 3.12.8, 3.12.9,

3.12.10.1, 4.2.7, 9.3.2, 13.4.1

### Arbitration

8.3.1, 15.3.2, **15.4**

## ARCHITECT

**4**

Architect, Definition of

**4.1.1**

Architect, Extent of Authority

2.5, 3.12.7, 4.1.2, 4.2, 5.2, 6.3, 7.1.2, 7.3.4, 7.4, 9.2,

9.3.1, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.3, 9.8, 9.10.1, 9.10.3, 12.1, 12.2.1,

13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.4, 15.2.1

Architect, Limitations of Authority and

Responsibility

2.1.1, 3.12.4, 3.12.8, 3.12.10, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 4.2.2,

4.2.3, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.10, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 5.2.1, 7.4,

9.4.2, 9.5.4, 9.6.4, 15.1.4, 15.2

Architect's Additional Services and Expenses

2.5, 12.2.1, 13.4.2, 13.4.3, 14.2.4

Architect's Administration of the Contract

3.1.3, 3.7.4, 15.2, 9.4.1, 9.5

Architect's Approvals

2.5, 3.1.3, 3.5, 3.10.2, 4.2.7

Architect's Authority to Reject Work

3.5, 4.2.6, 12.1.2, 12.2.1

Architect's Copyright

1.1.7, 1.5

Architect's Decisions

3.7.4, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.11, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 4.2.14, 6.3,

7.3.4, 7.3.9, 8.1.3, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.4.1, 9.5, 9.8.4, 9.9.1,

13.4.2, 15.2

Architect's Inspections

3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4

Architect's Instructions

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 13.4.2

Architect's Interpretations

4.2.11, 4.2.12

Architect's Project Representative

4.2.10

Architect's Relationship with Contractor

1.1.2, 1.5, 2.3.3, 3.1.3, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.4.2,

3.5, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.9.2, 3.9.3, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16,

3.18, 4.1.2, 4.2, 5.2, 6.2.2, 7, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5,

9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 10.2.6, 10.3, 11.3, 12, 13.3.2, 13.4, 15.2

Architect's Relationship with Subcontractors

1.1.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.4, 4.2.6, 9.6.3, 9.6.4, 11.3

Architect's Representations

9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.10.1

Architect's Site Visits

3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4

Asbestos

10.3.1

Attorneys' Fees

3.18.1, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 10.3.3

Award of Separate Contracts

6.1.1, 6.1.2

### Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for Portions of the Work

**5.2**

### Basic Definitions

**1.1**

Bidding Requirements

1.1.1

Binding Dispute Resolution

8.3.1, 9.7, 11.5, 13.1, 15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.2.1, 15.2.5,

15.2.6.1, 15.3.1, 15.3.2, 15.3.3, 15.4.1

Bonds, Lien

7.3.4.4, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.3

### Bonds, Performance, and Payment

7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.1.2**, 11.1.3, **11.5**

### Building Information Models Use and Reliance

**1.8**

Building Permit

3.7.1

### Capitalization

**1.3**

Certificate of Substantial Completion

9.8.3, 9.8.4, 9.8.5

### Certificates for Payment

4.2.1, 4.2.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, **9.4**, 9.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.6, 9.7,

9.10.1, 9.10.3, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.4



Certificates of Inspection, Testing or Approval  
13.4.4  
Certificates of Insurance  
9.10.2  
**Change Orders**  
1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.8.2.3, 3.11, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 5.2.3,  
7.1.2, 7.1.3, **7.2**, 7.3.2, 7.3.7, 7.3.9, 7.3.10, 8.3.1,  
9.3.1.1, 9.10.3, 10.3.2, 11.2, 11.5, 12.1.2  
**Change Orders**, Definition of  
**7.2.1**  
**CHANGES IN THE WORK**  
2.2.2, 3.11, 4.2.8, **7**, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, 8.3.1, 9.3.1.1,  
11.5  
**Claims**, Definition of  
**15.1.1**  
Claims, Notice of  
1.6.2, 15.1.3  
**CLAIMS AND DISPUTES**  
3.2.4, 6.1.1, 6.3, 7.3.9, 9.3.3, 9.10.4, 10.3.3, **15**, 15.4  
Claims and Timely Assertion of Claims  
15.4.1  
**Claims for Additional Cost**  
3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 7.3.9, 9.5.2, 10.2.5, 10.3.2, **15.1.5**  
**Claims for Additional Time**  
3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.7.4, 6.1.1, 8.3.2, 9.5.2, 10.3.2, **15.1.6**  
**Concealed or Unknown Conditions, Claims for**  
**3.7.4**  
Claims for Damages  
3.2.4, 3.18, 8.3.3, 9.5.1, 9.6.7, 10.2.5, 10.3.3, 11.3,  
11.3.2, 14.2.4, 15.1.7  
Claims Subject to Arbitration  
15.4.1  
**Cleaning Up**  
**3.15**, 6.3  
Commencement of the Work, Conditions Relating to  
2.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.4.1, 3.7.1, 3.10.1, 3.12.6, 5.2.1, 5.2.3,  
6.2.2, 8.1.2, 8.2.2, 8.3.1, 11.1, 11.2, **15.1.5**  
**Commencement of the Work**, Definition of  
**8.1.2**  
**Communications**  
3.9.1, **4.2.4**  
Completion, Conditions Relating to  
3.4.1, 3.11, 3.15, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 8.2, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1,  
9.10, 12.2, 14.1.2, 15.1.2  
**COMPLETION, PAYMENTS AND**  
**9**  
Completion, Substantial  
3.10.1, 4.2.9, 8.1.1, 8.1.3, 8.2.3, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1,  
9.10.3, 12.2, 15.1.2  
Compliance with Laws  
2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 10.2.2,  
13.1, 13.3, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14.1.1, 14.2.1.3,  
15.2.8, 15.4.2, 15.4.3  
Concealed or Unknown Conditions  
3.7.4, 4.2.8, 8.3.1, 10.3  
Conditions of the Contract  
1.1.1, 6.1.1, 6.1.4

Consent, Written  
3.4.2, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 13.2,  
15.4.4.2  
**Consolidation or Joinder**  
**15.4.4**  
**CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY**  
**SEPARATE CONTRACTORS**  
1.1.4, **6**  
**Construction Change Directive**, Definition of  
**7.3.1**  
**Construction Change Directives**  
1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.11, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 7.1.1, 7.1.2, 7.1.3,  
**7.3**, 9.3.1.1  
Construction Schedules, Contractor's  
3.10, 3.11, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2  
**Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts**  
**5.4**, 14.2.2.2  
**Continuing Contract Performance**  
**15.1.4**  
**Contract**, Definition of  
**1.1.2**  
**CONTRACT, TERMINATION OR**  
**SUSPENSION OF THE**  
5.4.1.1, 5.4.2, 11.5, **14**  
Contract Administration  
3.1.3, 4, 9.4, 9.5  
Contract Award and Execution, Conditions Relating  
to  
3.7.1, 3.10, 5.2, 6.1  
Contract Documents, Copies Furnished and Use of  
1.5.2, 2.3.6, 5.3  
**Contract Documents**, Definition of  
**1.1.1**  
**Contract Sum**  
2.2.2, 2.2.4, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.8, 3.10.2, 5.2.3, 7.3, 7.4,  
**9.1**, 9.2, 9.4.2, 9.5.1.4, 9.6.7, 9.7, 10.3.2, 11.5, 12.1.2,  
12.3, 14.2.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.4.2, **15.1.5**, **15.2.5**  
**Contract Sum**, Definition of  
**9.1**  
Contract Time  
1.1.4, 2.2.1, 2.2.2, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.10.2, 5.2.3, 6.1.5,  
7.2.1.3, 7.3.1, 7.3.5, 7.3.6, 7, 7, 7.3.10, 7.4, 8.1.1,  
8.2.1, 8.2.3, 8.3.1, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 12.1.1, 12.1.2,  
14.3.2, 15.1.4.2, 15.1.6.1, 15.2.5  
**Contract Time**, Definition of  
8.1.1  
**CONTRACTOR**  
**3**  
Contractor, Definition of  
**3.1**, **6.1.2**  
**Contractor's Construction and Submittal**  
**Schedules**  
**3.10**, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 4.2.3, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2  
Contractor's Employees  
2.2.4, 3.3.2, 3.4.3, 3.8.1, 3.9, 3-18-2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6,  
10.2, 10.3, 11.3, 14.1, 14.2.1.1  
**Contractor's Liability Insurance**  
**11.1**

Contractor's Relationship with Separate Contractors and Owner's Forces  
3.12.5, 3.14.2, 4.2.4, 6, 11.3, 12.2.4  
Contractor's Relationship with Subcontractors  
1.2.2, 2.2.4, 3.3.2, 3.18.1, 3.18.2, 4.2.4, 5, 9.6.2, 9.6.7, 9.10.2, 11.2, 11.3, 11.4  
Contractor's Relationship with the Architect  
1.1.2, 1.5, 2.3.3, 3.1.3, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.4.2, 3.5.1, 3.7.4, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 3.16, 3.18, 4.2, 5.2, 6.2.2, 7, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.3, 9.4, 9.5, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 10.2.6, 10.3, 11.3, 12, 13.4, 15.1.3, 15.2.1  
Contractor's Representations  
3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.5, 3.12.6, 6.2.2, 8.2.1, 9.3.3, 9.8.2  
Contractor's Responsibility for Those Performing the Work  
3.3.2, 3.18, 5.3, 6.1.3, 6.2, 9.5.1, 10.2.8  
Contractor's Review of Contract Documents  
3.2  
Contractor's Right to Stop the Work  
2.2.2, 9.7  
Contractor's Right to Terminate the Contract  
14.1  
Contractor's Submittals  
3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 9.2, 9.3, 9.8.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3  
Contractor's Superintendent  
3.9, 10.2.6  
Contractor's Supervision and Construction Procedures  
1.2.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 6.1.3, 6.2.4, 7.1.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.6, 8.2, 10, 12, 14, 15.1.4  
Coordination and Correlation  
1.2, 3.2.1, 3.3.1, 3.10, 3.12.6, 6.1.3, 6.2.1  
Copies Furnished of Drawings and Specifications  
1.5, 2.3.6, 3.11  
Copyrights  
1.5, **3.17**  
Correction of Work  
2.5, 3.7.3, 9.4.2, 9.8.2, 9.8.3, 9.9.1, 12.1.2, **12.2**, 12.3, 15.1.3.1, 15.1.3.2, 15.2.1  
**Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents**  
**1.2**  
**Cost**, Definition of  
**7.3.4**  
Costs  
2.5, 3.2.4, 3.7.3, 3.8.2, 3.15.2, 5.4.2, 6.1.1, 6.2.3, 7.3.3.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.8, 7.3.9, 9.10.2, 10.3.2, 10.3.6, 11.2, 12.1.2, 12.2.1, 12.2.4, 13.4, 14  
**Cutting and Patching**  
**3.14**, 6.2.5  
Damage to Construction of Owner or Separate Contractors  
3.14.2, 6.2.4, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.5, 10.4, 12.2.4  
Damage to the Work  
3.14.2, 9.9.1, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.5, 10.4, 12.2.4  
Damages, Claims for  
3.2.4, 3.18, 6.1.1, 8.3.3, 9.5.1, 9.6.7, 10.3.3, 11.3.2, 11.3, 14.2.4, 15.1.7

Damages for Delay  
6.2.3, 8.3.3, 9.5.1.6, 9.7, 10.3.2, 14.3.2  
**Date of Commencement of the Work**, Definition of  
**8.1.2**  
**Date of Substantial Completion**, Definition of  
**8.1.3**  
**Day**, Definition of  
**8.1.4**  
Decisions of the Architect  
3.7.4, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.2.11, 4.2.12, 4.2.13, 6.3, 7.3.4, 7.3.9, 8.1.3, 8.3.1, 9.2, 9.4, 9.5.1, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 13.4.2, 14.2.2, 14.2.4, 15.1, 15.2  
**Decisions to Withhold Certification**  
9.4.1, **9.5**, 9.7, 14.1.1.3  
Defective or Nonconforming Work, Acceptance, Rejection and Correction of  
2.5, 3.5, 4.2.6, 6.2.3, 9.5.1, 9.5.3, 9.6.6, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.4, 12.2.1  
Definitions  
1.1, 2.1.1, 3.1.1, 3.5, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 3.12.3, 4.1.1, 5.1, 6.1.2, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 8.1, 9.1, 9.8.1, 15.1.1  
**Delays and Extensions of Time**  
**3.2**, **3.7.4**, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, **7.4**, **8.3**, 9.5.1, **9.7**, 10.3.2, **10.4**, 14.3.2, **15.1.6**, 15.2.5  
**Digital Data Use and Transmission**  
**1.7**  
Disputes  
6.3, 7.3.9, 15.1, 15.2  
**Documents and Samples at the Site**  
**3.11**  
**Drawings**, Definition of  
**1.1.5**  
Drawings and Specifications, Use and Ownership of  
3.11  
Effective Date of Insurance  
8.2.2  
**Emergencies**  
**10.4**, 14.1.1.2, **15.1.5**  
Employees, Contractor's  
3.3.2, 3.4.3, 3.8.1, 3.9, 3.18.2, 4.2.3, 4.2.6, 10.2, 10.3.3, 11.3, 14.1, 14.2.1.1  
Equipment, Labor, or Materials  
1.1.3, 1.1.6, 3.4, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2, 10.2.1, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2  
Execution and Progress of the Work  
1.1.3, 1.2.1, 1.2.2, 2.3.4, 2.3.6, 3.1, 3.3.1, 3.4.1, 3.7.1, 3.10.1, 3.12, 3.14, 4.2, 6.2.2, 7.1.3, 7.3.6, 8.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.1, 10.2, 10.3, 12.1, 12.2, 14.2, 14.3.1, 15.1.4  
Extensions of Time  
3.2.4, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3, 7.4, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.3.2, 10.4, 14.3, 15.1.6, **15.2.5**  
**Failure of Payment**  
9.5.1.3, **9.7**, 9.10.2, 13.5, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.1.2  
Faulty Work  
(See Defective or Nonconforming Work)  
**Final Completion and Final Payment**  
4.2.1, 4.2.9, 9.8.2, **9.10**, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3

Financial Arrangements, Owner's

2.2.1, 13.2.2, 14.1.1.4

## **GENERAL PROVISIONS**

### **1**

#### **Governing Law**

##### **13.1**

Guarantees (See Warranty)

#### **Hazardous Materials and Substances**

10.2.4, **10.3**

Identification of Subcontractors and Suppliers

5.2.1

#### **Indemnification**

3.17, **3.18**, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 10.3.3, 11.3

#### **Information and Services Required of the Owner**

2.1.2, **2.2**, 2.3, 3.2.2, 3.12.10.1, 6.1.3, 6.1.4, 6.2.5,

9.6.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.3, 10.3.3, 11.2, 13.4.1, 13.4.2,

14.1.1.4, 14.1.4, 15.1.4

#### **Initial Decision**

##### **15.2**

#### **Initial Decision Maker, Definition of**

1.1.8

Initial Decision Maker, Decisions

14.2.4, 15.1.4.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.2, 15.2.3, 15.2.4, 15.2.5

Initial Decision Maker, Extent of Authority

14.2.4, 15.1.4.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.2, 15.2.3, 15.2.4, 15.2.5

#### **Injury or Damage to Person or Property**

**10.2.8**, 10.4

Inspections

3.1.3, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3,

9.9.2, 9.10.1, 12.2.1, 13.4

Instructions to Bidders

1.1.1

Instructions to the Contractor

3.2.4, 3.3.1, 3.8.1, 5.2.1, 7, 8.2.2, 12, 13.4.2

**Instruments of Service**, Definition of

##### **1.1.7**

Insurance

6.1.1, 7.3.4, 8.2.2, 9.3.2, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 10.2.5,

##### **11**

Insurance, Notice of Cancellation or Expiration

11.1.4, 11.2.3

#### **Insurance, Contractor's Liability**

##### **11.1**

Insurance, Effective Date of

8.2.2, 14.4.2

#### **Insurance, Owner's Liability**

##### **11.2**

#### **Insurance, Property**

**10.2.5**, 11.2, 11.4, 11.5

Insurance, Stored Materials

9.3.2

## **INSURANCE AND BONDS**

### **11**

Insurance Companies, Consent to Partial Occupancy

9.9.1

Insured loss, Adjustment and Settlement of

11.5

Intent of the Contract Documents

1.2.1, 4.2.7, 4.2.12, 4.2.13

## **Interest**

### **13.5**

#### **Interpretation**

1.1.8, 1.2.3, **1.4**, 4.1.1, 5.1, 6.1.2, 15.1.1

Interpretations, Written

4.2.11, 4.2.12

Judgment on Final Award

15.4.2

#### **Labor and Materials, Equipment**

1.1.3, 1.1.6, **3.4**, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1,

5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2, 10.2.1,

10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2

Labor Disputes

8.3.1

Laws and Regulations

1.5, 2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4,

9.9.1, 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14, 15.2.8,

15.4

Liens

2.1.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 15.2.8

Limitations, Statutes of

12.2.5, 15.1.2, 15.4.1.1

Limitations of Liability

3.2.2, 3.5, 3.12.10, 3.12.10.1, 3.17, 3.18.1, 4.2.6,

4.2.7, 6.2.2, 9.4.2, 9.6.4, 9.6.7, 9.6.8, 10.2.5, 10.3.3,

11.3, 12.2.5, 13.3.1

Limitations of Time

2.1.2, 2.2, 2.5, 3.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.5, 3.15.1, 4.2.7,

5.2, 5.3, 5.4.1, 6.2.4, 7.3, 7.4, 8.2, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3,

9.4.1, 9.5, 9.6, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 9.10, 12.2, 13.4, 14, 15,

15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.1.5

#### **Materials, Hazardous**

10.2.4, **10.3**

Materials, Labor, Equipment and

1.1.3, 1.1.6, 3.4.1, 3.5, 3.8.2, 3.8.3, 3.12, 3.13, 3.15.1,

5.2.1, 6.2.1, 7.3.4, 9.3.2, 9.3.3, 9.5.1.3, 9.10.2,

10.2.1.2, 10.2.4, 14.2.1.1, 14.2.1.2

Means, Methods, Techniques, Sequences and

Procedures of Construction

3.3.1, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 9.4.2

Mechanic's Lien

2.1.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3, 9.6.8, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 15.2.8

#### **Mediation**

8.3.1, 15.1.3.2, 15.2.1, 15.2.5, 15.2.6, **15.3**, 15.4.1,

15.4.1.1

#### **Minor Changes in the Work**

1.1.1, 3.4.2, 3.12.8, 4.2.8, 7.1, **7.4**

## **MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**

### **13**

**Modifications**, Definition of

##### **1.1.1**

Modifications to the Contract

1.1.1, 1.1.2, 2.5, 3.11, 4.1.2, 4.2.1, 5.2.3, 7, 8.3.1, 9.7,

10.3.2

#### **Mutual Responsibility**

##### **6.2**

## **Nonconforming Work, Acceptance of**

9.6.6, 9.9.3, **12.3**

Nonconforming Work, Rejection and Correction of  
2.4, 2.5, 3.5, 4.2.6, 6.2.4, 9.5.1, 9.8.2, 9.9.3, 9.10.4,  
12.2

### **Notice**

**1.6**, 1.6.1, 1.6.2, 2.1.2, 2.2.2., 2.2.3, 2.2.4, 2.5, 3.2.4,  
3.3.1, 3.7.4, 3.7.5, 3.9.2, 3.12.9, 3.12.10, 5.2.1, 7.4,  
8.2.2 9.6.8, 9.7, 9.10.1, 10.2.8, 10.3.2, 11.5, 12.2.2.1,  
13.4.1, 13.4.2, 14.1, 14.2.2, 14.4.2, 15.1.3, 15.1.5,  
15.1.6, 15.4.1

Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Insurance  
11.1.4, 11.2.3

### **Notice of Claims**

1.6.2, 2.1.2, 3.7.4, 9.6.8, 10.2.8, **15.1.3**, 15.1.5,  
15.1.6, 15.2.8, 15.3.2, 15.4.1

Notice of Testing and Inspections  
13.4.1, 13.4.2

Observations, Contractor's  
3.2, 3.7.4

### **Occupancy**

2.3.1, 9.6.6, 9.8

### **Orders, Written**

1.1.1, 2.4, 3.9.2, 7, 8.2.2, 11.5, 12.1, 12.2.2.1, 13.4.2,  
14.3.1

## **OWNER**

**2**

**Owner**, Definition of

### **2.1.1**

**Owner**, Evidence of Financial Arrangements

**2.2**, 13.2.2, 14.1.1.4

**Owner**, Information and Services Required of the

2.1.2, **2.2**, 2.3, 3.2.2, 3.12.10, 6.1.3, 6.1.4, 6.2.5,  
9.3.2, 9.6.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.2, 9.10.3, 10.3.3, 11.2, 13.4.1,  
13.4.2, 14.1.1.4, 14.1.4, 15.1.4

**Owner's Authority**

1.5, 2.1.1, 2.3.32.4, 2.5, 3.4.2, 3.8.1, 3.12.10, 3.14.2,  
4.1.2, 4.2.4, 4.2.9, 5.2.1, 5.2.4, 5.4.1, 6.1, 6.3, 7.2.1,  
7.3.1, 8.2.2, 8.3.1, 9.3.2, 9.5.1, 9.6.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2,  
10.3.2, 11.4, 11.5, 12.2.2, 12.3, 13.2.2, 14.3, 14.4,  
15.2.7

**Owner's Insurance**

### **11.2**

**Owner's Relationship with Subcontractors**

1.1.2, 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 9.6.4, 9.10.2, 14.2.2

**Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work**

**2.5**, 14.2.2

**Owner's Right to Clean Up**

### **6.3**

**Owner's Right to Perform Construction and to  
Award Separate Contracts**

### **6.1**

**Owner's Right to Stop the Work**

### **2.4**

**Owner's Right to Suspend the Work**

14.3

**Owner's Right to Terminate the Contract**

14.2, 14.4

## **Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications and Other Instruments of Service**

1.1.1, 1.1.6, 1.1.7, **1.5**, 2.3.6, 3.2.2, 3.11, 3.17, 4.2.12,  
5.3

**Partial Occupancy or Use**

9.6.6, **9.9**

**Patching, Cutting and**

**3.14**, 6.2.5

Patents

3.17

**Payment, Applications for**

4.2.5, 7.3.9, 9.2, **9.3**, 9.4, 9.5, 9.6.3, 9.7, 9.8.5, 9.10.1,  
14.2.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3

**Payment, Certificates for**

4.2.5, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, **9.4**, 9.5, 9.6.1, 9.6.6, 9.7, 9.10.1,  
9.10.3, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.4

**Payment, Failure of**

9.5.1.3, **9.7**, 9.10.2, 13.5, 14.1.1.3, 14.2.1.2

Payment, Final

4.2.1, 4.2.9, **9.10**, 12.3, 14.2.4, 14.4.3

**Payment Bond, Performance Bond and**

7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.1.2**

**Payments, Progress**

9.3, **9.6**, 9.8.5, 9.10.3, 14.2.3, 15.1.4

## **PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION**

**9**

Payments to Subcontractors

5.4.2, 9.5.1.3, 9.6.2, 9.6.3, 9.6.4, 9.6.7, 14.2.1.2

PCB

10.3.1

**Performance Bond and Payment Bond**

7.3.4.4, 9.6.7, 9.10.3, **11.1.2**

**Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws**

2.3.1, **3.7**, 3.13, 7.3.4.4, 10.2.2

## **PERSONS AND PROPERTY, PROTECTION**

**OF**

**10**

Polychlorinated Biphenyl

10.3.1

**Product Data**, Definition of

**3.12.2**

**Product Data and Samples, Shop Drawings**

3.11, **3.12**, 4.2.7

**Progress and Completion**

4.2.2, **8.2**, 9.8, 9.9.1, 14.1.4, 15.1.4

**Progress Payments**

9.3, **9.6**, 9.8.5, 9.10.3, 14.2.3, 15.1.4

**Project**, Definition of

### **1.1.4**

Project Representatives

4.2.10

**Property Insurance**

10.2.5, **11.2**

**Proposal Requirements**

1.1.1

## **PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY**

**10**

## Regulations and Laws

1.5, 2.3.2, 3.2.3, 3.6, 3.7, 3.12.10, 3.13, 9.6.4, 9.9.1, 10.2.2, 13.1, 13.3, 13.4.1, 13.4.2, 13.5, 14, 15.2.8, 15.4

## Rejection of Work

4.2.6, 12.2.1

## Releases and Waivers of Liens

9.3.1, 9.10.2

## Representations

3.2.1, 3.5, 3.12.6, 8.2.1, 9.3.3, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.10.1

## Representatives

2.1.1, 3.1.1, 3.9, 4.1.1, 4.2.10, 13.2.1

## Responsibility for Those Performing the Work

3.3.2, 3.18, 4.2.2, 4.2.3, 5.3, 6.1.3, 6.2, 6.3, 9.5.1, 10

## Retainage

9.3.1, 9.6.2, 9.8.5, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3

## Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions by Contractor

3.2, 3.12.7, 6.1.3

## Review of Contractor's Submittals by Owner and Architect

3.10.1, 3.10.2, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2, 5.2, 6.1.3, 9.2, 9.8.2

## Review of Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples by Contractor

3.12

## Rights and Remedies

1.1.2, 2.4, 2.5, 3.5, 3.7.4, 3.15.2, 4.2.6, 5.3, 5.4, 6.1, 6.3, 7.3.1, 8.3, 9.5.1, 9.7, 10.2.5, 10.3, 12.2.1, 12.2.2, 12.2.4, 13.3, 14, 15.4

## Royalties, Patents and Copyrights

3.17

## Rules and Notices for Arbitration

15.4.1

## Safety of Persons and Property

10.2, 10.4

## Safety Precautions and Programs

3.3.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 5.3, 10.1, 10.2, 10.4

## Samples, Definition of

3.12.3

## Samples, Shop Drawings, Product Data and

3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7

## Samples at the Site, Documents and

3.11

## Schedule of Values

9.2, 9.3.1

## Schedules, Construction

3.10, 3.12.1, 3.12.2, 6.1.3, 15.1.6.2

## Separate Contracts and Contractors

1.1.4, 3.12.5, 3.14.2, 4.2.4, 4.2.7, 6, 8.3.1, 12.1.2

## Separate Contractors, Definition of

6.1.1

## Shop Drawings, Definition of

3.12.1

## Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples

3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7

## Site, Use of

3.13, 6.1.1, 6.2.1

## Site Inspections

3.2.2, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 3.7.4, 4.2, 9.9.2, 9.4.2, 9.10.1, 13.4

## Site Visits, Architect's

3.7.4, 4.2.2, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.5.1, 9.9.2, 9.10.1, 13.4

## Special Inspections and Testing

4.2.6, 12.2.1, 13.4

## Specifications, Definition of

1.1.6

## Specifications

1.1.1, 1.1.6, 1.2.2, 1.5, 3.12.10, 3.17, 4.2.14

## Statute of Limitations

15.1.2, 15.4.1.1

## Stopping the Work

2.2.2, 2.4, 9.7, 10.3, 14.1

## Stored Materials

6.2.1, 9.3.2, 10.2.1.2, 10.2.4

## Subcontractor, Definition of

5.1.1

## SUBCONTRACTORS

5

## Subcontractors, Work by

1.2.2, 3.3.2, 3.12.1, 3.18, 4.2.3, 5.2.3, 5.3, 5.4, 9.3.1.2, 9.6.7

## Subcontractual Relations

5.3, 5.4, 9.3.1.2, 9.6, 9.10, 10.2.1, 14.1, 14.2.1

## Submittals

3.10, 3.11, 3.12, 4.2.7, 5.2.1, 5.2.3, 7.3.4, 9.2, 9.3, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.3

## Submittal Schedule

3.10.2, 3.12.5, 4.2.7

## Subrogation, Waivers of

6.1.1, 11.3

## Substances, Hazardous

10.3

## Substantial Completion

4.2.9, 8.1.1, 8.1.3, 8.2.3, 9.4.2, 9.8, 9.9.1, 9.10.3, 12.2, 15.1.2

## Substantial Completion, Definition of

9.8.1

## Substitution of Subcontractors

5.2.3, 5.2.4

## Substitution of Architect

2.3.3

## Substitutions of Materials

3.4.2, 3.5, 7.3.8

## Sub-subcontractor, Definition of

5.1.2

## Subsurface Conditions

3.7.4

## Successors and Assigns

13.2

## Superintendent

3.9, 10.2.6

## Supervision and Construction Procedures

1.2.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.12.10, 4.2.2, 4.2.7, 6.1.3, 6.2.4, 7.1.3, 7.3.4, 8.2, 8.3.1, 9.4.2, 10, 12, 14, 15.1.4

Suppliers  
1.5, 3.12.1, 4.2.4, 4.2.6, 5.2.1, 9.3, 9.4.2, 9.5.4, 9.6,  
9.10.5, 14.2.1

Surety  
5.4.1.2, 9.6.8, 9.8.5, 9.10.2, 9.10.3, 11.1.2, 14.2.2,  
15.2.7

Surety, Consent of  
9.8.5, 9.10.2, 9.10.3

Surveys  
1.1.7, 2.3.4

### **Suspension by the Owner for Convenience** **14.3**

Suspension of the Work

3.7.5, 5.4.2, 14.3

Suspension or Termination of the Contract  
5.4.1.1, 14

**Taxes**  
3.6, 3.8.2.1, 7.3.4.4

**Termination by the Contractor**  
**14.1**, 15.1.7

**Termination by the Owner for Cause**  
5.4.1.1, **14.2**, 15.1.7

**Termination by the Owner for Convenience**  
**14.4**

Termination of the Architect  
2.3.3

Termination of the Contractor Employment  
14.2.2

## **TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT**

### **14**

#### **Tests and Inspections**

3.1.3, 3.3.3, 3.7.1, 4.2.2, 4.2.6, 4.2.9, 9.4.2, 9.8.3,  
9.9.2, 9.10.1, 10.3.2, 12.2.1, **13.4**

#### **TIME**

### **8**

#### **Time, Delays and Extensions of**

3.2.4, 3.7.4, 5.2.3, 7.2.1, 7.3.1, 7.4, **8.3**, 9.5.1, 9.7,  
10.3.2, 10.4, 14.3.2, 15.1.6, 15.2.5

#### **Time Limits**

2.1.2, 2.2, 2.5, 3.2.2, 3.10, 3.11, 3.12.5, 3.15.1, 4.2,  
5.2, 5.3, 5.4, 6.2.4, 7.3, 7.4, 8.2, 9.2, 9.3.1, 9.3.3,  
9.4.1, 9.5, 9.6, 9.7, 9.8, 9.9, 9.10, 12.2, 13.4, 14,  
15.1.2, 15.1.3, 15.4

### **Time Limits on Claims**

3.7.4, 10.2.8, 15.1.2, 15.1.3

Title to Work

9.3.2, 9.3.3

## **UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK**

### **12**

#### **Uncovering of Work**

##### **12.1**

Unforeseen Conditions, Concealed or Unknown

3.7.4, 8.3.1, 10.3

Unit Prices

7.3.3.2, 9.1.2

Use of Documents

1.1.1, 1.5, 2.3.6, 3.12.6, 5.3

#### **Use of Site**

**3.13**, 6.1.1, 6.2.1

#### **Values, Schedule of**

**9.2**, 9.3.1

Waiver of Claims by the Architect

13.3.2

Waiver of Claims by the Contractor

9.10.5, 13.3.2, **15.1.7**

Waiver of Claims by the Owner

9.9.3, 9.10.3, 9.10.4, 12.2.2.1, 13.3.2, 14.2.4, **15.1.7**

Waiver of Consequential Damages

14.2.4, 15.1.7

Waiver of Liens

9.3, 9.10.2, 9.10.4

#### **Waivers of Subrogation**

6.1.1, **11.3**

#### **Warranty**

**3.5**, 4.2.9, 9.3.3, 9.8.4, 9.9.1, 9.10.2, 9.10.4, 12.2.2,  
15.1.2

Weather Delays

8.3, 15.1.6.2

#### **Work, Definition of**

##### **1.1.3**

Written Consent

1.5.2, 3.4.2, 3.7.4, 3.12.8, 3.14.2, 4.1.2, 9.3.2, 9.10.3,  
13.2, 13.3.2, 15.4.4.2

Written Interpretations

4.2.11, 4.2.12

Written Orders

1.1.1, 2.4, 3.9, 7, 8.2.2, 12.1, 12.2, 13.4.2, 14.3.1

## ARTICLE 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

### § 1.1 Basic Definitions

#### § 1.1.1 The Contract Documents

The Contract Documents ~~consist of the~~ Contract between Owner and Contractor, A101- 2017, as amended, OR the Contract between the Owner and Construction Manager at Risk A133-2019, as amended, and the A133-2019 Exhibit A (hereinafter the AgreementContract); Conditions of the Contract as amended (General, Supplementary and other Conditions, including but not limited to A201-2017, as amended); Contractor's proof of Payment and Performance Bonds and proof of insurance, are enumerated in the Agreement between the Owner and Contractor (hereinafter the Agreement) and consist of the Agreement, Conditions of the Contract (General, Supplementary and other Conditions), all sections of the Project Manual and Construction Documents (as defined in Section 1.1.3 below) including Drawings, Specifications, and Addenda issued prior to receipt of bids or proposals, to execution of the Contract, other documents listed in the AgreementContract, and Modifications issued after execution of the Contract. A Modification is (1) a written amendment to the Contract signed by both parties, (2) a Change Order, (3) a Construction Change Directive, or (4) a written order for a minor change in the Work issued by the Architect. Unless specifically enumerated in the AgreementContract, the Contract Documents do not include other documents such as bidding requirements (advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, sample forms, Contractor's bid or portions of Addenda relating to bidding requirements). All sections of the Project Manual shall be a part of the AgreementContract. In the event of conflict, terms and conditions contained in the AgreementContract, as amended, shall take precedence over terms and conditions contained in the General Conditions, as amended. The terms and conditions in the General Conditions, as amended, shall take precedence over all other terms and conditions contained in the other Contract Documents. Unless specifically enumerated in the Agreement, the Contract Documents do not include the advertisement or invitation to bid, Instructions to Bidders, sample forms, other information furnished by the Owner in anticipation of receiving bids or proposals, the Contractor's bid or proposal, or portions of Addenda relating to bidding or proposal requirements.

1.1.1.1 The Contract, represents the entire and integrated agreement between the Owner and the Contractor and supersedes all prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, either written or oral. Any revision, amendment, or modification to the Standard Form of the Contract shall be valid, binding, and enforceable only if said revision, amendment, or modification is made conspicuous by being underlined, lined-through, or highlighted in this Contract signed by Contractor and the authorized representative of Owner's Board of Trustees.

#### § 1.1.2 The Contract

The Contract Documents form the Contract for ~~Construction~~ Construction (the "Contract"). The Contract represents the entire and integrated agreement between the parties hereto and supersedes prior negotiations, representations, or agreements, either written or oral. The Contract may be amended or modified only by a written Modification signed by the Contractor, approved by Owner's Board of Trustees, and signed by the representative of the Owner's Board of Trustees who is authorized to sign contracts. As a material consideration for the making of the Contract, modifications to the Contract shall not be constructed against the maker of said modifications. The Contract Documents shall not be construed to create a contractual relationship of any kind (1) between the Contractor and the Architect or the Architect's consultants, (2) between the Owner and a Subcontractor or a Sub-subcontractor of the Contractor; (3) between the Program Manager and the Contractor~~between the Owner and the Architect or the Architect's consultants~~, or (4) between any persons or entities other than the Owner and the Contractor. ~~The Architect shall, however, be entitled to performance and enforcement of obligations under the Contract intended to facilitate performance of the Architect's duties.~~

The Program Manager and/or Architect shall, however, be entitled to performance and enforcement of obligations of the Contractor under the Contract intended to facilitate performance of the duties of the Architect and/or the Program Manager.

1.1.2.1 To be effective, all Contract Documents including the A201-2017, as amended requiring signatures must be signed first by the Contractor representative and then by the Owner's authorized representative, after approval by Owner's Board of Trustees. If an approved Contact Document requiring Contractor's signature has not been signed, then the missing signature shall be provided within a reasonable period of time. Failure of Contractor to sign an approved Contract Document after notice and a reasonable opportunity to sign, shall be considered a material breach of the Contract by Contractor.

### **§ 1.1.3 The Work; Construction Documents**

The term "Work" means the construction and services required by the Contract Documents, whether completed or partially completed, and includes all other labor, materials, equipment, and services provided or to be provided by the Contractor to fulfill the Contractor's obligations. The Work may constitute the whole or a part of the Project. The Work includes all labor, parts, supplies, skill, supervision, transportation, services, and other facilities and things necessary, proper or incidental to the carrying out and completion of the terms of the Contract Documents and all other items of cost or value needed to produce, construct and fully complete the public Work identified by the Contract Documents.

"Construction Documents" means: all Drawings, Specifications, geotechnical reports, Addenda, submittals, transmittals, deliverables, instructions to Contractors, and other documents, including those in electronic form, prepared by the Architect and the Architect's consultants and which set forth in detail the requirements for construction of the Project. The Construction Documents shall include Drawings and Specifications that establish, in detail, the quality levels of materials and systems required for the Project. The Construction Documents shall reflect all agreements between Owner and Architect concerning Owner's budgetary constraints, programmatic needs and expectations as to quality, functionality of systems, maintenance costs, and usable life of equipment and facilities. Said Construction Documents shall reflect the Owner's educational program and educational specifications, the State educational adequacy standards in 19 TAC § 61.104036, and the standards set forth in the Owner's architect agreement Section 3.1.4 of AIA document B101-2017. The Architect shall provide Construction Documents which are sufficient for Owner to complete construction of the Project, are free from material defects or omissions, and which shall comply with all applicable laws, ordinances, codes, rules, and regulations, as of the date of issuance of Construction Documents.

### **§ 1.1.4 The Project**

The Project is the total construction of which the Work performed under the Contract Documents may be the whole or a part and which may include construction by the Owner ~~and-or~~ by Separate Contractors.

### **§ 1.1.5 The Drawings**

The Drawings are the graphic and pictorial portions of the Contract Documents showing the design, location and dimensions of the Work, generally including plans, elevations, sections, details, schedules, and diagrams.

### **§ 1.1.6 The Specifications**

The Specifications are that portion of the Contract Documents consisting of the written requirements for materials, equipment, systems, standards and workmanship for the Work, and performance of related services.

### **§ 1.1.7 Instruments ~~PROJECT MANUAL~~ of Service**

Construction InstruDocuments of Service are include representations, in any medium of expression now known or later developed, of the tangible and intangible creative work performed by the Architect and the Architect's consultants under their respective professional services agreements. Construction InstruDocuments of Service may include, without limitation, studies, surveys, models, sketches, drawings, specifications, and other similar materials. The Project Manual is a volume assembled for the Work which may include the bidding requirements, sample forms, Conditions of the Contract and Specifications.

### **§ 1.1.8 ~~PROGRAM MANAGERS~~Initial Decision Maker**

The Owner may use Program Managers to carry out some of the functions of administration of the Owner's construction program. The Contractor, Architect, and Program Manager (when applicable) shall cooperate with each other in the performance of their respective functions. The management and reporting systems used by the Owner and/or Program Manager, including the assignment of the Program Manager, may be changed by Owner during the Project.



The Initial Decision Maker is the person identified in the Agreement to render initial decisions on Claims in accordance with Section 15.2. The Initial Decision Maker shall not show partiality to the Owner or Contractor and shall not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.

### **1.1.9 Addenda**

Addenda are written or graphic instrument issued by the Owner prior to the execution of the Contract, which modify or interpret the bidding or proposal documents, including Drawings and Specifications, by additions, deletions, clarifications, or corrections. Addenda will become part of the Contract Documents and Construction Documents when the Contract is executed. The Contractor and subcontractors shall include all addenda items on their copies of the Drawings and Specifications.

**1.1.10** All references to “Contractor” shall include “Construction Manager at Risk” as appropriate.

**1.1.11** The Owner may retain Program Manager(s) to carry out some of the functions of the administration of the Owner’s construction program. The Contractor, Architect, and Program Manager(s) (when applicable) shall cooperate with each other in the performance of their respective functions. The management and reporting systems used by the Owner and/or Program Manager(s) including the assignment of the Program Manager, may be changed by Owner during the Project.[Omitted]

### **1.1.11 Approved, Approved Equal, Approved Equivalents, Or Equal**

The terms “Approved” and “Approved Equal” relate to the substitution of materials, equipment, or procedure in writing by the Architect prior to receipt of bids.

### **1.1.12 Abbreviations**

<u>AIA:</u>	<u>American Institute of Architects. (All references to AIA documents refer to AIA’s trademarked documents. Each reference to a specific document shall refer to the documents as amended for this Project.)</u>
<u>AIEE:</u>	<u>American Institute of Electrical Engineers</u>
<u>ACI:</u>	<u>American Concrete Institute</u>
<u>AHERA:</u>	<u>Asbestos Hazardous Emergency Response Act</u>
<u>AISI:</u>	<u>American Iron and Steel Institute</u>
<u>AISC:</u>	<u>American Institute of Steel Construction</u>
<u>ANSI:</u>	<u>American National Standards Institute</u>
<u>ASA:</u>	<u>American Standards Association</u>
<u>ASTM:</u>	<u>American Society of Testing Materials</u>
<u>AWSC:</u>	<u>American Welding Society Code</u>
<u>CERCLA:</u>	<u>Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation, and Liability Act</u>
<u>EPA:</u>	<u>Environmental Protection Agency</u>
<u>FS:</u>	<u>Federal Specification</u>
<u>NEC:</u>	<u>National Electrical Code</u>
<u>OSHA:</u>	<u>Occupational Safety and Health Administration</u>
<u>SPR:</u>	<u>Simplified Practice Recommendation</u>
<u>TAS:</u>	<u>Texas Accessibility Standards</u>
<u>UL:</u>	<u>Underwriters Laboratories, Inc.</u>

**1.1.13 Bids or Bidding** The term “Bids” or “Bidding” shall include any kind of competitive purchasing under Texas Government Code Chapter 2269.

### **1.1.14 Miscellaneous Other Words**

#### **1.1.14.1 Business Day**

The term “business day” is a day that Owner’s Administration Building is scheduled to be open for normal business purposes, unless closed by the Owner’s Superintendent of Schools for inclement weather or other reason. Days on which the Administration Building is normally closed are: Thanksgiving Break, Winter Break, Spring Break, and Summer Break, as well as other federal, state, or local days specified in the calendar approved by the Owner’s Board of Trustees on an annual basis. A business day does not include a day on which the Owner’s Administration Building is open only for the purposes of conducting candidate filing, early voting, elections, or other special events.

#### 1.1.14.2 Calendar Day

A calendar day is a day on the Gregorian Calendar. The Contract Time is established in calendar days. Extensions of time granted, if any, will be converted to calendar days.

#### 1.1.14.3 Holidays

Owner-approved holidays for Contractor's Work are limited to: New Year's Day, Memorial Day, Independence Day, Labor Day, Thanksgiving Day, and Christmas Day.

#### 1.1.14.4 Work Day

Work days are all calendar days except Holidays.

#### 1.1.14.5 Anticipated Weather Days

An allowance of regular Work Days, established as anticipated Work Days lost due to weather delays; said allowance shall be included in Contractor's proposed completion time. Only lost weather days in excess of Anticipated Weather Days shall be considered by Owner for time extensions based upon weather. ~~Section 15.1.5.3 lists required Anticipated Weather Days.~~

#### 1.1.15 Contract Sum

"Contract Sum" shall have the same meaning as in Section 5.1 of the Contract (A133-20109), for the Project when the Project is a Construction Manager at Risk Project OR the same meaning as in Article 4 of the Contract (A101-2017) for the Project.

### **§ 1.2 Correlation and Intent of the Contract Documents**

**§ 1.2.1** The intent of the Contract Documents is to include all items necessary for the proper execution and completion of the Work by the Contractor. The Contract Documents are complementary, and what is required by one shall be as binding as if required by all; performance by the Contractor shall be required only to the extent consistent with the Contract Documents and reasonably inferable from them as being necessary to produce the indicated results.

~~**§ 1.2.1.1** The invalidity of any provision of the Contract Documents shall not invalidate the Contract or its remaining provisions. If it is determined that any provision of the Contract Documents violates any law, or is otherwise invalid or unenforceable, then that provision shall be revised to the extent necessary to make that provision legal and enforceable. In such case the Contract Documents shall be construed, to the fullest extent permitted by law, to give effect to the parties' intentions and purposes in executing the Contract. The most recently issued contract document takes precedence over previously issued forms of the same document. Figures given on Drawings govern scale management, and large-scale details govern smaller scale Drawings. If an item is shown one place in the Drawings, but not another, or called for in a schedule or the specifications but not shown on the Drawings or shown on the Drawings but not in a schedule, it is to be included. Existing conditions take precedence over Drawings and Specifications for dimensions.~~

**1.2.1.2** During the course of the Work, should any conflict be found in or between the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall be deemed to have estimated the Work on the basis of the greater quantity or better quality, or the most stringent requirement, unless he shall have obtained an interpretation in writing from the Architect as to what shall govern before the submission of his Proposal. The Architect, in case of such conflict, may interpret or construe the documents so as to obtain the most substantial and complete performance of the Work consistent with the Contract Documents and reasonably inferable therefrom, in the best interest of Owner, and the Architect's interpretation shall be final. The terms and conditions of this clause shall not relieve any part of any other obligation under the Contract Documents.

**§ 1.2.2** Organization of the Specifications into divisions, sections and articles, and arrangement of Drawings shall not control the Contractor in dividing the Work among Subcontractors or in establishing the extent of Work to be performed by any trade.

**§ 1.2.3** Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, words that have well-known technical or construction industry meanings are used in the Contract Documents in accordance with such recognized meanings.

#### 1.2.4 Relation of Specifications And Drawings

General Requirements in the Specifications govern the execution of all Specifications. Summary paragraphs present a brief indication of the Work, but do not limit the Work as later detailed. The Drawings and Specifications are correlative and have equal authority and priority. Should the Drawings and Specifications have internal inconsistencies, then the Contractor shall base the bids and construction on the more expensive combination of quality and quantity of work indicated. For purposes of construction, the Architect shall determine the appropriate Work, after the Contractor brings the inconsistency to the Architect's attention. Failure to report an inconsistency shall be evidence that Contractor has elected to proceed in the more expensive manner.

#### 1.2.5 Optional Materials, Equipment and Processes

Exact location and arrangement of the various pieces of equipment specified shall be determined with the approval of the Architect after equipment has been selected and/or as the Work progresses. All equipment shall, insofar as possible, be installed in such a manner as will not interfere with architectural or structural portions of the building. Should changes become necessary because of a failure of the Contractor to comply with the Contract Documents which results in equipment requiring more area than shown on the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall be fully responsible for completing any required modifications or eliminating any interferences. Where in the Drawings and Specifications, certain products, manufacturer's trade names, or catalog numbers are specified, it is done for the express purpose of establishing a standard of function, dimension, appearance, and quality of design in harmony with the Work, and is not intended for the purpose of limiting competition. Materials or equipment shall not be substituted unless the Architect has specifically accepted such substitution for use on this Project. When more than one material, process, or brand is specified for a particular item of Work, the choice shall be the Contractor's. The final selection of color and pattern will be made by the Owner from the range available within the option selected by the Contractor, unless the item is specified to match a specific color or sample furnished. Where particular items are specified, products of those named manufacturers are required unless Contractor submits for consideration proposed substitutions of materials equipment, or processes from those set out in the Contract Documents. Submittals of proposed substitutions should contain sufficient information to allow the Architect and Owner to determine if the proposed substitution is in fact equal to or better than the requirements in the Contract Documents. The Architect shall review and respond to proposed substitutions within fifteen (15) days of receipt. Contractor shall bear all risk caused by submitting substitutions, including all costs. The Owner may approve substitutions only when the substitution is clearly provided by the Contract to be equal in performance characteristics to the requirements of the Contract Documents, equally compatible with the existing installations and complementary to the architectural design for the Work. Contractor shall bear all related costs associated with the substitution. Certain special construction and equipment details may not be regularly included as part of the named manufacturer's standard catalog equipment, but shall be obtained by the Contractor from the manufacturer as required for the proper evaluation and/or function of the equipment. Reasonable minor variations in equipment are expected and will be acceptable, if approved by the Architect and Owner, however, indicated and specified performance and material requirements are the minimum. The Owner and the Architect reserve the right to determine the quality of equipment and materials that deviate from any of the indicated and specified requirements.

#### 1.2.5.1 Product and Reference Standards

When specific products, systems or items of equipment are referred to in the Contract Documents, any ancillary devices which the Contractor knows, or in accordance with the standard of care for a General Contractor should have known, is necessary for proper functioning shall also be provided. When standards, codes, manufacturer's instructions and guarantees are required and no edition is specified by the Contract Documents, the current edition at the time of Contract execution shall apply whether or not the proper edition was set out in the Contract Documents. References to standards, codes, manufacturer's instructions and guarantees shall apply in full, except:

- .1 They do not supersede more stringent standards set out in the Contract Documents, and
- .2 Any exclusions or waivers that are inconsistent with the Contract Documents do not apply.

#### 1.2.6 Standards And Requirements

When the Contract Documents refer to standards, building codes, manufacturers' instructions, or other documents, unless otherwise specified, then the current edition as of the date of execution of the Contract by the last party to execute said Contract shall apply. It shall be the responsibility of the Architect to address revisions or amendments to applicable codes or standards which arise after the date of execution of the Contract and until Final Completion, pursuant to the terms of the Contract between Owner and Architect. Requirements of public authorities apply as minimum requirements only and do not supersede more stringent specified requirements.

General Requirements in the Specifications govern the execution of all Work. Summary paragraphs present a brief indication of the Work, but do not limit the Work as later detailed. Should the Drawings and Specifications have internal inconsistencies, then the Contractor shall base the bids and construction on the most expensive combination of quality and quantity of work indicated. For purposes of construction, the Architect shall determine the appropriate Work, after the Contractor brings the inconsistency to the Architect's attention. Failure to report an inconsistency shall be evidence that Contractor has elected to proceed in the more expensive manner.

### § 1.3 Capitalization

Terms capitalized in these General Conditions include those that are (1) specifically defined, (2) the titles of numbered articles and identified references to Paragraphs, Subparagraphs, and Clauses in the documents,, or (3) the titles of other documents published by the American Institute of Architects.

### § 1.4 Interpretation

In the interest of brevity the Contract Documents frequently omit modifying words such as "all" and "any" and articles such as "the" and "an," but the fact that a modifier or an article is absent from one statement and appears in another is not intended to affect the interpretation of either statement.

### § 1.5 Ownership and Use of Drawings, Specifications, and Other Instruments of Service

§ 1.5.1 All ownership rights, whether common law, statutory, or other reserved rights, including copyright ownership of the Construction Documents, are controlled by the Contract between the Owner and The Architect and the Architect's consultants shall be deemed the authors and owners of their respective Instruments of Service, including the Drawings and Specifications, and retain all common law, statutory, and other reserved rights in their Instruments of Service, including copyrights. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers shall not own or claim a copyright in the Instruments of Service Construction Documents. Submittal or distribution to meet official regulatory requirements or for other purposes in connection with the Project is not to be construed as publication in derogation of anythe Architect's or Architect's consultants' reserved rights.

§ 1.5.2 The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers are granted a limited license authorized to use and reproduce the Construction Documents Instruments of Service provided to them, subject to any protocols established pursuant to Sections 1.7 and 1.8, solely and exclusively for execution of the Work. All copies made under this authorization shall bear the copyright notice, if any, shown on the Construction Documents Instruments of Service. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, and suppliers may not use the Instruments of Service Construction Documents on other projects or for additions to the Project outside the scope of the Work without the specific written consent of the Owner, Architect, and the Architect's consultants. All copies of the Construction Documents, except the Contractor's record set, shall be returned or suitably accounted for to the copyright holder upon completion of the Work.

1.5.3 The Drawings, Specifications and other Documents, including those in electronic form, prepared by the Architect and the Architect's consultants are Instruments of Service through which the Work to be executed by the Contractor is described. The Contractor may retain one record set. Neither the Contractor nor any Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor or material or equipment supplier shall own or claim copyright in the Drawings, Specifications and other documents prepared by the Architect or Architect's consultants, and unless otherwise indicated the Architect and the Architect's consultants shall be deemed the authors of them and will retain all common law, statutory and other reserved rights, in addition to the copyrights. All copies of Instruments of Service, except the Contractor's record set, shall be returned or suitably accounted for to the Architect, on request, upon completion of the Work. The Drawings, Specifications and other documents prepared by the Architect and the Architect's consultants, and copies thereof furnished to the Contractor, are for use solely with respect to this Project. They are not to be used by the Contractor or any Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor or material or equipment supplier on other projects or for additions to this Project outside the scope of the Work without the written consent of the Owner, Architect and Architect's consultants. The Contractor, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors and material or equipment suppliers are authorized to use and reproduce applicable portions of the Drawings, Specifications and other documents prepared by the Architect and Architect's consultants appropriate to and for use in the execution of their Work under the Contract Documents. All copies made under this authorization shall bear the statutory copyright notice, if any, shown on the Drawings, Specifications and other documents prepared by the Architect and Architect's consultants. Submittal or distribution to meet official regulatory requirements or for other purposes in connection with this Project is not to be construed as publication in derogation of the Architect's or Architect's consultants copyrights or other reserved rights.

## § 1.6 Notice

~~§ 1.6.1 Except as otherwise provided in Section 1.6.2, where the Contract Documents require one party to notify or give notice to the other party, such notice shall be provided in writing to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed and shall be deemed to have been duly served if delivered in person, by mail, by courier, or by electronic transmission if a method for electronic transmission is set forth in the Agreement. Written notice shall be deemed to have been duly served if delivered in person to the individual, to a member of the firm or entity, or to an officer of the corporation for which it was intended; if delivered at, or sent by registered or certified mail, or by courier service providing proof of delivery to the last business address known to the party giving notice, or if sent by electronic facsimile transmission, to the last business number known to the party giving notice, with electronic confirmation of receipt; or, if sent by electronic mail, to the email address of the Owner's or Contractor's designated representative, with electronic confirmation of receipt.~~

~~§ 1.6.2 Notice of Claims as provided in Section 15.1.3 shall be provided in writing and shall be deemed to have been duly served only if delivered to the designated representative of the party to whom the notice is addressed by certified or registered mail, or by courier providing proof of delivery.~~

## § 1.7 Digital Data Use and Transmission

~~If the parties intend to transmit Construction Documents or any other information or documentation in digital form, they shall endeavor to establish necessary protocols governing such transmissions, unless otherwise already provided in the Contract or the Contract Documents and use of Instruments of Service or any other information or documentation in digital form. The parties will use AIA Document E203™-2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, to establish the protocols for the development, use, transmission, and exchange of digital data.~~

## § 1.8 EXECUTION OF CONTRACT DOCUMENTS

~~1.8.1 The Contract Documents must be signed by the Owner and Contractor. The Agreement Contract between Owner and Contractor, as amended, including Conditions of the Contract, as amended, as well as all other Contract Documents that required signature of the Parties, including the A201-2017, as amended, must be signed first by the Contractor's representative. After signing the Agreement Contract and all other Contract Documents requiring signature, Contractor shall return the Contract Documents along with proof of insurance and payment and performance bonds to Owner. Once Owner has approved of the Contract Documents and the proof of insurance and payment and performance bonds, Owner shall sign the Agreement Contract and all other Contract Documents requiring signature of the parties. When Owner has signed and approved all required documents, District shall issue a Notice to Proceed to Contractor.~~

~~1.8.2 Execution of the Contract by the Contractor is a representation that the Contractor has visited the site, become generally familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed and correlated personal observations with requirements of the Contract Documents. Should the Contractor find discrepancies, omissions or conflicts within the Contract Documents, or be in doubt as to their meaning, the Contractor shall at once notify in writing the Architect, the Program Manager and Owner, and Architect will issue a written Architect's Supplemental Instruction to all parties that is consistent with the Owner's Scope of the Work.~~

### ~~Building Information Models Use and Reliance~~

~~Any use of, or reliance on, all or a portion of a building information model without agreement to protocols governing the use of, and reliance on, the information contained in the model and without having those protocols set forth in AIA Document E203™-2013, Building Information Modeling and Digital Data Exhibit, and the requisite AIA Document G202™-2013, Project Building Information Modeling Protocol Form, shall be at the using or relying party's sole risk and without liability to the other party and its contractors or consultants, the authors of, or contributors to, the building information model, and each of their agents and employees.~~

## ARTICLE 2 OWNER

### § 2.1 General

~~§ 2.1.1 The Owner is the independent school district or entity person or entity identified as such in the Agreement and is referred to throughout in the Contract Documents as if singular in number. The Board of Trustees, by majority vote, is the only representative of the Owner, an independent school district, having the power to: enter into a contract; amend a contract, including but not limited to, AIA Document A133 Exhibit A; approve changes in the scope of the Work; approve and execute a Change Order or Construction Change Directive modifying the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price; agree to an extension to the date of Substantial or Final Completion; or terminate a contract. The Board will act as soon as reasonably possible to avoid undue delays. The Board shall~~

designates authorized representatives to act on its behalf for day-to-day operations under the Contract. Unless otherwise designated in the Contract Documents, Owner's authorized in writing a representative who shall be the Superintendent of Schools, who may delegate responsibilities as appropriate, have express authority to bind the Owner. Except as otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Architect does not have such authority. Neither Architect nor Contractor may rely upon the direction of any employee of Owner who has not been designated in writing by the Superintendent or Board of Trustees; Owner shall not be financially responsible for actions taken by the Architect or Contractor in reliance upon direction from unauthorized persons with respect to all matters requiring the Owner's approval or authorization. Except as otherwise provided in Section 4.2.1, the Architect does not have such authority. The term "Owner" means the Owner or the Owner's authorized representative.

§ 2.1.2 The Owner shall furnish to the Contractor, within fifteen days after receipt of a written request, information necessary and relevant for the Contractor to evaluate, give notice of, or enforce mechanic's lien rights. Such information shall include a correct statement of the record legal title to the property on which the Project is located, usually referred to as the site, and the Owner's interest therein. It shall be distinctly understood that by virtue of this Contract, no mechanic, contractor, material person, artisan, or laborer, skilled or unskilled, shall ever in any manner have, claim, or acquire any lien upon the buildings or any of the improvements of whatsoever nature or kind so erected or to be erected by virtue of this Contract or upon any of the land on which said buildings of any of the improvements are so erected, built, or situated, such property belonging to a political subdivision of the State of Texas. It shall be further understood that this Contract is not written for the benefit of their parties.

2.1.3 The Owner shall require the Contractor and the Architect to meet periodically at mutually-agreed-upon intervals, for the purpose of establishing procedures to facilitate cooperation, communication, and timely responses among the participants. By participating in this arrangement, the parties do not intend to create additional contractual obligations or modify the legal relationship which may otherwise exist.

2.1.4 The Owner may require that the Contractor use and/or respond to certain Owner-furnished forms or inquiries during the course of the Project. From time to time, there may be future revisions, changes, additions, or deletions to these forms. The fact that the Owner modifies and increases reasonable reporting requirements shall not serve as the basis for a claim for additional time or compensation by the Contractor.

2.1.5 The Contractor stipulates and agrees that the Owner has no duty to discover any design errors or omissions in the Drawings, Plans, Specifications, and other Construction Documents, and has no duty to notify Contractor of same. By entering into the Contract Documents or any Contract with any Architect, Owner does not warrant the adequacy and accuracy of any Drawings, Plans, Specifications, or other Construction Documents.

## **§ 2.2 Evidence of the Owner's Financial Arrangements**

§ 2.2.1 Prior to commencement of the Work and upon written request by the Contractor, ~~the~~ The Owner, being a public body under the laws of the State of Texas, must have adequate funds and/or financing as provided by law prior to award and execution of ~~shall furnish to the Contractor Documents~~ reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract. The Contractor shall have no obligation to commence the Work until the Owner provides such evidence. If commencement of the Work is delayed under this Section 2.2.1, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately.

§ 2.2.2 At any time prior to the Owner's receipt of the executed ~~Agreement~~ Contract with the required bonds and insurance, the Owner may, at its sole option and without cause, reject the offer described in this ~~Agreement~~ Contract by delivering to the Contractor a written notice stating so. Such notice shall be signed by the Owner's Director of Purchasing or designee and shall be effective on receipt by the Contractor. The rejection of the offer described in this ~~Agreement~~ Contract shall cause no obligation or duty to the District save return of bid or proposal security, if any, if rejection is without cause. This paragraph does not pertain to rejection for cause by the Owner, or for the Contractor's failure to provide required bonds or insurance. ~~Following commencement of the Work and upon written request by the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence that the Owner has made financial arrangements to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract only if (1) the Owner fails to make payments to the Contractor as the Contract Documents require; (2) the Contractor identifies in writing a reasonable concern regarding the Owner's ability to make payment when due; or (3) a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum. If the Owner fails to provide such evidence, as required, within fourteen days of the Contractor's request, the Contractor may immediately stop the Work and, in that event, shall notify the Owner that the Work has stopped. However, if the request is made because a change in the Work materially changes the Contract Sum under (3) above, the Contractor may immediately stop only that portion of the Work affected by the change until~~

reasonable evidence is provided. If the Work is stopped under this Section 2.2.2, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shutdown, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided in the Contract Documents.

§ 2.2.3 ~~After the Owner furnishes evidence of financial arrangements under this Section 2.2, the Owner shall not materially vary such financial arrangements without prior notice to the Contractor.~~

§ 2.2.4 ~~Where the Owner has designated information furnished under this Section 2.2 as "confidential," the Contractor shall keep the information confidential and shall not disclose it to any other person. However, the Contractor may disclose "confidential" information, after seven (7) days' notice to the Owner, where disclosure is required by law, including a subpoena or other form of compulsory legal process issued by a court or governmental entity, or by court or arbitrator(s) order. The Contractor may also disclose "confidential" information to its employees, consultants, sureties, Subcontractors and their employees, Sub-subcontractors, and others who need to know the content of such information solely and exclusively for the Project and who agree to maintain the confidentiality of such information.~~

### § 2.3 Information and Services Required of the Owner

§ 2.3.1 Except for permits and fees that are the responsibility of the Contractor under the Contract Documents, including those required under Section 3.7.1, the Owner shall secure and pay for necessary approvals, easements, assessments and charges required for construction, use or occupancy of permanent structures or for permanent changes in existing facilities.

§ 2.3.2 ~~The "Architect" is the person~~ Owner shall retain an architect lawfully licensed to practice architecture, or an entity lawfully practicing architecture, ~~in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. That person or entity is identified as the Architect~~ identified as such in the ~~Agreement~~ Contract and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number.

§ 2.3.3 ~~If the employment of the Architect terminates, the Owner shall employ a successor to whom the Contractor has no reasonable objection and whose status under the Contract Documents shall be that of the Architect. Owner shall notify Contractor if successor architect has been employed by Owner. The term "Architect" means the Architect or the Architect's authorized representative.~~

§ 2.3.4 ~~If requested to do so, in writing, by Contractor, prior to start of the Work, the Owner shall furnish surveys describing physical characteristics, legal limitations and utility locations for the site of the Project, and a legal description of the site. The Contractor shall be entitled to rely on the accuracy of information furnished by the Owner but shall exercise proper precautions relating to the safe performance of the Work. The survey shall not relieve Contractor from its obligations to examine the site, or exercise proper precautions relating to the safe performance of the Work.~~

§ 2.3.5 ~~Information or services reasonably necessary for the Work and under the Owner's control shall be furnished by the Owner with reasonable promptness where requested in writing by the Contractor. Under normal circumstances, fourteen (14) District Business days will be considered a reasonable time for Owner response. In any circumstance where information or services from the Owner, Program Manager or Architect is required, Contractor shall promptly notify in writing the Architect, with copy to the Program Manager, of the particular need. Absent such notification, any Claim based upon lack of such information or services shall be waived. The Owner shall furnish information or services required of the Owner by the Contract Documents with reasonable promptness. The Owner shall also furnish any other information or services under the Owner's control and relevant to the Contractor's performance of the Work with reasonable promptness after receiving the Contractor's written request for such information or services. Absent such timely notification, any Claim based upon lack of such information or services shall be waived.~~

§ 2.3.6 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor one copy of the ~~Construction~~ Contract Documents, as provided for in the Project Manual, for purposes of making reproductions pursuant to Section 1.5.2.

## § 2.4 Owner's Right to Stop the Work

If the Contractor fails to ~~fails to correct non-conforming or defective Work, fails to correct Work which is not in accordance with Contract Documents, or correct defective Work, fails to correct Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents or the Construction Documents as required by Section 12.2 or repeatedly~~ fails to carry out Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Owner may issue a written order to the Contractor to stop the Work, or any portion thereof, until the cause for such order has been eliminated; however, the right of the Owner to stop the Work shall not give rise to a duty on the part of the Owner to exercise this right for the benefit of the Contractor or any other person or entity, ~~except to the extent required by Section 6.1.3.~~ The authorized Owner's representative having the legal right to stop the Work shall be limited to the Owner's Superintendent of Schools or designee.

## § 2.5 Owner's Right to Carry Out the Work

If the Contractor defaults or neglects to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents and fails within a ten-day period after receipt of written notice from the Owner to commence and continue correction of such default or neglect with diligence and promptness, the Owner may, without prejudice to other remedies the Owner may have, correct such default or neglect. ~~Such action by the Owner and amounts charged to the Contractor are both subject to prior approval of the Architect and t~~The Architect ~~may~~shall, pursuant to Section 9.5.1, withhold or nullify a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to reimburse the Owner for the reasonable cost of correcting such deficiencies, including Owner's expenses and compensation for the Architect's, Program Manager and other consultants' additional services, if any, made necessary by such default, neglect, or failure. If current and future payments are not sufficient to cover such amounts, then the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner. If the Contractor disagrees with the actions of the Owner or the Architect, or the amounts claimed as costs to the Owner, then the Contractor may file a Claim pursuant to Article 15.

2.5.1 After the Work is complete the Owner may make emergency repairs to the Work if necessary to prevent further damage, or if the Contractor does not promptly respond to a notice of a condition requiring repairs. Contractor shall be responsible to Owner for this cost if the reason for the repairs is defects in Contractor's Work. If payments then or thereafter due the Contractor are not sufficient to cover such costs, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner.

## 2.6 OWNER'S OCCUPANCY

Contractor agrees that the Owner may place and install as much equipment and furnishings during the progress of the building as is possible before completion of various parts of the Work, or may occupy portions of the Work before substantial completion of the entire Work, and further agrees that such placing and installing of equipment and furnishings or occupancy of portions of the Work shall not in any way evidence the substantial completion of the entire Work, or signify Owner's acceptance of the Work, nor does it affect claims for liquidated damages in case Substantial Completion is not achieved as required unless the failure to reach Substantial Completion is the result of the early move-in or occupancy. Owner will accept the responsibility for any damages to the Work caused by such occupancy.

## ARTICLE 3 CONTRACTOR

### § 3.1 General

§ 3.1.1 The Contractor is the person or entity identified as such in the AgreementContract and is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number. ~~The Contractor shall be lawfully licensed, if required in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Contractor shall designate in writing a representative who shall have express authority to bind the Contractor with respect to all matters under this Contract.~~ The term "Contractor" means the Contractor or the Contractor's authorized representative, and includes the Construction Manager at Risk, if applicable.

§ 3.1.2 The Contractor shall perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 3.1.3 The Contractor shall not be relieved of its obligations to perform the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents either by activities or duties of the Architect or Program Manager in the ~~Architect's~~ administration of the Contract, activities of the Owner (or Owner's Program Manager, if applicable), or by tests, inspections or approvals required or performed by persons or entities other than the Contractor.

3.1.4 The Contractor represents and warrants the following to the Owner (in addition to the other representations and warranties contained in the Contract Documents), as an inducement to the Owner to execute this Contract, which



representations and warranties shall survive the execution and delivery of the Contract and the Final Completion of the Work:

.1 that it is financially solvent, able to pay its debts as they mature, and possessed of sufficient working capital to complete the Work and perform its obligations under the Contract Documents;

.2 that it is able to furnish the tools, materials, supplies, equipment, and labor required to timely complete the Work and perform its obligation hereunder and has sufficient experience and competence to do so;

.3 that it is authorized to do business in the State where the Project is located and properly licensed by all necessary governmental, public, and quasi-public authorities having jurisdiction over it, the Work, or the site of the Project; and

.4 that the execution of the Contract and its performance thereof are within its duly-authorized powers.

### **§ 3.2 Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions by Contractor**

~~§ 3.2.1 Execution of the Contract by the Contractor is a representation that the Contractor has visited the site, become generally familiar with local conditions under which the Work is to be performed, and correlated personal observations with requirements of the Contract Documents. The Contractor represents and warrants by submission of a Proposal that he has carefully examined the Contract Documents, any soil test reports, drainage studies, geotechnical or other reports, and the site of the Work, and that, from his own investigations, he has satisfied himself as to the nature and location of the Work, the character, quality and quantity of surface and subsurface materials likely to be encountered, the character of equipment and other facilities needed for the performance of the Work, the general and local conditions and all other materials which may in any way affect the Work or its performance. Should the Contractor find discrepancies, omissions or conflicts within the Contract Documents, or be in doubt as to their meaning, the Contractor shall at once notify in writing the Architect and Owner, and Architect will issue a written addendum to all parties that is consistent with the Owner's Scope of the Work. The Contractor shall not be entitled to any additional time or compensation for any additional work caused by the Contractor's fault, improper construction, or by Contractor's failure to carefully study and compare the Contract Documents to actual observable site conditions prior to execution of the Work.~~

**§ 3.2.2** Because the Contract Documents are complementary, the Contractor shall, before starting each portion of the Work, carefully study and compare the various Drawings and other Contract Documents relative to that portion of the Work, as well as the information furnished by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.4, shall take field measurements of any existing conditions related to that portion of the Work, and shall observe any conditions at the site affecting it. These obligations are for the purpose of facilitating coordination and construction by the Contractor and are ~~not~~ for the purpose of discovering errors, omissions, or inconsistencies in the Contract Documents; ~~however,~~ the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any errors, inconsistencies or omissions discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require. ~~It is recognized that the Contractor's review is made in the Contractor's capacity as a contractor and not as a licensed design professional, unless otherwise specifically provided in the Contract Documents. Contractor shall not perform any Work involving an error, inconsistency, or omission without further instructions to Contractor or revised Construction Documents from the Architect.~~

**§ 3.2.3** ~~Neither the Owner nor the~~ Contractor is ~~not~~ required to ascertain that the Contract Documents are in accordance with applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of public authorities, but the Contractor shall promptly report to the Architect any nonconformity discovered by or made known to the Contractor as a request for information in such form as the Architect may require.

3.2.3.1 Any design errors or omissions noted by the Contractor during this review shall be reported promptly to the Architect, but it is recognized that the Contractor's review is made in the Contractor's capacity as a contractor and not as a licensed design professional, unless otherwise specifically provided in the Contract Documents

**§ 3.2.4** If the Contractor has knowledge that any of the products or systems specified will perform in a manner that will limit the Contractor's ability to satisfactorily perform the Work or to honor his warranty, or will result in a limitation of or interference with the Owner's intended use, then the Contractor shall promptly notify the Architect and Owner in writing, providing substantiation for his position. Any necessary changes, including substitution of

materials, shall be accomplished by appropriate Modification. If the Contractor believes that additional cost or time is involved because of clarifications or instructions the Architect issues in response to the Contractor's notices or requests for information pursuant to Sections 3.2.2, ~~or 3.2.3,~~ or 3.2.3.1, the Contractor shall submit Claims as provided in Article 15. If the Contractor fails to perform the obligations of Sections 3.2.2, ~~or 3.2.3,~~ or 3.2.3.1, the Contractor shall pay such costs and damages to the Owner, subject to Section 15.1.7, as would have been avoided if the Contractor had performed such obligations. Contractor shall take field measurements, verify field conditions, and shall carefully compare them to the Construction Documents. ~~If the Contractor performs those obligations, the Contractor shall not~~ be liable to the Owner or Architect for damages resulting from errors, inconsistencies or omissions in the Contract Documents, for differences between field measurements or conditions and the Contract Documents, or for nonconformities of the Contract Documents to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities when the Contractor recognized or should have recognized such error, inconsistency, omissions or difference, and failed to report it to the Architect. Contractor shall not be entitled to additional compensation or additional Work caused by Contractor's failure to carefully study and compare the Construction Documents prior to the execution of the Work.

3.2.5 Prior to performing any Work, and only if applicable, Contractor shall locate all utility lines as shown and located on the plans and specifications, including the telephone company lines and cables, sewer lines, water pipes, gas lines, electrical lines, including, but not limited to, all buried pipelines and buried telephone cables, and shall perform any Work in such a manner so as to avoid damaging any such lines, cables, pipes, and pipelines. In addition, Contractor shall independently determine the location of same. Contractor shall be responsible for any damage done to such utility lines, cables, pipes, and pipelines during its Work, and shall be responsible for any loss, damage, or extra expense resulting from such damage. Repairs shall be made immediately to restore all service. Any delay for such break shall be attributable to Contractor. In addition, and only if applicable, Contractor shall review the appropriate AHERA and hazardous materials surveys for the particular campuses involved in the Project, and shall notify all Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors of the necessity to review said surveys. Contractor shall perform any Work in such a manner as to avoid damaging, exposing, or dislodging any asbestos-containing materials that are clearly identified and located in AHERA and other hazardous material surveys. Before performing any portion of the Work, the Contractor shall fully investigate all physical aspects of the Project Site and verify all dimensions, measurements, property lines, grades and elevations, existing improvements, and general suitability of existing conditions at the Project site. If applicable, Contractor shall comply with U.S. Environmental Protection Agency rules concerning renovating, repairing, or painting work in schools built prior to 1978 involving lead-based paint.

3.2.6 The Owner shall be entitled to deduct from the Contract Sum, amounts paid to the Architect for the Architect to evaluate and respond to the Contractor's requests for information, where such information was available to the Contractor from a careful study and comparison of the Contract Documents, field conditions, Owner provided information, Contractor-prepared coordination drawings, or prior Project correspondence or documentation. If, in the reasonable opinion of the Architect, the Contractor does not make reasonable effort to comply with any of the above requirements of the Contract Documents, and this causes Architect or his Consultants to expend an unreasonable amount of time in the discharge of the duties imposed by the Contract Documents, then the Contractor shall bear the cost of compensation for the Architect's additional services made necessary by such failure.

3.2.7 The Contractor shall arrange meetings prior to commencement of the Work of all major Subcontractors to allow the Subcontractors to demonstrate an understanding of the Construction and Contract Documents to the Architect and to allow the Subcontractors to ask for interpretations, when necessary. The Contractor and each Subcontractor shall be evaluated and satisfy themselves as to the conditions and limitations under which the Work is to be performed, including:

- .1 The location, condition, layout, drainage, and nature of the Project site and surrounding areas;
- .2 Generally prevailing climatic conditions;
- .3 Anticipated labor supply and costs;
- .4 Availability and cost of materials, tools, and equipment; and
- .5 Other similar issues.

### **§ 3.3 Supervision and Construction Procedures**

**§ 3.3.1** The Contractor shall supervise and direct the Work, using the Contractor's best skill and attention. The Contractor shall be solely responsible for, and have control over, construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures, and for coordinating all portions of the Work under the Contract. If the Contract

Documents give specific instructions concerning construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures, the Contractor shall evaluate the jobsite safety thereof and shall be solely responsible for the jobsite safety of such means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. If the Contractor determines that such means, methods, techniques, sequences or procedures may not be safe, the Contractor shall give timely written notice to the Owner and Architect, and shall propose alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect shall evaluate the proposed alternative solely for conformance with the design intent for the completed construction. Unless the Architect objects, in writing, to the Contractor's proposed alternative, the Contractor shall perform the Work using its alternative means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures.

Contractor shall attend weekly, or as otherwise directed by Owner, job site progress meetings. Program Manager shall conduct such meetings; and, shall manage Architect's recording, transcribing and distributing minutes to attendees, Architect, and other appropriate parties

**§ 3.3.2** The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner for acts and omissions of the Contractor's employees, Subcontractors and their agents and employees, and other persons or entities performing portions of the Work for, or on behalf of, the Contractor or any of its Subcontractors. It is understood and agreed that the relationship of Contractor to Owner shall be that of an independent Contractor. Nothing contained herein or inferable here from shall be deemed or construed to (1) make Contractor the agent, servant or employee of the Owner, or (2) to create any partnership, joint venture, or other association between the Owner and Contractor. Any direction or instruction by Owner or any of its authorized representatives in respect to the Work shall relate to the results the Owner desires to obtain from the Work, and shall in no way affect Contractor's independent Contractor status described herein. As part of that responsibility, Contractor shall enforce the Owner's alcohol-free, drug-free, tobacco-free, harassment-free, and weapon-free policies and zones, which will require compliance with those policies and zones by Contractor's employees, subcontractors, and all other persons carrying out the Contract. Contractor shall require all construction workers, whether Contractor's own forces or the forces of Contractor's subcontractors, while on Owner's property to refrain from committing any criminal conduct, using tobacco products, possessing or drinking alcoholic beverages, possessing or using illegal drugs or controlled substances, carrying or possessing weapons, speaking profane and/or offensive language, or engaging in any inappropriate interactions of any nature whatsoever with students and employees, including talking, touching, staring or otherwise contributing to a hostile or offensive environment for Owner's students and employees. All areas of campus, other than the defined construction area, shall be off limits to Contractor's forces, unless their work assignment specifies otherwise. Contractor shall also require adequate and appropriate dress and identification of Contractor's employees, subcontractors, and all other persons carrying out the Work. Contractor shall require all construction workers, whether Contractor's own forces or the forces of Contractor's subcontractors, to wear identification tags on the front of their persons during all times that they are on Owner's property. Such identification tags shall contain a current photograph and the worker's full name in a typeface large enough to be seen from a reasonable distance. The Contractor shall further ensure that no on-site fraternization shall occur between personnel under the Contractor's and Subcontractor's direct or indirect supervision and Owner's students or employees and the general public. Failure of an individual to adhere to these standards of conduct shall result in the immediate removal of the offending employee from all construction on any of Owner's property. Repeated removal of Contractor's or Contractor's subcontractor's forces, or one serious infraction, shall constitute a substantial breach of the Contract justifying the immediate termination by Owner pursuant to Article 14. Contractor shall require all construction workers, whether Contractor's own forces or the forces of Contractor's subcontractor, to park their personal motor vehicles on Owner's property only in the parking places designated by the Owner's campus principal. Any vehicles not parked in the appropriate locations shall be towed at the vehicle owner's sole expense. Contractor shall follow, and shall require all employees, agents, or subcontractors to follow, the tree ordinance of the municipality in which the Project is located. In addition, if not covered by the municipal tree ordinance, Contractor shall barricade and protect all trees on the Project, which shall be included in the Cost of the Work. Contractor shall institute a theft deterrence program designed to restrict construction worker access to properties of Owner that are currently in use, to maintain supervision of Contractor's and Contractor's subcontractor's forces, and to reimburse the Owner or those persons suffering a theft loss which results from Contractor's forces or Contractor's subcontractor's forces' actions, omissions, or failure to secure the Work connecting or adjacent to property of Owner.

**§ 3.3.3** The Contractor shall be responsible for inspection of portions of Work already performed to determine that such portions are in proper condition to receive subsequent Work. Contractor shall execute the Work in a good and workmanlike manner, continuously and diligently in accordance with generally accepted standards of construction practice for construction of projects similar to the Project, using qualified, careful and efficient workers and in conformity with the provisions of the Contract Documents.

3.3.4 The Contractor shall properly and efficiently coordinate the timing, scheduling, and routing of all Work performed by all sub-contractors and sub-subcontractors.

3.3.5 To the extent that any portion of the Work requires a trench excavation exceeding five (5') feet in depth, in accordance with Texas Health and Safety Code § 756.023(a), Contractor shall fully comply, and shall require any applicable subcontractor to comply, with:

.1 The Occupational Safety and Health Administration standards for trench safety in effect for the Construction of the Work;

.2 The special shoring requirements, if any, of the Owner;

.3 Any geotechnical information obtained by Owner for use by the Contractor in the design of the trench safety system; and

.4 Trench excavation safety protection shall be a separate pay item, and shall be based on linear feet of trench excavated. Special shoring requirements shall also be a separate pay item, and shall be based on the square feet of shoring use.

3.3.6 The Contractor shall review Subcontractor safety programs, procedures, and precautions in connection with performance of the Work. However, the Contractor's duties shall not relieve any Subcontractor(s) or any other person or entity (e.g. a supplier), including any person or entity with whom the Contractor does not have a contractual relationship, of their responsibility or liability relative to compliance with all applicable federal, state, and local laws, rules, regulations, and ordinances which shall include the litigation to provide for the safety of their employees, persons, and property and their requirements to maintain a work environment free of recognized hazards. The foregoing notwithstanding, the requirements of this Paragraph are not intended to impose upon the Contractor any additional obligations that the Contractor would not have under any applicable state or federal laws, including, but not limited to, any rules, regulations, or statutes pertaining to the Occupations Safety and Health Administration.

3.3.7 It is understood and agreed that the relationship of Contractor to Owner shall be that of an independent contractor. Nothing contained in this Contract or inferable from this Contract shall be deemed or construed to: 1) make Contractor the agent, servant or employee of the Owner; or 2) create any partnership, joint venture, or other association between Owner and Contractor. Any direction or instruction by Owner or any of its authorized representatives in respect of the Work, shall relate to the result the Owner desires to obtain from the Work, and shall in no way affect Contractor's independent contractor status. Pursuant to Texas Labor Code § 214.008, the Contractor and any subcontractor on the Project, shall properly classify, as an employee or an independent contractor, in accordance with Texas Labor Code Chapter 201, any individual the Contractor or subcontractor directly retains and compensates for services performed in connection with this Contract. Any Contractor or subcontractor who fails to properly classify such an individual, may be subject to penalties of Texas Labor Code § 214.008(c).

### **§ 3.4 Labor and Materials**

§ 3.4.1 These Contract Documents shall not be construed to deny or diminish the right of any person to work because of the person's membership or other relationship status with respect to any organization. Texas Government Code § 2269.054. These Contract Documents shall also not prohibit, require, discourage or encourage a person, or discriminate against a person bidding on this contract from entering into or declining to enter into, or adhering to, an agreement with a collective bargaining organization relating to this Project. Texas Government Code § 2269.0541. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide and pay for qualified, careful, and efficient workers and labor, eligible to work in accordance with state and federal law. Contractor shall appropriately classify all workers in accordance with the Fair Labor Standards Act, its implementing regulations, and Texas Labor Code § 214.008. In addition, unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide and pay for materials, equipment, tools, construction equipment and machinery, water, heat, utilities, transportation, and other facilities and services necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work, whether temporary or permanent and whether or not incorporated or to be incorporated in the Work. Before ordering any material or doing any Work, Contractor shall verify all dimensions and check all conditions in order to assure Contractor that they are the same as those in Drawings, Specifications, and other Construction Documents. Any inconsistency shall be brought to the attention of the Architect. In the event that discrepancies occur between ordered material and actual conditions and Architect was not notified beforehand, then costs to correct such discrepancies shall be borne by Contractor.

§ 3.4.2 Except in the case of minor changes in the Work approved by the Architect in accordance with Section 3.12.8 or ordered by the Architect in accordance with Section 7.4, the Contractor may make substitutions only with the prior written consent of the Owner, after evaluation by the Architect and Program Manager ~~and~~ in accordance with a Change Order or Construction Change Directive.

3.4.2.1 After evaluation by the Architect, substitutions and alternates may be rejected by the Architect or Program Manager without explanation and will be considered only under one or more of the following conditions: (i) the proposal is required for compliance with interpretation of code requirements or insurance regulations then existing; (ii) specified products are unavailable through no fault of the Contractor; (iii) and when, in the judgment of the Architect, a substitution would be substantially in the Owner's best interests, in terms of cost, time, or other considerations.

3.4.2.2 The Contractor must submit to the Architect: (i) a full explanation of the proposed substitution and submittals of all supporting data, including technical information, catalog cuts, warranties, test results, installation instructions, operating procedures, and other like information necessary for a complete evaluation for the substitution; (ii) a written explanation of the reasons the substitution should be considered, including the benefits to the Owner and the Work in the event the substitution is acceptable; (iii) the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum; (iv) the adjustment, if any, in the time of completion of the Contract and the construction schedule; and (v) an affidavit stating (a) the proposed substitution conforms to and meets all requirements of the pertinent Specifications and the requirements shown on the Drawings, and (b) the Contractor accepts the warranty and will coordinate the Work to be complete in all respects, as if originally specified by the Architect. Proposals for substitution shall be submitted in writing to the Architect in sufficient time to allow the Architect no less than fifteen (15) working days for review. No substitutions will be considered or allowed without the Contractor's submittals of complete substantiating data and information.

3.4.2.3 Whether or not the Architect accepts any proposed substitution, the Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for any fees charged by the Architect or other consultants for evaluating each proposed substitution.

§ 3.4.3 The Contractor shall enforce strict discipline and good order among the Contractor's employees and other persons carrying out the Work. The Contractor shall not permit employment of unfit persons or persons not properly skilled in tasks assigned to them. THE CONTRACTOR RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS HARMLESS THE OWNER FOR CONTRACTOR'S FORCES' NON-COMPLIANCE WITH OWNER'S DRUG-FREE, ALCOHOL-FREE, WEAPON-FREE, HARASSMENT-FREE, AND TOBACCO-FREE ZONES, CONTRACTOR'S FORCES' NON-COMPLIANCE WITH CRIMINAL LAW, OR CONTRACTOR'S OR CONTRACTOR'S FORCES' NON-COMPLIANCE WITH IMMIGRATION LAW OR REGULATIONS. Any individual found by Owner to have violated these restrictions is subject to permanent removal from the Project, at the Owner's request. Contractor shall place similar language in its subcontract agreements, requiring the Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors to be responsible for their own forces, and Contractor shall cooperate with the Owner to ensure Subcontractor and Sub-subcontractor compliance.

3.4.4 Including, but not limited to, the specific requirement of Article 10, Contractor, its subcontractors and vendors shall bear responsibility for compliance with all federal, state, and local laws, regulations, guidelines, and ordinances pertaining to work safety and applicable to the Work. Contractor further recognizes that the Owner and Architect do not owe the Contractor any duty to supervise or direct his work so as to protect the Contractor from the consequences of his own conduct.

3.4.5 Pursuant to Texas Education Code § 44.034, Contractor must give advance written notice to the Owner if the Contractor or an owner or operator of the Contractor has been convicted of a felony. The notice must include a general description of the conduct resulting in the conviction of a felony. The Owner may terminate this Contract if the Owner determines that the Contractor failed to give such notice or misrepresented the conduct resulting in the conviction. This paragraph requiring advance notice does not apply to a publicly-held corporation.

#### 3.4.6 CRIMINAL HISTORY CHECKS

3.4.6.1 So that Owner can obtain the national criminal history record information required by Texas Education Code Section 22.08341 on all “covered employees” (as defined in Section 3.4.6.3) of Contractor, its subcontractors, or any subcontracting entities who will perform the Work, Contractor shall submit to Owner the name and all necessary identifying information necessary to enable Owner to obtain the national criminal history information on those covered employees before they begin the Work. Contractor’s submission will include the employee’s written authorization for Owner to obtain such criminal history information. Owner may, in its sole discretion, prohibit the use of any employee to perform the Work after its review of the criminal history information, but cannot disclose the criminal history information to Contractor. Contractor shall reimburse Owner for Owner’s costs incurred in obtaining the criminal history information. Contractor’s violation of this section shall constitute a substantial failure under Article 14.

3.4.6.2 Contractor will not assign any “covered employee” with a “disqualifying criminal history,” as those terms are defined below, to work on the Project. If Contractor receives information that a covered employee has a reported disqualifying criminal history, then Contractor will immediately remove the covered employee from the Project and notify the Owner in writing within three (3) business days. If the Owner objects to the assignment of any covered employee on the basis of the covered employee’s criminal history record information, then Contractor agrees to discontinue using that covered employee to provide services on Owner’s Project. If Contractor has taken precautions or imposed conditions to ensure that the employees of Contractor and any subcontractor will not become covered employees, Contractor will ensure that these precautions or conditions continue throughout the time the contracted services are provided.

3.4.6.3 For the purposes of this Section, “covered employees” means employees, agents, or applicants of Contractor who has or will have continuing duties related to the services to be performed on Owner’s Project and has or will have direct contact with Owner’s students. The Owner will decide what constitutes direct contact with Owner’s students. “Disqualifying criminal history” means: any conviction or other criminal history information designated by the Owner; any felony or misdemeanor conviction that would disqualify a person from obtaining educator certification under Texas Education Code § 21.060, and 19 Texas Administrative Code § 249.16; or one of the following offenses, if at the time of the offense, the victim was under 18 years of age or enrolled in a public school: a felony offense under Texas Penal Code Title 5 Offense Against Persons; an offense for which a defendant is required to register as a sex offender under Texas Code of Criminal Procedure Chapter 62; or an equivalent offense under federal law or the laws of another state.

### 3.4.7 OWNER’S ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS RELATED TO CRIMINAL HISTORIES

In addition, as provided in Section 3.4.6.1 above, Owner or Contractor will at least annually obtain criminal history record information that relates to any employee, agent, or applicant of the Contractor, if the person has or will have duties related to the Project, and the duties are or will be performed on Owner’s Project, or at another location where students are likely to be present. Contractor shall assume all expenses associated with the background checks and shall immediately remove any employee, agent, or subcontractor who was convicted of a felony or a misdemeanor involving moral turpitude from Owner’s property, or other location where students are likely to be present. Owner shall determine what constitutes “moral turpitude” or a “location where students are likely to be present.”

3.4.7.1 If the Contractor is the person or owner or operator of the business entity, that individual may not self-certify regarding the criminal history record information and its review, and must submit original evidence acceptable to the Owner with this Agreement Contract showing compliance

### 3.4.8 PREVAILING WAGE RATES

3.4.8.1 Contractor, Contractor’s Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors shall pay all workers not less than the general prevailing rate of per diem wages for work of a similar character where the project is located as detailed in the “Minimum Wage Schedule” attached to this Contract. Wages listed are minimum rates only. However, no claims for additional compensation above the Contract Sum shall be considered by the Owner because of payments of wage rates in excess of the applicable rate provided herein. Texas Government Code § 2258.001 *et seq.*

3.4.8.2 Contractor shall forfeit, as a penalty to the Owner, \$60 for each laborer, worker, or mechanic, employed for each calendar day or part of the day that the worker is paid less than the wage rates stipulated in the Contract Documents.

3.4.8.3 Owner reserves the right to receive and review payroll records, payment records, and earning statements of employees of Contractor, and of Contractor's Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors.

3.4.8.4 In executing the Work under the Contract Documents, Contractor shall comply with all applicable state and federal laws, including but not limited to, laws concerned with labor, equal employment opportunity, safety and minimum wages.

3.4.8.5 If no schedule is attached to the Contract, Contractor shall use the wage rates contained in the Project Manual for the Project. If no wage rates are in the Project Manual, then the parties shall use the wage rate determined by the U.S. Department of Labor in accordance with the Davis-Bacon Act, 40 U.S.C. § 276a, (which can be accessed on the internet at <https://www.wdol.gov> or <https://beta.sam.gov/>) effective as of the date of this Contract.

### **§ 3.5 Warranty**

§ 3.5.1 The Contractor warrants to the Owner and Architect that materials and equipment furnished under the Contract will be of good quality and new unless the Contract Documents require or permit otherwise. The Contractor further warrants that the Work will conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents and will be free from defects, except for those inherent in the quality of the Work the Contract Documents require, or permit and that the Work will conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, permit. The Contractor further warrants that Contractor shall perform the Work in a good and workmanlike manner, continuously and diligently in accordance with generally accepted standards of construction practice for construction of projects similar to the Project, except to the extent the Contract Documents expressly specify a higher degree of finish or workmanship, in which case the standard shall be the higher standard. All material shall be installed in a true and straight alignment, level and plumb; patterns shall be uniform; and jointing of materials shall be flush and level, unless otherwise directed in writing by the Architect. Work, materials, or equipment not conforming to these requirements may be considered defective. The Contractor's warranty excludes remedy for damage or defect caused by abuse, alterations to the Work not executed by the Contractor, improper or insufficient maintenance (unless such maintenance is Contractor's responsibility), improper operation, or normal wear and tear and normal usage, but such exclusions shall only apply after Owner has taken occupancy of the damaged or defective portion of the Project. If required by the Architect, the Contractor shall furnish satisfactory evidence as to the kind and quality of materials and equipment. Notwithstanding anything in the Contract Documents to the contrary, Owner and Contractor expressly agree that the warranties stated herein shall mean the individual warranties associated with each particular Work within the Project, and each such individual warranty shall run from the applicable Work's Final Completion date (unless otherwise expressly provided in the applicable Contract Documents for that particular Work.) Contractor's express warranty is in addition to, and not in lieu of, Owner's other available remedies. All required warranties on equipment, machinery, materials, or components shall be submitted to the Architect on the manufacturer's or supplier's approved forms for delivery to the Owner. The warranties set out in this Subparagraph are not exclusive of any other warranties or guarantees set out in other places in the Contract Documents or expressed or implied under applicable law.

§ 3.5.2 All material, equipment, or other special warranties required by the Contract Documents shall be issued in the name of the Owner, or shall be transferable to the Owner, and shall commence in accordance with Section 9.8.4 Contractor shall certify that the Project Work has been constructed in general conformance with the Architect's or Engineer's plans, specifications, and Construction Documents, as modified from time to time pursuant to the terms of the Contract Documents. Contractor shall fully complete a "Certification of Project Completion" as required by 19 Texas Administrative Code § 61.104036.

3.5.3 In the event of failure of materials, products, or workmanship, either during construction or the warranty period, the Contractor shall take appropriate measures to ensure correction of defective Work or replacement of the defective items, without cost to the Owner. Such warranty shall be maintained notwithstanding that certain systems may be activated prior to Substantial Completion as required for the satisfactory completion of the Project. Upon written notice from the Owner or Architect, the Contractor shall promptly remedy defects as covered by Contractor's warranty. If Contractor does not respond to the written notice, either by beginning corrective work or notifying Owner in writing regarding when corrective work will begin, within ten (10) days of Contractor's receipt of the written notice, then the Owner may take measures to correct the Work and Contractor will be obligated to reimburse Owner's costs. The provisions of this subparagraph shall be in addition to, and not in lieu of, any other rights and remedies available to the Owner.

3.5.3.1 All required warranties on equipment, machinery, materials, or components shall be submitted to the Architect on the manufacturer's or supplier's approved forms at the time of Substantial Completion

3.5.4 When deemed necessary by the Owner and prior to installation of any item specifically made subject to a performance standard or regulatory agency standard under any provision of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall furnish proof of conformance to the Architect. Proof of conformance shall be in the form of:

.1 an affidavit from the manufacturer certifying that the item is in conformance with the applicable standards; or

.2 an affidavit from a testing laboratory certifying that the product has been tested within the past year and is in conformance with the applicable standards; or

.3 such further reasonable proof as is required by the Architect.

3.5.5 The Contractor agrees to issue the warranty (or warranties) in the name of the Owner, or assign the warranty (or warranties) to the Owner at Final Completion of the Work, such assignment to be effective no later than Final Completion, for any and all material, equipment, fixtures, and furniture (if supplied or installed by Contractor or its subcontractor), or other special warranties, and manufacturers' warranties relating to materials and labor used in the Work. Contractor further agrees to perform the Work in such manner so as to preserve any and all manufacturer's warranties. All forms will be required to be submitted prior to Final Payment.

3.5.6 The warranties of Contractor provided in Section 3.5 shall in no way limit or abridge the warranties of the suppliers of equipment and systems which are to comprise a portion of the Work and all such warranties shall be in form and substance as required by the Contract Documents. Contractor shall take no action or fail to act in any way which results in the termination or expiration of such third party warranties or which otherwise results in prejudice to the rights of Owner under such warranties. Contractor agrees to provide all notices required for the effectiveness of such warranties and shall include provisions in the contracts with the providers and manufacturers of such systems and equipment whereby Owner shall have a direct right, but not a duty, of enforcement of such warranty obligations.

3.5.7 Contractor shall maintain a complete and accurate schedule of the date(s) of Substantial Completion, the date(s) of Final Completion, and the dates upon which the warranty under Section 12.2 herein on each phase or building will expire. Contractor shall provide a copy of such schedules to Owner and Architect. Prior to termination of the warranty period under Section 12.2 herein, Contractor shall accompany Owner and Architect on re-inspection of each Work in the Project and Contractor shall be responsible from correcting any warranty items which are observed or reported during the warranty period under Section 12.2 herein. Contractor shall prosecute such warranty work under Section 12.2 herein without interruption until accepted by Owner and Architect, even though such work shall extend beyond the warranty period under Section 12.2 herein. If Contractor fails to provide the schedules to Owner and Architect, Contractor's warranty obligation described herein shall continue until such inspection is conducted and deficiencies are corrected.

3.5.8 Prior to receipt of Final Payment, Contractor shall:

.1 Obtain duplicate original warranties, executed by all subcontractors, making the dates of beginning of the warranties the Date of Final Completion; and the warranties of suppliers and manufacturers, making the dates of beginning of the warranties no later than the Date of Final Completion;

.2 Verify that the documents are in proper form and contain full information;



- .3 Co-sign warranties when required;
- .4 Bind all warranties in commercial quality 8-1/2 X 11 inch three-ring binder, with hardback, cleanable, plastic covers;
- .5 Label the cover of each binder with a typed or printed title labeled "WARRANTIES", along with the title of the Project, name, address, and telephone number of Contactor, and name of its responsible principal;
- .6 Include a Table of Contents, with each item identified by the number and title of the specification section under which the product is specified;
- .7 Separate each warranty with index tab sheets keyed to the Table of Contents listing; and
- .8 Deliver warranties and bonds in the form described above, to the Architect who will review same prior to submission to the Owner.

3.5.8.1 Contractor and Owner acknowledge that the Project may involve construction work on more than one school building for the Owner. Each building, or approved phase of each building, shall have its own, separate, and independent date of substantial completion, dates upon which the one-year warranty on each phase or building, which is substantially complete, will expire, and dates of final completion. Contractor agrees to provide notice of the warranty expiration date to Owner and Architect at least one month prior to the expiration of the one (1) year warranty period on each building or each phase of the building that has been substantially completed. If Owner, Architect or Program Manager discovers during the warranty period, deficiencies not previously reported, Contractor shall accompany the Owner, Architect and Program Manager on an inspection of such deficiencies and Contractor shall be responsible for correcting any such deficiencies not caused by the Owner or the use of the building. For extended warranties required by various sections, i.e., roofing, compressors, mechanical equipment, Owner will notify the Contractor of deficiencies and Contractor shall start remedying these defects within fifteen (15) days of initial notification from Owner. Contractor shall prosecute the work without interruption until accepted by the Owner and the Architect, even though such prosecution should extend beyond the limit of the warranty period. If Contractor fails to provide notice of the expiration of the one (1) year warranty period at least one month prior to the expiration date, Contractor's warranty obligation described in this paragraph shall continue until such inspection is conducted and any deficiencies found in the inspection corrected Contractor shall certify that the Work has been constructed in accordance with the Contract Documents. Any work performed by the Contractor that is not in accordance with the Contract Documents is defective and a breach of this agreement unless the Owner has agreed in writing to waive the defect. The Contractor shall provide all reasonable assistance in achieving compliance with building code specifications, accessibility standards, and Texas Education Agency Commissioner's rules in the Work.

### **§ 3.6 Taxes**

The Contractor shall pay sales, consumer, use and similar taxes for the Work provided by the Contractor that are legally enacted when bids are received or negotiations concluded, whether or not yet effective or merely scheduled to go into effect. Owner is an exempt entity under the tax laws of the State of Texas. Texas Tax Code § 151.309; 34 TAC § 3.322. The Owner represents that this Project is eligible for exemption from the State Sales Tax on tangible personal property and material incorporated in the Project, provided that the Contractor fulfills the requirements of the Texas Tax Code § 151.309; § 151.310; § 151.311, and 34 TAC § 3.291 and § 3.287. For the purpose of establishing exemptions, it is understood and agreed that the Contractor may be required to segregate materials and labor costs at the time a Contract is awarded. Contractor will accept a Certificate of Exemption from the Owner, pursuant to Texas Tax Code § 151.054(e), § 151.155, and 34 TAC § 3.287. Contractor shall obtain Certificates of Resale from Contractor's suppliers. Texas Tax Code § 151.154; 34 TAC § 3.285. Failure of Contractor or any Sub-Contractor to obtain Certificates of Resale from their suppliers shall make the Contractor or Sub-Contractor responsible for absorbing the tax without compensation from Owner. Contractor shall pay all necessary local, county, and state taxes, income tax, compensation tax, social security, and withholding payments, as required by law. CONTRACTOR HEREBY RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES, AND HOLDS HARMLESS OWNER FROM ANY AND ALL CLAIMS AND DEMANDS MADE AS A RESULT OF THE FAILURE OF CONTRACTOR OR ANY SUBCONTRACTOR TO COMPLY WITH THE PROVISIONS OF ANY OR ALL SUCH LAWS AND REGULATIONS.

3.6.2 1 The Dallas Independent School District is an exempt organization as defined by the Limited Sales and Excise Use Tax Act of Texas. The Contractor may issue an exemption certificate in lieu of sales tax on the purchase, rental or lease of all materials, supplies, equipment used or consumed and other tangible personal property incorporated into the property being improved by virtue of this Contract, as well as all materials, supplies, equipment and other tangible personal property used or consumed by the Contractor in performing this Contract with the Dallas Independent School District. The Contractor may issue exemption certificate(s) to its suppliers in lieu of said sales tax for all of said materials and supplies. The uses of said materials and supplies for which an exemption from the said sales tax is claimed and any such exemption certificate(s), shall comply with the applicable rulings of the State Comptroller.

3.6.3 2 The Contractor shall be held to have studied all tax laws for the State of Texas, the County of Dallas, Texas and the City of Dallas, Texas, and shall pay all taxes for which he may be liable as a consumer or user of goods, or otherwise without addition to the contract price. The Contractor shall pay all sales, consumer, use and other similar taxes required by law.

3.6.4 3 Title to all goods or materials purchased under a resale certificate shall vest in the District at the time of initial possession by the Program Manager and shall be used only in performance of Services under this Agreement Contract. Program Manager shall cause such items to promptly be marked, labeled or otherwise physically identified as the District's property. Program Manager shall cause items purchased under a resale certificate to send the receiving ticket to the District to be added to inventory before use by the Program Manager. Any tangible personal property purchased under a resale certificate as described above not fully used up in the Services shall remain with the District

### **§ 3.7 Permits, Fees, Notices and Compliance with Laws**

§ 3.7.1 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall secure and pay for the building permit as well as for other permits, fees, licenses, and inspections by government agencies necessary for proper execution and completion of the Work that are customarily secured after execution of the Contract and legally required at the time bids are received or negotiations concluded. After Architect has filed the plans and specifications with the Texas Department of Licensing and Regulation, Architect shall notify Contractor that Contractor may make and submit the applications for the building permit. The Owner Contractor shall pay the municipality directly for the building permit and all other development "impact" fees, if any. The Contractor shall continue to be responsible for payment of other permits, governmental fees, licenses and inspections necessary for proper execution of the Contract and which are legally required when bids or proposals are received. Such fees and expenses shall only be reimbursable to Contractor if expressly agreed to herein.

Architect shall assist Contractor in obtaining an Occupancy Permit by accompanying governing officials during inspections, including the architectural barrier inspection and correction, of the Project, if requested to do so by the Program Manager or the Owner. Architect shall assist the Contractor in obtaining the Certificate of Occupancy prior to the issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion.

3.7.1.1 The Owner shall pay directly to the governing authority the cost of all permanent property utility assessments and similar connection charges.

3.7.1.2 The Contractor shall pay directly all temporary utility charges, tap charges, and water meter charges, without reimbursement from Owner. After consultation with the Owner, the Contractor shall also obtain all permits and approvals, and pay all fees and expenses, if any, associated with National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (NPDES) regulations administered by the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and local authorities, if applicable, that require completion of documentation and/or acquisition of a "Land Disturbing Activities Permit" for the Project. Also after consultation with the Owner, the Contractor shall obtain all permits and approvals, and pay all fees and expenses, if any, associated with Storm Water Pollution Prevention and Pollution Control Plan (SWPPP) regulations administered by the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (TCEQ) and local authorities. Contractor's obligations under this Section may or may not require it to obtain or perform engineering services during the pre-construction phase to prepare proper drainage for the construction sites. Any drainage alterations made by Contractor during the construction process, which require the issuance of a permit, shall be at Contractor's sole cost. Reimbursable expenses shall not include any fines or penalties assessed against the Contractor, Contractor's subcontractors, the Project, or the Owner.

§ 3.7.2 The Contractor shall comply with and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities applicable to performance of the Work. In addition, Contractor shall authorize posting of any notices required of Owner pursuant to Texas Business and Commerce Code, Section 116.0001, or any notices concerning the Workers Compensation insurance carried by other parties involved in the Project, including without limitation, Architect, at the same location where Contractor posts notices regarding Workers Compensation. If applicable, the Contractor shall procure and obtain all bonds required of the Owner or the Contractor by the municipality in which the Project is located or by any other public or private body with jurisdiction over the Project. In connection with such bonds, the Contractor shall prepare all applications, supply all necessary back-up material, and furnish the surety with any required personal undertakings. The Contractor shall also obtain and pay all charges for all approvals for street closings, traffic control, parking meter removal, and other similar matters as may be necessary or appropriate from time to time for the performance of the Work.

§ 3.7.3 If the Contractor performs Work when Contractor knows or reasonably should have known it to be contrary to applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, the Contract Documents, or lawful orders of public authorities, the Contractor shall assume appropriate responsibility for such Work and shall bear the costs attributable to correction.

§ 3.7.4 ~~[Intentionally deleted] Concealed or Unknown Conditions~~

~~If the Contractor encounters conditions at the site that are (1) subsurface or otherwise concealed physical conditions that differ materially from those indicated in the Contract Documents or (2) unknown physical conditions of an unusual nature that differ materially from those ordinarily found to exist and generally recognized as inherent in construction activities of the character provided for in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall promptly provide notice to the Owner and the Architect before conditions are disturbed and in no event later than three (3) business days after first observance of the conditions. Contractor agrees that this is a reasonable notice requirement. The Architect will promptly investigate such conditions and, if the Architect determines that they differ materially, report findings and a recommended resolution in writing to Owner and Contractor. If Owner's Board of Trustees and Contractor cannot agree on an equitable adjustment to the Contract Sum or Contract Time, then either party may pursue alternative dispute resolution as provided for in Article 15, within ninety (90) days of the Architect's recommendation. If such conditions will cause an increase or decrease in the Contractor's cost of, or time required for, performance of any part of the Work, the Architect will recommend that an equitable adjustment be made in the Contract Sum or Contract Time, or both. If the Architect determines that the conditions at the site are not materially different from those indicated in the Contract Documents and that no change in the terms of the Contract is justified, the Architect shall promptly notify the Owner and Contractor, stating the reasons. If either party disputes the Architect's determination or recommendation, that party may submit a Claim as provided in Article 15.~~

§ 3.7.5 If, in the course of the Work, the Contractor encounters human remains or recognizes the existence of burial markers, archaeological sites or wetlands not indicated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall immediately suspend any operations that would affect them and shall notify the Owner and Architect in writing. Upon receipt of such notice, the Owner shall promptly take any action necessary to obtain governmental authorization required to resume the operations. The Contractor shall continue to suspend such operations until otherwise instructed by the Owner but shall continue with all other operations that do not affect those remains or features. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time arising from the existence of such remains or features may be made as provided in Article 15.

3.7.6 The Contractor shall be responsible for timely notification to and coordination with all utility companies regarding the provision of services to the Project. The Contractor shall inform the Architect and Program ~~at~~Manager at once when the Owner's participation is required, and the Architect shall immediately notify the Owner. Connections for temporary and permanent utilities and payment for temporary utilities services required for the Work, whether the Work is new construction or renovation of an existing facility, are the responsibility of the Contractor unless otherwise agreed. If the Work is new construction, the payment for temporary and/or permanent utility services shall be the responsibility of the Contractor until Substantial Completion.

3.7.6.1 The Owner shall pay directly to the relevant jurisdiction those fees presently called "Storm Water Disposal Fees" to the water and sewage departments. Contractor shall ascertain amounts and advise Architect. Water meter charges shall be paid by the Contractor

## § 3.8 Allowances

§ 3.8.1 The Contractor shall include in the Contract Sum all allowances stated in the Contract Documents. Items covered by allowances shall be supplied for such amounts and by such persons or entities as the Owner may direct, unless required to do so by the terms of the Construction Documents.

§ 3.8.2 Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents,

- .1 allowances shall cover the cost to the Contractor of materials and equipment delivered at the site ~~and all required taxes~~, less applicable trade discounts;
- .2 Contractor's costs for unloading and handling at the site, labor, installation costs, overhead, profit, bonds, insurance, and other expenses contemplated for stated allowance amounts shall be included in the Contract Sum but not in the allowances; and
- .3 whenever costs are more than or less than allowances, the Contract Sum or the Owner's Contingency, at Owner's discretion, unless required to do so by the terms of the Construction Documents, shall be adjusted accordingly ~~by Change Order~~. The amount of the ~~adjustment~~ Change Order shall reflect (1) the difference between actual costs and the allowances under Section 3.8.2.1 and (2) changes in Contractor's costs under Section 3.8.2.2.

§ 3.8.3 Materials and equipment under an allowance shall be selected by the Owner ~~with reasonable promptness, to avoid delay in the Work, provided that if a decision is needed to avoid delay, Contractor shall notify Architect and Program Manager in writing sufficiently in advance of needed date to allow reasonable time for selections to be made~~

3.8.4 When performing Work under allowances, Contractor shall solicit and receive not less than three (3) written proposals and shall provide the Work as directed by the Architect, upon Owner's written approval, on the basis of the best value to the District.

## § 3.9 Superintendent

§ 3.9.1 The Contractor shall employ a competent superintendent and necessary assistants who shall be in attendance at the Project site during performance of the Work. In addition, the Contractor may employ a project manager and necessary assistants who may supervise several Project sites. The superintendent shall represent the Contractor, and communications given to the superintendent shall be as binding as if given to the Contractor. Important communication shall be similarly confirmed in writing. Other communications shall be similarly confirmed on written request in each case. Questions about plan interpretation or directions shall be submitted to the Architect in the form of a written request for information and the Architect shall respond to such request for information in a reasonable and timely fashion. Contractor's selection of project manager or superintendent(s) shall be approved by Owner, and Contractor shall not replace the project manager or superintendent(s) without Owner's consent or until a replacement project manager or superintendent(s) has been selected in accordance with this Section. The Owner may reject or require removal of any job superintendent, project manager, or employee of the Contractor, Subcontractor, or Sub-Subcontractor involved in the Project. Contractor shall provide an adequate staff for the proper coordination and expedition of the Work. Owner reserves the right to require Contractor to dismiss from the Work any employee or employees that Owner may deem incompetent, careless, insubordinate, or in violation of any provision in these Contract Documents. This provision is applicable to Subcontractor, Sub-Subcontractor, and their employees.

§ 3.9.2 ~~The Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall notify the Owner and Architect of the name and qualifications of a proposed superintendent. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Architect may notify the Contractor, stating whether the Owner or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to the proposed superintendent or (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Architect to provide notice within the 14-day period shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection.~~

§ 3.9.3 ~~The Contractor's superintendent shall be present full-time on the site as soon as possible after commencement of the Work, and shall remain assigned to this Work and present on the site during performance of the Work, throughout the course of the Work, until items requiring completion or correction, identified at Substantial Completion pursuant to Section 9.8, have been completed or corrected. From Substantial Completion until Final Completion, the superintendent shall be on the site as necessary to ensure that Final Completion occurs within 30 days of Substantial Completion.~~ not employ a proposed superintendent to whom the Owner or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not change the superintendent without the Owner's consent, which shall not unreasonably be withheld or delayed.

3.9.4 Owner shall be notified not less than 24 hours before any time that superintendent will not be present at the site for any reason except periodic illness. If the reason is due to illness, then Owner shall be notified at the beginning of that day. Owner shall be notified of the identity of the acting superintendent. In the event the superintendent is absent from the site and notice has not been provided nor has an acting superintendent been assigned to the Work, then an amount equal to the superintendent's daily rate shall be deducted for the amount owed to the Contractor under general conditions for such day.

### **§ 3.10 Contractor's Construction and Submittal Schedules**

**§ 3.10.1** The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract, shall prepare for and submit for the Owner's and Architect's information a Contractor's construction schedule for the Work. The schedule shall contain detail appropriate for the Project, including (1) the date of commencement of the Work, interim schedule milestone dates, and the date of Substantial Completion; (2) an apportionment of the Work by construction activity; and (3) the time required for completion of each portion of the Work. The schedule shall provide for the orderly progression of the Work to completion and shall not exceed time limits current under the Contract Documents. The schedule shall be revised at appropriate intervals as required by the conditions of the Work and Project. The schedule shall not interfere with the operation of Owner's existing facilities and operations without Owner's prior written approval.

**3.10.1.2** In the event that the Contractor is entitled to an extension of the Substantial Completion Date or any required interim completion date under the Contract Documents, Owner shall be entitled to direct the acceleration or re-sequencing of the Work in order to achieve the prior scheduled Substantial Completion Date or interim completion dates, and Contractor shall be reimbursed for the amount of the premium portion of overtime actually incurred in respect thereto and shall be entitled to an increase adjustment to the Contract Sum to the extent of the premium portion of overtime so incurred. Before proceeding with any such Owner-directed acceleration plan under this subparagraph, the Contractor shall have received the Owner's prior written approval of the plan and its anticipated not-to-exceed cost.

**§ 3.10.2** The Contractor, promptly after being awarded the Contract and thereafter as necessary to maintain a current submittal schedule, shall prepare and submit a submittal schedule for the Architect's approval. The Architect's approval shall not be unreasonably delayed or withheld. The submittal schedule shall (1) be coordinated with the Contractor's construction schedule, and (2) allow the Architect and Program Manager reasonable time to review submittals. If the Contractor fails to submit a submittal schedule, or fails to provide submittals in accordance with the approved submittal schedule, the Contractor shall not be entitled to any increase in Contract Sum or extension of Contract Time based on the time required for review of submittals.

**§ 3.10.3** The Contractor shall perform the Work in general accordance with the most recent schedules submitted to the Owner and Architect.

**3.10.4** The Contractor shall hold weekly progress meetings at the Project Site, or at such other time and frequency as are acceptable to the Owner. Program Manager shall conduct such meetings; and, shall manage Architect's recording, transcribing and distributing minutes to attendees, Architect, and other appropriate parties. Progress of the Work shall be reported at said meeting with reference to Contractor's construction schedule. The Contractor shall submit to the Architect, with each monthly application for payment, a copy of the progress schedule showing all modifications required, and shall take whatever corrective action is necessary to assure that the project completion schedule is met at no additional cost to Owner, except as allowed herein. In the event that Contractor shall fall behind schedule at any time, Contractor shall develop and deliver a recovery plan to the Owner with a recovery schedule and a program describing the additional manpower, overtime, material expediting, resequencing of the Work, and other steps Contractor shall take to meet the requirements of the Contract. Contractor shall not be entitled to compensation from the Owner or any increase in the Contract Sum for the schedule recovery efforts. No approval or consent by the Owner of any plan for resequencing or acceleration of the Work submitted by Contractor shall constitute a waiver by Owner of any damages or losses which Owner may suffer by reason of such resequencing or the failure of Contractor to meet the Substantial Completion Date or the Final Completion Date.

**3.10.5** The process of approving Contractor's schedules and updates to Contractor's schedule shall not constitute a warranty by the Owner that any non-Contractor milestones or activities will occur as set out on Contractor's schedule. Approval of a Contractor's schedule does not constitute a commitment by the Owner to furnish any Owner-furnished information or material any earlier than Owner would otherwise be obligated to furnish that information or material under the Contract Documents. Failure of the Work to proceed in the sequence scheduled by

Contractor shall not alone serve as the basis for a Claim for additional compensation or time. In the event there is interference with the Work, which is beyond its control, Contractor shall attempt to reschedule the Work in a manner that will hold resulting additional time and costs to a minimum. The construction schedule shall be in a detailed format satisfactory to the Owner, the Architect and Program Manager. If not accepted, the construction schedule shall be promptly revised by the Contractor in accordance with the recommendations of the Owner, Program Manager and Architect and re-submitted for acceptance. The Contractor shall monitor the progress of the Work for conformance with the requirements of the construction schedule and shall promptly advise the Owner of any delays or potential delays. The accepted construction schedule shall be updated to reflect actual conditions (sometimes referred to in these Supplementary Conditions as progress reports) as set forth in Subparagraph 3.10.1 or if requested by either the Owner or the Architect.

**3.10.6** The Owner shall have the right to reschedule the time of day for the performance of any part of the Work that may interfere with the operation of the Owner's premises or any tenants or invitees thereof. The Contractor shall, upon the Owner's request, reschedule any portion of the Work affecting operation of the premises during hours when the premises are not in operation. Any rescheduling of performance of the Work under this Subparagraph 3.10.6 may be grounds for an extension of the Contract Time, if permitted under Subparagraph 8.3.1, and an equitable adjustment in the Contract Sum, if: 1) the performance of the Work was properly scheduled by the Contractor in compliance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, 2) such rescheduling is required for the convenience of the Owner and is not attributable to any act or omission of Contractor.

**3.10.7** The Owner's need for delivery of completed work, or portions thereof, is largely controlled by the necessities of the school calendar and operations of school programs within that calendar. These needs are reflected in any scheduled completion dates and milestone dates set out in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall perform the work in such a way as to not interfere with school operations, the importance of meeting milestones and completion dates, and Contractor acknowledges and agrees that if these dates are not met, there may be a relaxation in the needed delivery dates because of the school calendar. When it appears to Owner or Contractor that a Contract milestone or completion date cannot be met for reasons not the fault of the Contractor, Contractor will develop with the Owner, Program Manager and Architect a plan and a budget under the Change Order provision of the Contract Documents to meet such a situation either (at Owner's option) by accelerating the Work to overcome the delays, or suspending or otherwise slowing the Work to efficiently take advantage of any relaxation in Owner's need for the completed Work.

### **§ 3.11 Documents and Samples at the Site**

The Contractor shall maintain and make available, at all times, at the Project site, the Construction Documents, including Change Orders, Construction Change Directives, field test records (including environmental inspection and test records), inspection certificates or records, manufacturers' certificates, and other Modifications, in good order and marked currently to indicate field changes and selections made during construction, and the approved Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar required submittals. These shall be in electronic form or paper copy, available to the Architect and Owner at all times, and delivered to the Architect for completion of record drawings.

**3.11.2** In addition to any other requirement in the Contract Documents and prior to installation, Contractor shall furnish or cause a subcontractor to furnish for the Owner's and Architect's written approval, a physical sample of each specified item, product, fixture, or device which is visible by the general public and/or attached to an architecturally-finished surface. Samples shall be suitably labeled, adequately protected, and properly stored at the site. Samples which are approved and undamaged will be considered to be suitable for incorporation into the Work.

### **§ 3.12 Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples**

**§ 3.12.1** Shop Drawings are drawings, diagrams, schedules, and other data specially prepared for the Work by the Contractor or a Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor, manufacturer, supplier, or distributor to illustrate some portion of the Work.

**§ 3.12.2** Product Data are illustrations, standard schedules, performance charts, instructions, brochures, diagrams, and other information furnished by the Contractor to illustrate materials or equipment for some portion of the Work.

**§ 3.12.3** Samples are physical examples that illustrate materials, equipment, or workmanship, and establish standards by which the Work will be judged.

§ 3.12.4 Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals are not Contract Documents. The purpose of their submittal is to demonstrate for those portions of the Work for which submittals are required by the Contract Documents and~~Their purpose is to demonstrate~~ how the Contractor proposes to conform to the information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents for those portions of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittals. Review by the Architect is subject to the limitations of Section 4.2.7. Informational submittals upon which the Architect is not expected to take responsive action may be so identified in the Contract Documents. Submittals that are not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action.

§ 3.12.5 The Contractor shall review for compliance with the Contract Documents, approve, and submit to the Architect, Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals required by the Contract Documents, ~~in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule,~~ with reasonable promptness and in such sequence as to cause no delay in the Work or in the activities of the Owner or of Separate Contractors.

§ 3.12.6 By approving and submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and similar submittals, the Contractor represents ~~to the Owner and Architect~~ that the Contractor has ~~(1) reviewed and approved them, (2) determined and verified materials, field measurements and field construction criteria related thereto, or will do so, and (3) checked and coordinated the information contained within such submittals with the requirements of the Work and of the Contract Documents.~~ Specific dimensions, quantities, installation and performance of equipment and systems in compliance with the Construction Documents and the Contract Documents remain the Contractor's responsibility.

§ 3.12.7 The Contractor shall perform no portion of the Work for which the Contract Documents require submittal and review of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, until the respective submittal has been approved by the Architect.

§ 3.12.8 The Work shall be in accordance with approved submittals except that the Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for deviations from the requirements of the Contract Documents by the Architect's approval of Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, unless the Contractor has specifically notified the Architect in writing of such deviation at the time of submittal and (1) the Architect has given written approval to the specific deviation as a minor change in the Work, or (2) a Change Order or Construction Change Directive has been issued authorizing the deviation. The Contractor shall not be relieved of responsibility for errors or omissions in Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, by the Architect's approval thereof.

§ 3.12.9 The Contractor shall direct specific attention, in writing or on resubmitted Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, or similar submittals, to revisions other than those requested by the Architect on previous submittals. In the absence of such written notice, the Architect's approval of a resubmission shall not apply to such revisions.

§ 3.12.10 The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services that constitute the practice of architecture or engineering unless such services are specifically required by the Contract Documents for a portion of the Work or unless the Contractor needs to provide such services in order to carry out the Contractor's responsibilities for construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, and procedures. The Contractor shall not be required to provide professional services in violation of applicable law.

§ 3.12.10.1 If professional design services or certifications by a design professional related to systems, materials, or equipment are specifically required of the Contractor by the Contract Documents, the Owner and the Architect will specify all performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy. ~~The Contractor shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy and accuracy of the performance and design criteria provided in the Contract Documents.~~ The Contractor shall cause such services or certifications to be provided by an appropriately licensed design professional, whose signature and seal shall appear on all drawings, calculations, specifications, certifications, Shop Drawings, and other submittals prepared by such professional. Shop Drawings, and other submittals related to the Work, designed or certified by such professional, if prepared by others, shall bear such professional's written approval when submitted to the Architect. The Owner and the Architect shall be entitled to rely upon the adequacy, completeness, and accuracy of the services, certifications, and approvals performed or provided by such design professionals, ~~provided the Owner and Architect have specified to the Contractor the performance and design criteria that such services must satisfy.~~ Pursuant to this Section 3.12.10, the Architect will review and approve or take other appropriate action on submittals only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Contract Documents. A registered architect must prepare

plans and specifications for all the Work, as governed by the Texas Occupations Code Chapter 1051; and a registered engineer must prepare plans, specifications, and estimates for all Work governed by Texas Occupations Code Chapter 1001. In the event that Contractor retains a licensed design professional under the terms of this paragraph, Contractor shall require that the licensed design professional carry commercial general liability and errors and omissions insurance coverage in the same amounts and forms as required by the Architect on this Project. In the event that the licensed design professional retained by the Contractor will be conducting on-site services or observations, the licensed design professional shall also carry worker's compensation insurance and comprehensive automobile liability in the same amounts and form as required of the Architect to this Project.

**§ 3.12.10.2** If the Contract Documents require the Contractor's design professional to certify that the Work has been performed in accordance with the design criteria, the Contractor shall furnish such certifications to the Architect at the time and in the form specified by the Architect.

**3.12.11** The Contractor shall submit complete drawings, data, and samples to the Architect at least fifteen (15) days prior to the date the Contractor needs the reviewed submittals and samples returned. The Contractor shall be prepared to submit color samples on any key items (such as quarry tile, vinyl wall covering, etc.) within fifteen (15) days of the award of Subcontract(s). All color samples required for the Work shall be received within sixty (60) days of the date of the approval of the Contract Sum, if the Project is an A101 project; or Guaranteed Maximum Price, if the Project is an A133 project. Once samples of all key items are received, the Architect will finalize color selections.

**3.12.12** The Contractor shall submit the number of copies of product data and samples which the Contractor and subcontractors need for their use, plus two (2) additional sets for the Architect, one (1) additional set for the Owner, and one (1) additional set for each of the Architect's consultants involved with the particular section of Work. Where shop drawings are involved, the Contractor shall submit one (1) high quality reproducible transparency, and one (1) opaque print of the shop drawing for the Architect, plus one (1) additional opaque print for each of the Architect's consultants involved with the particular section of Work. The reproducible transparency will be marked by the Architect and/or his consultants. After final review and correction of the submittal, the Contractor shall send one corrected set to the Architect and each of the Architect's consultants involved with the particular section of the Work.

**3.12.13** The Architect's review of Contractor's submittals shall be limited to examination of an initial submittal and one (1) re-submittal. The Architect's review of additional submittals will be made only with the consent of the Owner after notification by the Architect. The Owner shall be entitled to reimbursement from the Contractor of amounts paid to the Architect for evaluation of such additional re-submittals.

**3.1.2.14** The Contractor represents and warrants that all shop drawings shall be prepared by persons and entities possessing expertise and experience in the trade for which the shop drawings are prepared and, if required by the Architect or applicable law, by a licensed engineer.

### **§ 3.13 Use of Site**

**3.13.1** The Contractor shall confine operations at the site to areas permitted by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, lawful orders of public authorities, and the Contract Documents and shall not unreasonably encumber the site with materials or equipment. When the Work is to be performed at an existing school location, Contractor shall schedule and perform the Work in a manner that does not compromise the safety to school students, faculty and staff, and does not unreasonably disrupt or interfere with the continuing normal routine of the school. If a School Operations Parameters Statement is a part of the Contract Documents, Contractor will comply with its terms, at no increase in price.

**3.13.2** Only materials and equipment which are to be used directly in the Work shall be brought to and stored on the Project site by the Contractor. After equipment is no longer required for the Work, it shall be properly removed from the Project site. Protection of construction material and equipment stored at the Project site from weather, theft, damage, and all other adversity is solely the responsibility of the Contractor.

**3.13.3** The Contractor and its subcontractor shall not erect any sign on the Project site without the prior written consent of the Owner.



3.13.4 Contractor shall ensure that the Work, at all times, is performed in a manner that affords Owner reasonable access, both vehicular and pedestrian, to the site of the Work and all adjacent areas. The Work shall be performed in such a manner that the public area adjacent to the Site of the Work shall be free from all debris, building material, and equipment likely to cause hazardous conditions. Without limitation of any other provision of the Construction Documents, Contractor shall use its best efforts to minimize any interference with the occupancy or beneficial use of any area or building adjacent to the site of the Work, or the building, in the event of partial occupancy.

3.13.5 Without prior approval of the Owner, the Contractor shall not permit any workers to use any existing facilities at the Project site, including, without limitation, lavatories, toilets, entrance and parking areas other than those designated by the Owner. The Contractor shall comply with all rules and regulations promulgated by the Owner in connection with the use and occupancy of the Project site and the Building.

#### **§ 3.14 Cutting and Patching**

§ 3.14.1 The Contractor shall be responsible for cutting, fitting, or patching required to complete the Work or to make its parts fit together properly provided, however, that any such cutting, fitting, or patching can only be performed if the cutting, fitting, or patching results in Work that is in accordance with the Construction Documents and Contract Documents. All areas requiring cutting, fitting, or patching shall be restored to the condition existing prior to the cutting, fitting, or patching, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents.

§ 3.14.2 The Contractor shall not damage or endanger a portion of the Work or fully or partially completed construction of the Owner or Separate Contractors by cutting, patching, or otherwise altering such construction, or by excavation. The Contractor shall not cut or otherwise alter construction by the Owner or a Separate Contractor except with written consent of the Owner and of the Separate Contractor. Consent shall not be unreasonably withheld. The Contractor shall not unreasonably withhold, from the Owner or a Separate Contractor, its consent to cutting or otherwise altering the Work.

3.14.3 No cutting of structural elements will be permitted unless specifically approved in writing by Architect. Fitting and patching shall only be done with new products, and shall only be performed by those skilled in performing the original Work.

#### **§ 3.15 Cleaning Up**

§ 3.15.1 The Contractor shall, on a daily basis, keep the premises and surrounding area free from accumulation of waste materials and rubbish caused by operations under the Contract. Contractor shall provide on-site containers for the collection of waste materials, debris and rubbish, and shall periodically remove waste materials, debris and rubbish from the Work and dispose of all such materials at legal disposal areas away from the site. All cleaning operations shall be scheduled so as to ensure that contaminants resulting from the cleaning process will not fall on newly-coated or newly-painted surfaces. Immediately after unpacking materials, all packing case lumber or other packing materials, wrapping or other like flammable waste shall be collected and removed from the building and premises. At completion of the Work, the Contractor shall remove waste materials, rubbish, the Contractor's tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus materials from and about the Project. Care shall be taken by all workers not to mark, soil, or otherwise deface any finish. In the event that any finish becomes defaced in any way by mechanics or workers, the Contractor or any of his Subcontractors shall clean and restore such surfaces to their original condition.

§ 3.15.2 If the Contractor fails to clean up as provided in the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so and the Owner shall be entitled to reimbursement from the cost thereof shall be charged to the Contractor.

3.15.3 The Contractor shall be responsible for the protection of the Work. Prior to the Architect's inspection for Substantial Completion, the Contractor shall clean exterior and interior surfaces exposed to view; remove temporary labels, stains, putty, soil, paint and foreign substances from all surfaces, including glass and painted surfaces; polish transparent and glossy surfaces; clean equipment and fixtures to a sanitary condition; replace air filters in mechanical equipment; clean roofs, gutters, and downspouts; remove obstructions and flush debris from drainage systems; clean site; sweep paved areas, and rake clean other surfaces; remove trash and surplus materials from the site; clean and polish all floors; clean and polish all hardware; and repair all Work damaged during cleaning.

**3.15.4** After construction is complete, Contractor shall: (1) employ skilled workers for final cleaning; (2) remove grease, mastic adhesive, dust, dirt, stains, fingerprints, labels and other foreign materials from all sight-exposed interior and exterior surfaces; (3) wash and shine glazing and mirrors; (4) polish glossy surfaces to a clear shine; (5) vacuum clean carpet and similar soft surfaces; (6) clean (damp mop with clean mop and water) resilient and hard surface floors, repeating as necessary until no visible residue remains on floors; (7) clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition; (8) clean surfaces of all equipment and remove excess lubrication; (9) clean permanent filters and replace disposable filters in ventilating system if units are operated during construction and clean ducts, blowers, and coils; (10) clean light fixtures; (11) remove waste, foreign matter, and debris from roofs, gutters, area ways, and drainage ways; (12) remove waste, debris, and surplus materials from the site; (13) remove stains, spills, and foreign substances from paved areas; and (14) broom clean exterior concrete and paved surfaces, and rake clean the grounds.

### § 3.16 Access to Work

The Contractor shall provide the Owner, Program Manager and Architect and their designated representatives with access to the Work in preparation and progress wherever located. The presence of the Owner, Program Manager or Architect at the Work site does not imply acceptance or approval of the Work. The presence of the Owner, Architect, or their representatives does not constitute acceptance or approval of the Work.

### § 3.17 Royalties, Patents and Copyrights

The Contractor shall pay all royalties and license fees. THE CONTRACTOR SHALL DEFEND SUITS OR CLAIMS FOR INFRINGEMENT OF COPYRIGHTS AND PATENT RIGHTS AND SHALL WAIVE AND RELEASE CLAIMS AGAINST THE OWNER, PROGRAM MANAGER AND ARCHITECT, AND SHALL INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE OWNER AND ARCHITECT HARMLESS FROM LOSS ON ACCOUNT THEREOF, PROVIDED, HOWEVER, CONTRACTOR BUT SHALL NOT BE RESPONSIBLE TO ARCHITECT FOR SUCH DEFENSE OR LOSS WHEN A PARTICULAR DESIGN, PROCESS, OR PRODUCT OF A PARTICULAR MANUFACTURER OR MANUFACTURERS IS REQUIRED BY THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS, OR WHERE THE COPYRIGHT VIOLATIONS ARE CONTAINED IN DRAWINGS, SPECIFICATIONS, OR OTHER DOCUMENTS PREPARED BY THE OWNER OR ARCHITECT, AND SHALL NOT BE RESPONSIBLE TO OWNER IF OWNER REQUIRES A PARTICULAR DESIGN, PROCESS, OR PRODUCT THAT CONSTITUTES A COPYRIGHT VIOLATION. However, if the Contractor has reason to believe that the required design, process, or product is an infringement of a copyright or patent is discovered by, or made known to, the Contractor, the Contractor shall be responsible for thesuch loss unless suchthe information is promptly furnished to the Owner and Architect in writing.

### § 3.18 Indemnification

**§ 3.18.1** TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, THE CONTRACTOR SHALL WAIVE AND RELEASE CLAIMS AGAINST AND SHALL INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE OWNER, ARCHITECT, ARCHITECT'S CONSULTANTS, OWNER'S TRUSTEES, CONSULTANTS, -PROGRAM MANAGER, AND OFFICERS, AGENTS AND EMPLOYEES OF ANY OF THEM FROM AND AGAINST CLAIMS, DAMAGES, LOSSES, CAUSES OF ACTION, SUITS, JUDGMENTS AND EXPENSES, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ATTORNEYS' FEES, ARISING OUT OF OR RESULTING FROM PERFORMANCE OF THE WORK, PROVIDED THAT SUCH CLAIM, DAMAGE, LOSS, OR EXPENSE IS ATTRIBUTABLE TO BODILY INJURY, SICKNESS, DISEASE OR DEATH, OR TO INJURY TO OR DESTRUCTION OF TANGIBLE PROPERTY (INCLUDING THE WORK ITSELF), INCLUDING LOSS OF USE RESULTING THEREFROM, BUT ONLY TO THE EXTENT CAUSED IN WHOLE OR IN PART BY THE WILLFUL OR NEGLIGENT ACTS OR OMISSIONS OF THE CONTRACTOR, A SUBCONTRACTOR, ANYONE DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY EMPLOYED BY THEM, ANYONE THEY CONTROL OR EXERCISE CONTROL OVER OR ANYONE FOR WHOSE ACTS THEY MAY BE LIABLE, REGARDLESS OF WHETHER OR NOT SUCH CLAIM, DAMAGE, LOSS, OR EXPENSE IS CAUSED IN PART BY A PARTY BY ANY WILLFUL OR NEGLIGENT ACTS OR OMISSIONS OF OWNER OR OWNER'S CONSULTANTS OR OTHER INDEMNIFIED PARTIES. SUCH OBLIGATION SHALL NOT BE CONSTRUED TO NEGATE, ABRIDGE, OR REDUCE OTHER RIGHTS OR OBLIGATIONS OF INDEMNITY THAT WOULD OTHERWISE EXIST AS TO A PARTY OR PERSON DESCRIBED IN THIS SECTION 3.18. ALL COSTS AND EXPENSES SO INCURRED BY ANY OF THE INDEMNIFIED PARTIES IN THAT EVENT SHALL BE REIMBURSED BY CONTRACTOR TO THE INDEMNIFIED PARTIES, AND ANY COST AND EXPENSES SO INCURRED BY INDEMNIFIED PARTIES SHALL BEAR INTEREST UNTIL REIMBURSED BY CONTRACTOR, AT THE RATE OF INTEREST PROVIDED TO BE PAID BY THE JUDGMENT UNDER THE LAWS OF THE STATE OF TEXAS.

3.18.2 IN CLAIMS AGAINST ANY PERSON OR ENTITY INDEMNIFIED UNDER THIS SECTION 3.18 BY AN EMPLOYEE OF THE CONTRACTOR, A SUBCONTRACTOR, ANYONE DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY EMPLOYED BY THEM, OR ANYONE FOR WHOSE ACTS THEY MAY BE LIABLE, THE INDEMNIFICATION OBLIGATION UNDER SECTION 3.18.1 SHALL NOT BE LIMITED BY A LIMITATION ON AMOUNT OR TYPE OF DAMAGES, COMPENSATION, OR BENEFITS PAYABLE BY OR FOR THE CONTRACTOR OR A SUBCONTRACTOR UNDER INSURANCE POLICIES, WORKERS' COMPENSATION ACTS, DISABILITY BENEFIT ACTS, OR OTHER EMPLOYEE BENEFIT ACTS.

3.18.3 THE OBLIGATIONS OF THE CONTRACTOR UNDER THIS SECTION 3.18 SHALL NOT EXTEND TO THE LIABILITY OF THE ARCHITECT, THE ARCHITECT'S CONSULTANTS, AND AGENTS, AND EMPLOYEES OF ANY OF THEM, CAUSED BY OR RESULTING FROM: (1) DEFECTS IN PLANS, DESIGNS, OR SPECIFICATIONS PREPARED, APPROVED, OR USED BY THE ARCHITECT OR ENGINEER; OR (2) NEGLIGENCE OF THE ARCHITECT OR ENGINEER IN THE RENDITION OR CONDUCT OF PROFESSIONAL DUTIES CALLED FOR OR ARISING OUT OF THE CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT AND THE PLANS, DESIGNS, OR SPECIFICATIONS THAT ARE A PART OF THE CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT; AND (3) ARISING FROM: (A) PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH; (B) PROPERTY DAMAGE; OR (C) ANY OTHER EXPENSES THAT ARISE FROM PERSONAL INJURY, DEATH, OR PROPERTY DAMAGE OR AS OTHERWISE LIMITED BY TEXAS CIVIL PRACTICE & REMEDIES CODE SECTION 130.001 ET SEQ.

3.18.4 THE OWNER MAY CAUSE ANY OTHER CONTRACTOR WHO MAY HAVE A CONTRACT WITH THE OWNER TO PERFORM CONSTRUCTION OR INSTALLATION WORK IN THE AREAS WHERE WORK WILL BE PERFORMED UNDER THIS AGREEMENT, TO AGREE TO INDEMNIFY AND TO HOLD THE OWNER AND THE CONTRACTOR HARMLESS FROM ALL CLAIMS FOR BODILY INJURY AND PROPERTY DAMAGE TO THE SAME EXTENT AS IS PROVIDED IN SECTION 3.18.1 ABOVE. LIKEWISE, CONTRACTOR AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND TO HOLD THE OWNER'S OTHER CONTRACTORS HARMLESS FROM ALL CLAIMS FOR BODILY INJURY AND PROPERTY DAMAGE TO THE SAME EXTENT AS PROVIDED IN SECTION 3.18.1 ABOVE.

3.18.5 THE PROVISIONS OF SECTION 3.18 IN ITS ENTIRETY SHALL SURVIVE THE COMPLETION, TERMINATION, OR EXPIRATION OF THIS CONTRACT.

3.18.6 It is agreed with respect to any legal limitations now or hereafter in effect and affecting the validity or enforceability of the indemnification obligations under Paragraph 3.18, such legal limitations are made a part of the indemnification obligation and shall operate to amend the indemnification obligation to the minimum extent necessary to bring the provision into conformity with the requirements of such limitations, and as so modified, the indemnification obligations shall continue in full force and effect.

3.18.7 It is understood and agreed that Subparagraph 3.18.1 above is subject to, and expressly limited by, the terms and conditions of Texas Civ. Prac. & Rem. Code Ann. Sec. 130.001 to 130.005, as amended.

3.18.8 THE OWNER MAY CAUSE ANY OTHER CONTRACTOR WHO MAY HAVE A CONTRACT WITH THE OWNER TO PERFORM CONSTRUCTION OR INSTALLATION WORK IN THE AREAS WHERE WORK WILL BE PERFORMED UNDER THIS AGREEMENT, TO AGREE TO INDEMNIFY AND TO HOLD THE OWNER AND THE CONTRACTOR HARMLESS FROM ALL CLAIMS ATTRIBUTABLE TO BODILY INJURY, SICKNESS, DISEASE, OR DEATH OR TO INJURY TO, OR DESTRUCTION OF TANGIBLE PROPERTY (INCLUDING THE WORK ITSELF) INCLUDING LOSS OF USE, TO THE SAME EXTENT AS PROVIDED IN SUBPARAGRAPH 3.18.1 ABOVE.

3.19 ANTITRUST VIOLATION. To permit the Owner to recover damages suffered in antitrust violations, Contractor hereby assigns to Owner any and all claims for overcharges associated with this Contract which violate the antitrust laws of the United States, 15 U.S.C.A. Section 1 *et seq.* The Contractor shall include this provision in its agreements with each subcontractor and supplier. Each subcontractor shall include such provisions in agreements with sub-subcontractors and suppliers.

## ARTICLE 4 ARCHITECT

### § 4.1 General

§ 4.1.1 The Architect is the person or entity retained by the Owner pursuant to Section 2.3.2 and identified as such in the Agreement Contract.

§ 4.1.2 Owner shall notify Contractor when the duties, responsibilities or limitation of authority of the Architect have been modified

4.1.3 Except as expressly provided herein, the Contractor shall not be relieved of Contractor's obligation to perform the Work in strict accordance with the Construction Documents and the Contract Documents by the duties, responsibilities, or activities of the Architect.

### § 4.2 Administration of the Contract

§ 4.2.1 Certain portions of the administration of the Contract will be performed by the Architect, others by the Program Manager. Both the Architect and the Program Manager will be treated as the Owner's representatives to the extent set out in the Contract Documents. Neither the Architect nor the Program Manager shall have the authority to act on behalf of the Owner only to the extent provided in the Contract Documents. Owner unless such authority is expressly granted in the Contract Documents, nor shall such authority be implied from any act or representation of the Architect or Program Manager. The Architect will provide administration of the Contract as described in the Contract Documents and will be an Owner's representative during construction, until the date the Architect issues the final Certificate for Payment. This period shall extend until payment is due, and, with the Owner's concurrence, from time to time during the one-year period for correction of Work described in Section 12.2.2 Certificate for Payment. The Architect will have authority to act on behalf of the Owner only to the extent provided in the Contract Documents, or as they may be amended in the future.

§ 4.2.2 The Architect, as a representative of the Owner, will shall visit the site at least twice per week (or more per week when deemed necessary by the Owner's Superintendent or when necessary to protect Owner's interests) and at any other intervals appropriate to the stage of construction, to inspect or as otherwise agreed with the Owner, to become generally familiar with the progress, and quantity and quality of the portion of the Work completed, to reject any observed nonconforming Work, and to determine in general if the Work observed is being performed in a manner indicating that the Work, when fully completed, will be in accordance with the Construction Documents and the Contract Documents and on time. Furthermore, a minimum of two job site meetings per month from commencement of construction through Final Completion will be initiated by the Architect and attended by the Contractor. Attendees will include Owner, the Contractor's project manager and/or superintendent, Architect's project representative, and Architect. The Architect, Owner and their representatives shall at all times have access to the Work. Architect, or its structural consultant will provide on-site observation prior to and during all concrete pours that contribute to the structural integrity of the building, including all pours of concrete piers, footings, grade beams, floor slabs, and concrete superstructure components, if applicable. In addition, Architect or its structural consultant will provide on-site observation prior to covering up or closing up of portions of the construction, which if covered, would conceal problems with the structural integrity of the Project. Contractor shall not close or cover said Work until said observations have occurred. Contractor or Architect will advise Owner of the need for any third party laboratory or testing services to assist the Architect and Owner. On the basis of the on-site observations by Architect, Architect shall keep Owner and Contractor informed of the progress and the quality of the Work, through Architect's field reports, and shall guard Owner against defects and deficiencies in the Work. Architect shall promptly notify Owner and Contractor, orally, regarding any defect or nonconforming Work, which shall be followed by notice in writing of defects or nonconforming Work noted and corrective action taken or recommended. However, the Architect will not be required to make exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work. The Architect, however, will shall not have control over, charge of, or responsibility for the Contractor's construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures, or for the safety precautions and programs, but this does not relieve Architect of Architect's responsibilities under this Contract. Any services by Contractor made necessary by Contractor's construction defect or nonconforming Work, shall be performed at no additional cost to Owner in connection with the Work, since these are solely the Contractor's rights and responsibilities under the Contract Documents.

§ 4.2.3 On the basis of the site visits, the Architect will keep the Owner reasonably informed about the progress and quality of the portion of the Work completed, and promptly report to the Owner (1) known deviations from the Contract Documents, (2) known deviations from the most recent construction schedule submitted by the Contractor, and (3) defects and deficiencies observed in the Work. The Architect will not be responsible for the Contractor's

failure to perform the Work in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents. The Architect will not have control over or charge of, and will not be responsible for acts or omissions of, the Contractor, Subcontractors, or their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work. The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for compensation paid to the Architect for additional site visits made necessary by the fault, neglect, or request of the Contractor.

#### § 4.2.4 Communications

~~Except as otherwise provided in the Contract Documents or when direct communications have been specially authorized, The Owner and Contractor shall endeavor to communicate with each other through the Architect about matters arising out of or relating to the Contract. However, Owner reserves the right to communicate directly with Contractor and Subcontractors include the Architect in all communications that relate to or affect the Architect's services or professional responsibilities. The Owner shall promptly notify the Architect of the substance of any direct communications between the Owner and the Contractor otherwise relating to the Project. Communications by and with the Architect's consultants shall be through the Architect. Communications by and with Subcontractors and suppliers shall be through the Contractor. Communications by and with Separate Contractors shall be through the Owner. The Contract Documents may specify other communication protocols.~~

§ 4.2.5 As further provided in the Contract Documents, Bbased on the Architect's evaluations of the Contractor's Applications for Payment, the Architect will review and certify the amounts due the Contractor and will issue Certificates for Payment in such amounts.

§ 4.2.6 The Architect ~~has authority to shall~~ reject Work that does not conform to the Construction Documents and the Contract Documents. Whenever the Architect considers it necessary or advisable, the Architect will ~~have~~recommend to Owner additional authority to require inspection or testing of the Work in accordance with Sections 13.4.2 and 13.4.3 the provision of the Contract Documents, whether or not the Work is fabricated, installed or completed. However, neither this authority of the Architect nor a decision made in good faith either to exercise or not to exercise such authority shall give rise to a duty or responsibility of the Architect or the Owner to the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, their agents or employees, or other persons or entities performing portions of the Work. Architect and/or Contractor shall promptly notify, orally and in writing, the other party and Owner of any fault or defect in the Project or nonconformance with Construction Documents or the Contract Documents they may respectively discover, and each, upon discovery of the defect or nonconformance, shall be responsible for notifying the other party and Owner of those corrective actions they respectively take; provided, however, Contractor shall have no duty to notify Owner of discoveries made or actions taken by Architect. Testing or inspection required by this subparagraph shall be conducted subject to the requirements of Chapter 2269 of the Texas Government Code.

§ 4.2.7 The Architect will review and approve, or take other appropriate action upon, the Contractor's submittals such as Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples, but only for the limited purpose of checking for conformance with information given and the design concept expressed in the Construction Documents and the Contract Documents. The Architect's action will be taken ~~in accordance with the submittal schedule approved by the Architect or, in the absence of an approved submittal schedule, with~~ reasonable promptness as to cause no delay in the Work or in the activities of the Owner, Contractor, or Separate Contractors, while allowing sufficient time in the Architect's professional judgment to permit adequate review. Review of such submittals is not conducted for the purpose of determining the accuracy and completeness of other details such as dimensions and quantities, or for substantiating instructions for installation ~~or performance~~ of equipment or systems, ~~all of which remain~~ the responsibility of the Contractor as required by the Construction Documents and the Contract Documents. The Architect's review of the Contractor's submittals shall not relieve the Contractor of the obligations under Sections 3.3, 3.5, and 3.12. The Architect's review shall not constitute approval of safety precautions or, unless otherwise specifically stated by the Architect, of any construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures. The Architect's approval of a specific item shall not indicate approval of an assembly of which the item is a component. If any submittal does not comply with the requirements of the Construction Documents or the Contract Documents, then Architect shall require Contractor to come into compliance. The Architect shall promptly report, in writing, to the Contractor, Program Manager and Owner any errors, inconsistencies, and omissions discovered by the Architect in the Shop Drawings, Product Data, and Samples.

§ 4.2.8 The Architect ~~will~~shall review, prepare, and make recommendations to Owner regarding all Change Orders and Construction Change Directives for the Owner's approval and execution in accordance with the Construction Documents and the Contract Documents, accompanied by all supporting documentation. The Architect, and may order ~~authorize~~ minor changes in the Work not involving any adjustment in Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum

Price, or an extension of the Contract Time which are consistent with the intent of the Contract Documents. If necessary, the Architect shall prepare, reproduce, and distribute Drawings and Specifications to describe Work to be added, deleted, or modified, as provided in Section 7.4. The Architect shall accept requests by the Owner, and Owner shall review properly prepared, timely requests by the Contractor for change in the Work, including adjustments to the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, or Contract Time. A properly prepared request for a change in the Work by the Contractor shall be accompanied by sufficient supporting data and information to permit the Architect will investigate and to make a reasonable determination, without extensive investigation or preparation of additional drawings or specifications. If the Architect determines that requested changes in the Work are not materially different from the requirements of the Construction Documents or the Contract Documents, and do not change the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, or Contract Time, then the Architect may issue an order for a minor change in the Work, with prior written notice to the Owner or recommend to the Owner that the requested change be denied. The Architect is not authorized to approve changes involving major system such as: Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning (“HVAC”); roof, foundation; outward appearance, color scheme, floor plans, building materials; drainage or mechanical equipment with Owner’s prior written consent and recommendations regarding concealed and unknown conditions as provided in Section 3.7.4.

§ 4.2.9 The Architect will conduct inspections to determine the date or dates of Substantial Completion and the date of final completion; ~~issue Certificates of Substantial Completion pursuant to Section 9.8; will~~ receive and forward to the Owner, for the Owner’s review and records, written warranties and related documents required by the Contract and assembled by the Contractor ~~pursuant to Section 9.10; and will~~ issue a final Certificate for Payment ~~pursuant to Section 9.10~~ upon compliance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

§ 4.2.10 If the Owner and Architect agree, the Architect will provide one or more Project representatives to assist in carrying out the Architect’s responsibilities at the site. The Owner shall notify the Contractor of any change in the duties, responsibilities and limitations of authority of the ~~Project representatives~~ Architect have been modified.

§ 4.2.11 The Architect will interpret and ~~decide matters~~ make recommendations concerning performance under, and requirements of, the Contract Documents on written request of either the Owner or Contractor. The Architect’s response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness. If no agreement is made concerning the time within which interpretations required of the Architect shall be furnished in compliance with this Paragraph 4.2, then delay shall not be recognized on account of failure by the Architect to furnish such interpretations until 15 days after written request is made for them.

§ 4.2.12 Interpretations ~~and decisions~~ or recommendations of the Architect will be consistent with the intent of, and reasonably inferable from, the Contract Documents and will be in writing or in the form of drawings. When making such interpretations and ~~decisions~~ recommendations, the Architect will endeavor to secure faithful performance by both Owner and Contractor, ~~will not show partiality to either, and will not be liable for results of interpretations or decisions rendered in good faith.~~

§ 4.2.13 The ~~Architect’s~~ Owner’s decisions on matters relating to aesthetic effect ~~wish~~ shall be final ~~if consistent with the intent expressed in the Contract Documents.~~

§ 4.2.14 The Architect will review and respond to requests for information about the Construction Documents and the Contract Documents. The Architect’s response to such requests will be made in writing within any time limits agreed upon or otherwise with reasonable promptness. If appropriate, the Architect will prepare and issue supplemental Drawings and Specifications in response to the requests for information, at no additional cost to the Owner.

## ARTICLE 5 SUBCONTRACTORS

### § 5.1 Definitions

§ 5.1.1 A Subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct contract with the Contractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term “Subcontractor” is referred to throughout the Contract Documents as if singular in number and means a Subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Subcontractor. The term “Subcontractor” does not include a Separate Contractor or the subcontractors of a Separate Contractor.

§ 5.1.2 A Sub-subcontractor is a person or entity who has a direct or indirect contract with a Subcontractor to perform a portion of the Work at the site. The term “Sub-subcontractor” is referred to throughout the Contract

Documents as if singular in number and means a Sub-subcontractor or an authorized representative of the Sub-subcontractor.

## § 5.2 Award of Subcontracts and Other Contracts for Portions of the Work

§ 5.2.1 Unless otherwise stated in the Contract Documents, the Contractor, as soon as practicable after award of the Contract, shall notify the Owner, ~~and Architect~~ and Program Manager, in writing, of the persons or entities proposed for each principal portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish materials or equipment fabricated to a special design. Within 14 days of receipt of the information, the Architect ~~may~~ Program Manager shall notify, in writing, the Contractor whether the Owner or the Architect (1) has reasonable objection to any such proposed person or entity or (2) requires additional time for review. Failure of the Owner or Architect to provide notice ~~within the 14 day period~~ promptly shall constitute notice of no reasonable objection. All subcontractors shall be procured in accordance with Texas Education Code Chapter 44, Subchapter B, and Texas Government Code Chapter 2269, as applicable. A notice of no reasonable objection shall in no way relieve the Contractor from full responsibility for performance and completion of the Work and its obligations under the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall be fully responsible for the performance of its subcontractors, including those recommended or approved by the Owner.

§ 5.2.2 The Contractor shall not contract with a proposed person or entity to whom the Owner, Program Manager or Architect has made reasonable and timely objection. The Contractor shall not be required to contract with anyone to whom the Contractor has made reasonable objection.

§ 5.2.3 If the Owner, Program Manager or Architect has reasonable objection to a person or entity proposed by the Contractor, the Contractor shall propose another to whom the Owner or Architect has no reasonable objection. When ~~if~~ the parties agree on a proposed substitute but rejected Subcontractor was reasonably capable of performing the Work, then the Contract Sum and Contract Time ~~shall~~ may be increased or decreased by the difference, if any, occasioned by such change, and an appropriate Change Order shall be issued before commencement of the substitute Subcontractor's Work. However, no increase in the Contract Sum or Contract Time shall be allowed for such change unless the Contractor has acted promptly and responsively in submitting names as required.

§ 5.2.4 The Contractor shall not change a Subcontractor, person, or entity for one previously selected if the Owner or Architect makes reasonable objection to such substitute.

5.2.5 Each Contractor or Subcontractor shall be required to completely familiarize itself with the plans and specifications, to visit the Work site to completely familiarize itself with existing conditions, and to conduct any other appropriate investigations, inspections, or inquiries prior to submission of a bid or proposal. No increases in Contract Sums or Guaranteed Maximum Price shall be allowed for failure to so inspect or investigate.

The Contractor shall disclose to the Owner any ownership interest or affiliation between the Contractor and any potential subcontractor prior to entering into a subcontract and the Owner shall have the right, in its sole discretion and pursuant to 5.2.3., to reject any such affiliated subcontractor. Further, Contractor shall not subcontract the work as a whole.

The approval of Subcontractors in no way relieves the Contractor from full responsibility for performance and completion of the Work and its obligations under the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall be fully responsible for the performance of its Subcontractors, including those recommended or approved by the Owner

5.2.6 The Contractor agrees to utilize Subcontractors that are historically underutilized businesses in accordance with the Minority and Women Owned Business Enterprise (M/WBE) forms and guidelines attached hereto as Exhibit "C".

No changes to the Plan may be made unless approved in writing by the Owner. The Contractor, prior to the execution of this Contract, shall report their M/WBE participation goal as a percent of the Contract Sum. During the performance of all Work under this AgreementContract, the Contractor and its agents shall comply with all M/WBE policies of the Owner. The information shall be identified per firm, discipline and participation. While this AgreementContract is in effect and until the expiration of one year after final completion, the Owner may require information from the Contractor, and may conduct audits, to assure that the Plan is being, and was, followed.. With each Contractor's application for payment, the Contractor shall report their updated M/WBE Plan and actual M/WBE participation information.

5.2.7 Contractor shall promptly notify the Owner, Architect and Program Manager of any material defaults by any subcontractor

### **§ 5.3 Subcontractual Relations**

By appropriate written agreement, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor, to the extent of the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor, to be bound to the Contractor by terms of the Contract Documents, and to assume toward the Contractor all the obligations and responsibilities, including the responsibility for safety of the Subcontractor's Work that the Contractor, by these Contract Documents, assumes toward the Owner and Architect. The terms and conditions of the Contract Documents shall be incorporated by reference into each subcontract agreement, included as provided below. Each subcontract agreement shall preserve and protect the rights of the Owner and Architect under the Contract Documents with respect to the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor so that subcontracting thereof will not prejudice such rights. Where appropriate, the Contractor shall require each Subcontractor to enter into similar agreements with Sub-subcontractors. The Contractor shall make available to each proposed Subcontractor, prior to the execution of the subcontract agreement, copies of the Contract Documents to which the Subcontractor will be bound, and, upon written request of the Subcontractor, identify to the Subcontractor terms and conditions of the proposed subcontract agreement that may be at variance with the Contract Documents. Subcontractors will similarly make copies of applicable portions of such documents available to their respective proposed Sub-subcontractors. Each subcontractor shall provide proof of insurance to Contractor consistent with the Contractor's insurance to Owner and in an amount commensurate with the Work to be performed by the Subcontractor.

5.3.2 Neither the Owner nor the Architect shall be obligated to pay or to ensure the payment of any monies to subcontractors due to any non-payment to the Contractor or non-payment of subcontractors by the Contractor.

5.3.3 The Contractor shall require any potential subcontractor to disclose to the Contractor any ownership interest or familial relationship between the Contractor, the Architect, or the Owner, and the potential subcontractor prior to entering into a subcontract. Contractor shall report to Owner all such disclosures and the Owner shall have the right, in its sole discretion, to reject any such affiliated subcontractor.

### **§ 5.4 Contingent Assignment of Subcontracts**

**§ 5.4.1** Each subcontract agreement for any unperformed portion of the Work is assigned by the Contractor to the Owner, provided that

- .1 assignment is effective only after termination of the Contract by the Owner for cause pursuant to Section/Article 14.2 or abandonment of the Project by the Contractor; and only for those subcontract agreements that the Owner accepts by notifying the Subcontractor and Contractor in writing; and
- .2 assignment is subject to the prior rights and obligations of the surety, if any, obligated under bond relating to the Contract; and
- .3 The Subcontractor provides bonds as required by law of prime contractors and by Owner.

When the Owner accepts the assignment of a subcontract agreement, the Owner assumes the Contractor's rights and obligations under the subcontract.

**§ 5.4.2** Upon sSuch assignment shall not constitute a waiver by Owner of its rights against Contractor, including, but not limited to, claims for defaults, delays or defects for which a subcontractor or material vendor may also be liable; if the Work has been suspended for more than 30 days, the Subcontractor's compensation shall be equitably adjusted for increases in cost resulting from the suspension.

**§ 5.4.3** Upon assignment to the Owner under this Section 5.4, the Owner may further assign the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity. If the Owner shall only be assigns the subcontract to a successor contractor or other entity, the Owner shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for compensating subcontractors for Work performed or materials furnished from and after the date on which the Owner gives written notice of its acceptance of the subcontract agreement. Owner shall not be responsible for any Work performed or materials furnished by subcontractors prior to the date of Owner's written notice of acceptance, all of the successor contractor's obligations under the subcontract.

**5.4.4** Each subcontract shall specifically provide that the Owner shall only be responsible to the Subcontractor after written notice for undisputed amounts not previously paid to Contractor subsequent to the Owner's exercise of any rights under this conditional assignment.



5.4.5 Contractor shall be fully responsible for the performance of its Subcontractors, including those selected or approved by the Owner

### **5.5 NOTICE OF SUBCONTRACTOR DEFAULT**

Contractor shall promptly notify Owner and Architect of any material defaults by any Subcontractor or Sub-subcontractor. Notwithstanding any provision contained in Article 5 to the contrary, it is hereby acknowledged and agreed that Owner has in no way agreed, expressly or implicitly, nor will Owner agree, to allow any Subcontractor, Sub-subcontractor or other materialman or worker employed by Contractor the right to obtain a personal judgment or to create a mechanic's or materialman's lien against Owner for the amount due from the Owner or the Contractor.

## **ARTICLE 6 CONSTRUCTION BY OWNER OR BY SEPARATE CONTRACTORS**

### **§ 6.1 Owner's Right to Perform Construction and to Award Separate Contracts**

**§ 6.1.1** The term "Separate Contractor(s)" shall mean other contractors retained by the Owner under separate agreements. The Owner reserves the right to perform construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces, and with Separate Contractors retained under Conditions of the Contract substantially similar to those of this Contract, including those provisions of the Conditions of the Contract related to insurance and waiver of subrogation. The Owner reserves the right to perform other non-Project-related construction work, maintenance and repair work, and school program operations at the site and near the site during the time period of the Work. Owner shall have access to the building on the site at all times.

**§ 6.1.2** When separate contracts are awarded for different portions of the Project or other construction or operations on the site, the term "Contractor" in the Contract Documents in each case shall mean the Contractor who executes each separate Owner-Contractor ~~Agreement~~Contract.

**§ 6.1.3** The ~~Owner-Contractor~~ shall ~~provide for~~ provide for coordination of the activities of the Owner's own forces and of each Separate Contractor with the Work of the Contractor ~~to ensure that the Work remains on schedule, who shall cooperate with them.~~ The Contractor shall participate with any Separate Contractors and the Owner in reviewing their construction schedules. The Contractor shall make any revisions to its construction schedule deemed necessary after a joint review and mutual agreement between the Owner and Contractor. The construction schedules shall then constitute the schedules to be used by the Contractor, Separate Contractors, and the Owner until subsequently revised.

**§ 6.1.4** It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to assist, review, coordinate, and schedule work performed by any of Owner's separate contractors including the hazardous materials abatement contractor. Contractor shall not be required to contract directly with the hazardous materials abatement contractor or Owner's separate contractor's however, Contractor shall coordinate all aspects of the hazardous materials abatement contractor's and Owner's separate contractor's work, including required monitoring, testing and inspections by independent firms, with the Work under this AgreementContract. The Contractor shall be totally responsible for coordination between its Subcontractors and the hazardous materials abatement contractor and any other Owner's separate contractors. Contractor will cooperate with the Owner to allow site access and staging areas for hazardous materials abatement contractor and Owner's separate contractors and consultants. Contractor shall review Owner's contract with the hazardous materials abatement contractor and Owner's separate contractors and become familiar with the requirements and scope of services contained therein. Contractor shall continually review the work performed by the hazardous materials abatement contractor and Owner's separate contractors and immediately notify the Owner and Program Manager if at any time during the performance of Contractor's work, the hazardous materials abatement contractor or any of Owner's separate contractors fail, in any way, to provide sufficient, competent manpower or timely perform its services. In addition, the Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating and providing all construction administration necessary for the Work and the work of the hazardous materials abatement contractor and any of Owner's separate contractors. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, when the Owner performs construction or operations related to the Project with the Owner's own forces or with Separate Contractors, the Owner or its Separate Contractors shall have the same obligations and rights that the Contractor has under the Conditions of the Contract, including, without excluding others, those stated in Article 3, this Article 6, and Articles 10, 11, and 12.

### **§ 6.2 MutualContractor's Responsibility**

**§ 6.2.1** It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to assist, review, and coordinate the scheduling of work performed by any of the Owner's Separate Contractors including the hazardous materials abatement contractor.

Contractor shall not be required to contract directly with the hazardous materials abatement contractor or Owner's separate contractor's however, Contractor shall coordinate all aspects of the hazardous materials abatement contractor's and Owner's separate contractor's work, including required monitoring, testing and inspections by independent firms, with the Work under this AgreementContract. The Contractor shall be totally responsible for coordination between its Subcontractors and the hazardous materials abatement contractor and any other Owner's separate contractors. Contractor will cooperate with the Owner to allow site access and staging areas for hazardous materials abatement contractor and Owner's separate contractors and consultants. Contractor shall review Owner's contract with the hazardous materials abatement contractor and Owner's separate contractors and become familiar with the requirements and scope of services contained therein. Contractor shall continually review the work performed by the hazardous materials abatement contractor and Owner's separate contractors and immediately notify the Owner and Program Manager if at any time during the performance of Contractor's work, the hazardous materials abatement contractor or any of Owner's separate contractors fail, in any way, to provide sufficient, competent manpower or timely perform its services In addition, the Contractor shall be responsible for coordinating and providing all construction administration necessary for the Work and the work of any of Owner's Separate Contractors. The Contractor shall afford the Owner and Separate Contractors reasonable opportunity for introduction and storage of their materials and equipment and performance of their activities, and shall connect and coordinate the Contractor's construction and operations with theirs as required by the Contract Documents. Contractor shall be responsible for coordination between Contractor's subcontractors and Owner's Separate Contractors. Contractor shall review Owner's contract with Owner's Separate Contractors and become familiar with the requirements and scope of services contained therein.

**§ 6.2.2** If part of the Contractor's Work depends for proper execution or results upon construction or operations by the Owner or a Separate Contractor, the Contractor shall, prior to proceeding with that portion of the Work, promptly notify, in writing, the Architect and Owner of apparent discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor that would render it unsuitable for proper execution and results of the Contractor's Work, and shall promptly report, in writing, to the Architect and Owner if Owner's Separate Contractors fail in any way to timely perform their services or negatively impact Contractor's schedule or ability to perform the Work. Failure of the Contractor to notify, in writing, the Architect and Owner of apparent discrepancies or defects prior to proceeding with the Work shall constitute an acknowledgment that the Owner's or Separate Contractor's completed or partially completed construction is fit and proper, and is performed in a timely manner, to receive the Contractor's Work. The Contractor shall not be responsible for latent discrepancies or defects in the construction or operations by the Owner or Separate Contractor ~~that are not apparent.~~

**§ 6.2.3** The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for costs the Owner incurs that are payable to a Separate Contractor because of the Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities or defective construction. ~~The Owner shall be responsible to the Contractor for costs the Contractor incurs because of a Separate Contractor's delays, improperly timed activities, damage to the Work or defective construction.~~

**6.2.3.1** If the Architect or Program Manager is required to provide additional services, as provided in the Contract between the Owner or Program Manager -and the Architect, specifically relating to additional compensation for the Architect for evaluating an excessive number of claims submitted by the Contractor or others in connection with the Work in accordance with Owner's Contract with the Architect, then such services shall be paid for by the Contractor through the Owner, unless the additional services result from negligence of or an omission by the Architect and Program Manager.-

**6.2.3.2** If the Architect provides services in connection with a legal proceeding, except when the Architect is a party thereto, and the Owner requests the Architect, in writing, to provide such services, then the cost of such services shall be paid for by the party whose act or omission was a proximate cause of the problem that led to the requirement to provide such services. Such services shall be paid for by such party through Owner, who upon receipt of same shall reimburse the Architect.

**6.2.3.3** All construction costs resulting from the Contractor's negligence, lack of oversight, inattention to details, failure to investigate, or failure to follow the Construction Documents or Contract Documents, will be borne by the Contractor.

**§ 6.2.4** The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage wrongfully caused by ~~that~~ the Contractor wrongfully causes ~~to~~ completed or partially completed construction or to property of the Owner or Separate Contractor as provided in Section 10.2.5.

§ 6.2.5 The Owner and each Separate Contractor shall have the same responsibilities for cutting and patching as are described for the Contractor in Section 3.14.

### § 6.3 Owner's Right to Clean Up

If a dispute arises among the Contractor, Separate Contractors, and the Owner as to the responsibility under their respective contracts for maintaining the premises and surrounding area free from waste materials and rubbish, the Owner may clean up and the ~~Owner/Architect~~ will allocate the cost among those responsible.

6.3.1 Job site cleanup will be performed on a daily basis. The Owner and/or Program Manager will periodically check the site to see that all construction areas, nearby roads, walkways and/or grounds are maintained in a clean and safe manner. The cost to clean up the site will be assessed to the Contractor each time the Owner is required to clean the area due to failure of the Contractor or his designee to satisfactorily perform or enforce this site clean-up requirements. The Owner will assess the cost. Before assessing the cost, the Contractor shall be given notice of the failure to clean the site and one business day after the date of the notice to clean up the site. If the Contractor fails to clean up the site, after notice, the Owner may assess the cost for cleanup.

## ARTICLE 7 CHANGES IN THE WORK

### § 7.1 General

§ 7.1.1 Changes in the Work may be accomplished after execution of the Contract, and without invalidating the Contract, by Change Order, Construction Change Directive, Contingency Authorization, or order for a minor change in the Work. ~~A properly prepared request for a change in the Work by Contractor shall be accompanied by sufficient supporting data and information to permit the Architect to make a recommendation to Owner. The Contract Sum and/or Contract Time may be increased for changes in the Work if the provisions of Article 7 have been met.~~

Architect shall review properly prepared, timely requests by Contractor for a proposed change in the Work, including but not limited to adjustments to the Contract Sum or Contract Time. A properly prepared request for a proposed change shall be accompanied by sufficient supporting data and information to permit Architect to make a reasonable determination without extensive investigation or preparation of additional drawings or specifications

§ 7.1.1.1 No changes in the Contract Sum and/or Contract Time will be allowed for a change in the Work unless prior to performing the changed Work the Contractor has provided the Owner in writing with a proposal for any change in price and/or change in Contract Time caused by the change in Work, and a Change Order is subsequently executed. A field directive or field order shall not be recognized as having any impact upon the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, and Contractor shall have no Claim therefore, unless it shall, prior to complying with the directive and in any event within ten (10) days of receiving the directive, submit a change proposal to the Owner, and a Change Order is subsequently executed, or Contractor satisfies the requirements of Paragraph 15

§ 7.1.2 A Change Order shall be based upon agreement among the Owner, Contractor, and Architect. A Construction Change Directive requires agreement by the Owner and Architect and may or may not be agreed to by the Contractor. An order for a minor change in the Work may be issued by the Architect alone. A change in the work that does not require a change in Contract Sum or Contract Time may be paid from the Contingency Allowance. A Contingency Allowance Expenditure Authorization (CAEA) is a written order prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner, Contractor and Program Manager directing a change in the Work. A CAEA shall not be used for minor changes in the Work. Note: If the Construction Manager Percentage Fee was not previously included in the approved GMP, the approved additions or deductions for authorized amounts for Contingency Expenditures will also include an appropriate adjustment for the Construction Manager Fee at the percentage approved in Article 5.1.1 and 5.1.2 of the modified AIA Document A133.

7.1.2.1 Contractor shall make no change in the materials used or in the specified manner of constructing and/or installing the Work or supply additional labor, services, or materials beyond that actually required by the terms of the Contract Documents, unless made pursuant to a written order from Owner authorizing Contractor to proceed with the change. No claim for an adjustment of the contract price will be valid unless so ordered.

§ 7.1.3 Changes in the Work shall be performed under applicable provisions of the Construction Documents or the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall proceed promptly with changes in the Work, unless otherwise provided in the Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or order for a minor change in the Work. Except as permitted in

Paragraph 7.3 or 15, a change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time shall be accomplished only by Change Order. -Contractor shall not make any claim for an adjustment to time, Contract Sum, or Guaranteed Maximum Price due to: a change in the materials used; a change in the specified manner of constructing and/or installing the Work; or additional labor, services, or materials beyond that actually required by the terms of the Construction Documents or the Contract Documents, unless made pursuant to a written order or directive from Owner authorizing Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work. No claim for an adjustment to time, Contract Sum, or Guaranteed Maximum Price shall be valid unless so ordered or directed.

7.1.4 The total Contractor mark-up for overhead, profit, or fee for work performed by the Contractor's own forces shall not exceed 10% of the cost of the change in the Work. The total Contractor mark-up for overhead, profit, or fee for supervision of work performed by subcontractors' forces shall not exceed 4% of the cost of the change in the Work. The total subcontractor mark-up for overhead, profit, or fee for work performed by the subcontractor's forces shall not exceed 10% of the cost of the change in the Work. In no event shall total mark-up for overhead, profit, or fee in any work which involves a subcontractor or one or more sub-subcontractors, regardless of who performs the Work, exceed 14% of the total cost of the change in the Work.

7.1.5 The Contractor, upon receipt of written notification by the Architect of a proposed item of change in the Work, shall prepare as soon as possible a Change Proposal in such form or forms as directed by the Architect.

.1 Each separate Change Proposal shall be numbered consecutively and shall include materials, costs, labor costs, fees, overhead and profit. The Proposal shall specify all cost related to the proposed Change in the Work, including any disruption or impact on performance;

.2 The Subcontractor's itemized accounting shall be included with the Change Proposal;

.3 If a Change Proposal is returned to the Contractor for additional information or if the scope of the proposed change in the Work is modified by additions, deletions or other revisions, the Contractor shall revise the Change Proposal accordingly and resubmit the revised Change Proposal to the Architect and Program Manager;

.4 A revised Change Proposal shall bear the original Change Proposal number suffixed by the letter "R" to designate a revision in the original Change Proposal. If additional revisions to a revised Change Proposal are necessary, each subsequent revision shall be identified by an appropriate numeral suffix immediately following the "R" suffix;

.5 Upon written approval of a Change Proposal by the Owner, the Architect and the Program Manager, the Architect will prepare a Change Order authorizing such change in the Work; and

.6 The Contractor shall request extensions of Contract Time due to changes in the Work only at the time of submitting its Change Proposal. Contractor's failure to do so shall represent a waiver of any right to request a time extension

7.1.5.1 The combined overhead and profit included in the total cost to the Owner of a change in the Work shall be based on the following schedule;

.1 For approved additions or deductions to the Cost of the Work (not including preconstruction or general condition costs), the Construction Manager's Fee will be increased or decreased at the same percentage approved in Section 5.1.1 and 5.1.2 in the approved A133 contract document.

.2 For approved additions or deductions to any of the Construction Manager's subcontracts for self-performed work paid in accordance with the Section 2.3.2.2 of the A133 contract document, the self-performed work fee will be the same as approved in Section 2.3.2.2 of the A133 contract document.

.3 For approved additions or deductions to approved Subcontracts, the maximum markup on changed Work performed by the Subcontractor's own forces will be ten (10%) percent of the approved allowable Change Order costs.

.4 For approved additions or deductions to approved Subcontracts, the maximum markup on changes for Work performed by the Subcontractor's Sub-subcontractors will be four (4%) percent of the amount due the Sub-subcontractor.

.5 Cost to which overhead and profit is to be applied shall be determined in accordance with Subparagraph 7.3.7

.6 In order to facilitate checking of quotations for extras or credits, all proposals except those so minor that their propriety can be seen by inspection, shall be accompanied by a complete itemization of costs including labor, materials, and Subcontracts. Labor and materials shall be itemized in the manner prescribed above. Where major cost items are Subcontracts, they shall be itemized also.

7.1.6 Allowance balances may be used to fund changes in the Work. The Contractor will not be allowed an

overhead, profit, or fee mark-up when changes in the Work are funded by one of the Allowances. The combined overhead and profit included in the total cost to the Owner of a change in the Work shall be based on the following schedule:

- .1 For the Contractor, for Work performed by the Contractor's own forces, ten (10%) percent of the cost.
- .2 For the Contractor, for Work performed by the Contractor's Subcontractor's, four (4%) percent of the amount due the subcontractors.
- .3 For each Subcontractor involved, for Work performed by that Subcontractor's own forces, ten (10%) percent of the cost.
- .4 For each Subcontractor involved, for Work performed by the Subcontractor's Sub-subcontractors, four (4%) percent of the amount due the Sub-subcontractor.
- .5 Cost to which overhead and profit is to be applied shall be determined in accordance with Subparagraph 7.3.76.
- .6 In order to facilitate checking of quotations for extras or credits, all proposals except those so minor that their propriety can be seen by inspection, shall be accompanied by a complete itemization of costs including labor, materials and Subcontracts. Labor and materials shall be itemized in the manner prescribed above. Where major cost items are Subcontracts, they shall be itemized also

7.1.7 ~~6~~ If the Contract Sum is \$1,000,000.00 or more, or if the Contract Sum is less than \$1,000,000.00, and any Change Order, Construction Change Directives, or other Changes in the Work would increase the Contract Sum to \$1,000,000.00 or more, the total of all Change Orders, Construction Change Directives, or other Changes in the Work, may not increase the Contract Sum by more than 25% of the original Contract Sum. Any Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or other Change in the Work that would exceed that limit is void and of no effect. Texas Education Code § 44.0411.

## **§ 7.2 Change Orders**

**§ 7.2.1** A Change Order is a written instrument prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner, Contractor, and Architect stating their agreement upon all of the following:

- .1** The change in the Work;
- .2** The amount of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price; and
- .3** The extent of the adjustment, if any, in the Contract Time.

**7.2.2** Methods used in determining adjustments to the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price may include those listed in Section 7.3.3.

- .1 Mutual acceptance of a lump sum properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation. Sufficient substantiating data shall include a proposal itemized for the various components of work added or deleted, segregated by labor, material and equipment. Details to be submitted will include detailed line item estimates showing detailed material quality takeoffs, material prices by item, and of related labor hour pricing information and extension by line item by drawings as applicable);
- .2 Unit prices stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation;
- .3 Cost to be determined in a manner agreed upon by the parties and a mutually-acceptable fixed or percentage fee or the percentage fee established at 7.1.5; or;
- .4 As provided in Subparagraph 7.3.7.

**7.2.3** Contractor stipulates that acceptance of a Change Order by the Contractor constitutes full accord and satisfaction for any and all Claims, whether direct or indirect, arising from the subject matter of the Change Order.

**7.2.4** In no event shall a single change, or the aggregate of all changes, result in the total costs, reimbursements, and fees exceeding the Contract Sum or the Guaranteed Maximum Price, unless agreed to in writing by Owner prior to the commencement of such modified or changed Work.

**7.2.5** Agreement on any Change Order shall constitute a final settlement of all claims by the Contractor directly or indirectly arising out of or relating to the change in the Work which is the subject of the Change Order, including, but not limited to, all direct and indirect costs and impact costs associated with such change and any and all adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time

### § 7.3 Construction Change Directives

§ 7.3.1 A Construction Change Directive is a written order prepared by the Architect and signed by the Owner and Architect, directing a change in the Work prior to agreement on adjustment, if any, in the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, or Contract Time, or both. The Owner may by Construction Change Directive, without invalidating the Contract, order changes in the Work within the general scope of the Contract consisting of additions, deletions, or other revisions, the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, and Contract Time being adjusted accordingly.

§ 7.3.2 A Construction Change Directive shall be used in the absence of total agreement on the terms of a Change Order.

§ 7.3.3 The Construction Change Directive shall include a unilateral change in the Contract Sum and/or Contract Time reflecting the Owner's reasonable view of the appropriate change in the Contract Sum and/or Contract Time for the change in the work covered by the Construction Change Directive. Until agreement is reached by the Owner and Contractor on these issues, the change in Contract Sum and Contract Time set out in the Construction Change Directive shall be used for schedule of values, payment, and scheduling purposes.

If the Construction Change Directive provides for an adjustment to the Contract Sum, the adjustment shall be based on one of the following methods:

- ~~.1 Mutual acceptance of a lump sum properly itemized and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation; Sufficient substantiating data shall include a proposal itemized for the various components of work added or deleted, segregated by labor, material and equipment. Details to be submitted will include detailed line item estimates showing detailed material quality takeoffs, material prices by item and of related labor hour pricing information and extension (by line item by drawings as applicable).~~
- ~~.2 Unit prices stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon; and supported by sufficient substantiating data to permit evaluation.~~
- ~~.3 Cost to be determined in a manner agreed upon by the parties and a mutually acceptable fixed or percentage fee; or~~
- ~~.4 As provided in Section 7.3.4.~~

§ 7.3.4 ~~[Not used] If the Contractor does not respond promptly or disagrees with the method for adjustment in the Contract Sum, the Architect shall determine the adjustment on the basis of reasonable expenditures and savings of those performing the Work attributable to the change, including, in case of an increase in the Contract Sum, an amount for overhead and profit as set forth in the Agreement, or if no such amount is set forth in the Agreement, a reasonable amount. In such case, and also under Section 7.3.3.3, the Contractor shall keep and present, in such form as the Architect may prescribe, an itemized accounting together with appropriate supporting data. Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, costs for the purposes of this Section 7.3.4 shall be limited to the following:~~

- ~~.1 Costs of labor, including applicable payroll taxes, fringe benefits required by agreement or custom, workers' compensation insurance, and other employee costs approved by the Architect;~~
- ~~.2 Costs of materials, supplies, and equipment, including cost of transportation, whether incorporated or consumed;~~
- ~~.3 Rental costs of machinery and equipment, exclusive of hand tools, whether rented from the Contractor or others;~~
- ~~.4 Costs of premiums for all bonds and insurance, permit fees, and sales, use, or similar taxes, directly related to the change; and~~
- ~~.5 Costs of supervision and field office personnel directly attributable to the change.~~

§ 7.3.5 ~~If the Contractor disagrees with the adjustment in the Contract Time, the Contractor may make a Claim in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15.~~

§ 7.3.6 Upon receipt of a Construction Change Directive, the Contractor shall promptly proceed with the change in the Work involved and advise the Architect of the Contractor's agreement or disagreement with the method, if any, provided in the Construction Change Directive for determining the proposed adjustment in the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, or Contract Time.

§ 7.3.7 In the absence of agreement between Owner and Contractor on the proper change to the Contract Sum or Contract Time because of a change in the Work, Contractor may treat the matter as a Claim under Paragraph 15. In

such event, the Contractor shall be entitled to recover only the amount by which its direct costs have been reasonably increased over the direct cost of performing the Work without the change in the work, plus three percent (3%) on Subcontractor's Work) of direct cost to cover home office overhead, profit, and all other costs. Direct costs shall be limited to the following:

~~A Construction Change Directive signed by the Contractor indicates the Contractor's agreement therewith, including adjustment in Contract Sum and Contract Time or the method for determining them. Such agreement shall be effective immediately and shall be recorded as a Change Order.~~

.1 Reasonable Cost of Labor, including Social Security, old age and unemployment insurance, fringe benefits required by agreement or custom, and workers' compensation insurance;

.2 Materials, supplies and equipment, equipment including cost of transportation, whether incorporated or consumed;

.3 Rental cost of machinery and equipment, exclusive of hand tools, whether rented from the Contractor or others at rates that are no greater than market rates in the locale of the Work at the time of the Work. Unless otherwise established in the Contract, the rental value of the Contractor's own equipment shall not be more than normal local rental rates for contractor-owned equipment;

.4 Premiums for all bonds and insurance permit fees and sales, use or similar taxes related to the Work; and

.5 Cost of Subcontractor for performing the change in the Work. The amount allowable for Subcontractors shall be calculated using the same standards set out herein for direct Work by the Contractor.

.6 Additional cost of supervision and field office personnel directly attributable to the change.

Contractor and each Subcontractor involved shall furnish evidence of costs such as copies of original invoices for materials, payroll vouchers for labor, etc., upon request by the Architect, Owner, or Program Manager. Any increase in Contract Time shall be limited to the amount of time by which activities critical to overall completion of the Project are delayed by the change in the Work. If it is reasonably possible to perform the change in the Work concurrently with Work that is critical to overall completion, no time extension shall be granted by reason of a change in the Work.

~~§ 7.3.8 [Not Used] The amount of credit to be allowed by the Contractor to the Owner for a deletion or change that which results in a net decrease in the Contract Sum shall be actual net cost of the work deleted, including all profit and overhead, plus the Contractor's allocated percentage of three (3%) percent on Subcontractor's work of direct cost to cover supervision, field office and home office overhead, profit and all other costs cost When both additions and credits covering related Work or substitutions are involved in a change, the allowance for overhead and profit shall be figured on the basis of net increase, if any, with respect to that change.~~

~~§ 7.3.9 [Not Used] Pending final determination of the total cost of a Construction Change Directive to the Owner, the Contractor may request payment for Work completed under the Construction Change Directive in Applications for Payment. The Architect will make an interim determination for purposes of monthly certification for payment for those costs and certify for payment the amount that the Architect determines, in the Architect's professional judgment, to be reasonably justified. The Architect's interim determination of cost shall adjust the Contract Sum on the same basis as a Change Order, subject to the right of either party to disagree and assert a Claim in accordance with Article 15.~~

~~§ 7.3.10 When the Owner and Contractor agree with a determination made by the Architect concerning the adjustments in the Contract Sum and Contract Time, or otherwise reach agreement upon the adjustments, such agreement shall be effective immediately and the Architect will prepare a Change Order. Change Orders may be issued for all or any part of a Construction Change Directive.~~

#### **§ 7.4 Minor Changes in the Work**

With prior written notice to the Owner's representative, ~~The~~ Architect may order minor changes in the Work that are consistent with the ~~intent of the Construction Documents or the~~ Contract Documents and do not involve an adjustment in the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, or an extension of the Contract Time, nor requiring any payment from the Contingency Allowance. The Architect's order for minor changes shall be in writing. If the Contractor believes that the proposed minor change in the Work will affect the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, or Contract Time, or requiring a payment from the Contingency Allowance, the Contractor shall notify the Architect and shall not proceed to implement the change in the Work. If the Contractor performs the Work set forth in the Architect's order for a minor change without prior notice to the Architect that such change will affect

the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, or Contract Time, or the Contingency Allowance, the Contractor waives any adjustment to the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, or extension of the Contract Time or the Contingency Allowance. The Contractor shall carry out such written orders promptly. Minor changes in the Work shall not include changes that involve the outward appearance of the structure, color schemes, floor plans, building materials, landscaping, or mechanical equipment

## ARTICLE 8 TIME

### § 8.1 Definitions

§ 8.1.1 Unless otherwise provided, Contract Time is the period of time, including authorized adjustments, allotted in the Contract Documents for Substant~~Final~~ Completion of the Work.

§ 8.1.2 The date of commencement of the Work is the date established in the Agreement first business day after Contractor's receipt of the written Notice to Proceed. The Notice to Proceed shall not be issued by Architect until the Contract (or Amendment, if Contractor is a Construction Manager at Risk) has been signed by the Contractor, approved by Owner's Board of Trustees, signed by the Owner's authorized representative, and Owner and Architect have received, and approved as to form, all required payment and performance bonds and insurance, in compliance with Article 11. Issuance of the Notice to Proceed shall not relieve the Contractor of its responsibility to comply with Article 11.

8.1.2.1 If the Notice to Proceed is delayed due to delays in issuance of the building permit by municipal authorities or other unanticipated delays, and if building materials are expected to increase in price due to that delay, Contractor may, if Owner expressly agrees in writing, purchase such materials before receiving the Notice to Proceed from Owner. Contractor shall store and insure such building materials until use. In the event the project is cancelled, Contractor's contract is terminated, or the materials are not used (in whole or in part) on the Project, Contractor shall sell the unused materials to Owner at Contractor's actual cost, or reduce its billing to Owner in that amount, if Contractor retains the material.

§ 8.1.3 The date of Substantial Completion is the date certified by the Architect in accordance with Section 9.8. The date of Final Completion is the date certified by the Architect in accordance with Paragraph 9.10. Unless otherwise agreed in writing by Owner, Contractor agrees that Final Completion shall occur not more than 30 days after the date of Substantial Completion.

§ 8.1.4 The term "day" as used in the Contract Documents shall mean calendar day unless otherwise specifically defined.

### § 8.2 Progress and Completion

§ 8.2.1 Time limits stated in the Contract Documents are of the essence of the Contract. By executing the Agreement~~Contract~~, the Contractor confirm~~stipulates~~ that the Contract Time is a reasonable period for performing the Work.

If Contractor fails to achieve Substantial Completion of the Work on or before the date(s) specified for Substantial Completion in this Contract and the other Contract Documents, Contractor shall pay to the Owner, as liquidated damages, the sum set out in the Contract between Owner and Contractor for each calendar day that Substantial Completion is delayed after the date(s) specified for Substantial Completion. The total liquidated damage claim is determined by multiplying daily-liquidated damage amounts stated in the Contract by the number of days late. A fraction of a day shall be counted as a full day. It is hereby agreed that the actual damages which Owner will suffer by reason of late completion would be difficult to ascertain, and the liquidated damages to which Owner is entitled hereunder are a reasonable forecast of just compensation for the harm that would be caused by Contractor's failure to achieve Substantial Completion of the Work on or before the date(s) specified for Substantial Completion, and not a penalty. Liquidated damages shall be paid as they accrue and may be adjusted from any progress payment due.

§ 8.2.2 The Contractor shall not knowingly, except by agreement or instruction of the Owner in writing, prematurely commence operations on the site or elsewhere prior to the effective date of insurance required by Article 11 to be furnished by the Contractor and Owner. The date of commencement of the Work shall not be changed by the effective date of such insurance. Unless the date of commencement is established by the Contract Documents or a Notice to Proceed given by the Owner, the Contractor shall notify the Owner in writing not less than five (5) days or other agreed period.



§ 8.2.3 The Contractor shall proceed expeditiously with adequate forces and shall achieve Substantial and Final Completion within the Contract Time.

8.2.4 The Contractor is subject to liquidated damages, as specified in the Contract, if the Work is not completed by the date of Substantial Completion or the date of Final Completion.

### § 8.3 Delays and Extensions of Time

§ 8.3.1 If the Contractor is delayed at any time in the commencement or progress in performing work that is critical to overall completion of the Work by (1) an act or neglect of the Owner or Architect, of an employee of either, or of or Program Manager, or a Separate Contractor; (2) by changes ordered in the Work; (3) by labor disputes, fire, governmental actions, unusual delay in deliveries, unavoidable casualties, or adverse weather conditions documented in accordance with Section 15.1.6.2, or other causes beyond the Contractor's control; (4) by delay authorized, in writing, by the Owner pending mediation and binding dispute resolution; or (5) by other causes that the Contractor asserts, and the Owner and Architect determines, may justify delay, then the Contract Time ~~shall~~ may be extended for such reasonable time as the Owner, and Architect or Program Manager may determine. Adjustments in the Contract Time will be permitted for a delay only to the extent such delay is not caused or could not have reasonably been anticipated by the Contractor, and could not be limited or avoided by the Contractor's timely notice to the Owner of the delay, and only if Contractor satisfies the conditions of this Paragraph 8.3. Contractor has the burden to prove that any of the foregoing alleged causes of delay significantly impacted construction progress on the critical path, as a condition precedent to any extension of the Contract Time.

The Contractor shall anticipate and include in the construction schedule lost time due to adverse weather conditions in accordance with the number of Lost Time Workdays per month in the Dallas area in accordance with the following schedule:

<u>January – 5</u>
<u>February – 4</u>
<u>March – 5</u>
<u>April – 6</u>
<u>May – 6</u>
<u>June – 4</u>
<u>July – 4</u>
<u>August – 4</u>
<u>September – 5</u>
<u>October – 4</u>
<u>November – 4</u>
<u>December – 4</u>

A request for a time extension based on unusually adverse weather conditions will not be permitted unless the cumulative actual days of Lost Time Workdays for the period when the critical path of the project is subject to impact from Lost Time Workdays exceeds the cumulative number of expected Lost Time Workdays for the same period. The final calculation of entitlement to a time extension cannot be made until at least sixty (60) days prior to the agreed date for Substantial Completion of the Project is completed and the time extensions for unusually adverse weather may not be made until that time. However, Contractor will submit claimed Lost Time Workdays in accordance with the submission times provided in 8.3.2. No day on which substantial Contractor forces are able to perform the work on the Project for more than fifty percent (50%) of the usual workday will be counted as a Lost Time Workday. Lost Time Workdays will not be calculated for any period when the critical path of the project is not subject to impact from adverse weather conditions.

§ 8.3.2 ~~Claims relating to time shall be made in accordance with applicable provisions of Article 15. On or before the fifteenth (15th) day of each month of the Work, Contractor shall submit in writing a request for all time extensions to which it believes itself to be entitled for the preceding month, other than time extensions for changes in the Work, which are to be submitted in accordance with the requirements of Article 7. If Contractor's request for time extension for Changes in the Work is denied and Contractor wishes to pursue the matter, Contractor shall submit in writing a request for that extension by the fifteenth (15th) day of the month following the denial. Any claim for time extension not submitted under the terms of this Subparagraph shall be waived.~~

8.3.2.1 Owner, after consultation with the Architect and Program Manager, shall grant time extensions to the extent it believes them to be proper. Time extensions granted by the Owner may be incorporated into schedules for completion of the Work. In the event that Contractor believes that it is entitled to additional time extensions beyond those granted by the Owner, it may make a claim for them provided it can meet the requirements of Paragraph 15.1.

§ 8.3.3 This ~~Contract Section 8.3~~ does not ~~permit~~reclude the recovery of damages, including, without limitation, extended home office overhead expenses, general conditions, or other consequential damages, by the Contractor for delay or disruption or for extensions of time due to bad weather or acts of God. Contractor agrees that the only possible compensation for any delay is an extension of time by either party under other provisions of the Contract Documents.

## ARTICLE 9 PAYMENTS AND COMPLETION

### § 9.1 Contract Sum

§ 9.1.1 The Contract Sum is stated in the ~~Agreement~~Contract and, including authorized adjustments, is the total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor for performance of the Work under the Contract Documents. In the event that the Project is a Construction Management at Risk Project, the Contract Sum shall not exceed the Guaranteed Maximum Price.

§ 9.1.2 If unit prices are stated in the Contract Documents or subsequently agreed upon, and if quantities originally contemplated are materially changed so that application of such unit prices to the actual quantities causes substantial inequity to the Owner or Contractor, the applicable unit prices ~~sh~~may be equitably adjusted by prior written agreement.

### § 9.2 Schedule of Values

9.2.1 Before the first Application for Payment, the Contractor shall submit a schedule of values to the Architect and Program Manager before the first Application for Payment, allocating the entire Contract Sum or, in the case of a Guaranteed Maximum Price, within 15 days after establishing the Guaranteed Maximum Price, to the various portions of the Work. The schedule of values shall be prepared in the form, and supported by the data to substantiate its accuracy, required by the Architect. This schedule, unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's Applications for Payment. Any changes to the schedule of values shall be submitted to the Architect and supported by such data to substantiate its accuracy as the Architect or Program Manager may require, and unless objected to by the Architect, shall be used as a basis for reviewing the Contractor's subsequent Applications for Payment. The schedule of values shall be prepared in such a manner that each major item of work, whether done by Contractor's own forces or subcontracted, is shown as a single line item on AIA Document G702 and G703, Application and Certificate for Payment and Continuation Sheet. If the Contractor is a Construction Manager at Risk, then the Contractor's fee and general conditions shall be specifically shown, and AIA Documents G702CMa and G703 shall be used.

9.2.2 If the Project is a Construction Manager at Risk project, in order to facilitate the review of Applicants for Payment, the Schedule of Values shall be submitted on AIA Documents G702 and G703, and shall include the following:

.1 Contractor's cost for Contractor's fee (if applicable) bonds and insurance, mobilization, or general conditions, etc. shall be listed as individual line item.

.2 Contractor's costs for various construction items shall be detailed. For example, concrete work shall be subdivide into footings, grade beams, floor slabs, or paving, etc.

.3 On major subcontracts, such as mechanical, electrical, and plumbing, the schedule shall indicate line items and amounts in detail (for example: underground, major equipment, fixtures, installation fixtures, or start-up, etc.)

.4 Costs for subcontract work shall be listed without any additional mark-up of Contractor's costs for overhead, profit, or supervision.

.5 If payment for stored materials is requested prior to installation, then material and labor shall be listed as separate line items.

.6 Contractor shall provide a report of actual versus projected reimbursable expenses (general conditions), updated monthly.

### **§ 9.3 Applications for Payment**

**§ 9.3.1** ~~At least ten days before the date established for each progress payment, the time specified in the Contract,~~ the Contractor shall submit to the Architect and Program Manager an itemized Application for Payment for operations completed prepared in accordance with the schedule of values, ~~if required under Section 9.2, for completed portions of the Work.~~ The application shall be notarized, if required, and supported by all data substantiating the Contractor's right to payment that the Owner or Architect require, such as copies of requisitions, and releases and waivers of liens from Subcontractors and suppliers, and shall reflect retainage ~~if provided for in the Contract Documents.~~

**§ 9.3.1.1** As provided in Section 7.3.8, such applications may include requests for payment on account of changes in the Work that have been properly authorized by Construction Change Directives, but not yet included in Change Orders. Contractor agrees that, for purposes of Texas Government Code Sections 2251 and 2251.042, receipt of the Application for Payment by the Architect shall not be construed as receipt of an invoice by the Owner. Contractor further agrees that Owner's receipt of the Certificate for Payment shall be construed as receipt of an invoice by the Owner, for purposes of Texas Government Code Sections 251.021 and 2251.042. ~~As provided in Section 7.3.9, such applications may include requests for payment on account of changes in the Work that have been properly authorized by Construction Change Directives, or by interim determinations of the Architect, but not yet included in Change Orders.~~

**§ 9.3.1.2** Applications for Payment shall not include requests for payment for portions of the Work for which the Contractor ~~does~~ has not intend-been invoiced by to pay a Subcontractor or supplier, unless ~~such~~ Contractor has self-performed the Work has been performed by others whom the Contractor intends to pay.

**9.3.1.3** Until Final Completion of the Work, the Owner shall withhold retainage as provided in the Contract Documents, except that Owner shall not pay amounts for which the Architect refuses to certify payment, or the Owner refuses to pay, as provided herein Section 9.4 or 9.5 as amended. The remaining retainage shall be paid with the Final Payment, unless there is a bona fide dispute between Owner and Contractor and the reason for the dispute is that labor, services, or materials provided by Contractor, or a person under Contractor's direction or control, failed to comply with the express terms of the Contract, or if the surety on any surety bond does not agree to the release of retainage. Written notice of the basis for withholding retainage under Texas Government Code Sections 2252.031 – 2252.032 must be provided to Contractor. If there is no bona fide dispute and neither party is in default, Contractor may cure any noncompliant labor, services, or materials, or offer Owner reasonable compensation for such noncompliant labor, services, or materials that cannot promptly be cured. Owner is not required to accept such offer.

**§ 9.3.2** ~~Unless otherwise provided in the Contract Documents, pPayments shall be made on the basis of invoices for specific account of materials and/or equipment delivered and suitably stored at the site for subsequent incorporation in the Work, and. If approved in advance by the Owner, payment may similarly be made for specific materials and/or equipment (1) suitably stored the site or (2) suitably stored at some off-the site at a location, provided the following conditions are met for agreed upon in writing. Payment for materials and equipment stored on or off the site shall be conditioned upon compliance by the Contractor with procedures satisfactory to the Owner to establish the Owner's title to such materials and equipment or otherwise protect the Owner's interest, and shall include the costs of applicable insurance, storage, and transportation to the site, for such materials and equipment stored off-the site storage:~~

.1 The location must be agreed to, in writing, by Owner and Surety.

.2 The location must be a bonded warehouse.

.3 The Contractor's Surety must agree, in writing, to the amounts included in each Application for Payment.

.4 The Contractor must bear the cost of the Owner's and Architect's expenses related to visiting the off-site storage area and reviewing the stored contents. Contractor acknowledges that Architect's time may be an Additional Service and shall compensate Architect directly for same upon request.

.5 Payment shall not include any charges for overhead or profit on stored materials.

.6 Payments for materials or equipment stored on or off the site shall be conditioned upon submission by the Contractor of bills of sale or such other documentation satisfactory to the Owner to establish the

Owner's title to such materials or equipment or otherwise protect the Owner's interest, including applicable insurance (naming the Owner as insured and naming the specific materials or equipment stored and their location) and proof of delivery to the site for those materials and equipment stored off the site. Under no circumstances will the Owner reimburse the Contractor for down payment, deposits, or other advance payment for materials or equipment until the materials or equipment are delivered to Owner's site or the agreed-upon off-site storage. Failure to follow these procedures shall result in nonpayment for storage of or insurance on stored materials and equipment. Failure to follow these procedures shall also result in nonpayment of materials and equipment until said materials and equipment are incorporated into the Work.

**CONTRACTOR AGREES TO INDEMNIFY OWNER FROM ANY LOSS RESULTING FROM A BREACH OF THIS SECTION.** Any off-site storage shall be in a bonded warehouse, suitably marked for the individual project, in addition to the requirements above

**§ 9.3.3** The Contractor warrants that title to all Work covered by an Application for Payment will pass to the Owner no later than the time of payment. The Contractor further warrants that upon submittal of an Application for Payment all Work for which Certificates for Payment have been previously issued and payments received from the Owner shall, to the best of the Contractor's knowledge, information, and belief, be free and clear of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances, in favor of the Contractor, Subcontractors, suppliers, or other persons or entities that provided labor, materials, and equipment relating to the Work. Neither Contractor nor any of its materialmen, laborers, or Subcontractors shall have any lien rights against the Owner's lands, building funds, materials or other property. No materialmen, laborers or Subcontractor of the Contractor shall have any enforceable rights against the Owner of this Contract. Materialmen, laborers and Subcontractors of the Contractor may have rights under any Payment Bond provided by the Contractor, but cannot look to the Owner for any help in enforcement of those rights. **CONTRACTOR SHALL WAIVE, RELEASE, INDEMNIFY, AND HOLD OWNER HARMLESS FROM ANY LIENS, CLAIMS, SECURITY INTERESTS OR ENCUMBRANCES FILED BY THE CONTRACTOR, SUBCONTRACTORS, OR ANYONE CLAIMING BY, THROUGH, OR UNDER THE CONTRACTOR OR SUBCONTRACTOR FOR ITEMS COVERED BY PAYMENTS MADE BY THE OWNER TO CONTRACTOR.**

**9.3.4** Contractor shall submit Applications for Payment, in quadruplicate, using AIA Documents G702 and G703 Application and Certificate of Payment (or G702CMa, if applicable) and Continuation Sheet or electronically, if acceptable to Owner. All blanks in the form must be completed and signatures of Contractor and Notary Public must be original on each form. Incomplete or inaccurate Applications for Payment shall be returned to the Contractor by the Architect for completion and/or correction. Owner shall have no responsibility for payment of same if the Application for Payment is incomplete or inaccurate.

**9.3.5** By signing each Application for Payment, the Contractor stipulates and certifies to the following: that the information presented is true, correct, accurate, and complete; that the Contractor has made the necessary detailed examinations, audits, and arithmetic verifications; that the submitted Work has been completed to the extent represented in the Applications for Payment; that the materials and supplies identified in the Applications for Payment have been purchased, paid for, and received; that the subcontractors have been paid as identified in the Applications for Payment or that Contractor has been invoiced for same; that Contractor has made the necessary on-site inspections to confirm the accuracy of the Applications for Payment; that there are no known mechanics' or materialmen's liens outstanding at the date of the Applications for Payment; that all due and payable bills with respect to the Work have been paid to date or are included in the amount requested in the current Payment Application; that, except for such bills not paid but so included, there is no known basis for the filing of any mechanics' or materialmen's liens on the Work; that the Payment Application includes only Work self-performed by Contractor or for which Contractor has been invoiced; and that releases from all Subcontractors and materialmen have been obtained in such form as to constitute an effective release of lien under the laws of the State of Texas, covering all Work performed and for which payment has been made by the Owner to the Contractor. Contractor understands that documents submitted to Owner become government documents under the laws of the State of Texas. Contractor further understands that falsification of Contractor's Applications for Payment may constitute a violation of the penal laws of the State of Texas, including, but not limited to, Texas Penal Code Sections 32.46; 37.09, and 37.10, and may justify termination of Contractor's Contract with Owner. Contractor further understands and agrees that falsification of documents may entitle Owner to restitution as permitted by Texas law and these Contract Documents.

## § 9.4 Certificates for Payment

§ 9.4.1 The Architect will, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, carefully evaluate and review the Applications for Payment and, when appropriate, return the Applications for Payment to the Contractor as provided in Section 9.3.4. If the Applications for Payment are complete, then the Architect shall sign and either (1) certify and issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment in the full amount of the Applications for Payment, with a copy to the Contractor; or (2) certify and issue to the Owner a Certificate for Payment for such amount as the Architect and Program Manager determines is properly due, and notify the Contractor and Owner in writing of the Architect's or Program Manager reasons for withholding certification and disputing in part certification as provided in Section 9.5.1; or (3) withhold certification of the entire Applications for Payment, and notify the Contractor and Owner in writing with a detailed statement of the Architect's reason for withholding certification in whole in accordance with Texas Government Code Section 2251.042(a), and as provided in Section 9.5.1. Architect's written reason for withholding certification shall be submitted in accordance with, and construed as the notice required by Texas Government Code Section 2251.042 et. seq. Owner may not withhold from payments more than 110% of the disputed amount.

§ 9.4.2 The issuance of a Certificate for Payment will constitute a representation by the Architect or Program Manager to the Owner, based on the Architect's evaluation of the Work and the data in the Application for Payment, that the Architect has observed the progress of the Work and determined that, in the Architect's professional opinion, to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information, and belief, the Work has progressed to the point indicated, and the quality of the Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents. Further, the issuance of the Certificate for Payment will constitute a representation by the Architect or Program Manager to the Owner that the Architect or Program Manager has carefully evaluated and certified that the amounts requested in the Applications for Payment are valid and correct and that the Contractor is entitled to payment in the amount certified. The foregoing representations are subject to an evaluation of the Work for conformance with the Contract Documents upon Substantial Completion, to results of subsequent tests and inspections, to correction of minor deviations from the Contract Documents prior to completion, and to specific qualifications expressed by the Architect or Program Manager in writing to the Owner. However, the issuance of a Certificate for Payment will not be a representation that the Architect and Program Manager has (1) made exhaustive or continuous on-site inspections to check the quality or quantity of the Work; (2) reviewed construction means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures; (3) reviewed copies of requisitions received from Subcontractors and suppliers and other data unless requested by the Owner to substantiate the Contractor's right to payment; or (4) made examination to ascertain how or for what purpose the Contractor has used money previously paid on account of the Contract Sum. Examinations, audits, and verifications, if required by the Owner, will be performed by the Owner's accountants or other representatives of the Owner acting in the sole interest of the Owner.

9.4.3 The issuance of a Certificate for Payment shall constitute a recommendation to the Owner regarding the amount to be paid. This recommendation is not binding on the Owner if Owner knows of other reasons under the Contract Documents why payment should be withheld.

## § 9.5 Decisions to Withhold Certification

§ 9.5.1 The Architect or Program Manager may withhold a Certificate for Payment in whole or in part, to the extent reasonably necessary to protect the Owner, if in the Architect's or Program Manager's opinion the representations to the Owner required by Section 9.4.2 cannot be made. If the Architect or Program Manager is unable to certify payment in the amount of the Application, the Architect or Program Manager will notify the Contractor and Owner as provided in Section 9.4.1. If the Contractor and Architect or Program Manager cannot agree on a revised amount, the Architect or Program Manager will promptly issue a Certificate for Payment for the amount for which the Architect is able to make such representations to the Owner. The Architect or Program Manager may also withhold a Certificate for Payment or, because of subsequently discovered evidence, may nullify the whole or a part of a Certificate for Payment previously issued, to such extent as may be necessary in the Architect's or Program Manager's opinion to protect the Owner from loss for which the Contractor is responsible, including loss resulting from acts and omissions described in Section 3.3.2, because of

- .1 defective Work not remedied;
- .2 third party claims filed or reasonable evidence indicating probable filing of such claims, unless security acceptable to the Owner is provided by the Contractor;
- .3 failure of the Contractor to make payments properly to Subcontractors or suppliers for labor, materials or equipment;
- .4 reasonable evidence that the Work cannot be completed for the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum;
- .5 damage to the Owner or a Separate Contractor;

- .6 reasonable evidence that the Work will not be completed within the Contract Time, and that the unpaid balance would not be adequate to cover actual or liquidated damages for the anticipated delay;
- ~~or~~
- .7 repeated failure to carry out the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents; or
- .8 failure to submit a written plan indicating action by the Contractor to regain the time schedule for completion of Work within the Contract time.

§ 9.5.2 When ~~either party~~the Contractor disputes the Architect's decision regarding a Certificate for Payment under Section 9.5.1, in whole or in part, ~~that party~~the Contractor may submit a Claim in accordance with Article 15.

§ 9.5.3 Architect's written reason for withholding certification shall be construed as the notice required by Texas Government Code Section 2251.042 et seq.~~When the reasons for withholding certification are removed, certification will be made for amounts previously withheld.~~

§ 9.5.4 Notwithstanding any provision contained within this Article, if the Work has not attained Substantial Completion or Final Completion by the required dates, subject to extensions of time allowed under the Contract Documents, If the Architect or Program Manager may withholds any further eCertification for pPayment under Section 9.5.1.3, the Owner may, at its sole option, issue joint checks to the Contractor and to any Subcontractor or supplier to whom the from Contractor to the extent necessary to preserve sufficient funds to complete construction of the Project and to cover liquidated damages. failed to make payment for Work properly performed or material or equipment suitably delivered. If tThe Owner shall not be deemed in default by reason of withholding makes payments as provided in Sections 9.3.4, 9.4.3, 9.5.1, or this Section by joint check, the Owner shall notify the Architect and the Contractor shall reflect such payment on its next Application for Payment.

#### § 9.6 Progress Payments

§ 9.6.1 After the Architect has issued a Certificate for Payment, the Owner shall make payment for undisputed amounts in the manner and within the time provided in the Contract Documents, and shall so notify the Architect. Owner shall notify Contractor within 21 days if Owner disputes the Architect's Certificate of Payment pursuant to Texas Government Code Section 2251.042 et seq, listing the specific reason for nonpayment. Payments to the Contractor shall not be construed as releasing the Contractor or his Surety from any obligations under the Contract Documents.

§ 9.6.2 The Contractor shall pay each Subcontractor, no later than seven-ten days after receipt of payment from the Owner, the amount to which the Subcontractor is entitled, reflecting percentages actually retained from payments to the Contractor on account of the Subcontractor's portion of the Work. The Contractor shall, by appropriate agreement with each Subcontractor, require each Subcontractor to make payments to Sub-subcontractors in a similar manner. In compliance with Texas Government Code Section 2251.022, the Contractor shall, within ten (10) days following receipt of payment from the Owner, pay all bills for labor and materials performed and furnished by others in connection with the Work, and shall, if requested, provide the Owner with evidence of such payment. Contractor shall include a provision in each of its subcontracts imposing the same payment obligations on its Subcontractors as are applicable to the Contractor hereunder, and if the Owner so requests, shall provide to the Owner copies of such Subcontractor payments. If the Contractor has failed to make payments promptly to the Contractor's Subcontractors or for materials or labor used in the Work for which the Owner has made payment to the Contractor, then the Owner shall be entitled to withhold payment to the Contractor, in part or in whole, to the extent necessary to protect the Owner. This Section is subject to the provisions of Texas Business and Commerce Code Chapter 56.

§ 9.6.3 The Architect will, on request, furnish to a Subcontractor, if practicable, information regarding percentages of completion or amounts applied for by the Contractor and action taken thereon by the Architect and Owner on account of portions of the Work done by such Subcontractor.

§ 9.6.4 The Owner has the right to request written evidence from the Contractor that the Contractor has properly paid Subcontractors and suppliers amounts paid by the Owner to the Contractor for subcontracted Work. If the Contractor fails to furnish such evidence within seven days, the Owner shall have the right to contact Subcontractors and suppliers to ascertain whether they have been properly paid. Neither the Owner, Program Manager, nor Architect shall have an obligation to pay, or to see to the payment of money to, a Subcontractor or supplier, except as may otherwise be required by law. Any action taken by Owner to require the Contractor to pay a Subcontractor shall not impose any liability on Owner to the Subcontractor or supplier.

§ 9.6.5 The Contractor's payments to suppliers shall be treated in a manner similar to that provided in Sections 9.6.2, 9.6.3 and 9.6.4.

§ 9.6.6 A Certificate for Payment, a progress payment, or partial or entire use or occupancy of the Project by the Owner shall not constitute acceptance of Work not in accordance with the Contract Documents.

§ 9.6.7 ~~Unless the Contractor provides the Owner with a payment bond in the full penal sum of the Contract Sum, payments received by the Contractor for Work properly performed by Subcontractors or provided by suppliers shall be held by the Contractor for those Subcontractors or suppliers who performed Work or furnished materials, or both, under contract with the Contractor for which payment was made by the Owner. Nothing contained herein shall require money to be placed in a separate account and not commingled with money of the Contractor, create any fiduciary liability or tort liability on the part of the Contractor for breach of trust, or entitle any person or entity to an award of punitive damages against the Contractor for breach of the requirements of this provision. Payments received by the Contractor from the Owner for Work properly performed by Subcontractors, or materials properly provided by suppliers, shall be held in trust by the Contractor for the benefit of those Subcontractors or suppliers who performed Work or furnished materials, or both, under contract with the Contractor. Texas Property Code § 162.001.~~

§ 9.6.8 ~~Provided the Owner has fulfilled its payment obligations under the Contract Documents, THE CONTRACTOR SHALL DEFEND AND INDEMNIFY THE OWNER FROM ALL LOSS, LIABILITY, DAMAGE OR EXPENSE, INCLUDING REASONABLE ATTORNEY'S FEES AND LITIGATION EXPENSES, ARISING OUT OF ANY LIEN CLAIM OR OTHER CLAIM FOR PAYMENT BY ANY SUBCONTRACTOR OR SUPPLIER OF ANY TIER. UPON RECEIPT OF NOTICE OF A LIEN CLAIM OR OTHER CLAIM FOR PAYMENT, THE OWNER SHALL NOTIFY THE CONTRACTOR. IF APPROVED BY THE APPLICABLE COURT, WHEN REQUIRED, THE CONTRACTOR MAY SUBSTITUTE A SURETY BOND FOR THE PROPERTY AGAINST WHICH THE LIEN OR OTHER CLAIM FOR PAYMENT HAS BEEN ASSERTED.~~

9.6.9 Contractor shall not withhold as retainage a greater percentage from Subcontractors or materialmen than the percentage that Owner withheld as retainage from payments to Contractor.

## § 9.7 Failure of Payment

~~9.7.1 If the Architect does not issue a Certificate for Payment, through no fault of the Contractor, within seven days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, or Pursuant to Texas Government Code Section 2251.051, if the Owner does not pay the Contractor any payment certified by the Architect and Program Manager, which is undisputed, due and owing within seven days after the date the payment is due under the Contract Documents established in the Contract Documents, the amount certified by the Architect or awarded by binding dispute resolution, then the Contractor may, upon seven (10) additional days' written notice to the Owner, Program Manager and Architect, that payment has not been made and the Contractor intends to suspend performance for nonpayment, may stop the Work until payment of the amount owing has been received. The Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable costs of shutdown, delay and start-up, plus interest as provided for in the Contract Documents. If the Owner provides written notice to the Contractor that: 1) payment has been made; or 2) a bona fide dispute for payment exists, listing the specific reasons for nonpayment, then Contractor shall be liable for damages resulting from suspension of the Work. If a reason specified is that labor, services, or materials provided by the Contractor are not provided in compliance with the Contract Documents, then the Contractor shall be provided a reasonable opportunity to cure the noncompliance or to compensate Owner for any failure to cure the noncompliance. No amount shall be added to the Contract Sum as a result of a dispute between Owner and Contractor unless and until such dispute is resolved in Contractor's favor.~~

~~9.7.2 If the Architect does not issue a Certificate for Payment within seven (7) days after receipt of the Contractor's Application for Payment, through no fault of the Contractor, then the Contractor shall provide written notice to the Owner, and the Owner shall have fourteen (14) business days after receipt of such notice to provide or obtain a Certificate for Payment. If Owner fails to provide or obtain the Certificate for Payment, then the Contractor may, upon fourteen (14) additional business days' written notice to the Owner and Architect, stop the Work until payment of the undisputed amount owing has been received. [Intentionally deleted]~~

9.7.3 If the Owner is entitled to reimbursement or payment from the Contractor under or pursuant to the Contract Documents, then such payment shall be made promptly upon demand by the Owner. Notwithstanding anything contained in the Contract Documents to the contrary, if the Contractor fails to promptly make any payment due to Owner, pursuant to the Contractor, or if the Owner incurs any costs and expenses to cure any default of the Contractor or to correct defective Work, then the Owner shall have an absolute right to offset such amount against the Contract Sum and, in the Owner's sole discretion and without waiving any other remedies, may elect either to:  
.1 deduct an amount equal to that which the Owner is entitled from any payment then or thereafter due to Contractor from the Owner, or  
.2 issue a written notice to the Contractor reducing the Contract Sum by an amount equal to that which the Owner is entitled.

## **§ 9.8 Substantial Completion**

**§ 9.8.1** Substantial Completion is the stage in the progress of the Work when the Work or designated portion thereof is sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work for its intended use; all Project systems included in the Work or designated portion thereof have been successfully tested and are fully operational; all required governmental inspections and certifications required by the Work have been made, approved, and posted; designated initial instruction of Owner's personnel in the operation of Project systems has been completed; and all the required finishes set out in the Construction Documents are in place. The only remaining Work shall be minor in nature so that the Owner can occupy the Work or the applicable portion of the Work for all of its intended purposes on that date; and the completion of the Work by the Contractor will not materially interfere with or hamper Owner's, or Owners' tenant normal school operations, or other intended use. As a further condition of a determination of Substantial Completion, the Contractor shall certify that all remaining Work with respect thereto will be completed within the time specified by the Contract Documents for Final Completion. As provided in the Contract Documents, Owner may occupy a portion of the facility prior to Substantial Completion-

**§ 9.8.2** When the Contractor considers that the Work, or a portion thereof which the Owner agrees to accept separately, is substantially complete, the Architect and Program Manager shall prepare ~~shall prepare~~ and a comprehensive list of items to be completed or corrected prior to final payment. Failure to include an item on such list does not alter the responsibility of the Contractor to complete all Work in accordance with the Contract Documents.

**§ 9.8.3** Upon receipt of the Contractor's list, the Architect and Program Manager will make an inspection to determine whether the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete. If the Architect's inspection discloses any item, whether or not included on the Contractor's list, which is not sufficiently complete in accordance with the Contract Documents so that the Owner can occupy or utilize the Work or designated portion thereof for its intended use, then the Architect shall so notify the Contractor, Program Manager and Owner in writing, and the Contractor shall, before issuance of the Certificate of Substantial Completion, complete or correct such item upon notification by the Architect. In such case, the Contractor shall then submit a request for another inspection by the Architect to determine Substantial Completion. Except with the consent of the Owner, the Architect shall perform no more than five (5) inspections to determine whether the Work or a designated portion thereof has attained Substantial Completion in accordance with the Contract Documents. The Owner shall be entitled to reimbursement from the Contractor for amounts paid to the Architect for any additional inspections.

**§ 9.8.4** When the Work or designated portion thereof is substantially complete, the Architect will timely prepare, sign and issue Owner's ~~a~~ Certificate of Substantial Completion that shall establish the date of Substantial Completion; establish responsibilities of the Owner and Contractor for security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work and insurance; and fix the time within which the Contractor shall finish all items on the list accompanying the Certificate. Warranties required by the Contract Documents shall commence on the date of Substantial-Final Completion of the Work or designated portion ~~thereof unless otherwise provided in the Certificate of Substantial Completion.~~

**§ 9.8.5** The Certificate of Substantial Completion shall be submitted to the Owner and Contractor for their written acceptance of responsibilities assigned to them in the Certificate. ~~Upon such acceptance, and consent of surety if any, the Owner shall make payment of retainage applying to the Work or designated portion thereof. Such payment shall be adjusted for Work that is incomplete or not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.~~



9.8.6 The Contractor shall keep all required insurance in full force, and utilities on, until the Certificate of Substantial Completion is issued, and accepted by the Owner in writing, regardless of the stated date of Substantial Completion, subject to 11.2.2. Acceptance shall not be unreasonably withheld.

### **§ 9.9 Partial Occupancy or Use**

§ 9.9.1 The Owner may occupy or use any completed or partially completed portion of the Work at any stage when such portion is designated by separate agreement with agreed to by the Owner and the Contractor in writing, provided such occupancy or use is consented to by the insurer and authorized by public authorities having jurisdiction over the Project Work. Such partial occupancy or use may commence whether or not the portion is substantially complete, provided that the Owner and Contractor have accepted in writing the responsibilities assigned to each of them for payments, retainage, if any, security, maintenance, heat, utilities, damage to the Work resulting from such occupancy, use or installation, and property and liability insurance, and have agreed in writing concerning the period for correction of the Work and commencement of warranties required by the Contract Documents. When the Contractor considers a portion substantially complete, the Contractor shall prepare and submit a list to the Architect as provided under Section 9.8.2. Consent of the Contractor to partial occupancy or use shall not be unreasonably withheld. The stage of the progress of the Work shall be determined by written agreement between the Owner and Contractor or, if no agreement is reached, by decision of the Architect. Contractor agrees that the Owner may place and install as much equipment and furnishings as is possible before completion or partial completion of portions of the Work.

§ 9.9.2 Immediately prior to such partial occupancy, ~~or~~ use, or installation, the Owner, Contractor, and Architect shall jointly inspect the area to be occupied or portion of the Work to be used in order to determine and record the condition of the Work.

§ 9.9.3 Unless otherwise expressly agreed upon in writing, partial occupancy or use of a portion or portions of the Work or installation of furnishings and equipment shall not constitute acceptance of Work not complying with the requirements of the Contract Documents, nor shall it constitute evidence of Substantial Completion or Final Completion.

9.9.4 In the event that Owner takes partial occupancy or installs furnishings and equipment prior to Substantial Completion of the Project. Contractor shall obtain an endorsement to Contractor's Builder's Risk Policy to provide extended coverage for partial occupancy if Contractor's Builder's Risk Coverage required by Article 11 would not otherwise provide such coverage.

### **§ 9.10 Final Completion and Final Payment**

§ 9.10.1 Upon receipt of the Contractor's written notice that the Work is ready for final inspection and acceptance and upon receipt of a final Application for Payment, the Architect will promptly make such inspection. When the Architect and the Program Manager finds the Work acceptable under the Contract Documents and the Contract fully performed, the Architect and the Program Manager will promptly prepare, sign, and issue Owner's Certificate of Final Completion and a final Certificate for Payment stating that to the best of the Architect's knowledge, information and belief, certifying to the Owner that, and on the basis of the Architect's and the Program Manager's on-site visits and inspections, the Work has been completed in accordance with the Contract Documents and that the entire balance, including all retainages, found to be due the Contractor and noted in the final Certificate is due and payable. The Architect's and the Program Manager final Certificate for Payment will constitute a further representation that conditions listed in Section 9.10.2 as precedent to the Contractor's being entitled to final payment have been fulfilled. Final payment shall be made by the Owner in accordance with Owner's regular schedule for payments. Architect is not required to perform more than two inspections to determine whether a designated portion of the Work has attained Final Completion in accordance with the Contract Documents. One inspection may require multiple visits and more than one day to complete The Owner shall be entitled to reimbursement from the Contractor for amounts paid to the Architect for any additional inspections cause by act or commission of Contractor.

9.10.1.1 Final Completion means actual completion of the Work, including any extras or Change Orders reasonably required or contemplated under the Contract Documents other than warranty work as further defined in the Form of Contractor's Final Completion Notice attached hereto and incorporated herein as Exhibit "D"

§ 9.10.2 Neither final payment nor any remaining retained percentage shall become due until the Contractor submits to the Architect (1) using AIA Document G706, an affidavit that payrolls, bills for materials and equipment, and

other indebtedness connected with the Work for which the Owner or the Owner's property might be responsible or encumbered (less amounts withheld by Owner) have been paid or otherwise satisfied, (2) ~~a certificate evidencing satisfactory to Owner~~ that insurance required by the Contract Documents to remain in force after final payment is currently in effect, (3) a written statement that the Contractor knows of no reason that the insurance will not be renewable to cover the period required by the Contract Documents, (4) ~~using AIA Document G707~~, consent of surety, if any, to final payment, (5) documentation of any special warranties, such as manufacturers' warranties or specific Subcontractor warranties, and (6) ~~if required by the Owner, except for amounts previously withheld by the Owner~~, other data establishing payment or satisfaction of obligations, such as ~~AIA Document G706A, notarized subcontractor's lien releases~~, receipts and releases and waivers of liens, claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract, to the extent and in such form as may be designated by the Owner. If a Subcontractor refuses to furnish a release or waiver required by the Owner, the Contractor may furnish a bond satisfactory to the Owner to indemnify the Owner against such lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance. If a lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance remains unsatisfied after payments are made, the Contractor shall refund to the Owner all money that the Owner may be compelled to pay in discharging the lien, claim, security interest, or encumbrance, including all costs and reasonable attorneys' fees. In addition, the following items must be completed and received by the Owner before Final Payment will be due:

- .1 Written certifications required by Sections 10.5, 10.6, and 10.7;
- .2 Final list of subcontractors (AIA Document G705);
- .3 Contractor's certification in Texas Education Agency's Certification of Project Compliance, located at [www.tea.state.tx.us/school.finance/facilities/cert\\_2004.pdf](http://www.tea.state.tx.us/school.finance/facilities/cert_2004.pdf);
- .4 Contractor's warranties, organized as required elsewhere in the Contract Documents;
- .5 Maintenance and Instruction Manuals;
- .6 Owner's Final Completion Certificate; and
- .7 "As-constructed record drawings." At the completion of the Project, the Contractor shall submit one (1) complete set of "as-constructed" record drawings, with all changes made during construction, including concealed mechanical, electrical, and plumbing items. The Contractor shall submit these as electronic, sepia, or other acceptable medium, in the discretion of the Owner. The "as-constructed" record drawings shall delete the seal of the Architect and/or the Engineer and any reference to those firms providing professional services to the Owner, except for historical or reference purposes.

Documents identified as affidavits must be notarized. All manuals will contain an index listing the information submitted. The Index section will be divided and identified by tabbing each section as listed in the index. Upon request, the Architect will furnish the Contractor with blank copies of the forms listed above. Final payment shall be paid by the Owner to the Contractor within thirty (30) days after Owner's Board of Trustees has voted to accept the Work and approve Final Payment.

**§ 9.10.3** If, after Substantial Completion of the Work, final completion thereof is materially delayed through no fault of the Contractor or by issuance of Change Orders affecting final completion, and the Architect so confirms, the Owner shall, upon application by the Contractor and certification by the Architect, and without terminating the Contract, make payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed, corrected, and accepted. If the remaining balance for Work not fully completed or corrected is less than retainage stipulated in the Contract Documents, and if bonds have been furnished, the written consent of the surety to payment of the balance due for that portion of the Work fully completed and accepted shall be submitted by the Contractor to the Architect prior to certification of such payment. Such payment shall be made under terms and conditions governing final payment, ~~except that~~ and it shall not constitute a waiver of Claims.

**§ 9.10.4** The making of final payment shall not constitute a waiver of any Claims by the Owner, ~~except those arising from~~

- ~~.1 liens, Claims, security interests, or encumbrances arising out of the Contract and unsettled;~~
- ~~.2 failure of the Work to comply with the requirements of the Contract Documents;~~
- ~~.3 terms of special warranties required by the Contract Documents; or~~
- ~~.4 audits performed by the Owner, if permitted by the Contract Documents, after final payment.~~

**§ 9.10.5** Acceptance of final payment by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a supplier, shall constitute a waiver of claims by that payee except those previously asserted pursuant to Article 15 ~~made in writing~~ and identified by that payee as unsettled at the time of final Application for Payment.

## ARTICLE 10 PROTECTION OF PERSONS AND PROPERTY

### § 10.1 Safety Precautions and Programs

The Contractor shall be responsible for initiating, maintaining, and supervising all safety precautions and programs in connection with the performance of the Contract and shall conform to all provisions of the "Manual of Accident Prevention in Construction," published by the Associated General Contractors of America, Inc., latest edition, and the Contractor further agrees to fully comply with all safety standards required by the Occupational Safety and Health Administration ("OSHA") 29 U.S.C. Section 651 et seq., and all amendments thereto. However, the Contractor's duties herein shall not relieve any Subcontractor or any other person or entity, including any person or entity required to comply with all applicable federal, state, and local laws, rules, regulations, and ordinances from the obligation to provide for the safety of their employees, persons, and property and their requirements to maintain a work environment free of recognized hazards. Contractor shall provide reasonable fall protection safeguards and provide approved fall protection safety equipment for use by all exposed Contractor employees.

10.1.2 Contractor's employees, agents, Subcontractors, anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable, shall not perform any service for Owner while under the influence of any amount of alcohol or any illegal controlled substance; or use, possess, distribute, or sell alcoholic beverages while on Owner's premises. No person shall: use, possess, distribute, or sell illegal or nonprescribed controlled drugs or drug paraphernalia; misuse legitimate prescription or over-the-counter drugs; or act in contravention of warnings on medications while performing the Work or while on Owner's premises. Contractor's employees, agents, Subcontractors, or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, shall not distribute or sell alcohol or drugs of any kind to Owner's students or staff, regardless of the location of the distribution or sale.

10.1.3 Contractor will comply with all applicable federal, state, and local drug and alcohol-related laws and regulations (e.g., Department of Transportation regulations, Drug-Free Workplace Act). Contractor has adopted or will adopt its own policy to assure a drug-free and alcohol-free workplace while on Owner's premises or performing the Work. Contractor will remove any of its employees, agents, subcontractors, anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable, from performing the Work any time there is suspicion of alcohol and/or drug use, possession, or impairment involving such person, and at any time an incident occurs where drug or alcohol use could have been a contributing factor. Owner has the right to require Contractor to remove any person from performing the Work any time cause exists to suspect alcohol or drug use. In such cases, the person so removed may only be considered for return to work after the Contractor certifies, as a result of a for-cause test, conducted immediately following removal, that said person was in compliance with this Contract. Contractor will not use any person to perform the Work who fails or refuses to take, or tests positive on, any for-cause alcohol or drug test.

10.1.4 Owner has also banned the presence of all weapons on the Project site, whether or not the owner thereof has a permit for a weapon, and Contractor agrees that Contractor's representatives, employees, agents, and subcontractors will abide by same. Weapons may only be permitted in Owner's parking lots if weapons are locked in personal vehicles in Owner's parking lot.

### § 10.2 Safety of Persons and Property

§ 10.2.1 The Contractor shall take reasonable precautions for safety of, and shall provide reasonable protection to prevent damage, injury, or loss to

- .1 employees on the Work, school personnel, students, and other persons on Owner's premises, and other persons who may be affected thereby, including the installation of fencing between the Work site and any connecting or adjacent property of Owner, when required by Texas Education Code Section 22.08341;
- .2 the Work and materials and equipment to be incorporated therein, whether in storage on or off the site, under care, custody, or control of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, or a Sub-subcontractor; and
- .3 other property at the site or adjacent thereto, such as other buildings, and their contents, fencing, trees, shrubs, lawns, walks, athletic fields, facilities and tracks, pavements, roadways, structures, and utilities not designated for removal, relocation, or replacement in the course of construction.

§ 10.2.2 The Contractor shall comply with, and give notices required by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, and lawful orders of public authorities, bearing on safety of persons or property or their protection from damage, injury, or loss.

§ 10.2.3 The Contractor shall implement, erect, and maintain, as required by existing conditions and performance of the Contract, reasonable safeguards for safety and protection, including installing fencing, posting danger signs and other warnings against hazards; promulgating safety regulations; and notifying the owners and users of adjacent sites and utilities of the safeguards. The Contractor shall also be responsible, at the Contractor's sole cost and expense, for all measures necessary to protect any personal or real property adjacent to the project and improvements therein. Any damage to such property or improvements shall be promptly repaired by the Contractor.

§ 10.2.4 When use or storage of ~~explosives or other~~ hazardous materials or equipment, or unusual methods are necessary for execution of the Work, the Contractor shall exercise utmost care and carry on such activities under supervision of properly qualified personnel and shall only conduct such activities after giving reasonable advance written notice of the presence or use of such materials, equipment, or methods to Owner and Architect. The storage of explosives on Owner's property is prohibited. The use of explosive materials on Owner's property is prohibited unless expressly approved in advance in advance by authorities having jurisdiction, in writing, by Owner and Architect. When use or storage of hazardous materials or equipment or unusual construction methods are necessary, the Contractor shall give the Owner, Program Manager and the Architect reasonable advance notice of the presence or use of such materials, equipment or methods.

§ 10.2.5 The Contractor shall promptly remedy damage and loss (other than damage or loss insured under property insurance required by the Contract Documents) to property referred to in Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3 caused in whole or in part by the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts they may be liable and for which the Contractor is responsible under Sections 10.2.1.2 and 10.2.1.3, ~~except damage or loss attributable to acts or omissions of the Owner or Architect or anyone directly or indirectly employed by either of them, or by anyone for whose acts either of them may be liable, and not attributable to the fault or negligence of the Contractor. The Contractor may make a Claim for the cost to remedy the damage or loss to the extent such damage or loss is attributable to acts or omissions of the Owner or Architect or anyone directly or indirectly employed by either of them, or by anyone for whose acts either of them may be liable, and not attributable to the fault or negligence of the Contractor.~~ The foregoing obligations of the Contractor are in addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.18.

§ 10.2.6 The Contractor shall designate a responsible member of the Contractor's organization at the site whose duty shall be the prevention of accidents. This person shall be the Contractor's superintendent unless otherwise designated by the Contractor in writing to the Owner and Architect. Additionally, Contractor shall submit a Safety Plan for the Owner's approval prior to commencing the Work.

Unless otherwise specified in the Contract Documents, Contractor shall be responsible for initiating, maintaining, supervising, and enforcing all safety precautions and programs in connection with the Work. It shall be the duty and responsibility of the Contractor and all of its Subcontractors to be familiar and comply with all requirements of ~~Public Law 91-596~~, 29 U.S.C. §§ 651 *et. Seq.*, the Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970, (OSHA) and all amendments thereto, and to enforce and comply with all of the provisions of the Act. Contractor shall comply with all applicable laws and regulations of any public body having jurisdiction for safety of persons or property to protect them from damage, injury or loss and shall erect and maintain all necessary safeguards for such safety and protection. However, the Contractor's duties shall not relieve any subcontractor(s) or any other person or entity (e.g., a supplier) including any person or entity with liability relative to compliance with all applicable federal, state and local laws, rules, regulations, and ordinances which shall include the obligation to provide for the safety of their employees, persons, and property and their requirements to maintain a work environment free of recognized hazards.

§ 10.2.7 The Contractor shall not load or permit any part of the construction or site to be loaded so as to cause damage or create an unsafe condition.

10.2.8 The Contractor shall do all things reasonably necessary to protect the Owner's premises and all persons from damage and injury when all or a portion of the Work is suspended for any reason.

10.2.9 The Contractor shall promptly report, in writing, to the Owner, Program Manager and Architect all accidents arising out of or in connection with the Work which causes death, bodily injury, or property damage, giving full details and statements of any witnesses. In addition, if death, serious bodily injuries, or serious property damages are caused, then the accident shall be reported immediately by any means necessary to give actual notice to the Owner's representative, Program Manager and the Architect.

10.2.10 Contractor's obligations under Section 10.2 as to each portion of the Project shall continue until Owner takes possession of and occupies that portion of the Project.

**§ 10.2.11~~8~~ Injury or Damage to Person or Property**

If either party to the Contract suffers injury or damage to person or property because of an act or omission of the other party, or of others for whose acts such party is legally responsible, written notice of the injury or damage, whether or not insured, shall be given to the other party within a reasonable time not exceeding 21 days after discovery. The written notice shall provide sufficient detail to enable the other party to investigate the matter. Contractor understands and acknowledges that, under Texas law, Owner has sovereign and/or governmental immunity as to all torts except as to the Owner's permitted use or operation of Owner's motor vehicles, subject to any defenses under law.

**§ 10.3 Hazardous Materials and Substances**

**§ 10.3.1** The Contractor is responsible for compliance with any requirements included in the Contract Documents regarding hazardous materials or substances. If the Contractor encounters a hazardous material or substance not addressed in the Contract Documents and if reasonable precautions will be inadequate to prevent foreseeable bodily injury or death to persons resulting from a material or substance, including but not limited to asbestos or polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB), encountered on the site by the Contractor, the Contractor shall, upon recognizing the condition, immediately stop Work in the affected area and notify, in writing, the Owner and Architect of the condition. In the event the Contractor encounters polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB), and the specifications require the PCB's removal, the Contractor shall remove the PCB and store it in marked containers at the jobsite provided by the Owner. If PCBs are found which are leaking, then Contractor shall stop work on the affected fixture and shall contact Owner for removal and disposal of the leaking PCBs.

10.3.1.1 In the event Contractor encounters on the Project site any Hazardous Substance, or what Contractor may reasonably believe to be a Hazardous Substance, and which is being introduced to the Work, or exists on the Project site, in a manner in violation of any applicable Environmental Laws, Contractor shall immediately stop work in the area affected and report the condition to Owner, Program Manager and Architect in writing

**§ 10.3.2** The Work in the affected area shall not thereafter be resumed except by written authorization of Owner if in fact a Hazardous Substance has been encountered and has not been rendered harmless. Contractor shall be responsible for the consequences of any failure to stop work under this Subparagraph 10.3. Upon receipt of the Contractor's written notice, the Owner shall obtain the services of a licensed laboratory to verify the presence or absence of the material or substance reported by the Contractor and, in the event such material or substance is found to be present, to cause it to be rendered harmless. Unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall furnish in writing to the Contractor and Architect the names and qualifications of persons or entities who are to perform tests verifying the presence or absence of the material or substance or who are to perform the task of removal or safe containment of the material or substance. The Contractor and the Architect will promptly reply to the Owner in writing stating whether or not either has reasonable objection to the persons or entities proposed by the Owner. If either the Contractor or Architect has an objection to a person or entity proposed by the Owner, the Owner shall propose another to whom the Contractor and the Architect have no reasonable objection. When the material or substance has been rendered harmless, Work in the affected area shall resume upon written agreement of the Owner and Contractor. By Change Order, the Contract Time shall be extended appropriately and the Contract Sum shall be increased by the amount of the Contractor's reasonable additional costs of shutdown, delay, and start up. The Contractor may be entitled to an equitable adjustment regarding the Date of Substantial Completion and/or Final Completion.

**§ 10.3.3** IF THE CONTRACTOR IMPORTS HAZARDOUS MATERIALS ONTO THE PROJECT SITE, THEN CONTRACTOR HEREBY TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, THE OWNER SHALL INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE OWNER, ITS CONTRACTOR, SUBCONTRACTORS, ARCHITECT, ARCHITECT'S CONSULTANTS, TRUSTEES, OFFICERS, AND PROGRAM MANAGER, AGENTS AND EMPLOYEES OF ANY OF THEM FROM AND AGAINST ANY CLAIMS, DAMAGES, LOSSES, AND EXPENSES, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ATTORNEYS' FEES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO RESULTING FROM SUCH IMPORTATION, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO PERFORMANCE OF THE WORK IN THE AFFECTED AREA IF IN FACT THE MATERIAL OR SUBSTANCE PRESENTS THE RISK OF BODILY INJURY OR DEATH AS DESCRIBED IN SECTION 10.3.1 AND HAS NOT BEEN RENDERED HARMLESS, PROVIDED THAT SUCH CLAIM, DAMAGE, LOSS, OR EXPENSE IS

~~ATTRIBUTABLE TO BODILY INJURY, SICKNESS, DISEASE OR DEATH, OR TO INJURY TO OR DESTRUCTION OF TANGIBLE PROPERTY (OTHER THAN THE WORK ITSELF), EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT THAT SUCH DAMAGE, LOSS, OR EXPENSE IS DUE TO THE FAULT OR NEGLIGENCE OF THE PARTY SEEKING INDEMNITY COSTS AND EXPENSES THE OWNER INCURS FOR REMEDIATION OF A MATERIAL OR SUBSTANCE THE CONTRACTOR BRINGS TO THE SITE, AS PROVIDED FOR IN SUBPARAGRAPH 3.18.~~

~~For purposes of this Agreement, the term "Hazardous Substance" shall mean and include any element, constituent, chemical, substance, compound, or mixture, which are defined as a hazardous substance by any applicable local, state or federal law, rule, ordinance, by law, or regulation pertaining to environmental regulation, contamination, clean up or disclosure, including, without limitation, The Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation and Liability Act of 1980 ("CERCLA"), The Resource Conservation and Recovery Act ("RCRA"), The Toxic Substance Control Act ("TSCA"), The Clean Water Act ("CWA"), The Clean Air Act ("CAA"), and the Marine Protection Research and Sanctuaries Act ("MPRSA"). The Occupational Safety and Health Act ("OSHA"), The Superfund Amendments and Reauthorization Act of 1986 ("SARA"), or other state superlien or environmental clean up or disclosure statutes including all state and local counterparts of such laws (all such laws, rules and regulations being referred to collectively as "Environmental Laws"). It is the Contractor's responsibility to comply with this Paragraph 10.3 based on the law in effect at the time its services are rendered and to comply with any amendments to those laws for all services rendered after the effective date of any such amendments.~~

**§ 10.3.4** The Owner shall not be responsible under this Section 10.3 for hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site ~~unless such materials or substances are required by the Contract Documents. The Owner shall be responsible for hazardous materials or substances required by the Contract Documents, except to the extent of the Contractor's fault or negligence in the use and handling of such materials or substances.~~

**§ 10.3.5** ~~For purposes of this Agreement Contract, the term "Hazardous Substance" shall mean and include any element, constituent, chemical, substance, compound, or mixture, which are defined as a hazardous substance by any applicable local, state or federal law, rule, ordinance, by-law, or regulation pertaining to environmental regulation, contamination, clean-up or disclosure, including, without limitation, The Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation and Liability Act of 1980 ("CERCLA"), The Resource Conservation and Recovery Act ("RCRA"), The Toxic Substance Control Act ("TSCA"), The Clean Water Act ("CWA"), The Clean Air Act ("CAA"), and the Marine Protection Research and Sanctuaries Act ("MPRSA"). The Occupational Safety and Health Act ("OSHA"), The Superfund Amendments and Reauthorization Act of 1986 ("SARA"), or other state superlien or environmental clean-up or disclosure statutes including all state and local counterparts of such laws (all such laws, rules and regulations being referred to collectively as "Environmental Laws"). It is the Contractor's responsibility to comply with this Paragraph 10.3 based on the law in effect at the time its services are rendered and to comply with any amendments to those laws for all services rendered after the effective date of any such amendments.~~ The Contractor shall reimburse the Owner for the cost and expense the Owner incurs (1) for remediation of hazardous materials or substances the Contractor brings to the site and negligently handles, or (2) where the Contractor fails to perform its obligations under Section 10.3.1, except to the extent that the cost and expense are due to the Owner's fault or negligence.

**§ 10.3.6** ~~In those instances in which the presence of a Hazardous Substance was set forth in the AHERA documents or In which the Contractor has other written notice of such through information given to Contractor by Owner or its representative prior to execution of the Agreement Contract, Contractor shall not be entitled to a Claim for any delays, disruption or interference it encounters. In those instances of Work stoppage due to the existence of such Hazardous Substances which were not set forth in the AHERA plans and of which the Contractor has no other prior notice, Contractor may be entitled to a Claim for delay or Work stoppage if the requirements of Article 15 are not met. If, without negligence on the part of the Contractor, the Contractor is held liable by a government agency for the cost of remediation of a hazardous material or substance solely by reason of performing Work as required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor for all cost and expense thereby incurred.~~

## **§ 10.4 Emergencies**

**10.4.1** ~~In an emergency affecting safety of persons or property, the Contractor shall act, at the Contractor's discretion, to prevent threatened damage, injury, or loss. Additional compensation or extension of time claimed by the Contractor on account of an emergency shall be determined as provided in Article 15 and Article 7. Additional compensation or extension of time claimed by the Contractor on account of an emergency shall be determined as provided in Article 15 and Article 7.~~

10.4.2 The performance of the foregoing services by the Contractor shall not relieve the subcontractors of their responsibility for the safety of persons and property and or compliance with all federal, state, and local statutes, rules, regulations, and orders of any governmental authority applicable to the conduct of the Work.

#### **10.5 ASBESTOS OR ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIALS**

10.5.1 Contractor shall submit to the Architect a written certification addressed to the Owner that all materials used in the construction of this Project contain less than 0.10% by weight of asbestos and for which it can be demonstrated that, under reasonably foreseeable job site conditions, will not release asbestos fibers in excess of 0.1 fibers per cubic centimeter. The written certification shall further state that, should asbestos fibers be found at this Project in concentrations greater than 0.1 fibers per cubic centimeter, then Contractor shall be responsible for determining which materials contain asbestos fibers and shall take all necessary corrective action to remove those materials from the Project, at no additional cost to the Owner. The written certification shall be dated, shall reference this specific Project, and shall be signed by not less than two (2) officers of the Contractors.

10.5.2 Final Payment shall not be made until this written certification has been received.

#### **10.6 LEAD-FREE MATERIAL IN POTABLE WATER SYSTEM**

10.6.1 Prior to payment of retainage and final payment, the Contractor and each subcontractor involved with the potable water system, shall furnish a written certification that the potable water system is "lead-free."

10.6.2 The written certification shall further state that should lead be found in the potable water system built under this Project, then Contractor shall be responsible for determining which materials contain lead and shall take all necessary corrective action to remove lead from the Project, at no additional cost to the Owner. The written certification shall be dated, shall reference this specific Project, and shall be signed by not less than two (2) officers of the Contractor.

#### **10.7 HAZARDOUS MATERIALS CERTIFICATION**

The Contractor shall provide written certification that no materials used in the Work contain lead or asbestos materials in them in excess of amounts allowed by federal, state, or local standards, laws, codes, rules and regulations; the Federal Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) standards; and/or the Federal Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) standards, whichever is most restrictive. The Contractor shall provide this written certification as part of submittals under the Section in the Project Manual related to Contract Closeout.

### **ARTICLE 11 INSURANCE AND BONDS**

11.0.1 No Work will be commenced, and no equipment or materials can be shipped, until all requirements of this Article have been satisfied, satisfactory evidence of insurance has been provided, and all insurance is in full force and effect. Contractor shall notify Owner, Program Manager and Architect, in writing, of any proposed nonconformity with these requirements, and shall notify Owner, Program Manager and Architect, in writing, of any insurance changes which occur during the terms required under the Contract Documents. Any deviation from these requirements can only be approved by Owner's Board of Trustees. Any nonconformity may be grounds for termination or modification of the Contract. To the extent that Contractor is unable to procure the insurance designated herein because the insurance is not reasonably available or is cost-prohibitive, then Contractor shall provide written notice to Owner's Board of Trustees. Said lack of insurance may then be grounds for termination or modification of this Contract.

11.0.2 Satisfactory evidence of insurance required by this Article shall be provided to Owner, Program Manager and Architect not later than five (5) business days after execution of the Contract by Contractor. Satisfactory evidence shall include copies of all required insurance policies, declarations, and endorsements themselves. In addition, Contractor shall also provide a duly-executed ACORD Form 25 Certificate of Liability Insurance naming Owner as a certificate holder and additional insured (except as noted in Section 11.0.4) and attaching all endorsements required herein. The Contractor shall furnish Owner all insurance amendments, renewals, notices, cancellations, and additional endorsements, as they are provided to Contractor.

11.0.3 All insurance required herein shall be obtained from a company licensed to do business with the State of Texas by the Texas Department of Insurance, and shall be underwritten by a company rated no less than "A-" X in A.M. Best's Key Rating Guide, Property-Casualty, according to the latest posted ratings available on A.M. Best's website, www.ambest.com, and that permits waivers of subrogation.

11.0.4 All insurance required herein shall name the Owner, its officers, employees, representatives, or agents, as an additional insured, except Contractor's Worker's Compensation insurance. All liability insurance required herein shall name Dallas ISD, it's officers, employees, volunteers, elected officials, Program Managers, Architects and their officers, employees, representatives, risk management consultants, or agents, as additional insureds, except Contractor's Worker's Compensation insurance and Professional Liability insurance.

11.0.5 All insurance required herein shall, by endorsement, be primary and non contributory insurance with respect to the Owner, its officers, employees, representatives, or agents. All insurance shall be written on an occurrence basis, if available, and shall contain a waiver of subrogation in favor of Owner as provided for in Section 11.3. All insurance required herein shall be primary insurance as respects the additional insured required by 11.0.4. Any insurance maintained by an additional insured shall be in excess of such insurance and shall not contribute with such primary insurance. All insurance shall be written on an occurrence basis where reasonably available, with the exception of professional liability policies, and shall contain a waiver of subrogation in favor of the Owner, Program Manager, and Architect on all claims arising out of the Project. The policies shall provide such waivers of subrogation by endorsement or otherwise. A waiver of subrogation shall be effective as to a person or entity even though that person or entity would otherwise have a duty of indemnification, contractual or otherwise, or did not pay the insurance premium directly or indirectly; and whether or not the person or entity had an insurable interest in the property damaged.

11.0.6 Any failure of Contractor to comply with the reporting provision of the policies shall not affect the coverage provided to the Owner, its officers, employees, representatives, or agents.

11.0.7 All workers on the Project must be covered by the required insurance policies of the Contractor or a Subcontractor. Contractor shall be responsible for all policy deductibles and self-insured retentions.

11.0.8 Nothing contained in this Article shall limit or waive Contractor's legal or contractual responsibilities to Owner or others. Contractor will cooperate with Owner or its designated representative to expeditiously resolve claims involving injuries to third parties, damage to the Work, or project delays. This cooperation will include providing Owner with monthly insurance carrier summary reports of builder's risk, general liability, professional liability and pollution liability claims pertaining to the Owner's projects. Contractor will provide Owner with Contractor and insurance carrier contact names and phone numbers. Contractor will be responsible for timely reporting of all claims and regulatory requirements, including MMSEA Section 111.

#### 11.0.9. Maximum Allowable Charges for CMAR CCIP Programs

In the event that the Contractor elects to utilize a Contractor Controlled Insurance Program (CCIP) the maximum to be considered reimbursable costs under this Contract will be 2% of the final Cost of the Work (including general conditions costs) but not including Contractor Fee or CCIP charges and not including the costs of any subcontracts that included the cost of insurance covered by CCIP.

This 2% cost factor will cover all insurance required to be carried by the prime contractor and all applicable subcontractors covered by this Contract (specifically 1% for worker's compensation insurance, and 1% total for general liability insurance, excess liability insurance, and umbrella liability insurance combined).

Any contractor costs incurred in connection with the Contractor's elected CCIP program that exceeds the amount reimbursed by the Owner under the formula in this section, will be considered to be covered by the Contractor's Fee. Note: Contractor will not be reimbursed for any deductible stated in the CCIP policy. The deductible is considered covered by the CCIP percent and/or the Contractor Fee.

#### 11.0.10 Maximum Allowable Charges for CMAR Liability Insurance Required by Contract

For jobs not covered by Owner Controlled Insurance Programs (OCIP) or Contractor Controlled Insurance Programs (CCIP), the amount to be reimbursed to the Contractor for all contractually required liability insurance (professional liability, general liability, umbrella liability, excess liability, and auto liability will be actual costs not to exceed a total of .65% of the net reimbursable Cost of Work (not including liability insurance and not including Contractor Fee.) If the Contractor's cost of contractually required liability insurance is greater than the amount agreed to be reimbursed per this Contract provision, the difference shall be considered to be covered by the Contractor's Fee. For



jobs covered by CCIP or OCIP, the costs of any other liability insurance will be considered to be covered by the Contractor's Fee.

#### **11.0.11 Maximum Allowable Charges for Subcontract Default Insurance provided by CMAR in lieu of Subcontract Performance Bonds**

In the event that Contractor elects to utilize a subcontractor default insurance program (sometimes referred to as SUBGUARD), the maximum amount to be considered reimbursable costs under this Contract will be .75% of the total amount of subcontracts enrolled in such an insurance program. Reimbursement for enrollment in any such program will be limited to subcontracts in excess of \$2500,000.

Any Contractor costs incurred in connection with the Contractor's elected subcontractor default insurance program that exceeds the amount reimbursed by the Owner under the formula in this section, will be considered to be covered by the Contractor's Fee. In the event that Contractor elects to bond selected subcontractors rather than enroll them in the subcontractor default insurance program, the net cost to purchase any such bonds will be reimbursed in lieu of the .75%. Note: Contractor will not be reimbursed for any deductible stated in the Subguard policy. The deductible is considered covered by the .75% and/or the Contractor Fee.

In the event that the Contractor elects to provide Subguard or a similar program of subcontractor default insurance, then the program and the coverage provided by the Contractor shall extend to any additional costs incurred by the Contractor to replace or supplement the forces of a subcontractor to provide the Work, and such circumstances shall include, but not be limited to, any partial or full termination of the contract of a subcontractor for convenience or otherwise, unless the Owner specifically directs the Contractor, in writing, to terminate the contract of a subcontractor for convenience.

### **§ 11.1 Contractor's Insurance and Bonds**

**§ 11.1.1** The Contractor and the Contractor's Subcontractors shall purchase and maintain, in a company or companies with a "Best Rating" of "A minus" or better, and licensed to do business in the State of Texas, -such insurance as will protect, the Contractor, -them and the Owner, Program Manager and Architectthe Owner, -from claims that may arise out of, or result from, the Contractor's operations under the Contract, whether such operations be by Contractor or by any Subcontractor, or by anyone directly or indirectly employed by any of them, or by anyone for whose acts any of them may be liable, at a minimum of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in this Section 11.1, in the AgreementContract or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required Such insurance shall include the following:from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located. The Owner, Architect, and Architect's consultants shall be named as additional insureds under the Contractor's commercial general liability policy or as otherwise described in the Contract Documents.

.1 Claims under workers' compensation, disability benefit, and other similar employee benefit acts that are applicable to the Work to be performed, including private entities performing work at the site, and exempt from the coverage on account of number of employees or occupation, which entities shall maintain voluntary compensation coverage at the same limit specified for mandatory coverage for the duration of the Project (see Exhibit A).

.2 Claims for damages because of bodily injury, occupational sickness or disease, or death of the Contractor's employees;

.3 Claims for damages because of bodily injury, sickness or disease, or death of any person other than the Contractor's employees;

.4 Claims for damages insured by usual personal injury liability coverage;

.5 Claims for damages, other than to the Work itself, because of injury to or destruction of tangible property, including loss of use resulting therefrom;

.6 Claims for damages because of bodily injury, death of a person, or property damages arising out of ownership, maintenance, or use of a motor vehicle;

.7 Claims for bodily injury or property damage arising out of completed operations;

.8 Claims involving contractual liability insurance applicable to the Contractor's obligations under the Contract Documents, including under Section 3.18;

.9 Claims for Products, Premises and Operations; and

.10 Claims for damages to the Work itself, through builder's risk insurance, pursuant to AIA A101-2017, Exhibit A, or AIA A133-2019, Exhibit BA.

§ 11.1.2 The insurance required by Subparagraph 11.1.1 shall be written for not less than limits of liability specified in the Contract Documents or required by law, whichever coverage is greater. Coverages, whether written on an occurrence or claims-made basis, shall be maintained without interruption from date of commencement of the Work until date of final payment and termination of any coverage required to be maintained after final payment, and with respect to the Contractor's completed operations coverage, until the expiration of the period for correction of Work or for such other period for maintenance of completed operations coverage as specified in the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall provide surety bonds of the types, for such penal sums, and subject to such terms and conditions as required by the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall purchase and maintain the required bonds from a company or companies lawfully authorized to issue surety bonds in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.

8. Contractor's Professional Liability, if applicable

If the Work performed by the Contractor or its subcontractors will include some responsibility for design, the Contractor will purchase or cause to be purchased and maintained a professional liability policy. The limits of coverage will not be less than:

\$1,000,000 each claim and annual aggregate

Coverage will include:

A waiver of subrogation in favor of Owner, Program Manager and Architect

A retroactive date that is the earlier of the start of design or the Work

Coverage for negligent acts, errors or omissions arising out of design or engineering services

An extended reporting period of 5 years after final completion

9. All Risk Builder's Risk Insurance, if applicable

If Contractor is a Construction Manager-at-Risk, then, as specified in Amendment Number One, in a total amount equal to the Guaranteed Maximum Price; otherwise, in the total amount of the Contract Sum. See Section 11.4 for Builder's Risk Insurance requirements.

11.1.2.1 The Contractor shall furnish separate payment and performance bonds covering faithful performance of the Contract and payment of obligations arising thereunder, each bond to be in a total amount equal to 100% of the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price, if the Project is a Construction Manager at Risk project, whichever is applicable. Provided, however, no limitation herein shall limit Contractor's liability under the Contract Documents. Except as provided below, such bond shall be furnished to Owner before any work begins and not later than five (5) business days after execution of the Contract by Owner. (If the Guaranteed Maximum Price is not known at the time that a Construction Manager at Risk contracts is awarded, then the sum of the payment and performance bonds must each be in an amount equal to the Project budget. The Construction Manager at Risk shall deliver the bonds not later than the tenth (10<sup>th</sup>) day after the date of the Construction Manager at Risk executes the Contract, unless the Construction Manager at Risk furnished a bid bond or other financial security acceptable to the Owner to the District to ensure that the Construction Manager will furnish the required payment and performance bonds when the Guaranteed Maximum Price is established.) All bond shall be issued by a surety company licensed, listed and authorized to issue bonds in the State of Texas by the Texas Department of Insurance, and shall fully comply with Texas Insurance Code Section 3503.001 *et seq.* and Texas Government Code Chapter 2253, or their successors. The surety company shall have a rating of not less than "A-"X according to the latest posted ratings on the A.M. Best website, www.ambest.com. The surety company shall provide, if requested, information on bonding capacity and other projects under coverage and shall provide proof to establish adequate financial capacity for this Project. Should the bond amount be in excess of ten (10%) percent of the surety company's capital and surplus, then the surety company issuing the bond shall certify that the surety company has acquired reinsurance, in a form and amount acceptable to the Owner, to reinsure the portion of the risk that exceeds ten (10%) percent of the surety company's capital and surplus with one or more insurers who are duly authorized and admitted to do business in Texas and that amount reinsured by a reinsurer does not exceed ten (10%) percent of the reinsurer's capitals and surplus. Contractor shall immediately notify the Owner and Architect in writing if there is any change in: the rating; insolvency or receivership in any State; bankruptcy; right to do business in the State; or status of Contractor's sureties at any time until Final Completion.

If the Contract amount is \$100,000 or more, the Contractor shall furnish a Performance Bond equal to one hundred percent (100%) of the Contract Sum. If the Contract amount is \$25,000 or more, the Contractor shall furnish a Payment Bond equal to one hundred percent (100%) of the Contract Sum. There shall be separate bonds, the terms of which and the sureties of which are satisfactory to the Owner and which comply with Chapter 2253, Texas Government Code, Title 10 (Vernon Supp. 1999), and all other applicable law. Contractor shall furnish a copy of the Payment Bond to each of its Subcontractors upon request. Upon the request of any person or entity appearing to be a potential beneficiary of bonds covering payment of obligations arising under the Contract, the Contractor shall promptly furnish a copy of the bonds or shall permit a copy to be furnished.

11.1.2.2 Certificates of insurance acceptable to the Owner, Program Manager and Architect shall be filed with the Owner and Architect prior to commencement of the Work. These certificates and the insurance policies required by this Paragraph 11.1 shall contain a provision that coverages afforded under the policies will not be canceled or allowed to expire until at least thirty (30) days' prior written notice has been given to the Owner. If any of the foregoing insurance coverages are required to remain in force after final payment and are reasonably available, an additional certificate evidencing continuation of such coverage shall be submitted with the final Application for Payment as required by Subparagraph 9.10.2. Information concerning a fifty percent or greater reduction of coverage on account of revised limits or claims paid under the General Aggregate, or both shall be furnished by the Contractor to the Owner, Program Manager and Architect in writing within five (5) business days of Contractor's information and belief.

Contractor's insurance shall apply separately to each insured against whose claim is made or suit is brought, except with respect to the limits of the insurer's liability

11.1.2.3 2 The Contractor shall deliver copies of the required bonds to the Owner and Architect not later than five (5) business days after execution of the Contract by Owner. All bonds will be reviewed by the Architect for compliance with the Contract Documents. In the event that the Architect has any questions concerning the sufficiency of the bonds, the bonds will be referred to the Owner or the Owner's representative with Architect's recommendation.

11.1.2.3 4 All bonds shall be originals. The Contractor shall require the attorney-in-fact who executes the required Bonds on behalf of the Surety to affix thereto a certified and current copy of the power-of-attorney. The name, address, and telephone number of a contact person for the bonding company shall be provided.

11.1.2.5 4 Bonds shall guarantee the faithful performance of all of the covenants, stipulations, and agreements of the Contract. Bonds shall be signed by an agent, resident in the State of Texas. If at any time during the continuance of the Contract, the Owner determines that the Contractor is unable to complete the Work in accordance with the Contract Documents, any of the Contractor's bonds become insufficient, the surety becomes insolvent, or the surety's rating drops below the required level, then the Owner shall have the right to require from the Contractor additional and sufficient sureties or other security acceptable to the Owner, which the Contractor shall furnish to the satisfaction of the Owner within ten (10) days after notice to do so. These contractual remedies are in addition to all remedies available by law. In default thereof, all payment or money due to the Contractor may be withheld until the Contractor provides additional surety or security.

#### 11.1.2.5 TEXAS WORKERS' COMPENSATION INSURANCE

A copy of a Certificate of insurance, a certificate of authority to self-insure issued by the commission, or a coverage agreement (TWCC-81, TWCC-83, or TWCC-84), showing statutory worker's compensation insurance coverage for the person's or entity's employees providing services on a project is required for the duration of the Project.

Duration of the Project includes the time from the beginning of the Work on the Project until the Contractor's/person's work on the Project is required for the duration of the Project, including any Warranty Period.

Persons providing services on the Project ("subcontractor") in Texas Labor Code 406.096: includes all persons or entities performing all or part of the services the Contractor has undertaken to perform on the Project, regardless of whether that person contracted directly with the Contractor and regardless of whether that person has employees. This includes, without limitation, independent contractors, subcontractors, leasing companies, motor carriers, owner-operators, employees of any such entity, or employees of any entity that furnished persons to provide services on the Project.

Services include, without limitation, providing, hauling, or delivering equipment or materials, or providing labor, transportation, or other service related to a project. Services do not include activities unrelated to the Project, such as food/beverage vendors, office supply deliveries, and delivery of portable toilets.

The contractor shall provide coverage, based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amount and filing of any coverage agreements, which meets the statutory requirements of Texas Code 401.011 (44) for all employees of the contractor providing services on the project for the duration of the Project.

The Contractor must provide a certificate of coverage to the governmental entity prior to being awarded the contract.

If the coverage period shown on the contractor's current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the project, the contractor must, prior to the end of the coverage period, file a new certificate of coverage with the governmental entity showing that coverage has been extended. The contractor shall obtain from each person providing services on a project, and provide to the governmental entity:

1. A certificate of coverage, prior to that person beginning work on the project, so the governmental entity will have on file certificates of coverage showing coverage for all persons providing services on the project; and

2. No later than seven (7) days after receipt by the Contractor, a new certificate of coverage showing extension of coverage, if the coverage period shown on the current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the project.

The Contractor shall retain all required certificates of coverage for the duration of the project and for one (1) year thereafter.

The Contractor shall notify the governmental entity in writing by certified mail or personal delivery, within ten (10) days after the contractor knew or should have known, of any change that materially affects the provision of coverage of any person providing services on the project.

The Contractor shall post on each project site a notice, in the text, form, and manner prescribed by the Texas Workers' Compensation Commission, informing all persons providing services on the project that they are required to be covered, and stating how a person may verify coverage and report lack of coverage.

The Contractor shall contractually require each person with whom it contracts to provide services on a project, to:

1. Provide coverage, based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts and filing of any coverage agreements, which meets the statutory requirements of Texas Labor Code 401.011 (44) for all its employees providing services on the project for the duration of the project.

2. Provide to the contractor, prior to that person beginning work on the project, a certificate of coverage showing that coverage is being provided for all employees of the person providing services on the project for the duration of the project;

3. Provide the contractor, prior to the end of the coverage period, a new certificate of coverage showing extension of coverage, if the coverage period shown on the current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the project;

4. Obtain from each other person with whom it contracts, and provide to the contractor:  
a. A certificate of coverage, prior to the other person beginning work on the project; and  
b. A new certificate of coverage showing extension of coverage, prior to the end of the coverage period, if the coverage period shown on the current certificate of coverage ends during the duration of the project;

5. Retain all required certificates of coverage on file for the duration of the project and for one year

thereafter:

6. Notify the governmental entity in writing by certified mail or personal delivery, within ten (10) days after the person knew or should have known, of any change that materially affects the provision of coverage of any person providing services on the Project; and

7. Contractually require each person with whom it contracts to perform as required by items 1-6, with the Certificates of coverage to be provided to the person for whom they are providing services.

By signing this contract or providing or causing to be provided a certificate of coverage, the contractor is representing to the governmental entity that all employees of the contractor who will provide services on the project will be covered by workers' compensation coverage for the duration of the project, that the coverage will be based on proper reporting of classification codes and payroll amounts, and that all coverage agreements will be filed with the appropriate insurance carrier or, in the case of a self-insured, with the commission's Division of Self-Insurance Regulation. Providing false or misleading information may subject the contractor to administrative penalties, criminal penalties, civil penalties, or other civil actions. The contractor's failure to comply with any of these provisions is a breach of contract by the contractor that entitles the governmental entity to declare the contract void if the contractor does not remedy the breach within ten (10) days after receipt of notice of breach from the governmental entity.

The coverage requirement recited above does not apply to sole proprietors, partners, and corporate officers who are excluded from coverage in an insurance policy or certificate of authority to self-insure that is delivered, issued for delivery, or renewed on or after January 1, 1996.

28 T.A.C. Section 110.110(i).

#### 11.1.2.6 BUILDER'S RISK INSURANCE

Contractor shall obtain, at its expense, a builder's risk "all-risk" or equivalent insurance policy, including boiler and machinery insurance if applicable, in the amount of the initial Contract Sum, or if applicable, Guaranteed Maximum Price, plus value of subsequent Contract modifications and cost of materials supplied or installed by others, comprising total value for the entire Work at the site on a replacement cost basis. Policy shall contain no co-insurance clause. Coverage shall insure against the perils of fire, lightning, wind storm, hurricane, hail, explosion, riot, civil commotion, smoke, aircraft, land vehicles, vandalism, malicious mischief, flood, earthquake, cold testing, collapse, subsidence, sinkhole, damage resulting from faulty workmanship or faulty materials, terrorism for certified and non-certified acts, law and ordinance coverage for renovations, and all other perils, and shall include materials stored on-site, off-site, and in transit. Owner shall be a named insured under the policy, and the insurance shall also include the interests of the Contractor, subcontractors, and sub-contractors. Contractor shall be responsible for maintaining said builder's risk insurance until the date of Substantial Completion

**§ 11.1.2.7.3** Upon the request of any person or entity appearing to be a potential beneficiary of bonds covering payment of obligations arising under the Contract, the Contractor shall promptly furnish a copy of the bonds or shall authorize a copy to be furnished.

**§ 11.1.2.8.4 Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Contractor's Required Insurance.** Within three (3) business days of the date the Contractor ~~becomes aware~~knows or should know of an impending or actual cancellation ~~or expiration~~ of any insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall provide written notice to the Owner of such impending or actual cancellation ~~or expiration~~. Upon receipt of written notice from the Contractor, the Owner shall, unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act or omission of the Owner, have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by the Contractor. The furnishing of written notice by the Contractor shall not relieve the Contractor of any contractual obligation to provide any required coverage. At least 30 calendar days prior to the date of expiration of any policy required by Section 11.1, Contractor shall provide Owner written notice of the impending expiration.

## **§ 11.2 Owner's and Architect's Insurance**

**§ 11.2.1** ~~The Owner shall be responsible for purchasing and maintaining the Owner's usual liability insurance. The Owner shall be responsible for purchasing and maintaining property and casualty insurance no later than the date of Substantial Completion and such dates of Owner responsibility shall be documented in the Certificate of Substantial Completion, of the types and limits of liability, containing the endorsements, and subject to the terms and conditions, as described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents. The~~ Owner occupies or uses any completed or partially-completed portion of the Work at any stage, then such occupancy or use must be consented to by the insurer and authorized by public authorities having jurisdiction over the Work. To the extent of overlap between Owner's property insurance and Contractor's builder's risk insurance, if any, Contractor's builder's risk shall be primary and non-contributory. ~~shall purchase and maintain the required insurance from an insurance company or insurance companies lawfully authorized to issue insurance in the jurisdiction where the Project is located.~~

**§ 11.2.2 Failure to Purchase Required Property Insurance.** ~~If the Owner fails to purchase and maintain the required property insurance, with all of the coverages and in the amounts described in the Agreement or elsewhere in the Contract Documents, the Owner shall inform the Contractor in writing prior to commencement of the Work. Upon receipt of notice from the Owner, the Contractor may delay commencement of the Work and may obtain insurance that will protect the interests of the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-Subcontractors in the Work. When the failure to provide coverage has been cured or resolved, the Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be equitably adjusted. In the event the Owner fails to procure coverage, the Owner waives all rights against the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors to the extent the loss to the Owner would have been covered by the insurance to have been procured by the Owner. The cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by a Change Order. If the Owner does not provide written notice, and the Contractor is damaged by the failure or neglect of the Owner to purchase or maintain the required insurance, the Owner shall reimburse the Contractor for all reasonable costs and damages attributable thereto. Partial occupancy or use shall not commence until the insurance company providing this insurance has consented, in writing, by endorsement or otherwise. Owner and Contractor shall take reasonable steps to obtain such consent and shall take no action without written mutual consent that would cause cancellation, lapse, or reduction of this insurance.~~

**§ 11.2.3 Architect shall be responsible for purchasing and maintaining the Architect's liability insurance, worker's compensation insurance, and errors and omissions insurance as provided in the Owner-Architect Agreement** ~~Contract Notice of Cancellation or Expiration of Owner's Required Property Insurance.~~ Within three (3) business days of the date the Owner becomes aware of an impending or actual cancellation or expiration of any property insurance required by the Contract Documents, the Owner shall provide notice to the Contractor of such impending or actual cancellation or expiration. Unless the lapse in coverage arises from an act or omission of the Contractor: (1) the Contractor, upon receipt of notice from the Owner, shall have the right to stop the Work until the lapse in coverage has been cured by the procurement of replacement coverage by either the Owner or the Contractor; (2) the Contract Time and Contract Sum shall be equitably adjusted; and (3) the Owner waives all rights against the Contractor, Subcontractors, and Sub-subcontractors to the extent any loss to the Owner would have been covered by the insurance had it not expired or been cancelled. If the Contractor purchases replacement coverage, the cost of the insurance shall be charged to the Owner by an appropriate Change Order. The furnishing of notice by the Owner shall not relieve the Owner of any contractual obligation to provide required insurance.

## **§ 11.3 Waivers of Subrogation**

**§ 11.3.1** ~~The Owner and Contractor waive all rights against (1) each other and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, each of the other; (2) the Architect and Architect's consultants; and (3) Separate Contractors, if any, and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees, for damages caused by fire, or other causes of loss, to the extent those losses are covered by property insurance required by the Agreement or other property insurance applicable to the Project, except such rights as they have to proceeds of such insurance. The Owner or Contractor, as appropriate, shall require similar written waivers in favor of the individuals and entities identified above from the Architect, Architect's consultants, Separate Contractors, subcontractors, and sub-subcontractors. The policies of insurance purchased and maintained by each person or entity agreeing to waive claims pursuant to this section 11.3.1 shall not prohibit this waiver of subrogation. This waiver of subrogation shall be effective as to a person or entity (1) even though that person or entity would otherwise have a duty of indemnification, contractual or otherwise, (2) even though that person or entity did not pay the insurance premium directly or indirectly, or (3) whether or not the person or entity had an insurable interest in the damaged property. All insurance required herein shall contain a waiver of subrogation in favor of Owner. Program Manager~~

and Architect on all claims arising out of the Project. The policies shall provide such waivers of subrogation by endorsement or otherwise.

~~§ 11.3.2 If during the Project construction period the Owner insures properties, real or personal or both, at or adjacent to the site by property insurance under policies separate from those insuring the Project, or if after final payment property insurance is to be provided on the completed Project through a policy or policies other than those insuring the Project during the construction period, to the extent permissible by such policies, the Owner waives all rights in accordance with the terms of Section 11.3.1 for damages caused by fire or other causes of loss covered by this separate property insurance. The Owner, as fiduciary, shall have power to adjust and settle any loss arising out of the Work, with insurers regardless of the purchaser of the insurance policy. The Contractor upon receipt of proceeds shall, as a fiduciary, pay all subcontractors their just shares of insurance proceeds received by the Contractor, and by appropriate agreements shall require subcontractors to make payment to their sub-subcontractors in similar manner. The Owner shall deposit in a separate account proceeds so received, which the Owner shall distribute in accordance with such agreement as the parties in interest may reach. If after such loss no other special agreement is made and unless the Owner terminates the Contract for convenience, replacement of damaged property shall be performed by the Contractor with the insurance proceeds upon issuance of a Notice to Proceed from the Owner.~~

~~11.3.3 Partial occupancy or use shall not commence until the insurance company providing this insurance has consented in writing, by endorsement or otherwise. Owner and Contractor shall take reasonable steps to obtain such consent and shall take no action without written mutual consent that would cause cancellation, lapse, or reduction of this insurance.~~

#### ~~§ 11.4 Loss of Use, and Business Interruption, and Delay in Completion Insurance~~

~~The Owner, at the Owner's option, may purchase and maintain insurance that will protect the Owner against loss of use of the Owner's property, or the inability to conduct normal operations, due to fire or other causes of loss. The Owner waives all rights of action against the Contractor and Architect for loss of use of the Owner's property, due to fire or other hazards however caused.~~

#### ~~11.4.3 WAIVERS OF SUBROGATION~~

~~The Owner and Contractor waive all rights against (1) each other and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents and employees, each of the other, and (2) the Architect, Architect's consultants, separate contractors, if any, and any of their subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents and employees, and (3) Program Manager for damages caused by fire or other perils to the extent covered by property insurance obtained pursuant to this Section 11.4, except such rights as they have to proceeds of such insurance held by the Owner as fiduciary. The foregoing waiver afforded the Architect, his agents, and employees, shall not extend the liability imposed by Section 3.18.3. The Owner or Contractor, as appropriate, shall require of the Architect, Separate Contractors, Subcontractors, Sub-subcontractors, by appropriate agreements, written where legally required for validity, similar waivers each in favor of other parties enumerated in this Section 11.4.3. The Owner or Contractor, as appropriate, shall require of the Architect, Architect's consultants, any separate contractors, subcontractors, sub-subcontractors, agents, and employees of any of them by appropriate agreements, similar waivers each in favor of the other parties enumerated herein.~~

~~11.4.4 The Contractor shall pay all subcontractors their just shares of insurance proceeds received by the Contractor, and by appropriate agreements shall require subcontractors to make payment to their sub-subcontractors in similar manner.~~

~~11.4.5 Contractor's builder's risk insurance shall be endorsed to allow partial occupancy (permission to occupy) by Owner. Contractor shall ensure that such partial occupancy will not cause cancellation, lapse, or reduction of this insurance.~~

#### ~~§11.5 Adjustment and Settlement of Insured Loss~~

~~§ 11.5.1 A loss insured under the property insurance required by the AgreementContract shall be adjusted by the Owner as fiduciary and made payable to the Owner as fiduciary for the insureds, as their interests may appear, subject to requirements of any applicable mortgagee clause and of Section 11.5.2. The Owner shall pay the Architect and Contractor their just shares of insurance proceeds received by the Owner, and by appropriate agreements the Architect and Contractor shall make payments to their consultants and Subcontractors in similar manner.~~

§ 11.5.2 Prior to settlement of an insured loss, the Owner shall notify the Contractor and Architect of the terms of the proposed settlement as well as the proposed allocation of the insurance proceeds. The Contractor and the Architect shall have 14 days from receipt of notice to object to the proposed settlement or allocation of the proceeds. If the Contractor and/or the Architect does not object, the Owner shall settle the loss and the Contractor and Architect shall be bound by the settlement and allocation. Upon receipt, the Owner shall deposit the insurance proceeds in a separate account and make the appropriate distributions. Thereafter, if no other agreement is made or the Owner does not terminate the Contract for convenience, the Owner and Contractor shall execute a Change Order for reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work in the amount allocated for that purpose. If the Contractor and/or Architect timely objects to either the terms of the proposed settlement or the allocation of the proceeds, the Owner may proceed to settle the insured loss, and any dispute between the Owner and Contractor arising out of the settlement or allocation of the proceeds shall be resolved pursuant to Article 15. Pending resolution of any dispute, the Owner may issue a Construction Change Directive for the reconstruction of the damaged or destroyed Work.

## ARTICLE 12 UNCOVERING AND CORRECTION OF WORK

### § 12.1 Uncovering of Work

§ 12.1.1 If a portion of the Work is covered contrary to the Architect's or Owner's request or to requirements specifically expressed in the Contract Documents, it must, if requested in writing by the Architect or Owner, be uncovered for the Architect's examination and be replaced at the Contractor's expense without change in the Contract Time.

§ 12.1.2 If a portion of the Work has been covered that the Architect has not specifically requested to examine prior to its being covered, the Architect or Owner may request to see such Work and it shall be uncovered by the Contractor. If such Work is in accordance with the Contract Documents, the Contractor ~~shall~~ be entitled to an equitable adjustment to the Contract Sum and Contract Time as may be appropriate. If such Work is not in accordance with the Contract Documents, the costs of uncovering the Work, and the cost of correction, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

### § 12.2 CORRECTION OF WORK

#### 12.2.1 Before Or After Substantial Completion

The Contractor shall promptly correct Work rejected by the Architect or failing to conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents, whether discovered before or after Substantial Completion and whether or not fabricated, installed or completed. Costs of correcting such rejected Work, including additional testing and inspections, ~~the cost of uncovering and replacement,~~ and compensation for the Architect's and Program Manager's services and expenses made necessary thereby, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

12.2.1.1 The Owner may make emergency repairs to the Work or take such other measures necessary under the circumstances, if the Contractor does not promptly respond to a Notice of Defect or nonconforming Work. Contractor shall be responsible to Owner for this cost if the reason for the repairs is attributable to the Contractor. If payments then or thereafter due to the Contractor are not sufficient to cover such costs, then the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner on demand

#### § 12.2.2 After Substantial Completion

§ 12.2.2.1 In addition to the Contractor's obligations under Section 3.5, if, within one year after the date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof ~~or after the date for commencement of warranties established under Section 9.9.1,~~ or by terms of any applicable special warranty required by the Contract Documents, any of the Work is found to be not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Contractor shall correct it promptly after receipt of written notice from the Owner to do so, unless the Owner has previously given the Contractor a written acceptance of such condition. The Owner shall give such written notice promptly after discovery of the condition. ~~During the one year period for correction of Work, if the Owner fails to notify the Contractor and give the Contractor an opportunity to make the correction, the Owner waives the rights to require correction by the Contractor and to make a claim for breach of warranty.~~ If the Contractor fails to correct nonconforming Work within a reasonable time during that period after receipt of written notice from the Owner or Architect, the Owner may correct the Work as provided in 12.2.2.1.1. Nothing contained in this Section 12.2 is intended to limit or modify any obligations under the law or under the Contract Documents, including any warranty obligations, expressed or implied it in accordance with Section 2.5.

12.2.2.1.1 If the Contractor fails to perform the corrective Work, then Owner may perform corrective Work, at Contractor's cost. If Owner performs corrective Work, then Owner may also remove nonconforming Work and store



the salvageable materials or equipment at Contractor's expense. If the Contractor does not pay all costs incurred by Owner within ten (10) days after written notice, then Owner may, upon ten (10) additional days' written notice, sell the removed materials and equipment in accordance with Owner's policies, and shall account for the proceeds thereof, after deducting costs and damages that should have been borne by the Contractor, including compensation for the Architect's services and expenses made necessary thereby. If such proceeds of sale do not cover costs which the Contractor should have borne, then the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner.

**§ 12.2.2** The one-year period for correction of Work shall be extended with respect to portions of Work first performed after Substantial Completion by the period of time between Substantial Completion and the actual performance of the Work.

**§ 12.2.3** The one-year period for correction of Work shall be extended by corrective Work performed by the Contractor pursuant to this Section 12.2, but only as to the corrected Work. Any corrective work performed or to be performed under or pursuant to Paragraph 12.2 shall be warranted to the same extent as the Work is warranted hereunder for the greater of the remainder of the applicable warranty (corrective) period or ninety (90) days from the date such corrective work has been completed.

**§ 12.2.3** The Contractor shall remove from the site portions of the Work that are not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents and are neither corrected by the Contractor nor accepted by the Owner.

**§ 12.2.4** The Contractor shall bear the cost of correcting destroyed or damaged construction by the Owner or Separate Contractors, whether completed or partially completed, caused by the Contractor's correction or removal of Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.

12.2.4.1 Where nonconforming Work is found, the entire area of Work involved shall be corrected unless the Contractor can completely define the limits to the Architect's satisfaction. Additional testing, sampling, or inspecting needed to define nonconforming work shall be at the Contractor's expense, and performed by the Owner's testing laboratory if such services are reasonably required by the Architect. All corrected work shall be retested at the Contractor's expense. Reasonable Architectural or Program Manager Services required to analyze nonconforming Work shall be paid for by the Contractor.

**§ 12.2.5** Nothing contained in this Section 12.2 shall be construed to establish a period of limitation with respect to other obligations the Contractor has under the Contract Documents. Establishment of the one-year period for correction of Work as described in Section 12.2.2 relates only to the specific obligation of the Contractor to correct the Work, and has no relationship to the time within which the obligation to comply with the Contract Documents may be sought to be enforced, nor to the time within which proceedings may be commenced to establish the Contractor's liability with respect to the Contractor's obligations other than specifically to correct the Work. Nothing contained in this Paragraph 12.2 is intended to limit or modify any obligations under the law or under the Contract Documents, including any warranty obligations, expressed or implied.

12.2.6 Contractor shall replace, repair, or restore any parts of the Project or furniture, fixtures, equipment, or other items placed therein (whether by Owner or another party) that are destroyed or damaged by any such parts of the Work that do not conform to the requirements of the Contract Documents or by defects in the Work.

12.2.7 The provisions of this Section 12.2 apply to Work done by Subcontractors of the Contractor as well as Work done directly by employees of the Contractor. The provision for this Section 12.2.7 shall not apply to corrective work attributable solely to the acts or omissions of any separate contractor of Owner (unless Contractor is acting in such capacities). The cost to Contractor for performing any of its obligations under this Section 12.2.7 to the extent not covered by insurance shall be borne by Contractor.

12.2.8 If, however, Owner and Contractor deem it inexpedient to require the correction of Work damaged or not done in accordance with the Contract Documents, then an equitable deduction from the Contract Sum shall be made by written agreement between Contractor and Owner. Until such settlement, Owner may withhold such sums as Owner deems just and reasonable from moneys, if any, due Contractor. The settlement shall not be unreasonably delayed by the Owner and the amount of money withheld shall be based on estimated actual cost of the correction to Owner.

### § 12.3 Acceptance of Nonconforming Work

If the Owner prefers to accept Work that is not in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents, the Owner may do so instead of requiring its removal and correction, in which case the Contract Sum will be reduced as appropriate and equitable. Such adjustment shall be effected whether or not final payment has been made.

## ARTICLE 13 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

### § 13.1 Governing Law

~~13.1.1 The Contract shall be governed by the laws of the State of Texas, and any litigation shall be conducted in state district court. Mandatory and exclusive venue for any disputes shall be in Dallas \_\_\_\_\_, county in place where the Project is located, excluding that jurisdiction's choice of law rules. If the parties have selected arbitration as the method of binding dispute resolution, the Federal Arbitration Act shall govern Section 15.4.~~  
The Contract and any disputes related to the Work shall be governed by the laws of the State of Texas. The Contract is deemed performable entirely in Dallas, Dallas County, Texas. Any litigation to enforce or interpret any terms of the Contract, or any other litigation arising out of or as a result of the Contract or the Work, shall be brought in the State District courts of Dallas County, Texas. In the event of litigation, the substantially prevailing party shall be entitled to its reasonable and necessary attorney's fees that are equitable and just.

### § 13.2 Successors and Assigns

~~13.2.1 The Owner and Contractor respectively bind themselves, their partners, successors, assigns, and legal representatives to the other party hereto and to partners, successors, assigns, and legal representatives of such other party in respect to covenants, agreements, and obligations contained in the Contract Documents. Except as provided in Section 13.2.2, neither party to the Contract shall assign the Contract, as a whole or in part, without written consent of the other. If either party attempts to make an assignment without such consent, that party shall nevertheless remain legally responsible for all obligations under the Contract. The Contractor shall not assign the Contract as a whole, or in part, without written consent of the Owner.~~

~~13.2.2 The invalidity of any part or provision of the Owner may, without consent of the Contractor, assign the Contract to a lender providing construction financing for the Project, if the lender assumes the Owner's rights and obligations under the Contract Documents shall not impair or affect in any manner whatsoever the validity, enforceability, or effect of the remainder of the Contract Documents. The Owner may, without consent of the Contractor, assign the Contract in whole or in part. In such event, the assignee shall assume the Owner's rights and obligations under the Contract Documents. The Contractor shall execute all consents reasonably required to facilitate such assignments. The Contractor shall execute all consents reasonably required to facilitate the assignment.~~

### § 13.3 Rights and Remedies

~~13.3.1 Written notice shall be deemed to have been duly served only if the writing is delivered in person to the office of the party set out on the first page of the Standard Form of Agreement Contract Between Owner and Contractor, or to such other address as has been previously clearly identified in writing by the addressee, or sent by registered or certified mail to that address. Duties and obligations imposed by the Contract Documents and rights and remedies available thereunder shall be in addition to and not a limitation of duties, obligations, rights, and remedies otherwise imposed or available by law.~~

~~13.3.2 No action or failure to act by the Owner, or Architect, or Contractor shall constitute a waiver of a right or duty afforded them under the Contract, nor shall such action or failure to act constitute approval of or acquiescence in a breach thereunder, except as may be specifically agreed upon in writing. The application of a time-is-of-the-essence clause as to any action or duty required of Contractor by the Contract Documents shall not be waived by course of performance or course of dealing by Contractor.~~

~~13.3.3 4 Neither Contractor nor any of its materialmen, laborers or Subcontractors shall have any lien rights against the Owner's lands, building funds, materials or other property. No materialmen, laborers or Subcontractors of the Contractor shall have any enforceable rights against the Owner on this Contract. Materialmen, laborers and Subcontractors of the Contractor may have rights under any Payment Bond provided by the Contractor, but cannot look to the Owner for any help in enforcement of those rights.~~

~~13.3.4 The invalidity of any part or provision of the Contract Documents shall not impair or affect in any manner whatsoever the validity, enforceability or effect of the remainder of the Contract Documents.~~

## § 13.4 Tests and Inspections

§ 13.4.1 Tests, inspections, and approvals of portions of the Work shall be made at appropriate times as required by the Contract Documents and by applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules, and regulations or lawful orders of public authorities having jurisdiction. Unless otherwise provided, the Contractor shall make arrangements for such tests, inspections, and approvals with an independent testing laboratory or entity employed by the Owner for this purpose acceptable to the Owner, or with the appropriate public authority, and shall bear all related costs of tests, inspections, and approvals which shall be included in the Cost of the Work. Provided, however, per Texas Government Code Chapter 2269, Owner shall bear all costs of construction materials, engineering, testing, and inspection services, and the verification testing services necessary for acceptance of the facility by the Owner. Owner shall bear the normal costs of these services, but not any excess costs attributable to Contractor caused scheduling problems, other Contractor error or retesting. The Contractor shall give the Architect timely notice of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may observe be present for such procedures. ~~The Owner shall bear costs of tests, inspections, or approvals that do not become requirements until after bids are received or negotiations concluded.~~ The Owner shall directly arrange and pay for tests, inspections, or approvals where building codes or applicable laws or regulations so require.

§ 13.4.2 If the Architect, Owner, or public authorities having jurisdiction determine that portions of the Work require additional testing, inspection, or approval not included under Section 13.4.1, the Owner shall provide or contract the Architect will, upon written authorization from the Owner, instruct the Contractor to make arrangements for such additional testing, inspection, or approval, ~~by an entity acceptable to the Owner, and the Contractor shall give timely notice to the Architect of when and where tests and inspections are to be made so that the Architect may be present for such procedures.~~ Such costs, except as provided in Section 13.4.3, shall be at the Owner's expense. Architect, Owner, and Contractor shall cooperate for the timely scheduling of such tests and inspections.

§ 13.4.3 If such procedures for testing, inspection, or approval under Sections 13.4.1 and 13.4.2 reveal failure of the portions of the Work to comply with requirements established by the Contract Documents, all costs made necessary by such failure, including, but not limited to, those of repeated procedures and compensation for the Architect's services and expenses, shall be at the Contractor's expense.

§ 13.4.4 Required certificates of testing, inspection, or approval shall, unless otherwise required by the Contract Documents, be secured by the Contractor and promptly delivered to the Architect, with a copy to the Owner.

§ 13.4.5 If the Architect is to observe tests, inspections, or approvals required by the Contract Documents, the Architect will do so promptly and, where practicable, at the normal place of testing.

§ 13.4.6 Tests or inspections conducted pursuant to the Contract Documents shall be made promptly to avoid unreasonable delay in the Work.

## § 13.5 Interest

Undisputed ~~P~~payments due and unpaid under the Contract Documents shall bear interest from the date payment is overdue at the rate provided by Texas Government Code Section 2251.025~~the parties agree upon in writing or, in the absence thereof, at the legal rate prevailing from time to time at the place where the Project is located.~~ Any such payment shall be deemed overdue on the thirty-first (31<sup>st</sup>) day after Owner received Architect's invoice or Contractor's completed Application for Payment for the Architect, whichever is later, if Owner's Board of Trustees meet more than once per month. Any such payment shall be deemed overdue on the forty-sixth (46<sup>th</sup>) day after Owner receives Architect's invoice or Contractor's Certificate for Payment from the Architect, if Owner's Board of Trustees meet once a month or less frequently. No interest shall be due on sums properly retained by Owner, except ~~except~~ as provided by law, or on disputed sums unpaid by Owner.

## 13.6 EQUAL OPPORTUNITY IN EMPLOYMENT

13.6.1 The Contractor and the Contractor's Subcontractors shall not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, religion, age, disability, sex, national origin, or any class otherwise protected by District policy or law. The Contractor agrees to post in conspicuous places, available to employees and applicants, notices setting forth the Contractor's nondiscrimination policies.

13.6.2 The Contractor and the Contractor's Subcontractors shall, in all solicitations or advertisements for employees placed by them or on their behalf, state that all qualified applicants will receive consideration for employment

without regard to race, religion, age, disability, sex, national origin, or any class otherwise protected by District policy or law.

### **13.7 RECORDS**

13.7.1 Contractor shall at all times through the date of Final Completion, maintain Job Records, including, but not limited to, invoices, Construction Documents, payment records, payroll records, daily reports, diaries, logs, instructions, drawings, receipts, subcontracts, purchase orders, vouchers, memoranda, other financial data and job meeting minutes applicable to the Project, in a manner which maintains the integrity of the documents. Job Records must be retained by Contractor for a least **twelve (12)** years, after the date of Final Completion of the Project. Within **five (5)** days of Owner's request, Contractor shall make such Job Records available for inspection, copying, and auditing by the Owner, Architect, or other respective representatives, at Owner's central office.

13.7.2 If Contractor is a Construction Manager at Risk, then Contractor shall also maintain, in accordance with the provisions of Section 13.7.1, the following: subcontract files, including proposals of successful and unsuccessful bidders, bid recaps, and subcontractor payments; original estimates; estimating work sheets; general ledger entries detailing cash and trade discounts received; insurance rebates and dividends; and any other supporting evidence deemed necessary by the Owner to substantiate charges related to the Contract.

13.7.3 Contractor shall keep a full and detailed financial accounting system and shall exercise such controls as may be necessary for property financial management under this Contract; the accounting and control systems shall be satisfactory to the Owner and shall be subject to the provisions of Section 13.7.1.

13.7.4 Contractor shall keep all Contract Documents related to the Project, subject to the provisions of Section 13.7.1, provided, however, Contractor shall not destroy said documents until Contractor has confirmed with Owner in writing, that Owner has obtained a copy of all as-built drawings.

13.7.5 In the event that an audit by the Owner reveals any errors/overpayments by the Owner, then the Contractor shall refund to the Owner the full amount of such overpayments within thirty (30) days of such audit findings, or the Owner, at its option, reserves the right to deduct such amounts owed to the Owner from any payments due to the Contractor.

13.7.6 Commencement of Statutory Limitation Period, As between the Owner and Contractor, after Final Certificate for Payment.

13.7.7 At any time during the term of this ~~Agreement~~Contract and for a period of ~~ten four (4)~~ **ten four (4)** years thereafter, the Owner or a duly authorized audit representative of the Owner, or the State of Texas, at its expense and at reasonable times, reserves the right to audit the Contractor's records and books relevant to all services provided under this ~~Agreement~~Contract. In the event such an audit by the Owner reveals any errors/overpayments by the Owner, the Contractor shall refund the Owner the full amount of such overpayments within thirty (30) day of such audit findings, or the Owner, at its option, reserves the right to deduct such amounts owing the Owner from any payments due the Contractor.

### **13.8 NONDISCRIMINATORY EMPLOYMENT**

13.8.1 In connection with the execution of this Contract, the Contractor shall fully comply with the District non-discrimination requirement cited below.

"The Dallas Independent School District, as an equal opportunity educational provider and employer, does not discriminate on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, national origin, disability, sexual orientation and/or age in educational programs or activities that it operates or in employment decisions. The District is required by Title VI and Title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, Title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972, Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, the Americans with Disabilities Act, and the Age Discrimination Act of 1975, as amended, as well as board policy not to discriminate in such a manner. (Not all prohibited bases apply to all programs.)"

During the performance of this Contract, the Contractor further agrees as follows:

- .1 The Contractor will not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, color, sex, religion, national origin or age;

.2 The Contractor will take affirmative action to ensure that applicants are employed and that employees are treated during employment without regard to their race, color, sex, religion, national origin or age. Such action shall include, but not be limited to, the following: employment, upgrading, demotion or transfer, recruitment or recruitment advertising; layoff or termination; rates of pay or other forms of compensation; and selection for training, including apprenticeship. The Contractor agrees to post in conspicuous places, available to employees and applicants for employment, notices setting forth the requirements of these non-discrimination provisions.

Submittal to Owner of reasonable evidence of discrimination will be grounds for termination of the AgreementContract.

This policy does not require the employment of unqualified persons.

### **13.9 CERTIFICATION OF NONSEGREGATED FACILITY**

**13.9.1** This Subparagraph is applicable to Contracts and Subcontracts exceeding \$10,000.00 which are not exempt from the provisions of the Equal Opportunity Clause.

**13.9.2** By the signing of this Contract, the Contractor signifies that it does not maintain or provide for its employees any segregated facilities at any of its establishments, and that it does not permit its employees to perform their services at any location, under its control, where segregated facilities are maintained. It certifies further that it will not maintain or provide for its employees any segregated facilities at any of its establishments, and that it will not permit its employees to perform their services at any location, under its control, where segregated facilities are maintained. The undersigned agrees that a breach of this certification is a violation of the Equal Opportunity Clause in this proposed Contract. As used in this certification, the term 'segregated facilities' means any waiting rooms, work areas, rest rooms and wash rooms, restaurants and other eating areas, time clocks, locker rooms and other storage or dressing areas, parking lots, drinking fountains, recreation or entertainment areas, transportation, and housing facilities provided for employees which are segregated on the basis of race, creed, color, or national origin, because of habit, local custom, or otherwise. It further agrees that (except where it obtained identical certifications from proposed consultants for specific time period), it will obtain identical certification from proposed Subcontractors prior to the award of a Contract exceeding \$10,000.00 which are not exempt from the provisions of the Equal Opportunity Clause; that it will retain such certifications in its files; and that it will forward the following notice to such proposed Subcontractors (except where the proposed Subcontractors have submitted identical certifications for specific time periods): Notice to Prospective Subcontractors of requirement for certification of non-segregated facilities, as required by the May 19, 1967 Order (32 FR.7439, May 19, 1967) on elimination of segregated facilities, by the Secretary of Labor, must be submitted prior to the award of a Contract exceeding \$10,000.00 which is not exempt from the provisions of the Equal Opportunity Clause. The certification may be submitted either for each subcontract or for all subcontracts during a period (i.e., quarterly, semiannually, or annually).

Note: The penalty for making false statements in offers is prescribed in 18 U.S.C. 1001.11.

### **13.10 PREVAILING WAGE RATES**

**13.10.1** In compliance with laws of the State of Texas relating to labor [Texas Government Code Section 2258.001 et seq.](#) the building construction wage rates listed in the Contract Documents have been ascertained and determined by the Owner as the general prevailing rates in the locality of Dallas Independent School District for the classifications listed. The Contractor and each Subcontractor shall pay to all laborers, workers and mechanics employed by them in the execution of this Contract not less than such rates for each craft or type of worker or mechanic needed to execute the Contract. If it becomes necessary to employ any person in a trade or occupation not herein listed, such person shall be paid not less than an hourly rate fairly comparable to the rates shown hereinafter.

**13.10.2** This determination of prevailing wages shall not be construed to prohibit the payment of more than the rates named.

**13.10.3** In compliance with the above cited law the Contractor shall forfeit, as a penalty to the Owner, Sixty Dollars (\$60.00) for each laborer, worker or mechanic employed, for each calendar day, or portion thereof, such laborer, worker or mechanic is paid less than the rates stipulated hereinafter for any work done under this Contract by him or any Subcontractor under him.

13.10.4 Owner reserves the right to receive and review payroll records, payment records, and earning statements of employees of Contractor, and of Contractor's Subcontractors and Sub-subcontractors.

13.10.5 In executing the Work under the Contract Documents, Contractor shall comply with all applicable state and federal laws, including but not limited to, laws concerned with labor, equal employment opportunity, safety and minimum wages.

### **13.11 CERTIFICATION OF ASBESTOS-FREE PROJECT**

13.11.1 Contractor shall submit to the Architect a letter addressed to the Owner certifying that all materials used in the construction shall be asbestos free. The General Contractor shall provide certification for himself, all subcontractors, vendors, suppliers, and other entities, stating that materials and/or equipment used in the construction of the project do not contain asbestos in any form or concentration. Certification letters shall be dated, shall reference this specific Project, and shall be signed by not less than two officers of the construction company.

13.11.2 Final Payment shall not be made until this letter of certification has been received.

### **13.12 CERTIFICATION OF LEAD-FREE POTABLE WATER SYSTEM**

13.12.1 Contractor shall submit to the Architect a letter, addressed to the Owner, stating that any components of the potable water system installed by the Contractor are lead-free as defined by the Safe Drinking Water Act Amendment of 1986 and the Lead Contamination Control Act of 1988.

13.13 Responsibility For Contractor's Forces. The Contractor shall be responsible for the actions of Contractor's forces, and Subcontractor's forces to enforce the Owner's drug-free, alcohol-free, and tobacco-free zone. Contractor agrees to abide by Owner's policies prohibiting the use of tobacco, alcohol or illegal drugs in any form on any property owned, operated, or maintained by the Owner. Contractor agrees to require all subcontractors and sub-subcontractors to abide by these policies. Violation of this provision shall constitute a material breach of this agreement.

### **13.14 FAMILY CODE CHILD SUPPORT CERTIFICATION**

By signing this AgreementContract, the Contractor certifies as follows: "Under Section 321.006, Texas Family Code, the vendor or applicant certifies that the individual or business entity named in this contract, bid, or application is not ineligible to receive the specified grant, loan, or payment and acknowledges that this contract may be terminated and payment may be withheld if this certification is inaccurate.

### **13.15 NON-COMPENSATION REQUIREMENT**

The Owner may not accept a bid or award a contract that includes proposed financial participation by a person who received compensation from the Owner to participate in preparing the specifications or request for proposals on which the bid or contract is based. The Contractor is described as vendor in the statutory quote below:

"Under Section 2155.004, Government Code, the vendor certifies that the individual or business entity named in this bid or contract is not ineligible to receive the specified contract and acknowledges that this contract may be terminated and payment withheld if this certification is inaccurate."

### **13.16 8 PROPRIETARY INTERESTS AND CONFIDENTIAL INFORMATION**

13.16.1 8 Neither Architect nor Contractor shall use the image or likeness of Owner's Project or Owner's official logo or emblem and any other trademark, service mark, or copyrighted or otherwise protected information of Owner, without Owner's prior written consent. Contractor and Architect shall not have any authority to advertise or claim that Owner endorses Architect or Contractor's services, without Owner's prior written consent.

13.16.2 Neither Architect nor Contractor shall disclose any confidential information of Owner which comes into the possession of Architect or Contractor at any time during the Project, including but not limited to: pending real estate purchases, exchange, lease, or value; information related to litigation; the location and employment of security devices, security access codes; student likenesses; student record information; employee information; or any other information deemed confidential by law.

13.16.3 The parties acknowledge that, as a public entity in the State of Texas, Owner is subject to, and must comply with, the provisions of the Texas Public Information Act, Texas Government Code Section 552.001, et seq., and the Texas Open Meetings Act, Texas Government Code, Section 551.001, et seq.

13.16.4 All information owned, possessed, or used by Owner which is communicated to, learned, developed or otherwise acquired by Contractor in the performance of services for Owner, which is not generally known to the public, shall be confidential and Contractor shall not, beginning on the date of first association or communication between Owner and Contractor and continuing through the term of this AgreementContract and at any time thereafter, disclose, communicate or divulge, or permit disclosure, communication or divulgence, to another or use for Contractor's own benefit or the benefit of another, any such confidential information, unless required by law. Except when defined as part of the Project, Contractor shall not make any press releases, public statements, or advertisement referring to the Project or the engagement of Contractor as an independent contractor of Owner in connection with the Project, or release any information relative to the Project for publications, advertisement or any other purpose without prior written approval of Owner. Contractor shall obtain assurances similar to those contained in this Subparagraph from persons, agents, and subcontractors retained by Contractor. Contractor acknowledges and agrees that a breach by Contractor of the provisions hereof will cause Owner irreparable injury and damage. Contractor, therefore, expressly agrees that Owner shall be entitled to injunctive and/or other equitable relief to prevent or otherwise restrain a breach of this AgreementContract.

.1 Contractor acknowledges and agrees that the Owner has an interest in maintaining and otherwise protecting the image and reputation of the Owner's official logo or emblem and any other trademarks, copyrighted or otherwise protected materials of the Owner (hereinafter referred to as the "Owner's Protected Materials"), and that in order to accomplish this purpose, the Owner must in all cases assure itself that the Owner's Protected Materials are at all times used in a manner consistent with the Owner's policies, administrative regulations, and this AgreementContract.

.2 Contractor agrees that the Owner must, therefore, have the right to examine and approve or disapprove such use in writing in advance of use, the contents, appearance and presentation of any and all advertising, promotional or other similar materials proposed by the Contractor to be used in connection with any advertising or promotion utilizing Owner's Protected Materials.

13.17.8 The Contractor shall have bear full responsibility for utilizing means and methods that may result in an overstress of any structure or any part or member of it during construction. The Contractor shall fully check the effect of his operations in this regard, and shall provide all temporary support and connections required.

13.18.9 The Contractor shall protect and be responsible for any damage to or loss of its (his/her) work, tools, equipment, or material, from the date of the Contract until the acceptance of the Work and shall make good without cost to the Owner, any damage or loss that may occur during this period. All material affected by weather shall be covered and protected to keep it from damage while being transported to the site, as well as when it is stored on the site. The Contractor at its (his/her) own expense and option shall employ watchmen or erect fencing at such time as necessary to protect his work, tools, equipment or material by the Contractor and the fact that the Owner has a watchman, if any, shall not mean that the Owner has undertaken, nor does the Owner undertake, to protect work, tools, equipment and materials from theft or mysterious disappearance.

13.19 The Contractor should only take direction on any issues regarding the Project when provided by the Owner's Office of Construction Services or the Program Manager or Architect.

13.20 The Contractor and subcontractor shall ensure that on-site fraternization shall not occur between personnel under the Contractor's or subcontractor's direct or indirect supervision and students, school employees and the general public.

### 13.21 PARTNERING

Contractor will participate in a partnering process if requested by Owner.

### 13.22 AS-BUILT DRAWINGS

Prior to issuance of the Certificate of Final Completion by Architect and Program Manager, the Contractor shall submit to Architect a complete set of as-built drawings, with all changes made during construction, including

concealed mechanical, electrical and plumbing items clearly shown. The Contractor shall submit these drawings in a medium acceptable to the Architect. Based upon the as-built drawings received from Contractor, Architect shall, within thirty days after receipt of the as-built drawings from Contractor, complete Record Drawings.

## ARTICLE 14 TERMINATION OR SUSPENSION OF THE CONTRACT

### § 14.1 Termination by the Contractor

§ 14.1.1 The Contractor may terminate the Contract if the Work is stopped for a period of ninety 390 consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, under direct or indirect contract with the Contractor, for any of the following reasons, which are the sole grounds for termination under this Subparagraph 14.1.1.:

- .1 Issuance of an order of a court or other public authority having jurisdiction that requires all Work to be stopped;
- .2 An act of government, such as a declaration of national emergency, that requires all Work to be stopped; or
- .3 Because the Architect has not issued a Certificate for Payment and has not notified the Contractor of the reason for withholding certification as provided in Section 9.4.1, or because the Owner has not made payment of undisputed sums due on an approved Certificate for Payment within the time stated in the Contract Documents, ~~or~~
- ~~.4 The Owner has failed to furnish to the Contractor reasonable evidence as required by Section 2.2.~~

§ 14.1.2 The Contractor may terminate the Contract if, through no act or fault of the Contractor, a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, their agents or employees, or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work, under direct or indirect contract with the Contractor, repeated suspensions, delays, or interruptions of the entire Work by the Owner as described in Section 14.3, constitute in the aggregate more than 100 percent of the total number of days scheduled for completion, or 120 days in any 365-day period, whichever is less.

§ 14.1.3 If one of the reasons described in Section 14.1.1 or 14.1.2 exists, then, after the applicable time period, the Contractor may, upon seven (10) days' written notice to the Owner and Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner payment for Work executed, and for proven unrecoverable loss with respect to materials, equipment, tools, and construction equipment and machinery incurred to the date of termination as well as reasonable overhead and profit on Work not executed, and costs incurred by reason of such termination. If the Work is stopped for ninety (90) consecutive days for any reason described in Subparagraphs 14.1.1 or 14.1.2, the Contractor may, upon fourteen (14) days written notice to the Owner and Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner payment for Work executed, and for proven loss with respect to materials, equipment, tools, and construction equipment and machinery, including reasonable overhead, profit and damages to date of termination.

14.1.4 If the Work is stopped for a period of ninety (690) consecutive days through no act or fault of the Contractor, or a Subcontractor, a Sub-subcontractor, or their agents or employees or any other persons or entities performing portions of the Work because the Owner has ~~repeatedly~~ persistently failed to fulfill the Owner's obligations under the Contract Documents with respect to matters important to the progress of the Work, the Contractor may, upon ~~twenty~~ fourteen (2014) additional days' written notice to the Owner and the Architect, terminate the Contract and recover from the Owner as provided in Section 14.1.3.

14.1.5 Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained herein or in the other Contract Documents, neither the Owner or any other party shall be responsible for damages for loss of anticipated profits on Work not performed on account of any termination described in Subparagraphs 14.1.1, 14.1.2 and 14.1.3.

### 14.2 Termination by the Owner for Cause

14.2.1 The Owner may terminate the Contract if the Contractor

- .1 persistently or repeatedly refuses or fails to supply enough properly skilled workers or proper materials;
- .2 fails to make payment to Subcontractors or ~~s~~Suppliers in accordance with the respective agreements between the Contractor and the Subcontractors or ~~s~~Suppliers;
- .3 repeatedly disregards applicable laws, statutes, ordinances, codes, rules and regulations, or lawful orders of a public authority; or persistently disregards laws, ordinances, or rules, regulations or orders of a public authority having jurisdiction; or



- 4 otherwise is guilty of substantial breach of a provision of a material breach of provision of the Contract Documents;
- 5 fails to furnish the Owner, upon written request, with assurances satisfactory to the Owner, evidencing the Contractor's ability to complete the Work in compliance with all the requirements of the Contract Documents; or
- 6 engages in serious or repeated worker misconduct in violation of Article 3.3.2;
- 7 engages in conduct that would constitute a violation of state or federal criminal law, including but not limited to, the laws prohibiting certain gifts to public servants, or engages in conduct that would constitute a violation of the Owner's ethics or conflict of interest policies; or
- 8 fails to proceed continuously and diligently with the construction and completion of the Work, except as permitted under the Contract Documents.

§ 14.2.2 When any of the reasons described in Section 14.2.1 exist, subject to any prior rights of the surety, and upon certification by the Architect that sufficient cause exists to justify such action, the Owner may, without prejudice to any other rights or remedies of the Owner and after giving the Contractor and the Contractor's surety, if any, seven days' written notice, terminate employment of the Contractor and may, subject to any prior rights of the surety:

- 1 Exclude the Contractor from the site and ~~Take possession of the site and~~ of all materials, equipment, tools, and construction equipment and machinery thereon owned by the Contractor;
- 2 Accept assignment of subcontracts pursuant to Section 5.4; and
- 3 Finish the Work by whatever reasonable method the Owner may deem expedient. Upon written request of the Contractor, the Owner shall furnish to the Contractor a detailed accounting of the costs incurred by the Owner in finishing the Work.

§ 14.2.3 When the Owner terminates the Contract for one of the reasons stated in Section 14.2.1, the Contractor shall not be entitled to receive further payment until the Work is finished. Any further payment shall be limited to amounts earned to the date of Contractor's removal.

§ 14.2.4 If the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum exceeds costs of finishing the Work, including compensation for the Architect's and Program Manager's services and expenses made necessary thereby, and other damages incurred by the Owner and not expressly waived, exceed the unpaid balance of the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price (if the Project is a Construction Manager at Risk project), such excess shall be paid to then the Contractor and/or its Surety shall pay the difference to the Owner. ~~If such costs and damages exceed the unpaid balance, the Contractor shall pay the difference to the Owner.~~ The amount to be paid to the Contractor or Owner, as the case may be, shall be certified by the Architect the Initial Decision Maker, upon application, and this obligation for payment shall survive termination of the Contract.

14.2.5 The parties hereby agree that: 1) if an order for relief is entered on behalf of the Contractor, pursuant to Chapter 11 of the U.S. Bankruptcy Code; 2) if any other similar order is entered under any debtor relief laws; 3) if Contractor makes assignments for the benefit of one or more of its creditors; 4) if a receiver is appointed for the benefit of its creditors; or 5) if a receiver is appointed on account of its insolvency, any such event could impair or frustrate Contractor's performance of the Contract Documents. Accordingly, it is agreed that upon occurrence of any such event, Owner shall be entitled to request of Contractor or its successor in interest, adequate assurance of future performance in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Contract Documents. Failure to comply with such request within ten (10) days of delivery of the request shall entitle Owner to terminate the Contract and to the accompanying rights set forth in Subparagraphs 14.2.1 through 14.2.6. In all events, pending receipt of adequate assurance of performance and actual performance in accordance with the Contract Documents, Owner shall be entitled to proceed with the Work with Owner's own forces or with other Contractors on a time and material or other appropriate basis, the cost of which will be charged against the Contract Sum.

If a Performance Bond has been furnished and the Contractor is declared by the Owner to be in default under the Contract, the Surety shall promptly remedy the default by completing the Contract in accordance with its terms and conditions, or by obtaining a bid or bids in accordance with its terms and conditions. At Owner's election, upon determination by the Owner and the Surety of the lowest responsible bidder, the Surety will complete the Work or will arrange for a Contract between such bidder and the Owner, and make available as Work progresses sufficient funds to pay the cost of completion less the balance of the Contract Sum, but not exceeding the Penal Sum of the bond and other costs and damages for which the Surety may be liable under the bond. The phrase 'balance of the Contract Sum' as used herein shall mean the total amount payable by the Owner to the Contractor under the Contract and amendments thereto less the amount previously paid by the Owner to the Contractor.

14.2.6 As required by Texas Government Code Chapter 2253, if a Performance Bond has been furnished and the Contractor is declared by the Owner to be in default under the Contract, then the Surety shall promptly perform the Work, in full accordance with the plans, specifications, and Contract Documents. Unless otherwise agreed in writing between the Surety and the Owner, the Surety shall complete the Work by the Surety entering into a Contract acceptable to Owner, with a Contractor acceptable to Owners, and shall obtain new Payment and Performance Bonds as required by law.

#### **§ 14.3 Suspension by the Owner for Convenience**

**§ 14.3.1** The Owner may, without cause, order the Contractor in writing to suspend, delay or interrupt the Work, in whole or in part for such period of time as the Owner may determine.

~~**§ 14.3.2** The Contract Sum, Guaranteed Maximum Price, and Contract Time shall be adjusted, by mutual written agreement, for increases in the cost and time caused by suspension, delay, or interruption under Section 14.3.1. Adjustment of the Contract Sum shall include profit. An adjustment shall be made to the Contract Sum calculated under Article 7.~~ No adjustment shall be made to the extent

- .1 that performance is, was, or would have been, so suspended, delayed, or interrupted, by another cause for which the Contractor is responsible; or
- .2 that an equitable adjustment is made or denied under another provision of the Contract.

#### **§ 14.4 Termination by the Owner for Convenience**

**§ 14.4.1** The Owner may, at any time, terminate the Contract for the Owner's convenience and without cause. Furthermore, if this Contract is a multi-year contract funded through Owner's current general funds that are not bond funds, then the Owner's Board of Trustees has the right to not appropriate adequate monies for the next fiscal year and to terminate this Contract at the end of each fiscal year during the term of the Contract, without the Owner incurring any further liability to Contractor as a result of such termination.

**§ 14.4.2** Upon receipt of written notice from the Owner of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Contractor shall

- .1 cease operations as directed by the Owner in the notice;
- .2 take actions necessary, or that the Owner may direct, for the protection and preservation of the Work; and
- .3 except for Work directed to be performed prior to the effective date of termination stated in the notice, terminate all existing subcontracts and purchase orders and enter into no further subcontracts and purchase orders.

**§ 14.4.3** In case of such termination for the Owner's convenience, the Owner shall pay the Contractor for Work properly executed; and for proven unrecoverable loss with respect to materials, equipment, tools, and construction equipment and machinery incurred to the date costs incurred by reason of the termination, including costs attributable to termination of Subcontracts; and the termination fee, if any, set forth in the Agreement. Such payment shall not cause the Contract Sum, or Guaranteed Maximum Price, if the Project is a Construction Manager at Risk Project, to be exceeded. Such payment shall not include overhead and profit for Work not executed.

14.4.4 Upon determination by a Court of competent jurisdiction that termination of the Contractor pursuant to Section 14.2 was wrongful, such termination will be deemed converted to a termination for convenience pursuant to Section 14.4, and Contractor's remedy for wrongful termination shall be limited to the recovery of the payments permitted for termination for convenience as set forth in Section 14.4.

### **ARTICLE 15 CLAIMS AND DISPUTES**

#### **§ 15.1 Claims**

##### **§ 15.1.1 Definition**

A Claim is ~~any demand or assertion by one of the Contractor parties seeking, as a matter of right, payment of additional compensation under the Contract Documents, money, interpretation of the Contract Document terms, a change in the Contract Time, or other relief with respect to the terms of the Contract. The term "Claim" also includes other disputes and matters in question between the Owner and Contractor arising out of or relating to the Contract. The responsibility to substantiate Claims shall rest with the party Contractor making the Claim. This Section 15.1.1 does not require the Owner to file a Claim in order to impose liquidated damages in accordance with the Contract Documents.~~ any demand or assertion by the Contractor that it should be paid more money than the

Contract Sum or granted more contract time by the Owner because of action or inaction on the part of Owner, any Owner representative, Architect, or any party for whom Owner is responsible, or any party with whom Owner has separately contracted for other portions of the Project, including, but not limited to, any demand or assertion that Contractor's performance has been delayed, interrupted or interfered with, that Contractor's performance has been accelerated, constructively accelerated, or suspended, that Contractor's performance has been wrongfully terminated, that there has been a failure of payment, that Contractor has encountered concealed or unknown conditions, that Contractor has encountered hazardous materials, that actions or omissions of the Owner have been wrongful related in any way to the Work, that a time extension grant was inadequate, that there has been a breach of contract, or that Contractor is entitled to any other relief, on any legal or equitable theory, related to the Work or the Contract. This definition of Claim is not intended to create any right of action where the right of action does not otherwise exist under applicable law or other provisions of this Contract.

### § 15.1.2 Notice Requirement Time Limits on Litigation Claims

The Owner and Contractor shall commence all Claims litigation and causes of action against the other and arising out of or related to the Contract, whether in contract, tort, breach of warranty or otherwise, in accordance with the requirements of the binding dispute resolution method selected in the Agreement and within the period specified by applicable law, but in any case of the Owner, not more than 120 years after the date of Final Substantial Completion of the Work. The Owner and Contractor waive all Claims and causes of action not commenced in accordance with this Section 15.1.2. Within fourteen (14) calendar days of the first occurrence of an event that Contractor has any reason to believe might result in a Claim, or within fourteen (14) calendar days of Contractor's discovery of the first occurrence of an event that Contractor has any reason to believe might result in a Claim if the first occurrence of the event was willfully hidden from the Contractor, the Contractor shall file a written document clearly captioned "Notice of Claim" with Owner, Program Manager and the Architect. The Notice shall clearly set out the specific matter of complaint, and the impact or damages, which may occur or have occurred as a result thereof, to the extent the impact or damages can be assessed at the time of the Notice. If the impact or damages cannot be assessed as of the date of the Notice, the Notice shall be amended at the earliest date that is reasonably possible. It is imperative that Owner have timely, specific Notice of a potential problem in order that the problem can be mitigated promptly.

15.1.2.1 In addition to the Notice required by Subparagraph 15.1.2, the Contractor shall also file a document captioned "Claim" with the Owner, Program Manager and Architect within ninety-one (91) days of occurrence of any event resulting in a Claim for damages, giving notice of the Claim. Contractor agrees that this is a reasonable Notice requirement. Any Claim or portion of a Claim that has not been made the specific subject of a Notice strictly in accordance with the requirements of this section is waived.

### § 15.1.3 Notice of Claims Continuing Contract Performance

After receipt of a Notice of Claim, the Architect shall have fourteen (14) calendar days to render a decision, which shall be stated in writing and delivered to the Contractor, the Owner and the Program Manager via facsimile, regular mail or hand delivery. If the Architect fails to render a decision in writing with the fourteen (14) days, the Claim shall be deemed accepted. Within five (5) calendar days of receipt of the Architect's written decision, Contractor may file a written appeal of the decision to the Program Manager. The Program Manager shall have ten (10) calendar days to render a decision, which shall be stated in writing and delivered to the Contractor, Architect and the Owner via facsimile, regular mail or hand delivery. If the Program Manager fails to render a decision in writing within the ten (10) days, the claim shall be deemed accepted. Within five (5) calendar days of receipt of the Program Manager's written decision, Contractor may file a written appeal of the decision with the **Deputy Superintendent of Business Services**. Within fourteen (14) calendar days of the receipt of an appeal, an Appeals Board consisting of the **Deputy Superintendent of Business Services, Chief Operations Officer**, and a representative of the offices of Legal Services shall render a written decision. Any Claim determination requiring a Change Order must be approved by the Board of Trustees. The filing, or rejection of a Claim does not entitle Contractor to stop performance of the Work. The Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of the Contract during the pendency of any Claim, excepting termination or under Owner's direction to stop the Work. Any Claim that would require expenditure in excess of \$10,000.00, or that would require a Change Order, must be reviewed by the Program Manager and the Appeals Board using the appeals process described in this section.

15.1.3.1 Claims by either the **Owner or** Contractor, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered prior to expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2, shall be initiated by written notice to the **other party Owner** and to the **Initial Decision Maker with a copy sent to the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision Maker**. Claims by **Contractor either party** under this Section 15.1.3.1 **shall must be**

initiated within 21 calendar days after occurrence of the event giving rise to such Claim or within 21 calendar days after the eContractor ~~claimant~~ first knew or should have known ~~recognizes~~ the condition giving rise to the Claim, whichever is later ~~earlier~~. Claims must be initiated by written notice titled: "Notice of Claim" ("Notice") and sent to the Architect and Owner's designated representatives. The Notice shall clearly set out the specific matter of complaint, and the impact which may occur or have occurred as result thereof, to the extent that the impact can be assessed at the time of the Notice. If the impact cannot be assessed as of the date of the Notice, then the Notice shall be amended at the earliest date that is reasonably possible. It is imperative that Owner receive timely specific Notice of any potential problem identified by Contractor in order that the problem can be mitigated or resolved promptly. Claims not filed as required by this Section shall be waived.

§ 15.1.3.2 Claims by either the Owner or Contractor, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered after expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2, shall be initiated by written notice to the other party. In such event, no decision by the Initial Decision Maker is required.

15.1.3.3 When Owner has an applicable claim for construction defects, Owner shall comply with the provisions of Texas Government Code Chapter 2272 related to the provision of notice of defects and the Contractor's or Architect's opportunity to cure.

#### § 15.1.4 Continuing Contract Performance - Claims Handling Following Construction

The acceptance of final payment shall constitute a waiver of Claims by the Contractor, which have not previously been identified in a Notice of Claim under 15.1.2 and a Claim under 15.1.2.1 and specifically reserved in the final Application for Payment.

§ 15.1.4.1 Time Limits on Litigation. The Owner and Contractor shall commence all litigation whether in contract, tort, breach of warranty or otherwise, in accordance with the requirements of the dispute resolution method selected in the Contract and within the period specified by applicable law, but in the case of the Owner, not more than eight (8) years after the date of Final Substantial Completion of the Work, unless extended in accordance with Texas Civil Practice and Remedies Code Section 16.009. The Owner and Contractor waive all Claims and causes of action not commenced in accordance with this Section 15.1.2.

#### 15.1.4.2 Pre-Litigation Mediation

.1 Pending final resolution of a Claim, except as otherwise agreed in writing or as provided in Section 9.7, as amended, and Article 14, as amended, the Contractor shall proceed diligently with performance of the Contract and the Owner shall continue to make undisputed payments for Work performed in accordance with the Contract Documents. Except as to claims for injunctive relief, neither party may commence litigation relating to any Claim arising under this Agreement/Contract without first submitting the Claim to Mediation. The parties shall share the mediator's fee and any filing fees equally, and the mediation shall be held in Dallas, Texas. Agreement/Contracts reached in mediation must be approved by the Board of Trustees and shall thereafter be enforceable as settlement agreements in any court having jurisdiction thereof. Mediation shall be conducted by a mediator selected jointly by the Owner and Contractor.

15.1.4.3 ~~The Contract Sum and Contract Time shall be adjusted in accordance with the Initial Decision Maker's decision, subject to the right of either party to proceed in accordance with this Article 15. The Architect will issue Certificates for Payment in accordance with the decision of the Initial Decision Maker.~~

§ 15.1.5 Claims For Concealed Or Unknown Conditions. Only if conditions are encountered at the site which are (a) subsurface or otherwise concealed physical conditions which differ materially from those indicated in the Contract Documents, (b) unknown physical conditions of an unusual nature, which differ materially from those ordinarily found to exist and generally recognized as inherent in construction activities of the character provided for in the Contract Documents or (c) in the case of renovation Work, any condition of the pre-existing construction to be renovated, that is materially different from any of the conditions that could reasonably have been expected to be present in preexisting construction of the age and type encountered on the Project, then Contractor shall be entitled to make a Claim if it can satisfy all of the requirements of Paragraph 15.1.

15.1.5.1 No adjustment in the Contract Time or Contract Sum shall be permitted, however, in connection with a concealed or unknown condition which does not differ materially from those conditions disclosed or which reasonably should have been disclosed by Contractor's (1) prior inspections, tests, reviews and preconstruction services for the Project, or (2) inspections, tests, review and preconstruction services which were given to Contractor

by Owner, Architect or Owner's representative or which Contractor had the opportunity to make or should have performed in connection with the Project.

### 15.1.6 Calculating Claim Amount

In calculating the amount of any Claim, the following standards will apply:

- .1 No indirect or consequential damages will be allowed;
- .2 No recovery shall be based on a comparison of planned expenditures to total actual expenditures, or on; Estimated losses of labor efficiency, or on a comparison of planned man loading to actual man loading, or any other analysis that is used to show damages indirectly;
- .3 Damages are limited to extra costs specifically shown to have been directly caused by a proven wrong;
- .4 The maximum daily limit on any recovery for delay shall be the amount originally estimated by the Contractor for job overhead costs divided by the total number of calendar days of Contract Time called for in the original Contract;
- .5 No damages will be allowed for home office overhead or other home office charges, or any Eichlay formula calculation; and
- .6 No profit will be allowed on any Claim.

**§ 15.1.6.1** If the Contractor wishes to make a Claim for an increase in the Contract Time, written notice as provided herein shall be given. The Contractor's Claim shall include an estimate of ~~cost and of~~ probable effect of delay on progress of the Work. In the case of a continuing delay, only one Claim is necessary.

**§ 15.1.6.2** If adverse weather conditions are the basis for a Claim for additional time, such Claim shall be documented by data substantiating that weather conditions were abnormal for the period of time, could not have been reasonably anticipated, and ~~prevented the execution of major items of work on normal working days had an adverse effect on the scheduled construction.~~

**15.1.6.3.4** Time extensions may be granted for rain days in any month when the cumulative number of rain days during that month exceeds the number scheduled, provided that the rainfall prevented the execution of major items of work on normal working days. No day will be counted as a rain day when substantial Contractor forces are able to perform Work on the Project for more than fifty percent (50%) of the usual workday or when the stage of the Work on the Project is not adversely impacted. The number of rain days shown in the above schedule for the first and last months of the Contract will be prorated in determining the total number of rain days expected during the period of the Contract. No delays or extensions shall be granted for mud conditions.

**15.1.6.4.5** No extension of time shall be made to the Contractor because of hindrances or delays from any cause which is the fault of Contractor or Contractor's Subcontractors or under Contractor's control. Claims for extension of time may only be considered because of rain delays, or because of hindrances or delays which are the fault of Owner and/or under Owner's control, but only to the extent that Substantial Completion of the Project is adjusted beyond the original Substantial Completion date. Only claims for extension of time shall be considered because of hindrances or delays not the fault of either Contractor or Owner, but only to the extent that Substantial Completion of the Project exceeds the Substantial Completion date established for the Work. Board approval shall be required for any extension of time. No damages shall be paid for delays. Contractor shall only be entitled to time extensions per the terms of the Contract Documents.

**15.1.6.5.6** Requests for time extension shall be submitted on a monthly basis and shall specify the time delay, the cause of the delay, and the responsible party for the delay, whether Contractor, Owner, rain day, or other. No claims for damages for delay shall be made by Contractor. Any claim not submitted under the terms of this Section shall be waived.

### **§ 15.1.7 Waiver of Claims for Consequential Damages**

The Contractor and Owner waives all Claims against ~~Ownereach other for consequential damages arising out of or relating to this Contract, including, but not limited to, any amount owed as compensation for the increased cost to perform the Work as a direct result of Owner caused delays or acceleration. This mutual waiver includes~~

- ~~1 damages incurred by the Owner for rental expenses, for losses of use, income, profit, financing, business and reputation, and for loss of management or employee productivity or of the services of such persons; and~~
- ~~2 damages incurred by the Contractor for principal office expenses including the compensation of personnel stationed there, for losses of financing, business and reputation, and for loss of profit, except anticipated profit arising directly from the Work.~~

~~This mutual waiver is applicable, without limitation, to all consequential damages due to either party's termination in accordance with Article 14. Nothing contained in this Section 15.1.7 shall be deemed to preclude assessment of liquidated damages, when applicable, in accordance with the requirements of the Contract Documents.~~

#### **15.1.8 Injury Or Damage To Person Or Property**

If either party to the Contract suffers injury or damage to persons or property because of an act or omission of the other party, or of others for whose acts such party is legally responsible, written notice of such injury or damage, whether or not insured, shall be given to the other party as provided herein. The Notice shall provide sufficient detail to enable the other party to investigate the matter.

#### **§ 15.2 Initial Decision Resolution of Claims and Disputes**

~~§ 15.2.1 Claims by the Contractor against the Owner, including excluding those alleging an error or omission by the Architect, where the condition giving rise to the Claim is first discovered after expiration of the period for correction of the Work set forth in Section 12.2.2 or arising under Sections 10.3, 10.4, and 11.5, shall be referred to the Initially Decision Maker for initial decision. to (The Architect for written recommendation will serve as the Initial Decision Maker, unless otherwise indicated in the Agreement. Except for those Claims excluded by this Section 15.2.1, an initial decision shall be required as a condition precedent to mediation of any Claim. If An initial recommendation by the Architect shall be required as a condition precedent to mediation or litigation of all Claims by the Contractor arising prior to the date final payment is due, unless decision has not been rendered within 30 days have passed after the Claim has been referred to the Architect with no recommendation having been rendered by the Architect after the Claim has been referred to the Initial Decision Maker, the party asserting the Claim may demand mediation and binding dispute resolution without a decision having been rendered. Unless the Initial Decision Maker and all affected parties agree, the Initial Decision Maker will not decide disputes between the Contractor and persons or entities other than the Owner.~~

~~§ 15.2.2 The Architect shall Initial Decision Maker will review Claims and within ten (10) days of the receipt of a Claim take one or more of the following actions: (1) request additional supporting data from the Contractor claimant or a response with supporting data from the other party, or (2) make a written recommendation to the Owner, with a copy to the Contractor, reject the Claim in whole or in part, (3) approve the Claim, (4) suggest a compromise, or (5) advise the parties that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim if the Initial Decision Maker lacks sufficient information to evaluate the merits of the Claim or if the Initial Decision Maker concludes that, in the Initial Decision Maker's sole discretion, it would be inappropriate for the Initial Decision Maker to resolve the Claim.~~

~~§ 15.2.3 In evaluating Claims, the Architect Initial Decision Maker may, but shall not be obligated to, consult with or seek information from either party or from persons with special knowledge or expertise who may assist the Architect Initial Decision Maker in making a written recommendation rendering a decision. The Initial Decision Maker may request the Owner to authorize retention of such persons at the Owner's expense.~~

~~§ 15.2.4 Owner, Architect, or their respective agents, within five (5) working days of request by Owner, Architect, or their respective agents. Job records must be retained by Contractor and all subcontractors for a least twelve (12) years after the date of Final Completion of the Project. If the Architect Initial Decision Maker requests a party to provide a response to a Claim or to furnish additional supporting data, such party shall respond, within ten days after receipt of the request, and shall either (1) provide a response on the requested supporting data, (2) advise the Architect Initial Decision Maker when the response or supporting data will be furnished, or (3) advise the Architect Initial Decision Maker that no supporting data will be furnished. Upon receipt of the response or supporting data, if any, the Initial Decision Maker will either reject or approve the Claim in whole or in part.~~

~~§ 15.2.5 The Initial Decision Maker will render an initial decision approving or rejecting the Claim, or indicating that the Initial Decision Maker is unable to resolve the Claim. This initial decision shall (1) be in writing; (2) state the reasons therefor; and (3) notify the parties and the Architect, if the Architect is not serving as the Initial Decision~~

~~Maker, of any change in the Contract Sum or Contract Time or both. The initial decision shall be final and binding on the parties but subject to mediation and, if the parties fail to resolve their dispute through mediation, to binding dispute resolution. Following receipt of the Architect's written recommendation regarding a Claim, the Owner and Contractor shall attempt to reach agreement as to any adjustments to the Contract Sum or Guaranteed Maximum Price and/or Contract Time. If no agreement can be reached, then either party may request mediation of the dispute pursuant to Section 15.3.~~

~~§ 15.2.6 Upon receipt of a Claim against the Contractor or at any time thereafter, the Architect or the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety, if any, of the nature and amount of the Claim. If the Claim relates to a possibility of a Contractor's default, the Architect or the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety and request the surety's assistance in resolving the controversy. Either party may file for mediation of an initial decision at any time, subject to the terms of Section 15.2.6.1.~~

~~§ 15.2.6.1 Either party may, within 30 days from the date of receipt of an initial decision, demand in writing that the other party file for mediation. If such a demand is made and the party receiving the demand fails to file for mediation within 30 days after receipt thereof, then both parties waive their rights to mediate or pursue binding dispute resolution proceedings with respect to the initial decision.~~

~~§ 15.2.7 In the event of a Claim against the Contractor, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety, if any, of the nature and amount of the Claim. If the Claim relates to a possibility of a Contractor's default, the Owner may, but is not obligated to, notify the surety and request the surety's assistance in resolving the controversy.~~

~~§ 15.2.8 If a Claim relates to or is the subject of a mechanic's lien, the party asserting such Claim may proceed in accordance with applicable law to comply with the lien notice or filing deadlines.~~

### ~~§ 15.3 Mediation~~**Alternative Dispute Resolution**

~~§ 15.3.1 Claims arising out of or related to the Contract, except those waived shall, be subject to mediation. Owner and Contractor expressly agree that mediation shall be a condition precedent to the initiation of any litigation out of such Claims. Claims for injunctive relief shall not be subject to this Section.~~

~~§ 15.3.2 The parties shall endeavor to resolve their Claims by mediation. Requests for mediation shall be filed in writing, with the other party to the Contract. Mediation shall be subject to and in accordance with Chapter 154 of the Texas Civil Practice & Remedies Code. Mediation shall be conducted by a mutually agreed upon mediator. In the event that the parties are unable to agree on a mediator, then the parties shall jointly request the appointment of a neutral mediator by a District Judge in the county in which the Project is located.~~

~~§ 15.3.3 The parties shall share the mediator's fee equally and, if any filing fee is required, shall share said fee equally. Mediation shall be held within the county where the Owner's main administrative office is located, unless another location is mutually agreed upon by the parties. Agreements reached in mediation shall be reduced to writing, considered for approval by the Owner's Board of Trustees, signed by the parties, if approved by the Board of Trustees, and if signed, shall thereafter be enforceable as provided by the laws of the State of Texas.~~

~~§ 15.3.4 Any claim not resolved in mediation shall be subject to litigation pursuant to Section 13.1.~~

### ~~§ 15.4~~**No Arbitration**

~~§ 15.4.1 Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in the Contract Documents or in any document forming a part hereof, there shall be no mandatory arbitration for any dispute arising hereunder.~~

~~§ 15.4.1.1 A demand for arbitration shall be made no earlier than concurrently with the filing of a request for mediation, but in no event shall it be made after the date when the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim would be barred by the applicable statute of limitations. For statute of limitations purposes, receipt of a written demand for arbitration by the person or entity administering the arbitration shall constitute the institution of legal or equitable proceedings based on the Claim.~~

~~§ 15.4.2 The award rendered by the arbitrator or arbitrators shall be final, and judgment may be entered upon it in accordance with applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.~~

~~§ 15.4.3 The foregoing agreement to arbitrate and other agreements to arbitrate with an additional person or entity duly consented to by parties to the Agreement, shall be specifically enforceable under applicable law in any court having jurisdiction thereof.~~

~~§ 15.4.4 Consolidation or Joinder~~

~~§ 15.4.4.1 Subject to the rules of the American Arbitration Association or other applicable arbitration rules, either party may consolidate an arbitration conducted under this Agreement with any other arbitration to which it is a party provided that (1) the arbitration agreement governing the other arbitration permits consolidation, (2) the arbitrations to be consolidated substantially involve common questions of law or fact, and (3) the arbitrations employ materially similar procedural rules and methods for selecting arbitrator(s).~~

~~§ 15.4.4.2 Subject to the rules of the American Arbitration Association or other applicable arbitration rules, either party may include by joinder persons or entities substantially involved in a common question of law or fact whose presence is required if complete relief is to be accorded in arbitration, provided that the party sought to be joined consents in writing to such joinder. Consent to arbitration involving an additional person or entity shall not constitute consent to arbitration of any claim, dispute or other matter in question not described in the written consent.~~

~~§ 15.4.4.3 The Owner and Contractor grant to any person or entity made a party to an arbitration conducted under this Section 15.4, whether by joinder or consolidation, the same rights of joinder and consolidation as those of the Owner and Contractor under this Agreement.~~

15.5 Contractor stipulates that Owner is a political subdivision of the State of Texas, and, as such, enjoys immunities from suit and liability provided by the Constitution and laws of the State of Texas. By entering into this Contract, Owner does not waive any of its immunities from suit and/or liability, except as otherwise specifically provided herein and as specifically authorized by law.

15.6 In any adjudication under this Contract, reasonable and necessary attorneys' fees may be awarded to the prevailing party.

**ARTICLE 16 CONTRACTOR ACCOUNTS, RECORDS, AND INSPECTION**

16.1 Contractor, and all subcontractors, shall at all times maintain job records, including, but not limited to, invoices, payment records, payroll records, daily reports, logs, diaries, and job meeting minutes, applicable to the project. Contractor, and all subcontractors, shall make sure reports and records available to inspection by the Owner, Architect, or their respective agents, within five (5) working days of request by Owner, Architect, or their respective agents. Job Records must be retained by Contractor and all subcontractors for at least twelve (12) years after the date of Final Completion of the Project.

16.2 Contractor's and all subcontractors' records, which shall include but not be limited to accounting records (hard copy, as well as computer readable data if it can be made available), written policies and procedures; subcontract files (including proposals of successful and unsuccessful bidders, bid recaps, etc.); original estimates; estimating work sheets; correspondence; back charge logs and supporting documentation; general ledger entries detailing cash and trade discounts earned; bond and insurance rebates and dividends; and any other supporting evidence deemed necessary by the Owner to substantiate charges related to any matters related to the Contract (including interviews with Contractor's personnel and Subcontractor's personnel) shall be open to inspection and subject to audit and/or reproduction by Owner's agent or its authorized representative to the extent necessary to adequately permit evaluation and verification of (a) Contractor compliance with Contract requirements, (b) compliance with Owner's business ethics policies, and (c) compliance with provisions for pricing or claims submitted by the Contractor or any of its payees. The Owner or its designee shall be afforded access to all of the Contractor and all subcontractors' records pursuant to the provisions of this Article throughout the term of this Contract and for a period of twelve (12) years after final payment or longer if required by law.

**ARTICLE 17 BUSINESS ETHICS**

17.1 During the course of pursuing contracts, and the course of Contract performance, Contractor and its Subcontractors and vendors will maintain business ethics standards aimed at avoiding real or apparent impropriety or conflicts of interest. No substantial gifts, entertainment, payments, loans or other considerations beyond that which would be collectively categorized as incidental shall be made to any personnel of the Owner, its Program Managers, or its Architects, or to family members of any of them. At any time Contractor believes there may have



been a violation of this obligation, Contractor shall notify Owner of the possible violation. Owner is entitled to request a representation letter from Contractor, its Subcontractors or vendors at any time to disclose all things of value passing from Contractor, its Subcontractors or vendors to Owner's personnel, its Program Managers and its Architects

17.2 The Owner may, by written notice to the Contractor, cancel the Contract for Construction without liability to the Contractor if it is determined by the Owner that gratuities, in the form of entertainment, gifts, or anything of monetary value, were offered or given by the Contractor, or any agent, or representative of the Contractor, to any officer or employee of the Dallas Independent School District with a view toward securing a contract or securing favorable treatment with respect to the awarding, amending, or making of any determinations with the respect to the performing of such a contract. In the event the Construction AgreementContract is cancelled by the Owner pursuant to this provision, Owner shall be entitled, in addition to any other rights and remedies, to recover or withhold the amount of the cost incurred by the Contractor in providing such gratuities.



Executed this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.

OWNER: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

CONTRACTOR: \_\_\_\_\_

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

GENERAL CONTRACTOR NAME

OWNER (Signature)

Dwayne Thompson, Chief Business Officer  
*(Printed name and title)* \_\_\_\_\_ *Date*

CONTRACTOR (Signature)

GC Signer's Printed Name, Title  
*(Printed name and title)* \_\_\_\_\_ *Date*

Approved As To Form:

\_\_\_\_\_  
SCHOOL ATTORNEY (Signature) \_\_\_\_\_ *Date*

**SECTION 00 55 00 – NOTICE TO PROCEED FORM**

<b>Name of Contractor</b>	
---------------------------	--

The following form will be used by the District as a formal notice to proceed with pre-construction and construction activities, respectively.

The “Notice to Proceed” is the authorization to proceed with the work in accordance with said Construction Contract and the Contract Documents. This form shall be executed after issuance of the executed contract and purchase order.

# **NOTICE TO PROCEED**

Date

GENERAL CONTRACTOR FULL NAME OF COMPANY

General Contractor Rep.

Address

City, State Zip

PROJECT: School Name, TEA Org#, associated with CSP Package #

OWNER: Dallas Independent School District

ATTENTION:

This notice shall be your authorization to proceed with the work in accordance with the terms and conditions as referenced in the Construction Contract and the Contract documents as enumerated therein.

Furthermore, the date of (fill in date here) is hereby established as day "0" (zero) of the stated Construction Schedule and establishes (fill in substantial completion date here), as the date of Substantial Completion unless modified in accordance with the General and Supplementary Conditions of the Contract.

FOR DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT

By \_\_\_\_\_

Title \_\_\_\_\_

Dallas ISD Construction Services  
Linus D. Wright Dallas ISD Administration Building Suite 800  
Dallas, TX 75231  
(972) 925-7200  
[www.dallasisd.org](http://www.dallasisd.org)

26/11/2024

**BOND NO.** \_\_\_\_\_

**TEXAS STATUTORY PERFORMANCE BOND  
(PUBLIC WORKS)**

THE STATE OF TEXAS )  
COUNTY OF DALLAS )

KNOW ALL BY THESE PRESENTS

That, \_\_\_\_\_  
*(Legal Name of Contractor)*

(hereinafter called the Principal), as Principal, and

\_\_\_\_\_  
*(Legal Name of Surety)*

a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of \_\_\_\_\_, with its principal office in the city of \_\_\_\_\_, licensed to do business in the State of Texas and admitted to write bonds, as surety, (hereinafter called the Surety), are held and firmly bound unto the Dallas Independent School District, (hereinafter called the Oblige), in the amount of

\$ \_\_\_\_\_  
*(Numeric)*

( \_\_\_\_\_ )  
*(Words)*

for the payment whereof, the said Principal and Surety bind themselves, and their heirs, administrators, executors, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

WHEREAS, the Principal has entered into a certain written contract with the Oblige, dated the

\_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_, generally described as:

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

*(List Project Description From Agreement)*

to do and perform certain construction work as provided in said contract and the related plans, specifications, general conditions and other contract documents, all of which are by reference made a part hereof as fully and to the same extent as if copied at length herein.

NOW, THEREFORE, the conditions of this Obligation is such that if the Principal shall faithfully perform all of the work in accordance with the plans, specifications, general conditions and contract documents, and shall faithfully perform each, every and all other obligations incumbent upon him under the terms of said written contract referred to, and shall fully indemnify and save harmless the Oblige from all costs, expense and damage which it may suffer or incur because of Principal's default, or failure so to do, then this obligation shall be void, otherwise it shall remain in full force and effect.

**BOND NO.** \_\_\_\_\_

In the event Principal shall default in the faithful performance of the work called for by said written contract, plans, specifications and contract documents, the Surety shall within 15 days of the determination of default (determined as provided in said contract, general conditions and contract documents) take over and assume completion of said contract, or within such 15 day period make other arrangements satisfactory with the Oblige for completion of the contract, and said Surety shall become entitled thereupon to the payment or benefit of the balance of the contract price as the same matures according to its terms.

The Surety, for the protection of the Oblige herein, waives notice of, and hereby consents to any subsequent modification or alteration both in the work to be performed by the Principal, and the consequent price or sums to be paid by the Oblige, as well as any other change, or amendment, addition or deletion in the contract documents during the progress of the work, including but not limited to all extensions of time or other indulgences permitted the Principal.

Notwithstanding any other provision; the liability of the Surety on this bond shall never exceed the penal sum stated in first paragraph.

This Performance Bond is given in compliance with the terms and provisions of Chapter 2253 of the Texas Government Code as amended by the Acts of Legislature, and all liabilities on this bond shall be determined in accordance with the provisions of said Chapter, to the same extent as if it were copied at length herein. This bond and all of the provisions herein contained shall be solely for the protection of the named Oblige which has awarded the contract referred to.

The undersigned, corporate Surety, does by the execution of this Bond solemnly warrant and represent that it is duly authorized to do business in Texas.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the said Principal and Surety have signed and sealed this instrument this \_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_\_.

**CONTRACTOR AS PRINCIPAL:**

\_\_\_\_\_  
*Name of Company (Please print or type)*

\_\_\_\_\_  
*Signature of Authorized Company Representative*

\_\_\_\_\_  
*Name & Title of Authorized Company Representative (Please print or type)*

\_\_\_\_\_  
*Witness*

\_\_\_\_\_  
*Attest*

**SURETY:**

\_\_\_\_\_  
*Name of Company (Please print or type)*

\_\_\_\_\_  
*Signature of Attorney-In-Fact*

\_\_\_\_\_  
*Name & Title (Please print or type)*

Seal: (if any)

**BOND NO.** \_\_\_\_\_

*(Performance Bond Continued from Page 2)*

**NOTE:**

- 1) This Performance Bond applies to all contracts in excess of \$100,000.00 involving a contract for construction, alteration or repair of any public building or the completion or prosecution of any public work.
- 2) This bond must be payable to the awarding authority, Dallas Independent School District, as the named Obligee, and it must be approved as to form by such awarding authority.
- 3) This bond must be furnished before any work is commenced.
- 4) Surety must be a corporate surety duly authorized to do business in Texas.
- 5) This PERFORMANCE BOND must be in the full amount of the contract which it secures.
- 6) Power of Attorney from Corporate Surety must be attached to this Performance Bond.

**BOND NO.** \_\_\_\_\_

**TEXAS STATUTORY PAYMENT BOND  
(PUBLIC WORKS)**

THE STATE OF TEXAS )  
COUNTY OF DALLAS )

KNOW ALL BY THESE PRESENTS

That, \_\_\_\_\_  
*(Legal Name of Contractor)*

(hereinafter called the Principal), as Principal, and

\_\_\_\_\_

*(Legal Name of Surety)*

a corporation organized and existing under the laws of the State of \_\_\_\_\_, with its principal office in the city of \_\_\_\_\_, licensed to do business in the State of Texas and admitted to write bonds, as surety, (hereinafter called the Surety), are held and firmly bound unto the Dallas Independent School District, (hereinafter called the Oblige), in the amount of

\$ \_\_\_\_\_  
*(Numeric)*

( \_\_\_\_\_ )  
*(Words)*

for the payment whereof, the said Principal and Surety bind themselves, and their heirs, administrators, executors, successors and assigns, jointly and severally, firmly by these presents.

WHEREAS, the Principal has entered into a certain written contract with the Oblige, dated the

\_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_, generally described as:

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

*(List Project Description From Agreement)*

to do and perform certain construction work as provided in said contract and the related plans, specifications, general conditions and other contract documents, all of which are by reference made a part hereof as fully and to the same extent as if copied at length herein.

NOW, THEREFORE, the conditions of this Obligation is such that if the Principal shall promptly make payment to all claimants supplying labor and material (as hereafter defined) in the prosecution of the work provided in said contract, the related plans, specifications, general conditions and contract documents, then this obligation shall be void, otherwise it shall remain in full force and effect.



**BOND NO.** \_\_\_\_\_

This Payment Bond is given in compliance with the terms and provisions of Chapter 2253 of the Texas Government Code as amended by the Acts of Legislature, and all liabilities on this bond shall be determined in accordance with the provisions of said Chapter, to the same extent as if it were copied at length herein. The claimants referred to in this bond are those defined by such Chapter 2253, and this bond shall be solely for the protection of all such claimants supplying labor and material as defined in such Chapter, in the prosecution of the work provided for in said contract, and shall be for the use of such claimant and none other.

The undersigned, corporate Surety, does by the execution of this Bond solemnly warrant and represent that it is duly authorized to do business in Texas.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the said Principal and Surety have signed and sealed this instrument this \_\_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_\_\_.

**CONTRACTOR AS PRINCIPAL:**

Seal: (if any)

\_\_\_\_\_

*Name of Company (Please print or type)*

\_\_\_\_\_

*Signature of Authorized Company Representative*

\_\_\_\_\_

*Name & Title of Authorized Company Representative (Please print or type)*

\_\_\_\_\_

*Witness*

\_\_\_\_\_

*Attest*

**SURETY:**

\_\_\_\_\_

*Name of Company (Please print or type)*

\_\_\_\_\_

*Signature of Attorney-In-Fact*

\_\_\_\_\_

*Name & Title (Please print or type)*

**BOND NO.** \_\_\_\_\_

3/3

*(Payment Bond Continued from Page 2)*

**NOTE:**

- 1) This Payment Bond applies to all contracts in excess of \$25,000.00 involving a contract for construction, alteration or repair of any public building or the completion or prosecution of any public work.
- 2) This bond must be payable to the awarding authority, Dallas Independent School District, as the named Obligee, and it must be approved as to form by such awarding authority.
- 3) This bond must be furnished before any work is commenced.
- 4) Surety must be a corporate surety duly authorized to do business in Texas.
- 5) This PAYMENT BOND must be in the FULL amount of the contract which it secures.
- 6) Power of Attorney from Corporate Surety must be attached to this Payment Bond.

3/3

# **DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT CONSTRUCTION MINIMUM SAFETY PROGRAM GUIDELINES MANUAL**



# Construction Services Minimum Safety Program Guidelines

---

2023 Revision

# 1. Table of Contents

<b>1. Table of Contents .....</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>2. FOREWORD.....</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>3. POLICY STATEMENT .....</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>4. PROGRAM OBJECTIVES .....</b>	<b>7</b>
4.1 Active Participation of All Contractors.....	7
<b>5. LOSS CONTROL RESPONSABILITIES .....</b>	<b>8</b>
5.1 Local Laws and Requirements .....	8
5.2 Dallas ISD Safety Orientation and Badging.....	9
5.3 Campus Readiness.....	10
5.4 Protecting the General Public.....	10
5.5 Work Performed Near Existing District Right-of-Way .....	11
5.6 General Contractors.....	11
5.7 Site-Specific Safety Plan .....	13
5.8 Work Areas.....	13
5.9 Site-Specific Safety Orientation.....	13
5.10 Jobsite Trailer Postings .....	13
5.11 General Contractor Project Manager.....	14
5.12 General Contractor Safety Representative .....	14
5.13 General Contractor Site-Superintendent .....	15
5.14 Subcontractor Competent Person .....	16
5.15 Safety Committee .....	17
5.16 Bond Safety Committee Meeting.....	17
5.17 Weekly Site-Safety “Toolbox Talk” Meetings .....	18
5.18 First Aid and Medical Treatment .....	18
5.19 Incident Investigations .....	19
5.20 Substance Abuse.....	19
5.21 Site Visitors and Group Tours.....	20
<b>6. MINIMUM CONSTRUCTION SAFETY GUIDELINES.....</b>	<b>22</b>
6.1 Safe Plan of Action (SPA) Guidelines .....	22
6.2 Repeating Scopes of Work.....	23
6.3 Job Hazard Analysis.....	23
6.4 Personal Protective Equipment .....	24
6.5 Hazard Communication.....	25
6.6 Respiratory Protection .....	26
6.7 Fire Prevention .....	26
6.8 Housekeeping .....	27

6.9	Silica Control.....	28
6.10	Sanitation.....	28
6.11	Demolition and Site Clearance.....	28
6.12	Demolition Safe Plan of Action (SPA) .....	29
6.13	Confined Space Entry.....	29
6.14	Confined Space Safe Plan of Action (SPA) .....	29
6.15	Trenching and Excavations .....	30
6.16	Trenching and Excavation Safe Plan of Action (SPA) .....	31
6.17	Pier Drilling .....	32
6.18	Pier Drilling Safe Plan of Action (SPA) .....	33
6.19	Locating Utilities.....	33
6.20	Utility and Electrical Shutdowns.....	34
6.21	Utility and Electric Shutdown Safe Plan of Action (SPA).....	34
6.22	Electrical Work.....	35
6.23	Lockout/Tagout (LOTO).....	35
6.24	Electrical Power Lines.....	36
6.25	Fall Prevention and Protection .....	36
6.26	Elevated Work Safe Plan of Action (SPA) .....	37
6.27	Roofing.....	38
6.28	Melting Kettles .....	38
6.29	Scaffolding .....	39
6.30	Floor and Wall Openings .....	40
6.31	Stairways and Ladders.....	41
6.32	Crane Operations .....	42
6.33	Crane Operations Safe Plan of Action (SPA) .....	43
6.34	Steel Erection .....	44
6.35	Steel Erection Safe Plan of Action (SPA) .....	47
6.36	Aerial Crane Operations .....	47
6.37	Aerial Crane Operations Safe Plan of Action (SPA) .....	48
6.38	Hot Work .....	50
6.39	Welding and Cutting .....	50
6.40	Compressed Gas Cylinders .....	51
6.41	Earth Moving Equipment and Powered Industrial Trucks .....	51
6.42	Haul Routes .....	52
6.43	Traffic Control.....	52
6.44	Environmental and Hygiene.....	53

6.45	Spill Prevention and Response .....	53
6.46	Portable Relocation .....	53
<b>7.</b>	<b>INCIDENT NOTIFICATION GUIDELINES .....</b>	<b>54</b>
7.1	DISD Incident/Crisis Notification Flowchart.....	56
7.2	Incident Investigations .....	57
7.3	Incident Follow-up Guidelines .....	57
7.4	Contributing Factors to Consider .....	58
<b>8.</b>	<b>CONSTRUCTION SAFETY FOR STUDENTS .....</b>	<b>58</b>
8.1	Introduction .....	58
8.2	Separation of Construction Activities .....	58
<b>9.</b>	<b>CRISIS COMMUNICATION .....</b>	<b>60</b>
9.1	Suggested Steps for Crisis Situations.....	60
9.2	EMERGENCY TELEPHONE NUMBERS.....	60
9.3	Emergency Planning.....	61
<b>10.</b>	<b>CONTRACTOR SAFETY AUDITS.....</b>	<b>61</b>
10.1	Purpose .....	61
10.2	Jobsite Safety Inspections .....	61
10.3	Inspections by Regulatory Agencies .....	62
<b>11.</b>	<b>GREENFIELD PROJECTS .....</b>	<b>62</b>
11.1	Greenfield Shutdown Guidelines .....	63
11.2	Greenfield Badging .....	63
<b>12.</b>	<b>UNMANNED AIRCRAFT SYSTEM (DRONE) POLICY.....</b>	<b>64</b>
12.1	Operating Requirements.....	64
12.2	Pre-Operation Procedure .....	64
<b>EXHIBITS .....</b>		<b>65</b>
EXHIBIT A –	Campus Readiness Form.....	66
EXHIBIT B –	Job Hazard Analysis (JHA).....	67
EXHIBIT C –	Demolition SPA Cover Letter .....	71
EXHIBIT D –	Confined Space SPA Cover Letter.....	72
EXHIBIT E –	Trenching and Excavation SPA Cover Letter .....	73
EXHIBIT F –	Pier Drilling SPA Cover Letter.....	74
EXHIBIT G –	Utility Shutdown SPA Cover Letter .....	75
EXHIBIT H –	Electrical Shutdown SPA Cover Letter .....	76
EXHIBIT I –	Shutdown Authorization Form .....	77
EXHIBIT J –	Elevated Work SPA Cover Letter .....	78
EXHIBIT K –	Crane Operation SPA Cover Letter .....	79
EXHIBIT L –	Steel Erection SPA Cover Letter.....	80

EXHIBIT M – Aerial Crane Operation SPA Cover Letter.....	81
EXHIBIT N – Hot Work Permit.....	82
EXHIBIT O – Incident Investigation Report.....	83
EXHIBIT P – Safety Inspection Checklist .....	84
EXHIBIT Q – Contractor Acknowledgement Statement .....	90
<b>ATTACHMENTS .....</b>	<b>91</b>
Dallas ISD Orientation Location and Schedule .....	92
Site-Specific Safety Plan Guidelines .....	93
Crisis Communications Poster.....	95
Visitor’s Release and Hold Harmless Agreement .....	96
Shutdown Notification Guidelines.....	97
Water Shut-off Guidelines .....	97
Gas Shut-off Guidelines.....	98
Sanitary Sewer Guidelines .....	98
Electrical Shutdown Guidelines.....	99
SWPPP Oversight Flowchart.....	100
Greenfield Shutdown Authorization Request Guidelines.....	101
Intruder Detection .....	102
Campus Security Reminders.....	103
Safety Meeting Sign-in Sheet .....	104
Geotechnical Soil Sampling Safety Guidelines .....	105
Inclement Weather Plan of Action.....	106



## **DALLAS ISD DISCLAIMER**

The purpose of the Construction Minimum Safety Program Guidelines Manual, developed for the Dallas Independent School District, is to assist in the development and implementation of appropriate safety standards. This manual is prepared for use as a minimum guideline for safety during the construction, renovation, and expansion activities to be completed by independent contractors. The program is based on applicable government regulations; insurance related safety/risk management requirements, accepted safety practices within the construction industry and common sense.

The maintenance of safe premises, operations and equipment, protection of the faculty, students, and community, and the avoidance of unsafe conditions and practices (during all construction phases) are the responsibility of the General Contractors and Subcontractors performing the construction work. The Program Manager will provide safety oversight of the Contractor's Safety Program. While mandatory, compliance with the provisions of this Construction Minimum Safety Program Guidelines Manual will not guarantee or ensure compliance with the requirements of the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910). This manual is intended to provide a working, uniform minimal level of program guidelines to assist or provide direction to the Contractors. This manual is not intended to replace the need for each Contractor to establish and maintain a proper Illness and Injury Prevention Program as required by the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910) and the State of Texas.

**The Dallas Independent School District, and its Agents, Consultants, etc., assume no liability for the manual's contents or for any safety related service(s) that may be provided during the course of the project.**

This Manual is intended to provide a working, uniform minimal level of program guidelines to assist or provide direction to Contractors. This Manual is not intended to replace the need for each Contractor to establish and maintain a proper Illness and Injury Prevention Program as required by the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910) and the State of Texas.

References to "Bond Program" must refer to the Dallas Independent School District 2020 and 2015 Bond Programs and other projects managed by the Dallas Independent School District's Construction Services Department as appropriate for the project for which work is to be performed.

**Note:** If a situation arises that is not covered by the Contractor's Safety Manual or the Construction Minimum Safety Guidelines Manual, please discuss it with your project manager and/or call the Owner's Representative. For additional information regarding the guidelines set forth within this manual, please contact:

Dallas ISD Bond Program Safety Manager, Alvaro Meza  
Direct (972) 925-7219 | Mobile (214) 435-2204 | Email [almeza@dallasisd.org](mailto:almeza@dallasisd.org)

## **2. FOREWORD**

This Manual has been compiled to present Loss Control activities and guidelines. Contractors are expected to meet or exceed these minimum guidelines.

The information and suggestions summarized in this Manual were compiled from sources believed to be reliable. It cannot be assumed that this material includes every loss potential, code violation or exception to good practice and, therefore, we cannot guarantee its completeness.

It is solely the Contractor's responsibility to conform to the provisions of this Manual and standards set forth under the William-Steiger Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 and, as amended, other Federal Regulations, Environmental Nuisances Considered Hazardous as they apply to state, and local regulations. The General Contractor must ensure that each of its Subcontractors comply with the requirements of this Manual.

We should also emphasize that, as with all other aspects of the work, the Contractor's selection of means and methods is his own, and that any and all suggestions contained in this Manual are only representative of the types of techniques and practices which the Contractor may choose to employ on this project.

## **3. POLICY STATEMENT**

The principles of safety and loss control reflect a determination by Dallas Independent School District to prevent injuries to the general public and workers, as well as to prevent damage to property and equipment.

The District considers no phase of construction or administration of greater importance than accident prevention and asserts that accidents which result in personal injury and damage to property and equipment represent needless waste and loss. It must be the policy of the District for Contractors to conduct all operations safely and thereby prevent injuries to persons and damage to property.

Planning for safety must start with the design and continue through purchasing, fabrication, and construction in all phases of the Bond Program. All practical steps must be taken to maintain a safe place to work. The Contractor must accept the responsibility for safety and loss prevention and must be responsible for thorough safety and loss control training and instruction of its employees.

The objective of this policy is to establish throughout the entire Dallas Independent School District Bond Program Construction Projects the concept that the prevention of accidents and protection of property is most important and, therefore, must receive top priority, support, and participation.

## 4. PROGRAM OBJECTIVES

The Dallas Independent School District Construction Minimum Safety Program Guidelines Manual has been created to supplement the General Contractor's own program to eliminate or reduce hazards and risks associated with the construction projects, prevent accidents, reduce employee injury, prevent damage to property, promote maximum efficiency and effective savings by the reduction of unplanned business interruption.

### 4.1 Active Participation of All Contractors

Supervisory staff and employees must make the program not only effective, but also successful by coordinating the participants' efforts in performing the following tasks:

- a) Provide a safe environment for employees to perform high quality work.
- b) Use safety planning as a tool to reduce bodily injury and property damage.
- c) Provide inspections to locate and abate unsafe conditions and practices.
- d) Protect the public and property immediately adjacent to all construction sites.
- e) Educate and train employees through:
  - (1) New hire orientation
  - (2) Safety meetings
  - (3) Safety training, i.e., hazard communication, trenching safety, confined space, etc.
  - (4) Mandatory personal protective equipment programs
  - (5) Injury reporting and record keeping up to date
  - (6) Incident tracking and trends analysis
  - (7) Using accident investigation information to abate deficiencies and eliminate any additional losses
- f) Contractors of any tier must comply with all Federal, State, and local laws, ordinances, regulations, and the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) Standards including the Life Safety Code.

**NOTE:** The Construction Minimum Safety Program Guidelines Manual is to work in conjunction with the Contractor's individual Safety Program. All Contractors are required to implement their own written Safety Program and/or the Construction Minimum Safety Program Guidelines Manual prior to construction activities.

## 5. LOSS CONTROL RESPONSABILITIES

The effectiveness of this program depends upon the active participation and cooperation of all Engineers, Project Managers, Inspectors, Supervisors, General Contractors, their employees, and Subcontractors. The primary goals of this program are to increase safety awareness, raise safety standards in the work environment, and increase management involvement in the safety process.

### 5.1 Local Laws and Requirements

Each contractor and each Subcontractor of any tier must comply with the most stringent OSHA, City, County, or Federal regulations governing where the project site resides.

#### **NO FELONY CONVICTION REPRESENTATION**

All contractors of any tier must comply with the following:

Sec 44.034, Subsection (a) of the Texas Education Code subparagraph (a) requires that a person or business entity that enters a contract with a school district must give advance notice to the district if the person or an owner or operator of the business entity has been convicted of a felony. The notice must include a general description of the conduct resulting in the conviction of a felony.

A school district may terminate a contract with a person or business entity if the district determines that the person or business entity failed to give notice as required by Subsection (a) or misrepresented the conduct resulting in the conviction. The district must compensate the person or business entity for services performed before the termination of the contract. This section does not apply to a publicly held corporation.

All contracts must comply with the requirements for criminal background checks. All vendors must give advance notice to the District if the person or an owner or operator of the business entity has been convicted of a felony. The notice must include a general description of the conduct resulting in the conviction of a felony. The district may terminate any resulting agreement if the District determines that the person or business entity failed to provide notice as required by this paragraph or misrepresented the conduct resulting in the conviction. This paragraph requiring advance notice does not apply to a publicly held corporation. This paragraph is required by state law, and exceptions permitted in this advance notice do not limit the following requirements.

All vendors will obtain criminal background history record of information that relates to an employee, applicant for employment, or agent of the contractor or consultant if the employee, applicant, or agent has or will have continuing duties related to the contracted services: and the duties are or will be performed on school property or at another location where students are regularly present. The General Contractor or consultant must certify to the District before beginning work and at no less than an annual basis thereafter that criminal history record information has been obtained. General Contractors or consultants must assume all expenses associated with the background checks and must immediately remove any employee or agent who was convicted of a felony, or misdemeanor involving moral turpitude, as defined by Texas law, from District property or other location where students are regularly present.

The District must be the final decider of what constitutes a “location where students are regularly present.” General Contractors’ or consultants’ violation of this section must constitute a substantial failure under any resulting agreement and be grounds for termination.

Unless waived in writing by the Superintendent of Schools or designee, all District vendors must be identified by a photographic identification badge, issued by a District-approved third-party company at the vendor’s expense. The third-party company, as detailed in the Purchasing and Financial Activities Manual, must verify the criminal record history information, and may be used to verify compliance with the federal Drug Free Workplace Act of 1988 or its successor, and the federal Education Department General Administrative Regulations, current edition, in its testing and review process.

Employee or agent includes as example, but not by way limitation, persons providing services on the project including all persons or entities performing all or part of the services the General Contractor has undertaken to perform on the project regardless of whether that person has employees. This includes, without limitation, independent contractors, Subcontractors, owner-operators, employees of any such entity, or employees of any entity that furnishes persons to provide services on the project.

Services include, without limitation, providing the hauling, or delivering equipment or materials, or providing labor, transportation, or other service related to a project. Services do not include activities unrelated to the project, such as food/beverage vendors, office supply deliveries, and delivery of portable toilets. The District must have sole discretion to determine what constitutes a “location where students are regularly present.” General Contractor’s violation of this section must constitute a default under the General Terms and Conditions of the contract.

## **5.2 Dallas ISD Safety Orientation and Badging**

Prior to working on any Dallas ISD property/project, all General Contractors and Subcontractor employees of any tier must obtain a Dallas ISD Bond Program Photographic Identification badge issued by a District approved third-party company at the General Contractor’s or Subcontractor’s expense. Any replacement for a lost badge should be obtained by the issuing third-party company.

A Dallas ISD Bond Program Safety Orientation Sticker (to be placed on the I.D. badge) required prior to working on any Dallas ISD property/project. The Safety Orientation sticker is obtained after completion of the required Dallas ISD Bond Program’s Safety Orientation provided by the Bond Program’s Safety Department. Replacement of the safety orientation sticker must be requested through the Dallas ISD Bond Safety Director or designee. Please see [Attachment I](#) for the Dallas ISD Orientation location and schedule.

### 5.3 Campus Readiness

Campus Readiness is a checkpoint/documented safety inspection that must be completed prior to the start and/or return of campus staff and students to ensure the sustainability of proper separation of all areas and conditions affected by construction activities.

The effectiveness of this checkpoint depends heavily upon the active participation and cooperation of all General Contractors, their employees, engineers, project managers, inspectors, supervisors, and Subcontractors of any tier.

The General Contractor must submit a completed copy of the Campus Readiness Form as [EXHIBIT A](#) to the Owner's Representative one (1) working day prior to the return or arrival of campus staff and students, as made part of the Construction Minimum Safety Program Guidelines. Campus Readiness Forms must include photographs as confirmation of existing site-conditions. Guidelines for ensuring a consistent approach to this checkpoint are as follows:

- (1) Ensure all areas affected by construction are properly separated from staff, students, and the general public.
- (2) A completed copy of the Campus Readiness Form, along with photographs of each affected area must be provided to the Owner's Representative one (1) working day prior to the return of staff and students.
- (3) Communicate the significance of adequate separation of construction activities to all contractors of any tier.
- (4) A follow-up inspection must be conducted to ensure proper separation of construction activities remain constant.

### 5.4 Protecting the General Public

Every precaution must be taken to prevent injury to pedestrians or damage to the property of others. The public must be considered as any person not employed by the General Contractor or Subcontractor of any tier.

Among the precautions to be taken are the following:

- a) Work must be performed in a public area only when specified by the Contract or the District in writing
- b) Every step necessary must be taken to protect and maintain work areas that interface with public sidewalks, building entrances (lobbies, corridors, aisles, etc.), stairways, and roadways.
- c) This protection must include but not be limited to installing and maintaining the appropriate barricades, fences, guardrails, overhead protection, partitions, signs, shields, which must be adequately visible. Protection against any additional harmful exposure must also be provided.
- d) All travel ways, access, emergency exits, and egress points must always be maintained clear of obstructions.
- e) Warning signs are to be conspicuously positioned and a flag person must be assigned when moving equipment that may encounter pedestrians or private vehicles.

- f) Overhead protection must be in accordance with the laws of the jurisdiction where the project resides.
- g) Each project work area must be protected by a fence constructed of wood or metal and stand at least six (6) feet high to prevent incidental public entry.
- h) Fences from construction areas should separate all playgrounds.
- i) All fencing must be inspected daily, and repairs made where necessary to prevent unauthorized access.
- j) Guardrails must be made of rigid materials and comply with OSHA regulations.
- k) Barricades for the general public and/or public roadways must always be secured against accidental displacement and in place, except when temporary removal is required. At such times, a trained flag person must be assigned to control the unprotected area.
- l) Should a permanent sidewalk require obstruction or removal, a temporary alternative pedestrian walkway must be provided. Guardrails must be installed on both sides of any temporary walkway that has a fall exposure.
- m) When emergency exits must be re-routed, the General Contractor must provide the necessary signs, maps etc. that will show where the nearest emergency exits are located.

## **5.5 Work Performed Near Existing District Right-of-Way**

For any construction equipment (such as cranes, concrete pump trucks, and back hoes) that could encroach on the District's operating right-of-way, the General Contractor must submit and obtain approval from the District for a plan describing the use of such equipment, and the necessary precautions to be taken to preclude any accidental encroachment on the right-of-way.

## **5.6 General Contractors**

The Contractor is responsible for accident prevention and job-site safety. The extent to which these program objectives are met depends upon active management promotion and support of the Construction Minimum Safety Program Guidelines and the complete cooperation of Subcontractors, job site supervisors, and construction personnel in carrying out the following basic procedures:

- a) All work must be pre-planned to minimize personal injury, property damage, and loss of production time.
- b) General Contractors must maintain a system of prompt detection and correction of unsafe practices and conditions.
- c) All Contractor and Subcontractor employees of any tier must successfully complete a site-specific orientation and indoctrination program as described in [Section 5.9](#) of this manual.

d) Site records must be maintained to assure compliance with all OSHA, Federal, and State Regulations and the Construction Minimum Safety Program Guidelines. Site records must include, but not be limited to, the following:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (1) <a href="#">Weekly Toolbox Talk Meeting Agenda/Sign-in Sheets</a> | (8) <a href="#">Campus Readiness</a>                 |
| (2) <a href="#">Incident Investigations</a>                           | (9) <a href="#">OSHA 300 Logs</a>                    |
| (3) <a href="#">Corrective Action Plan</a>                            | (10) <a href="#">Safety Inspection Reports</a>       |
| (4) <a href="#">Worker Training Documentation</a>                     | (11) <a href="#">Substance abuse program</a>         |
| (5) <a href="#">Hazard Communication Program</a>                      | (12) <a href="#">Site-Specific Orientation</a>       |
| (6) <a href="#">Fire Prevention Plan</a>                              | (13) <a href="#">Daily Job hazard analysis (JHA)</a> |
| (7) <a href="#">Silica Control Plan</a>                               | (14) <a href="#">Daily Sign-in Sheets</a>            |

- e) General Contractor and Subcontractor safety representatives of any tier must attend at minimum one (1) documented monthly safety committee meeting.
- f) Each General Contractor must send a company representative to attend monthly safety committee meetings, or more frequently, as may be required for unusual circumstances and situations.
- g) General Contractors must ensure all Subcontractors of any tier comply with the established policies and procedures to ensure adequate compliance with all applicable Federal and/or State Laws and Standards.
- h) The General Contractor must maintain a paper copy of the "Construction Minimum Safety Program Guidelines Manual" at each project site.
- i) In the event of a conflict and/or ambiguity between various statutes or safety provisions, the stricter provision must apply.
- j) The General Contractor must provide additional training when necessary for all its employees and must assure that each Subcontractor provides additional training when necessary for all of its employees. All training must be documented.
- k) General Contractors must maintain a Daily Sign-in Sheet for the tracking of its construction workers in and out of the project each day.

**NOTE:** No requested advice from the representatives of Marsh Inc., Architect, Engineer, or the District must in any way relieve, alter, change, or amend any of the General Contractor's expressed, implied, or inherent legal and/or contractual obligations. Furthermore, the authority vested in the District and its designated representatives, including Marsh Inc. to act on matters regarding safety, must not in any way reduce the General Contractor's responsibility for safety and accident prevention. The District and its representatives, including Marsh Inc. are obligated only to notify the General Contractor of observed instances in which the General Contractor failed to fulfill their own obligations.



## 5.7 Site-Specific Safety Plan

Within fourteen calendar (14) days after the Notice of Award, but not later than the Preconstruction Conference, the General Contractor must submit a copy of the Site-Specific Safety Plan together with a letter of Management's Statement of Policy, signed by an officer of the company in relation to its contract, to the Owner's Representative and include all applicable criteria as listed in [Attachment II](#) (Site-Specific Safety Plan Guidelines) of this manual.

## 5.8 Work Areas

The General Contractor must provide a safe work area for its employees, Subcontractors of any tier, campus occupants, and the general public. The General Contractor may seek the District's assistance to resolve complex construction safety problems.

## 5.9 Site-Specific Safety Orientation

Prior to the start of work, each General Contractor and Subcontractor employee of any tier must receive a Site-Specific Safety Orientation. This orientation must be conducted by the General Contractor's Safety Representative and include project-specific safety requirements, protection of school children, public safety, proper use of personal protective equipment, and safe work practices.

- a) Site-specific orientations must be no less than thirty **(30) minutes**.
- b) To verify that the employee has received and understands this indoctrination, the employee must sign a "sign-in sheet", which the General Contractor must keep on file.
- c) It is the responsibility of the General Contractor to ensure that non-English speaking employees receive these same instructions in a language they understand.

## 5.10 Jobsite Trailer Postings

On a weekly basis, the General Contractor must plan and execute its work with the utmost care and in coordination with the campus principal to not endanger the students' safety and to provide its Subcontractors with the most up to date project information available. To this end, the below items must be updated weekly and posted for Subcontractor's ready reference:

- (1) The number of weeks remaining until Substantial Completion must be posted on the door.
- (2) The Project Team's Contact List (phone numbers and email) must be posted on the door.
- (3) A complete copy of the Operations Parameters must be posted on the wall.
- (4) A colored copy of the General Contractor's GPR Report must be Posted on the wall and redlined anytime changes to utility locations are made.
- (5) A Site Map showing the location of each utility shutdown valve must be posted on the wall.
- (6) A copy of the project 's Baseline Schedule must be posted on the wall.
- (7) A copy of the Three (3) Week Lookahead Schedule must be posted on the wall.
- (8) A copy of the project's Phasing Plan must be posted on the wall.
- (9) A hard copy of the last OAC Hand Outs must be posted on the wall.

- (10) The Construction Drawings must be posted at the jobsite trailer and red lined weekly.
- (11) A copy of the DISD Crisis Communication Guidelines Poster ([Attachment III](#)) must be posted on the wall.

## 5.11 General Contractor Project Manager

Responsibilities of the Project Manager must include, but are not limited to:

- a) Plan and execute all work to comply with the stated objectives of the Construction Minimum Safety Program Guidelines Manual.
- b) Comply with all the provisions of the contract dealing with safety and accident prevention requirements.
- c) Require project and job superintendents, safety representatives, and project foremen to enforce the federal, state, and local safety codes and regulations.
- d) Cooperate with the Owner's Representative.
- e) Authorize necessary action to correct sub-standard safety conditions reported or observed.
- f) Review and take necessary action with respect to safety matters through directives or personal interviews with superintendents, project foreman, and/or Subcontractors' management.
- g) Share project related experiences (i.e., insight, questions, incidents, etc.) with other participants and attendees present at monthly Bond Safety Committee Meetings.

## 5.12 General Contractor Safety Representative

At the General Contractor's discretion, the Site-Superintendent or Project Foreman may serve in the capacity of Safety Representative if the individual selected to serve can perform the minimum criteria listed below for Safety Representative.

The designated Site Safety Representative must hold an OSHA 30hr (within five (5) years of completion) and a valid First Aid/CPR certification, and minimum of 3 years of experience managing on site safety responsibilities. The Site Safety Representative must not have any other duties than monitor all Subcontractor's compliancy with Federal, State, Local ordinances, in addition to the Minimum Construction Safety Guidelines and the Contractor's Safety Manual. Moreover, the Site-safety Representative must ensure all non-compliant conditions or unsafe behavior is immediately corrected.

**NOTE: If the person designated is not able to successfully perform the minimum criteria listed for safety representative, an on-site full-time site safety may be required.**

Responsibilities of the designated Safety Representative must include, but are not limited to:

- a) Ensure that the Construction Minimum Safety Program Guidelines are carried out.
- b) Monitor employee compliance with all jobsite rules and regulations and ensuring that the rules are improved as necessary.
- c) Make daily safety inspections of jobsites and take necessary immediate corrective action to eliminate unsafe acts and conditions.
- d) Ensure the OSHA 300 Form Accident Report is properly completed and distributed.
- e) Review and assist when necessary, accidents and incidents to ensure that injured employees follow proper reporting procedures, and that Accident Investigation Reports are completed accurately. Where appropriate, recommend immediate corrective action to the project manager or superintendent.
- f) Provide project foremen with appropriate material for use in conducting weekly "toolbox" safety meetings.
- g) Periodically attend project foreman's "toolbox" safety meetings and evaluate their effectiveness.
- h) Implement safety-training programs, for supervisors and employees as they apply to their specific responsibilities where the Safety Representative identifies a need.
- i) Encourage programs for recognition of individual employee's safety efforts and their contribution toward improved work methods.
- j) Responsible for the control and availability of the necessary safety equipment, including employee's personal protective equipment.
- k) Coordinate safety activities with those of the District's personnel, the Safety Representatives of Subcontractors, and the Owner's Representative.
- l) Share project related experiences (i.e., insight, questions, incidents, etc.) with other participants and attendees present at monthly Bond Safety Committee Meetings.

### **5.13 General Contractor Site-Superintendent**

It is the responsibility of superintendents to provide constant and thorough supervision of ongoing activities including safety of its employees and the employees of all Subcontractors. The Contractor's Superintendent must hold an OSHA 30hr (within five (5) years of completion) and a valid First Aid/CPR certification.

Responsibilities of the Superintendent include, but are not limited to:

- a) At minimum, one General Contractor representative who has been designated as Competent Person must be present while contractors of any tier are on-site.
- b) Planning and executing all work as to comply with stated objectives of the Minimum Safety Program Guidelines Manual, and work with the Safety Representative to assure the effectiveness of the program.
- c) Plan all work far enough in advance so that proper safety procedures and equipment can be provided before work begins.

- d) Ensure that no unsafe conditions are created, i.e., poor housekeeping, removal of guardrails, etc.
- e) Take immediate action to eliminate, correct, or resolve any unsafe conditions or unsafe acts, which are observed or discovered.
- f) Ensure that periodic inspections of safety equipment and personal protective equipment is conducted and enforce the use of such equipment.
- g) Ensure that injured employees obtain prompt medical attention.
- h) Participate in the completion of supervisory accident investigation of all accidents and suggest ways to prevent similar accidents.
- i) Periodically attend foreman's weekly "toolbox" safety meetings and evaluate their effectiveness.
- j) Share project related experiences (i.e., insight, questions, incidents, etc.) with other participants and attendees present at monthly Bond Safety Committee Meetings.

## 5.14 Subcontractor Competent Person

Subcontractor Foremen/Competent Person(s) are an integral part of an effective safety program and the amount of effort they put into accident prevention on their daily assignments helps determine whether or not a good accident record is maintained. The Subcontractor's designated Competent Person must hold an OSHA 10hr (within five (5) years of completion) and a valid First Aid/CPR certification.

In accordance with 29 CFR 1926.32(f), a "Competent Person" is defined as "one who is capable of identifying existing and predictable hazards in the surroundings or working conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous, or dangerous to employees, and who has **authorization** to take prompt corrective measures to eliminate them."

Responsibilities of the Subcontractor Competent Person shall include, but are not limited to:

- a) At minimum, one Subcontractor representative who has been designated as Competent Person must be present while work is being performed (work includes self-performing and/or its contractors of any tier).
- b) Instruct employees, under their supervision, on safe work practices and work methods at the time of work assignments.
- c) Competent Person(s) must be trained and certified in First Aid/CPR and possess an OSHA 10-hour certification within 5 years of the issuing date.
- d) Report immediately to the Safety Representative and superintendent of any violations of project safety that cannot be immediately corrected.
- e) Supply and enforce the use of proper protective equipment and suitable tools for the project.
- f) Verify that no unsafe practices or conditions are allowed on any part of their job.
- g) Acquaint their workers with all applicable safety requirements and enforce them.
- h) Set a good example for their workers. Lead by example.

- i) Participate in the investigation of accidents and incidents to determine facts necessary to take corrective action.
- j) Supply information for completion of the Accident Report and Investigation Form (directed by the General Contractor's Safety Representative and/or project Superintendent).
- k) See that prompt first aid is administered to injured employees.
- l) Hold weekly "Toolbox Talk" safety meetings with their employees
- m) Weekly "toolbox" safety meetings must include:
  - (1) Discuss observed unsafe work practices or conditions and corrective action taken to prevent a similar incident or condition.
  - (2) Review the accident experience of their crew.
  - (3) Encourage safety suggestions from their employees and report them to the Safety Representative.
  - (4) All safety meetings are to be documented and kept in job trailer for review if requested.
- n) Share project related experiences (i.e., insight, questions, incidents, etc.) with other participants and attendees present at monthly Bond Safety Committee Meetings.

### **5.15 Safety Committee**

Under the direction of the District, a safety committee will be appointed from the selected company safety representatives and management. This committee will meet on a monthly basis for review of any safety issues needing attention as well as for investigation of serious accidents that result in loss of life, injury to several workers or pedestrians, or a major property loss. All employees of any tier must cooperate when necessary with any safety committee investigation. The committee will submit a report to the District at the conclusion of the investigation.

### **5.16 Bond Safety Committee Meeting**

Bond Safety Committee Meetings are held monthly at the Dallas ISD Bond Office and must consist of the General Contractor's Project Manager, Superintendent, Safety Representative, Insurance Carriers' Representative (when available), and a Safety Representative from each Program Manager and Contractor currently working on the Bond Program.

The purpose of the meetings must be to create awareness, improve communications, encourage feedback, and solve problems. The Contractor's Safety Representative must share project related experiences (i.e., insight, questions, incidents, etc.) with other participants and attendees present at such meetings.

## 5.17 Weekly Site-Safety “Toolbox Talk” Meetings

Toolbox talks are weekly project safety meetings used to reinforce safety basics, focus on high-risk scenarios, and to inform workers about changes to the jobsite and working conditions that may have occurred. General Contractors must discuss any near miss, accidents, or injuries that have occurred and how they could have been prevented.

- a) The General Contractor and all Subcontractors are required to hold a minimum of **one 15-minute site-safety Toolbox Talk meeting per week**.
- b) All workers on the project site, including site Project Management team members, must attend a weekly safety Toolbox Talks, which must be presented in English and all other languages that are natively spoken at the project.
- c) The General Contractor’s safety representative may deliver each talk to the entire project population or each Subcontractor’s safety representative may deliver individual meetings to their specific trade and/or group.
- d) The General Contractor’s safety representative must periodically participate and review individual meetings to ensure effectiveness.
- e) The General Contractor must collect and maintain copies of all sign-in sheets for every meeting.
- f) Meetings must address appropriate topics for the current and future work operations and current site conditions. In addition, the General Contractor must communicate information discussed during the Monthly Bond Safety Committee Meeting, inspection results, and other project safety-related topics.

## 5.18 First Aid and Medical Treatment

Emergency “911” telephone number must be used for all accidents requiring the response of Emergency Medical Services, Fire Department or Police.

“First Aid” can be defined as the immediate or temporary care given to a person who is ill or who has been injured. Any person trained in first aid should be able to recognize life (or other physical) threatening conditions and take some effective action to help keep the victim alive and in the best possible condition until professional medical help arrives. CFR-1926.50

For each shift of operation, all General Contractors must have on-site supervisors who are formally trained and current on basic first aid and CPR. These supervisors will be expected to provide emergency medical first aid on their jobs for all employees but in no case will be designated as the “First Responder” for the project

- a) First aid supplies must be readily accessible on each project site. The first aid cabinet/kit must always be adequately stocked.
- b) All injuries are to be reported to the immediate supervisor, no matter how minor. Treatment will be administered, and a report made of the injury. The employee’s supervisor is responsible for making arrangements to transport the employee to and from the closest medical clinic/hospital.

- c) Under no circumstances must the employee be allowed to drive him or herself to the medical clinic/hospital. All seriously injured personnel will be transported by ambulance to the nearest hospital.
- d) All employees must notify their supervisor prior to leaving the site because of illness or injury.
- e) If any employee obtains medical treatment without prior notification to the superintendent, the employee must notify the superintendent at the start of the next scheduled workday.
- f) Prior to returning to work after treatment by a physician for a work-related injury, the employee must present a return-to-work form from the treating physician.

## **5.19 Incident Investigations**

When an accident or near miss with major potential for a loss occurs, the supervisor of the crew(s) involved must perform an accident investigation. After the root cause has been identified and recommendations for corrective action have been determined, a procedure may be implemented to prevent a similar incident from occurring again.

## **5.20 Substance Abuse**

Dallas Independent School District (Dallas ISD) is committed to the establishment and maintenance of a safe and efficient work environment for all personnel, free from the effects of alcohol, illegal drugs, and other controlled substances.

### **5.20.1 Policy:**

District prohibits on their property, the use, possession, concealment, transportation, promotion, or sale of any of the following:

- (1) Alcoholic beverages.
- (2) Marijuana and other illegal drugs
- (3) Look-a-likes and designer drugs
- (4) Drug paraphernalia
- (5) Controlled substances such as medications when usage is abused or when the substance is possessed without proper prescription labeling.

All person(s) directly or indirectly involved with the 2015 or 2020 Bond program, must not be under the influence of any of the above substances while on Dallas ISD property or to use, possess, conceal, transport, promote or sell any of the above substances will be grounds for disciplinary action, up to and including removal from the Bond program.

### **5.20.2 Other Controlled Items**

Dallas ISD prohibits the use, possession, concealment, transportation, promotion, or sale of the following controlled items:

- (1) Firearms, weapons, and ammunition (except when authorized for security reasons)
- (2) Switchblades

- (3) Unauthorized explosives including fireworks
- (4) Stolen Property

### **5.20.3 General Contractor Requirements**

General Contractors, including its Subcontractors of any tier, must employ a workforce free of the influence or possession of illegal drugs or alcohol while on District's property.

- a) As a condition of employment, employees must submit to substance abuse screening (five-panel drug screening) and breath alcohol testing for Pre-employment, Post-accident/Incident, Just-cause, Random selection, and Return to work.
- b) The Contractor must pay for all costs associated with a NIDA-approved laboratory to conduct substance abuse testing and breath alcohol testing.
- c) All General Contractors and Subcontractors are responsible for reporting to the Bond Program Safety Manager any incidents in violation of the substance abuse program and the disposition of the violation. The Owner or its designee must reserve the right, but not the obligation, to order the Contractor to send a worker home for the day, or to remove a worker from any Bond Program Project, for his/her failure to comply with anti-substance abuse policies, and the Contractor must promptly comply with all such orders.
- d) General Contractors and Subcontractors of any tier must declare one (1) or more employees to be its designated Competent Person.
- e) The designated Competent Person must be dedicated to the Project for on-site safety responsibilities and must be on the project site when any part of the applicable General Contractor's or Subcontractor's work is being performed.

### **5.20.4 Definitions:**

Property must refer to all land owned by the District, to all property thereon; buildings, structures, facilities, platforms, fixtures, tunnels, installations, and to all project vehicles, stationary or mobile equipment, whether owned or leased. This definition may also include other work locations while in the scope and course of employment on the District's Construction Projects.

### **5.21 Site Visitors and Group Tours**

Normally there are no tours during a construction project. However, it is particularly important that a high degree of protection be afforded to all persons on authorized tours of construction worksites.

In the event a tour is authorized, the following instructions must be complied with, as applicable, by the General Contractor and those responsible for arranging such tours:

- a) Tours must be scheduled prior to the start or after the end of the workday.
- b) In all cases, the Program Manager and the Owner's Representative must be advised of any tour in a timely manner prior to the tour taking place.
- c) Group tours must be cleared through the District, allowing maximum advance notice and in compliance with the District's policies and procedures. The District will coordinate the tour arrangements.



- d) The General Contractor will coordinate the following with the individual or organization requesting the tour:
  - (1) Clothing: Visitors will be required to wear pants or slacks, shirt or blouse, and leather or work shoes. Sneakers, high-heeled shoes, and open toed shoes are prohibited.
  - (2) Minors: Persons under 18 years of age are not permitted on project tours.
  - (3) Protective Equipment: Hard hats, eye protection, earplugs, and other protective devices will be required, as necessary.
  - (4) Release and Hold Harmless Agreement: Each visitor must be required to sign a release and hold harmless agreement prior to the commencement of the tour. A sample Visitor's Release and Hold Harmless Agreement is contained in this Manual as [Attachment IV](#).
  - (5) All visitors must comply with Contractor safety requirements.
  - (6) All visitors must be escorted by the job-site superintendent, Bond Program Safety Director, or their designated representatives.
- e) Designated escorts must familiarize their group(s) with the hazards to be encountered on the tour prior to entering the project site.
- f) District representatives, who visit or escort technical and official visitors in hazardous work areas, must notify the General Contractor in advance and must comply with all established construction safety procedures.

## 6. MINIMUM CONSTRUCTION SAFETY GUIDELINES

### 6.1 Safe Plan of Action (SPA) Guidelines

A Safe Plan of Action (SPA) is a site-specific comprehensive safety program which outlines what methods, procedures, and equipment will be used when engaged in any of the following nine (9) critical phases of work:

- |                                      |                                    |   |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|---|
| (1) <a href="#">Excavation</a>       | (4) <a href="#">Steel Erection</a> | (7) <a href="#">Demolition</a>          |
| (2) <a href="#">Elevated Work</a>    | (5) <a href="#">Confined Space</a> | (8) <a href="#">Utility Shutdown</a>    |
| (3) <a href="#">Crane Operations</a> | (6) <a href="#">Pier Drilling</a>  | (9) <a href="#">Electrical Shutdown</a> |

It is critical that Contractors understand the importance of developing an effectively functioning Safe Plan of Action (SPA) that is pro-active and addresses the potential hazards and exposures to their employees, campus occupants, the public, and other trades within the affected areas.

- a) SPA Documentation must be submitted to the Owner's Representative within **5-7 days** of any planned critical phases of work.
- b) The General Contractor must assemble all criteria as listed on the SPA Cover Letter checklist for all critical phases of work.
- c) The SPA Cover Letter checklist and its supporting documentation must be combined into a single PDF so that it is an exact electronic version of the physical document that must be kept on-site.
- d) The General Contractor Safety Manager must review, evaluate, and approve of the SPA for adherence to all applicable federal regulations and the DISD Construction Safety Program Guidelines prior to submitting a copy to the Owner's Representative and the commencement of work.
- e) The Owner's Representative may review and respond. Any issues or deficiencies will require the General Contractor to revise and resubmit the document. If no deficiencies are noted, The General Contractor must then schedule the Pre-Work SPA Meeting.
- f) The Pre-Work SPA Meeting will be a final review of the complete Cover Letter checklist criteria before proceeding with any planned work. SPA Pre-Work Meetings must be held in-person and on-site. At a minimum, the following persons must be present:
  - (1) Sub-Contractor Competent Person
  - (2) General Contractor Safety Representative
  - (3) Owner's Representative [Optional]

## 6.2 Repeating Scopes of Work

For repeating types of work that have already gone through the SPA review process, a separate submittal and review will not be required **ONLY** if **ALL** the following conditions have been met:

- (1) The General Contractor Safety Manager has reviewed and approved the safety plan
- (2) The work performed will be substantially similar to the scope of work as previously approved
- (3) The Competent Person(s) listed on the documents has not changed
- (4) The Sub Contractor crew list, training records, and certifications have not changed or expired

## 6.3 Job Hazard Analysis

Planning for the safety of personnel and equipment being used must begin with each phase of construction and continue through project completion. Contractors must plan the safety procedures to be followed for each phase of construction.

- a) JHA's must be implemented on any task which may cause bodily injury, damage to property, or equipment e.g., crane lifts, redirecting of foot and or vehicle traffic, use of scaffolding, use of mobile aerial work platforms, and or any other task which pose a high risk.
- b) A Job Hazard Analysis (JHA) is required prior of starting any work shift, equipment, or procedure that poses a significant potential for bodily injury and/or property damage.
- c) The Job Hazard Analysis must be written by the performing Contractor and submitted to the General Contractor for approval.
- d) Contractors must use [EXHIBIT B](#) (Job Hazard Analysis Worksheet) or its approved equivalent.
- e) The General Contractor's Safety Representative in conjunction with the job site Supervisor is directly responsible for the development and implementation of Job Hazard Analysis (JHA).
- f) Daily JHA Meetings must include the General Contractor and/or Subcontractors, their responsible job site supervisors (including the craft supervisor and craft Safety Representative), and any other responsible party who may contribute to the safety of the operation.
- g) Employees involved with the project must be instructed of the hazards involved and methods required in eliminating those hazards, including emergency actions to be taken in the event of an accident.
- h) Employees must be made aware of the procedures to be used and requirements of the JHA.
- i) The JHA serves as an operating procedure and living documents that must be available to all personnel performing the work.
- j) The General Contractor and Subcontractor's Safety Representative must retain a copy of all JHAs.

## **6.4 Personal Protective Equipment**

Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) must be required for all persons on any construction site. The construction site is defined as any area within the project perimeter fence and interior renovation areas, excluding offices and office trailers.

PPE includes but is not limited to:

### **6.4.1 Hard Hats**

All persons working, walking, or transiting the construction site must always wear an ANZI-Z-89 approved hardhat. Bump caps are prohibited. Any operation that requires an employee to wear face protection does not preclude the use of head protection. The face protection must be selected so that it can be used in conjunction with the required head protection.

### **6.4.2 Safety Vest**

High visibility vests or high visibility upper body clothing (equivalent to ANSI Class 2 or greater as applicable) must be worn in the construction area. Primary work activities such as traffic control, excavations, rigging from ground level, exterior work at ground level or sub-ground level, earth moving operations, may require ANSI Class 3.

### **6.4.3 Eye Protection**

Employees must wear ANZI Z-87 approved eye protection must be required when construction activities present a potential eye injury from flying debris, physical, chemical, or radiation agents.

### **6.4.4 Face protection**

Face protection must be required when construction activities present a potential face injury from flying debris, physical, chemical, or radiation agents. Any operation that requires an employee to wear face protection does not preclude the use of eye protection. The eye protection must be selected so that it can be used in conjunction with the required face protection.

Any person working near or observing operations requiring additional or specialty eye protection must be equipped with the same type of eye protection that is required for that operation.

### **6.4.5 Hearing Protection**

All contractors of any tier must implement a hearing conservation program when noise exposure is at or above 85 decibels averaged over 8 working hours, or an 8-hour time-weighted average.

### **6.4.6 Footwear**

All employees and vendors in active work areas must wear substantial leather work shoes or work boots. Tennis shoes, sneakers, or other athletic footwear, flipflops, heels (1" +) or any open toe shoes are not acceptable footwear.

### **6.4.7 Clothing**

All employees must be required to wear such additional protective clothing or equipment as required by the hazards involved with the tasks being performed.

- a) All clothing should be in good repair, and not loose fitting or dragging in such a manner to pose a hazard from becoming entangled in equipment or machinery.
- b) All button shirts will be buttoned or t-shirts with at least 4” sleeves must be worn at all times while on the jobsite. Tank tops, mesh shirts, sweatpants, shorts nor clothing displaying pornographic, or profanity will be allowed.
- c) Long hair will be neatly kept under a hardhat as to prevent serious injury caused by entanglement.

#### 6.4.8 Jewelry

No dangling jewelry must be permitted on work sites. Necklaces will be kept inside shirts to prevent possible entanglement in moving equipment and rotating machinery.

### 6.5 Hazard Communication

The General Contractor’s Hazard Communication (Haz-Com) Program must be submitted to the Owner’s Representative and made part of the General Contractor’s Construction Safety Program and maintained on-site.

- a) Contractors must provide all required training, control methods, personal protective equipment, and medical surveillance for its employees as required by OSHA 1926 Subpart Z. Training programs must ensure all employees can at a minimum:
  - (1) Understand the program and can identify with hazardous chemicals.
  - (2) Understand product-warning labels.
  - (3) Know where Safety Data Sheets (SDS) are kept and can interpret them.
- b) The General Contractor must maintain copies of Safety Data Sheets (SDS) for all chemicals to be used, stored, and/or maintained on any DISD Project prior to arrival or use.
- c) All hazardous materials must be properly labeled per GHS and stored in accordance with applicable laws.
- d) Contractors are responsible for proper disposal of hazardous waste in accordance with applicable laws and Environmental Requirements.
- e) The General Contractor is responsible for ensuring work zones and potentially affected occupied areas are properly monitored for exposure to toxic and hazardous substances that workers or building occupants may be exposed to. Some examples include but are not limited to the following:
 

(1) Asbestos	(4) Beryllium
(2) Lead	(5) Silica
(3) Hexavalent chromium	(6) Mold

**NOTE:** It is the General Contractor’s responsibility to monitor for these substances and to communicate with and protect building occupants if exposure is possible.

## 6.6 Respiratory Protection

When respirators are deemed necessary, the Contractor must have a respiratory program that complies with OSHA regulations. A copy of the Contractor's Respiratory Program must be submitted to the Owner's Representative and made part of the General Contractor's Construction Safety Program and maintained on-site.

- a) Contractors of any tier must take all actions necessary to ensure air quality standards are met on the project and in its work areas. The employer shall evaluate emissions caused by their work processes (e.g., welding, running vehicles, etc.) and/or by the materials used.
- b) When deemed necessary, employees must be fitted for and instructed in the proper use of respirators that will afford them the maximum protection for the environmental hazard in which they are working. Because of the extensive use of waterproofing, fireproofing, paints and welding processes, these areas may require constant monitoring

## 6.7 Fire Prevention

All Dallas ISD Schools Are Smoke and Tobacco Free.

The Fire Prevention and Protection Program will be determined for each project by the size and conditions at each project. The project superintendent must be responsible for the proper implementation and administration of the program giving due consideration to the availability of public Fire Departments and the type of work to be performed on the job.

The General Contractor's Site Fire Prevention and Protection Program must be submitted to the Owner's Representative made part of the General Contractor's Construction Safety Program and maintained on-site.

- a) Ignition sources are not permitted in areas where flammable or explosives are stored or may be present and must be conspicuously posted: "NO SMOKING, MATCHES OR OPEN FLAMES."
- b) Examples of ignition sources include, but are not limited to:
  - (1) Smoking
  - (2) Electrical cords that are damaged
  - (3) Welding, torch cutting, and brazing
  - (4) Vehicle engines and electric motors
  - (5) Asphalt kettles
  - (6) Hotplates
- c) Fire Extinguishers of the appropriate type (A: B: C) must be provided, be placed conspicuously and sign posted.
- d) Fire extinguishers will be maintained and inspected as required by Federal, State, and local regulations.

- e) Fires and open flame devices must not be left unattended. Open burning for personal warming or trash disposal is prohibited.
- f) All temporary heating devices must comply with all requirements of CFR 1926.154
- g) All flammable liquids, e.g., gasoline, diesel, mixed gas, etc., must be labeled, stored, and dispensed from U.L. approved safety cans. The use or storage of plastic fuel containers is strictly prohibited.
- h) Compressed gas cylinders, when not in use, will be secured in an upright position. Fuel and nonfuel cylinders must be separated by a minimum of 20 feet.
- i) Flammables or Combustible liquids must not be stored in areas used for exits, stairways, or normally used for the safe passage of people.
- j) Outdoor Flammable Storage areas must not be within 20 feet of any building. Minimum distance will also be maintained between storage areas, property lines, streets, alleys, or public ways.
- k) Outdoor Portable Tanks must not be stored within 20 feet of any building.
- l) Each tank must be labeled: “(Contents of Tank) – Flammable, No Smoking”
- m) At least one portable fire extinguisher will be located no less than 25 feet, and no further than 75 feet, from any flammable liquid storage area located outside.
- n) All areas of the project must be kept free of accumulations of wood scraps, paper, and other combustible debris.
- o) Trash dumpsters must be maintained a minimum of 50 feet away from buildings or other structures.
- p) In areas where welding, torching, or any open flame activity is being conducted, a trained fire watch will be posted, and he/she will have no other duties. The fire watch will remain in the hot work location for a minimum of 30 minutes after hot work activities are completed to ensure that no hot areas are present.

## 6.8 Housekeeping

Housekeeping is a basic requirement to construction safety and must be of primary concern to every superintendent, supervisor, and foreman on the project. The maintenance of a safe, clean work area contributes not only to worker safety, and the elimination of fire hazards, but also to efficient low-cost production.

- a) All General Contractor and Subcontractor employees of any tier must collect trash, construction debris, and dispose of daily.
- b) All trash and debris must be placed in proper containers, properly stacked, or removed from the jobsite daily.
- c) Walking aisles, roadways, and high foot-traffic areas must be kept clear at all times.
- d) All welding leads, electrical cords, and torch hoses must be strung a minimum of 7 feet high or positioned so as not to create a tripping hazard.
- e) Oily rags and any flammable debris must be placed in closed covered containers at the end of each shift, or otherwise properly disposed of.
- f) Tools and materials must not be left where they will create a hazard for others.

- g) Spilled liquids should be cleaned up immediately.
- h) Toilets, wash-up facilities, and drinking water dispensers are to be kept clean and sanitary.
- i) Protruding nails must be bent down or removed from boards, plywood, construction materials, etc.
- j) Surplus materials must be returned to storage areas.

## 6.9 Silica Control

Contractors must reduce unacceptable dust levels either through engineering controls or other means. In either case, the Contractor must provide maximum protection for those exposed to dust. Contractors of any tier are responsible for controlling dust that:

- (1) Might endanger the health of children, school staff, and employees.
- (2) Creates a nuisance to the general public

## 6.10 Sanitation

The General Contractor is responsible for obtaining and maintaining an adequate number of portable toilets on the project, as well as areas for hand washing.

- a) The total number and gender of all employees working on the jobsite must determine the number of portable toilets required.
- b) The General Contractor must also provide or require its Subcontractors to provide potable water.
- c) Toilets, wash-up facilities, and drinking water dispensers are to be kept clean and sanitary at all times.

## 6.11 Demolition and Site Clearance

The General Contractor must ensure the establishment of a written Demolition Procedure that adheres to OSHA, Federal, State, and local regulations. A copy of this procedure must be submitted to the Owner's Representative, made part of the Contractor's Construction Project Safety Manual as [EXHIBIT C](#), and maintained on-site.

- a) Prior to commencement of work, a competent person must conduct an engineering survey. This written survey will be considered the basis for an operational work plan.
- b) All structures needing support must be braced.
- c) All utilities including gas, water, electricity, etc. must be shut down. All pipe work must be purged of any hazardous materials, e.g., flammable, explosive, toxic, etc.
- d) All debris chutes will be manufactured of appropriate materials and must be adequately guarded and/or protected.
- e) Removal of asbestos, lead, and PCBs must only be conducted by licensed contractors.
- f) Remediation activities must adhere to all OSHA, Federal, State, and local regulations.



## 6.12 Demolition Safe Plan of Action (SPA)

A Demolition Safe Plan of Action (SPA) is a site-specific comprehensive Demolition Program which outlines what methods, procedures, and equipment will be used in its program. This evaluation and program must be in writing and must be submitted to the Owner's Representative prior to any demolition activity. Review and acceptance by the General Contractor Safety Manager is required prior to submission, the start of work, or any demolition activity.

- a) General Contractor must coordinate and conduct an on-site Demolition SPA pre-work meeting one week prior to any planned demolition activity. The Cover Letter ([EXHIBIT C](#)) must be submitted along with a Safe Plan of Action (SPA). The safety plan must be evaluated and approved by the General Contractor Safety Manager prior to submission.
- b) The Demolition SPA pre-work meeting agenda must include discussion about the scope and review of any conditions that may pose a hazard to workers and/or campus occupants as it relates to the planned demolition activity.
- c) To hold a Demolition SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:
  - (1) Sub-Contractor Competent Person
  - (2) General Contractor Safety Representative
  - (3) Owner's Representative [Optional]

## 6.13 Confined Space Entry

General Contractors must ensure the establishment of a written Confined Space Entry Procedure (when applicable) that adheres to OSHA Regulations. A copy of this procedure (when applicable) must be submitted to the Owner's Representative, made part of the Contractor's Construction Project Safety Manual as [EXHIBIT D](#), and maintained on-site.

- a) All personnel connected with any confined space operation must be adequately trained and confirmation of this training must be documented.
- b) Confined Space Entry Permits must be used where necessary.
- c) Air monitors, rescue tripods, full body harnesses, ventilation equipment, etc. must be available and used when deemed necessary by the General Contractor.

## 6.14 Confined Space Safe Plan of Action (SPA)

A Confined Space Safe Plan of Action (SPA) is a site-specific comprehensive Confined Space Entry Program which outlines what methods, procedures, and equipment will be used in its program. This evaluation and program must be in writing and must be submitted to the Owner's Representative prior to any confined space entry. Review and acceptance by the General Contractor Safety Manager is required prior to submission, the start of work, or any confined space entry.

- a) The General Contractor must coordinate and conduct an on-site Confined Space SPA pre-work meeting 5-7 days prior to any planned confined space entry. The Cover Letter ([EXHIBIT D](#)) must be submitted along with a Safe Plan of Action (SPA). The safety

plan must be evaluated and approved by the General Contractor Safety Manager prior to submission.

- b) The Confined Space SPA pre-work meeting agenda must include discussion about the scope and review of any conditions that may pose a hazard to workers and/or campus occupants as it relates to the planned confined space work.
- c) To hold a Confined Space SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:
  - (1) Sub-Contractor Competent Person
  - (2) General Contractor Safety Representative
  - (3) Owner's Representative [Optional]

## 6.15 Trenching and Excavations

The General Contractor must ensure the establishment of a written Trenching and Excavation Procedure that adheres to OSHA Regulations. A copy of this procedure must be submitted to the Owner's Representative, made part of the Contractor's Construction Project Safety Manual as [EXHIBIT E](#), and maintained on-site.

- a) The General Contractor must ensure trenching and/or excavation activities are not performed during regular school hours or near occupied school areas.
- b) Prior to any excavation activity, the General Contractor Safety Representative or Superintendent must ensure the following:
  - (1) Contact Texas811 (1-800-344-8377) for confirmation number.
  - (2) Ground penetrating radar (GPR) **and** review of existing plans must be performed as part of the underground utility locating methods. GPR reports must include an Underground Utility Location Survey/Utility Map which shows the positioning and identification of underground utilities in relation to any planned excavation activity.
  - (3) Potholing/hand digging is required within three (3) horizontal feet of "located" centerlines, and in areas where knowledge is lacking.
- c) The review of existing plans and any other reasonable efforts must be made to determine if any underground utilities (power lines, water lines, fuel lines, etc.) are present within the boundaries of the proposed work area.
- d) As the excavation work approaches the location of any known utilities, the lines must be uncovered, using extreme caution not to disturb the lines, and adequate measures must be taken to protect the lines from damage while the work progresses.
- e) All utilities known but not identified must be exposed by hand.
- f) All excavation must be inspected daily by a competent person, or after heavy rain, or other change that may have caused a change in ground stability conditions. Any excavation greater than 20 feet must be designed by an engineer and a copy forwarded to the Bond Program Safety Manager for review.

- g) Any personnel at the edge of a well, pit, shaft, and similar excavation six (6) feet or more in depth must be protected from falling by guardrail systems, barricades, or covers.
- h) Where a guardrail system or barricade is infeasible, the use of personal fall arrest systems are required.
- i) Any disturbed areas must be returned to existing and safe condition prior to departure.
- j) If the Contractor must make a cut, cavity, trench, or depression in the Earth's surface formed by earth removal, it must comply with the applicable OSHA Regulations.
- k) General Contractors must train, or require to be trained, those employees who will work in and around the excavation about the hazards, as required by OSHA, in the areas of daily inspections, soil testing, soil classifications, and protective or support systems.

## 6.16 Trenching and Excavation Safe Plan of Action (SPA)

A Trenching and Excavation Safe Plan of Action (SPA) is a site-specific comprehensive Trenching/Excavation Program which outlines what methods, procedures, and utility strike prevention efforts will be used in its program. This evaluation and program must be in writing and must be submitted to the Owner's Representative prior to any Trenching/Excavation work. Review and acceptance by the Contractor Safety Manager is required prior to submission and the start of work.

- a) General Contractor must coordinate and conduct an on-site Trenching and Excavation SPA pre-dig meeting one week prior to any planned excavation or trenching (hand digging included). The Cover Letter ([EXHIBIT E](#)) must be submitted along with a Safe Plan of Action (SPA). The safety plan must be evaluated and approved by the General Contractor Safety Manager prior to submission.
- b) The Trenching and Excavation SPA pre-work meeting agenda must include discussion about the scope and review of the existing underground utilities as it relates to the planned trenching/excavation. At the pre-dig meeting, the General Contractor must present a contingency plan regarding any utility struck during execution of such work.
- c) To hold a Trenching and Excavation SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:
  - (1) Sub-Contractor Competent Person
  - (2) General Contractor Safety Representative
  - (3) Owner's Representative [Optional]

**NOTE:** As defined by OSHA, an excavation as any man-made cut, cavity, trench, or depression in the Earth's surface formed by earth removal. A trench is defined as a narrow excavation (in relation to its length) made below the surface of the ground.

## 6.17 Pier Drilling

The General Contractor must ensure the establishment of a written Pier Drilling Procedure that adheres to OSHA Regulations. A copy of this procedure must be submitted to the Owner's Representative, made part of the Contractor's Construction Project Safety Manual as [EXHIBIT E](#), and maintained on-site.

- a) The Contractor must at no time perform any pier drilling activities during regular school hours or near occupied school areas.
- b) Prior to any pier drilling activity, the General Contractor Safety Representative or Superintendent must ensure the following:
  - (1) Contact Texas811 (1-800-344-8377) for confirmation number.
  - (2) Ground penetrating radar (GPR) **and** review of existing plans must be performed as part of the underground utility locating methods. GPR reports must include an Underground Utility Location Survey/Utility Map which shows the positioning and identification of underground utilities in relation to any planned excavation activity.
  - (3) Potholing/hand digging is required within three (3) horizontal feet of "located" centerlines, and in areas where knowledge is lacking.
- c) The review of existing plans and any other reasonable efforts must be made to determine if any underground utilities (power lines, water lines, fuel lines, etc.) are present within the boundaries of the proposed work area.
- d) As the excavation work approaches the location of any known utilities, the lines must be uncovered, using extreme caution not to disturb the lines, and adequate measures must be taken to protect the lines from damage while the work progresses.
- e) All utilities known but not identified must be exposed by hand.
- f) Any personnel at the edge of a well, pit, shaft, and similar excavation six (6) feet or more in depth must be protected from falling by guardrail systems, barricades, or covers.
- g) Where a guardrail system or barricade is infeasible, use of personal fall arrest systems are required.
- h) Pier Drilling equipment must remain barricaded at all times and NOT be operated in occupied school areas.
- i) Any disturbed areas must be returned to existing and safe condition prior to departure.
- j) If the Contractor must make a cut, cavity, trench, or depression in the Earth's surface formed by earth removal, it must comply with the applicable OSHA Regulations.
- k) General Contractors must train, or require to be trained, those employees who will work in and around the pier drilling operation about the hazards, as required by OSHA, in the areas of daily inspections, soil testing, soil classifications, and protective or support systems.

## 6.18 Pier Drilling Safe Plan of Action (SPA)

A Pier Drilling Safe Plan of Action (SPA) is a site-specific comprehensive Pier Drilling Program which outlines what methods, procedures, and utility strike prevention efforts will be used in its program. This evaluation and program must be in writing and must be submitted to the Owner's Representative prior to any Pier Drilling work. Review and acceptance by the General Contractor Safety Manager is required prior to submission and the start of work.

- a) When working adjacent to any Pier six (6) feet in depth or greater, an appropriate means of fall protection must be provided.
- b) General Contractor must coordinate and conduct an on-site Pier Drilling SPA pre-work meeting one week prior to any planned pier drilling. The Cover Letter ([EXHIBIT F](#)) must be submitted along with a Safe Plan of Action (SPA). The safety plan must be evaluated and approved by the General Contractor Safety Manager prior to submission.
- c) The Pier Drilling SPA pre-work meeting agenda must include discussion about the scope and review of the existing underground utilities as it relates to the planned pier drilling operation. At the pre-work meeting, the General Contractor must present a contingency plan regarding any utility struck during the pier drilling of such work.
- d) To hold a Pier Drilling SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:
  - (1) Sub-Contractor Competent Person
  - (2) General Contractor Safety Representative
  - (3) Owner's Representative [Optional]

## 6.19 Locating Utilities

Prior to any underground work being performed, all utilities within the area of work must be located. Safety representative must ensure that Texas811 (1-800-344-8377) has been notified, and Ground Penetrating Radar (GPR) **and** review of exiting plans is be performed as part of the underground utility locating methods and a confirmation number has been issued prior to any excavation.

- a) The General Contractor must coordinate with the Program Manager Network or the Architect to have all utilities within the area of work located.
- b) The contract specifications and drawings must be reviewed by the General Contractor for notations of utility companies that may not be a member of an underground service alert group. Those not members of an underground service alert group must be contacted directly.
- c) All calls to the utility companies must be logged and retained by the General Contractor.
- d) The General Contractor must visually check the area for signs indicating the possibility of recent underground relocation work by an outside entity.
- e) The General Contractor must take all necessary steps to protect the utilities from damage.
- f) Ground penetrating radar (GPR) must be performed as part of the underground utility locating methods prior to any excavation activity.

- g) GPR reports must include an Underground Utility Location Survey or Utility Map which shows the positioning and identification of underground utilities in relation to any planned excavation activity.
- h) “Potholing” and/or hand digging must be required within three (3) horizontal feet of “located” centerlines, and in areas where knowledge is lacking, prior to any planned excavation activity.

## 6.20 Utility and Electrical Shutdowns

Prior to any type of shutdown, re-energizing, re-pressurizing, or tie-in activities, the General Contractor is responsible for completing the Shutdown Notification Guidelines as outlined in [Attachment V](#), along with the applicable safety submittal requirements outlines in this section.

- a) The General Contractor or Subcontractor of any tier must at no time perform any type of power or other utility shutdown activities during regular school hours. Shutdowns are to be scheduled during weekends or extended breaks.
- b) **10-Day Notice of Shutdown** – General Contractor must provide Dallas ISD with notification of power or other utility shutdown no less than ten (10) calendar days in advance of the shutdown. Notification includes Dallas ISD Central Maintenance Office, A/E, Program Manager, and the Principal at each affected school.
- c) Shutdown Authorization Form ([EXHIBIT I](#)) must be submitted to the Dallas ISD Bond Program Manager and Dallas ISD Project Manager for signatures of approval.
- d) The General Contractor must ensure confirmation of readiness from affected Dallas ISD Departments (Including but not limited to HVAC, Kitchen, Fire Suppression, etc.) prior to any power or other utility shutdown activities.
- e) When adding HVAC units, the General Contractor must notify the Project AE for approval of increased load
- f) Prior to relocating any utility, Dallas ISD Sustainability Department must be notified.

## 6.21 Utility and Electric Shutdown Safe Plan of Action (SPA)

A Utility or Electrical Shutdown Safe Plan of Action (SPA) is a site-specific comprehensive Shutdown Program which outlines what methods, procedures, and contingency efforts will be used in its program. This evaluation and program must be in writing and must be submitted to the Owner’s Representative prior to any power or other utility shutdown activities. Review and acceptance by the General Contractor Safety Manager is required prior to submission, and utility shutdown activities.

- a) General Contractor must coordinate and conduct an on-site Shutdown pre-work meeting prior to any planned Utility or Electrical Shutdown. The applicable Cover Letter ([EXHIBIT G](#) or [EXHIBIT H](#)) must be submitted along with a Utility or Electrical Shutdown SPA. The safety plan must be evaluated and approved by the General Contractor Safety Manager prior to submission.
- b) The Utility or Electrical Shutdown SPA pre-work meeting agenda must include discussion about the scope and review of any existing or potential hazards and contingency efforts as it relates to the planned shutdown.

- c) To hold an Electrical or Utility Shutdown SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:
  - (1) Sub-Contractor Competent Person
  - (2) General Contractor Safety Representative
  - (3) Owner's Representative [Optional]

## 6.22 Electrical Work

All electrical work for and throughout the course of any construction project must be provided and performed in accordance with the National Electric Code (NEC), and OSHA, 29 CFR 1926 Subpart K, 29 CFR 1926 Subpart V, NFPA 70E and NFPA 70.

- a) All 120-volt single-phase 15 and 20 ampere receptacle outlets on construction sites, which are not a part of the permanent wiring of the building or structure and which are in use by employees, must have approved ground fault circuit interrupters (GFCI) for personal protection.
- b) Receptacles on a two-wire single-phase portable or vehicle-mounted generator rated not more than 5 kw, when the circuit conductors are insulated from the generator frame and all other grounded surfaces, need not be protected with ground fault circuit interrupters.
- c) Employees must be instructed to visually inspect each cord set, plug, and receptacle of cord sets, temporary lighting and all equipment connected by the cord and plug before each day's use for external defects and/or damage. When there is evidence of damage, the damaged item must be taken out of service, tagged until tested, and required repairs made or the item is replaced.
- d) No work must not be performed on any energized electrical circuit, busbars, equipment, or panels unless an approved written work plan in accordance with NFPA 70E and submittal for review prior to performance of work. If energized work is required during commissioning, troubleshooting, and/or maintenance work must be performed under an energized electrical permit and the requirements of NFPA 70E.
- e) Panel Covers must be kept in place whenever any panel is energized.
- f) All Electrical Systems must be inspected and maintained on a regular basis.

## 6.23 Lockout/Tagout (LOTO)

A Lockout/Tagout procedure must be in place in accordance with OSHA 29 CFR 1926.417 and 1910.147 whenever performing inspections, maintenance, repairs, and modifications to equipment, machinery or electrical systems where unexpected release of energy or stored energy could create an injury. A Site LOTO log must be maintained and posted within the GC trailer and/or jobsite officing area.

Electrical box panels, even during breaks, must not be left exposed. Exposed boxes must be physically covered with the panel cover, and areas must be protected with barricades if necessary.

## 6.24 Electrical Power Lines

All electrical power line must be considered energized until the person owning such line or operating official of the electrical utility supplying the line assures that it is not energized, and it has been visibly grounded.

- a) Operations adjacent to power lines are prohibited unless at least one of the following conditions is satisfied:
  - (1) Power has been shut off and positive means taken to prevent the lines from being energized (Lock out/Tag out).
  - (2) Equipment, or any part, should not have the capability of coming within the minimum clearance of energized overhead lines. As specified in OSHA Regulations, the equipment must be positioned and blocked to ensure no part, including cables, can come within the minimum clearances. A notice of the minimum required clearance must be posted at the operator's position.

## 6.25 Fall Prevention and Protection

General Contractors are responsible for implementing the requirements to achieve fall protection in accordance with all OSHA, Federal, State, and local regulations, this Manual, and must ensure each Subcontractor meets those requirements. A copy of this procedure must be submitted to the Owner's Representative, made part of the Contractor's Construction Project Safety Manual as, [EXHIBIT J](#) and maintained on-site.

- a) All personnel regardless of craft working at a height of six (6) feet or greater above a lower level, and not protected by standard guardrails or other means must use an appropriate means of fall protection. The fall protection system selected should provide the employees the best means of protection while allowing the employees as much mobility as possible.
- b) All employees working where there is a danger of falling must use approved fall protection equipment or devices. Fall protection is required.
- c) The employer must prepare a written training program to ensure that each employee who might be exposed to a fall hazard is knowledgeable of the Fall Protection Program requirements. Training documentation must be retained and kept on file at the jobsite.
- d) The Fall Protection Program must detail in writing when fall protection is required and exactly how this protection is to be provided. Sketches may be used to assist in the fall protection definition. This written program is required for any General Contractor or Subcontractor of any tier exposing workers to falls six (6) feet or greater above a lower level.
- e) Employees must also be trained on the proper wearing, use, and limitations of personal Fall Protection and Arresting Device Systems. Training documentation must be retained and kept on file at the jobsite.
- f) Fall arrest systems must be rigged such that an employee can neither free fall more than six (6) feet, nor contact any lower level.
- g) Connecting two snap hooks together, as the possibility of a "roll-out" exists, must not be used to lengthen lanyards.



- h) All harnesses and lanyards must be inspected frequently by the General Contractor and/or Subcontractor Competent Person. Regular inspections for wear, damage, or corrosion is a daily requirement. Damaged or defective equipment must be removed from service by the responsible Contractor or General Contractor and be destroyed to eliminate the possibility of using at a later date.
- i) The employer must assure that a Competent Person, qualified in the following areas, has trained each employee as necessary:
  - (1) Complete understanding of all Federal, State, and Local Fall Protection Regulations.
  - (2) The nature of fall hazards in the work area.
  - (3) The correct procedures for erecting, maintaining, disassembling, and inspecting fall protection systems to be used.
  - (4) The use and operation of guardrail systems, personal fall arrest systems, safety net systems, warning line systems, safety monitoring systems, controlled access zones, and other protection to be used.
  - (5) The role of each employee in the safety monitoring system (when this system is used).

## **6.26 Elevated Work Safe Plan of Action (SPA)**

An Elevated Work Safe Plan of Action (SPA) is a site-specific comprehensive Fall Protection Program which outlines what methods, procedures, and equipment will be used in its program. This evaluation and program must be in writing and must be submitted to the Owner's Representative prior to any employee exposure at an elevation of six (6) feet or greater. Review and acceptance by the General Contractor Safety Manager is required prior to submission, the start of work, or employee exposure.

- a) General Contractors must coordinate and conduct an on-site Elevated Work SPA pre-work meeting one week prior to any planned elevated work six (6) feet or more from a lower level. The Cover Letter ([EXHIBIT J](#)) must be submitted along with an Elevated Work SPA. The safety plan must be evaluated and approved by the General Contractor Safety Manager prior to submission.
- b) The Elevated Work SPA pre-meeting agenda must include discussion about the scope and review of any existing and/or potential fall hazards as it relates to the planned elevated work.
- c) To hold an Elevated Work SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:
  - (1) Sub-Contractor Competent Person
  - (2) General Contractor Safety Representative
  - (3) Owner's Representative [Optional]

## 6.27 Roofing

No roofing work, regardless of the extent, is to be done over an occupied area. No other work will be allowed over an occupied area if it requires access to the roof. This includes, but is not limited to coring, drilling, or installation of electrical and plumbing pipe, Roof blocking, curb construction or reconstruction, flashing etc.

The intent is to restrict the activity that may cause a hazard to the occupants below. Inspections and maintenance activities are allowed as long as it does not involve significant work that might fall into the realm of the aforementioned hazard.

**NOTE:** An Elevated Work SPA ([EXHIBIT J](#)) may be required for roof work six (6) feet or greater in height or above a lower level.

## 6.28 Melting Kettles

Before firing a kettle (following the manufacturer's instructions), employees must check hoses, gauges, fuel tanks, bumpers, and other equipment for defects and make sure the lid fits tightly. Burners should not be ignited near fuel or flammable materials. All kettles must be equipped with after-burner devices.

- a) Other workers who may be working on the roof should keep clear of the kettle workers and their equipment.
- b) Work areas where melting kettles are in use will be barricaded off at a minimum distance of twenty-five (25) feet from other work areas.
- c) No combustible materials, including insulation and bitumen, should be stored near the kettle.
- d) Kettles should not be placed directly on combustible roofs. When it is necessary to place a kettle on such roofs, noncombustible surfaces must be placed under the kettle.
- e) Heating devices or melting kettles should be placed on a level, firm foundation and protected against traffic, accidental tipping, or similar hazards.
- f) A minimum of three (3) 20 lb. (A: B:C) dry chemical fire extinguishers must be provided for each kettle and tanker operation, each open flame torching operation, and each work crew using mechanical equipment, power tools, hot bitumen, or flammable liquids.
- g) Travel distance from the kettle work area to the nearest fire extinguisher must be located within twenty-five (25) feet, on opposite sides of the kettle. These extinguishers shall be readily accessible at all times in case of an emergency.
- h) Hot kettles should never be left unattended, **even during lunch periods**. The kettle covers should be readily available and fit tightly. All kettle workers should know how to put out a kettle fire.
- i) Before refueling, burners and engines must be safely shut down and allowed to cool.
- j) A non-combustible surface must be available on which to put a burner when removed from the kettle.
- k) Enclosed areas in which hot substances are being heated or applied should be properly ventilated.

- l) Hoisting equipment should be used to raise bitumen to the roof. Hot bitumen should never be carried up ladders. The hoisting equipment must be strong enough to hoist the load and be properly secured.
- m) Employees must know the proper way to pick up a bucket and not jerk or kick a bucket that is stuck to a roof.
- n) At the conclusion of work, roofing mops should be “fanned out” onto a noncombustible surface to minimize the chance of spontaneous ignition.

## 6.29 Scaffolding

The erection, alteration or moving, of any scaffolding system or work platform must be performed under the direction of a designated "Competent Person."

- a) Guardrails, mid-rails, and toe-boards must be installed on all open sides of scaffolds. This guardrail system should be constructed from components furnished by the manufacturer.
- b) Unauthorized personnel must not alter scaffolds or work platforms.
- c) Guardrails are required for all scaffolding greater than six (6) feet in height. All employees working on scaffolds 6 ft. or higher must have adequate means of fall protection.
- d) Where uplift may occur, scaffold planks must be cleated or secured and must extend over the end supports by at least 6 inches but not by more than 12 inches.
- e) A competent person must visually inspect all scaffold members before each use. Damaged scaffold members must be removed from service immediately.
- f) Access ladders must be provided for each scaffold in accordance with OSHA 1926.450.
- g) Adequate mudsills and/or base plates or other rigid footing, capable of withstanding the maximum intended load, must be provided.
- h) Scaffolds must be tied off to the building or structure at intervals in accordance with OSHA 1926.450.
- i) Scaffolds must not be overloaded. Materials shall be brought up as needed. Excess materials and scrap must be removed from the scaffold when work is completed.
- j) Barrels, boxes, kegs, horses, ladders, loose tile blocks, loose piles of bricks, or other unstable objects must not be used as work platforms or mounted on top of other work platforms.
- k) Where persons are required to work or pass under a scaffold, a screen of 18 gauges, 1/2-inch wire mesh or equivalent protection is required between the toe boards and the guardrail.
- l) Overhead protection is required if employees working on scaffolds are exposed to overhead hazards.

**NOTE:** An Elevated Work SPA ([EXHIBIT J](#)) may be required for scaffolding systems six (6) feet or greater in height or above a lower level.

## 6.30 Floor and Wall Openings

As defined by OSHA, a hole constitutes as any gap or void two (2) inches or more in its least dimension, in a floor, roof, or other walking/working surface. Hole covers must be capable of supporting without failure, at least twice the weight of employees, equipment, and materials that may be imposed on the cover at any one time.

### 6.30.1 General

- a) All floor holes and openings into which persons can accidentally walk or fall through must be guarded by a physical barrier or cover, secured, and labeled, "HOLE COVER – DO NOT REMOVE", or protected by a standard guardrail system.
- b) Wall openings, from which there is a drop of more than 6 feet, and where the bottom of the opening is less than 42 inches above the working surface, must be guarded with a top rail, mid-rail, and toe board.
- c) A standard guardrail system or perimeter cable must guard every open-sided floor or platform 6 feet or more above the adjacent floor or ground level.
- d) When it is necessary to work inside the barricade around a floor opening, or building edge, workers must wear and use a Personal Fall Arrest System, which must be tied off.

### 6.30.2 Guardrails

- a) Top rails and mid-rails protecting all work areas 4 feet or more in height must be smooth surfaced throughout their length and have a vertical height of 42 inches. Midrails must be halfway between the top rails and the floor, platform, runway, or ramp. Synthetic or natural fiber ropes must not be used as top-rails or mid-rails.
- b) Wire rope, when used as top-rails or mid-rails, must be free of sharp edges, burrs, or projections which may be a hazard. The maximum deflection of the top rail when a load of 200 pounds is applied in any direction at any point on the top rail must not exceed 3 inches in one direction, which includes the free hanging sag in the wire rope. Support posts must not be positioned more than eight (8) feet apart.
- c) Wood top railing must be at least 2 x 4-inch stock or equivalent. Wood railing posts must be of at least 2 x 4-inch lumber spaced not to exceed 8 feet. Mid-rails must be at least 1 x 6-inch stock or equivalent. Toe boards must be 1 x 4-inch lumber or equivalent and securely fastened.
- d) When materials are piled to such a height that a standard toe board does not provide protection, paneling, or screening from the floor to top-rail or mid-rails must be provided.
- e) All guardrails and handrails must be inspected daily and repaired immediately, as needed.

## 6.31 Stairways and Ladders

### 6.31.1 Ladders

- a) Manufactured ladders must be at minimum Type 1A rated (300lb.)
- b) Portable aluminum ladders shall be prohibited.
- c) All job-made wooden ladders and stairs, regardless of height, must be constructed according to OSHA and ANSI specifications.
- d) Extension ladders must not exceed forty-four (44) feet in length.
- e) Stepladders must not exceed twenty (20) feet in length.
- f) Single cleat ladders must not exceed thirty (30) feet in length.
- g) Double cleat ladder must not exceed a maximum length of twenty-four (24) feet.
- h) Workers must maintain three points of contact, with the ladder, while ascending or descending and always face the ladder; Hands must be free of tools and materials.
- i) Fixed Ladders: Fall protection must be provided for employees climbing or working from fixed ladders above twenty-four (24) feet. A fixed ladder is a ladder that cannot be readily moved or carried because it is an integral part of a building, structure, or scaffolding system.

### 6.31.2 Stairways

- a) Stairs having 4 or more risers must have its sides protected by a standard handrail system.
- b) All job-made wooden ladders and stairs, regardless of height, must be constructed according to OSHA and ANSI specifications.
- c) On temporary stairways, for every 12 feet of vertical riser, there must be a landing platform, and:
  - (1) Stairs must be at least 24 inches wide and equipped with treads and handrails.
  - (2) Temporary stairs must have a 30-inch-wide landing for every 12 feet of vertical rise.
  - (3) Stairs must be properly illuminated (5 footcandles).
  - (4) Stairways, ramps, or ladders must be provided at all points where a break in elevation of 19 inches or more occurs in a frequently traveled passageway, entry, or exit.
- d) Where permanent stairways are not installed, concurrently with the construction of each floor, a temporary stairway must be provided to the work level. Joints must be locked together by lock pins, bolts, or equivalent fastenings.
- e) Handrails must be of construction similar to a standard guardrail. All handrails and railings must be provided with a clearance of approximately 3 inches between the handrail or railing and any other object.
- f) Handrails must be not more than 37 inches or less than 30 inches from upper surface of handrail to surface of tread. Handrails must also be in line with the face of the riser, or to the surface of the ramp.

## 6.32 Crane Operations

A Crane Operations Safe Plan of Action (SPA) pre-operational meeting is required to review the appropriate lift plan prior to making any Critical lift, Major lift, or Standard lift. It should never be assumed that any member of the crew is aware of all aspects of the lift, and therefore all aspects of the lift plan should be reviewed.

- a) The General Contractor must ensure that its Subcontractors meet the requirements set forth by ASME B30.5.2011 and OSHA 29 CFR Subpart CC.
- b) The following documentation must be available inside of the cab, before crane is placed into service:
  - (1) current monthly inspection
  - (2) Manufacturer's load chart
  - (3) Manufacturer's operating manual.
- c) All cranes must receive regular, thorough, and periodic inspections, in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations or applicable governing standards. All defects noted during any crane inspection must be corrected, prior to use.
- d) All cranes must be used in accordance with manufacturer guidelines.
- e) Cranes must never be operated in excess of its rated capacity.
- f) Contractors must not use a crane to lift/lower and/or suspend personnel in man baskets or work platforms. Any exception to this rule must be cleared through the Contractor's project manager or superintendent.
- g) All rigging equipment (i.e., slings, softeners, bridles, blocking cables, etc.) must be inspected prior to use and documented monthly.
- h) The General Contractor must ensure that crane and wire rope inspections are performed and that daily, monthly, quarterly, and annual logs are maintained. Crane Inspection Record is included as [EXHIBIT K](#) (equivalent form(s) may be utilized).
- i) All rigging must be kept in good condition, working load limit capacities properly identified, and properly stored when not in use.
- j) All Rigging work must only be done by qualified riggers.
- k) Booms and/or suspended loads must not be allowed to pass over playground or other school property when students and/or staff are present in these areas.
- l) Safety hooks must be used on all operations where loads are being handled.
- m) All suspended loads must be controlled by tag lines of enough length to control the load.
- n) All signal persons must:
  - (1) Receive proper signaling training.
  - (2) Never allow a suspended load to pass over or come within ten (10) feet of power lines.
  - (3) Never allow a suspended load to pass over, nor any individual to pass under, a suspended load.
  - (4) Be in constant view and communication with the crane operator. Constant communications include proper hand signals and/or radio communications.

- (5) Make daily general inspections of the crane prior to use and maintain a log of these inspections. The Operator, or other qualified person may also conduct the daily inspection.
- o) All crane operators must:
  - (1) Be thoroughly trained and must have related experience,
  - (2) Be familiar with safe crane practices and procedures.
  - (3) Have a complete understanding of all manuals, including maintenance and operating instructions provided for the specific crane in use.
  - (4) Have no physical, visual, or mental reactions or impairments that will affect the safe operations of the assigned crane.
- p) The crane operator and crew must not engage in any practice such as cell phone usage during crane operations that could divert their attention.
- q) For all Dallas ISD property that lies within an Airport Control Zone (within 5 miles of any airport) the General Contractor will ensure that the crane’s boom lighting, flagging, raising, and lowering comply with FFA rules.
- r) To provide clearance for air traffic, all booms must be below 175 feet above ground level (AGL) during the hours of sunset to sunrise. However, if this is not possible and temporary construction cranes are left up during this time period or utilized in support of construction activities, then all cranes must have lighting in accordance with FFA Advisory Circulation 70/7460-1, “Obstruction Marking and Lighting.”

### **6.33 Crane Operations Safe Plan of Action (SPA)**

A Crane Operations Safe Plan of Action (SPA) is a site-specific comprehensive crane lift plan which outlines what methods, procedures, and equipment will be used in its plan. This evaluation and program must be in writing and must be submitted to the Owner’s Representative prior to any crane activity. Review and acceptance by the General Contractor Safety Manager is required prior to submission.

- a) Any changes in site conditions that could affect the safe operation of the crane must be evaluated and included within the SPA; this plan must be approved by a qualified person.
- b) General Contractor must coordinate and conduct an on-site Crane Operations SPA pre-work meeting one week prior to any planned crane activity. The Cover Letter ([EXHIBIT K](#)) must be submitted along with a Crane Operations SPA. The safety plan must be evaluated and approved by the General Contractor Safety Manager prior to submission.
- c) Prior to any crane activity, the General Contractor must submit, to the Bond Program Safety Director, or designee:
  - (1) A copy of the crane certification and documentation of the most recent annual inspection prior to crane use.
  - (2) Crane certificate of insurance
  - (3) A copy of the annual crane inspection as well as current maintenance reports.
  - (4) Crane Operator certification
  - (5) Crane Operator medical card

- (6) Crane Location plan that identifies known hazards for underground and overhead crane operations, and where the crane is approved or not approved to operate.
  - (7) Any changes in site conditions that could affect the safe operation of the crane; this plan must be approved by a qualified person.
  - (8) Rigger and/or Signal Person's training records
  - (9) Job Hazard Analysis
- d) To hold a Crane Operations SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:
- (1) Sub-Contractor Competent Person
  - (2) General Contractor Safety Representative
  - (3) Owner's Representative [Optional]

## **6.34 Steel Erection**

Structural stability must be maintained at all times during the steel erection process. The General Contractor must ensure the establishment of a written Steel Erection Procedure that adheres to OSHA, Federal, State, and local regulations. A copy of this procedure must be submitted to the Owner's Representative, made part of the Contractor's Construction Project Safety Manual as [EXHIBIT L](#), and maintained on-site.

### **6.34.1 Site Layout and Construction Sequence**

General Contractors must provide erectors with a site layout/map which includes, but is not limited to:

- (1) Pre-planned routes for hoisting loads
- (2) Pre-planned routes for delivering material, equipment, etc.
- (3) Material staging area(s)
- (4) Known hazards that may affect underground and/or overhead operations.

### **6.34.2 Structural Steel Assembly**

In addition to the items listed in this section, all contractors of any tier must comply with all federal, state, and local requirements, including those in other sections of this safety manual. All contractors must be required to comply with all parts of these requirements based on their scope of work.

- a) Contractors of any tier must not erect steel until receiving a written certification of proper curing of the concrete in the footings, piers, walls, etc. is of sufficient strength to support the loads imposed during steel erection.
- b) Prior to the erection of any column, the General Contractor must provide written notification to the steel erector if there has been any repair, replacement, or modification of the anchor rods (anchor bolts) of that column.

### **6.34.3 Hoisting and Rigging**

Contractors of any tier must use qualified riggers during hoisting activities for assembly and disassembly work (29 CFR 1926.1404(r)(1)). Additionally, qualified riggers are required



whenever workers are within the fall zone and hooking, unhooking, or guiding a load, or doing the initial connection of a load to a component or structure (29 CFR 1926.1425(c)).

- a) All Rigging and Signal person(s) must be properly trained in accordance with all Federal, State, and local regulations.
- b) Free rigging is the practice of attaching ropes, chains, or slings to a telehandler/forklift tine(s) for the purpose of lifting and moving. Free rigging must not be permitted without the telehandler/forklift manufacturer's letter of approval.
- c) Exposure to overhead loads must be minimized through pre-planned routes for hoisting loads and/or other contracting personnel who may be transiting the jobsite.
- d) Any procedure(s) for multiple rigging lifts (Christmas-treeing) is prohibited.
- e) General Contractors must pre-plan site-specific work practices regarding safely landing loads while maintaining proper protection from fall hazards.

#### **6.34.4 Column Anchorage and Double Connections**

Columns must be set on level finished floors, pre-grouted leveling plates, leveling nuts, or shim packs which are adequate to transfer the construction loads.

- a) All columns must be evaluated by a competent person to determine whether guying or bracing is needed; if guying or bracing is needed, it must be installed.
- b) All columns must be anchored by a minimum of 4 anchor rods (anchor bolts).
- c) Anchor rods (anchor bolts) must not be repaired, replaced, or field-modified without the approval of the project structural engineer of record.
- d) When two structural members on opposite sides of a column web, or a beam web over a column, are connected sharing common connection holes, at least one bolt with its wrench-tight nut must remain connected to the first member unless a shop-attached or field-attached seat or equivalent connection device is supplied with the member to secure the first member and prevent the column from being displaced (See Appendix H of 29 CFR 1926 subpart R for examples of equivalent connection devices).

#### **6.34.5 Falling Object Protection**

- a) All materials, equipment, and tools, which are not in use while aloft, must be secured against accidental displacement.
- b) The General Contractor must bar any construction processes below steel erection activities unless overhead protection for the employees below is provided.

#### **6.34.6 Fall Protection**

Each employee engaged in any steel erection activity who is on a walking/working surface with an unprotected side or edge more than six (6) feet above a lower level must be protected from fall hazards by guardrail systems, safety net systems, personal fall arrest systems, positioning device systems, or fall restraint systems.

- a) A safety railing of 1/4-inch wire rope, or equal, must be installed approximately 42 inches high, around the periphery of a temporary planked or metal deck floor during structural steel erection. This wire rope must be flagged every six (6) feet.

- b) Wire rope should be securely fastened yet allow for temporary removal in order to land materials.

#### **6.34.7 Controlled Decking Zone (CDZ)**

A controlled decking zone may be established in the area of the structure over fifteen (15) feet and up to thirty (30) feet above a lower level where metal decking is initially being installed and forms the leading edge of a work area. In each CDZ, the following must apply:

- a) Each employee working at the leading edge within a CDZ must be protected from fall hazards six (6) feet or greater above a lower level.
- b) Access to a CDZ must be limited to only those employees engaged in leading edge work.
- c) The boundaries of a CDZ must be designated and clearly marked. The CDZ must not be more than ninety (90) feet wide and ninety (90) feet deep from any leading edge. The CDZ must be marked by the use of control lines or the equivalent. (Examples of acceptable procedures for demarcating CDZ's can be found in Appendix D of 29 CFR 1926 subpart R).
- d) Each employee working in a CDZ must have completed CDZ training in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.761.
- e) Unsecured decking in a CDZ must not exceed three thousand (3,000) square feet.
- f) Safety deck attachments must be performed in the CDZ from the leading edge back to the control line and must have at least two attachments for each metal decking panel.
- g) Final deck attachments and installation of shear connectors must not be performed in the CDZ.

#### **6.34.8 Training**

Each employee engaged in any steel erection activity who is on a walking/working surface with an unprotected side or edge more than six (6) feet above a lower level must be trained and instructed, but not limited to, the following areas:

- a) Have completed connector training in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.761
- b) Each employee working in a CDZ must have completed CDZ training in accordance with 29 CFR 1926.761.
- c) The recognition and identification of fall hazards in the work area.
- d) The use and operation of protective systems, such as guardrail systems, personal fall-arrest systems, positioning-device systems, fall-restraint systems, safety-net systems, and other protection to be used.
- e) The correct procedures for erecting, maintaining, disassembling, and inspecting the fall protection systems to be used.
- f) Procedures for protection from falls to lower levels and into holes and openings in walking/working surfaces and walls.

### 6.35 Steel Erection Safe Plan of Action (SPA)

A Steel Erection Safe Plan of Action (SPA) is a comprehensive site-specific steel erection plan which outlines key erection elements such as methods, procedures, and equipment that will be utilized during all phases of the steel erection operation. This evaluation and plan must be in writing and must be submitted to the Owner's Representative prior to any steel erection activity. Review and acceptance by the General Contractor Safety Manager is required prior to submission, the start of work, or any employee engagement with this activity.

- a) General Contractors must coordinate and conduct an on-site Steel Erection SPA pre-work meeting one week prior to any engagement of steel erection activities. The Cover Letter ([EXHIBIT L](#)) must be submitted along with a Steel Erection SPA. The safety plan must be evaluated and approved by the General Contractor Safety Manager prior to submission.
- b) The Steel Erection SPA pre-meeting agenda must include discussion about the scope and review of any existing and/or potential hazards as it relates to the planned scope of work.
- c) To hold a Steel Erection SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:
  - (1) Sub-Contractor Competent Person
  - (2) General Contractor Safety Representative
  - (3) Owner's Representative [Optional]

### 6.36 Aerial Crane Operations

The General Contractor must ensure the establishment of a written Aerial Crane Procedure that adheres to all applicable regulations of the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) 14 CFR – Part 77, and the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) 29 CFR 1926.551 – Subpart N, in addition to applicable State and local regulations. A copy of this procedure must be submitted to the Owner's Representative, made part of the Contractor's Construction Project Safety Manual as [EXHIBIT M](#), and maintained on-site.

Every precaution must be taken to provide protection against flying objects in the rotor downwash. All loose objects within one hundred (100) feet of any areas susceptible to rotor downwash must be secured or removed prior to any Aerial Crane Lift.

- a) Aerial Crane Operations must not be performed during regular school hours or near occupied areas.
- b) No unauthorized person(s) must be allowed to approach within fifty (50) feet of the helicopter when the rotor blades are turning.
- c) Open flames, hot work, or any other spark producing activities must not be permitted in an area that could result in fires being spread by the rotor downwash.
- d) Ground personnel must be properly trained when required for safe helicopter loading and unloading operations.
- e) Constant reliable communication must be provided between the pilot, and a designated employee of the ground crew who acts as a signalman during the period of loading and unloading. This signalman must be distinctly recognizable from other ground personnel.

- f) When visibility is reduced by dust or other conditions, ground personnel must exercise special caution to keep clear of main and stabilizing rotors. Precautions must also be taken by the General Contractor to eliminate any conditions of reduced visibility.
- g) Personal protective equipment for ground persons receiving the load shall consist of complete eye protection and hard hats secured by chinstraps.
- h) The helicopter operator is responsible for size, weight, and manner in which loads are connected to the helicopter. If, for any reason, the helicopter operator believes the lift cannot be made safely, the lift shall not be made. The weight of any external load must not exceed the manufacturer's rating.
- i) When Contractors are required to perform work under hovering craft, a safe means of access must be provided for workers to reach the hoist line hook and engage or disengage cargo slings. Employees must not perform work under hovering craft except when necessary to hook or unhook loads.
- j) Static charge on the suspended load shall be dissipated with a grounding device before ground personnel touch the suspended load, or protective rubber gloves must be worn by all ground personnel touching the suspended load.
- k) Loads shall be properly slung, and tag lines shall be of a length that will not cause them to be drawn up into rotors.
- l) Electrically operated cargo hooks must have the electrical activating device designed and installed to prevent inadvertent operation. In addition, these cargo hooks must be equipped with an emergency mechanical control for releasing the load. The hooks must be tested prior to each day's operation to determine that the release functions properly, both electrically and mechanically.

### **6.37 Aerial Crane Operations Safe Plan of Action (SPA)**

An Aerial Crane Operations Safe Plan of Action (SPA) is a site-specific comprehensive aerial lift plan which outlines what methods, procedures, and equipment will be used in its plan. This evaluation and program must be in writing and must be submitted to the Owner's Representative prior to any aerial crane activity. Review and acceptance by the General Contractor Safety Manager is required prior to submission.

- a) Any changes in site conditions that could affect the safe operation of the aerial lift must be evaluated and included within the SPA. This plan must be approved by a qualified person.
- b) General Contractor must coordinate and conduct an on-site Aerial Crane Operations SPA pre-work meeting one week prior to any planned crane activity. The Cover Letter ([EXHIBIT M](#)) must be submitted along with a Crane Operations SPA. The safety plan must be evaluated and approved by the General Contractor Safety Manager prior to submission.
- c) This briefing shall set forth the plan of operation for the pilot and ground personnel. A copy of this procedure must be made part of the Contractor's Construction Project Safety Manual as [EXHIBIT M](#) and maintained on-site.

- d) Prior to any aerial crane activity, the General Contractor must submit, to the Dallas ISD PM and Bond Program Safety Manager the following minimum elements of an Aerial Crane Operations SPA:
- (1) Lift Plan (scope of work, travel path, ground level and ariel hazards or obstructions)
  - (2) Site Set-Up (map of staging areas, sequence of operation, primary and alternate emergency area locations, and potential drop zones in relation to occupied areas)
  - (3) Material to be lifted (method of attachment, rigging to be used, configuration, and load capacities)
  - (4) Roles and responsibilities (communication methods for ground crew, roof crew, and operator)
  - (5) Competent Person Designation form (must identify areas of competency along with proof of training)
  - (6) Rigger and signal person training records
  - (7) JHA (include hazard assessment, equipment, and PPE needed to safely perform this task)
  - (8) Emergency Action Plan (including emergency contact information and medical facility)
  - (9) Standard Airworthiness Certificate
  - (10) Congested Area Plan Request to FAA
  - (11) FAA Registry of Aircraft
  - (12) FAA Airman Detail Report
  - (13) Notification of Dallas City Officials
  - (14) Certificate of Aircraft liability insurance (insurance limit must be \$10 million, per contract amount)
  - (15) Evidence of additional insured and waiver of subrogation endorsement
- e) To hold an Aerial Crane Operations SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:
- (1) Sub-Contractor Competent Person
  - (2) General Contractor Safety Representative
  - (3) Owner's Representative [Optional]

**NOTE:** The District's Safety Department must receive acceptance of Certificate of Insurance (COI) from the District's insurer prior to any Aerial Crane Activity.

## 6.38 Hot Work

All work that includes an open flame, burning, welding, or spark producing of any type must be defined as “hot work” and must require the presence of a fire extinguisher, at least one fire watch, and a Hot Work Permit.

### 6.38.1 General

In addition to strictly following the provisions of OSHA and NFPA, each Contractor must also comply with the following:

- a) No hot work must be conducted during occupied hours
- b) A Hot Work Permit issued by the Fire Marshal must be Posted within the General Contractor’s trailer or on-site officing area.
- c) A Hot Work Permit must be completed for each task using [EXHIBIT N](#) or equivalent.
- d) Fire extinguisher(s) used for “Hot Work” must be placed within this immediate vicinity of each task operation and must be of proper size and type for the activity, fully charged, and inspected prior to use. Extinguisher location must be kept clear and accessible at all times.
- e) A fire watch must be present during all hot work operations and remain at the work area 30 minutes after work is completed. All fire watch personnel must be trained in fire extinguisher safety.

## 6.39 Welding and Cutting

- a) All welding operations must provide appropriate screening measures, erected in advance, to contain the high energy light. Welding operations must not be allowed to present an opportunity for flash burn exposures to the eyes of any workers in the vicinity.
- b) Shielding, or welding curtains must be placed around established work areas to protect other workers from flash and sparks.
- c) Ventilation must be provided to adequately remove harmful fumes and gasses.
- d) The unused stubs of welding electrodes “rod butts” must be collected and placed in proper disposal containers as soon as each one is expended. Whenever an operation is idle, the welding electrode must be removed from stinger/electrode holder.
- e) Workers must receive training on the proper use, inspection, and limitations of all welding and cutting equipment and Personal Protective Equipment, as it pertains to the operation.
- f) Regulators for fuel gas and oxygen cylinders must be inspected before each use and be maintained in good working order.
- g) Anti-flashback arrestors must be properly installed on all cutting torches so that they prevent ignition of any gas sources upstream from the torch.
- h) Acetylene cylinder valve key must be kept with the cylinder at all times. Valve keys must be kept in position while in use.

## 6.40 Compressed Gas Cylinders

Contractor must store oxygen cylinders separate from fuel gas cylinders. This separation must be either a minimum distance of 20 feet or by a fire resistive wall/partition with a one-half hour fire rating and a minimum of five (5) feet in height. All compressed gas cylinders must be properly secured from movement – in an upright (vertical) position.

- a) All cylinders must be stored in the upright position, especially acetylene. When an acetylene cylinder is stored on its side, the acetylene may separate from the acetone, becoming unstable, and cause an internal explosion.
- b) Valves of the empty cylinders must be in the closed position.
- c) Cylinders must not be moved by tilting and rolling them on their bottom edges.
- d) When not in use, cylinders must have their protective caps in place and be hand tightened.
- e) Workers must be trained in the safe handling, storage and use of compressed gas cylinders.
- f) Workers must be trained in the proper use and handling of fuel gas and O2 cylinders

## 6.41 Earth Moving Equipment and Powered Industrial Trucks

A Powered Industrial Truck (PIT) is defined by any mobile, power-pulled truck used to carry, push, pull, lift, stack, or tier materials, whether ridden by the operator or controlled by a walking operator.

- a) All earth moving equipment and PIT must be maintained in a safe working condition and must be appropriate and adequate for the intended use. Excavation activities must not be conducted during occupied hours.
- b) Only authorized personnel must operate equipment. Operators of equipment, machinery, vehicles, or PIT must be qualified and properly authorized for the operation involved.
- c) Equipment and PIT operators must perform a pre-shift walk around safety inspection of their equipment, and any conditions that may affect safe operation will be corrected before use.
- d) Equipment must not be operated unless all required safety devices are in place and functioning properly.
- e) Careless, reckless, or otherwise unsafe operation or use of equipment must result in discipline and may constitute grounds for dismissal.
- f) Equipment maintenance is to be performed only by qualified mechanics.
- g) When equipment is serviced or repaired the operator must dismount until the service or repair is completed. Prior to remounting, operators must perform a complete walk-around safety inspection of the equipment.
- h) Before performing any service or repair work, all equipment must:
  - (1) Be stopped and positively secured against movement or operation.
  - (2) locked and tagged out of service, unless it is designed to be serviced while running, following the manufacturer's instructions.

- i) All bi-directional earth moving equipment, PIT, and motor vehicles with an obstructed view to the rear must be equipped with a warning horn and an automatic back-up (reverse) alarm that can be heard above and distinguished from the surrounding noise level.
- j) All off-highway earth moving equipment and trucks such as loaders, dozers, scrapers, motor graders, rock trucks, tractors, rollers, and compactors will be equipped with roll-overprotective structures (ROPS) and seat belts, per OSHA standards.
- k) Seat safety belts, when required by the manufacturer, must be used by all operators of equipment.
- l) Mobile equipment must not be left unattended unless parked securely to prevent movement, with all ground engaging tools lowered to the ground, brakes set, and the engine off.
- m) Equipment parked at night will be illuminated, barricaded, or otherwise clearly marked where exposed to potential traffic.
- n) Personnel must not be transported or ride on any equipment or vehicles that are not equipped with seats for passengers.
- o) When fueling equipment or vehicles with gasoline or liquefied petroleum gas (LPG) the engine must be shut off.
- p) All equipment and vehicles must be equipped with appropriate fire extinguishers or fire suppression system.
- q) Equipment, tools, and materials hauled on pickups and flatbed trucks must be secured to prevent them from falling onto the road.

## **6.42 Haul Routes**

Haul roads must be designed, constructed, and maintained for safe operation consistent with the type of haulage equipment in use. Standard traffic control signs must be used where necessary.

- a) Elevated roadways must have axle high beams or guards maintained on their outer banks.
- b) Equipment, pickups, and passenger vehicles must be parked well away from the work area to reduce congestion and avoid collision.
- c) Vehicle and equipment speed limit while traversing school property must be a maximum of five (5) miles per hour during school hours and/or when children are present.

## **6.43 Traffic Control**

- a) All General Contractors, Subcontractors, and employees must comply with local city ordinances when work interfaces with traffic of the general public.
- b) Vehicle and equipment speed limit while traversing school property must be a maximum of five (5) miles per hour during school hours and/or when children are present.
- c) All materials and equipment deliveries should be coordinated with General Contractors as to prevent traffic congestion around peak school hours for children being dropped off or picked up from school.



## 6.44 Environmental and Hygiene

General Contractors and Subcontractors of any tier must comply with all applicable federal, state, and local statutes, laws, rules, regulations, ordinances, codes, and any amendments relating to the environment, hazardous substances or exposure to hazardous substances, including without limitation the Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation and Liability Act of 1980 (CERCLA), the Superfund Amendments and Reauthorization Act of 1986 (SARA), the Hazardous Material Transportation Act (HMT A), Resource Conservation and Recovery Act (RCRA), the Toxic Substances Control Act (TSCA), the Clean Water Act (CWA), the Clean Air Act (CAA), the Oil Pollution Act (OPA) and the Safe Drinking Water Act (SDW A).

The General Contractor is responsible for the implementation and management of its Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) and SWPPP Oversight as [Attachment VI](#) of this manual.

Where necessary, The General Contractor must provide, and the General Contractor's Safety Representatives must be trained and capable of, properly operating industrial hygiene equipment as required by any Federal, State, and local regulations. Tests must be performed as often as necessary to afford protection to employees and the general public.

## 6.45 Spill Prevention and Response

When utilizing hazardous and non-hazardous substances that could cause a negative impact when released on land, water, and/or the atmosphere, the General Contractor must exercise extreme caution by developing and implementing a site-specific spill prevention and spill response procedure in accordance with OSHA, Federal, State, and local regulations.

No Contractor must omit or discharge any substance into the environment in violation of the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), OSHA or other regulatory agencies. Where necessary, the General Contractor's Safety Representative must be responsible for all environmental monitoring and testing.

## 6.46 Portable Relocation

Prior to commencement of work, the Controlling Contractor is responsible for obtaining the Disconnection Form provided by the Moving Contractor for each portable to be relocated. The Controlling Contractor must provide a completed copy of the Disconnection Form along with applicable safety submittal documentation to the Owner's Representative prior any relocation, demolition, or disconnection of portables.

- a) The relocation of portables must be coordinated around peak hours of school traffic, i.e., morning drop off of children and afternoon pick-ups.
- b) All relocation activities (including haul routes) must remain properly separated from occupied areas. Barriers for outdoor areas affected by construction must consist of six (6) foot chain link fencing.
- c) Haul routes must be designed, constructed, and maintained for safe operation consistent with the type of haulage equipment in use. Standard traffic control signs must be used where necessary.

- d) Equipment, pickups, and passenger vehicles must be parked well away from the work area to reduce congestion and avoid collision.
- e) Vehicle and equipment speed limit while traversing school property must be a maximum of five (5) miles per hour during school hours and/or when children are present.
- f) The Moving Contractor and/or General Contractor must field verify the safe relocation of portables from site “A” to site “B” and inspect the safe passage of established haul routes.
- g) portable classrooms and ADA approved ramps, decks, steps, etc. must meet the specifications contained in the RFP, Contract Award Doc, and applicable Federal, State, and local requirements.

**NOTE:** Contractors are responsible for submitting moving permit applications to the City and are responsible for communication with the city of Dallas to resolve all action items related to the moving permit.

## 7. INCIDENT NOTIFICATION GUIDELINES

The District’s objective is an injury and incident-free project, with a focus on project safety that must not be compromised to achieve any other business objective. The General Contractor must structure an effective and systematic safety management approach that emphasizes **continuous safety process improvement**.

The District recognizes that the General Contractor and Subcontractors may have existing safety management programs with established safety policies, processes, procedures, and work practices. The District will support these where they prove to be as effective and meet the intent and purpose of this Section.

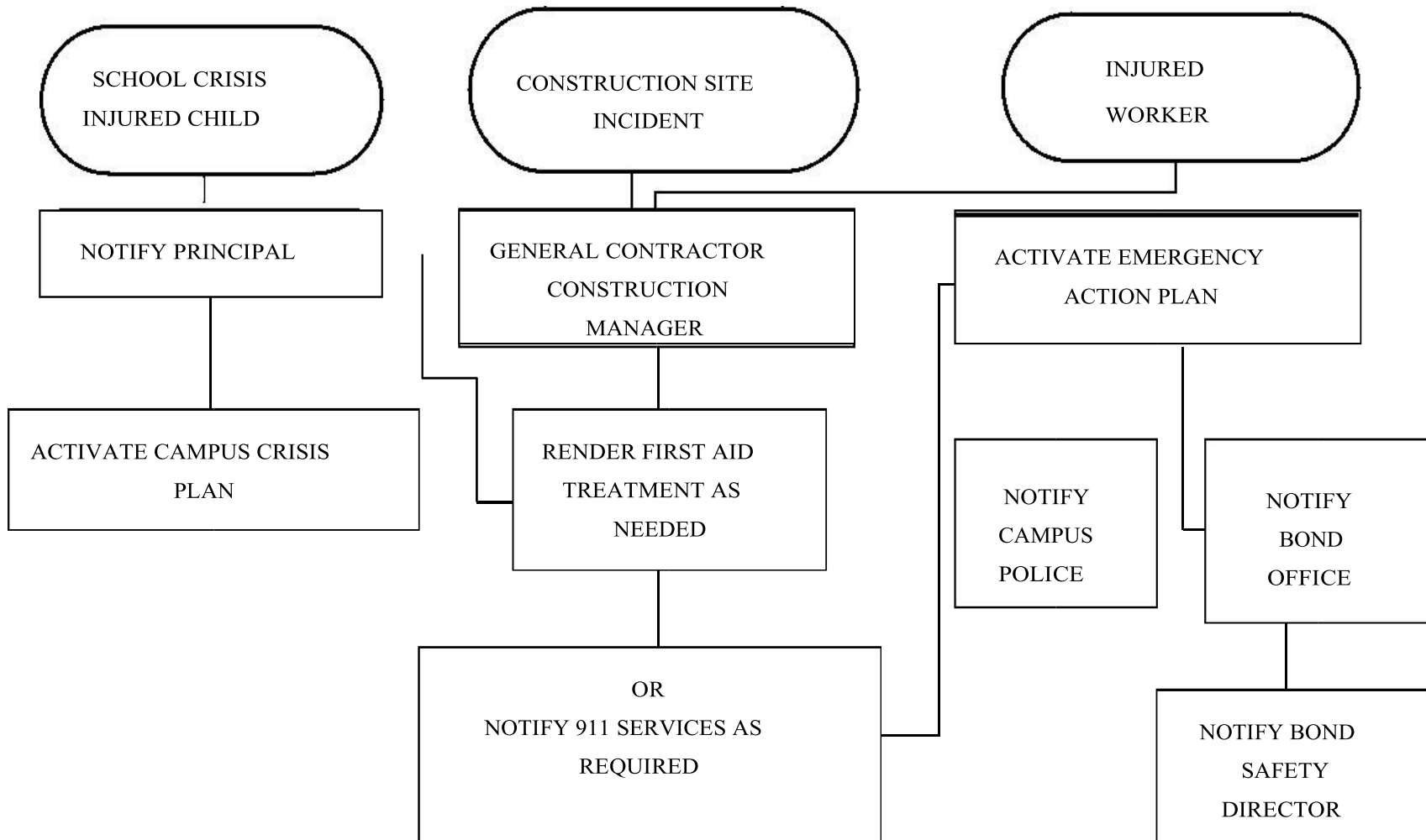
- a) General Contractors and Subcontractors of any tier must instruct all workers to immediately report every incident to their supervisor, even if there is no obvious injury or property damage. Supervisors must immediately notify the General Contractor, who must immediately notify the Owner’s Representative of any incident.
- b) The Bond Program Safety Manager and others as directed must be included in the incident notification process. Depending on potential severity of the incident, notifications may be in written and/or verbal form as directed.
- c) Upon request of the Owner’s Representative, the General Contractor and/or Subcontractors of any tier must promptly produce and provide copies of any required documents related to project safety or property damage.
- d) Where opportunities for improvement are identified, the General Contractor and Subcontractors of any tier must work collaboratively with the Owner’s Representative in making appropriate revisions to progress toward an injury and incident-free workplace.
- e) The General Contractor’s Safety Representative must generate a formal incident report using [EXHIBIT O](#), or equivalent company accident report forms, in the manner and time as directed by the Owner’s Representative.
- f) The General Contractor's Safety Representative, accompanied by the Owner’s Representative, must perform a site inspection immediately following any near miss,

property damage, fire, hazardous chemical spill, or accident involving construction equipment that results in injury to a worker, student, school employee, or visitor to the site.

- g) Contractors must review the filed copy of the pre-construction Site-specific Safety Plan and/or Safe Plan of Action (SPA) that was performed prior to commencement of any construction activity.

**[Notification Flow Chart is located on the next page]**

## 7.1 DISD Incident/Crisis Notification Flowchart



## 7.2 Incident Investigations

When an accident or near miss with major potential for a loss occurs, the supervisor of the crew(s) involved must perform an accident investigation. The General Contractor and involved Subcontractors must tailor the magnitude and depth of the investigation effort to correspond to the potential, rather than the actual outcome of the incident.

- a) Investigation team members must include safety personnel, project management, line management, affected workers, and consultants as the circumstances dictate. The Owner's Representatives reserves the right to participate in any incident investigation.
- b) Upon request of the Owner's Representative, the General Contractor and/or Subcontractors of any tier must provide a Root Cause Analysis as outlined in [Section 7.4](#) of this manual or its equivalent.
- c) Once a root cause has been identified and recommendations for corrective action have been determined, a procedure may be implemented to prevent a similar incident from occurring again.

## 7.3 Incident Follow-up Guidelines

All near miss incidents, first Aid injuries, high risk safety inspection observations, and other such incidents must be investigated. The General Contractor's Safety Manager must lead the efforts and follow a structured incident investigation program that emphasizes **continuous safety process improvement**.

The General Contractor and involved Subcontractors must tailor the magnitude and depth of the investigation effort to correspond to the potential, rather than the actual outcome of the incident. The Bond Program Safety Manager and/or designee reserves the right to participate in any incident investigation.

- a) Investigation team members must include, at minimum:
  - (1) General Contractor and Subcontractor Safety Representatives
  - (2) General Contractor and Subcontractor Project Management
  - (3) Designated Competent Person (Front Line Management)
  - (4) Affected workers, and consultants as the circumstances dictate.
- b) The General Contractor must develop a Root Cause Analysis report that summarizes the incident, identifies the underlying contributing factor(s), determines which process element(s) failed to control the incident, determines which process element(s) will be implemented or improved, and the time needed to take sustainable corrective action(s).
- c) The General Contractor must conduct and submit an incident investigation report that supports the Root Cause Analysis in the manner and time as directed by the Owner's Representative. The Bond Program Safety Manager and/or designee reserves the right to determine the acceptability of the findings.
- d) The General Contractor must prepare and submit reports that will allow the Bond Program Safety Director, designee, and Subcontractors to understand findings and any planned changes to the operating procedure(s) based on those findings.

## 7.4 Contributing Factors to Consider

The Root Cause Analysis investigation should thoroughly address the following:

- (1) Was the incident controlled and limited so that all workers and the project were made safe post-incident? If so, what was done?
- (2) Explain what happened (facts and circumstances) that resulted in the incident.
- (3) Are there other work areas or tasks where this type of incident could occur again?
- (4) What processes were in place to prevent the incident? (Identify processes that failed)
- (5) What processes could've been implemented or improved that might have prevented this incident?
- (6) What processes will be improved or implemented to reduce risk of recurrence?

## 8. CONSTRUCTION SAFETY FOR STUDENTS

### 8.1 Introduction

The aim of Program Managers, General Contractors, and Subcontractors of any tier is to carry out their work activities in a safe and efficient manner to complete each project in a timely manner.

The safety of the children is of the utmost importance, and every effort must be made to see to it that in those projects that are concurrent with school activities, each job done be evaluated for child safety.

Our children are totally dependent on us to create a safe place for them to learn, study and play. Any work related or work generated condition deemed to be unsafe must be corrected immediately, because children do not see the world as we do. Children are often attracted by what is new and alien to them and will try to gain access to what may seem to be great places to play and have fun.

Therefore, it is the responsibility of everyone to control the potentially dangerous areas that exist on any construction project. All, regardless of the trades involved, must make this effort. In other words, the responsibilities of each person working in occupied areas become that much larger or expanded due to child safety conditions. Remember, it is for the children that construction is underway.

### 8.2 Separation of Construction Activities

Should any part of an occupied and operational school facility be shut down for construction work, then the General Contractor must erect appropriate construction barricades to completely eliminate access for non-construction personnel to the work area.

General Contractors must ensure safety inspections are conducted in all work areas regularly and periodically throughout the work shift to ensure proper elimination, mitigation, and/or safeguarding of hazards which may result as contributing factors that may lead to any exposure, injury, or property damage. **All unsafe conditions must be corrected immediately.**

- a) Construction work areas must be kept segregated from school operations, staff, and students at all times. Separation may include, but is not limited to fencing, privacy fencing, bulkheads, and coordination of planned construction activities.
- b) Barriers for indoor construction must be made of 3/4" plywood, and must extend from floor to ceiling, wall to wall. The temporary barrier must have a door that can be locked. This barrier will remain until work in the specified area is completely finished. Proper signage should be displayed near the temporary barrier, according to safety regulations.
- c) Barriers for outdoor areas affected by construction must consist of six (6) foot chain link fencing.
- d) Doors and/or gates must remain secured/closed when they open directly into occupied areas. A security service may be utilized if necessary.
- e) The requirements of NFPA 101, Life Safety Code for Occupied Schools must be maintained during construction. **Separate atmospheres must be maintained between the school areas in full occupancy and the areas under construction.** Construction activities must not interfere or interrupt the normal teaching schedules.
- f) Means of egress for the school occupancy must be maintained free of obstructions, clean and properly lighted. While this may be a function of the school custodian, no construction related operations must be allowed to cause an impairment of the normal means of egress.
- g) All components and/or combinations of existing life safety systems (smoke detection, fire alarms, fire suppression, communication, alarm systems, intrusion control, etc.) must be maintained during construction.
- h) School entrances and exits must not be blocked until school officials have been notified and re-routing has been established.
- i) Appropriate warning and directional signage must be maintained at all times.
- j) Dust and noise must be properly controlled to ensure the school maintains its teaching schedules without interruptions. General Contractors must respond to complaints and immediately establish control measures.
- k) All deliveries (heavy equipment, tools, materials, etc.) must be coordinated around peak hours of school traffic, i.e., morning drop off of children and afternoon pick-ups.
- l) Electrical box panels, even during breaks, must not be left exposed. Exposed boxes must be physically covered with the panel cover, and areas must be protected with barricades if necessary.
- m) Construction debris and/or material must not be left in areas occupied by students and staff.
- n) All construction debris must be removed before the end of each work shift and must not be left overnight.
- o) Nails and screws must not be left protruding from lumber or other materials. All nails and screws must be removed or bent over.
- p) Compressed gas cylinders must never be left unattended or overnight in occupied areas. Cylinders must remain secured in upright position; caps on and regulators disconnected when not in use.
- q) Tools and equipment must not be left unattended.

## 9. CRISIS COMMUNICATION

A crisis is an emergency event that usually requires police, fire, or EMS response and could attract media or public attention. A crisis on a construction site might involve a fire, hazardous chemical spill, or accident involving construction equipment that results in injury to a worker, student, school employee, or visitor to the site.

- a) The General Contractor must instruct all construction employees not to discuss the incident with reporters. All media inquiries must be referred to an official Dallas ISD spokesperson.
- b) The Dallas ISD spokesperson must be the only person authorized to release live or pre-recorded video or written statements to the media. All Contractors of any tier must cooperate with the Dallas ISD spokesperson for all media arrangements as directed.
- c) Should a crisis, serious emergency, or incident occur (requiring the presence of an ambulance, Fire Department or Police) the Contractor must immediately implement the Crisis Communication Guidelines and contact by phone the Bond Program Safety Director, **including nights, weekends, and holidays**.

### 9.1 Suggested Steps for Crisis Situations

- (1) Evaluate the situation and extent of damage or injuries.
- (2) If students are present, immediately contact the principal or school office.
- (3) Call **9-1-1** if necessary. Be prepared to give the dispatcher details of the accident and injuries, the exact address and where emergency crews should enter the site.
- (4) Assign someone to meet emergency crews at the gate.
- (5) Call Dallas ISD Communications at **(972) 925-3917**. Be prepared to provide as much information as possible.
- (6) Call Dallas ISD Police at **(214) 932-5627**.
- (7) Call Construction Services at **(972) 925-7200**.
- (8) Call the Safety Manager at **(214) 435-2204**.
- (9) Do not speak to reporters or photographers. Refer them to Dallas ISD Communications.

### 9.2 EMERGENCY TELEPHONE NUMBERS

Dallas ISD Police	DISD Police	(214) 932-5627
District Spokesperson	Robyn Harris	(972) 925-3917
DISD Bond Safety Manager	Alvaro Meza	(214) 435-2204



## 9.3 Emergency Planning

On a regular basis, the General Contractor must review and update, when necessary, its Emergency Procedures for maximum effectiveness.

The updated procedures must be submitted to the Owner's Representative for review in accordance with the safety guidelines outlined in this manual and all applicable OSHA, Federal, State, and local regulations and maintained on-site.

The following provisions must be included in the emergency procedure:

- a) The highest-ranking supervisor automatically becomes responsible for handling any emergency that occurs during working hours and may call upon the assistance of any available employee.
- b) Following an emergency, ranking personnel must:
  - (1) Secure the area as expediently as possible.
  - (2) Provide access and an account of the emergency to authorized representatives of the District and specific government agencies. Questions from the media must be referred to the Dallas ISD spokesperson.
- c) To ensure prompt emergency services, the General Contractor must:
  - (1) Determine who is responsible for making emergency calls (preferably the highest-ranking supervisor present).
  - (2) Conspicuously post a list of emergency phone numbers, along with information to be transmitted.

## 10. CONTRACTOR SAFETY AUDITS

### 10.1 Purpose

The effectiveness of this program depends upon the active participation and cooperation of all Engineers, Project Managers, Inspectors, Supervisors and General Contractors, their employees, and Subcontractors. The primary goals of this program are to increase safety awareness, raise safety standards in the work environment, provide incentives to make the workplace safer, and increase management involvement in the safety process.

General Contractors must ensure safety inspections are conducted in all work areas regularly and periodically throughout the work shift to ensure proper elimination, mitigation, and/or safeguarding of hazards which may result as contributing factors that may lead to any exposure, injury, or property damage. **All unsafe conditions must be corrected immediately.**

### 10.2 Jobsite Safety Inspections

- a) The General Contractor must ensure that its Safety Representative conducts inspections of the project as needed (including storage areas, office areas, barriers, separation of activities, work areas, etc.) to ensure compliance with the District and OSHA requirements.
- b) Contractors may utilize the Construction Safety Inspection Checklist [EXHIBIT P](#), or its equivalent. Safety deficiencies that are noted during the inspection must be recorded on

the form and those deficient items must be communicated to his/her project manager/superintendent in a timely manner.

- c) The project manager and/or superintendent must be responsible for implementing corrective action.
- d) The General Contractor's Safety Representative will follow up and note the status of each safety deficiency until the deficiency has been abated, but until abatement takes place, each previously noted deficiency should be recorded during each subsequent site inspection.
- e) In addition to performing jobsite safety inspections, the General Contractor's Safety Representative must cooperate with designated District Representatives who conduct jobsite inspections (i.e., Insurance Carrier Loss Control personnel).

### **10.3 Inspections by Regulatory Agencies**

The General Contractor must immediately notify the Owner's Representative of the arrival of any representative of a Regulatory Agency (OSHA Compliance Officer, TCEQ Representative, Law Enforcement Officer, etc.), and provide the Owner's Representative with a copy of any published findings or citations issued to any employer and must ensure that statutory posting requirements are met. The General Contractor must provide the Owner's Representative with a copy of any employer's response to the same findings or citations. No Contractor of any tier must prohibit the entry of an OSHA Compliance Officer onto Dallas ISD property.

## **11. GREENFIELD PROJECTS**

Greenfield Project must refer to as any DISD property that does not have students and/or Staff present during the duration of the Project. If, during the project, staff or students are present or any District/school operation is active, it is not considered a Greenfield job site.

Property must refer to all land owned by the District, to all property thereon; buildings, structures, facilities, platforms, fixtures, tunnels, installations, and to all project vehicles, stationary or mobile equipment, whether owned or leased. This definition may also include other work locations while in the scope and course of employment on the District's Construction Projects.

Worker must refer to any employee or agent included as example, but not by way of limitation, persons providing services on the project including all persons or entities performing all or part of the services the General Contractor has undertaken to perform on the project regardless of whether that person has employees. This includes, without limitation, independent contractors, Subcontractors, owner-operators, employees of any such entity, or employees of any entity that furnishes persons to provide services on the project.

## 11.1 Greenfield Shutdown Guidelines

Prior to conducting any type of permanent or temporary shutdown, the General Contractor is responsible for completing the Greenfield Utility Authorization Request Guidelines as outlined in [Attachment VII](#), along with the applicable safety submittal requirements outlined in [section 6.15](#) of this manual.

### 11.1.1 Permanent Utility Shutdown Guidelines

- (1) **10-Day Notice of Shutdown** – The General Contractor must provide Dallas ISD with notification of power or other utility shutdown no less than ten (10) calendar days in advance of shutdown.
- (2) The General Contractor must select “**Permanent**” on the top right portion of the Shutdown Authorization Form ([EXHIBIT I](#)) prior to submitting for approval (See [Attachment VII](#) for reference).
- (3) The General Contractor is responsible for providing power for the duration of the project.
- (4) Once the project reaches substantial completion, the General Contractor and PMF representative must provide the Dallas ISD Sustainability Department with a copy of the General Contractor’s utility bills for transfer of the utility service to Dallas ISD. Should Contractors have questions regarding this process, please reach out to the Dallas ISD Sustainability Department via email at: [sg9453@dallasisd.org](mailto:sg9453@dallasisd.org)

**NOTE:** Before demolishing a portable and/or building, all meter numbers must be provided to the DISD sustainability department to close the account and have meters removed through the Owner provider. It is important ALL Utility Accounts are closed through sustainability to prevent the General Contractor from reimbursing the District. DISD is not responsible for providing General Contractors with utilities at Greenfield Project locations.

## 11.2 Greenfield Badging

Personnel who are issued a Greenfield Job Site Identification Badge are authorized to work on Greenfield Project **Sites until seven (7) days prior to substantial completion of the project or project site commencing operations** (no longer a Greenfield Project Site), whichever comes first. All other requirements for Non-Greenfield Project Sites (sites where district operations are on-going, or students/staff present) remain in effect.

- a) General Contractors must issue/provide all workers with a Greenfield Identification Badge, along with a site-specific safety orientation prior to conducting any construction activity.
- b) General Contractors must issue identification badges, at their own expense, for all workers on DISD Greenfield Project Sites.
- c) Workers must wear the General Contractor issued identification badge at all times while on DISD Greenfield Project Sites.
- d) Greenfield Project Site Identification Badge Requirements: Greenfield Identification Badges issued by the General Contractor must be issued by Dallas ISD’s approved third-party badging vendor. Badges must contain the following information:
  - (1) The issuing/authorizing General Contractor’s company logo in lieu of the DISD logo
  - (2) The issuing/authorizing General Contractor’s company name

- (3) The authorized Subcontractor or Vendor's company name
- (4) The name of the specific project site authorized to work at
- (5) A photograph and name of the authorized employee receiving the badge
- (6) Badges must be labeled "Greenfield"

## 12. UNMANNED AIRCRAFT SYSTEM (DRONE) POLICY

The purpose of this Unmanned Aircraft System (UAS) Policy is to establish minimum standards for the safe use and operation of UAS and Small Unmanned Aircraft Systems (SUAS) on any Dallas ISD Bond Projects.

This policy requires that all UAS operations are performed in a manner that mitigates risks to safety, security, and privacy, and ensures compliance with the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA), 14 CFR Part 107 (for commercial purposes) and all applicable laws.

Contractors of any tier that will operate a UAS at a Dallas ISD Project must receive approval in advance in accordance with this Policy.

### 12.1 Operating Requirements

This Policy sets the minimum requirements for operating UAS. The requirements below must be implemented by the General Contractor, through their respective designated Project Manager. Minimum Requirements for UAS Operations and Operator:

- a) Operations of UAS must not be conducted during occupied hours or extracurricular activities.
- b) Operators of any UAS must hold a current Remote Pilot Certification.
- c) Unmanned Aircraft must be FAA registered.
- d) Certificate of Authorization must be in place and all requirements followed. The General Contractor must provide UAS / Drone liability coverage either through endorsement to its General Liability policy or a separate Aircraft Liability policy. The policy must name Dallas ISD as an Additional Insured and provide a waiver of subrogation in favor of Dallas ISD.

### 12.2 Pre-Operation Procedure

- (1) General Contractor must submit a request to the Project Manager and DISD Safety Department **48 hours** prior to fly-through.
- (2) Project Manager and DISD Safety Department may accept or reject this request.
- (3) The Project Manager must verify with school admin that no activities will be taking place during fly-through.
- (4) The Project Manager must notify Dallas ISD Police dispatch and school principal of UAS fly-through.

# EXHIBITS

## POLICY STATEMENT

It is the Dallas ISD's policy that, prior to work, Contractors are required to submit for review, an acceptable Site-Specific Safety Plan that includes safe and health work practices. The Owner's Representative will evaluate the plan to see that it meets the safety requirements for the Project's scope of work.

It is critical that contractors understand the importance of developing an effectively functioning Site-Specific Safety Plan that is pro-active and addresses the exposures to their employees for the particular work to be done. This should be addressed extensively in the Site-Specific Safety Plan.

The Site-Specific Safety Plan must provide guidelines to implement an accident prevention program on Dallas ISD projects, and fully describes the Contractor's commitments for meeting its obligations to provide safe and healthful working conditions for its employees.

This Document is intended to provide a working, uniform minimal level of program guidelines to assist or provide direction to the Contractors. This Document is not intended to replace the need for each Contractor of any tier to establish and maintain a proper Illness and Injury Prevention Program as required by the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910) and the State of Texas.

### **EXHIBITS:**

- [EXHIBIT A – Campus Readiness Form](#)
- [EXHIBIT B – Job Hazard Analysis \(JHA\)](#)
- [EXHIBIT C – Demolition SPA Cover Letter](#)
- [EXHIBIT D – Confined Space SPA Cover Letter](#)
- [EXHIBIT E – Trenching and Excavation SPA Cover Letter](#)
- [EXHIBIT F – Pier Drilling SPA Cover Letter](#)
- [EXHIBIT G – Utility Shutdown SPA Cover Letter](#)
- [EXHIBIT H – Electrical Shutdown SPA Cover Letter](#)
- [EXHIBIT I – Shutdown Authorization Form](#)
- [EXHIBIT J – Elevated Work SPA Cover Letter](#)
- [EXHIBIT K – Crane Operation SPA Cover Letter](#)
- [EXHIBIT L – Steel Erection SPA Cover Letter](#)
- [EXHIBIT M – Aerial Crane Operation SPA Cover Letter](#)
- [EXHIBIT N – Hot Work Permit](#)
- [EXHIBIT O – Incident Investigation Report](#)
- [EXHIBIT P – Safety Inspection Checklist](#)
- [EXHIBIT Q – Contractor Acknowledgement Statement](#)

## EXHIBIT A – Campus Readiness Form

A completed copy of this form, along with **photographs of each area** must be provided to the Owner’s Representative one (1) working day prior to the return of staff and students to ensure sustainability of proper separation of all work areas and conditions affected by all construction activities.

General Contractor: \_\_\_\_\_ Project & ORG Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Person in Charge: \_\_\_\_\_ Date and Time of Completion: \_\_\_\_\_

Column: **A** = Adequate

Column: **B** = Inadequate

Column: **C** = Not Applicable

Focused Areas	A	B	C
Appropriate Barricades to prevent non-construction personnel from entering work areas.			
Proper signage displayed near the temporary barricades.			
Access to school facility clean, orderly, and safe, e.g., sidewalks, building entrances, lobbies, corridors, aisles, stairways, etc.			
Critical systems functional, e.g., life safety systems, air conditioning systems, water systems, electrical systems, etc.			
Laydown and Staging areas neat and orderly.			
Campus EAP not impacted by construction activities, e.g., travel ways, access, emergency exits, and egress points, maintained clear of obstructions.			
Proper Traffic Control with work that interfaces with traffic or public			
Trash Dumpsters maintained			
Excavations, Trenches properly barricaded			
All floor holes and openings into which persons can accidentally walk or fall through are guarded by a physical barrier or cover, secured, and labeled.			
Heavy Equipment inside a fenced area and properly secured to prevent unauthorized access.			
Hydraulic Booms and/or Cranes not suspended over playgrounds or occupied areas.			
Construction work areas are kept segregated from school operations, staff, and students			
Nails, screws, and rebar not protruding from lumber or other materials in occupied areas.			
Means of egress for the school occupancy is maintained, free of obstructions, clean, and properly illuminated.			
<b>Remarks:</b>			

## EXHIBIT B – Job Hazard Analysis (JHA)

<b>Project Name:</b>	<b>Contractor Name:</b>
<b>Date:</b>	<b>Competent Person Name:</b>
<b>Scope of work to be Performed:</b>	

### EMERGENCY CONTACT LIST ASSOCIATED WITH THIS ACTIVITY

<u>Name</u>	<u>Title</u>	<u>Phone Number</u>
1.	1.	1.
2.	2.	2.
3.	3.	3.

STEPS OF THE ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL HAZARDS	ACTIONS TO ELIMINATE OR MINIMIZE HAZARDS
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		

STEPS OF THIS ACTIVITY	POTENTIAL HAZARDS	ACTIONS TO ELIMINATE OR MINIMIZE HAZARDS
6.		
7.		
8.		
9.		
10.		
11.		
12.		
13.		
14.		
15.		



Potential Fall Hazards		Potential Struck-By Hazards	
1.		1.	
2.		2.	
3.		3.	
4.		4.	
5.		5.	
Potential Electrical Hazards		Potential Caught In-between Hazards	
1.		1.	
2.		2.	
3.		3.	
4.		4.	
5.		5.	
Required Personal Protected Equipment			
<input type="checkbox"/> Hard Hat <input type="checkbox"/> Gloves <input type="checkbox"/> Respirator <input type="checkbox"/> Safety Boots <input type="checkbox"/> Rubber Boots <input type="checkbox"/> Safety Toed Boots <input type="checkbox"/> Tyvek Suits	<input type="checkbox"/> Fall Protection <input type="checkbox"/> Life Vest <input type="checkbox"/> Hearing Protection <input type="checkbox"/> Face Shield <input type="checkbox"/> Cutting Goggles <input type="checkbox"/> Safety Glasses <input type="checkbox"/> Safety Goggles	<input type="checkbox"/> Welding Hood <input type="checkbox"/> Welding Leathers <input type="checkbox"/> Welding Gloves <input type="checkbox"/> Safety Vest <input type="checkbox"/> High Vis Pants <input type="checkbox"/> Blasting Hood <input type="checkbox"/> Other (if checked list PPE in the column spaces above)	<b>List Other Protective Equipment (PPE)</b> 1. 2. 3. 4. 5.
Required Equipment and Tools			
<input type="checkbox"/> Telehandler <input type="checkbox"/> Crane <input type="checkbox"/> Scissor Lift <input type="checkbox"/> Boom Lift <input type="checkbox"/> Scaffolding System <input type="checkbox"/> Excavator <input type="checkbox"/> Roofing Kettle	<input type="checkbox"/> Concrete Saw <input type="checkbox"/> Concrete Bucket <input type="checkbox"/> Ladder <input type="checkbox"/> Generator <input type="checkbox"/> Hand Tools <input type="checkbox"/> Powder Actuated <input type="checkbox"/> 4-Gas Meter	<input type="checkbox"/> Welding Machine <input type="checkbox"/> Angle Grinder <input type="checkbox"/> HEPA Filtered Tools <input type="checkbox"/> LOTO System <input type="checkbox"/> GFCI <input type="checkbox"/> Cutting Torch <input type="checkbox"/> Other (list on right side)	<b>Other Equipment &amp; Tooling</b> 1. 2. 3. 4. 5. 6. 7.
Required Traffic Control Equipment		Utilities Located / Marked	
<input type="checkbox"/> Lane Closure <input type="checkbox"/> Barrier Rail <input type="checkbox"/> Trench Plates <input type="checkbox"/> Flagger Station	<input type="checkbox"/> Pilot Car <input type="checkbox"/> Signage <input type="checkbox"/> Speed Limit <input type="checkbox"/> 6' Fencing	<input type="checkbox"/> Gas <input type="checkbox"/> Electric <input type="checkbox"/> Fiber <input type="checkbox"/> Irrigation	<input type="checkbox"/> Overhead <input type="checkbox"/> Sewer/Water <input type="checkbox"/> Telecommunications <input type="checkbox"/> Other Utilities Located: _____

**PERSONNEL PARTICIPATING IN THIS ACTIVITY**

<u>Name (Printed)</u>	<u>Signature</u>	<u>Company</u>
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		
9.		
10.		

## EXHIBIT C – Demolition SPA Cover Letter

The following Demolition requirements have been established for the General Contractor’s Safety Manager. The General Contractor’s Safety Manager must ensure and approve that its Subcontractor’s SPA documentation meet all Federal, State, and local regulations and the requirements outlined in this manual prior to submitting for review.

The General Contractor’s Safety Manager must submit this Cover Letter, along with the criteria listed below, to the Owner’s Representative 5-7 days of any planned critical phases of work. **Demolition activities must not be performed during regular school hours or near occupied areas.**

To hold an on-site Demolition SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:

- ✓ Subcontractor Competent Person
- ✓ General Contractor Safety Representative
- ✓ Owner’s Representative [Optional]

Campus Name and ORG Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Subcontractor Name and Competent Person: \_\_\_\_\_

General Contractor Name and Site-Superintendent: \_\_\_\_\_

General Contractor Safety Manager Signature of Approval: \_\_\_\_\_

Anticipated Start Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Demolition SPA must include but is not limited to the following:

- Scope of Work (describe methods, safe working procedures, and any critical systems affected by this operation. Critical systems include life safety systems, security systems, etc.)
- Make Safe (confirm if asbestos, lead, and/or other hazardous materials are present within the immediate work areas, provide LOTO procedure, and engineering survey)
- Asbestos Awareness Training Records (for all crewmembers performing this task)
- Competent Person Letter of Designation (include areas of competency and signatures)
- Competent Person Training Documentation (OSHA 10-hour and First Aid/CPR)
- Silica Exposure Prevention Plan
- Existing Utilities (describe safe working practices associated with any known utilities that may be affected by demolition activities)
- Site Map (identifying areas to be affected by demolition)
- Emergency Action Plan (including emergency contact information and medical facility)
- JHA (include hazard assessment, equipment, and PPE needed to safely perform this task)

**Note:** This Document is **not** intended to replace the need for each Contractor to establish and maintain a proper Illness and Injury Prevention Program as required by the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910) and the State of Texas.

## EXHIBIT D – Confined Space SPA Cover Letter

The following Confined Space Entry requirements have been established for the General Contractor's Safety Manager. The General Contractor's Safety Manager must ensure and approve that its Subcontractor's SPA documentation meet all Federal, State, and local regulations and the requirements outlined in this manual prior to submitting for review.

The General Contractor's Safety Manager must submit this Cover Letter, along with the criteria listed below, to the Owner's Representative 5-7 days of any planned critical phases of work.

To hold an on-site Confined Space SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:

- ✓ Subcontractor Competent Person
- ✓ General Contractor Safety Representative
- ✓ Owner's Representative [Optional]

Campus Name and ORG Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Subcontractor Name and Competent Person: \_\_\_\_\_

General Contractor Name and Site-Superintendent: \_\_\_\_\_

General Contractor Safety Manager Signature of Approval: \_\_\_\_\_

Anticipated Entry Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Confined Space SPA must include but is not limited to the following:

- Scope of Work (describe methods, operating procedures, and affected work areas)
- Confined Space Entry Procedure (describe atmospheric testing/monitoring methods, ventilation, communication, and make safe procedures to be taken prior to entry)
- Site Map (identifying entry points, emergency egress locations, and work areas affected by this operation)
- Confined Space Training Records (for all crewmembers performing this task)
- Competent Person Letter of Designation (include areas of competency)
- Competent Person Training Documentation (OSHA 10-hour and First Aid/CPR)
- Emergency Action Plan (describe emergency actions to be taken should a worker need rescue, first aid, medical treatment, or emergency contact information)
- JHA (include hazard assessment, equipment, and PPE needed to safely perform this task)

**Note:** This Document is **not** intended to replace the need for each Contractor to establish and maintain a proper Illness and Injury Prevention Program as required by the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910) and the State of Texas.

## EXHIBIT E – Trenching and Excavation SPA Cover Letter

The following Trenching and Excavation SPA pre-meeting requirements have been established for the General Contractor’s Safety Manager. The General Contractor’s Safety Manager must ensure and approve that its Subcontractor’s SPA documentation meet all Federal, State, and local regulations and the requirements outlined in this manual prior to submitting for review.

The General Contractor’s Safety Manager must submit this Cover Letter, along with the criteria listed below, to the Owner’s Representative 5-7 days of any planned critical phases of work. **Trenching and Excavation activities must not be performed during regular school hours or near occupied school areas.**

To hold an on-site Excavation SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:

- ✓ Subcontractor Competent Person
- ✓ General Contractor Safety Representative
- ✓ Owner’s Representative [Optional]

Campus Name and ORG Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Subcontractor Name and Competent Person: \_\_\_\_\_

General Contractor Name and Site-Superintendent: \_\_\_\_\_

General Contractor Safety Manager Signature of Approval: \_\_\_\_\_

Anticipated Start Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Trenching and Excavation SPA must include but is not limited to the following:

- Scope of Work (describe methods, known utilities in the area, and any affected right-of-way)
- Utility Strike Prevention (include GPR report, potholing method, and preventative measures)
- Excavation Training Records (for all crewmembers performing this task)
- Competent Person Letter of Designation (include areas of competency and signatures)
- Competent Person Training Documentation (OSHA 10-hour and First Aid/CPR)
- Site Map (identify areas affected by this operation and underground utility shut-off locations)
- Emergency Action Plan (including emergency contact information and medical facility)
- JHA (include hazard assessment, equipment, and PPE needed to safely perform this task)

**Note:** This Document is **not** intended to replace the need for each Contractor to establish and maintain a proper Illness and Injury Prevention Program as required by the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910) and the State of Texas.

## EXHIBIT F – Pier Drilling SPA Cover Letter

The following Pier Drilling SPA pre-meeting requirements have been established for the General Contractor's Safety Manager. The General Contractor's Safety Manager must ensure and approve that its Subcontractor's SPA documentation meet all Federal, State, and local regulations and the requirements outlined in this manual prior to submitting for review.

The General Contractor's Safety Manager must submit this Cover Letter, along with the criteria listed below, to the Owner's Representative 5-7 days of any planned critical phases of work. **Pier Drilling activities must not be performed during regular school hours or near occupied school areas.**

To hold an on-site Pier Drilling SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:

- ✓ Subcontractor Competent Person
- ✓ General Contractor Safety Representative
- ✓ Owner's Representative [Optional]

Campus Name and ORG Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Subcontractor Name and Competent Person: \_\_\_\_\_

General Contractor Name and Site-Superintendent: \_\_\_\_\_

General Contractor Safety Manager Signature of Approval: \_\_\_\_\_

Anticipated Start Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Pier Drilling SPA must include but is not limited to the following:

- Scope of Work (describe methods, known utilities in the area, and any affected right-of-way)
- Utility Strike Prevention (include GPR report, potholing method, and preventative measures)
- Competent Person Letter of Designation (include areas of competency and signatures)
- Competent Person Training Documentation (OSHA 10-hour and First Aid/CPR)
- Site Map (identify areas affected by this operation and underground utility shut-off locations)
- Emergency Action Plan (including emergency contact information and medical facility)
- JHA (include hazard assessment, equipment, and PPE needed to safely perform this task)

**Note:** This Document is **not** intended to replace the need for each Contractor to establish and maintain a proper Illness and Injury Prevention Program as required by the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910) and the State of Texas.

## EXHIBIT G – Utility Shutdown SPA Cover Letter

The following Utility Shutdown requirements have been established for the General Contractor’s Safety Manager. The General Contractor’s Safety Manager must ensure and approve that its Subcontractor’s SPA documentation meet all Federal, State, and local regulations and the requirements outlined in this manual prior to submitting for review.

The General Contractor’s Safety Manager must submit this Cover Letter, along with the criteria listed below, to the Owner’s Representative 5-7 days of any planned critical phases of work. **Contractors of any tier must at no time perform any type of power or other utility shutdown activities during regular school hours.**

To hold an on-site Utility Shutdown SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:

- ✓ Subcontractor Competent Person
- ✓ General Contractor Safety Representative
- ✓ Owner’s Representative [Optional]

Campus Name and ORG Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Subcontractor Name and Competent Person: \_\_\_\_\_

General Contractor Name and Site-Superintendent: \_\_\_\_\_

General Contractor Safety Manager Signature of Approval: \_\_\_\_\_

Anticipated Shutdown Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Utility Shutdown SPA must include but is not limited to the following:

- Shutdown Authorization Form ([EXHIBIT I](#)) must be submitted **10 days prior** to any planned shutdown and must contain pre-work notification signatures of approval)
- Scope of Work (describe methods, operating procedures, and any critical systems affected by this shutdown. Critical systems include life safety systems, security systems, kitchen, etc.)
- De-energizing System (describe system to be shutdown, methods for controlling hazardous energy, inadvertent release of stored energy, and make safe procedures)
- Contingency Plan (to prevent any disruptions to school operations, describe emergency actions to be taken for restoring system operations as quickly as possible)
- Restoring System (describe methods for safely restoring systems, removal of LOTO devices)
- Competent Person Letter of Designation (include areas of competency and signatures)
- Competent Person Training Documentation (OSHA 10-hour and First Aid/CPR)
- Site Map (identifying areas where shutdown is to be performed)
- Emergency Action Plan (including emergency contact information and medical facility)
- JHA (include hazard assessment, equipment, and PPE needed to safely perform this task)

**Note:** This Document is **not** intended to replace the need for each Contractor to establish and maintain a proper Illness and Injury Prevention Program as required by the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910) and the State of Texas.

## EXHIBIT H – Electrical Shutdown SPA Cover Letter

The following Electrical Shutdown requirements have been established for the General Contractor’s Safety Manager. The General Contractor’s Safety Manager must ensure and approve that its Subcontractor’s SPA documentation meet all Federal, State, and local regulations and the requirements outlined in this manual prior to submitting for review.

The General Contractor’s Safety Manager must submit this Cover Letter, along with the criteria listed below, to the Owner’s Representative 5-7 days of any planned critical phases of work.

To hold an on-site Electrical Shutdown SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:

- ✓ Subcontractor Competent Person
- ✓ General Contractor Safety Representative
- ✓ Owner’s Representative [Optional]

Campus Name and ORG Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Subcontractor Name and Competent Person: \_\_\_\_\_

General Contractor Name and Site-Superintendent: \_\_\_\_\_

General Contractor Safety Manager Signature of Approval: \_\_\_\_\_

Anticipated Shutdown Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Electrical Shutdown SPA must include but is not limited to the following:

- Shutdown Authorization Form ([EXHIBIT I](#)) must be submitted **10 days prior** to any planned shutdown and must contain pre-work notification signatures of approval)
- Scope of Work (describe methods, operating procedures, and any critical systems affected by this shutdown. Critical systems include life safety systems, security systems, kitchen, etc.)
- De-energizing System (describe system to be shutdown, methods for controlling hazardous energy, inadvertent release of stored energy, and make safe procedures – NFPA 120.2)
- Contingency Plan (to prevent any disruptions to school operations, describe emergency actions to be taken for restoring system operations as quickly as possible)
- Restoring System (describe methods for safely restoring systems, removal of LOTO devices)
- Electrically Qualified Person [NFPA 70 E] Training Records – NFPA 120.2(b)(2)
- Competent Person Letter of Designation (include areas of competency and signatures)
- Competent Person Training Documentation (OSHA 10-hour and First Aid/CPR)
- Site Map (identifying areas where shutdown is to be performed)
- Emergency Action Plan (including emergency contact information and medical facility)
- JHA (include hazard assessment equipment, and PPE needed to safely perform this task)

**Note:** This Document is **not** intended to replace the need for each Contractor to establish and maintain a proper Illness and Injury Prevention Program as required by the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910) and the State of Texas.



## EXHIBIT I – Shutdown Authorization Form

### Dallas Independent School District Bond Program Scheduled Utility Shutdown Authorization Form: General Contractor(s)

**SECTION A. GENERAL INFORMATION:**  \*Permanent       Temporary

School Name and Org. #: \_\_\_\_\_

Bond Program Manager (PM) Name: \_\_\_\_\_

General Contractor (GC) Person In-Charge: \_\_\_\_\_

Sub-Contractor (SUB) Person In-Charge:      (Name) \_\_\_\_\_      (Contact No.) \_\_\_\_\_

**SECTION B. PRE-WORK NOTIFICATION:**

Utility System(s) to Be Shut down: \_\_\_\_\_

Utility Meter number \_\_\_\_\_

Description of Work Performed: \_\_\_\_\_

Describe Procedure for Shutdown: \_\_\_\_\_

Safety Measures/ Precautions for Shutdown: \_\_\_\_\_

Date/ Time Requested for Shutdown: \_\_\_\_\_

Shutdown Date	Shutdown Time	Restart Date	Restart Time
---------------	---------------	--------------	--------------

*It is requested that the noted building system(s) be allowed for "shutdown" by the General Contractor to allow for our tie-in of services for the Project as enumerated below. We note that five (5) days advance notice is required as a minimum. I hereby certify that the required work has been coordinated and scheduled to achieve completion within the requested time-period.*

SUB Person-In-Charge:	(Sign) _____	(Date) _____
GC Person-In-Charge:	(Sign) _____	(Date) _____
Bond Program Manager (PM) Approval:	(Sign) _____	(Date) _____
DISD Project Manager Approval:	(Sign) _____	(Date) _____

**SECTION C. POST-WORK CERTIFICATION:**

Actual Date/ Time for Shutdown:	Shutdown Date	Shutdown Time	Restart Date	Restart Time
---------------------------------	---------------	---------------	--------------	--------------

GC Person-In-Charge Certification:	(Sign) _____	(Date) _____
Bond Program Manager (PM) Certification:	(Sign) _____	(Date) _____
DISD Project Manager Certification:	(Sign) _____	(Date) _____
DISD Sustainability Certification:	(Sign) _____	(Date) _____

**SECTION D. PROCESS FOR SCHEDULED UTILITY SHUTDOWN AUTHORIZATION**

- A. The General Contractor is to complete the *Utility Shutdown Request Form*, at least **5 working days** prior to the scheduled utility shutdown, and submit it to the respective Bond Program Manager for approval.
- B. The Bond Program Manager (PM) will review and approve submitted *Utility Shutdown Request Form* and forward to the respective Dallas ISD Project Manager for approval.
- C. The Dallas ISD Project Manager will review and approve form and return to the PM.
- D. PM forwards approved form to Director/Maintenance Solutions and notifies Deputy Chief Director, Emergency Operations and Bond Program Safety Manager.

**Note:** All scheduled shutdown requests will require a jobsite meeting with the Program Manager and the School staff 48 hours in advance to discuss the outage procedures and status of all District departments involved on the shutdown request.

**Note:** For electrical shutdowns (Scheduled/ involuntary), when required for building operations, the General contractor must supply a power generator to keep the telephones, data and alarms working at all times.

**\*Permanent shutdowns are facilities or specific meters that will not require power/ utility to be restored.**

## EXHIBIT J – Elevated Work SPA Cover Letter

The following Elevated Work SPA pre-meeting requirements have been established for the General Contractor’s Safety Manager. The General Contractor’s Safety Manager must ensure and approve that its Subcontractor’s SPA documentation meet all Federal, State, and local regulations and the requirements outlined in this manual prior to submitting for review.

The General Contractor’s Safety Manager must submit this Cover Letter, along with the criteria listed below, to the Owner’s Representative 5-7 days of any planned critical phases of work. **No roof work, regardless of the extent, is to be done over an occupied area/building.**

To hold an on-site Elevated Work SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:

- ✓ Subcontractor Competent Person
- ✓ General Contractor Safety Representative
- ✓ Owner’s Representative [Optional]

Campus Name and ORG Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Subcontractor Name and Competent Person: \_\_\_\_\_

General Contractor Name and Site-Superintendent: \_\_\_\_\_

General Contractor Safety Manager Signature of Approval: \_\_\_\_\_

Anticipated Start Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Elevated Work SPA must include but is not limited to the following:

- Scope of Work (describe methods, operating procedures, and affected work areas)
- Fall Protection (describe systems to be used, methods, anchor point locations, etc.)
- Fall Protection Training Records (for all crewmembers performing this task)
- Competent Person Letter of Designation (include areas of competency and signatures)
- Competent Person Training Documentation (OSHA 10-hour and First Aid/CPR)
- Site Map (identifying areas where work is to be performed)
- Emergency Action Plan (including emergency contact information and medical facility)
- JHA (include hazard assessment, equipment, and PPE needed to safely perform this task)

**Note:** This Document is **not** intended to replace the need for each Contractor to establish and maintain a proper Illness and Injury Prevention Program as required by the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910) and the State of Texas.

## EXHIBIT K – Crane Operation SPA Cover Letter

The following Crane Operation requirements have been established for the General Contractor’s Safety Manager. The General Contractor’s Safety Manager must ensure and approve that its Subcontractor’s SPA documentation meet all Federal, State, and local regulations and the requirements outlined in this manual prior to submitting for review.

The General Contractor’s Safety Manager must submit this Cover Letter, along with the criteria listed below, to the Owner’s Representative 5-7 days of any planned critical phases of work. **Booms or suspended loads must not be allowed to pass over playgrounds or other school property when there is a potential for students or staff to be present in these areas and/or within any fall radius.**

To hold an on-site Crane Operations SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:

- ✓ Subcontractor Competent Person
- ✓ General Contractor Safety Representative
- ✓ Owner’s Representative [Optional]

Campus Name and ORG Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Subcontractor Name and Competent Person: \_\_\_\_\_

General Contractor Name and Site-Superintendent: \_\_\_\_\_

General Contractor Safety Manager Signature of Approval: \_\_\_\_\_

Anticipated Lift Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Crane Operations SPA must include but is not limited to the following:

- Scope of Work (describe methods, operating procedures, and affected work areas)
- Crane Location and Logistics Plan (identify underground and overhead crane hazards)
- Lift Plan (identify load capacities, means of communication, and rigging/lifting methods)
- Site Map (identifying sequence of operation and fall radius in relation to any occupied areas)
- Crane Certificate of Insurance and Annual Inspection Records
- Competent Person Letter of Designation (include areas of competency and signatures)
- Competent Person Training Documentation (OSHA 10-hour and First Aid/CPR)
- Crane Operator Certification and Medical Card
- Rigger and Signal Person Training Records
- Fall Protection (if applicable, describe systems to be used, methods, anchor point locations, etc.)
- Fall Protection Training Records (for all crewmembers performing this task)
- Emergency Action Plan (including emergency contact information and medical facility)
- JHA (include hazard assessment, equipment, and PPE needed to safely perform this task)

**Note:** This Document is **not** intended to replace the need for each Contractor to establish and maintain a proper Illness and Injury Prevention Program as required by the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910) and the State of Texas.

## EXHIBIT L – Steel Erection SPA Cover Letter

The following Steel Erection requirements have been established for the General Contractor’s Safety Manager. The General Contractor’s Safety Manager must ensure and approve that its Subcontractor’s SPA documentation meet all Federal, State, and local regulations and the requirements outlined in this manual prior to submitting for review.

The General Contractor’s Safety Manager must submit this Cover Letter, along with the criteria listed below, to the Owner’s Representative 5-7 days of any planned critical phases of work. **Steel Erection must not be allowed when students and/or staff are present in occupied areas and/or within any fall radius.**

To hold an on-site Steel Erection SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:

- ✓ Subcontractor Competent Person
- ✓ General Contractor Safety Representative
- ✓ Owner’s Representative [Optional]

Campus Name and ORG Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Subcontractor Name and Competent Person: \_\_\_\_\_

General Contractor Name and Site-Superintendent: \_\_\_\_\_

General Contractor Safety Manager Signature of Approval: \_\_\_\_\_

Anticipated Start Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Steel Erection SPA must include but is not limited to the following:

- Scope of Work (describe methods, operating procedures, and affected work areas)
- Steel Erection Plan (describe equipment placement, lifting methods, and connection procedures)
- Written Notification from the General Contractor confirming concrete footings, piers, and/or walls have been cured to a level that will provide adequate structural strength and stability.
- Site Map (identifying sequence of operation and fall radius in relation to any occupied areas)
- Fall Protection procedures (describe systems to be used, Controlled Access Zones, etc.)
- Fall Protection Training Records (for all crewmembers performing this task)
- Rigger and Signal Person Training Records
- Competent Person Letter of Designation (include areas of competency and signatures)
- Competent Person Training Documentation (OSHA 10-hour and First Aid/CPR)
- Emergency Action Plan (including emergency contact information and medical facility)
- JHA (include hazard assessment, equipment, and PPE needed to safely perform this task)

**Note:** This Document is **not** intended to replace the need for each Contractor to establish and maintain a proper Illness and Injury Prevention Program as required by the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910) and the State of Texas.

## EXHIBIT M – Aerial Crane Operation SPA Cover Letter

The following Aerial Crane Operation requirements have been established for the General Contractor's Safety Manager. The General Contractor's Safety Manager must ensure and approve that its Subcontractor's SPA documentation meet all Federal, State, and local regulations and the requirements outlined in this manual prior to submitting for review.

The General Contractor's Safety Manager must submit this Cover Letter, along with the criteria listed below, to the Owner's Representative 5-7 days of any planned critical phases of work. **Aircraft or suspended loads must not be allowed to pass over playgrounds or other school property when there is a potential for students, staff, or public to be present in these areas and/or within any potential drop zones.**

To hold an on-site Aerial Crane Operations SPA pre-work meeting, at a minimum, the following parties must be present:

- ✓ Subcontractor Competent Person
- ✓ General Contractor Safety Representative
- ✓ Owner's Representative [Optional]

Campus Name and ORG Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Subcontractor Name and Competent Person: \_\_\_\_\_

General Contractor Name and Site-Superintendent: \_\_\_\_\_

General Contractor Safety Manager Signature of Approval: \_\_\_\_\_

Anticipated Lift Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Aerial Crane Operations SPA must include but is not limited to the following:

- Lift Plan (scope of work, travel path, ground level and ariel hazards or obstructions)
- Site Set-Up (overhead map of staging areas, sequence of operation, primary and alternate emergency area locations, and potential drop zones in relation to occupied areas)
- Material to be lifted (method of attachment, rigging to be used, configuration, and load capacities)
- Roles and responsibilities (communication methods for ground crew, roof crew, and operator)
- Competent Person Letter of Designation form (include areas of competency and proof of training)
- Rigger and signal person training records
- JHA (include hazard assessment, equipment, and PPE needed to safely perform this task)
- Emergency Action Plan (including emergency contact information and medical facility)
- Standard Airworthiness Certificate
- Congested Area Plan Request to FAA
- FAA Registry of Aircraft
- FAA Airman Detail Report
- Notification of Dallas City Officials
- Certificate of Aircraft liability insurance (insurance limit must be \$10 million, per contract amount)
- Evidence of additional insured and waiver of subrogation endorsement

**EXHIBIT N -- Hot Work Permit**

All temporary work involving open flames, intense heat, or sparks will require a Hot Work Permit. The permit must be issued by the contractor and authorized by the appropriate supervisor before any hot work (welding, brazing, cutting, grinding, etc.) can begin. Two copies of the Hot Work Permit must be made. One should be filed with the contractor. The second copy should be posted at the site of the hot work until the job is completed.

Issue Date:	Permit Expires:	
Building:	Sub:	Area:
Authorizing Supervisor (GC):	Start Time:	End Time:
Operator:	Fire Watch:	

**Checklist**

Following items must be checked by the authorizing supervisor and operator/welder. If any item is checked "No", then hot work must not begin until item or area is corrected.

- | Yes                      | No                       |  |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|--|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Work area examined   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Equipment inspected, in good repair  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | PPE inspected, in good repair  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Sprinkler system operable  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Combustible materials/items moved a radius of 35 feet away from work area.   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Explosive atmosphere (s) eliminated  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Floor and wall openings covered  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Fire watch assigned and required during work and for <u>30</u> minutes afterwards*   |
|                          |                          | *Fire watch must be at least 30 minutes in duration  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Fire watch has ample extinguishing equipment and is trained to properly use it   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Work area is considered a confined space (if yes additional confined space will be required. Contact supervisor before proceeding) |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | Proper ventilation provided for the work area  |

Other precautions

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_

**Authorizing Supervisor Signature:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Date:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Final Checkup: To be completed after hot work is finished and fire watch is over**

The work area and all surrounding areas subjected to heat and sparks were monitored during the hot work operations and during the required fire watch period and found to be safe.

**Fire Watcher Signature:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Title:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Date:** \_\_\_\_\_

**EXHIBIT O – Incident Investigation Report**

CONTRACTOR: \_\_\_\_\_ ACCIDENT DATE: \_\_\_\_\_ TIME: \_\_\_\_\_ LOCATION \_\_\_\_\_

ACCIDENT LOCATION (SPECIFIC): \_\_\_\_\_

WHAT HAPPENED? (Describe operation, activity, condition and how accident or loss occurred.

Use separate sheet and diagram if necessary): \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

Recommended correction action:  
\_\_\_\_\_

Equipment involved #: \_\_\_\_\_ Employee involved: \_\_\_\_\_

Employee Injury (Describe):  
\_\_\_\_\_

Root Cause (Describe): \_\_\_\_\_

Medical referral? Yes \_\_\_\_\_ No \_\_\_\_\_

Company Property Damage or Loss  
(Describe): \_\_\_\_\_

DISD Property, Damage, or Injury to Others  
(Describe): \_\_\_\_\_

Witnesses (Name, address, phone): \_\_\_\_\_

Police Report Number: \_\_\_\_\_ DISD Police Report Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Foreman/Supervisor \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Keep Original in contractor's File and CC: Owner's Representatives

**[Attach Photos]**

## EXHIBIT P – Safety Inspection Checklist

SAFETY INSPECTION CHECKLIST				
Contractor:	Contract No.			
Job-site Location:				
Person in Charge:				
Date: <span style="float: right;">Time:</span>				
Person(s) making inspection:				
Column: A= Adequate B= Inadequate N/A = Not Applicable				
PROGRAM ADMINISTRATION:	A	B	N/A	REMARKS
1. Posting OSHA and other job-site warning posters.				
2. Do you have safety meetings?				
3. Job safety training, including first-aid training?				
4. Is first-aid equipment and supplies available?				
5. Are job-site injury records being kept?				
6. Are emergency telephone numbers, such as police department, fire department, doctor, hospital, and ambulance, posted?				
HOUSEKEEPING AND SANITATION:	A	B	N/A	REMARKS
1. General neatness of working areas.				
2. Regular disposal of waste and trash.				
3. Passageways and walkways clear?				
4. Adequate lighting.				
5. Protruding nails removed or bent over?				
6. Oil and grease removed.				
7. Waste containers provided and used.				
8. Sanitary facilities adequate and clean.				
9. Drinking water potable.				
10. Adequate supply of water.				



11. Disposable drinking cups.				
<b>FIRE PREVENTION:</b>	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>REMARKS</b>
1. Fire instructions to personnel.				
2. Fire extinguishers identified, checked, accessible.				
3. Proper fire extinguishers provided.				
4. Hydrants clear, access to public thoroughfare open.				
5. Good housekeeping.				
6. "No Smoking" signage posted and enforced where needed.				
7. Fire brigades.				
<b>ELECTRICAL INSTALLATIONS:</b>	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>REMARKS</b>
1. Adequate wiring, well insulated.				
2. Circuit breakers and GFCI (where required) provided.				
3. Fire hazards checked.				
4. Electrical danger signs posted.				
5. Are terminal boxes equipped with required covers? Are covers used?				
<b>HAND TOOLS:</b>	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>REMARKS</b>
1. Proper tool being used for each job.				
2. Neat storage, safe carrying.				
3. Inspection and maintenance.				
4. Damaged tools repaired or replaced promptly. Are employee's tools inspected and repaired?				

<b>POWER TOOLS:</b>	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>REMARKS</b>
1. Good housekeeping where tools are used.				
2. Tools and cords in good condition.				
3. Proper grounding.				
4. Proper instruction in use.				
5. All mechanical safeguards in use.				
6. Tools neatly stored when not in use.				

7. Right tool being used for the job at hand.				
8. Wiring properly installed.				
<b>POWDER ACTUATED TOOLS:</b>	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>REMARKS</b>
1. Local laws and ordinances complied with.				
2. All operators trained.				
3. Tools and charges protected from unauthorized use.				
4. Competent instruction and supervision.				
5. Tools checked and in good working order.				
6. Tools not used on anything but recommended materials.				
7. Safety goggles or face shields provided and used.				
8. Flying hazard checked by backing up, removal of personnel, or use of captive stud tool.				
<b>LADDERS:</b>	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>REMARKS</b>
1. Ladders inspected and in good condition?				
2. Secured to prevent slipping, sliding, or falling?				
3. Do side rails extend 36" above top of landing?				
4. Rungs or cleats not over 12" on center.				
5. Metal ladders not used around electrical hazards.				
6. Proper maintenance and storage.				
7. Are ladders not painted?				

<b>SCAFFOLDING:</b>	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>REMARKS</b>
1. Is erection properly supervised?				
2. Will all structural members meet the safety factor?				
3. Are all connections secure?				
4. Is scaffold tied into structure where necessary?				
5. Are working areas free of debris, snow, ice, grease?				
6. Are base plates and mud sills provided?				
7. Are workers protected from falling objects?				

8. Is the scaffold plumb and square with cross-bracing?				
9. Are guardrails, intermediate rails, and toe boards in place?				
10. Are hoist ropes and cables in good condition?				
<b>HOISTS, CRANES AND DERRICKS:</b>	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>REMARKS</b>
1. Inspect cables and sheaves.				
2. Check slings and chains, hooks, and eyes.				
3. Equipment firmly supported.				
4. Outriggers used, proper cribbing.				
5. Power lines deactivated, removed or at safe distance				
6. Proper loading for capacity of lifting radius.				
7. All equipment properly lubricated and maintained.				
8. Signalman where needed.				
9. Signals understood and observed.				
10. Are inspection and maintenance logs maintained?				
<b>HEAVY EQUIPMENT:</b>	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>REMARKS</b>
1. Regular inspection and maintenance.				

2. Lubrication and repair of moving parts.				
3. Lights, brakes, warning signals operative.				
4. Wheels chocked when necessary.				
5. Haul roads well maintained and laid out properly.				
6. Protection when equipment is not in use.				
7. Shut-off devices on hose lines in case of failure?				
<b>MOTOR VEHICLES:</b>	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>REMARKS</b>
1. Regular inspection and maintenance.				
2. Qualified operators.				
3. Brakes, lights, warning devices operative.				

4. Weight limits and load sizes controlled.				
5. Is all glass in good condition?				
6. Are back-up (reverse) alarms provided?				
7. Fire extinguishers provided in all vehicles?				
<b>BARRICADES:</b>	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>REMARKS</b>
1. Floor openings planked over and secured, or barricaded.				
2. Roadways and sidewalks effectively protected.				
3. Adequate lighting provided.				
4. Traffic controlled.				
<b>HANDLING AND STORAGE OF MATERIALS:</b>	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>REMARKS</b>
1. Are materials properly stored or stacked?				
2. Are passageways clear?				
3. Stacks on firm footings, not too high.				
4. Proper number of men for each operation.				
5. Are workers lifting loads correctly?				

6. Are materials protected from weather conditions?				
7. Protection against falling.				
8. Is dust protection observed?				
9. Extinguishers and other fire protection provided.				
10. Is traffic controlled in the storage area?				
<b>EXCAVATION AND SHORING:</b>	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>REMARKS</b>
1. Are adjacent structures properly shored?				
2. Is shoring, benching, or sloping used for soil depth or excavation properly sloped?				
3. Are roads and sidewalks supported and protected?				
4. Is material stored at least 2 feet from excavations?				
5. Is excavation barricaded and lighting provided?				
6. Is equipment a safe distance from edge of excavation?				
7. Are ladders provided where needed?				

8. Are equipment ramps adequate?				
9. Is job supervisor on-site during trenching operations?				
<b>DEMOLITION:</b>	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>REMARKS</b>
1. Are operations planned ahead?				
2. Is there shoring of adjacent structures?				
3. Are material chutes used?				
4. Is there sidewalk and other public protection?				
5. Adequate access ladders or stairs.				
<b>FLAMMABLE GASSES AND LIQUIDS:</b>	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>REMARKS</b>
1. All containers U.L. approved meeting OSHA requirements with contents clearly identified.				
2. Proper storage practices observed.				
3. Fire hazards checked.				
4. Proper storage temperatures and protection.				
5. Proper types and number of extinguishers nearby.				
6. Carts for moving cylinders available.				
<b>MASONRY:</b>	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>REMARKS</b>
1. Proper scaffolding.				
2. Saws properly equipped; dust protection provided.				
<b>ROADWAY CONSTRUCTION:</b>	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>REMARKS</b>
1. Laws and ordinances observed.				
2. Flag-person properly dressed, instructed, and posted.				
3. Adequate warning signs and markers.				
4. Equipment not blocking right of way.				
5. Traffic control through construction site.				
6. Adequate marking and maintenance of detours.				
7. Dust control.				
8. Adequate lighting.				
<b>PERSONAL PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT:</b>	<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>	<b>N/A</b>	<b>REMARKS</b>
1. Eye and Head protection.				
2. Face shields.				
3. Respirators and masks.				
<b>List actions to be taken for all items found non-compliant</b>				

**EXHIBIT Q – Contractor Acknowledgement Statement**

Campus Name and ORG Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Contractor Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

By executing this document as an authorized representative of the referenced Company identified above, I acknowledge and confirm that I have read and understand the contents of the Dallas ISD Construction Safety Program Guidelines in its entirety.

I also recognize and acknowledge that the obligation to protect the safety and health of all persons affected by construction activities is not limited to the requirements of the Dallas ISD Construction Safety Program Guidelines only, but also includes all applicable OSHA, Federal, State, and local regulations, and guidelines necessary to provide a safe and healthful working environment for all contractors, campus staff, students, and general public.

The Contracting Company and its employees will comply with all applicable safety requirements while performing work on any Dallas ISD property. The Company will further communicate the requirements of the Dallas ISD Construction Safety Program Guidelines and other applicable OSHA, Federal, State, and local regulations, and guidelines to all tiered Subcontractors that will perform work on the Project and retain a physical signed copy of this Contractor Acknowledgement Statement from each such Subcontractor.

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Name of Authorized Representative)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Signature of Authorized Representative)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Date Signed)

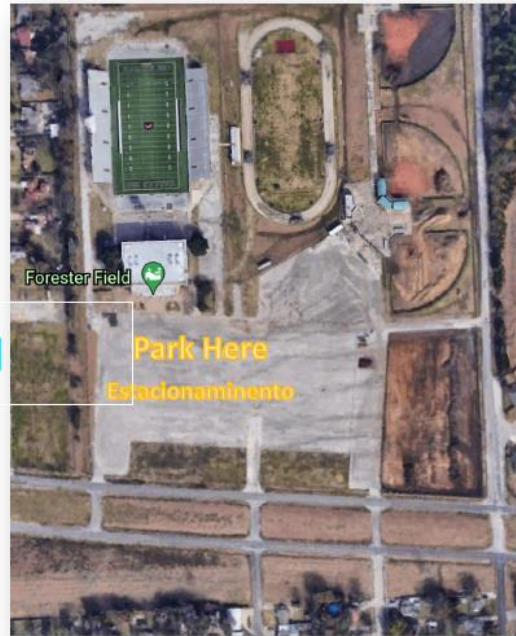
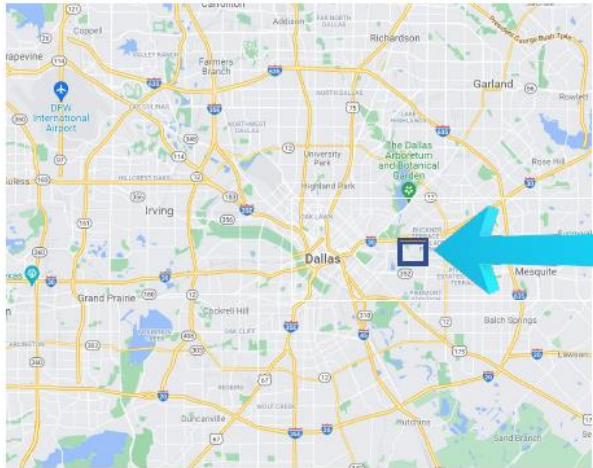
# ATTACHMENTS

- [Attachment I – Dallas ISD Orientation Location and Schedule](#)
- [Attachment II – Site-Specific Safety Plan Guidelines](#)
- [Attachment III – Crisis Communications Poster](#)
- [Attachment IV – Visitor’s Release and Hold Harmless Agreement](#)
- [Attachment V – Shutdown Notification Guidelines](#)
- [Attachment VI – SWPPP Oversight Flowchart](#)
- [Attachment VII – Greenfield Shutdown Authorization Request Guidelines](#)
- [Attachment VIII – Intruder Detection](#)
- [Attachment IX – Campus Security Reminders](#)
- [Attachment X – Safety Meeting Sign-in Sheet](#)
- [Attachment XI – Geotechnical Soil Sampling Safety Guidelines](#)
- [Attachment XII – Inclement Weather Plan of Action](#)

# Dallas ISD Orientation Location and Schedule



## Construction Services



### Dallas ISD Construction Safety Orientation (Orientacion de Seguridad)

Location/Ubicacion  
Forester Field  
8233 Military Pkwy  
Dallas, TX 75227

Schedule/Horario  
7:30am-8:30am  
Tuesday and Thursday  
Martes y Jueves

You must have your Dallas ISD  
Badge to attend this orientation.

Usted debe tener su  
identificacion para poder asistir  
a esta Orientacion.



### CRITERIA FOR DEVELOPING A SITE-SPECIFIC SAFETY PLAN

Prior to work, Contractors are required to submit for review, an acceptable Site-Specific Safety Plan that includes safe and health work practices. The Owner's Representative will evaluate the plan to see that it meets the safety requirements for the Project's scope of work.

A Site-Specific Safety Plan must include but is not limited to the following:

- (1) **Scope of Work:** A description of the scope of work is to be included on the front page of the Site-Specific Safety Plan.
- (2) **Job Safety Procedures:** Explain in detail and specifically how job safety is to be incorporated into each phase of the scope of work. Use of ladders, scaffolds, flagging, equipment, exposures, special conditions, fall protection, etc., must be included for the plan to be accepted. Generalities will not be accepted to Explain the safety and health conditions employees will be exposed to.
- (3) **General Contractor's Site-Specific Safety Orientation:** Each employee who is new to the jobsite must receive a thorough safety and hazard communication orientation, which imparts basic information about the project safety and health program, federal/state regulations, and other safety rules and regulations needed to perform tasks safely. Future safety instructions may be necessary if hazardous work and/or unfamiliar tasks are performed.
- (4) **Competent Person Designation(s):** Competent Person Designation Form(s) accompanied by a valid First Aid/CPR and OSHA 30-hour certification (within 5 years of the issuing date) must be provided for all on-site persons designated as competent.
- (5) **Supervising for Safety:** Explain how supervisors are going to constantly review the safe practices and procedures. Jobsite inspections are required daily. An inspection checklist should be documented at least weekly.
- (6) **Disciplinary Policy:** Contractor must explain disciplinary action for any employee who jeopardizes his health or safety, or the health or safety of others.
- (7) **Subcontractor Compliance:** Explain how Subcontractor compliance with your safety program and the Construction Minimum Safety Program Guidelines Manual will be verified and documented. When Subcontractor's programs are deficient, the General Contractor must be responsible for providing them with the necessary training and protection. This must be documented.
- (8) **Incident Investigation Procedure:** Explain how the General Contractor and involved Subcontractors will investigate all incidents involving a near miss, injury, and/or property damage. Investigation Procedures must include a Root Cause Analysis and Corrective Action Plan to prevent reoccurrence.
- (9) **Emergency Action Plan:** Describe Actions to be taken should an emergency occur. Emergency Action Plans must cover injuries, fires, evacuations, and similar situations. Plans must include designated emergency contact names and telephone numbers, e.g., on-site supervision, police department, fire department, doctor, hospital, and ambulance.

## [Criteria for Developing a Site-Specific Safety Plan – Continued]

- (10) **Personal Protective Equipment:** Describe Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) to be worn, training requirements, and parameters for its use.
- (11) **Occupational Health Programs:** Site-specific Occupational Health and Illness Prevention Programs are required to protect employees working on the project, i.e., Asbestos Awareness, Air Monitoring, Silica, Sampling, Special Protective Clothing or Equipment, and Particular Hazards.
- (12) **Job Hazard Analysis (JHA):** Explain the formal job hazard analysis process
- (13) **Task Training:** Contractors are required to task train employees in the exposures they will be confronted with and the job they are expected to perform. Other situations, however, may arise during the course of the project that will require additional training. Explain how task training will be accomplished, how often it will be conducted, and who will be conducting the training.
- (14) **Reporting Unsafe Acts or Conditions:** Explain the program in place that promotes positive feedback to supervision and employees who report unsafe acts and/or conditions.
- (15) **Toolbox Talk Safety Meetings:** These must be held and documented at least weekly. Explain who will be responsible for conducting these meetings, when they will be held, and where they will be held.
- (16) **Fire Prevention and Protection Plan:** Explain the job-site fire prevention and protection program in detail.
- (17) **Hazard Communication Program:** Provide copy of the Site-specific Haz-Com program.
- (18) **Lock-out/Tag-out (LOTO) Program:** Provide a copy of the Site-specific LOTO Program
- (19) **Confined Space Entry:** Provide a copy of the Site-specific Confined Space Program
- (20) **Trenching/Excavation and Utility Strike Prevention:** Provide a copy of the Site-specific Trenching/Excavation Procedures and a Utility Strike Prevention Plan.
- (21) **Fall Protection and Prevention Program:** Provide a copy of the Site-specific Fall Protection and Prevention Program
- (22) **Traffic Control Plan:** Provide a copy of the Site-specific Traffic Control Plan
- (23) **Substance Abuse Policy:** Provide a copy of the Substance Abuse Policy
- (24) **Special Instructions and Information:** Provide any special instruction or additional safety information as it relates to the unique conditions and/or environment associated with the project.

**Note:** The requirements outlined in this Document are intended to provide a working, uniform minimal level of program guidelines to assist or provide direction to Contractors. This Document is **not** intended to replace the need for each Contractor of any tier to establish and maintain a proper Illness and Injury Prevention Program as required by the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910) and the State of Texas.



## CONSTRUCTION SITE

# Crisis Communications GUIDELINES

### SUGGESTED STEPS FOR CRISIS SITUATIONS:

1. Evaluate the situation and extent of damage or injuries.
2. If students are present, immediately contact the principal or school office.
3. Call 9-1-1 if necessary. Be prepared to give the dispatcher details of the accident and injuries, the exact address and where emergency crews should enter the site.
4. Assign someone to meet emergency crews at the gate.
5. Call Dallas ISD Communications at (972) 925-3917. Be prepared to provide as much information as possible.
6. Call Dallas ISD Police at (214) 932-5627.
7. Call Construction Services at (972) 925-7200.
8. Call the Safety Manager at (214) 435-2204.
8. Other than as noted below, *do not speak* to reporters or photographers. Refer them to Dallas ISD Communications.

### How to handle reporters who come to the construction site:

There is no such thing as "off the record." Be polite, but firm. Tell reporters and photographers they must wait off-site, outside the main gate, until an authorized Dallas ISD spokesperson arrives. Do not push, shove, block, or attempt to physically restrain a reporter or photographer. When dealing with reporters, photographers or TV crews, always assume that they are recording.

### EMERGENCY TELEPHONE NUMBERS:

#### Dallas ISD Police

**(214) 932-5627**

#### Robyn Harris

*Dallas ISD Communications/  
District Spokesperson*

**(972) 925-3917**

#### Alvaro Meza

*Bond Program Safety Manager*

**(214) 435-2204**

## Visitor's Release and Hold Harmless Agreement

General Contractor: \_\_\_\_\_

Project Name: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

In consideration of being permitted, for my own purposes and interests, to enter upon the premises or construction site of Dallas Independent School District Construction Project, I hereby release, hold harmless, and indemnify the Dallas Independent School District, Consultants, Inspectors, Contractors and Subcontractors from and against, and assume the risk for and on behalf of myself, my heirs, my supervisor and my estate, all damages, losses, injuries and any and all other claims of any type whatsoever for personal injury (including death) and other loss or damage of any nature whatsoever including damage to my personal property, and reasonable attorney's fees and court costs sustained or caused while on such premises or site.

In the event any clause, term, or provision of this agreement must be declared or adjudicated void or invalid, it must in no manner affect the other clauses, terms, and provisions hereof, which must remain in full force and effect, as if the clause, term, or provision so declared or adjudicated invalid was not originally a part hereof.

Visitor's Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Visitor's Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Address: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

## Shutdown Notification Guidelines

The General Contractor must provide Dallas ISD with notification of power or other utility shutdown no less than ten (10) calendar days in advance of the shutdown. Notification includes Dallas ISD Central Maintenance Office, A/E, Program Manager, and the Principal at each affected school.

- Shutdown Authorization Form ([EXHIBIT I](#)) must be submitted to the Dallas ISD Bond Program Manager and Dallas ISD Project Manager for signatures of approval **10 days prior** to any planned shutdown.
- Shutdowns to be scheduled during weekends or extended breaks.
- Overtime Code may be needed for Dallas ISD Personnel involved after hours.
- Permanent shutdowns must be field verified by Contractor. If utility service remains active, immediately report to DISD Sustainability via Bond PM.

## Water Shut-off Guidelines

### **Notification To:**

- ✓ Dallas ISD Quadrant Supervisor
- ✓ Dallas ISD Department Supervisor
- ✓ Affected Dallas ISD Departments & Confirmation of readiness (Including but not limited to HVAC, Kitchen, Fire Suppression, etc.)
- ✓ Dallas ISD Sustainability Manager and/or Technician

### **Content of Notification:**

- ✓ Signed Authorization form-DISD PM.
- ✓ Type of Shutdown: Emergency, Minor, Complete, Relocation.
- ✓ Meter number (if applicable).
- ✓ Area affected, Duration, and Contingency Plan
- ✓ SPA-Cover Letter Authorized by GC Safety Representative
- ✓ When relocating a utility, DISD Sustainability department must be notified.

### **Dallas ISD Plumbing Department:**

- Department Manager: Bart Braswell
- SE Quad Supervisor: Jesse Rincon
- SW Quad Supervisor: James Baker
- NE Quad Supervisor: Justin Morris
- NW Quad Supervisor: David Martin
- Sustainability Department Manager: Bryant Shaw
- Sustainability Department Technician: Stephanie Garcia

### **Re-pressurizing:**

- ✓ Include City Inspection
- ✓ Contractor to provide post inspection along with photos to DISD Plumbing Manager

## Gas Shut-off Guidelines

### Notification To:

- ✓ Quadrant Supervisor
- ✓ Department Manager
- ✓ Affected Departments & Confirmation of readiness (Including but not limited to HVAC, Kitchen, etc.)
- ✓ Dallas ISD Sustainability Manager and/or Technician

**NOTE:** When adding HVAC units, Project AE approval of increased load is expected.

### Content of Notification:

- ✓ Signed Authorization form-DISD PM.
- ✓ Type of Shutdown: Emergency, Minor, Complete, Relocation.
- ✓ Meter number (if applicable).
- ✓ Area affected, Duration, and Contingency Plan
- ✓ SPA-Cover Letter Authorized by GC Safety Representative
- ✓ When relocating a utility, DISD Sustainability department must be notified.

### Re-pressurizing:

- ✓ Include City Inspection
- ✓ Contractor to provide post inspection along with photos to DISD Plumbing Manager

## Sanitary Sewer Guidelines

### Notification To:

- ✓ Quadrant Supervisor
- ✓ Department Manager
- ✓ Dallas ISD Sustainability Manager and/or Technician

### Content of Notification:

- ✓ Signed Authorization form-DISD PM
- ✓ Type of Shutdown: Emergency, Minor, Complete
- ✓ Meter number (if applicable)
- ✓ Area affected, Duration, and Contingency Plan
- ✓ SPA-Cover Letter Authorized by GC Safety Representative
- ✓ PMF PM to provide a Post Audit to DISD Plumbing Manager
- ✓ Include Pictures of tie-in
- ✓ Include City Inspection for all work.

### Tie-In Guidelines:

- ✓ PMF PM to provide post inspection of service to DISD Plumbing Manager.

## Electrical Shutdown Guidelines

### **Notification To: [Prior to Shut down and after restoration of service]**

- ✓ ONCOR (if applicable)
- ✓ DISD Electrical Quadrant Supervisor
- ✓ DISD Electrical Department Supervisor
- ✓ MEP Director
- ✓ Dallas ISD Sustainability Manager and/or Technician.
- ✓ Affected Departments & Confirmation of readiness (HVAC, Kitchen, IT, Building Security, Fire Alarm, etc.)

### **Dallas ISD Electrical Department:**

- Department Director: Bart Webster
- Department Manager: George Lakes
- NW Supervisor: Ainsworth, Steven
- NE Supervisor: Kevin T Liles
- SE Supervisor: Douglas Hall
- SW Supervisor: Jim Ward

### **Dallas ISD Sustainability Department:**

- Sustainability Department Manager: Bryant Shaw
- Sustainability Department Technician: Stephanie Garcia

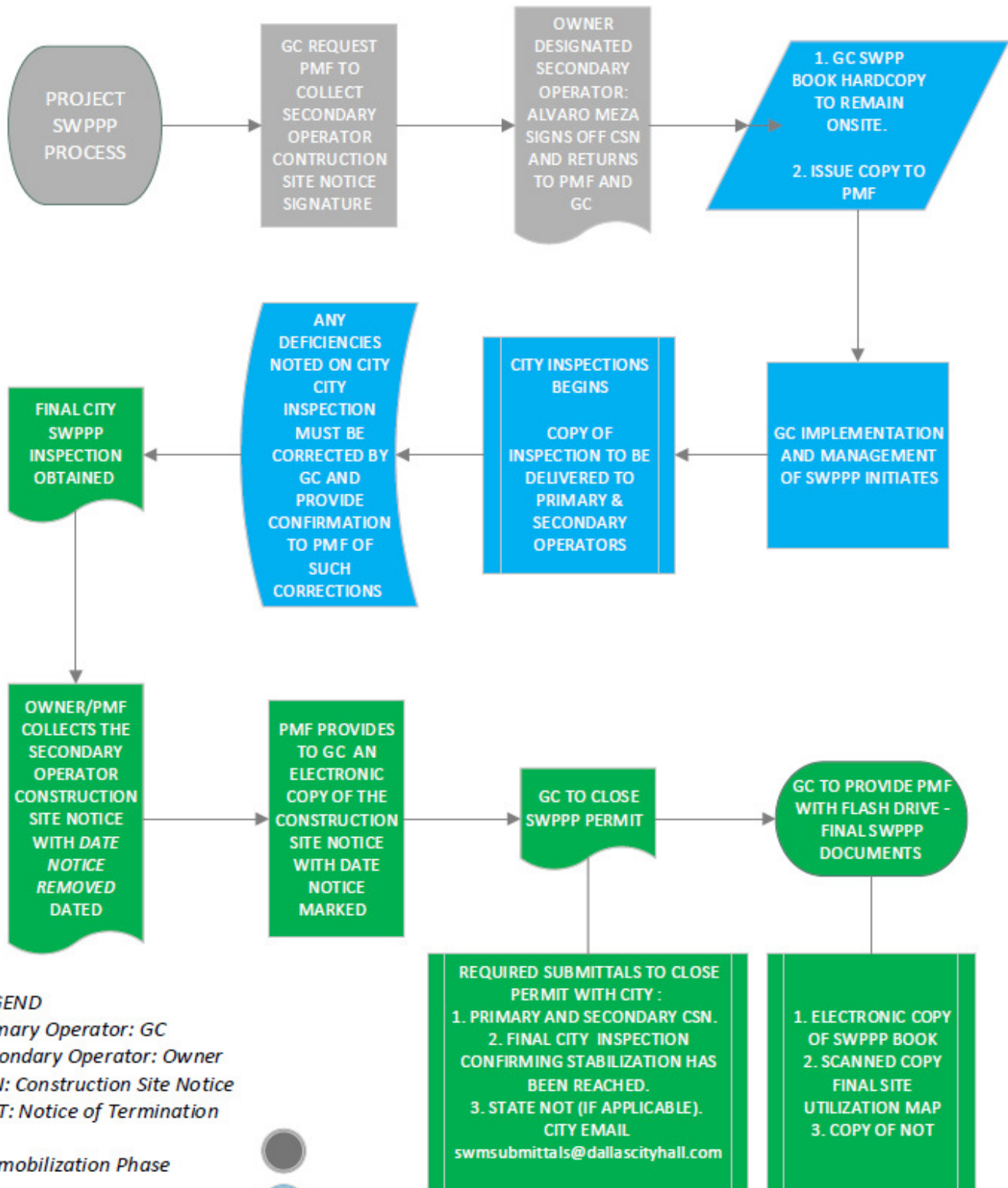
### **Content of notification:**

- ✓ Signed Authorization form-DISD PM
- ✓ Type of Shutdown: Emergency, Minor, Complete
- ✓ Meter number (if applicable)
- ✓ When relocating a utility, DISD Sustainability department must be notified
- ✓ Area affected, Duration, and Contingency Plan
- ✓ SPA-Cover Letter Authorized by GC Safety Representative
- ✓ Complete-Shutdowns-

### **Re-energizing:**

- ✓ Quadrant Supervisor
- ✓ Department Supervisor
- ✓ Affected Departments & Confirmation of readiness (HVAC, Kitchen, IT, Building Security, Fire Alarm, etc.)
- ✓ Electrical Contractor to gradually increase power

# SWPPP Oversight Flowchart



**LEGEND**

Primary Operator: GC  
 Secondary Operator: Owner  
 CSN: Construction Site Notice  
 NOT: Notice of Termination

Premobilization Phase

Construction Phase

Site Stabilized/Ready for NOT





# Greenfield Shutdown Authorization Request Guidelines

See below set of guidelines for greenfield projects requesting permanent utility shutdown:

1. Utility Shutdown request should select **PERMANENT** on the top right portion of our authorization form. (See below sample)
2. General Contractor (GC) responsible to provide power for the duration of the project.
3. Once the project reaches substantial completion, the GC/PMF to provide the Dallas ISD Sustainability Department with a copy of the GC utility bills to transfer the utility service to Dallas ISD.

If you have any questions, please reach out to Dallas ISD Sustainability Department: [sg9453@dallasisd.org](mailto:sg9453@dallasisd.org)

**Note:**

- Before demolishing a portable and/or building all meters numbers should be provided to DISD sustainability department to closed account and have the meters removed through the Owner provider.
- Please be reminded there is a “Minimum of 10-day(s) advance notice” for utilities. It is very important that ALL Utility Accounts are closed through sustainability to prevent the GC reimbursing the district.
- Lastly, DISD is not responsible to provide GC utilities on Greenfield Locations.

Dallas Independent School District  
 Bond Program  
 Scheduled Utility Shutdown Authorization Form: General Contractor(s)

<b>SECTION A. GENERAL INFORMATION:</b>			
School Name and Org. #: _____		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Permanent <input type="checkbox"/> Temporary	
Bond Program Manager (PSD) Name: _____			
General Contractor (GC) Person-In-Charge: _____			
Sub-Contractor (SUB) Person-In-Charge: _____ (Name) _____ (Contract No.)			
<b>SECTION B. PRE-WORK NOTIFICATION:</b>			
Utility System(s) to be Shut down: _____			
Utility Meter number: _____			
Description of Work Performed: _____			
Describe Procedure for Shutdown: _____			
Safety Measures/Precautions for Shutdown: _____			
Date/Time Requested for Shutdown:			
	Shutdown Date	Shutdown Time	Restart Date/Time
<small>If it is requested that the named building(s) be allowed for "Shutdown" by the General Contractor to allow for set down of services for the Project as enumerated below. We note that DISD does not provide power in regard to a maximum. I hereby certify that the required meter has been coordinated and scheduled to achieve completion within the requested time period.</small>			
SUB Person-In-Charge: _____ (Name) _____ (Phone)			
GC Person-In-Charge: _____ (Name) _____ (Phone)			
Bond Program Manager (PSD) Approval: _____ (Name) _____ (Phone)			
DISD Project Manager Approval: _____ (Name) _____ (Phone)			
<b>SECTION C. POST-WORK CERTIFICATION:</b>			
Actual Date/Time for Shutdown:			
	Shutdown Date	Shutdown Time	Restart Date/Time
GC Person-In-Charge Certification: _____ (Name) _____ (Phone)			
Bond Program Manager (PSD) Certification: _____ (Name) _____ (Phone)			
DISD Project Manager Certification: _____ (Name) _____ (Phone)			
DISD Sustainability Certification: _____ (Name) _____ (Phone)			
<b>SECTION D. PROCESS FOR SCHEDULED UTILITY SHUTDOWN AUTHORIZATION</b>			
<small>A. The General Contractor is to complete the Utility Shutdown Request Form, at least <b>21 business days</b> prior to the scheduled utility shutdown, and submit it to the respective Bond Program Manager for approval.</small>			
<small>B. The Bond Program Manager (PSD) will review and approve scheduled Utility Shutdown Request Form and forward to the request to Dallas ISD Project Manager for approval.</small>			
<small>C. The Dallas ISD Project Manager will review and approve form and return to the PM.</small>			
<small>D. PM forward approved form to Director/Maintenance Services and another Deputy Chief Director, Emergency Operations and Bond Program Safety Manager.</small>			
<small>Note: All scheduled shutdown requests will require a phone meeting with the Program Manager and the School call 48 hours in advance to discuss the outage procedure and status of all District operations involved in the shutdown request.</small>			
<small>Note: For electrical shutdown (scheduled) activities, when required for building operations, the General contractor must supply a power generator to keep the telephone, data and alarm working at all times.</small>			
<small>*Permanent shutdowns are facilities or specific meters that will not require power utility to be restored.</small>			

### AGENDA FOR CAMPUS SECURITY MEETING

#### Sign-in Sheet

- ✓ All personnel in attendance must sign-in

#### Welcome

- ✓ Purpose of the Meeting – To Review the Requirements Regarding Intruder Detection and Campus Security.

#### Intruder Detection

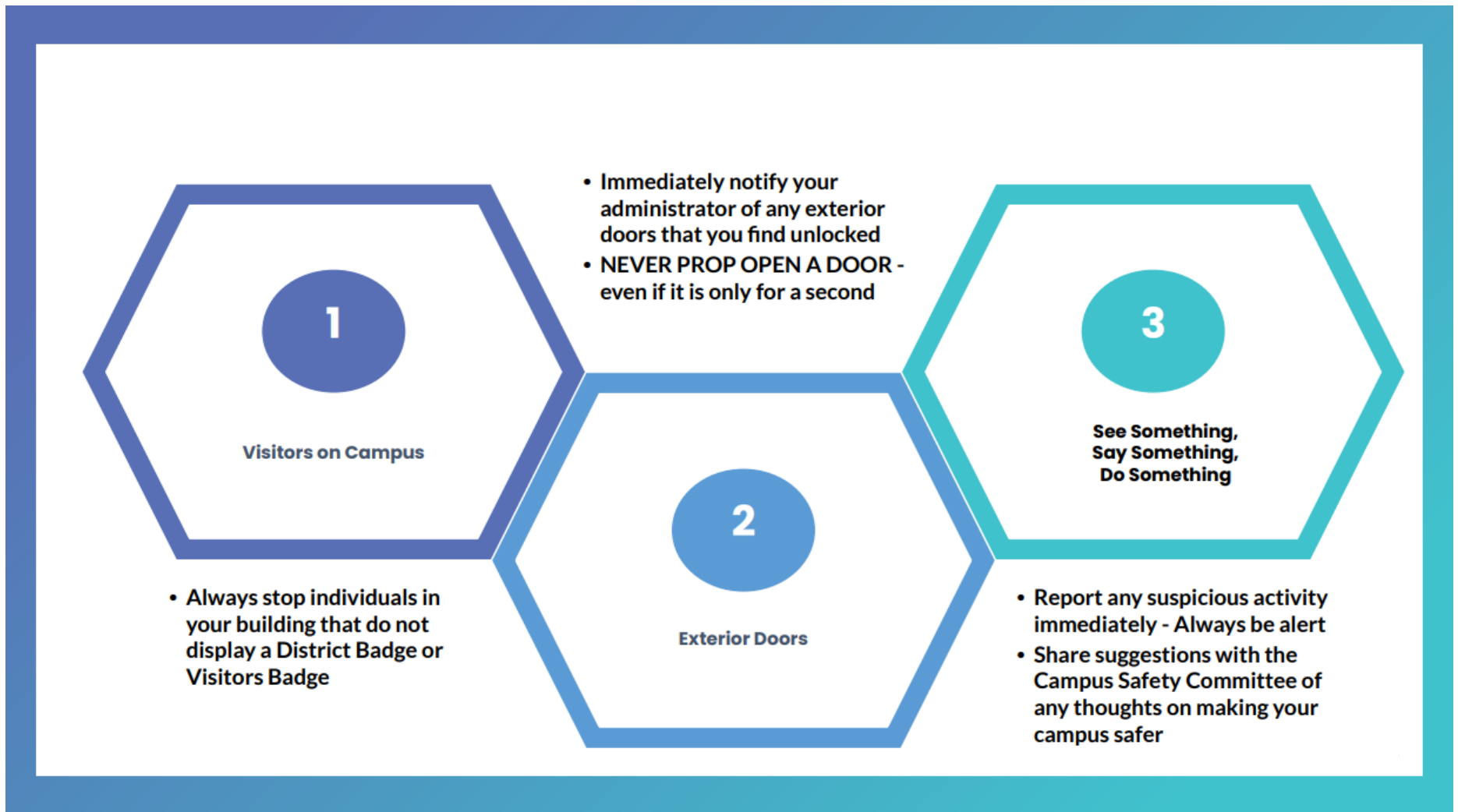
- ✓ All visitors must enter through the campus' secured entry point
- ✓ Immediately report any suspicious activity to the Project Management Team
- ✓ Always be alert – See Something, Say Something, Do Something
- ✓ Stop any individuals in your building who do not display a District Badge or Visitor Badge and escort them to the main office.

#### Propped Doors and Secured Areas

- ✓ **NEVER** prop open a door for any reason
- ✓ All exterior doors must remain locked at all times
- ✓ All interior doors leading into construction areas must remain locked at all times
- ✓ Portable doors are considered exterior doors and must be locked at all times
- ✓ Immediately notify the Project Management Team of any exterior door that you may find unlocked or propped open

#### Questions and Answers:

**Note for General Contractors:** All locked doors leading into construction areas and/or restricted pathways must be communicated with the campus Principal and Fire Marshal to ensure restrictions and/or physical alterations of any kind do not conflict with Campus Emergency Action Plans, Emergency Egress and NFPA 101 Life Safety Codes.



## Safety Meeting Sign-in Sheet

DATE: \_\_\_\_\_ PROJECT: \_\_\_\_\_

CONTRACTOR: \_\_\_\_\_

Foreman's Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Safety Representative: \_\_\_\_\_

TOPICS DISCUSSED: \_\_\_\_\_

NAME – PRINTED	SIGNATURE	COMPANY
1.		
2.		
3.		
4.		
5.		
6.		
7.		
8.		
9.		
10.		
11.		
12.		
13.		

## Geotechnical Soil Sampling Safety Guidelines

General Information: \_\_\_\_\_  
School Name and Org #: \_\_\_\_\_  
Bond Program Manager: \_\_\_\_\_  
Company Name: \_\_\_\_\_ Supervisor: \_\_\_\_\_ Cell Phone \_\_\_\_\_  
Scope: \_\_\_\_\_ Boring Map Location Attached: [circle] YES or NO  
Mobilization Date: \_\_\_\_\_ Demobilization Date: \_\_\_\_\_ Work Hours: \_\_\_\_\_

### Minimum Drilling Safety Guidelines:

1. ALL crew members must be properly badged.
2. Schedule site access through your Dallas ISD Project Manager
3. [If Applicable] Pre-approved signed forms for custodial overtime may apply. Please confirm with your Dallas ISD PM.
4. During arrival, check in at the front office with badge displayed in the upper body and face cover.
5. Drill Rig must be barricaded and NOT be operated in occupied school areas.
6. Before any excavation is started, should contact 811 DIG-TESS for confirmation, Ground penetrating radar (GPR), review of existing plans, and any other reasonable efforts shall be made to determine if any underground utilities (i.e.: power lines, water lines, fuel lines, etc.) are present within the boundaries of the proposed work area. As the excavation work approaches the location of any known utilities, the lines shall be uncovered, using extreme caution not to disturb the lines, and adequate measures shall be taken to protect the lines from damage while the work progresses.
7. Any disturbed areas must be returned to existing and safe condition prior to departure.
8. Damage to property-Injuries Beyond First Aid must be immediately reported to Alvaro Meza 214-435-2204 and your Dallas ISD Project Manager.

**NOTE:** This Document is intended to provide a working, uniform minimal level of program guidelines to assist or provide direction to the Contractors. This Document is not intended to replace the need for each Contractor to establish and maintain a proper Illness and Injury Prevention Program as required by the Department of Labor, Occupational Safety and Health Act (29 CFR 1926 and 29 CFR 1910) and the State of Texas.

## Inclement Weather Plan of Action

### General Guidelines

PMFs are required to notify and coordinate with the GCs to take proactive steps during inclement weather events. •Construction Services may schedule a coordination call prior to any severe weather event with PMF (in a group call or individually- These calls or meetings may be on a regular or impromptu basis as needed) to share information about projects with medium/high probability of damage to property or interruption to school operations. The intent is to provide Construction Services a complete situational awareness of a school's readiness for return of students, and to eliminate or mitigate risk to DISD's facilities.

### PRIOR to Inclement Weather Event:

For projects under construction PMF to provide a report to DISD Construction Services any conditions that may impact campus occupancy or function.

Coordination with DISD Maintenance (Managers and Supervisors) and Custodial Services (campus, and supervisors), along with Principals is **REQUIRED**. Be prepared to report this coordination.

### POST Inclement Weather Event:

- PMFs to conduct a field verification and begin the mitigation phase.
- Work with contractors and appropriate maintenance personnel to create a recovery plan
- Provide Construction Services a real time update - by campus- on said issue(s)•Reporting shall continue as needed till mitigation is completed.

### Return of Students and Staff

•PMF Leadership or designee to coordinate with campus Principal and Facility Supervisor. iffeasible, PMF Project Manager will be on site for that morning to confirm good working schooloperations.

### Sample Reporting

- 013-FD Roosevelt – No issues to report
- 013-FD Roosevelt- 2. Campus has an issue – Provide detailed description and mitigation.

The intent of this document is to establish a minimum level of proactive steps/reporting, but not be completely inflexible.

After Action Reviews or a Root Cause Analysis may be required. Information should be captured to support these events

**[End of Document]**



## DISD 2020 Bond – General Contractor

### Step One: Set up your project account with Field Control Analytics formerly FC Construction Services

- Visit [www.fcbackground.com/clientsignup/](http://www.fcbackground.com/clientsignup/)  
(Internet Explorer 5.0 or higher required)
- Enter your Project Pass Code: **DI20SC21**

**EXISTING CUSTOMERS:** You will be required to provide login credentials to complete signup. If you do not know your login credentials contact Customer Support @ [customer.support@fieldca.com](mailto:customer.support@fieldca.com)

You will be required to provide the following information. You will be unable to complete signup without all.

- Billing address and contact information
- Contact information for all authorized users
- Name and contact information for the company that hired you (Prime Contractor)
- Credit card information for payment

### ALLOW TWO FULL BUSINESS DAYS FOR ACCOUNT SETUP COMPLETION AND NOTICE TO CLIENT/EMPLOYER

### Step Two: Initiate Project Drug Testing, Background Check, and Badging

**DISD 2020 Bond - \$74.50** (see Pricing Agreement for details)

**\*Replacement Badge Fee – \$25.00 \* Enrollment Fee - \$50.00\***

1. Upon setup completion, contractor receives **Web Instructions** to download/print **Consent Document**.
2. Consent Document. (\$25.00 handling fee for employees without a properly authorized Consent Document. No appointment necessary and maps are available online.)
3. Most results are available within one business day, but may take up to three. Authorized users will receive an e-mail notification when report results are available.
4. DISD badges will be printed and available for pickup at the facility selected during project setup.

### Other Important Information

- ♦ FCA notifies your General Contractor of all unpaid invoices.
- ♦ If a worker fails a drug test, he/she will not be authorized to work for the duration of the project.

Background checks and badging requires one of the following identification sources of a person:

- Current U.S. Driver's License
- U.S. Birth Certificate (along with photo id)
- Current US Passport
- U.S. Citizenship Naturalization
- Foreign Passport
- U.S. issued photo ID Card
- Temporary identification card
- Resident Visa
- Employment Visa

**Acceptable forms of ID do not include the non-US issued Matricula Card.**

### DISD 2020 Bond Badge Qualifications:

- Negative drug test result
- No felony convictions, no open or pending felony cases for crimes against a minor (no time limit)
- No felony convictions, no open or pending felony cases for crimes against a person (25 years)
- No felony convictions, no open or pending felony cases (7 years)
- No misdemeanor crimes (see misdemeanor offenses below). Misdemeanor records are limited to the previous 7-years.
- No registered sex offenders
- No outstanding warrants for crimes that would disqualify an individual from receiving a badge



Misdemeanor Offenses Include the following:

Possession of a Prohibited Weapon  
Unlawful Carrying Weapon  
Purchase/Furnish Alcohol to Minor  
Assault Causes Bodily Injury  
Terroristic Threat  
Enticing a Child  
Harboring Runaway Child  
Violation of a Protective Order  
Criminal Mischief  
Burglary  
Shoplifting  
Theft  
Larceny  
Fraud  
Forgery  
Passing Forgery Writing  
Fleeing from Police Officer  
Leaving Scene of Accident  
Failure to Stop and Give Information  
Fail to Identify Giving False/Fictitious Info  
Resisting Arrest  
Evading Arrest/Detention  
Escape from Custody  
Interference with Public Duties  
Disorderly Conduct  
Interference with Emergency Call  
Harassment  
Prostitution

**FCA Client Support Team**

Phone: (972) 404-4479

Monday - Friday 6:00am – 6:00pm CST

[customer.support@fieldca.com](mailto:customer.support@fieldca.com)





## DISD 2020 Bond – Professional Services

### Step One: Set up your project account with Field Control Analytics formerly FC Construction Services

- Visit [www.fcbackground.com/clientsignup/](http://www.fcbackground.com/clientsignup/)  
(Internet Explorer 5.0 or higher required)
- Enter your Project Pass Code: **DI20PS21**

**EXISTING CUSTOMERS:** You will be required to provide login credentials to complete signup. If you do not know your login credentials contact Customer Support @ [customer.support@fieldca.com](mailto:customer.support@fieldca.com)

You will be required to provide the following information. You will be unable to complete signup without all.

- Billing address and contact information
- Contact information for all authorized users
- Name and contact information for the company that hired you (Prime Contractor)
- Credit card information for payment

### ALLOW TWO FULL BUSINESS DAYS FOR ACCOUNT SETUP COMPLETION AND NOTICE TO CLIENT/EMPLOYER

#### Step Two: Initiate Project Drug Testing, Background Check, and Badging

**DISD 2020 Bond - \$74.50** (see Pricing Agreement for details)

**\*Replacement Badge Fee – \$25.00 \* Enrollment Fee - \$50.00\***

1. Upon setup completion, contractor receives **Web Instructions** to download/print **Consent Document**.
2. Consent Document. (\$25.00 handling fee for employees without a properly authorized Consent Document. No appointment necessary and maps are available online.)
3. Most results are available within one business day, but may take up to three. Authorized users will receive an e-mail notification when report results are available.
4. DISD badges will be printed and available for pickup at the facility selected during project setup.

#### Other Important Information

- ♦ FCA notifies your General Contractor of all unpaid invoices.
- ♦ If a worker fails a drug test, he/she will not be authorized to work for the duration of the project.

Background checks and badging requires one of the following identification sources of a person:

- Current U.S. Driver's License
- U.S. Birth Certificate (along with photo id)
- Current US Passport
- U.S. Citizenship Naturalization
- Foreign Passport
- U.S. issued photo ID Card
- Temporary identification card
- Resident Visa
- Employment Visa

**Acceptable forms of ID do not include the non-US issued Matricula Card.**

#### DISD 2020 Bond Badge Qualifications:

- Negative drug test result
- No felony convictions, no open or pending felony cases for crimes against a minor (no time limit)
- No felony convictions, no open or pending felony cases for crimes against a person (25 years)
- No felony convictions, no open or pending felony cases (7 years)
- No misdemeanor crimes (see misdemeanor offenses below). Misdemeanor records are limited to the previous 7-years.
- No registered sex offenders
- No outstanding warrants for crimes that would disqualify an individual from receiving a badge

Misdemeanor Offenses Include the following:

Possession of a Prohibited Weapon  
Unlawful Carrying Weapon  
Purchase/Furnish Alcohol to Minor  
Assault Causes Bodily Injury  
Terroristic Threat  
Enticing a Child  
Harboring Runaway Child  
Violation of a Protective Order  
Criminal Mischief  
Burglary  
Shoplifting  
Theft  
Larceny  
Fraud  
Forgery  
Passing Forgery Writing  
Fleeing from Police Officer  
Leaving Scene of Accident  
Failure to Stop and Give Information  
Fail to Identify Giving False/Fictitious Info  
Resisting Arrest  
Evading Arrest/Detention  
Escape from Custody  
Interference with Public Duties  
Disorderly Conduct  
Interference with Emergency Call  
Harassment  
Prostitution

**FCA Client Support Team**

Phone: (972) 404-4479

Monday - Friday 6:00am – 6:00pm CST

[customer.support@fieldca.com](mailto:customer.support@fieldca.com)





## DISD 2020 Bond - Subcontractor

### Step One: Set up your project account with Field Control Analytics formerly FC Construction Services

- Visit [www.fcbackground.com/clientsignup/](http://www.fcbackground.com/clientsignup/)  
(Internet Explorer 5.0 or higher required)
- Enter your Project Pass Code: **DI20SC21**

**EXISTING CUSTOMERS:** You will be required to provide login credentials to complete signup. If you do not know your login credentials contact Customer Support @ [customer.support@fieldca.com](mailto:customer.support@fieldca.com)

You will be required to provide the following information. You will be unable to complete signup without all.

- Billing address and contact information
- Contact information for all authorized users
- Name and contact information for the company that hired you (Prime Contractor)
- Credit card information for payment

### ALLOW TWO FULL BUSINESS DAYS FOR ACCOUNT SETUP COMPLETION AND NOTICE TO CLIENT/EMPLOYER

### Step Two: Initiate Project Drug Testing, Background Check, and Badging

**DISD 2020 Bond - \$74.50** (see Pricing Agreement for details)

**\*Replacement Badge Fee - \$25.00 \* Enrollment Fee - \$50.00\***

1. Upon setup completion, contractor receives **Web Instructions** to download/print **Consent Document**.
2. Consent Document. (\$25.00 handling fee for employees without a properly authorized Consent Document. No appointment necessary and maps are available online.)
3. Most results are available within one business day, but may take up to three. Authorized users will receive an e-mail notification when report results are available.
4. DISD badges will be printed and available for pickup at the facility selected during project setup.

### Other Important Information

- ♦ FCA notifies your General Contractor of all unpaid invoices.
- ♦ If a worker fails a drug test, he/she will not be authorized to work for the duration of the project.

Background checks and badging requires one of the following identification sources of a person:

- Current U.S. Driver's License
- U.S. Birth Certificate (along with photo id)
- Current US Passport
- U.S. Citizenship Naturalization
- Foreign Passport
- U.S. issued photo ID Card
- Temporary identification card
- Resident Visa
- Employment Visa

**Acceptable forms of ID do not include the non-US issued Matricula Card.**

### DISD 2020 Bond Badge Qualifications:

- Negative drug test result
- No felony convictions, no open or pending felony cases for crimes against a minor (no time limit)
- No felony convictions, no open or pending felony cases for crimes against a person (25 years)
- No felony convictions, no open or pending felony cases (7 years)
- No misdemeanor crimes (see misdemeanor offenses below). Misdemeanor records are limited to the previous 7-years.
- No registered sex offenders
- No outstanding warrants for crimes that would disqualify an individual from receiving a badge

Misdemeanor Offenses Include the following:

Possession of a Prohibited Weapon  
Unlawful Carrying Weapon  
Purchase/Furnish Alcohol to Minor  
Assault Causes Bodily Injury  
Terroristic Threat  
Enticing a Child  
Harboring Runaway Child  
Violation of a Protective Order  
Criminal Mischief  
Burglary  
Shoplifting  
Theft  
Larceny  
Fraud  
Forgery  
Passing Forgery Writing  
Fleeing from Police Officer  
Leaving Scene of Accident  
Failure to Stop and Give Information  
Fail to Identify Giving False/Fictitious Info  
Resisting Arrest  
Evading Arrest/Detention  
Escape from Custody  
Interference with Public Duties  
Disorderly Conduct  
Interference with Emergency Call  
Harassment  
Prostitution

**FCA Client Support Team**

Phone: (972) 404-4479

Monday - Friday 6:00am – 6:00pm CST

[customer.support@fieldca.com](mailto:customer.support@fieldca.com)





## FCA EXPRESS - DALLAS SCREENING & BADGING FACILITY

### ADDRESS

12801 N. Stemmons Frwy.  
Ste. 807

Farmers Branch, TX 75234

Phone: 833.227.0637;  
option 2

Hours: 7:30am - 4:30pm

Monday - Friday

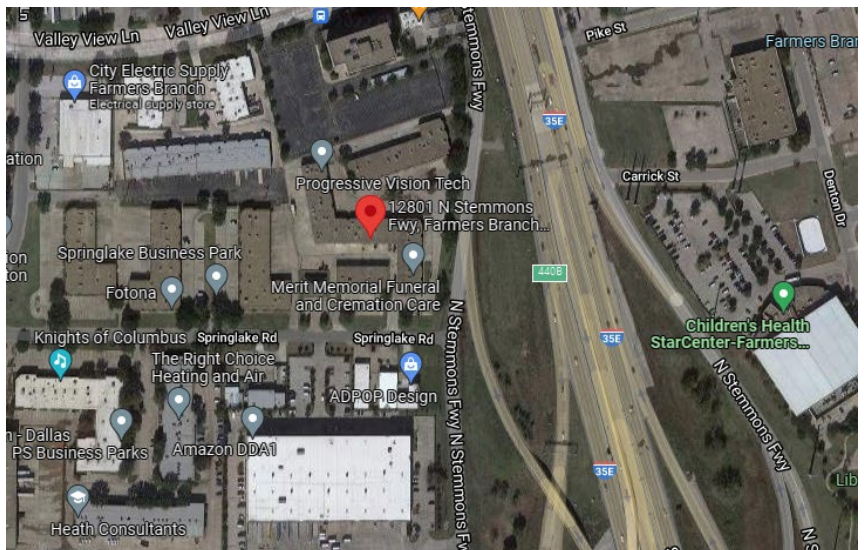
**OPENING FEBRUARY 14,  
2022**



Scan the QR  
code for  
instant  
directions!



Scan the QR  
code to  
contact us!



All FCA Express locations can process screens that require a background, drug test and badge.

[www.fieldcontrolanalytics.com](http://www.fieldcontrolanalytics.com) | 800-388-88827

## SECTION 01 10 00 – SUMMARY OF WORK

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 1.1 Related Documents

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 1.2 Summary

##### A. Section includes:

1. Project information
2. Work covered by Contract Documents
3. Phased construction
4. Access to site
5. Coordination with occupants
6. Work restrictions

##### B. Related Sections:

1. Division 00 Section 00 31 00 Available Project Information
2. Division 00 Section 00 31 18 School Operations Parameters Statement
3. Division 01 Section 01 50 00 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for limitations and procedures governing temporary use of Owner's facilities
4. Division 01 Section 01 52 14 "Temporary Facilities for Students" for specifications and procedures regarding the use of temporary swing space that the Contractor may furnish and install to accommodate the Work

#### 1.3 1.3 Project Information

- A. Refer to Section 00 31 00

#### 1.4 **Scope of Work.** The Work consists of:

Org 054 – Thomas C. Marsh Elementary School – Renovation

#### **Architectural**

1. New secure vestibule to be created including rearrangement of adjacent office spaces, inclusion of new storefront, rearrangement of doors, and inclusion of infrastructure for security equipment.
2. Replace exterior waterproofing/sealant joints, including at door and wall penetrations to eliminate leaks and condensation drainage damage.
3. Replace vinyl composite tile (VCT) flooring and base at 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> floor corridors per District Standards. 3<sup>rd</sup> floor is new and is to remain as-is.
4. Paint all previously painted interior surfaces. Repair/patch walls prior to painting (except at areas of renovation). Scope to include all areas of school.
5. Replace outdated exterior windows with new energy-efficient window assemblies. Refer to drawings for exact locations.
6. New way-finding site signage to be installed to meet DISD standards.
7. Replace damaged center mullion between gyms 123 and 124.
8. Replace mechanical room M3 door for code compliant access.

9. Repair damaged door hardware at exterior door to chiller.

### **Structural**

1. Misc. - Provide supplemental repairs as required for other scopes.

### **Mechanical**

1. Replace kitchen hood and fans.
2. Replace existing condenser piping, condenser pump, controls, and cooling tower in its entirety.
3. Remove and replace AHUs. Refer to drawings for exact locations and quantity. AHU 3 & 4 to be included as Add Alternate #8.
4. Replace fans, supply, roof mount, side wall mount, downblast, etc. Refer to drawings for exact locations and quantity.
5. Replace DX split system due to age and performance of existing equipment.
6. Replace IDF/MDF air conditioning. Refer to drawings for exact location and quantity.
7. Replace RTUs, refer to drawings for exact location and quantity. Existing controls are Distech and to remain as is. Scope to be included as Add Alternate #3.

### **Electrical**

1. Demo and replace existing fire alarm system. Scope to include entire school, including portables throughout site.
2. Install exterior lighting controls for new exterior lights. See E3 for reference.
3. Install exterior lighting with LED lighting. New lighting to be installed to meet code requirements and DISD standards.
4. Remove existing interior lighting controls and replace with new lighting controls will be installed to meet current standards in coordination with new interior LED lighting. Scope will also include occupancy sensors, dimming control of new LED lighting, and multi-zone switching. 3<sup>rd</sup> floor lighting to be listed as add alternate E4-Alt.
5. Replace interior lights with LED lighting. Scope includes approximately (1,565 fixtures) throughout school. Lighting to be replaced to meet current code requirements and DISD standards. 3<sup>rd</sup> floor listed as add alternate E5-Alt.
6. Replace intercom system.
7. Replace existing AV system for the Auditorium with a new system.

### **Electrical Safety & Security**

1. Provide TDG compliant security system at front entry including door buzzer, card readers, door contacts, and weapon's management system to secure reception and vestibule.

### **Plumbing**

1. Install new washer/dryer connections. Per DISD requests, the new dryer should be electric in lieu of gas.
2. Demo and replace sanitary sewer piping. Scope is limited to crawl spaces only, except at the kitchen.
3. Replace exterior hose bibs due to age and condition.
4. Inspect acid dilution tank, replace limestone media.
5. Install makeup water system for cooling tower to meet current DISD standards.
6. Install branch isolation valves for restrooms and kitchen to meet DISD requests and standards.
7. Replace (2) water fountains adjacent to the gymnasium spaces to meet current DISD standards. Includes installation of floor drains and bottle fillers. Scope to be included as Add Alternate #2.
8. Replace (2) additional water fountains throughout school, including floor drains and bottle fillers. Scope to be included as Add Alternate #5.
9. Replace piping from water meter back to the double check inside the building.
10. Replace domestic cold-water piping in the central plant with copper.
11. Replace sanitary sewer line from within the property line up to the building entrance.



**1.5 Multiple Project Site Representation for Bid Packages.** If multiple project sites are identified in the Work, the contractor shall employ and designate one qualified full-time Superintendent who shall oversee the performance on each individual project site within the bid package, for the duration of the project. Any deviation from this will need to be approved by DISD and the Program Manager.

**1.6 Schedule of Values for Bid Packages.** If multiple project sites are identified in the Work, the contractor shall provide one Schedule of Values for each project site attached to each application for payment. In addition, each school site shall have a separate schedule of values in the CSI format followed in the bid documents, identifying the labor and material components separately. Projects that have both Renovation and Addition scope shall have a sub-total for each of these two categories, within the Schedule of Values.

**1.7 Concurrent Construction for Bid Packages.** Work (additions and renovations) at each school site will be performed concurrently with the other school sites unless otherwise indicated by DISD.

**1.8 Phasing.** Since the school buildings will be in use during construction, the Work shall be conducted in such a manner as to not interrupt or disturb school activities. **THE PHASING PLANS ARE GUIDELINES AND ARE USED TO IDENTIFY A POSSIBLE APPROACH TO THE WORK. THE CONTRACTOR MAY SUBMIT A PHASING PLAN. ANY DEVIATION FROM THE SUGGESTED PLAN CONTAINED IN THE CONTRACT DOCUMENTS MUST BE APPROVED BY THE A/E, PROGRAM MANAGER, AND PRINCIPAL PRIOR TO IMPLEMENTATION.**

- A. Temporary classroom space (Swing Space) if needed, **shall be provided by the Contractor.** The Contractor will be responsible for all associated planning, permitting, scheduling, installation, removal, site restoration, coordination and costs associated with providing temporary space for classrooms. Temporary classroom space will be in accordance with Section 01 52 14 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES FOR STUDENTS.
- B. The Contractor may submit, as part of the proposal, optional phasing plans that can potentially save the District time and money.
- C. Some work may need to be performed after normal school operating hours, nights and weekends. A DISD representative must be present at the school during times that the Contractor is working at the school site. The Owner will incur overtime costs for DISD staff presence at the school site outside normal hours of school operation, including weekends and holidays. Such overtime costs incurred will be the financial responsibility of the General Contractor and will be credited to the Owner in a manner to be determined by the DISD and the Program Manager.
- D. Refer to the School Operations Parameter Statement Section for details of the regular working hours, holidays and procedures for custodial overtime, etc.
- E. Work cannot start in a particular Phase until students/staff have been relocated to the designated Swing Space (either in the existing building or in Temporary Buildings outside) or until there is an arrangement in place for alternate shift work involved.

1. Close coordination with the A/E, Program Manager, and the School Staff, will be required of the Contractor.

- F. Certain areas included in the Contractor's scope of work may contain furniture, boxes, etc. Protection of these contents is the responsibility of the Contractor.
- G. Refer to Construction Documents for additional Phasing information.

**1.9 HVAC and Water Treatment Requirements.** Contractor will coordinate with DISD for water treatment and HVAC maintenance. Please refer to the plumbing and mechanical specifications for the contractor's responsibilities related to these requirements.

**1.10 Phase Acceptance. Upon certification by the Contractor and recommendation of the A/E,** DISD will accept the Work of each individual phase as it is completed. Architectural acceptance shall be called "phase acceptance". The HVAC, electrical, plumbing and roofing systems will be accepted by DISD when the entire project has been completed; at that point, upon completion of all relevant contractual requirements, DISD will issue substantial completion. The contractor will operate and maintain the HVAC, electrical and plumbing systems that are a part of his scope of work until substantial completion. The contractor's warranty for any new HVAC, electrical, plumbing and roofing systems shall commence at substantial completion for each school project. The contractor will install new filters and record date of replacement on each filter upon substantial completion.

**1.11 Use of Technology for Project Management.** DISD will furnish information related to accessing web-enabled project management applications for this contract. DISD and the Program Manager will implement project management software, that will be easily accessible through the Internet. Contractor will cooperate with the Program Manager for the implementation and use of this tool.

Contractor will be required to create and post several types of documents into the web-enabled project management software via the Internet. Request for Information (RFIs) will be posted by the Contractor and responded to by the A/E(s) in the software via the Internet, thereby facilitating communication among all parties and expediting resolution of issues. A/E responses to RFIs will not be considered official and are still subject to revision until the Program Manager has approved the response in the software. Any meeting minutes and field reports required to be created by the Contractor or A/E(s) will be posted to the software. DISD and the Program Manager reserve the right to require additional documents to be entered into the software at their discretion.

**1.12 Permitting.** Contractors are responsible for the costs of acquiring the building permit at standard City of Dallas rates.

**PART 2 - 1.13 Storm Water Pollution Prevention Plan.** Once the Notice to Proceed has been issued, the Contractor is obligated to comply with the applicable municipalities and applicable SWPPP codes and protocol. The Contractor assumes full responsibility for any complaints, citations, maintenance and complete management of the SWPPP plan including any and all documentation. For new schools with demolition scope by a separate contractor, Contractor shall coordinate with the separate contractor for a seamless transfer / transition of an existing SWPPP. Contractor will then submit all documentation to the District at closeout.

**PART 3 - 1.14 Construction Specification Index.** All construction documentation will follow the Construction Specification Index format followed by the construction bid documents.

**1.15** The contractor shall tag locations of all equipment within the scope of work by securing a plastic tag on the appropriate ceiling grid locations. This will assist easy identification of the equipment to DISD maintenance staff. The contractor will install stickers on all equipment provided indicating the warranty dates/periods and the contact information.

PART 4 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 5 - PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

5.1

**END OF SECTION 01 10 00**

## SECTION 01 21 00 - ALLOWANCES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements governing allowances.
  - 1. Certain items are specified in the Contract Documents by allowances. Allowances have been established in lieu of additional requirements and to defer selection of actual materials and equipment to a later date when direction will be provided to the Contractor. Refer to the AIA 201 General conditions for additional requirements concerning allowances,
  - 2. All lump-sum and Owner Controlled Allowances are within the Contract Sum, and shall be covered by the bonds, insurance, general conditions, overhead, profit and all other costs so that the totals represented by the Allowances are available without additional charge or cost to the Owner.
- B. Types of allowances include the following:
  - 1. Lump-sum allowances.
  - 2. Owner Controlled Contingency allowances.
- C. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 00, File 00 41 11 - Proposal Form - Base Bid.
  - 2. Division 01, File 01 22 00 - Unit Prices (for procedures for using unit prices)
  - 3. Divisions 02 through 49 (or as applicable) Sections for items of Work covered by allowances.

#### 1.3 SELECTION AND PURCHASE

- A. At the earliest practical date after award of the Contract, Contractor shall advise Architect and Program Manager of the date when final selection and purchase of each product or system described by an allowance must be completed to avoid delaying the Work.
- B. At Architect's or Program Manager's request, obtain proposals for each allowance for use in making final selections. Include recommendations that are relevant to performing the Work.
- C. Once the proposal is approved by the Owner, purchase products and systems selected by Architect from the designated supplier.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit proposals for purchase of products or systems included in allowances, in the form specified for Allowance Expenditure Request Authorization (AERA).

- B. Submit invoices or delivery slips to show actual quantities of materials delivered to the site for use in fulfillment of each allowance.
- C. Submit time sheets and other documentation to show labor time and cost for installation of allowance items that include installation as part of the allowance.
- D. Coordinate and process submittals for allowance items in same manner as for other portions of the Work.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate allowance items with other portions of the Work. Furnish templates as required to coordinate installation.

#### 1.6 ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials ordered by Owner or selected by Architect under allowance and shall include freight, insurance, and delivery to Project site.
- B. Unless otherwise indicated, **and excluding the Security Scope**, Contractor's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.

#### C. **Security Scope Allowance Breakdown**

- 1. Security Allowance breakdown will be required only for the Board Approved #1 ranked General Contractor during the negotiation period.
- 2. Security Allowance total amount shall include Digi/Convergint turnkey scope along with Contractor Fee, Bonds, and Insurance as follows, (for funding source identification):
  - a. **Devices**
    - I. Campus Security Cameras
    - II. Keyless Entry Card Readers
    - III. Video Intercom
  - b. **Infrastructure:** required to install all devices
  - c. **General Contractor Managed Fee**
  - d. **Bonds and Insurance** associated with the total amount of security allowance

- D. **The General Contractor is responsible for the coordination and management of all subs and vendors (Digi/Convergint) to ensure the turnkey security scope is completed at the same time as the rest of the scope of the project.**
- E. **Security scope permit is under GC/Sub/Vendor as a trade permit and should be green tagged at the end of the project similarly to other trade permits.**
- F. **The General contractor is required follow the submittal and quality controls as required by the contract documents.**

#### 1.7 ADJUSTMENT OF ALLOWANCES

- A. Allowance Adjustment: To adjust allowance amounts, prepare a proposal based on the difference between purchase amount and the allowance.
  - 1. Include installation costs in purchase amount only where indicated as part of the allowance.
  - 2. If requested, prepare explanation and documentation to substantiate distribution of overhead costs and other margins claimed.
  - 3. Owner reserves the right to establish the quantity of work-in-place by independent quantity survey, measure, or count.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine products covered by an allowance promptly on delivery for damage or defects. Return damaged or defective products to manufacturer for replacement.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Coordinate materials and their installation for each allowance with related materials and installations to ensure that each allowance item is completely integrated and interfaced with related work.
- B. Schedule of Allowances is included in section 00 41 11

**END OF SECTION 01 21 00**

## **SECTION 01 22 00 - UNIT PRICES**

### **PART 1 - GENERAL**

#### **1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### **1.2 SUMMARY**

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for unit prices.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 00 Section 00 41 12 Proposal Form – Alternates and Unit Pricing.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Contract Modification Procedures" for procedures for submitting and handling Change Orders.
  - 3. Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements" for general testing and inspecting requirements (File: 01 40 00)

#### **1.3 DEFINITIONS**

- A. Unit price is an amount incorporated in the Agreement, applicable during the duration of the Work as a price per unit of measurement for materials, equipment, or services, or a portion of the Work, added to or deducted from the Contract Sum by appropriate modification, if the scope of Work or estimated quantities of Work required by the Contract Documents are either increased or decreased.

#### **1.4 PROCEDURES**

- A. Unit prices include all necessary material, plus cost for delivery, installation, insurance, overhead, and profit.
- B. Measurement and Payment: Refer to individual Specification Sections for work that requires establishment of unit prices. Methods of measurement and payment for unit prices are specified in those Sections.
- C. If the quantities of the items listed in the Schedule of Unit Prices are increased, the Unit Prices set forth by the Contractor in Section 00 41 12 shall apply to such increased quantities. Unit Prices for adjusting the Contract Sum for less work or material installation will be 95% of these amounts.

### **PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)**

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)**

#### **3.1 SCHEDULE OF UNIT PRICES**

Refer to section 00 41 12 for Schedule of Unit Prices.

**END OF SECTION 01 22 00**

## SECTION 01 23 00 - ALTERNATES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for alternates.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Alternate: An amount proposed by Proposers and stated on the Proposal Form for certain work defined in the Proposal Requirements that may be added to or deducted from the base bid amount if Owner decides to accept a corresponding change either in the amount of construction to be completed or in the products, materials, equipment, systems, or installation methods described in the Contract Documents.
  - 1. Alternates described in this Section are part of the Work only if enumerated in the Agreement.
  - 2. The cost or credit for each alternate is the total addition to or deduction from the Contract Sum to incorporate alternate into the Work. No other adjustments are made to the Contract Sum. Pricing for alternates may not be submitted or listed in the form of an allowance amount on the proposal form.

#### 1.4 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Modify or adjust affected adjacent work as necessary to completely integrate work of the alternate into Project.
  - 1. Include as part of each alternate, miscellaneous devices, accessory objects, and similar items incidental to or required for a complete installation whether or not indicated as part of alternate.
  - 2. Cost listed for each Alternate includes cost of related coordination, modification or adjustment.
- B. Notification: Immediately following award of the Contract, Contractor shall prepare and distribute to each entity or person to be involved in the performance of the Alternate Work, a notification of the status of each Alternate scheduled herein. Indicate which alternates have been accepted, rejected, or deferred for later consideration. Include a complete description of negotiated modifications to alternates if any.
- C. Execute accepted alternates under the same conditions as other work of the Contract.
- D. Contractor shall be responsible for any changes in the Work affected by acceptance of Alternates. Claims for additional costs or time extensions resulting from changes to the Work as a result of the Owner's election of any or all Alternates will not be allowed.



- E. Schedule: A schedule of alternates is included at the end of this Section. Specification Sections referenced in schedule contain requirements for materials necessary to achieve the work described under each alternate.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATES

- A. Refer to section 00 41 12 for Schedule of Alternates

**END OF SECTION 01 23 00**

## SECTION 01 25 00 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Alternates" for products selected under an alternate.
  - 3. Division 01 Section "Product Requirements" for requirements for submitting comparable product submittals for products by listed manufacturers.
  - 4. Divisions 02 through 49 Sections for specific requirements and limitations for substitutions.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.
  - 1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
  - 2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor or Owner that are not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Contractor and Owner.

#### 1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Substitution Requests: Submit five (5) copies of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include related Specification Section number and title, Drawing numbers and titles and complete documentation for substitution. Include the following information with each request:
  - 1. Certification by the Contractor to the effect that, in the Contractor's opinion, after thorough evaluation, the proposed substitution will result in work that in every significant respect is equal to or better than the work required by the Contract Documents, and that it will perform adequately in the application indicated.
    - a. Include in a certification the Contractor's waiver of right to additional payment or time, which may subsequently be necessary because of the failure of the substitution to perform adequately.
  - 2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:
    - a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation cannot be provided, if applicable.

- b. Coordination information, including a list of changes or modifications needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
  - c. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitution with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable specification section. Significant qualities may include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.
  - d. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
  - e. Samples, where applicable or requested.
  - f. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
  - g. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners.
  - h. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
  - i. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project, from IBC.
  - j. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitution with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
  - k. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any.
3. Approval: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within a reasonable amount time from receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will recommend to the Program Manager acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within a reasonable amount of time from receipt of all required documentation. Program Manager will recommend to the District acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within a reasonable amount of time from receipt of all required documentation. Upon recommendation from the Program Manager, the District will provide acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within a reasonable amount of time from receipt of all required documentation.
- a. Forms of Acceptance: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work with Program Manager and Owner written approval.
  - b. Rejection will include a statement giving reason for rejection.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

## 1.6 PROCEDURES

- A. Coordination: Modify or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.
- B. The Owner may not consider the request if the Contractor cannot provide the product or method because of failure to pursue work promptly or coordinate activities properly.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SUBSTITUTIONS

Approval process for both types of substitutions shall be as described above.

A. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately upon discovery of need for change, but not later than fifteen (15) days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.

1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

- a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
- b. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- c. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
- d. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
- e. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
- f. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
- g. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
- h. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

B. Substitutions for Convenience: Architect will consider requests for substitution if received within twenty (20) days after the Notice to Proceed. Requests received after that time may be considered or rejected at discretion of Architect, only when there is an advantage to the Owner. The Owner may override rejections made by the Architect and request that the Program Managers make a determination as to whether the substitution shall be considered by the Architect.

1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect will return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:

- a. Requested substitution offers Owner a substantial advantage in cost, time, energy conservation, or other considerations, after deducting additional responsibilities Owner must assume. Owner's additional responsibilities may include compensation to Architect for redesign and evaluation services, increased cost of other construction by Owner, and similar considerations.
- b. Requested substitution does not require extensive revisions to the Contract Documents.
- c. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
- d. Substitution request is fully documented and properly submitted.
- e. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
- f. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
- g. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
- h. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
- i. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.

- j. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.
- C. System Substitution: No changes should be anticipated in major building system types or approved manufactures in pricing of schedule; the Owner has standardized materials in place in existing buildings, and will not change for the convenience of the contractor.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

**END OF SECTION 01 25 00**

## SECTION 01 29 00 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Provisions established within the General, Supplementary and Other Conditions of the Contract, Division 1 – General Requirements, and Drawings are collectively applicable to this Section.

#### 1.02 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Procedures for preparation and submittal of Application for Payment.

#### 1.03 RELATED SECTIONS/DOCUMENTS

- A. General Conditions: Progress Payment, and Final Payment.
- B. Section 01340 – Shop Drawings, Product Data and Samples
- C. Section 01370 – Schedule of Values

#### 1.04 FORMAT

- A. AIA G702 – Application and Certificate for Payment
- B. For continuation sheet, use AIA G703 in format at Section 01 29 73 for schedule of values.

#### 1.05 PREPARATION OF APPLICATIONS

- A. Type required information or use media printout.
- B. Execute certification by authorized officer.
- C. Use data on accepted Schedule of Values. Provide dollar value in each column for each line item for portion of Work performed and for products.
- D. List each authorized Change Order as an extension on continuation sheet, listing Change Order number and dollar amount as for original item of Work.
- E. Prepare Application for Final Payment as specified by Program Manager.
- F. Prepare one application with a schedule of values for each school with a breakdown in the CSI format followed by the bid documents.
- G. Projects that have both Renovation and Addition scope shall have a sub-total for each of these two categories, within the Schedule of Values.

#### 1.06 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. Schedule meeting (20) days prior to submitting first pay request, to review schedule with Architect, and Project Manager.
- B. Submit one (1) original copy of each Application for Payment at times stipulated in Agreement.
- C. Submit under transmittal letter.

D. Payment Period: Submit at intervals stipulated in the Agreement.

#### 1.07 SUBSTANTIATING DATA

- A. When Architect requires substantiating information, submit data justifying line item amounts in questions. On Owner controlled allowance items, submit actual invoices from supplier of product or service.
- B. Provide one (1) copy of data with cover letter for each copy of submittal. Show Application number and date, and line item by number and description.

#### 1.08 FORMAT AND SUBMITTAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Set-up format and submittal requirements include but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Contractor must use AIA 702 and AIA 703 forms for Application for Payment.
  - b. All values should be taken to the hundredth (penny).
  - c. All items must be broken down by school, by addition/renovation (where applicable). This break down must match the breakdown as specified in the GC Contract or established with the Program Manager.
  - d. All items must be organized by the CSI division.
  - e. All items must be broken down by material and labor.
  - f. All applicable CSI divisions must be sub-totaled.
  - g. Each addition/renovation (where applicable) and school must be sub-totaled.
  - h. The Owner's Contingency Allowance (O.C.A.) should occupy one line item at the bottom of each addition/renovation and match the amount specified in the GC contract. This line item should be separated from any other CSI division.
  - i. All other contract allowances (pre-bid or post-bid) should be specified per the GC contract and included in CSI division 1.
  - j. Contractor must include a summary by school, by addition/renovation (where applicable), at the end of AIA 703.
  - k. General Conditions, P&P Bonds, Insurance, Fee, Building Permit, and Mobilization must be broken out and included in CSI division 1.
- B. Post-set-up format and submittal requirements include but are not limited to the following:
  - a. Contractor may not change the "scheduled values" after approval of the Schedule of Values (SOV) by the A/E, PM, and DISD (at first Application for Payment).
  - b. Include DISD P.O. number on AIA 702.
  - c. Include DISD P.O. number in application number. For example, "222123-3" would be the third Application for Payment for P.O. 222123.
  - d. Certified by A/E.
  - e. Previous invoice totals match previous invoice.
  - f. Attach fully executed signature page when billing for any DISD-approved CAEAs.
  - g. Attach fully executed signature page when billing for any DISD-approved AERAs.
  - h. Attach fully executed signature page when billing for any DISD-approved CAELs.
  - i. Attach fully executed signature page when billing for any DISD-approved Change Orders.
  - j. Attach an M/WBE Pay Activity Report, signed or acknowledged by e-mail or waiver by all minority subcontractors. (Acknowledgment must include amount paid during current period.)
  - k. Attach all Custodian Overtime Approval forms for the billing period, with a summary of OT hours to date for the project.
  - l. Attach a complete project schedule for each project, updated for the billing period, with substantial completion dates per GC contract.
  - m. Attach a Title Transfer Form insurance/bonding documents for storage facility for any material stored off-site, per GC contract.
  - n. Attach "GC Application for Payment Review & Sign-Off" with GC signature signifying review of all Application for Payment elements.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

**END OF SECTION 01 29 00**



---

## **SECTION 01 29 73 - SCHEDULE OF VALUES**

### **PART 1 – GENERAL**

#### **1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS**

- A. Provisions established within the General, Supplementary and Other Conditions of the Contract, Division 1 – General Requirements, and the Drawings are collectively applicable to this Section.

#### **1.02 REQUIREMENTS INCLUDED**

- A. Procedures for preparation and submittal of Schedule of Values.

#### **1.03 RELATED SECTIONS/DOCUMENTS**

- A. General Conditions.
- B. Section 01 29 00 – Payment Procedures.

#### **1.04 FORMAT**

- A. Print schedule on AIA Documents G703 – Continuation Sheet for Application and Certificate for Payment.
- B. Follow Table of Contents of Project Manual for listing components parts. Identify each line item by number and title of major Specifications Section.

#### **1.05 CONTENT**

- A. Using CSI format, each school shall have a separate schedule of values for Renovation Work and for Addition Work, as applicable.
- B. In CSI format, list installed value of each major item of Work and each subcontracted item of Work as a separate line item to serve as a basis for computing values for Progress Payments. Do NOT Round off values to nearest dollar. All values should be taken to the hundredth (penny).
- C. In CSI format, for each major subcontract, list material and labor of that subcontract as separate line items.
- D. List Owner Controlled Contingency Allowance and other allowances with the specified monetary amount for each allowance in separate divisions.
- E. Contractor to use separate lines for bonds, insurance, temporary facilities and controls, superintendence, and mobilization. Each item shall include pro rata portion of overhead and profit.
- F. The sum of the values listed shall equal total Contract Sum.

#### **1.06 SUBMITTAL**

- 
- A. Submit electronic copy of Schedule of Values within ten (10) days of award of contract and prior to Pre-Construction Meeting.
  - B. Transmit under Architect accepted form transmittal letter. Identify Project by title and number.
  - C. Secure the A/E and Program Manager's (PM) review of the Schedule of Values prior to submitting the first Pay Application.
  - D. Limit amount of items on the Schedule of Values not to exceed \$25,000, unless approved by the Architect and the Program Manager.
  - E. Break all major equipment costs into equipment and materials/labor at a minimum.

1.07 SUBSTANTIATING DATA

- A. When the A/E or the PM requires substantiating information, submit data justifying line item amounts in question.
- B. Provide one (1) copy of data with cover letter for each copy of Pay Application. Show Pay Application number and date and line item by number and description.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 – EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION – 01 29 73

## SECTION 01 31 00 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. General project coordination procedures.
  - 2. Administrative and supervisory personnel.
  - 3. Requests for Information (RFIs).
  - 4. Project meetings.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Construction Progress Documentation" for preparing and submitting Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for coordinating closeout of the Contract.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. RFI: Request from Owner, Architect, or Contractor seeking information from each other during construction.

#### 1.4 COORDINATION

- A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations, included in different Sections that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.
  - 1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain the best results where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.
  - 2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
  - 3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.
- B. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
  - 2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
  - 3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
  - 4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
  - 5. Progress meetings.

6. Pre-Installation conferences.
7. Project closeout activities.
8. Startup and adjustment of systems.
9. Shutdown requests
10. Abatement coordination
11. Owner inspections
12. Training

#### 1.5 KEY PERSONNEL

- A. Key Personnel Names: Within ten (10) days of starting construction operations, submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses and telephone numbers, including home, office, and cellular telephone numbers and email addresses. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as standbys in the absence of individuals assigned to Project.
1. Post copies of list in project meeting room, in temporary field office, and by each temporary telephone. Keep list current at all times.

#### 1.6 REQUESTS FOR INFORMATION (RFIs)

- A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI in the form specified using the District-specified electronic project management software.
1. Architect will return RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor with no response.
  2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner so as to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.
- B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:
1. Project name.
  2. Project number.
  3. Date.
  4. Name of Contractor.
  5. Name of Architect.
  6. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
  7. RFI subject.
  8. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
  9. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  10. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
  11. If solution(s) impacts the Contract Time, Construction Documents or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI. Select importance category from pull down menu.
  12. Include e-mail notification to the Architect, Program Manager and District Project Manager for all RFI's.
  13. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.
    - a. Include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments on attached sketches.

- C. RFI Forms: Software-generated form generated using District-specified electronic project management software with substantially the same content as indicated above.
- D. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow fourteen (14) working days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.
  - 1. The following RFIs will be returned without action:
    - a. Requests for approval of submittals.
    - b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
    - c. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
    - d. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
    - e. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
    - f. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.
  - 2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt of additional information.
  - 3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum will be administered per the general conditions of contract.
    - a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect and Program Manager in writing within seven (7) days of receipt of the RFI response.
- E. On receipt of Architect's action, update the RFI log and immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect and Program Manager within seven (7) days if Contractor disagrees with response.
- F. RFI Log: Prepare, maintain, and submit on a weekly basis a log of RFI's organized by the RFI number. The log should be generated using the District-specified electronic project management software and should contain the following basic information:
  - 1. Project name.
  - 2. Name and address of Contractor.
  - 3. Name and address of Architect.
  - 4. RFI number including RFIs that were dropped and not submitted.
  - 5. RFI description.
  - 6. Date the RFI was submitted.
  - 7. Date Architect's response was received.
  - 8. Identification of related Field Order, Work Change Directive, and Proposal Request, as appropriate.

## 1.7 PROJECT MEETINGS

- A. Preconstruction Conference: Architect will schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference at the earliest possible date after the execution of the Agreement and before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner, PM and Architect.
  - 1. Purpose of the conference will be to review responsibilities and personnel assignments.
  - 2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, PM, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor, Contractor's Project Manager and its superintendents; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  - 3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:
    - a. Introductions
    - b. Submission of Post Proposal Information if any outstanding

- c. Tentative Construction schedule.
  - d. Safety
    - 1) Emergency Contact List
    - 2) First aid.
    - 3) Site Security.
    - 4) Badging requirements
  - e. Meetings: dates, locations, attendees, types, agendas
  - f. Communication: District-specified electronic project management software set up and administration procedures, correspondence flow
    - 1) Lines of communications, decision ladder and escalation procedures.
  - g. Schedule:
    - 1) Phasing
    - 2) Critical work sequencing and long-lead items
  - h. Designation of key personnel and their duties
  - i. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders
  - j. Procedures for RFIs
  - k. Consultant / Lab Notification Requirements
    - 1) HazMat
    - 2) Roofing
    - 3) Test & Balance
    - 4) Materials Testing
    - 5) Inspecting
  - l. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment
    - 1) Schedule of Values
    - 2) Review
    - 3) M/WBE
  - m. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
  - n. Submittal procedures.
  - o. Preparation of record documents. Use of the premises and existing building Work restrictions.
  - p. Working hours.
  - q. After hours work requirements and overtime payment procedures.
  - r. Owner's occupancy requirements.
  - s. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
    - 1) Site access
    - 2) Signage
    - 3) Dumpsters
    - 4) Fencing
    - 5) SWPPP
    - 6) Parking availability
    - 7) Office, work and storage areas
    - 8) Equipment deliveries and priorities
  - t. Procedures for shutdowns.
  - u. Progress cleaning.
4. Minutes: Architect will record and distribute meeting minutes and sign-in sheet using the District-specified electronic project management software.
- B. Progress Meetings: The architect will schedule and administer progress meetings at weekly intervals.
- 1. Contractor shall make physical arrangements at site for the progress meetings.
  - 2. Location of meetings: Contractor's field office, unless agreed upon mutually by the Architect, Contractor and PM.
    - a. Determine at the Pre-construction Meeting if space in the existing facility or facilities is available for meetings.
    - b. For multiple school Bid Packages, weekly progress meetings will be held at each school site on a rotating basis. Site specific meetings may be held at the discretion of the PM.

3. Architect will prepare agenda, distribute notice of the meeting, preside at meetings, record minutes and distribute copies within three (3) days after meeting to participants, and to entities affected by decisions at meetings.
  4. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
  5. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner, Program Manager, Professional Consultants, as appropriate to the agenda, and Architect, each contractor, job superintendent, subcontractor, supplier, and other entities as appropriate to the agenda shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  6. Agenda:
    - a. Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting.
    - b. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
      - 1) Safety (lost time, accidents, violations, etc.)
      - 2) Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
        - a) Review schedule for next period.
      - 3) New Business (Field observations, problems, decision, identification of problems which impeded planned progress, non-confirming work, etc.)
      - 4) RFI's and RFI log review
      - 5) Submittals and submittal log review
      - 6) RFP's, CAEAs and related log reviews
      - 7) Review of draft Application for Payment, as necessary.
    - c. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:
      - 1) Interface requirements.
      - 2) Sequence of operations.
      - 3) Access.
      - 4) Site utilization.
      - 5) Temporary facilities and controls.
      - 6) Progress cleaning.
      - 7) Quality and work standards.
      - 8) Status of correction of deficient items.
      - 9) Field observations.
      - 10) Pending claims and disputes.
  7. Minutes: Using the District-specified electronic project management software, the entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.
    - a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.
- C. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity that requires coordination with other construction. These include pre-dig, pre-lift, pre-drill, pre-power shutdown, or pre-roof meetings at the work site prior to commencing the specific construction activity.
1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Owner, PM, and Architect of scheduled meeting dates, five business (5) days in advance
  2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:

- a. Contract Documents.
  - b. Related RFIs.
  - c. Approved submittals.
  - d. Review of mock-ups.
  - e. Possible conflicts and/or delays
  - f. Compatibility problems.
  - g. Time schedules.
  - h. Safety issues and AHA's
  - i. Weather limitations.
  - j. Manufacturer's written recommendations.
  - k. Warranty requirements.
  - l. Compatibility of materials.
  - m. Acceptability of substrates.
  - n. Space and access limitations.
  - o. Testing and inspecting requirements.
  - p. Installation procedures.
  - q. Coordination with other work.
  - r. Required performance results.
  - s. Protection of adjacent work.
  - t. Protection of construction and personnel.
3. Record significant conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions, using the District specified electronic management software
  4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
  5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.
- D. Pre-installation Conference: When required in individual Specification Sections, convene a Pre-installation conference at work site prior to commencing work of the section.
1. Require attendance of entities directly affecting or affected by Work of the Section.
  2. Notify Owner, PM and Architect at least five (5) business days in advance of meeting date.
  3. Prepare agenda, preside at conference, record minutes (using the District specified electronic management software), and distribute copies within two (2) business days after conference to participants.
  4. Review conditions of reinstallation, preparation and installation procedures, and coordination with related work.
- E. Project Closeout Conference: Schedule and conduct a Project closeout conference, at a time convenient to Owner, Program Manager and Architect, but no later than fourteen (14) days prior to the scheduled date of Substantial Completion.
1. Conduct the conference to review requirements and responsibilities related to Project closeout.
  2. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Program Manager, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the meeting. Participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
  3. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect or delay Project closeout, including the following:
    - a. Preparation of record documents.
    - b. Procedures required prior to inspection for Substantial Completion and for final inspection for acceptance.
    - c. Submittal of written warranties.



- d. Requirements for preparing operations and maintenance data.
  - e. Requirements for demonstration and training.
  - f. Preparation of Contractor's punch list.
  - g. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment at Substantial Completion and for final payment.
  - h. Submittal procedures.
  - i. Responsibility for removing temporary facilities and controls.
4. Minutes: Entity conducting meeting will record and distribute meeting minutes using the District-specified electronic project management software.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

**END OF SECTION 01 31 00**

## SECTION 01 32 00 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
  - 1. Daily construction reports.
  - 2. Material and equipment delivery status reports.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Construction Progress Schedule".
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures" for submitting schedules and reports.
  - 3. Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements" for submitting a schedule of tests and inspections.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format:
  - 1. PDF electronic file uploaded to District's Project Management software.
- B. Daily Construction Reports: Submit at weekly intervals.
- C. Material and Equipment Delivery Status Reports: Submit at weekly construction progress meetings.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 REPORTS

- A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report using the District-specified Project Management software recording the following information concerning events at Project site:
  - 1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
  - 2. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
  - 3. Equipment at Project site.
  - 4. Material deliveries.
  - 5. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including presence of rain or snow.

6. Accidents.
7. Meetings and significant decisions.
8. Unusual events (refer to special reports).
9. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
10. Meter readings and similar recordings.
11. Emergency procedures.
12. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
13. Change Orders received and implemented.
14. Construction Change Directives received and implemented.
15. Services connected and disconnected.
16. Equipment or system tests and startups.
17. Partial completions and occupancies.
18. Substantial Completions authorized.

- B. Material and Equipment Delivery Status Reports: At monthly intervals, prepare and submit a comprehensive list of materials delivered to and stored at Project site. List shall be cumulative, showing materials previously reported plus items recently delivered. Include with list a statement of progress on and delivery dates for materials or items of equipment fabricated or stored away from Project site.

PART 3 - EXECUTION – Not Used

**END OF SECTION 01 32 00**

---

## SECTION 01 32 16 – CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS SCHEDULE

### PART 1 GENERAL

#### 1.01 Description

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for developing, submitting and updating a detailed Critical Path Method (CPM) project schedule and related reports. The project schedule is developed by the Contractor and herein referred to initially as the Preliminary CPM Schedule. Subsequent to the Owner, Architect and Contractor acceptance of the Preliminary CPM Schedule, the Contractor completes the development of a more complete and thorough schedule called the Detailed CPM Schedule. Once the Detailed CPM Schedule is accepted by the Program Manager (PM), Architect, and the Contractor, it shall be “baselined” and referred to as the Project Schedule or Detailed CPM Schedule. Monthly progress updates will be compared to the baseline schedule.
- B. If the Contractor should desire or intend to complete the Work earlier than any required milestone, completion date, or end period of performance, then the Owner/PM shall not be liable to the Contractor for any costs or other damages should the Contractor be unable to complete the work before such milestone, completion date or end of Period of performance.

#### 1.02 Quality Control and Quality Assurance

- A. The Contractor shall develop and maintain a Project Schedule for each project site (School) (referred to as the Preliminary CPM Schedule and ultimately the Project Schedule) in accordance with the requirements of this Section. The requirement for a Project Schedule is included to:
  1. Ensure adequate planning before and during the execution and progress of the Work in accordance with the allowable number of working days and milestones.
  2. Assure coordination and execution of the work among various trades of the Contractor, subcontractors, suppliers, third party utility companies or other related entities that may be involved in the Project.
  3. Assist the Contractor and the Owner in evaluating:
    - a. Contract performance relative to the required contract schedule milestones
    - b. Monthly progress
    - c. Proposed Contract Modifications
    - d. Documenting anticipated, requested and or approved time extensions
    - e. The documentation of unplanned events, time extensions and other impacts arising from such events

- 
- B. The project schedule shall show the sequence and interdependence of activities required for complete performance of the work. The Contractor shall be responsible for assuring all work sequences are logical and show a coordinated plan of the work. The project schedule shall employ computerized CPM planning, scheduling and progress reporting of the work as described in this specification. The Contractor shall create and maintain the schedule using project scheduling software approved by the Owner and PM that utilizes the fundamentals of CPM for scheduling. The observance of the requirements herein is an essential part of the work under the Contract.
  - C. Within seven (7) calendar days after issuance of Notice to Proceed, the Contractor shall designate in writing a schedule representative in the Contractor's organization who shall be responsible for coordinating with the PM during development and maintenance of the Project Schedule. The Contractor's representative shall have the expertise to operate the CPM software and be capable of rapidly evaluating alternate scenarios to optimize management capabilities. The Contractor has the option to utilize qualified outside scheduling consultation for the assistance of developing and maintaining the Project Schedule, however, the use of an outside consultant does not relieve the Contractor of responsibilities for compliance of this specification. The Contractor's schedule representative shall have complete authority to act for the Contractor in fulfilling the schedule requirements of the Contract, and if such authority is interrupted during the Contract, approval shall be obtained in writing by the PM.
  - D. All activities shall have at least one predecessor and one successor unless approved by the PM. The exceptions are no predecessor is needed for the Notice To Proceed (NTP) milestone and no successor is needed for the Project Completion milestone.
  - E. **Contractor shall not use any constraints of any type without prior approval of the Owner.**
  - F. Each activity's "Activity ID" and "Activity Description" or "Task Name" shall remain unchanged throughout the duration of the project subsequent the baseline acceptance by the Owner.
  - G. An activity's "Activity Description" may only be revised to clarify an activity's original scope. If the scope of an activity increases or decreases, a replacement activity shall be created.
  - H. PM acceptance shall be obtained prior to making any changes or revisions to an activity's "Activity Description".

### 1.03 Submittals

- A. All CPM Schedules shall be presented on two (2) copies (preferable 8 ½ x 11) and one electronic copy (accessible format, not pdf). Preliminary CPM Baseline Schedule: Within fourteen (14) calendar days after issuance of Notice to Proceed, but prior to the start of any construction activities, the Contractor shall submit the Preliminary CPM Baseline Schedule deliverable package. The preliminary baseline

---

schedule shall cover the planned activities for each project site (school) in sufficient level of detail.

- B. Detailed CPM Schedule: Within thirty (30) calendar days after Notice to Proceed (NTP), the Contractor shall submit the Detailed CPM Baseline Schedule deliverable package, with a detailed schedule for each project site (school). The substantial completion date in the detailed CPM schedule shall coincide with the substantial completion date in the approved preliminary baseline schedule.
- C. Schedule Update: The Contractor shall submit with the payment application a CPM Schedule Update on at least a monthly basis throughout the duration of the Work. The “baselined” Project Schedule, once updated for actual activities, shall be used as the first CPM Schedule Update. All schedule updates shall have a current data date (not older than 5 days). Include a narrative report specifying all changes and modifications made to the CPM schedule.
- D. Recovery or Revision to the Detailed CPM Schedule: The Contractor shall provide a Recovery CPM Schedule within seven (7) calendar days of any CPM Schedule Update Meeting if any milestone, completion date or end of Period Performance falls seven (7) calendar days or greater behind (negative float).
- E. Schedule Review: All schedules that are to be submitted for review shall be stamped as being reviewed/approved by the General Contractor and key subcontractors.

## PART 2 PRELIMINARY CPM SCHEDULE

### 2.01 Preliminary CPM Schedule

- A. The Preliminary CPM Schedule shall be the basis for the sequence of work during the first ninety (90) calendar days of the Contract while the Project Schedule is being developed, submitted, reviewed and accepted. The Preliminary CPM Schedule shall be updated on a monthly basis. If the acceptance of the Project CPM Schedule extends beyond one month, the Preliminary CPM Schedule shall be updated according to the requirements stated in paragraph 3.03.
- B. The Preliminary CPM Schedule shall include:
  - 1. The Procurement activities for each project site (school) to be accomplished (either in whole or in part) during the first ninety (90) calendar days of the Contract. The procurement activities shall include mobilization, shop drawing submittal, sample submittal, Architect/Engineer review and approval period, material fabrication and delivery of key and long-lead items. If portable swing space buildings are required for a project, the preliminary CPM schedule shall include milestones for relocation and installation of such swing space buildings.
  - 2. The construction activities for each project site (school) to be accomplished (either in whole or in part) during the first ninety (90) days of the Contract. These activities shall be in units of

---

whole working days and shall be limited to a maximum of ten (10) work days, unless otherwise approved by the PM, except for non-construction activities including mobilization, procurement and concrete curing activities.

3. The approach to scheduling the remaining work or phases of work beyond the first ninety (90) calendar days of the contract. The work for each phase or milestone must be represented by at least one summary activity for each major item of work such that they cumulatively indicate the entire schedule, with milestones as defined in Paragraph 3.01, B.7. The approximate duration for each summary activity shall include the Contractor's best estimate for the work it represents.
  4. Submit a written narrative describing the Contractor's approach to mobilization, procurement, and construction during the first ninety (90) calendar days of the Project. The narrative shall elaborate on the basis for durations, major equipment to be used, and shall identify all major assumptions used to develop and support the schedule. The narrative shall also include the Contractor's description of the critical path work activity as represented in the Preliminary CPM Schedule.
- C. The Preliminary CPM Schedule shall be used for review of time extension request(s) until the Project CPM Schedule is accepted. When changes and alterations are initiated, unplanned events or excusable delays are experienced, or the Contractor desires to revise the sequence of work, the Contractor shall submit a written time impact analysis.
- D. The final determination of all time extensions requested under the Preliminary CPM Schedule shall be determined and finalized subsequent to the review and acceptance of the Project CPM Schedule.
- E. **Deliverable: No later than fourteen (14) calendar days after award of Contract, but prior to the start of any construction activities, the Contractor shall submit the Preliminary CPM Schedule deliverable package.** The deliverable package shall include at a minimum, the following information:
1. Two (2) copies (preferable 8 ½ x 11). The critical path shall be readily discernible in red ink.
  2. Two (2) copies of the written narrative as described in paragraph 2.01B.5.
  3. One (1) electronic copy (accessible format not pdf).

## 2.02 Schedule Review and Acceptance

- A. The PM, Architect/Engineer and the Contractor shall meet within seven (7) calendar days of receipt of the Preliminary CPM Schedule for joint review. The Contractor shall revise any areas, which, in the opinion of the PM and/or Architect/Engineer, conflict with either the intent of this

---

specification or the timely completion and acceptable coordination of the Project. In the event the Contractor fails to define any element of work activity or logic currently designed and the PM review does not detect this omission or error, such omission or error, when discovered by the Contractor or the PM, shall be corrected by the Contractor and incorporated into the next schedule submission.

Within seven (5) business days after the joint review between the A/E, Contractor and the PM, the Contractor shall revise the Preliminary CPM Schedule in accordance with agreements reached during the joint review and submit the revised schedule per the deliverable requirements.

Acceptance of the Preliminary CPM Schedule by the A/E, Owner or PM does not relieve the Contractor of any of its responsibility for the accuracy or feasibility of the project schedule. However, to the extent that the accepted Project Schedule is reasonable, it becomes a part of this Contract.

- B. Submission and final PM and Contractor acceptance of the Preliminary CPM Schedule will be a condition precedent to the application or payment of any progress payments under the Contract, unless otherwise agreed upon by the Owner. The PM shall notify the Contractor of the Owner acceptance of the Preliminary CPM Schedule in writing.

### PART 3 PROJECT CPM SCHEDULE

#### 3.01 Project Schedule

- A. The Project Schedule shall begin at the project NTP and incorporate the accepted Preliminary CPM Schedule including all required revisions and applicable progress updating as warranted. The Project Schedule shall indicate a logical sequence of work for each project site (school) and major restrictions from the availability and use of manpower, material and equipment. Utilize the schedule in planning, scheduling, coordinating and performing the work under this Contract (including all activities of subcontractors, equipment vendors and suppliers). The Project Schedule shall indicate the sequence and interdependence of activities required for complete performance of the Work.

Proposed durations assigned to each activity shall be the Contractor's best estimate of time required to complete the activity considering the scope and resources planned for the activity. In developing the Project Schedule, the Contractor shall be responsible for ensuring that subcontractor work scope and sequencing at all tiers, as well as its own work, is included. If a contract for a subcontractor has not yet been awarded for a certain portion of the work, the Contractor is responsible for the development of the schedule for the work as described under this section. After the subcontractor award of contract, the Contractor shall modify the current accepted schedule to reflect any changes or revisions for the subcontractor sequence of work. Under no circumstance or event, shall a schedule modification or revision under



---

this paragraph extend a milestone. The Project Schedule shall comply with the various limits imposed by the scope of work and by any contractually specified intermediate milestone dates and completion dates. The degree of detail shall be to the satisfaction of the PM the A/E or the Owner.

B. Provide sufficient detail and clarity of form and technique so that all work can be properly controlled and progress monitored by the PM and A/E. The Project Schedule shall consist of, but not be limited to, the following criteria:

1. Full detail of all major procurement activities including the activities and information contained within the Preliminary CPM Schedule. Break up all procurement activities for major components and long lead items to include submittal dates, fabrication duration, and expected delivery dates.
2. Full detail of all major construction activities including the activities and information contained within the Preliminary CPM Schedule. Add column for responsible party for all construction activities.
3. Multiple Calendars shall be used for establishing Holidays and periods of non-work based on the School Operations Parameter Statement in the Project Information Section of Division 0, concrete curing activities, other weather or ambient temperature sensitive construction activities, and or other work requiring overtime or double shift work.
4. Seasonal weather conditions shall be considered and included in the planning and scheduling of all work influenced by high or low ambient temperatures, precipitation and/or saturated soil to ensure recognition, planning and anticipation of intermittent inclement weather throughout the project duration. In addition, activities of similar nature shall be assigned to independent calendars based on this weather data. The software calendars shall be updated monthly to reflect actual days worked.
5. Activity duration in whole working days with a maximum duration of ten (10) working days each, unless otherwise approved by the PM, except for non-construction activities including mobilization, procurement and concrete curing activities.
6. At a minimum, the following guidelines, intermediate and final milestones shall be included in the project schedules for each individual project site (school), except for activities that are specifically identified to be common for all the project sites for a multi-project bundle:

a. Notice to Proceed

- 
- b. Required Periodic Inspections (examples: rebar, utilities, electrical and mechanical rough-in, overhead and architectural)
  - c. Time allotted for coordination with and execution of abatement activities
  - d. Specific Phase start and finish dates – renovations and additions
  - e. Preliminary CPM Schedule submission and acceptance
  - f. Project Schedule submission and acceptance
  - g. Building dry-in
  - h. Permanent power
  - i. Conditioned air available
  - j. Completed testing and acceptance of Life Safety Systems and other critical building components
  - k. Completion of ADA upgrades in restrooms
  - l. Commissioning, when project requires
  - m. Ten percent (10%) minimum float for the project
  - n. Substantial Completion
  - o. Final Completion
  - p. Owner Turn-Over / Start-Up / Project Closeout Activity / Warranty Period / Owner Testing/Training
  - q. Earliest Date that Owner can occupy the affected portion of the building (by phase, by complete project, etc.). This shall include all necessary approvals, permits (Fire Marshall Acceptance, Certificate of Occupancy, etc.).
- C. The Contractor shall prepare a written narrative explaining the Contractor's approach to construction for the entire Project and include the narrative information as submitted with the Preliminary CPM Schedule deliverable package. The narrative shall elaborate on the basis for durations, major equipment to be used, and shall identify all major assumptions used to develop and support the schedule. The narrative shall also include the Contractor's description of the critical path work activity as represented in the Project Schedule.
- D. Deliverable: Within thirty (30) calendar days after the Notice to Proceed, the Detailed CPM Schedule deliverable submitted by the Contractor shall include at a minimum, the following information:
- 1. Two (2) copies (preferably 8 ½ x 11) of the project schedule. The critical path shall be readily discernible in red ink.
  - 2. Two (2) copies of the written narrative as described in paragraph 3.01, B.5
  - 3. One (1) electronic copy (accessible format not pdf)
  - 3. A list of all rain days occurring over the past month. Each rain day shall be incorporated into the Project Schedule Calendar as record information subsequent to PM review and acceptance.

---

### 3.02 Schedule Review and Acceptance

- A. Within fourteen (14) calendar days of receipt of the Contractor's proposed Project Schedule, the PM shall evaluate the schedule for compliance with this item and other Contract requirements, and notify the Contractor in writing of its findings.
- B. If the PM does not request a revision or justification, The A/E, PM and the Contractor shall meet within seven (7) calendar days on a date selected by the PM and finalize acceptance of the schedule. If a revision or justification is requested by the PM and/or A/E, the Contractor shall re-submit the proposed Project Schedule within seven (7) calendar days and address all issues to the satisfaction of the PM. Any and all disagreements or interpretations of the meaning or intent of this specification shall be solely dictated by the Owner.
- C. The PM, A/E and the Contractor shall meet within seven (7) calendar days of receipt of the Contractor's response for joint review, correction or adjustment of the Contractor's proposed Project Schedule. Any area, in the opinion of the PM and/or A/E, conflicts with timely completion of the project, shall be subject to revision by the Contractor. In the event the Contractor fails to define any element of work, activity or logic and the Owner review does not detect this omission or error, when discovered it shall be corrected by the Contractor and amended to the Project Schedule as soon as possible.
- D. Within seven (7) calendar days after the joint review meeting, the Contractor shall incorporate revisions as directed by the PM and re-submit the proposed Project Schedule per the deliverable requirement as stated in paragraph 3.01, E. All further review by the PM shall be within seven (7) calendar days of receipt. The PM shall notify the Contractor in writing of final acceptance of the Contractor's Project Schedule.
- E. The process of approving Contractor's schedules and updates to Contractor's schedule shall not constitute a warranty by the Owner that any non-Contractor milestones or activities will occur as set out on Contractor's schedule.

### 3.03 Schedule Updates

- A. After the Project Schedule is accepted by the PM and the Contractor, it shall be "baselined" and used as a comparison for future progress updates. The accepted Project Schedule shall be updated on a monthly basis, or as directed by the Owner, throughout the duration of the work until final completion is met. The Contractor shall meet with the PM each month at a Project Progress Meeting to review the work progress update and PM comments regarding the Project Schedule update. The Contractor shall submit a schedule update no later than three (3) working days before the Project Progress Meeting for the PM to review and comment.
- B. The percentage of all work shall be calculated by estimating the actual remaining duration of each progressed activity. The data date of each

---

schedule update shall be determined by the PM each month. Contractor prepared estimates of the percent completion of each scheduled activity and the necessary supporting data shall be submitted on or before the data date referenced above and shall include the following information:

1. One (1) original of the previous month's Schedule Update indicating actual activity start and/or finish dates to date, and revised (current) remaining durations.
  2. A narrative report shall be included that indicates in writing those activities the Contractor plans to work on during the following update month and current or anticipated conditions that have delayed or may delay the work in order to discuss remedial action. The Contractor shall also explain, for work that reflects less than satisfactory progress, whether any uncompleted and/or upcoming work will (or will not) be affected in a like manner and the Contractor's method of correction. Any additional written information necessary to support the updated schedule including explanations of revisions to activities: logic, durations, resources, etc.
- C. In case of disagreements at the project progress meeting concerning actual progress to date, the Owner's determination shall govern. Upon completion of the schedule update meeting, the Contractor shall revise the Schedule Update to reflect progress as of the date of the schedule update meeting and any approved revisions to the Schedule Update and carry out a computer produced calculation to determine the status of the Project Schedule.
- D. Each Schedule Update shall be forwarded to the PM within five (5) calendar days after the schedule update meeting and shall include two (2) copies of the narrative report with the following information:
1. Activities that have been added in the month of this Project Schedule Update.
  2. Activities that have been deleted in the month of this Project Schedule Update.
  3. Activities that have "Actual Starts" prior to the month of this Project Schedule Update and remain unfinished.
  4. Activities that have "Actual Starts and Actual Finishes" in the month of this Project Schedule Update.
  5. A description of any approved revisions to the activity descriptions, schedule logic, or initial activity durations.
  6. One (1) print of the updated CPM Schedule Update indicating the progress made up to the date of the schedule update and indication of any revisions to the CPM Schedule Update.
  7. Two (2) prints of the written narrative as described in paragraph 3.03, B.3.

- 
8. A list of all rain days occurring over the past month. Each rain day shall be incorporated into the Project Schedule Calendar.
  - E. If the Contractor's monthly progress schedule update reflects, or PM determines, that the Contractor is at least ten percent (10%) or at least negative seven (-7) calendar days behind the "baselined" schedule, the Contractor shall provide a revised or recovery schedule. The Contractor's revised or recovery schedule must incorporate a proposed plan for bringing the work back on schedule and completing the work by the contract completion date at no additional expense to the PM or Owner. The revised or recovery schedule shall be in accordance to paragraph 2.08.

3.04 Revisions to the Project Schedule

- A. Revisions to the Schedule Update to reflect actual progress made up to the date of a schedule update shall not be considered as revisions to the Project Schedule. If as a result of the monthly schedule update, it appears the Project Schedule no longer represents the actual execution and progress of the work, PM will request, and the Contractor shall submit, a Revision to the schedule.
- B. The Contractor may also request revisions to the Project Schedule in the event the Contractor's planning for the work is revised. If the Contractor desires to make changes in the Project Schedule to reflect revisions in his method of operating and scheduling of the work, the Contractor shall notify PM in writing, stating the reason for the proposed revision. If revision to the schedule is contemplated, the Contractor or PM shall so advise the other in writing at least seven (7) calendar days prior to the next schedule update meeting, describing the revision and setting forth the reasons thereof.

Contractors must submit a three (3) week look-ahead schedule that will include all lifts, shutdowns, etc.

3.05 Project Float Time

- A. Float time is not for the exclusive use or benefit of either the Contractor or the Owner. Contractor's work shall proceed according to early start dates, and the Owner shall have the right to reserve and apportion float time according to the needs of the Project. The Contractor acknowledges and agrees that actual delays, affecting paths of activities containing float time, will not have any affect upon contract completion times, providing that the actual delay does not exceed the float time associated with those activities.

3.06 Impact Analysis for: Change Orders, Delays, and Contractor Requests

- A. When changes are initiated, delays are experienced, or the Contractor desires to revise the Project Schedule, the Contractor shall submit to the PM written time impact analysis illustrating the influence of each change, delay or Contractor request, on any milestone. Each time impact analysis shall include a fragmentary network (network analysis) demonstrating how the Contractor proposed to incorporate the change,

---

delay or Contractor request into the schedule. The time impact analysis shall demonstrate the time impact to each and every affected activity in the Project Schedule utilizing the most recent schedule update as the basis for the analysis. The date of the most recent schedule update shall be a date prior to the date the change is given to the Contractor, the date the delay occurred or the date the Contractor submits a request for a change. The event times used in the time impact analysis shall include the most recent schedule update or as adjusted by mutual agreement. The time impact analysis shall include a backup copy on CD which shall contain the detail of the change, including but not limited to, added, changed or deleted data for activities and logic restraints. If the Detailed CPM Schedule is revised subsequent to submittal of a time impact analysis but prior to its approval, the Contractor shall promptly indicate in writing to the PM the need for any modification to its time impact analysis.

- B. Activity delays shall not automatically mean that an extension of any milestones is warranted or due to the Contractor. A change or delay may not affect existing critical activities or cause non-critical activities to become critical. A change or delay may result in only absorbing a part of the available total float that may exist within an activity chain of the network, thereby not causing any effect on any milestone.
- C. A comprehensive narrative of each time impact analysis shall be submitted within seven (7) calendar days after the commencement of a delay or the notice for a change is given to the Contractor.
- D. Recommendation to the Owner for the acceptance or rejection of each time impact analysis by the PM and A/E shall be made within seven (7) calendar days after receipt unless subsequent meetings or negotiations are necessary. After a decision has been made by the Owner, a copy of the time impact analysis signed by the PM, A/E, Owner and the Contractor shall be returned to the Contractor and incorporated into the Project Schedule at the next monthly schedule update. The time impact analysis shall be incorporated into and attached to any relevant supplemental agreement (s).

**END OF SECTION 01 32 16**

# SECTION 01 32 33 - PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
  - 1. Preconstruction photographs.
  - 2. Periodic construction photographs.
  - 3. Final completion construction photographs.
  - 4. Preconstruction video recordings.
  - 5. Periodic construction video recordings.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures" for submitting photographic documentation.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for submitting photographic documentation as project record documents at Project closeout.
  - 3. Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training" for submitting video recordings of demonstration of equipment and training of Owner's personnel.

### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Key Plan: Submit key plan of Project site and building with notation of vantage points marked for location and direction of each photograph or video recording. Indicate elevation or story of construction. Include same information as corresponding photographic documentation.
- B. Digital Photographs: Submit image files in the quantities and at the intervals described in paragraph 3.1 of this section.
  - 1. Digital Camera: Minimum sensor resolution of at least 8 mega pixels.
  - 2. Format: Unaltered original files, with same aspect ratio as the sensor, uncropped, date and time stamped, in folder named by date of photograph, accompanied by key plan file.
  - 3. Identification: Provide the following information with each image description in file metadata tag:
    - a. Name of Project.
    - b. Name and contact information for photographer.
    - c. Name of Architect.
    - d. Name of Contractor.
    - e. Date photograph was taken.
    - f. Description of vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.
    - g. Unique sequential identifier keyed to accompanying key plan.

- C. Construction Photographs: The project requires comprehensive documentation of construction progress and post inspection milestones. Submit prints of each photographic view in the quantities and at the intervals described in paragraph 3.1 of this Section.
1. Format: 8-by-10-inch (203-by-254-mm) on photographic paper to allow a 1-inch- (25-mm-) wide margin and enclosed back to back in clear plastic sleeves that are punched for standard three-ring binder.
  2. Identification: On back of each print, provide an applied label or rubber-stamped impression with the following information:
    - a. Name of Project.
    - b. Name and contact information for photographer.
    - c. Name of Architect.
    - d. Name of Contractor.
    - e. Date photograph was taken if not date stamped by camera.
    - f. Description of vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.
    - g. Unique sequential identifier keyed to accompanying key plan.
  3. "Progression" photo sets are to be performed at pre-determined intervals throughout the duration of construction, as applicable to the scope and as follows:
    - a. Site survey (Pre-construction): A onetime shot that provides coverage of site and immediate and immediate surroundings.
    - b. Exterior progression shots: Taken from key perspectives along site perimeter and 360 degrees around building envelope, to be performed at monthly intervals.
    - c. Interior progression shots: Broadly track the improvements from logical perspectives, to be performed at monthly intervals and coordinated with pace of erection.
    - d. Pre-slab/Pre-Chase/Interior record shots: Underground or concealed utilities will be documented post inspection/pre-insulation and prior to pouring slabs, backfilling or closing chases/walls/ceilings.
- D. Video Recordings: Submit video recordings in accordance with paragraph 3.2 of this Section.
1. Submit video recordings in digital video disc format.
  2. Identification: With each submittal, provide the following information:
    - a. Name of Project.
    - b. Name and address of photographer.
    - c. Name of Architect.
    - d. Name of Contractor.
    - e. Date video recording was recorded.
    - f. Description of vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.
    - g. Weather conditions at time of recording.
- E. Aerial Photography
1. On new construction and addition projects, submit monthly aerial photographs of the project. The photos should be taken from 4 different angles and 4 sets of color 8"x10" prints should be submitted.



- a. Digital Photographs: provide color images in JPG format with minimum sensor of 12 megapixels, and at an image resolution of not less than 3200 by 2400 pixels. Use flash in low light levels or backlit conditions.
- b. Digital Video Recordings: Provide high resolution, digital video in MPEG format, produced by a digital camera with minimum sensor resolution of 12 megapixels and capable of recording in full high-definition mode. Provide supplemental lighting in low light levels or backlit conditions.

#### 1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Photographer Qualifications: An individual who has the basic skills necessary to record digital photographs and video recordings.
- B. Drone Operator Qualifications: FAA Part 107 Licensed drone operator, certified as an unmanned aircraft operator with UAS rating for the operation of a commercial drone (unmanned aerial vehicle) pilot, having a minimum of 7 years' experience as a drone operator with current Certifications.

#### 1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Auxiliary Services: Provide auxiliary services necessary, including temporary lighting required to produce clear, well-lit photographs.

#### 1.6 USAGE RIGHTS

- A. Contractor will transfer copyright usage rights to Owner for unlimited reproduction of photographic documentation.

### PART 2 - PRODUCTS

#### 2.1 PHOTOGRAPHIC MEDIA

- A. Digital Images: Provide images in JPG format, produced by a digital camera with minimum sensor size of 8 mega pixels. Images shall not have their resolution reduced.
- B. Digital Video Recordings: Provide high-resolution, digital video disc.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

#### 3.1 CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS

- A. General: Take photographs using the maximum range of depth of field, and that are in focus, to clearly show the Work. Photographs with blurry or out-of-focus areas will not be accepted.
  - 1. Maintain key plan with each set of construction photographs that identifies each photographic location.

2. Taking photographs or video recordings with students and schools staff included on the photograph is strictly prohibited.
- B. Digital Images: Submit digital images exactly as originally recorded in the digital camera, without alteration, manipulation, editing, or modifications using image-editing software.
1. Date and Time: Include date and time in file name for each image.
  2. Field Office Images: Maintain one set of images accessible in the field office at Project site, available at all times for reference. Identify images in the same manner as those submitted to Architect.
- C. Preconstruction / Pre-Demo / Pre-Site Clearing Photographs: Before starting demolition or construction, take photographs of Project site and surrounding properties, including existing items to remain during construction, from different vantage points, or as directed by Architect.
1. Take photographs as required to show existing conditions adjacent to property before starting the Work.
  2. Take photographs as required of existing buildings either on or adjoining property to accurately record physical conditions at start of construction.
  3. Reference Section 017300 Execution for details of documenting and reporting existing conditions.
- D. Periodic Construction Photographs: Take a photographs monthly and submit with each Application for Payment. Select vantage points to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken. For renovation projects: The location and type of items to be photographed will be determined by the Architect and/or PM based on the specific project conditions not to exceed the number of progress photographs required above.
- E. Final Completion Construction Photographs: Take color photographs after date of Substantial Completion for submission as project record documents. Architect will inform photographer of desired vantage points.

### 3.2 CONSTRUCTION VIDEO RECORDINGS

- A. Preconstruction Video Recording: Before starting demolition or construction, record video of Project site and surrounding properties from different vantage points, as directed by Architect.
1. Show existing conditions adjacent to Project site before starting the Work.
  2. Show existing buildings either on or adjoining Project site to accurately record physical conditions at the start of demolition or construction].
  3. Show protection efforts by Contractor.
  4. Narrate all noted conditions on the video.
  5. On renovation projects with crawlspace work, record video of these areas before, during and after work is completed.
- B. Periodic Construction Video Recordings: Record video monthly and submit with each Application for Payment. Select vantage points to show status of construction and progress since last video recordings were recorded. Minimum recording time shall be 15 minutes and shall include narration of actual conditions and progress made since last recording.
- C. Owner's Training: Record video during the manufacturer's training session at substantial completion. Minimum recording time shall be 30 minutes per session. Deliver the recordings with the PDF Electronic File of the O&M Manual at Substantial Completion. Video shall be clear with easily understandable audio.

D. Submit videos in DVD format.

**END OF SECTION 01 32 33**

## SECTION 01 33 00 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for the submittal schedule and administrative and procedural requirements for submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and other submittals.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Division 01 Section "Payment Procedures" for submitting Applications for Payment.
2. Division 01 Section "Schedule of Values" for submitting the schedule of values.
3. Division 01 Section "Construction Progress Documentation" for submitting schedules and reports, including Contractor's construction schedule.
4. Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data" for submitting operation and maintenance manuals.
5. Division 01 Section "Project Record Documents" for submitting record Drawings, record Specifications, and record Product Data.
6. Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training" for submitting video recordings of equipment demonstration and training of Owner's personnel.

- C. Refer to other Division 1 Sections and other Contract Documents for Specifications on administrative submittals. Such submittals include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Permits.
2. Payment Applications.
3. Inspection and Test Reports.
4. Schedule of Values
5. Progress Reports.
6. Listing of Subcontractors

- D. Shop Drawings are technical drawings and data that have been specially prepared for this Project, including but not limited to the following items:

1. Fabrication and installation drawings.
2. Setting diagrams.
3. Shopwork manufacturing instructions.
4. Templates.
5. Patterns.
6. Coordination drawings (for use on-site).
7. Schedules.
8. Design mix formulas.
9. Contractor's engineering calculations.

Standard information prepared with specific reference to a Project is not considered to be shop drawings.

- E. Product Data includes standard printed information on manufactured products that has not been specially prepared for this Project, including but not limited to the following items:

1. Manufacturer's product specifications and installation instructions.
  2. Standard color charts.
  3. Catalog cuts.
  4. Rough-in diagram and templates.
  5. Standard wiring diagrams.
  6. Printed performance curves.
  7. Operational range diagrams.
  8. Mill reports.
  9. Standard product operating and maintenance manuals.
- Modify standard product data, drawings and diagrams to delete information not applicable to the project, and / or supplement standard information to provide specific data that is applicable to the work.

F. Samples are physical examples of Work, including but not limited to the following items:

1. Partial sections of manufactured or fabricated work.
2. Small cuts or container of materials.
3. Complete units of repetitively used materials.
4. Swatches showing color, texture and pattern.
5. Color range sets.
6. Units of work to be used for independent inspection and testing.

G. Miscellaneous Submittals are work-related, non-administrative submittals that do not fit in the three previous categories, including but not limited to the following:

1. Specially prepared and standard printed warranties.
2. Maintenance agreements.
3. Workmanship bonds.
4. Survey data and reports.
5. Project photographs.
6. Testing and certification reports.
7. Record Drawings.
8. Field measurement data.
9. Operating and maintenance manuals.
10. Keys and other security protection devices.
11. Maintenance tools and spare parts.
12. Overrun stock.

### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action. Action submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as action submittals.
- B. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements. Informational submittals are those submittals indicated in individual Specification Sections as informational submittals.
- C. File Transfer Protocol (FTP): Communications protocol that enables transfer of files to and from another computer over a network and that serves as the basis for standard Internet protocols. An FTP site is a portion of a network located outside of network firewalls within which internal and external users are able to access files.
- D. Portable Document Format (PDF): An open standard file format licensed by Adobe Systems used for representing documents in a device-independent and display resolution-independent fixed-layout document format.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Submittal Schedule: Submit a schedule of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or modifications to submittals noted by the Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.
1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
  2. Initial Submittal: Submit concurrently with start-up construction schedule. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those submittals required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.
  3. Monthly submittal log. Submit at the weekly progress meeting, an updated submittal log indicating status of all project submittals.
  4. Final Submittal: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Project schedule.
    - a. Submit revised submittal schedule to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals.
  5. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
    - a. Scheduled date for first submittal.
    - b. Specification Section number and title.
    - c. Submittal category: Action, informational.
    - d. Name of subcontractor.
    - e. Description of the Work covered.
    - f. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.

#### 1.5 SUBMITTAL ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.
1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.
  2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
  3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
  4. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related parts of the Work so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.
    - a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.
- B. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.

1. Initial Review: Allow 14 calendar days for initial review of each submittal. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
  2. Intermediate Review: If intermediate submittal is necessary, process it in same manner as initial submittal.
  3. Resubmittal Review: Allow 10 calendars days for review of each resubmittal.
  4. Concurrent Consultant Review: Where the Contract Documents indicate that submittals may be transmitted simultaneously to Architect and to Architect's consultants, allow 14 calendar days for review of each submittal. Submittal will be returned to Architect before being returned to Contractor.
- C. Identification and Information: Place a permanent label or title block on each paper copy submittal item for identification.
1. Indicate name of firm or entity that prepared each submittal on label or title block.
  2. Include the following information for processing and recording action taken:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Name of Architect.
    - d. Name of Contractor.
    - e. Name of subcontractor.
    - f. Name of supplier.
    - g. Name of manufacturer.
    - h. Submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
      - 1) Submittal number shall use Specification Section number followed by a decimal point and then a sequential number (e.g., 061000.01). Resubmittals shall include an alphabetic suffix after another decimal point (e.g., 061000.01.A).
    - i. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
    - j. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
    - k. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
    - l. Other necessary identification.
- D. Identification and Information: Identify and incorporate information in each electronic submittal file as follows:
1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file with links enabling navigation to each item.
  2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
    - a. File name shall use project identifier and Specification Section number followed by a decimal point and then a sequential number (e.g., LNHS-061000.01). Resubmittals shall include an alphabetic suffix after another decimal point (e.g., LNHS-061000.01.A).
  3. Provide means for insertion to permanently record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
  4. Include the following information on an inserted cover sheet:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Name and address of Architect.
    - d. Name of Contractor.
    - e. Name of firm or entity that prepared submittal.
    - f. Name of subcontractor.
    - g. Name of supplier.
    - h. Name of manufacturer.

- i. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
  - j. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  - k. Location(s) where product is to be installed, as appropriate.
  - l. Related physical samples submitted directly.
  - m. Other necessary identification.
5. Include the following information as keywords in the electronic file metadata:
- a. Project name.
  - b. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
  - c. Manufacturer name.
  - d. Product name.
- E. Options: Identify options requiring selection by the Architect.
- F. Deviations: Identify deviations from the Contract Documents on submittals and the transmittal sheet. Failure to note deviation may void action taken on submittal.
- G. Transmittal: Assemble each submittal individually and appropriately for transmittal and handling. Transmit each submittal using a transmittal form. Architect will return submittals, without review received from sources other than Contractor.
1. Transmittal Form: Provide locations on form for the following information:
- a. Project name.
  - b. Date.
  - c. Destination (To:).
  - d. Source (From:).
  - e. Names of subcontractor, manufacturer, and supplier.
  - f. Category and type of submittal.
  - g. Submittal purpose and description.
  - h. Specification Section number and title.
  - i. Indication of full or partial submittal.
  - j. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
  - k. Transmittal number, numbered consecutively.
  - l. Submittal and transmittal distribution record.
  - m. Remarks.
  - n. Signature of transmitter.
2. On an attached separate sheet, prepared on Contractor's letterhead, record relevant information, requests for data, revisions other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals, and deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations. Include same identification information as related submittal.
- H. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
- 1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
  - 2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
  - 3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.
- I. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.



- J. Use for Construction: Use only final submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

- A. General Submittal Procedure Requirements: Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.
  - 1. Post electronic submittals as PDF electronic files directly to the appropriate location. Defined at the pre-construction meeting.
    - a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as an electronic Project record document file.
  - 2. Submit electronic submittals as PDF electronic files.
    - a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as an electronic Project record document file.
  - 3. Action Submittals: Submit three paper copies of each submittal, unless otherwise indicated. Architect will return two copies.
  - 4. Informational Submittals: Submit two paper copies of each submittal, unless otherwise indicated. Architect will not return copies.
  - 5. Closeout Submittals and Maintenance Material Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures."
  - 6. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Provide a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity.
  - 7. Test and Inspection Reports Submittals: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements."
- B. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.
  - 1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are not suitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
  - 2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable. Cross out all inapplicable data and information.
  - 3. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts.
    - b. Manufacturer's product specifications.
    - c. Standard color charts.
    - d. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
    - e. Testing by recognized testing agency.
    - f. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
    - g. Notation of coordination requirements.
    - h. Availability and delivery time information.
  - 4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:
    - a. Wiring diagrams showing factory-installed wiring.
    - b. Printed performance curves.
    - c. Operational range diagrams.

- d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.
    5. Submit Product Data before or concurrent with Samples.
    6. Submit Product Data in the following format:
      - a. PDF electronic file.
      - b. Three paper copies of Product Data, unless otherwise indicated. Architect will return two copies.
- C. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or standard printed data, unless submittal based upon Architect's digital data drawing files is otherwise permitted.
  1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
    - a. Identification of products.
    - b. Schedules.
    - c. Compliance with specified standards.
    - d. Notation of coordination and accessibility (maintenance and service) requirements.
    - e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
    - f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
    - g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
  2. Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches but no larger than 30 by 42 inches.
  3. Submit Shop Drawings in the following format:
    - a. PDF electronic file.
    - b. Three opaque copies of each submittal. Architect will retain two copies; remainder will be returned.
- D. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other elements and for a comparison of these characteristics between submittal and actual component as delivered and installed.
  1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
  2. Identification: Attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
    - a. Generic description of Sample.
    - b. Product name and name of manufacturer.
    - c. Sample source.
    - d. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
  3. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
    - a. Samples not incorporated into the Work, or otherwise designated as Owner's property, are the property of Contractor.
  4. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.
    - a. Number of Samples: Submit one full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.
  5. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and

physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected.

- a. Number of Samples: Submit three sets of Samples. Architect will retain one Sample sets; remainder will be returned.
  - 1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
  - 2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.
- E. Product Schedule: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:
  1. Type of product. Include unique identifier for each product indicated in the Contract Documents.
  2. Manufacturer and product name, and model number if applicable.
  3. Number and name of room or space.
  4. Location within room or space.
  5. Submit product schedule in the following format:
    - a. PDF electronic file.
    - b. Three paper copies of product schedule or list, unless otherwise indicated. Architect will return two copies.
- F. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Construction Progress Documentation."
- G. Application for Payment: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Payment Procedures."
- H. Schedule of Values: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Schedule of Values."
- I. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:
  1. Name, address, and telephone number of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
  2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
  3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.
  4. Submit subcontract list in the following format:
    - a. PDF electronic file.
- J. Coordination Drawings: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."
- K. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.

- L. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding Procedure Specification and Procedure Qualification Record on American Welding Society (AWS) forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.
- M. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.
- N. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.
- O. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- P. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- Q. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.
- R. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.
- S. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project. Include the following information:
  - 1. Name of evaluation organization.
  - 2. Date of evaluation.
  - 3. Time period when report is in effect.
  - 4. Product and manufacturers' names.
  - 5. Description of product.
  - 6. Test procedures and results.
  - 7. Limitations of use.
- T. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements."
- U. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.
- V. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.
- W. Field Test Reports: Submit reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.

- X. Maintenance Data: Comply with requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data."
- Y. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information, including, but not limited to, performance and design criteria, list of applicable codes and regulations, and calculations. Include list of assumptions and other performance and design criteria and a summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Include page numbers.

## 2.2 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

- A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
  - 1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect, no later than 30 days after notice to proceed.
- B. Delegated-Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit three paper copies of certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
  - 1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

- A. Action and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.
- B. Project Closeout and Maintenance/Material Submittals: Refer to requirements in Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures."
- C. Approval Stamp: Stamp each submittal with a uniform, approval stamp. Include Project name and location, submittal number, Specification Section title and number, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.

### 3.2 ARCHITECT/ENGINEER'S ACTION

- A. General: Architect will not review submittals that do not bear Contractor's approval stamp and will return them without action.

- B. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, make marks to indicate corrections or modifications required, and return it. Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action.
  - 1. Action Stamp: The Architect/Engineer will stamp each submittal to be returned with a uniform, self explanatory stamp, appropriately marked and executed to indicate whether the submittal returned is for unrestricted use, final-but-restricted use (as marked), must be revised and resubmitted (use not permitted) or without action (as explained on the transmittal form).
- C. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will not return it, or will return it if it does not comply with requirements. Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.
- D. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.
- E. Incomplete submittals are not acceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned without review.
- F. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents may not be reviewed and may be discarded.

**END OF SECTION 01 33 00**



## MEMORANDUM

To: All General Contractors working on Elementary Schools (and other facilities occupied by children under the age of 6) built before 1978 for Dallas ISD Construction Services Department  
From: DISD Executive Director  
Construction Services  
Date: June 14, 2010

**RE: EPA Lead-Based Paint Renovation, Repair, and Painting Program**

In April of 2008, the EPA introduced its new Lead-Based Paint Renovation, Repair, and Painting Program Rule, hereafter referred to as the RRP. This new rule requires renovation firms to be EPA-certified. Furthermore, the rule requires workers to be trained to use lead-safe work practices when they disturb painted surfaces in buildings built prior to 1978 and which are occupied by children under age 6. These requirements became fully effective on April 22, 2010.

In addition, pre-renovation education requirements are in effect. These require contractors and others who perform renovations for compensation and that may disturb lead-base paint in child occupied facilities built before 1978 to distribute a lead pamphlet to the users of the facility. The RRP defines renovation broadly to include any activity that disturbs painted surfaces greater than 6 square feet per room on the interior and greater than 20 square feet on the exterior of a facility.

It is the understanding and expectation of Dallas ISD that renovation contractors should be fully aware of and in compliance with this new EPA rule.

**IF YOUR FIRM IS CURRENTLY PERFORMING RENOVATION WORK ON A CAPITAL IMPROVEMENT PROGRAM PROJECT, AND YOUR FIRM IS NOT IN FULL COMPLIANCE WITH THE NEW RULE, YOU MUST CEASE ACTIVITIES IMMEDIATELY ON ANY WORK THAT MAY DISTURB MORE THAN 6 SF (20 SF ON EXTERIOR) OF PAINTED SURFACES, OR WINDOW REPLACEMENT IN BUILDINGS BUILT PRIOR TO 1978 AND WHICH ARE OCCUPIED BY CHILDREN UNDER AGE 6.**

If you must cease work on any portion of the project as a result of this rule, please contact your Project Manager immediately to discuss the appropriate course of action.

If you are in full compliance with the rule, as should be the case, please submit the following at your earliest convenience:

- EPA firm certification (In the absence of prime's firm certification, the certification from the appropriate sub-contractor and the prime's application for certification will suffice for now)
- Identify who is the certified staff on site
- Evidence of worker training by the certified staff
- Summary of lead-safe work practices to be implemented

In addition, please prepare to attend a meeting with the School Principal, Dallas ISD PM and PM to inform her/him about the rule, share the RRP pamphlet and Notices. Your PM will notify you of date and time of the meeting.

If the scope of work planned or in progress does not require compliance with the training and lead-safe work practices of the RRP, then you may continue on with the construction activities and there is no need for any further action on your part. At the same time, the Owner understands that contractors are responsible for compliance with the rule. Therefore, the Owner's expectation is that you will bring to the PM's attention immediately, any scope of work that may trigger compliance with this rule.

Cc: Dallas ISD PM  
Program Director, PM Firm  
Construction Manager, PM Firm  
Project Manager, PM Firm  
PM Firm Document Control



## SECTION 01 40 00 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.
- B. Testing and inspecting services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. Owner will employ and pay for the service of an Independent Testing Laboratory to perform specified testing and laboratory services.
  - 1. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 2. Contractor shall cooperate with the Laboratory to facilitate the execution of its required services.
  - 3. Contractor shall pay for additional samples and tests required for Contractor's convenience or when initial tests indicate work does not comply with Contract Documents.
  - 4. Specific quality-assurance and -control requirements for individual construction activities are specified in the Sections that specify those activities. Requirements in those Sections may also cover production of standard products.
  - 5. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and -control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 6. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and -control services required by Architect, Owner, Commissioning Authority, Construction Manager, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.
- C. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Allowances" for testing and inspecting allowances.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Construction Progress Documentation" for developing a schedule of required tests and inspections.
  - 3. Division 01 Section "Execution" for cutting and patching.
  - 4. Divisions 02 through 49 Sections for specific test and inspection requirements.
  - 5. Division 01 Section "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" (**FOR INFORMATION ONLY – TAB SERVICES PROVIDED BY OWNER**)

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Quality Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.

- B. Quality Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Services do not include contract enforcement activities performed by Architect or Construction Manager.
- C. Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies that are constructed on-site. Mockups are constructed to verify selections made under Sample submittals; to demonstrate aesthetic effects and, where indicated, qualities of materials and execution; to review coordination, testing, or operation; to show interface between dissimilar materials; and to demonstrate compliance with specified installation tolerances. Mockups are not Samples. Unless otherwise indicated, approved mockups establish the standard by which the Work will be judged.
  - 1. Laboratory Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies constructed at testing facility to verify performance characteristics.
  - 2. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Mockups of the exterior envelope erected separately from the building but on Project site, consisting of multiple products, assemblies, and subassemblies.
  - 3. Room Mockups: Mockups of typical interior spaces complete with wall, floor, and ceiling finishes, doors, windows, millwork, casework, specialties, furnishings and equipment, and lighting.
- D. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or compliance with specified criteria.
- E. Product Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed by an NRTL, an NVLAP, or a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.
- F. Source Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source, i.e., plant, mill, factory, or shop.
- G. Field Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.
- H. Testing Agency: An entity engaged by the Owner to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. Testing laboratory shall mean the same as testing agency.
- I. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, and similar operations.
  - 1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a trade or entity does not require that certain construction activities be performed by accredited or unionized individuals, or that requirements specified apply exclusively to specific trade or trades.
- J. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.4 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

- A. Referenced Standards: If compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with

the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

- B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.
- C. Conflicts between the specifications and the construction documents. The most stringent requirement will govern.
- D. Conflicts on specification requirements. The most stringent requirement will govern.

#### 1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Shop Drawings: For [integrated exterior] [laboratory] mockups, provide plans, sections, and elevations, indicating materials and size of mockup construction.
  - 1. Indicate manufacturer and model number of individual components
  - 2. Provide axonometric drawings for conditions difficult to illustrate in two dimensions.

#### 1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Contractor's Quality-Control Plan: For quality-assurance and quality-control activities and responsibilities.
- B. Qualification Data: For Contractor's quality-control personnel.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.
- D. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare in tabular form and include the following, as applicable:
  - 1. Specification Section number and title.
  - 2. Entity responsible for performing tests and inspections.
  - 3. Description of test and inspection.
  - 4. Identification of applicable standards.
  - 5. Identification of test and inspection methods.
  - 6. Number of tests and inspections required.
  - 7. Time schedule or time span for tests and inspections.
  - 8. Requirements for obtaining samples.
  - 9. Unique characteristics of each quality-control service.

#### 1.7 CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY CONTROL PLAN

- A. Quality-Control Plan, General: Submit quality-control plan within 10 days of Notice of Award, and not less than five days prior to preconstruction conference. Submit in format acceptable to Architect. Identify personnel, procedures, controls, instructions, tests, records, and forms to be used to carry out Contractor's quality-assurance and quality-control responsibilities. Coordinate with Contractor's construction schedule.

- B. Quality-Control Personnel Qualifications: Engage qualified full-time personnel trained and experienced in managing and executing quality-assurance and quality-control procedures similar in nature and extent to those required for Project.
  - 1. Project quality-control manager [may also serve as Project superintendent] [shall not have other Project responsibilities].
- C. Submittal Procedure: Describe procedures for ensuring compliance with requirements through review and management of submittal process. Indicate qualifications of personnel responsible for submittal review.
- D. Testing and Inspection: In quality-control plan, include a comprehensive schedule of Work requiring testing or inspection, including the following:
  - 1. Contractor-performed tests and inspections including subcontractor-performed tests and inspections. Include required tests and inspections and Contractor-elected tests and inspections.
  - 2. Special inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction and indicated on the "Statement of Special Inspections."
  - 3. Owner-performed tests and inspections indicated in the Contract Documents [, including tests and inspections indicated to be performed by the Commissioning Authority].
- E. E. Continuous Inspection of Workmanship: Describe process for continuous inspection during construction to identify and correct deficiencies in workmanship in addition to testing and inspection specified. Indicate types of corrective actions to be required to bring work into compliance with standards of workmanship established by Contract requirements and approved mockups.
- F. F. Monitoring and Documentation: Maintain testing and inspection reports including log of approved and rejected results. Include work Architect has indicated as nonconforming or defective. Indicate corrective actions taken to bring nonconforming work into compliance with requirements. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

## 1.8 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

- A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following as applicable:
  - 1. Date of issue.
  - 2. Project title and number.
  - 3. Name, address, and telephone number of testing agency.
  - 4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
  - 5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
  - 6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.
  - 7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
  - 8. Complete test or inspection data.
  - 9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
  - 10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample taking and testing and inspecting.
  - 11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
  - 12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
  - 13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.

- B. **Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports:** Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's technical representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
  - 1. Name, address, and telephone number of technical representative making report.
  - 2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
  - 3. Statement that products at Project site comply with requirements.
  - 4. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
  - 5. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  - 6. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
  - 7. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
  
- C. **Factory-Authorized Service Representative's Reports:** Prepare written information documenting manufacturer's factory-authorized service representative's tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:
  - 1. Name, address, and telephone number of factory-authorized service representative making report.
  - 2. Statement that equipment complies with requirements.
  - 3. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
  - 4. Statement whether conditions, products, and installation will affect warranty.
  - 5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.
  
- D. **Permits, Licenses, and Certificates:** For Owner's records, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents, established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

## 1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. **General:** Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.
  
- B. **Manufacturer Qualifications:** A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
  
- C. **Fabricator Qualifications:** A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.
  
- D. **Installer Qualifications:** A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.
  
- E. **Professional Engineer Qualifications:** A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or products that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.

- F. Specialists: Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities shall be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists shall satisfy qualification requirements indicated and shall be engaged for the activities indicated.
  - 1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction shall supersede requirements for specialists.
  
- G. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspecting indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 329, 'Standards of Recommended Practices for Inspection and Testing Agencies for Concrete and Steel as Used in Construction'; and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.
  - 1. NRTL: A nationally recognized testing laboratory according to 29 CFR 1910.7.
  - 2. NVLAP: A testing agency accredited according to NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program.
  
- H. Manufacturer's Technical Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
  
- I. Factory-Authorized Service Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.
  
- J. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:
  - 1. Build mockups in location and of size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect [or Construction Manager].
  - 2. Notify Architect [and Construction Manager] seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
  - 3. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers that will be employed during the construction at Project.
  - 4. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
  - 5. Obtain Architect's [and Construction Manager's] approval of mockups before starting work, fabrication, or construction.
    - a. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
  - 6. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
  - 7. Demolish and remove mockups when directed unless otherwise indicated.
  
- K. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Construct integrated exterior mockup [according to approved Shop Drawings] [as indicated on Drawings]. Coordinate installation of exterior envelope materials and products for which mockups are required in individual Specification Sections, along with supporting materials.
  
- L. Room Mockups: Construct room mockups incorporating required materials and assemblies, finished according to requirements. Provide required lighting and additional lighting where required to enable Architect to evaluate quality of the Work. Provide room mockups of the following rooms:
  - 1. List or rooms requiring mockups.

## 1.10 QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.
1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspecting they are engaged to perform.
  2. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor, and the Contract Sum will be adjusted by Change Order.
- B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities required to verify that the Work complies with requirements, whether specified or not.
1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
  2. GC/Contractor will have a quality control program in place to review the installation and serviceability of all field devices and valves.
  3. For tests and inspections performed by the Owner's Testing Laboratories:
    - a. Cooperate with Laboratory personnel; provide access to Work and to manufacturer's operations.
    - b. Secure and deliver to the Laboratory adequate quantities of representational samples of materials proposed to be used and which require testing.
    - c. Furnish to the Laboratory proposed concrete design mixes, and other material mixes which require evaluation by the Testing Laboratory, a minimum of fourteen (14) days prior to use on the Project.
    - d. Furnish incidental labor and facilities
      - 1) To provide access to Work to be tested.
      - 2) To obtain and handle samples at the Project site or at the source product to be tested.
      - 3) To facilitate inspections and tests.
      - 4) For safe storage and curing of test samples.
      - 5) Notify Laboratory, PM and Architect sufficiently in advance of operations to allow for Laboratory assignment of personnel and scheduling of tests.
        - a) When test or inspections cannot be performed after such notice, reimburse Laboratory for personnel and travel expenses incurred due to Contractor's negligence.
      - 6) Make arrangements with Laboratory and pay for additional samples, tests, or inspections as required for the Contractor's convenience.
      - 7) Make arrangements with Laboratory and pay for additional samples and tests required when initial test indicate non-compliance with Contract Documents, including load test.
  4. Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities required to verify that the Work complies with requirements, whether specified or not.
    - a. Unless otherwise indicated, provide quality-control services specified and those required by authorities having jurisdiction. Perform quality-control services required of Contractor by authorities having jurisdiction, whether specified or not.
    - b. Retain first subparagraph below if some Specification Sections require an independent testing agency to perform certain tests and inspections.
    - c. Where services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, engage a qualified testing agency to perform these quality-control services.
    - d. Retain first subparagraph below to assure validity of agencies' reports.

- e. Notify testing agencies at least twenty-four (24) hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspecting will be performed.
  - f. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
5. Testing and inspecting requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents is Contractor's responsibility.
  6. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.
- C. **Manufacturer's Field Services:** Where indicated, engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect field-assembled components and equipment installation, including service connections. Report results in writing as specified in Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures."
- D. **Manufacturer's Technical Services:** Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's technical representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's technical representative's services include participation in preinstallation conferences, examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, observation of Installer activities, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.
- E. **Retesting/Reinspecting:** Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.
- F. **Testing Agency Responsibilities:** Cooperate with Architect, Commissioning Authority, Construction Manager, and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.
1. Notify Architect, Commissioning Authority, Construction Manager, and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.
  2. Determine the location from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
  3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from requirements.
  4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality control service through Contractor.
  5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
  6. Do not perform any duties of Contractor.
- G. **Associated Services:** Cooperate with agencies performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
1. Access to the Work.
  2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
  3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspecting. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
  4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
  5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
  6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
  7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspecting equipment at Project site.



- H. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and -control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspecting.
  - 1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.
- I. Schedule of Tests and Inspections: Prepare a schedule of tests, inspections, and similar quality-control services required by the Contract Documents. Coordinate and submit concurrently with Contractor's construction schedule. Update as the Work progresses. .
  - 1. Distribution: Distribute schedule to Owner, PM, Architect, Commissioning Authority, Construction Manager, testing agencies, and each party involved in performance of portions of the Work where tests and inspections are required.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

- A. Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
  - 1. Date test or inspection was conducted.
  - 2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
  - 3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
  - 4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.
- B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and modifications as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's, Commissioning Authority's, Construction Manager's reference during normal working hours.

### 3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

- A. General: On completion of testing, inspecting, sample taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.
  - 1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Division 01 Section "Execution."
- B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.
- C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

**END OF SECTION 01 40 00**

## SECTION 01 42 00 - REFERENCES

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 DESCRIPTION OF WORK REQUIREMENTS

- A. General: This Section specifies procedural and administrative requirements for compliance with governing regulations and codes and standards imposed upon the Work. These requirements include the obtaining of permits, licenses, inspections, releases, and similar statements, as well as payments, associated with regulations, codes, and standards.
- B. "Regulations" is defined to include laws, statutes, ordinances, and lawful orders issued by governing authorities, as well as those rules, conventions and agreements within the construction industry which effectively control the performance of the Work regardless of whether they are lawfully imposed by governing authority or not.
- C. Governing Regulations: Refer to General and Supplementary Conditions for requirements related to compliance with governing regulations.

#### 1.3 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

- A. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference. Individual Specification Sections indicate which codes and standards the Contractor must keep available at the project site for reference.
- B. Publication Dates: Comply with standards in effect as of date of the Contract Documents unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Conflicting Requirements: Where compliance with two or more standards is specified, and where these standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, the most stringent requirement will be enforced, unless the Contract Documents specifically indicate a less stringent requirement. Refer requirements that are different, but apparently equal, and uncertainties as to which quality level is more stringent to the Architect/Engineer for a decision before proceeding.
- D. Minimum Quantities or Quality Levels: In every instance the quantity or quality level shown or specified is intended to be the minimum for the work to be provided or performed. Unless otherwise indicated, the actual work may either comply exactly, within specified tolerances, with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or may exceed that minimum within reasonable limits. In complying with these requirements, the indicated numeric values are either minimum or maximum values, as noted, or as appropriate for context of the requirements. Refer instances of uncertainty to the Architect/Engineer for decision before proceeding.

1.4 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

- A. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the trade association, standards-producing organization, authorities having jurisdiction or other entity applicable to the context of the text provision.
- B. Code Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the.
- C. Standards and Regulations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the standards and regulations

1.06 SUBMITTALS

- A. Permits, Licenses and Certificates: For the Owner's records, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, and similar documents, correspondence, and records established in conjunction with compliance with standards and regulations bearing upon performance of the Work.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

**END OF SECTION 01 42 00**

**SECTION 01 42 19**

**REFERENCE STANDARDS**

Referenced tests, Material standards and specifications are the minimum requirements. The Contractor will meet the requirements and recommendations of the applicable portions of the standards listed. Where compliance with two (2) or more industry standards or requirements are specified, and the overlapping of those different or conflicting minimums for levels of quality, the most stringent requirements is intended and will be enforced. The Contractor shall notify the Owner of any conflicts that are to be resolved.

1. City Standard Specifications and Details, Current Edition.
2. North Central Texas Council of Governments (COG) Standard Specifications for Public Works Construction, Current Edition and Amendments.
3. Texas Highway Department Standard Specification for Construction of Highways, Streets and Bridges, Current Addition and Amendments.
4. American Associations of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO), Current Editions.
5. American Water Works Associations (AWWA), Current Editions.
6. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM), Current Edition.

Any Reference to Methods of Measurement or Payment in Reference Standards or Specifications are not applicable.

**END OF SECTION**

## SECTION 01 45 23

### HVAC TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING

#### PART 1 - GENERAL

##### 1.01 REQUIREMENTS INCLUDED

- A. Owner will employ and pay for the service of an Independent Testing Agency for Testing, Adjusting and Balancing (TAB) of HVAC systems.
  - 1. The Testing, Adjusting and Balancing of air conditioning systems will be performed by an impartial Independent Technical Firm whose operations are primarily engaged in the field of professional TAB. TAB work shall be done under direct supervision of a professional engineer, licensed in the State of Texas, a Test and Balance Engineer (TBE, AABC) or TAB Certified Professional (TAB CP, NEBB), or other experienced/certified TAB professional deemed appropriate by the Owner. All personnel performing TAB work shall be fulltime, regular employees of the TAB firm.
  - 2. The Contractor shall cooperate with the Owner provided TAB firm; provide necessary data on design and proper application of system components; furnish labor and materials required to eliminate any deficiencies or mal-performance.

##### 1.2 RELATED WORK

- A. Drawings and General Provisions of the Contract, including General, Supplementary and Other Conditions and Division – 1 Specifications Sections, apply to work of this Section.
- B. Refer to Division 23 and Division 26 for testing in conjunction with Mechanical and Electrical work.

##### 1.3 QUALIFICATION OF HVAC TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING FIRM

- A. Minimum Qualification of HVAC Testing, Adjusting and Balancing Firm:
  - 1. General:
    - a. Each professional firm desiring to submit proposals for testing and balancing HVAC systems for Project shall submit necessary brochures describing history of firm and qualifications of personnel to Architect.
    - b. Each professional firm shall have a minimum of five years of experience.
    - c. Each submittal shall contain a listing of similar projects.
    - d. Each professional firm submitting such information on its qualifications and personnel shall keep information current by submitting supplemental data a minimum of once every six (6) months or when professional or technical personnel who shall perform the work may change.
    - e. Each professional firm warrants by submittal of its personnel qualifications that such personnel shall be used in the performance of the work. In the event of personnel change, professional firm submitting proposal shall submit complete qualifications and experience of new personnel. Owner, upon acceptance of proposal, expects work to be performed by the personnel whose experience is so described.

2. Qualifications of Firm:

- a. Firm shall be one which is licensed to perform professional services of this specified type and as a minimum have one professional engineer (PE), TBE or TAB CP (or equivalent) with current registration/certification to perform such professional services.
- b. Firm shall be capable of performing services at location of facility described within time specified, preparing and submitting the detailed report of actual field work as may be required.
- c. Firm shall be a member in good standing of Associated Air Balance Council (AABC), National Environmental Balancing Bureau (NEBB), or other experienced/certified TAB governing body deemed appropriate by the Owner, and listed in its current relevant directory.

1.4 TAB FIRM DUTIES AND RESPONSIBILITIES

A. HVAC Testing and Balancing:

1. TAB firm shall act as liaison between Owner, Architect, and Contractor and inspect installation of mechanical piping systems, sheet metal work, temperature controls, and other component parts of Heating, Air- Conditioning and Ventilating systems. Inspection of work shall cover that part relating to proper arrangement and adequate provisions for Testing and Balancing.
2. TAB firm, within sixty (60) days of its employment, shall review Drawings and Specifications to identify potential Testing/Balancing problems and to determine if there are adequate provisions for Testing and Balancing systems. Report any problem to Architect or Architect's representative and Program/Project Manager.
3. Upon completion of installation, start-up, and Controls Contractor point to point verification review on mechanical equipment, check, adjust and balance system components to obtain design conditions in each conditioned space in building. Prepare and submit to Owner, or Owner's delegated representative, complete reports on the Test/Balance and operation of systems.
4. Permanent employed technicians or engineers of firm must do measurements and recorded readings of air, water and electricity that appear in reports.
5. Make a total of three (3) inspections within ninety (90) days after occupancy of building to insure that satisfactory conditions are being maintained throughout and to satisfy any unusual conditions.
6. Make an inspection in building during opposite season in which initial adjustments were made, and at that time make any necessary modifications to initial adjustment required to produce optimum operation of system components to produce proper conditions in each conditioned space. At time of opposite season checkout, Owner's representative shall be timely notified before any readings or adjustments.

1.5 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES

A. HVAC Testing, Adjusting and Balancing

1. Contractor shall add TAB activities to the Project schedule to allow TAB completion prior to the scheduled Substantial Completion date. TAB completion requires fully functioning HVAC, Lighting and Domestic Hot Water Systems, including all necessary controls. The Owner may occupy the completed areas of the site and existing building prior to Substantial Completion. Cooperate with the Owner during TAB operations to minimize conflicts with Owner's operations
2. Have all systems complete in operational readiness prior to notifying TAB firm that Project is ready for their services. Include scheduled testing dates and times requested allowing a minimum of 7 days prior notification and so certify in writing to Owner that such a condition exists.
3. Make any changes in sheaves, belts and dampers or the addition of dampers required for correct balance as required by TAB firm, at no additional cost to the Owner or TAB Firm.
3. Provide and coordinate services of qualified, responsible subcontractors, suppliers and personnel as required to correct, repair or replace any and all deficient items or conditions found during the Testing, Adjusting and Balancing period.
4. In order that systems may be properly Tested, Adjusted and Balanced as required by these specifications and industry standards, operate said systems for length of time necessary to properly verify that the equipment is free from defects and meets the operational requirements outlined in this Specification and the construction documents. Indicate the completion and readiness for TAB and pay costs of operations during TAB period. Contractor's failure to complete the TAB work by the scheduled date of Substantial Completion will not be a reason to extend the Substantial Completion date, the Final Completion date, or for the Contractor to receive additional monies.
5. The costs for the TAB Firm to re-evaluate functionality of systems due to open issues shall be bore by the Contractor.
6. The TAB Firm will be available for two attempts of Testing, Adjusting and Balancing the Systems with minimal follow-up where necessary (due to deficiencies, systems not ready, incomplete work, etc.) in an effort to accomplish the TAB requirements. When additional work or project site visits are required because Systems are not ready or because they do not successfully meet industry standard installation and functionality requirements, the Contractor will be charged for the TAB Firm's additional reasonable re-testing costs. Charges include a flat fee of \$300 plus an hourly fee at the TAB Firm's standard rates per employee that mobilized to the project site for each visit. Additional fees will be paid to the TAB Firm by the Owner and shall be reimbursed to the Owner by the Contractor.
7. Complete operational readiness, prior to commencement to TAB services shall include the following:
  - a. Construction status of building permits closing of doors, windows and ceilings installed to obtain projected operational conditions.
  - b. All Volume damper handles shall be clearly identified with red/orange/yellow vinyl tape to identify locations.

- c. A clean/new set of Final Filters shall be installed prior to the commencement of TAB services.
8. Air Distribution Systems:
- a. Verify installation for conformity to design. Supply, return and exhaust ducts terminated and pressure tested for leakage as required by Specifications.
  - b. Volume and fire dampers properly located and functional. All dampers shall be left in the fully open position. Dampers serving requirements of minimum and maximum outside air, return and relief, shall provide tight closure and smooth operation.
  - c. Supply, return, exhaust and transfer grills, registers, diffusers and terminal units installed, connected and fully functional.
  - d. Air handling systems, units and associated apparatus, such as filter sections and access doors, shall be blanked or sealed to eliminate excessive bypass or air leakage.
  - e. Fans (supply, return, and exhaust) operating and verified for freedom from vibration, proper fan rotation and belt tension; heater elements shall be proper size and rating; all VFDs shall be fully functional and programmed; record motor amperage and voltage and verify name plate ratings are not exceeded.
9. Water Circulating Systems:
- a. Check and verify pump alignment and rotation.
  - b. Position and valves pertinent to system design and require operation to permit full flow of water through system components. Operate hydronic systems under full flow conditions until circulating water is clean. Strainers shall be removed and cleaned as required during this cycle of operation.
  - c. Record each pump motor amperage and voltage. Readings shall not exceed nameplate rating.
  - d. Verify electrical heater elements to be of proper size and rating or VFD programming complete.
  - e. Water circulating systems shall be full of water and free of air, expansion tanks set for proper water level and air vents installed at high points of systems and operating freely. Verify that the Make-up water pressure is set properly. All manual flow control valves shall be left in the fully open position.
  - f. Check and set operating temperature of heat exchangers to design requirements.
  - g. Submit digital copies of the recorded findings on the above mentioned items to the TAB firm.



10. Automatic Controls:
  - a. Verify that control components are installed in accordance with Project requirements and functional, including electrical interlocks, damper sequences, freeze-stats and smoke detectors.
  - b. Controlling instruments shall be functional and set for designed operating conditions. Factory pre-calibration of thermostats will not be acceptable.
11. TAB firm will not instruct/direct Contractor in any of the work, but will make such reports as are necessary direct to Owner.
12. For design document required plans and miscellaneous adjustment devices for purpose of adjustment to obtain design conditions; install these devices in a manner that will leave them readily accessible, provide access as required by TAB firm.
13. Provide Plans, Plan Revisions, Architectural Specifications, and Change Orders to TAB firm at least 21 days prior to commencement of TAB work.
14. Provide approved Submittal data on equipment installed and related changes required to accomplish test procedures outlined in this Section of the Specification to the TAB firm at least 21 days prior to commencement of TAB work.
15. Transmit one (1) copy of the following 'Record for Owner' to TAB firm for review and comments at least 21 days before commencement of TAB work:
  - a. 'As installed' drawings.
  - b. Approved Fixture Brochure.
  - c. Approved Wiring Diagrams.
  - d. Approved Control Diagrams.
  - e. Approved, Implemented and Verified Sequences of Operations
  - f. Shop Drawings.
  - g. Approved Submittals.

1.6 HVAC TESTING, ADJUSTING AND BALANCING

A. Testing and Balancing Air Systems:

1. Test and adjust air systems to conditions set forth in Plans and Specifications. Air systems include:
  - a. Supply Air Systems.
  - b. Return Air Systems.
  - c. Exhaust Air Systems.

2. In fan systems, air quantities indicated on Plans may be varied as required to secure a maximum temperature variation of two (2) degrees within each controlled space, but total air quantity indicated for each zone must be obtained.
3. Test and Adjust blowers and fan to deliver CFM required by systems with concurrent recording of RPM, supply voltage and full load amperes. Report any changes of belts and sheaves required.
4. Make Pitot tube traverses of main supply, return and exhaust ducts and adjust fans and dampers to achieve specified air volumes. Patch and cover the Pitot tube holes after air balancing is complete. For Equipment exposed to the sun, metal grommets shall be used.
5. Test and Adjust fresh air intake and return air dampers and louvers to conditions scheduled or required.
6. Test and record static pressure on entering and leaving side of each supply fan, exhaust fan filter, coil and balancing dampers and other components of the system.
7. Test and adjust supply air diffusers, grilles, and return air registers to Specification requirements and as shown on Drawings. Adjust supply diffuser pattern blades for proper air distribution in each room or space.
8. A test and balance report shall be completed and submitted to the Owner that includes air flow, temperature and pressure test results for all HVAC equipment/systems included in the project. The systems shall include unit testing that verifies control system correct operation.

B. Testing and Adjusting of Water System:

1. Flow of water through water coils shall be adjusted by adjusting valves until rated pressure drop across each coil is obtained and water flow verified by Venturi readings. On those with three-way valves, rated pressure drop shall first be adjusted though coils in each of several systems and the temperature differential between inlet and outlet shall be determined to be in accordance with its rating. Bypass valves shall then be adjusted on each coil until an equal pressure drop between supply and return connections is obtained with three-way valves set to bypass all coils in each of the several systems.
2. Geothermal Heat Pumps TAB shall be performed with a single unit per well field operating. This single unit balancing shall include both the air side, particularly the outside air, and the water side.

C. Testing and Adjusting of Automatic Controls:

1. Test automatic controls, controlled devices, interlocks, safety devices associated with HVAC system for proper operation and sequence during heating, cooling, intermediate and smoke removal modes of operation. Adjust automatic controls to deliver required quantities of air at temperatures specified or scheduled on Plans and to maintain proper conditions in each room of the building.
2. Report deficiencies or malfunctions to Owner in the form of a formal, written Deficiency Report.

D. Equipment Settings:

1. Before final acceptance of reports is made, TAB firm shall furnish Owner the following data:

- a. Summary of main supply, return and exhaust duct Pitot tube traverses and fan settings indicating minimum value required to achieve specified air volumes.
- b. A tabulated record of temperature in all spaces on each separately controlled zone, together with outside temperature at time of measurement.
- c. A list of measured air quantities at each outlet corresponding to temperature tabulation specified above.
- d. Air quantities at each return and exhaust air-handling devices.
- e. Supply pressure readings entering and leaving each supply fan, exhaust fan, filter, balancing dampers and other components of ventilation equipment and systems. These readings shall be quantified using fan curves in terms of CFM handled.
- f. Motor current readings per phase at each equipment motor. Voltage at time of reading shall be listed.
- g. Water pressure reading at gauge connections. Pressure readings at coils and pumps shall be quantified using coil and pump curves in terms of GPM flow through metering stations at each coil if applicable.
- h. Water temperature readings entering and leaving each coil and heat exchanger under maximum load conditions in each case.
- i. Unless specified otherwise in Specification 23 05 93, set HVAC system airflow and water flow rates within the following tolerances:

A. Supply, Return, Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans:

1. +/- 10 % of Design conditions.

B. Air Devices

1. +/-10 % of Design conditions.

C. Hydronic Flow Rates

1. +/- 10 % of Design conditions.

2. The final report shall certify test methods and instrumentation used, final velocity reading obtained, air quantities at each outlet supply, return, exhaust, temperature, pressure drops, RPM of equipment, amperage of motors, air balancing problems encountered, recommendations and uncompleted punch list items.

3. A summary of actual operating conditions shall be included on each system outlining normal and/or ventilation cycles of operation. The intent of final report will provide a reference of actual operating conditions for Owner's operating personnel

4. Certificate of Substantial Completion will not be signed by the Owner unless an acceptable TAB deficiency report has been provided and accepted by the Owner. An acceptable deficiency report shall indicate that the TAB work is completed except for deficiencies that can be resolved within 14 days.
5. Ensure that all systems are balanced at the proper time in the opposite season.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 01 45 23

## SECTION 01 50 00 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Summary" for work restrictions and limitations on utility interruptions.
  - 2. Division 32 Section "Concrete Paving" for construction and maintenance of cement concrete pavement for temporary roads and paved areas.

#### 1.3 DESCRIPTION OF REQUIREMENTS.

- A. Connections for temporary and permanent utilities and payment for temporary utilities services required for the Work, whether the Work is new construction or renovation of an existing facility, are the responsibility of the Contractor. Cost or use charges for temporary services or facilities will not be accepted as a basis of claims for a Change Order. Temporary utilities services required for use at the project site include but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Water service and sewer.
  - 2. Temporary electric power and light.
  - 3. Telephone service and internet.
  - 4. Provide adequate utility capacity at each stage of construction.
  - 5. Prior to availability of temporary utilities at the site, provide trucked-in-services for start-up of construction operations.
- B. Temporary construction and support facilities required for the Project include but are not limited to the following:
  - 1. Temporary heat.
  - 2. Field offices and storage sheds.
  - 3. Sanitary facilities, including drinking water.
  - 4. Dewatering facilities and drains.
  - 5. Temporary enclosures.
  - 6. First aid station.
  - 7. Project identification, bulletin boards and signs.
  - 8. Waste disposal services.
  - 9. Rodent and pest control.
  - 10. Construction aids and miscellaneous general services and facilities.
  - 11. Alternate temporary services and facilities, equivalent to those specified, may be used, subject to acceptance by the Architect/Engineer and Program Manager.
  - 12. Temporary Interior Barriers
  - 13. Temporary Exterior Barriers

- C. Security and protection facilities and services required for Project include but are not limited to the following:
1. Temporary protected interior walkway between occupied building areas.
  2. Dust barricade between occupied building areas and work areas.
  3. Temporary fire protection.
  4. Barricades, warning signs, lights.
  5. Sidewalk bridge or enclosure fence for the site.
  6. Environmental protection.
  7. Alternate security and protection methods or facilities, equivalent to those specified, may be used, subject to acceptance by the Architect/Engineer.
  8. The Contractor shall provide a temporary barrier whenever a certain area of the school is sealed off for remodeling work for phasing purposes. The barrier shall be made of 3/4" plywood or drywall, and it shall extend from floor to ceiling, wall to wall. The temporary barrier shall have a door which can be locked. This barrier will remain until work in the specified area is completely finished. The barrier may subsequently be moved to a different location, provided that it still meets the requirements. Proper signage should be displayed near the temporary barrier, according to safety regulations. Any temporary barriers will need to be coordinated with the emergency egress plan of the building. Signage is to be paid for by an Owners allowance of \$7,500.00. Bond Marketing has oversight of graphic approval and vendor.
  9. Temporary Construction Screening with Dallas ISD graphics is to be paid for by an Owners allowance of \$8,000.00. Bond Marketing has oversight of graphic approval and vendor. No signs serving as advertisement shall be allowed. (Refer to 3.3 in 01.50.00)
  10. Barrier requirements for minor renovation work will be discussed and agreed upon at weekly progress meetings.

#### 1.4 USE CHARGES

- A. General: Installation and removal of and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to Owner, Program Manager, Architect, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.

#### 1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Site Plan: Show temporary facilities, utility hookups, staging areas (including dumpster, construction trailer, temporary fencing, silt fence, storage units and portable toilets), and parking areas for construction personnel.
- B. Erosion- and Sedimentation-Control Plan: Show compliance with requirements of relevant Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
- C. Moisture-Protection Plan: Describe procedures and controls for protecting materials and construction from water absorption and damage, including delivery, handling, and storage provisions for materials subject to water absorption or water damage, discarding water-damaged materials, protocols for mitigating water intrusion into completed Work, and replacing water damaged Work.
1. Indicate sequencing of work that requires water, such as sprayed fire-resistive materials, plastering, and terrazzo grinding, and describe plans for dealing with water from these operations. Show procedures for verifying that wet construction has dried sufficiently to permit installation of finish materials.

- D. Dust-Control and HVAC-Control Plan: Submit coordination drawing and narrative that indicates the dust-control and HVAC-control measures proposed for use, proposed locations, and proposed time frame for their operation. Identify further options if proposed measures are later determined to be inadequate. Include the following:
  1. Locations of dust-control partitions at each phase of the work.
  2. HVAC system isolation schematic drawing.
  3. Other dust-control measures.
  4. Waste management plan.

## 1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulations: Comply with requirements of local laws and regulations governing construction and local industry standards, in the installation and maintenance of temporary services and facilities, including but not limited to the following:
  1. Building Codes, including local requirements for permits, testing and inspections.
  2. Health and safety regulations.
  3. Utility company regulations and recommendations governing temporary utility services.
  4. Police and Fire Department rules and recommendations.
  5. Environmental protection regulations governing use of water and energy, and the control of dust, noise and other nuisances.
  6. In addition, comply with "Environmental Impact" commitments the Owner or previous Owners of the site may have made to secure approval to proceed with construction of the Project.
- B. Standards: Comply with the requirements of NFPA Code 241, "Safeguarding Construction, Alterations, and Demolition Operations", the ANSI A10.6 "Safety Requirements for Construction and Demolition", and the NECA National Joint Guideline NJG-6 "Temporary Job Utilities and Services".
- C. Inspections: Inspect and test each service before placing temporary utilities in use. Arrange for require inspections and tests by governing authorities, and obtain required certifications, and permits for use.
- D. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.

## 1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. General: Provide each temporary service and facility ready for use at each location when the service or facility is first needed to avoid delay in performance of the Work. Maintain, expand as required and modify temporary services or facilities as needed throughout the progress of the Work. Do not remove until services or facilities are no longer needed, or are replaced by the authorized use of completed permanent facilities.
- B. Conditions of Use: Operate temporary services and facilities in a safe and efficient manner. Do not overload temporary services or facilities, and do not permit them to interfere with the progress of the Work. Do not allow unsanitary conditions, public nuisances or hazardous conditions to develop or persist on the site.
- C. Temporary Utilities: Do not permit the freezing of pipes, flooding or the contamination of water sources.

- D. Security and Protection: Maintain site security and protection facilities in a safe, lawful and publicly acceptable manner. Take necessary measures to prevent erosion of the site.
- E. The roof removal and new roof installation shall proceed on a phased basis to minimize risk to the School's ongoing operations and its property. The GC shall be responsible for protection of interior spaces from damage during roofing work.
- F. Distribute material, debris, and equipment over the roof deck to avoid damage to the structural deck. Not more than two weeks supply of material shall be stored on a roof at any given time. Place materials and equipment to be stored on the roof as nearly direct over structural members as can be determined. Secure equipment, material, and debris on the roof to prevent movement by wind or other elements. Contractor assumes full responsibility for loading on the structural deck or roofing materials during roof replacement operations.
- G. Consult with the A/E and the Construction Services PM regarding permission for the use of selected areas with the building. Coordination will also be held with the Principal and / or site staff.
- H. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.
- I. Areas utilized for temporary facilities, staging area, construction access and controls, shall be reestablished to its original condition at the time of substantial completion or demobilization, whichever comes first.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide new materials and equipment for temporary services and facilities; used materials and equipment that are undamaged and in serviceable condition may be used, if acceptable to the Architect/Engineer. Provide only materials and equipment that are recognized as being suitable for the intended use, by compliance with appropriate standards.
- B. Portable Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch 0.148-inch- thick, galvanized steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch OD line posts and 2-7/8-inch- OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- OD top and bottom rails. Provide galvanized steel bases for supporting posts.
- C. Polyethylene Sheet: Reinforced, fire-resistive sheet, 10 mils minimum thickness, with flame-spread rating of 15 or less per ASTM E 84.
- D. Dust Control Adhesive-Surface Walk-off Mats: Provide mats minimum 36 by 60.

### 2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

- A. Field Offices, General: Prefabricated or mobile units with serviceable finishes, temperature controls, and foundations adequate for normal loading.



- B. Common-Use Field Office: Of sufficient size to accommodate needs of Owner, PM, Architect, and construction personnel office activities and to accommodate project meetings specified in other Division 01 Sections. Keep office clean and orderly. Furnish and equip offices as follows:
  - 1. Furniture required for Project-site documents including file cabinets, plan tables, plan racks, and bookcases. Assign one desk for the Program Manager and/or Architect, with printer and scanner access.
  - 2. Conference room of sufficient size to accommodate meetings of 8 individuals (minimum). Provide electrical power service and 120-V ac duplex receptacles, with not less than 1 receptacle on each wall. Furnish room with conference table, chairs, and 4-foot-square tack and marker boards.
  - 3. Coffee maker and supplies.
  - 4. Heating and cooling equipment necessary to maintain a uniform indoor temperature of 68 to 72 deg F.
  - 5. Lighting fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of 20 fc at desk height.
- C. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.
  - 1. These shall be weather tight, structurally sound, compliant with applicable codes and shall be secure
  - 2. Store combustible materials apart from building.
- D. Temporary Construction and Support Facilities: Provide facilities that can be maintained properly throughout their use at the Project site.
- E. Self-Contained Toilet Units:
  - 1. Sanitary facilities include temporary toilets, with facilities and drinking water fixtures. Comply with governing regulations including safety and health codes for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities; provide not less than specified requirements. Install in locations that will best serve the Project's needs.
  - 2. Provide single-occupant self-contained toilet units of the chemical, aerated recirculation, or combustion type, properly vented and fully enclosed with a glass fiber reinforced polyester shell or similar non-absorbent material. Provide at least one for every thirty (30) employees.

## 2.3 EQUIPMENT

- A. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.
- B. HVAC Equipment: Unless Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system, provide vented, self-contained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.
  - 1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
  - 2. Heating Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
  - 3. Permanent HVAC System: If Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system for temporary use during construction, provide filter with MERV of 8 at each return air grille in system and remove at end of construction.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
  - 1. Locate facilities to limit site disturbance as specified in Division 01 Section "Summary of Work."
- B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

### 3.2 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

- A. General: Install temporary service or connect to existing service.
  - 1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
- B. Sewers and Drainage: Provide temporary utilities to remove effluent lawfully.
  - 1. Connect temporary sewers to municipal system as directed by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Water Service: Connect to Owner's existing water service facilities. Clean and maintain water service facilities in a condition acceptable to Owner. At Substantial Completion, restore these facilities to condition existing before initial use.
- D. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets, wash facilities, and drinking water for use of construction personnel. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
- E. Heating and Cooling: Provide temporary heating and cooling required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
- F. Isolation of Work Areas in Occupied Facilities: Prevent dust, fumes, and odors from entering occupied areas.
  - 1. Prior to commencing work, isolate the HVAC system in area where work is to be performed in accordance with approved coordination drawings.
    - a. Disconnect supply and return ductwork in work area from HVAC systems servicing occupied areas.
    - b. Maintain negative air pressure within work area using HEPA-equipped air filtration units, starting with commencement of temporary partition construction, and continuing until removal of temporary partitions is complete.
  - 2. Maintain dust partitions during the Work. Use vacuum collection attachments on dust-producing equipment. Isolate limited work within occupied areas using portable dust containment devices.
  - 3. Perform daily construction cleanup and final cleanup using approved, HEPA-filter-equipped vacuum equipment.
- G. Ventilation and Humidity Control: Provide temporary ventilation required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed. Coordinate ventilation requirements to produce ambient condition required and minimize energy consumption.

1. Provide dehumidification systems when required to reduce substrate moisture levels to level required to allow installation or application of finishes.
- H. Electric Power Service: Connect to Owner's existing electric power service. Maintain equipment in a condition acceptable to Owner. Electrical power service to the project office trailer and other elements and areas of the Contractor's office and staging area is to be provided by the Contractor by means of a temporary power service with a temporary account separate from the facility electrical power service.
- I. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.
1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.
- J. Telephone Service: Provide temporary telephone service in common-use facilities for use by all construction personnel. Install one telephone line(s) for each field office.
1. Provide additional telephone lines for the following:
    - a. Provide a dedicated telephone line for each facsimile machine in each field office.
  2. At each telephone, post a list of important telephone numbers.
    - a. Police and fire departments.
    - b. Ambulance service.
    - c. Contractor's home office.
    - d. Architect's office.
    - e. Engineers' offices.
    - f. Program Manager's office.
    - g. Principal subcontractors' field and home offices.
  3. Provide superintendent with cellular telephone.
- K. Electronic Communication Service: Provide a desktop computer in the primary field office adequate for use by Architect and Owner to access project electronic documents and maintain electronic communications. The computer should be equipped in a manner that provides effective access of project electronic documents and use of electronic communications (e-mail), printer and scanner. Wireless internet access optional.

### 3.3 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

- A. General: Comply with the following:
1. Provide construction for temporary offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within 30 feet of building lines that is noncombustible according to ASTM E 136. Comply with NFPA 241.
  2. Maintain support facilities until Architect schedules Substantial Completion inspection. Remove before Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.
- B. Parking: Provide temporary parking areas for construction personnel.
- C. Project Signs: Provide Project signs as indicated. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
1. Identification Signs: Provide Project identification signs as indicated in this section.
  2. Temporary Signs: Provide other signs as indicated and as required to informing the public and individuals seeking entrance to Project.
    - a. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.
  3. Maintain and touchup signs so they are legible at all times.

4. No other signs shall be allowed on site with the exception of those that are safety oriented. No signs serving as advertisement shall be allowed.
- D. Existing Elevator Use: Use of Owner's existing elevators will be permitted, provided elevators are cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to Owner. At Substantial Completion, restore elevators to condition existing before initial use, including replacing worn cables, guide shoes, and similar items of limited life.
1. Do not load elevators beyond their rated weight capacity.
  2. Provide protective coverings, barriers, devices, signs, or other procedures to protect elevator car and entrance doors and frame. If, despite such protection, elevators become damaged, engage elevator Installer to restore damaged work so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in field to the shop, make required repairs and refinish entire unit, or provide new units as required.
- E. Existing Stair Usage: Use of Owner's existing stairs will be permitted, provided stairs are cleaned and maintained in a condition acceptable to Owner. At Substantial Completion, restore stairs to condition existing before initial use.
1. Provide protective coverings, barriers, devices, signs, or other procedures to protect stairs and to maintain means of egress. If stairs become damaged, restore damaged areas so no evidence remains of correction work.
- F. Temporary Use of Permanent Stairs: Use of new stairs for construction traffic will be permitted, provided stairs are protected and finishes restored to new condition at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Security Enclosure and Lockup: Install temporary enclosure around partially completed areas of construction. Provide lockable entrances to prevent unauthorized entrance, vandalism, theft, and similar violations of security. Lock entrances at end of each work day.
- H. Covered Walkway: Erect protective, covered walkway for passage of individuals through or adjacent to Project site. Coordinate with entrance gates, other facilities, and obstructions. Comply with regulations of authorities having jurisdiction and requirements indicated on Drawings.
1. Construct covered walkways using scaffold or shoring framing.
  2. Provide overhead decking, protective enclosure walls, handrails, barricades, warning signs, exit signs, lights, safe and well-drained walkways, and similar provisions for protection and safe passage.
  3. Paint and maintain appearance of walkway for duration of the Work.
- I. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weather tight enclosure for building exterior.
1. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is not complete, insulate temporary enclosures.
- J. Temporary Partitions: Provide floor-to-ceiling dustproof partitions to limit dust and dirt migration and to separate occupied areas fumes and noise.
1. Construct dustproof partitions with gypsum wallboard with joints taped on occupied side, and fire-retardant plywood on construction operations side.
  2. Where fire-resistance-rated temporary partitions are indicated or are required by authorities having jurisdiction, construct partitions according to the rated assemblies.
  3. Insulate partitions to control noise transmission to occupied areas.
  4. Seal joints and perimeter. Equip partitions with gasketed dustproof doors and security locks where openings are required.
  5. Coordinate with Dallas ISD Bond Marketing Graphics.
  6. Protect air-handling equipment.

- 7. Provide walk-off mats at each entrance through temporary partition.
- K. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241.
  - 1. Prohibit smoking on school property per State Law.
  - 2. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
  - 3. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.
  - 4. Provide temporary standpipes and hoses for fire protection. Hang hoses with a warning sign stating that hoses are for fire-protection purposes only and are not to be removed. Match hose size with outlet size and equip with suitable nozzles.

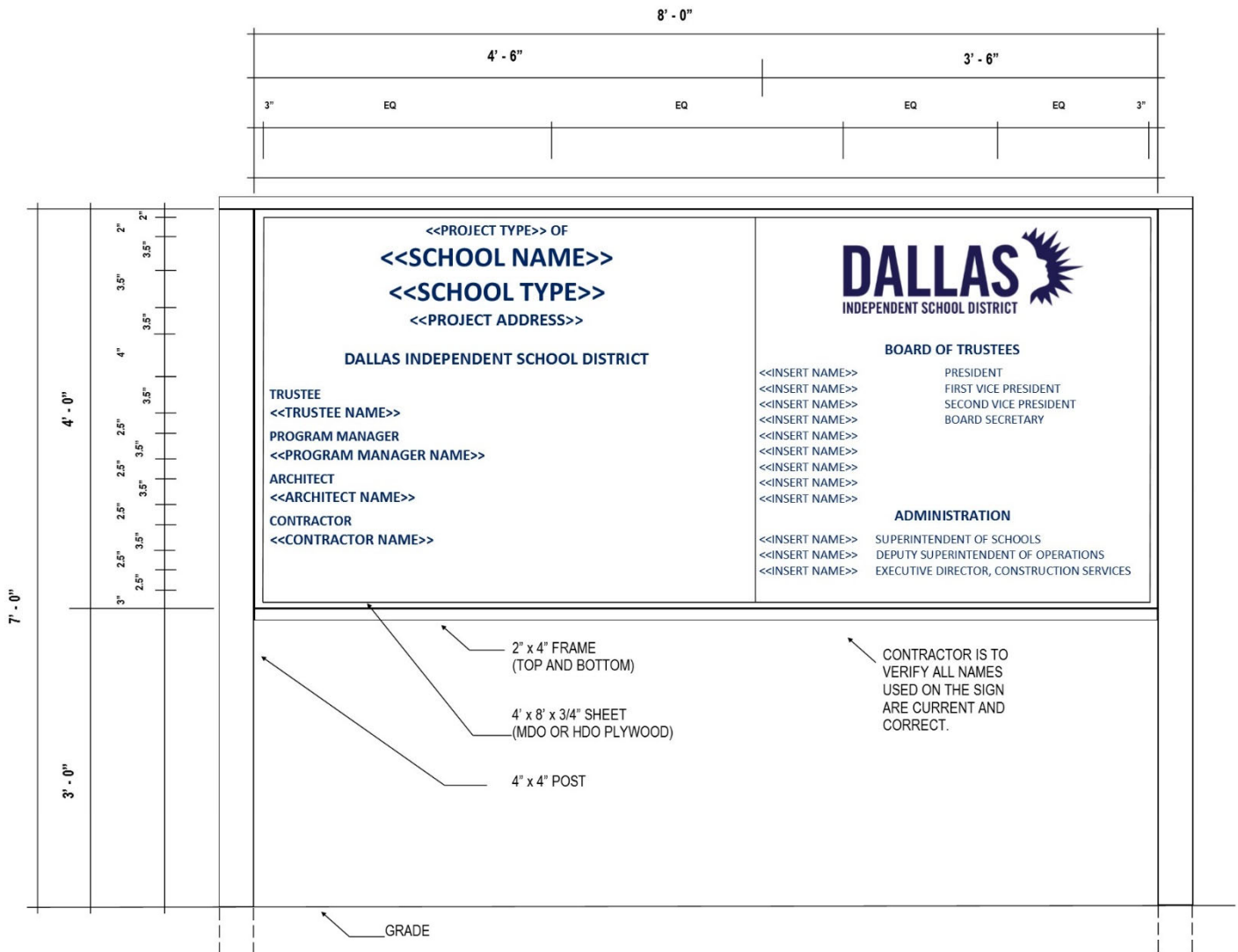
### 3.4 MOISTURE AND MOLD CONTROL

- A. Contractor's Moisture-Protection Plan: Avoid trapping water in finished work. Document visible signs of mold that may appear during construction.
- B. Exposed Construction Phase: Before installation of weather barriers, when materials are subject to wetting and exposure and to airborne mold spores, protect as follows:
  - 1. Protect porous materials from water damage.
  - 2. Protect stored and installed material from flowing or standing water.
  - 3. Keep porous and organic materials from coming into prolonged contact with concrete.
  - 4. Remove standing water from decks.
  - 5. Keep deck openings covered or dammed.

### 3.5 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

- A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
- B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
  - 1. Maintain operation of temporary enclosures, heating, cooling, humidity control, ventilation, and similar facilities on a 24-hour basis where required to achieve indicated results and to avoid possibility of damage.
- C. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.
- D. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
  - 1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
  - 2. At Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures."

E. TEMPORARY CONSTRUCTION SIGN



- SIGN INSTRUCTIONS:
1. BOARD OF TRUSTEES AND ADMINISTRATORS (SUPERINTENDENT, CHIEF FINANCIAL OFFICER, DEPUTY CHIEF OF OPERATIONS) IN PLACE (SEATED) AT THE TIME OF SIGN FABRICATION.
  2. PROJECT TYPE:
    - NEW CONSTRUCTION—ADDITION / RENOVATION—EXPANSION / RENOVATION -RENOVATION
  3. SCHOOL TYPE:
    - ELEMENTARY SCHOOL—MIDDLE SCHOOL—HIGH SCHOOL
  4. PROJECT ADDRESS PER THE PROJECT MANUAL (INCLUDES DR., ST., RD., ETC...)
  5. PROGRAM MANAGER:
  6. VERIFY TRUSTEE NAME AND ARCHITECT NAME WITH PROJECT MANAGER.
  7. SUBMIT SIGN LAYOUT FOR OWNER'S APPROVAL PRIOR TO PRINTING.
  8. BLUE FONT IS PANTONE 281C
  9. OBTAIN LOGO FROM PROJECT MANAGER.

3.6 GROUNDBREAKING CEREMONY (New Schools Only)

- A. At a time designated by the Owner after project award, the Owner will conduct a groundbreaking ceremony on the project site. The General Contractor will provide support and materials to the Owner for purposes of conducting that ceremony. This support will include providing, but may not be limited to, the following;
1. Land movers to be on site as a backdrop to the groundbreaking.
  2. Sandpit at a location coordinated with the owner.
  3. Collection of shovels and hardhats from the Construction Services office and transport them to the groundbreaking ceremony.
  4. Cleaning and transportation of shovels and hardhats to the Construction Services office after the groundbreaking ceremony.
  5. Bottled water for participants.
  6. Temporary chairs and tables to seat up to one hundred attendees.
  7. All weather access to the site and sandpit.
- B. Contractor shall not be permitted to have advertising or marketing materials on site above and beyond what is provided by the Owner.

**END OF SECTION 01 50 00**



# SECTION 01 52 14 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES FOR STUDENTS

## PART 1 – GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 00 and 01 Specification Sections, apply to this section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes requirements for temporary facilities (Swing Space) for the purpose of relocating students to provide temporary classroom facilities during construction activities.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 00 Section titled “Technical Proposal”
  - 2. Division 01 Section title “Temporary Facilities and Controls”

### 1.3 DESCRIPTION OF REQUIREMENTS

Since the school buildings will be in use during construction, the Work shall be conducted in phases as proposed in the phasing drawings. Contractor will provide temporary classroom buildings for swing space, per the requirements indicated in this section. Contractor will provide moving services to relocate movable classroom furnishings, fixtures and/or equipment in/out of each phased zone. The number of temporary buildings and classrooms which will be made available during the project shall not exceed the numbers summarized below:

<b>SWING SPACE TYPE</b>	<b>Org 054 Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy</b>
<b>Maximum External Temporary Swing Space Classrooms (to be provided by Contractor)</b>	
<b>Maximum Temporary Restrooms</b>	
<b>Swing Space Classrooms Provided Within Existing Facilities</b>	

The Contractor can submit, as part of the proposal, alternate phasing plans that can potentially save the District time and money.

If no external or internal temporary swing space classrooms are indicated above, then Contractor will be required to schedule work during holidays, weekends, or hours other than regular school hours, and price its work accordingly. A Dallas ISD representative must be present at the school during times that the Contractor is working at the school site. Contractor will be responsible for overtime costs for Dallas ISD staff for presence at the school site outside normal hours of school operation, including holidays.

- A. If students must be displaced from classroom areas due to the phasing and execution of the work according to the Contractor’s work plan, the Contractor shall be responsible for providing, on a turn-key basis, temporary facilities for those displaced students.
- B. If the Contractor elects to utilize Swing Space, they must include all costs associated with the removal, transportation, installation and dismantling, including, but not limited to:
  - 1. Equipment relocation
  - 2. Transport and setup

3. Maintenance of the temporary facilities for the duration of their use (i.e. HVAC, electrical, and other building repair and maintenance needed, not custodial maintenance)
4. Site work and utilities
5. ADA/TAS Accessible ramps and sidewalks
6. Stairs
7. Skirting
8. Interior finish-out
9. Miscellaneous specialties (i.e. marker boards, tack boards, flag holders, map clips, fire extinguishers)
10. Signage
11. Wall Clock and bell to interface with the existing system at the school
12. Coordination with movers for relocation of Furnishings, Fixtures, and Equipment (FF&E)
13. Breakdown, removal, and transport of the Swing Space at the completion of its use
14. Restoration of the site following removal of facilities
15. P.A. to interface with the existing system at the school

1.4 SCOPE OF WORK

The intent of this scope item is for the Contractor to dismantle and remove the District’s existing portable building at the site(s) identified in this section, and relocate to the campus requiring swing space as identified in Section 10.7. Contractor shall be responsible for a turnkey dismantling, transportation and setup of these portable buildings.

Schools with existing portables to be utilized for this project and the portable count are as follows:

Name of School	Portable Details (Include ID# and Single/Double)

**Removal of Existing Portables from Other Schools.** Contractor shall provide an advance notice of at least five (5) days to the School Principal and the Program Manager before the temporary buildings are expected to be dismantled and demobilized from any of the above sites. Scope may also involve demolition of sidewalks, canopies, electrical, technology pathways as identified in the contract documents. Again, the intent of this scope of work is for the contractor to provide turnkey dismantling, and removal of identified portables and associated infrastructure. Refurbish site(s) where portables / sidewalks are removed.

**Removal of Existing Portables scheduled for Demolition in the footprint of Construction or Staging.** If a portable needs to be demolished because it is in the footprint of construction or staging, any necessary Abatement will be the responsibility of the Contractor. After any necessary Abatement, the GC will be responsible for the demolition and removal/disposal of the debris remaining. Refurbish site(s) where portables / sidewalks are removed.

**Removal of Existing Portables Not Scheduled for Demolition in the footprint of Construction or Staging.** If it is necessary to remove a portable building due to construction or staging at a campus and it is not scheduled for demolition, the GC will be responsible to disassemble, disconnect the portable, and deliver it and set it on blocks at a location designated by Dallas ISD Maintenance (this could be another campus). This would only require that the GC set the building in the designated location, set on blocks, level, etc. Maintenance will be responsible for setting the portable up (Skirting, walkways, utilities, fire alarm hookup, etc.) at the new location and Maintenance will also be responsible for picking up the awnings, skirting and other related items that had to be disassembled at the original location. Maintenance will also be responsible for authorizing the disconnect and any re-connect of the utilities with their

requested move of portables. Where portables were removed for staging, refurbish site(s) to match existent surrounding conditions.

**Portables designated to be relocated into another Dallas ISD Location** If there is a Dallas ISD portable that is designated to be moved from a Dallas ISD location to a campus needing Swing Space – The GC (with contract for the campus needing the swing space) would be responsible for the disconnecting of any utilities and cabling for fire and technology. The GC, who is to move the building for swing space, will be responsible for the removal of awnings, porches, skirting, etc. and be responsible for the removal of the debris. The General Contractor would then be responsible for re-grading the area. The General Contractor would then be responsible to pick up the completely disconnected portable(s) and transport it (them) to the campus they are assigned by Dallas ISD Construction Services office and then be responsible for the setup and complete reconnection of all utilities, fire alarm, technology, etc. that would match Dallas ISD requirements. At the point the work is complete and/or the swing space is no longer necessary, the GC would be responsible for the disconnect and moving to a location designated by the Dallas ISD and would have no requirement other than to secure the moving permit and to set the portable(s) securely in place. The General Contractor would have responsibility to remove any debris from that disconnect and removal. The General Contractor is responsible for all permitting required to install the portable buildings.

*NOTE: In all cases involving swing space, the Campus Principal and Facilities must be appropriately and timely notified and aware of swing space issues, including determination and disposition of portable contents.*

**Transportation of Existing Portables from Other Schools to the Project.** Contractor shall provide turnkey transportation services, including management of any required permits, for safe transportation of existing portables from any of the above site to the project. Any removal and replacement of any fencing, or other obstacles for relocation of such buildings shall be the responsibility of the Contractor.

**Installation of Portables at the Project.** Provide turnkey services for delivery, set-up, maintenance, removal, and restoration of the site for temporary classroom buildings to accommodate phased construction for the Dallas ISD Construction Services office

- A. Engineering: The Contractor will provide site engineered civil, utility, blocking plan/foundation plan, sidewalk design and deck/ramp design sufficient to receive a Building Permit from the City, for each site for the installation of all temporary classroom buildings. Existing canopies, sidewalks, foundation details, technology, fire alarm etc. at the schools may be used as a guide for the scope expectations also.
- B. Location: The locations of the temporary classrooms are as indicated on the site plan drawings.
- C. Permits: The Contractor will coordinate and obtain the permits as required by the City for placement of the classroom buildings at each site. This includes the permits required for the transportation of the classroom buildings.
- D. Temp. Facilities: Roll off dumpsters will be provided by the Contractor as required for clean-up during installation and removal of swing space.
- E. Clean up: Final broom sweep of the building(s) and removal of trash and debris from each site will be provided by the Contractor prior to occupancy of the swing space by the students and staff. Floor waxing or shampooing will be provided by the Contractor prior to occupancy by the students and staff. Provisions for site restoration upon completion of the delivery of the modules and/or completion of the scope of work will be provided by the Contractor. Upon the removal of the buildings all underground utilities and/or structures

associated with the temporary classroom buildings will be removed and discarded. The concrete sidewalks will be removed and discarded. Rough grading will be performed and new sod will be placed to restore the area to its original condition.

- F. Site Preparation: Dallas ISD has made no provisions for any site preparation and/or demolition as may be required for the delivery and/or installation of the portable buildings. Any site preparation and/or demolition that might be required of for installation of the temporary classrooms will be included in the Contractor's scope.
- G. Construction Fencing: The contractor will maintain a clean and safe site environment within the limits of the temporary classroom construction area. Temporary chain link construction fencing 6' high will be installed around the perimeter of the limits of construction.
- H. Sodding: Upon the removal of the buildings, the Contractor will provide sod within the limits of construction associated with the temporary classroom scope of work. Any irrigation of the new sod will be provided by Dallas ISD.
- I. Site Utilities (if applicable): The Contractor will provide the site utility connections required for the temporary classroom buildings. The Contractor is responsible for consulting with the City regarding requirements for restrooms on school projects that are located in cities other than Dallas. If required by those cities, the Contractor must provide restroom services and utilities as required by local code.
- J. Storm: All storm water management and any sedimentation control will be the responsibility of the Contractor. Gutters and downspouts will be installed as needed by the Contractor.
- K. Sanitary (if applicable): The Contractor will install all fixtures, stub all sanitary lines below the floor and manifold to one location at the edge of the building(s). All final connections, utility company charges and impact fees that might be required will be included in the Contractor's scope of work. The Contractor is responsible for consulting with the City regarding requirements for restrooms on school projects that are located in cities other than Dallas. If required by those cities, the Contractor must provide restroom services and utilities as required by local code.
- L. Water (if applicable): The Contractor will install all fixtures and stub all water lines to one location at the edge of the building(s). All final connections, utility company charges and impact that might be required will be included in the Contractor's scope of work. The Contractor is responsible for consulting with the City regarding requirements for restrooms on school projects that are located in cities other than Dallas. If required by those cities, the Contractor must provide restroom services and utilities as required by local code.
- M. Natural Gas: No provisions for any gas service are anticipated at the present time.
- N. Life Safety: Building(s) will be approved and inspected by the Texas Department of Licensing and Regulation. Any provisions for fire suppression, fire sprinkler system or fire rated assemblies that might be required will be included in the Contractor's scope of work.
- O. Fire Alarm: The contractor will provide and install fire detection systems as required by the building code and the City.
- P. Electrical: The contractor will provide and install electrical systems as required by the building code and the City. Installation and electricity consumption costs associated with the swing space will be the financial responsibility of the Contractor.

- Q. Mechanical: The Contractor will supply and install the standard end mount HVAC units. The condensate from both HVAC units of a classroom building will be harnessed together and discharged into a 24" diameter by 36" deep french drain filled with gravel. All condensate piping will be PVC but will be protected where directly exposed to UV radiation.
- R. Internet Access: The Contractor will provide wireless internet access appropriate for the swing space. Portable technology connectivity shall be coordinated with the Technology Department.
- S. Skirting: After the modules are installed, the Contractor will install full perimeter skirting around the building(s) using the same material and finish as that of the building siding to provide a consistent finish down to grade. Sections of skirting will be perforated as required for proper crawl space ventilation. Access to the crawl space will be accomplished by removing sections of the skirting.
- T. Decks/Stairs: The Contractor will install landings at the exit doors of the building(s) within the limits of construction as required by code and the City. Landings will utilize pressure treated wood construction with slip resistant surface treatment and handrails.
- U. Ramps: The Contractor will install handicapped accessible ramps at the exit doors of the building(s) within the limits of construction as required by code and the Local City. Ramps will utilize pressure treated wood construction with slip resistant surface treatment and handrails.
- V. Sidewalks: The Contractor will install 4' wide, 4" thick, 3,000 psi concrete sidewalks to service the building(s) within the limits of construction. Sidewalks will receive a light broom finish and be poured on select fill and/or sand bed.
- W. Foundation and Anchorage: The swing space facilities should be securely anchored to a foundation system which utilizes some means of structural support, as determined by a certified structural engineer. Provide construction documents that depict the foundation system as designed and certified by a structural engineer.
- X. Hitch/Tires/Axles: Hitches will be removed and stored under building while tires and axles are to remain on the modules. Tires and axles will be removed only if necessary to complete the building installation due to site constraints and will also be placed under the modules.
- Y. Keys. Contractor shall coordinate with the District for re-keying of all swing space buildings. Provide 10 sets of keys for each building. Doors shall be provided with hardware to enable locking of the buildings from the inside also, and shall have vandal resistant hardware.

**Dismantling / Removal of Temporary Buildings upon Completion of Work.** Contractor shall demobilize/dismantle/ remove the temporary buildings from site only upon mutual agreement with the Program Manager and Dallas ISD. The temporary buildings shall not be removed from site unless the classrooms that are being renovated under the "Work" of the Contract have been substantially completed and all system upgrades/installation/repairs are completed to accommodate students. Under no circumstances shall the temporary buildings be demobilized if it is deemed by the Program Manager and Dallas ISD that student safety is a potential issue or if the demobilization is likely to adversely impact the student instruction schedule. Contractor shall provide an advance notice of at least five (5) days to the School Principal and the Program Manager before the temporary buildings are expected to be dismantled and demobilized from the site.

**Maintenance and Final Cleaning.** Dallas ISD will be responsible for the day-to-day cleaning and janitorial services such as floor cleaning, floor vacuuming, trash removal, etc. Contractor shall be responsible for other maintenance of the temporary buildings, including vandalism. Maintenance of building structure and systems (HVAC, Plumbing, Electrical, Lighting, etc.), for the duration that the buildings are on the School site shall be the responsibility of the Contractor. Contractor shall be responsible for rendering the Project site to its original condition after removal of the temporary buildings, including cleaning and grading and ground cover, termination of the temporary facilities and connections per the requirements of the Owner, the City of Dallas and/or the relevant Government Agency or applicable code. Removal of foundations for the buildings, sidewalks, canopies, ramps etc. will be the responsibility of the Contractor.

**Coordination with Project Schedule and Phasing Plan.** Contractor shall provide a detailed schedule listing all relevant milestones for the installation and dismantling of swing space buildings as part of the overall project schedule. Activities may include, but are not limited to:

1. Texas Accessibility Standards (TAS) submittals, if required,
2. Procurement of permit to transport the prefabricated buildings from another school to the Project site,
3. Procurement and delivery of the prefabricated temporary buildings,
4. Coordination with the power, water, sanitary sewer and any other applicable utility companies to obtain permits and procure additional primary connections, if required.
5. Installation of canopies, sidewalks, fire alarm systems etc.

Lack of understanding of involved coordination and approval processes, and delays caused thereby shall not be grounds for claim(s) for any contract time extension(s). Contractor shall assume a reasonable time frame from the date of issuance of the Notice To Proceed for the installation of these swing space buildings, and coordinate the timing for the delivery and installation of the temporary classroom buildings with the Project schedule.

**END OF SECTION 01 52 14**

## SECTION 01 60 00 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Allowances" for products selected under an allowance.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Alternates" for products selected under an alternate.
  - 3. Division 01 Section "Substitution Procedures" for requests for substitutions.
  - 4. Division 01 Section "References" for applicable industry standards for products specified.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.
  - 1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
  - 2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Products salvaged or recycled from other projects are not considered new products.
  - 3. Comparable Product: Product that is demonstrated and approved through submittal process to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a specific manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation, to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification.

#### 1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

- A. Comparable Product Requests: Submit request for consideration of each comparable product. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.
  - 1. Include data to indicate compliance with the requirements specified in "Comparable Products" Article.
  - 2. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within one week of receipt of a comparable product request. Architect will notify Contractor of approval or rejection of proposed comparable product request within 15 days of receipt of request, or 7 days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
    - a. Form of Approval: As specified in Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures."
    - b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a comparable product request within time allocated.
- B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures." Show compliance with requirements.

#### 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Compatibility of Options: If Contractor is given option of selecting between two or more products for use on Project, select product compatible with products previously selected, even if previously selected products were also options.

#### 1.6 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Delivery and Handling:
  - 1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
  - 2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
  - 3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.
  - 4. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.
- C. Storage:
  - 1. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
  - 2. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
  - 3. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements, under cover in a weather tight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation.



4. Store foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
5. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
6. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.

## 1.7 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

- A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.
  1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written warranty furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and specifically endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
  2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner.
- B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.
  1. Specified Form: When specified forms are included with the Specifications, prepare a written document using indicated form properly executed.
  2. Refer to Divisions 02 through 49. Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.
- C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures."

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

- A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.
  1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
  2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
  3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties not in conflict with requirements of the Contract Documents.
  4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
  5. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.
  6. Or Equal: For products specified by name and accompanied by the term "or equal," or "or approved equal," or "or approved," comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article to obtain approval for use of an unnamed product.
- B. Product Selection Procedures:

1. Manufacturer/Source: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer or source, provide a product by the named manufacturer or source that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
2. Products:
  - a. Restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will be considered, unless otherwise indicated.
3. Manufacturers:
  - a. Restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will be considered, unless otherwise indicated.
  - b. Non-restricted List: Where Specifications include a list of available manufacturers, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed, or a product by an unnamed manufacturer, that complies with requirements. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed manufacturer's product.
4. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.

## 2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

- A. Conditions for Consideration: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the following conditions are satisfied. If the following conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements:
  1. Evidence that the proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, that it is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce the indicated results, and that it is compatible with other portions of the Work.
  2. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed product with those named in the Specifications. Significant qualities include attributes such as performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, and specific features and requirements indicated.
  3. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
  4. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners, if requested.
  5. Samples, if requested.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

**END OF SECTION 01 60 00**

## SECTION 01 73 00 - EXECUTION

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Construction layout.
2. Installation of the Work.
3. Cutting and patching.
4. Coordination of Owner-installed products.
5. Progress cleaning.
6. Starting and adjusting.
7. Protection of installed construction.
8. Correction of the Work.

- B. Related Sections:

1. Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures" for submitting surveys.
2. Division 02 Section "Selective Structure Demolition" for demolition and removal of selected portions of the building.
3. Division-07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for patching penetrations in fire-rated construction.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cutting: Removal of in-place construction necessary to permit installation or performance of other work.
- B. Patching: Fitting and repair work required to restore construction to original conditions after installation of other work.

#### 1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Cutting and Patching Plan: Submit plan describing procedures at least 5 days prior to the time cutting and patching will be performed. Include the following information:
  1. Extent: Describe reason for and extent of each occurrence of cutting and patching.
  2. Changes to In-Place Construction: Describe anticipated results. Include changes to structural elements and operating components as well as changes in building appearance and other significant visual elements.

3. Products: List products to be used for patching and firms or entities that will perform patching work.
4. Dates: Indicate when cutting and patching will be performed.
5. Utilities and Mechanical and Electrical Systems: List services and systems that cutting and patching procedures will disturb or affect. List services and systems that will be relocated and those that will be temporarily out of service. Indicate how long services and systems will be disrupted.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Cutting and Patching: Comply with requirements for and limitations on cutting and patching of construction elements.
1. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, notify Architect of locations and details of cutting and await directions from the Architect before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural element during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection
  2. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that will result in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Operational elements may include the following:
    - a. Primary operational systems and equipment.
    - b. Fire separation assemblies.
    - c. Air or smoke barriers.
    - d. Fire-suppression systems.
    - e. Mechanical systems piping and ducts.
    - f. Control systems.
    - g. Communication systems.
    - h. Conveying systems.
    - i. Electrical wiring systems.
    - j. Operating systems of special construction.
  3. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, reduce their capacity to perform as intended, or that will result in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety. Other construction elements include but are not limited to the following:
    - a. Water, moisture, or vapor barriers.
    - b. Membranes and flashings.
    - c. Exterior curtain-wall construction.
    - d. Equipment supports.
    - e. Piping, ductwork, vessels, and equipment.
    - f. Noise- and vibration-control elements and systems.
  4. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.

- B. Cutting and Patching Conference: Before proceeding, meet at Project site with parties involved in cutting and patching, including mechanical and electrical trades. Review areas of potential interference and conflict. Coordinate procedures and resolve potential conflicts before proceeding.
- C. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on-site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of products and equipment.

## 1.6 WARRANTY

- A. Existing Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void existing warranties.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.
- B. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.
  - 1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to the Architect for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical systems and other construction affecting the Work.
  - 1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water-service piping; underground electrical services, and other utilities.
  - 2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.
  - 3. Contractor shall be responsible for locating all underground utility lines that may be affected by the Work, including but not limited to use of technologies such as Ground Penetrating Radar (GPR). Contractor shall provide a report showing location of existing utilities before pre-dig meeting and shall retain a hard color copy of the report on site at all times. Contractor shall maintain the site markings through the duration of the project. Contractor is responsible for protecting all utility lines (underground and above ground) while performing work. Any damaged utility lines will be replaced by the Contractor at no cost to the Owner.

4. Prior to starting work, Contractor shall review and provide a report that documents operations of existing systems, including but not limited to fire alarm, security, and PA. Contractor shall also record and provide screenshots of all existing mechanical equipment and controls, from the Owner's front end operating system.
- B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.
1. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.
  2. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
  3. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
  4. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected. Proceeding with the Work indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

### 3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Existing Utility Information: Furnish information to local utility company that is necessary to adjust, move, or relocate existing utility structures, utility poles, lines, services, or other utility appurtenances located in or affected by construction. Coordinate with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Space Requirements: Verify space requirements and dimensions of items shown diagrammatically on Drawings.
- C. Review of Contract Documents and Field Conditions: Immediately on discovery of the need for clarification of the Contract Documents caused by differing field conditions outside the control of the Contractor, submit a request for information to Architect according to requirements in Division 01 Section "Project Management and Coordination."
- D. Surface and Substrate Preparation: Comply with manufacturer's recommendations for preparation of substrates to receive subsequent work.

### 3.3 CONSTRUCTION LAYOUT

- A. Verification: Before proceeding to lay out the Work, verify layout information shown on Drawings, in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks. If discrepancies are discovered, notify Architect promptly.
- B. General: Engage a professional engineer to lay out the Work using accepted surveying practices.
1. Establish benchmarks and control points to set lines and levels at each story of construction and elsewhere as needed to locate each element of Project.
  2. Establish dimensions within tolerances indicated. Do not scale Drawings to obtain required dimensions.
  3. Inform installers of lines and levels to which they must comply.
  4. Check the location, level and plumb, of every major element as the Work progresses.

5. Notify Architect when deviations from required lines and levels exceed allowable tolerances.
  6. Close site surveys with an error of closure equal to or less than the standard established by authorities having jurisdiction.
- C. Site Improvements: Locate and lay out site improvements, including pavements, grading, fill and topsoil placement, utility slopes, and rim and invert elevations.
- D. Building Lines and Levels: Locate and lay out control lines and levels for structures, building foundations, column grids, and floor levels, including those required for mechanical and electrical work. Transfer survey markings and elevations for use with control lines and levels. Level foundations and piers from two or more locations.
- E. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Architect and Program Manager. Submit log at project completion for project records.

### 3.4 INSTALLATION

- A. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.
1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
  2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
  3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas, unless otherwise indicated.
  4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of **96 inches** in occupied spaces and **90 inches** in unoccupied spaces.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.
- C. Contractor shall provide filters for all mechanical equipment (new and existing) impacted by the Contractor's scope of work, at minimum, at the following stages of construction;
1. Construction filters at the start of construction, and as needed through-out the project to maintain proper air flow
  2. MERV filters at the start of Test & Balance
  3. MERV filters at Substantial Completion (filters to be dated and provide photo documentation)
- D. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.
- E. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.
- F. Tools and Equipment: Do not use tools or equipment that produces harmful noise levels.
- G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.

- H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions.
  - 1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount components at heights directed by Architect.
  - 2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
  - 3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.
- J. Hazardous Materials: Use products, cleaners, and installation materials that are not considered hazardous.

### 3.5 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.
  - 1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.
  - 2. Cut the work using methods that are least likely to damage work to be retained or adjoining work. Where possible review proposed procedures with the original installer; comply with the original installer's recommendations.
- B. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.
- C. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.
- D. Adjacent Occupied Areas: Where interference with use of adjoining areas or interruption of free passage to adjoining areas is unavoidable, coordinate cutting and patching in accordance with requirements of Division 01 Section "Summary."
- E. Existing Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: Where existing services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services/systems before cutting to minimize interruption to occupied areas.
- F. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.
  - 1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required, and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.



2. Finished Surfaces: Cut or drill from the exposed or finished side into concealed surfaces.
  3. Concrete and Masonry: Cut using a cutting machine, such as an abrasive saw or a diamond-core drill.
  4. Excavating and Backfilling: Comply with requirements in applicable Division 31 Sections where required by cutting and patching operations.
  5. Mechanical and Electrical Services: Cut off pipe or conduit in walls or partitions to be removed. Cap, valve, or plug and seal remaining portion of pipe or conduit to prevent entrance of moisture or other foreign matter after cutting.
  6. Proceed with patching after construction operations requiring cutting are complete.
- G. Patching: Patch construction by filling, repairing, refinishing, closing up, and similar operations following performance of other work. Patch with durable seams that are as invisible as practicable. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Sections, where applicable.
1. Inspection: Where feasible, test and inspect patched areas after completion to demonstrate physical integrity of installation.
  2. Exposed Finishes: Restore exposed finishes of patched areas and extend finish restoration into retained adjoining construction in a manner that will minimize evidence of patching and refinishing.
    - a. Clean piping, conduit, and similar features before applying paint or other finishing materials.
    - b. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.
  3. Floors and Walls: Where walls or partitions that are removed extend one finished area into another, patch and repair floor and wall surfaces in the new space. Provide an even surface of uniform finish, color, texture, and appearance. Remove in-place floor and wall coverings and replace with new materials, if necessary, to achieve uniform color and appearance.
    - a. Where patching occurs in a painted surface, prepare substrate and apply primer and intermediate paint coats appropriate for substrate over the patch, and apply final paint coat over entire unbroken surface containing the patch. Provide additional coats until patch blends with adjacent surfaces.
  4. Ceilings: Patch, repair, or re-hang in-place ceilings as necessary to provide an even-plane surface of uniform appearance.
  5. Exterior Building Enclosure: Patch components in a manner that restores enclosure to a weather-tight condition.
  6. Cleaning: Clean areas and spaces where cutting and patching are performed. Remove paint, mortar, oils, putty, and similar materials from adjacent finished surfaces. Thoroughly clean piping, conduit and similar features before painting or other finishing is applied. Restore damaged pipe covering to its original condition.

### 3.6 OWNER-INSTALLED PRODUCTS

- A. Site Access: Provide access to Project site for Owner's construction personnel.
- B. Coordination: Coordinate construction and operations of the Work with work performed by Owner's construction personnel.
  1. Construction Schedule: Inform Owner of Contractor's preferred construction schedule for Owner's portion of the Work. Adjust construction schedule based on a mutually

agreeable timetable. Notify Owner if changes to schedule are required due to differences in actual construction progress.

2. Pre-installation Conferences: Include Owner's construction personnel at pre-installation conferences covering portions of the Work that are to receive Owner's work. Attend pre-installation conferences conducted by Owner's construction personnel if portions of the Work depend on Owner's construction.

### 3.7 PROGRESS CLEANING

- A. General: Clean Project site and work areas daily, including common areas. Enforce requirements strictly. Dispose of materials lawfully.
  1. Provide necessary daily cleaning during construction to maintain premises and adjoining public properties free from construction waste, debris and rubbish, and dust caused by operations.
  2. At completion of each day, remove waste materials and rubbish; store tools, equipment, machinery and surplus materials; and clean all sight exposed surfaces.
  3. If Contractor fails to clean up each day and at the completion of his Work, the Owner may do so and charge the cost thereof to the Contractor. At his next pay application a deductive change order will be processed and there is no appeal for back charges due to clean up.
  4. Comply with requirements in NFPA 241 for removal of combustible waste materials and debris.
  5. Do not hold waste materials more than seven days during normal weather or three days if the temperature is expected to rise above 80 deg F.
  6. Containerize hazardous and unsanitary waste materials separately from other waste. Mark containers appropriately and dispose of legally, according to regulations.
    - a. Utilize containers intended for holding waste materials of type to be stored.
- B. Site: Maintain Project site free of waste materials and debris.
- C. Work Areas: Clean areas where work is in progress to the level of cleanliness necessary for proper execution of the Work.
  1. Remove liquid spills promptly.
  2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.
- D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.
- E. Cleaning Materials: Use only cleaning materials recommended by manufacturer of the surface to be cleaned. Use cleaning materials only on surfaces recommended by cleaning material manufacturer.
- F. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.
- G. Exposed Surfaces in Finished Areas: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- H. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or burn waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways.

- I. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.
- J. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.
- K. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to assure that no part of the construction, whether completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.
- L. During Construction:
  - 1. Oversee cleaning and ensure that building(s) and ground(s) are maintained free from accumulations of waste materials and rubbish.
  - 2. Sprinkle dusty debris with water.
  - 3. During progress of Work, clean-up site and access and dispose off waste materials, rubbish and debris at least once every week.
  - 4. Provide dump containers and locate on site for collection of waste materials, rubbish and debris on a daily basis.
  - 5. Do not allow waste materials, rubbish and debris to accumulate and become an unsightly or hazardous condition.
  - 6. Remove waste materials, rubbish and debris from site and legally dispose off at public or private dumping area.
  - 7. Lower waste materials in controlled manner with as few handlings as possible; do not drop or throw materials from heights.
  - 8. Schedule cleaning operations so that dust and other contaminants resulting from cleaning process will not fall on wet, newly painted surfaces.

### 3.8 STARTING AND ADJUSTING

- A. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.
- B. Adjust equipment for proper operation. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding.
- C. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
- D. Manufacturer's Field Service: Comply with qualification requirements in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements."

### 3.9 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

- A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.
- B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

### 3.10 CORRECTION OF THE WORK

- A. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Restore damaged substrates and finishes.
  - 1. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment.
- B. Restore permanent facilities used during construction to their specified condition.
- C. Remove and replace damaged surfaces that are exposed to view if surfaces cannot be repaired without visible evidence of repair.
- D. Repair components that do not operate properly. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired.
- E. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass or reflective surfaces.

**END OF SECTION 01 73 00**

# SECTION 01 77 00 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

## PART 1 - GENERAL

### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:
  - 1. Substantial Completion.
  - 2. Final completion.
  - 3. Warranties.
  - 4. Final cleaning.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Execution" for progress cleaning of Project site.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.
  - 3. Division 01 Section "Project Record Documents" for submitting Record Drawings, Record Specifications, and Record Product Data.
  - 4. Division 01 Section "Demonstration and Training" for requirements for instructing Owner's personnel.
  - 5. Divisions 02 through 49 Sections for specific closeout and special cleaning requirements for the Work in those Sections.

### 1.3 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

- A. Preliminary Procedures: Before requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion, complete the following. List items below that are incomplete with request.
  - 1. Prepare a list of items to be completed and corrected (punch list), the value of item on the list, and reasons why the Work is not complete.
  - 2. Advise the Owner of pending insurance changeover requirement.
  - 3. Grant the Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services and utilities. Include occupancy permits and similar releases.
  - 4. Complete startup testing of systems.
  - 5. Complete Owner's Training. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems.
  - 6. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touch-up painting.
  - 7. Submit specific warranties 14 days after Substantial Completion.
  - 8. Submit sign-in sheets from training sessions
  - 9. Submit one (1) electronic copy of Operation & Maintenance (O&M) Manuals

1.4 FINAL COMPLETION – **Please refer to Attached “General Contractor Close out and Hazmat Abatement Close Out checklist” at the end of this section.**

A. Preliminary Procedures: Before requesting final inspection for determining final completion, the items listed in 1.3 of this section must be complete. The Contractor must also complete the following:

1. Submit final certifications, and similar close-out documents.
2. Prepare and submit Project Record Documents, including construction photographs, damage or settlement surveys, property surveys, and similar record information.
3. Submit test/adjust/balance report records.
4. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
5. Complete final cleaning and repair of all areas, including touch-up painting.
6. Submit final close-out submittals.
  
7. Submit a final Application for Payment according to Division 01 Section "Payment Procedures."
8. Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. The certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.

B. Close-out submittals include, but are not necessarily limited to, as applicable:

1. Project Record Documents described in Section 01 78 39.
2. Certification of Substantial Completion (AIA Form G704)
3. Certificate of Final Completion (Exhibit D – Form of Final Completion Notice)
4. Certificate of Final Acceptance by the Architect (Exhibit H of the A/E Agreement – Form of Final Completion Certification with punch list sign-off)
5. Certificate of Final Completion by the Program Manager (Exhibit C of the PM Agreement – Form of Final Completion Certificate)
6. TEA Certificate of Project Compliance.
7. Final Change Order.
8. Final Acceptance for Payment to include acceptance of Final Change Order and therefore no work or retainage outstanding
9. Consent of Surety to Final Payment
10. City's Certificate of Occupancy
11. Contractor's Final Affidavit of Release of Liens
12. Contractor's Guarantee
13. Letter from Contractor listing all subcontractors and suppliers with contact information.
14. Transmittal listing Keys: Contractor shall prepare an itemized key list in complete detail ending in a statement that the keys were turned over, the Contractor's signature, a line stating that the keys were received and the receiver's signature. Copies of this list should be retained by the Contractor and receiver and a copy sent to the Architect, PM and Owner. Keys should be identified with tags corresponding to the approved room number designation.
15. Operating, Instruction and Maintenance Manuals for Equipment. For records, provide one (1) paper copy of all O&M manuals at final closeout.
16. Verification of training conducted: Provide copy of sign-in sheet. For records, provide one (1) DVD copy of all training sessions at final closeout.
17. Final approved submittals for HVAC Controls System, Data Cabling System, and Fire Alarm System, and Security System.

**Refer to Attached "General Contractor Close out checklist" at the end of this section.**

1.5 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (PUNCH LIST)

- A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.
1. Organize list of spaces in sequential order.
  2. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceiling, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
  3. Include the following information at the top of each page:
    - a. Project name.
    - b. Date.
    - c. Name of Contractor.
    - d. Page number.
  4. Submit list of incomplete items in the following format:
    - a. PDF electronic file.

1.6 WARRANTIES

- A. Submittal Time: All warranties shall commence on the date of substantial completion and copies of the Warranties be submitted no later than 14 days after substantial completion.
- B. Organize warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of the Project Manual.
1. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper.
  2. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product and the name, address, and telephone number of Installer.
  3. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project name, and name of Contractor.
  4. Scan warranties and bonds and assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single indexed electronic PDF file with links enabling navigation to each item. Provide table of contents at beginning of document. Coordinate paragraph below if Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data" is used.
- C. Provide additional copies of each warranty to include in operation and maintenance manuals.
- D. Refer to attached checklist of warranties and close out customized by the Architect for each campus.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

- A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 FINAL CLEANING

- A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.
- B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion for entire Project or for a portion of Project:
  - a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
  - b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
  - c. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
  - d. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.
  - e. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.
  - f. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.
  - g. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; shampoo if visible soil or stains remain.
  - h. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Replace chipped or broken glass and other damaged transparent materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.
  - i. Remove labels that are not permanent.
  - j. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred, exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that cannot be satisfactorily repaired or restored or that already show evidence of repair or restoration.
    - 1) Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates.
  - k. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment, elevator equipment, and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.
  - l. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.
  - m. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.
  - n. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils if units were operated without filters during construction or that display contamination with particulate matter upon inspection.
    - 1) Clean HVAC system in compliance with NADCA Standard 1992-01. Provide written report upon completion of cleaning.



- o. Clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency. Replace burned-out bulbs, and those noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.
    - p. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.
- C. Construction Waste Disposal: Comply with waste disposal requirements in Division 01 Section "Temporary Facilities and Controls."

## GC CLOSEOUT CHECKLIST

General Contractor Close-out Checklist						
<b>To:</b>	<<Name>> Project Manager, Dallas ISD				<b>Date:</b>	
<b>GC:</b>	<<Name of GC Firm>>		<b>A/E Firm:</b>	<<Name of A/E Firm>>		
<b>Org#:</b>	XXXX		<b>PM:</b>	<<Name of PM Firm>>		
<b>School Name</b>						
<b>Project Type:</b>	<input type="checkbox"/>	Addition	<input type="checkbox"/>	Renovations	<input type="checkbox"/>	New Construction
Item #	Document Description	Primary Responsibility	Tab #	Check-Off	Remarks	
<b>I. FINANCIAL RECONCILIATION / FINAL PAYMENT REQUIREMENTS</b>						
a.	Copies of Reconciliation to Dallas ISD Financial System and Copy of Final Payment	PM			PM will collect for close-out	
b.	Certificate(s) of Insurance including General Liability and Pollution and/or Professional Liability, if applicable.	PM			PM will collect for close-out	
c.	Insurance Requirements at Final Completion Statement	PM			PM will collect for close-out	
d.	Copy of Final Change Order	PM			PM will collect for close-out	
e.	Copies of all executed Change Orders	PM			PM will collect for close-out	
f.	Copies of all executed CAEAs and CAELs	PM			PM will collect for close-out with back-up information	
g.	Copies of all executed AERAs	PM			PM will collect for close-out with back-up information	
h.	Copies of all executed custodian overtime authorizations (Summary Recap (Hrs.))	PM			PM will collect for close-out. Include as deductive CAEA	
i.	Confirmation of back charge for Prolog Converge licenses & Custodian Overtime	PM			PM will collect for close-out. Include as deductive CAEA	
j.	Confirmation of back charge for technology refund (ERATE), if applicable	PM			PM will collect for close-out. Include as deductive CAEA	
k.	M/V/BE Contract Closeout Evaluation Form	PM			PM will collect for close-out. Include final M/V/BE payment status report	
<b>II. PAYMENT AND PERFORMANCE BONDS</b>						
a.	"Consent of Surety Company to Final Payment"; AIA G707 (Confirm that Power of Attorney is attached to form.)	GC				
<b>III. EVIDENCE OF PAYMENT OF DEBTS AND CLAIMS</b>						
a.	"Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims" AIA G706	GC				
<b>IV. SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION</b>						
a.	AIA G704 - Certificate of Substantial Completion	A/E Dallas ISD/PM				
b.	Punchlist - Issued at substantial completion	GC				
c.	Exhibit G - Form of Substantial Completion Certification	A/E			This is an Exhibit in the A/E Agreement	
<b>V. FINAL COMPLETION</b>						
a.	Exhibit H - Form of Final Completion Certification - with signed off punchlist	A/E			This is an Exhibit in the A/E Agreement	
b.	TDLR - RAS report approved or A/E Letter	A/E			If the RAS report shows deficiencies, the A/E will have to confirm, explain, and/or justify corrections.	
c.	Attachment C - Form of Program Manager's Final Completion Certificate	PM			This is an Exhibit in the PM Agreement	
d.	Exhibit D - Form of Contractor's Final Completion Notice	GC				
e.	TEA - Certification of Project Compliance	A/E - GC Dallas ISD/PM			PM will coordinate the sign-off on this document.	
<b>VI. OPERATIONS AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS AND EVIDENCE OF TRAINING</b>						
a.	A/E's O&M Manuals confirmation letter.	GC				
b.	O&M Manuals submitted by GC to A/E	GC			Per detailed list developed by GC and reviewed by A/E and PM. One Manual per each school to be split by CSI Divisions	
c.	Training Matrix, Sign-In sheet(s) and DVDs.	GC			GC is to provide a sign-in sheet for each system for which training has been provided to indicate the person, title, and date of completion of the	
<b>VII. ATTIC STOCK / SPARE MATERIAL / KEY TRANSFER</b>						
a.	Signed off Transmittal Attic stock & spare material	GC			Provided by GC and received by Principal or Campus Facility Supervisor or Maintenance, as applicable	
b.	Signed off Transmittal Key transfer (Accessory keys)	GC			Provided by GC and received by Principal or Campus Facilities Supervisor, as applicable	
<b>VIII. WARRANTIES - By SYSTEM (MEP, Fire alarm, Fire sprinkler, Roofing, Security, etc.)</b>						
a.	Exhibit B - Form of Contractor's Guarantee	GC				
b.	Exhibit B-2- Certification of Compliance with Contract Documents.	GC				
c.	Manufacturer's Warranty(ies)	GC			A separate "Warranties" manual should be provided for guarantees, warranties, etc.	
d.	List of Subcontractors and Suppliers	GC				

<b>IX. LOCAL AGENCIES APPROVALS (as applicable)</b>				
a.	City of Dallas - Certificate of Occupancy	GC		
b.	City of Dallas - Final Inspections (Building)	GC		Green tags colored copies
c.	Storm Water Prevention Pollution Plan, SWPPP	GC		
d.	Elevator Inspection Certificate	GC		
e.	Boiler Inspection Certificate	GC		
f.	Health Department Inspection Certificate	GC		
<b>X. RECORD DOCUMENTS (DRAWINGS, SPECIFICATIONS, ETC.)</b>				
a.	Record Documents transmittal from GC to A/E	GC		GC is to update red-lined record drawings on a monthly basis. Final red-line record set to be provided to A/E
b.	A/E's receipt of Record Documents Letter	A/E		A/E is to provide a letter indicating that all record documents have been provided by the GC.
<b>XI. GC DESIGNED DOCUMENTS</b>				
a.	Fire Alarm drawings	GC		Need Governmental Agency approved documents.
b.	Security drawings	GC		Need Governmental Agency approved documents.
c.	HVAC Controls drawings	GC		Need Governmental Agency approved documents.
d.	Fire Sprinkler System drawings	GC		Need Governmental Agency approved documents.
e.	Data Cabling drawings	GC		Need Governmental Agency approved documents.
<b>XII. CERTIFICATIONS</b>				
a.	Certification of Asbestos Free Project: Letter from GC as per AIA A201 13.11.1	GC		
b.	Certification of Lead-Free Potable Water System: Letter from GC as per AIA A201 13.12.1	GC		
<b>XIII. FINAL SYSTEM REPORTS</b>				
a.	Final Test & Balance Report	T&B		
b.	Final Roof Inspection Report	Roof Inspector		
c.	Final HVAC Controls - CMCS Report	Dallas ISD Facilities		
<b>XIV. WARRANTY INSPECTIONS</b>				
a.	6 month inspection shall be conducted no later than: <<Date>>			
b.	11 month inspection shall be conducted no later than: <<Date>>			
<b>XV. ACKNOWLEDGE STATEMENT</b>				
a.	Project Completion Acknowledgement - Signed and dated by School Principal	PM		
b.	Project Completion Notification to Dallas ISD Facilities.	Dallas ISD Project		
I have submitted the close-out documentation in compliance with applicable contract:				
G.C. Firm	Print Name	Signature	Date	
I have reviewed and acknowledge receipt of the close-out documentation submitted by the General Contractor and found it complete and in compliance with applicable contracts:				
A/E Firm	Print Name	Signature	Date	
I have reviewed and acknowledge receipt of the close-out documentation submitted by the General Contractor and the A/E and found it complete and in compliance with applicable contracts:				
Program Manager	Print Name	Signature	Date	
I have reviewed and acknowledge receipt of the close-out documentation submitted by the General Contractor, A/E and PM and found it complete and in compliance with applicable contracts:				
Dallas Independent School District	Print Name	Signature	Date	
Owner	Print Name	Signature	Date	



## SECTION 01 78 23 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:
  - 1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory.
  - 2. Operation manuals for systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  - 3. Product maintenance manuals.
  - 4. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Submittal Procedures" for submitting copies of submittals for operation and maintenance manuals.
  - 2. Division 02 Section "Demonstration and Training" for instructing Owner's personnel in the maintenance of the products and in the operation of equipment and systems.
  - 3. Divisions 02 through 49 Sections for specific operation and maintenance manual requirements for the Work in those Sections.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. System: An organized collection of parts, equipment, or subsystems united by regular interaction.
- B. Subsystem: A portion of a system with characteristics similar to a system.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Manual Content: Operations and maintenance manual content is specified in individual specification sections to be reviewed at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.
  - 1. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to modifications and field conditions.
- B. Format: Submit operations and maintenance manuals in the following format:
  - 1. PDF electronic file. Assemble each manual into a composite electronically-indexed file. Submit on digital media acceptable to Architect and Program Manager.

- a. Name each indexed document file in composite electronic index with applicable item name. Include a complete electronically-linked operation and maintenance directory.
  - b. Enable inserted reviewer comments on draft submittals.
- 2. For Facilities use, provide one (1) PDF Electronic File of all O&M manuals at substantial completion. For Permanent Records, provide one (1) paper copy of all O&M manuals at final closeout.
- 3. Include a complete operation and maintenance directory. Enclose title pages and directories in clear plastic sleeves for paper copy. Architect will return PDF Electronic File and paper copy.
- C. Initial Manual Submittal: Submit draft PDF copy of each manual at least 30 calendar days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will comment on whether general scope and content of manual are acceptable.
- D. Final Manual Submittal: Submit each manual in final form as a PDF prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion and at least 10 calendar days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will return copy with comments.
  - 1. Correct or modify each manual to comply with Architect and Program Manager's Comments. Submit copy of each corrected manual within 10 days of receipt of Comments and prior to commencing demonstration and training.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DOCUMENTATION DIRECTORY

- A. Organization: Include a section in the directory for each of the following:
  - 1. List of documents.
  - 2. List of systems.
  - 3. List of equipment.
  - 4. Table of contents.
- B. List of Systems and Subsystems: List systems alphabetically. Include references to operation and maintenance manuals that contain information about each system.
- C. List of Equipment: List equipment for each system, organized alphabetically by system. For pieces of equipment not part of system, list alphabetically in separate list.
- D. Tables of Contents: Include a table of contents for each emergency, operation, and maintenance manual.
- E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

### 2.2 REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY, OPERATION, AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Organization: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain the following materials, in the order listed:
1. Title page.
  2. Table of contents.
  3. Manual contents.
- B. Title Page: Include the following information:
1. Subject matter included in manual.
  2. Name and address of Project.
  3. Name and address of Owner.
  4. Date of submittal.
  5. Name and contact information for Contractor.
  6. Name and contact information for Architect.
  7. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that designed the systems contained in the manuals.
- C. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.
1. If operation or maintenance documentation requires more than one volume to accommodate data, include comprehensive table of contents for all volumes in each volume of the set.
- D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.
- E. Manuals, Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite electronic PDF file for each manual type required.
1. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
  2. File Names and Bookmarks: Enable bookmarking of individual documents based upon file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel upon opening file.
- F. Manuals, Paper Copy: Submit manual in the form of hard copy, bound and labeled volumes.
1. Binders: Heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded oversize sheets.
    - a. If two or more binders are necessary to accommodate data of a system, organize data in each binder into groupings by subsystem and related components. Cross-

reference other binders if necessary to provide essential information for proper operation or maintenance of equipment or system.

- b. Identify each binder on front and spine, with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project title or name, and subject matter of content. Indicate volume number for each of the three required multiple-volume sets.
2. Dividers: Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section of the manual. Mark each tab to indicate contents. Include typed list of products and major components of equipment included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number and title of Project Manual.
  3. Protective Plastic Sleeves: Transparent plastic sleeves designed to enclose diagnostic software storage media for computerized electronic equipment.
  4. Supplementary Text: Prepared on 8-1/2-by-11-inch white bond paper.
  5. Drawings: Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.
    - a. If oversize drawings are necessary, fold drawings to same size as text pages and use as foldouts.
    - b. If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents, and drawing locations.

## 2.3 OPERATION MANUALS

- A. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:
  1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions. Use designations for systems and equipment indicated on Contract Documents.
  2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
  3. Operating standards.
  4. Operating procedures.
  5. Operating logs.
  6. Wiring diagrams.
  7. Control diagrams.
  8. Piped system diagrams.
  9. Precautions against improper use.
  10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.
- B. Descriptions: Include the following:
  1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
  2. Manufacturer's name.
  3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
  4. Equipment function.
  5. Operating characteristics.
  6. Limiting conditions.
  7. Performance curves.
  8. Engineering data and tests.
  9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.
- C. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:



1. Startup procedures.
2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
4. Regulation and control procedures.
5. Instructions on stopping.
6. Normal shutdown instructions.
7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
9. Special operating instructions and procedures.

- D. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation and diagram controls as installed.
- E. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed, and identify color-coding where required for identification.

## 2.4 PRODUCT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for each product, material, and finish. Include source information, product information, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, and warranties and bonds, as described below.
- B. Source Information: List each product included in the manual, identify them by product name, and arrange to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- C. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:
1. Product name and model number.
  2. Manufacturer's name.
  3. Color, pattern, and texture.
  4. Material and chemical composition.
  5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.
- D. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:
1. Inspection procedures.
  2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  4. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
  5. Repair instructions.
- E. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials and related services.
- F. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

## 2.5 SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

- A. Content: For each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system, include source information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranty and bond information, as described below.
- B. Source Information: List each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in the manual, identify by product name and arrange to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross-reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.
- C. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Manufacturers' maintenance documentation including the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:
  - 1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins.
  - 2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
  - 3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
  - 4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.
- D. Maintenance Procedures: Include the following information and items that detail essential maintenance procedures:
  - 1. Test and inspection instructions.
  - 2. Troubleshooting guide.
  - 3. Precautions against improper maintenance.
  - 4. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
  - 5. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
  - 6. Demonstration and training video recording, if available.
- E. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.
  - 1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.
  - 2. Maintenance and Service Record: Include manufacturers' forms for recording maintenance.
- F. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.
- G. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.
- H. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.
  - 1. Include procedures to follow and required notifications for warranty claims.

### PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 MANUAL PREPARATION

- A. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.
- B. Operation and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of operation and maintenance data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
  - 1. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to assemble and prepare information for each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.
  - 2. Prepare a separate manual for each system and subsystem, in the form of an instructional manual for use by Owner's operating personnel.
- C. Manufacturers' Data: Where manuals contain manufacturers' standard printed data, include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.
  - 1. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.
- D. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.
  - 1. Do not use original project record documents as part of operation and maintenance manuals.
  - 2. Comply with requirements of newly prepared record Drawings in Division 01 Section "Project Record Documents."
- E. Comply with Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for schedule for submitting operation and maintenance documentation.

**END OF SECTION 01 78 23**

## SECTION 01 78 39 - PROJECT AS-BUILTS & RECORD DOCUMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for project record documents, including the following:
  - 1. Record Drawings.
  - 2. Record Specifications.
  - 3. Record Product Data.
  - 4. Miscellaneous record submittals.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Division 01 Section "Execution" for final property survey.
  - 2. Division 01 Section "Closeout Procedures" for general closeout procedures.
  - 3. Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data" for operation and maintenance manual requirements.
  - 4. Divisions 02 through 49 Sections for specific requirements for project record documents of the Work in those Sections.

#### 1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
  - 1. Number of Copies: Submit one set(s) of marked-up record prints.
  - 2. Number of Copies: Submit copies of record Drawings as follows:
    - a. Initial Submittal: Submit two paper copies set as well as PDF electronic files of marked-up record prints and two sets of plots from corrected record digital data files. Architect will indicate whether general scope of changes, additional information recorded, and quality of drafting are acceptable.
    - b. Final Submittal: Submit two paper copies set as well as PDF electronic files of marked-up record prints. Print each Drawing, whether or not changes and additional information were recorded.
- B. Record Specifications: Submit two paper copies as well as PDF electronic files of Project's Specifications, including addenda and contract modifications.
- C. Record Product Data: Submit one paper copy set as well as PDF electronic files of each submittal.
  - 1. Where record Product Data are required as part of operation and maintenance manuals, submit duplicate marked-up Product Data as a component of manual.

- D. Miscellaneous Record Submittals: Refer to other Specification Sections for miscellaneous record-keeping requirements and submittals in connection with various construction activities. Submit one paper copy set as well as PDF electronic files of each submittal.
- E. Reports: Submit written report weekly indicating items incorporated in Project record documents concurrent with progress of the Work, including modifications, concealed conditions, field changes, product selections, and other notations incorporated.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 As-Built Drawings

- A. As-Built Drawings: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings.
  - 1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained record data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.
    - a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
    - b. Accurately record information in an acceptable drawing technique.
    - c. **Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.**
    - d. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.
    - e. **Cross-reference record prints to corresponding archive photographic documentation.**
  - 2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
    - a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
    - b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
    - c. Depths of foundations below first floor.
    - d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
    - e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
    - f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
    - g. Actual equipment locations.
    - h. Duct size and routing.
    - i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
    - j. Changes made by Change Order or Construction Change Directive.
    - k. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
    - l. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
    - m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
    - n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
  - 3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Utilize personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
  - 4. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
  - 5. Mark important additional information that was either shown schematically or omitted from original Drawings.

**6. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.**

B. Record Digital Data Files: Immediately before inspection for Certificate of Substantial Completion, review marked-up as-built prints with Architect. When authorized, submit marked-up to Architect. The Architect will then prepare a full set of corrected digital data files of the Contract Drawings, as follows:

1. Format: Annotated PDF electronic file.
2. Incorporate changes and additional information previously marked on record prints. Delete, redraw, and add details and notations where applicable.
3. Refer instances of uncertainty to Architect for resolution.

**C. Format: Identify and date each record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.**

**1. Record Prints: Organize record prints and newly prepared record Drawings into manageable sets. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets.**

**2. Identification: As follows:**

- a. **Project name.**
- b. **Date.**
- c. **Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."**
- d. **Name of Architect.**
- e. **Name of Contractor.**

## 2.2 RECORD SPECIFICATIONS

A. Preparation: Mark Specifications to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies from that indicated in Specifications, addenda, and contract modifications.

1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.
2. Mark copy with the proprietary name and model number of products, materials, and equipment furnished, including substitutions and product options selected.
3. Record the name of manufacturer, supplier, Installer, and other information necessary to provide a record of selections made.
4. For each principal product, indicate whether record Product Data has been submitted in operation and maintenance manuals instead of submitted as record Product Data.
5. Note related Change Orders and record Drawings where applicable.

B. Format: Submit record Specifications as a paper copy as well as in scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked up paper copy.

## 2.3 RECORD PRODUCT DATA

A. Preparation: Mark Product Data to indicate the actual product installation where installation varies substantially from that indicated in Product Data submittal.

1. Give particular attention to information on concealed products and installations that cannot be readily identified and recorded later.

2. Include significant changes in the product delivered to Project site and changes in manufacturer's written instructions for installation.
  3. Note related Change Orders, record Specifications, and record Drawings where applicable.
- B. Format: Submit record Product Data as a paper copy as well as scanned PDF electronic file(s) of marked up paper copy.
1. Include record Product Data directory organized by specification section number and title, electronically linked to each item of record Product Data.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 RECORDING AND MAINTENANCE

- A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and modifications to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until the end of Project.
- B. Maintenance of Record Documents and Samples: Store record documents and Samples in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use project record documents for construction purposes. Maintain record documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to project record documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

**END OF SECTION 01 78 39**

## SECTION 01 79 00 - DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

#### 1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's personnel, including the following:
  - 1. Demonstration of operation of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  - 2. Training in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
  - 3. Demonstration and training video recordings.
- B. Related Sections:
  - 1. Divisions 02 through 49 Sections for specific requirements for demonstration and training for products in those Sections.

#### 1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

- A. Instruction Program: Submit outline of instructional program for demonstration and training including a list of training modules and a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and instructors' names for each training module. Include learning objective and outline for each training module.
  - 1. Indicate proposed training modules utilizing manufacturer-produced demonstration and training video recordings for systems, equipment, and products in lieu of video recording of live instructional module.
- B. Qualification Data: For instructor.
- C. Attendance Record: For each training module, submit list of participants and length of instruction time.

#### 1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

- A. Demonstration and Training Video Recordings: Submit two copies within seven days of end of each training module. Needs to match section on Final Completion.
  - 1. Identification: On each copy, provide an applied label with the following information:
    - a. Name of Project.
    - b. Name and address of videographer.
    - c. Name of Architect.



- d. Name of Contractor.
- e. Date of video recording.
- 2. At completion of training, submit complete training manual(s) for Owner's use.

## 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Instructor Qualifications: A factory-authorized service representative, complying with requirements in Division 01 Section "Quality Requirements," experienced in operation and maintenance procedures and training.

## 1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate instruction schedule with Owner's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting Owner's operations.
- B. Coordinate instructors, including providing notification of dates, times, length of instruction time, and course content.
- C. Coordinate content of training modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data has been reviewed and approved by Architect.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM

- A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system and for equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification Sections.
- B. Training Modules: Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each module, include instruction for the following as applicable to the system, equipment, or component:
  - 1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include the following:
    - a. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
    - b. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
    - c. Operating standards.
    - d. Regulatory requirements.
    - e. Equipment function.
    - f. Operating characteristics.
    - g. Limiting conditions.
    - h. Performance curves.
  - 2. Documentation: Review the following items in detail:
    - a. Emergency manuals.
    - b. Operations manuals.
    - c. Maintenance manuals.

- d. Project record documents.
  - e. Identification systems.
  - f. Warranties and bonds.
  - g. Maintenance service agreements and similar continuing commitments.
3. Emergencies: Include the following, as applicable:
- a. Instructions on meaning of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
  - b. Instructions on stopping.
  - c. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
  - d. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal operating limits.
  - e. Sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - f. Special operating instructions and procedures.
4. Operations: Include the following, as applicable:
- a. Startup procedures.
  - b. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
  - c. Routine and normal operating instructions.
  - d. Regulation and control procedures.
  - e. Control sequences.
  - f. Safety procedures.
  - g. Instructions on stopping.
  - h. Normal shutdown instructions.
  - i. Operating procedures for emergencies.
  - j. Operating procedures for system, subsystem, or equipment failure.
  - k. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
  - l. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
  - m. Special operating instructions and procedures.
5. Adjustments: Include the following:
- a. Alignments.
  - b. Checking adjustments.
  - c. Noise and vibration adjustments.
  - d. Economy and efficiency adjustments.
6. Troubleshooting: Include the following:
- a. Diagnostic instructions.
  - b. Test and inspection procedures.
7. Maintenance: Include the following:
- a. Inspection procedures.
  - b. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
  - c. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
  - d. Procedures for routine cleaning
  - e. Procedures for preventive maintenance.
  - f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
  - g. Instruction on use of special tools.
8. Repairs: Include the following:
- a. Diagnosis instructions.

- b. Repair instructions.
- c. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
- d. Instructions for identifying parts and components.
- e. Review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance.

### **PART 3 - EXECUTION**

#### **3.1 PREPARATION**

- A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training module. Assemble training modules into a training manual organized in coordination with requirements in Division 01 Section "Operations and Maintenance Data."
- B. Set up instructional equipment at instruction location.

#### **3.2 INSTRUCTION**

- A. Engage qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.
  - 1. Owner will furnish an instructor to describe Owner's operational philosophy.
  - 2. Owner will furnish Contractor with names and positions of participants.
- B. Scheduling: Provide instruction at mutually agreed on times. For equipment that requires seasonal operation, provide similar instruction at start of each season.
  - 1. Schedule training with Owner through Program Manager with at least 7 days advance notice.
- C. Cleanup: Collect used and leftover educational materials and give to Owner. Remove instructional equipment. Restore systems and equipment to condition existing before initial training use.

#### **3.3 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING VIDEO RECORDINGS**

- A. General: Record each training module separately. Include classroom instructions and demonstrations, board diagrams, and other visual aids, but not student practice.
- B. Video Recording Format: Provide high-quality color video recordings with menu navigation in format acceptable to Architect.
- C. Recording: Mount camera on tripod before starting recording, unless otherwise necessary to show area of demonstration and training. Display continuous running time.

**END OF SECTION 01 79 00**

## SECTION 01 91 00 – GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS

### PART 1 - GENERAL

#### 1.1 SUMMARY

- A. The Owner will perform the Commissioning activities or has retained an independent Commissioning Authority (CxA) to coordinate Commissioning activities for this project. The objective of the Commissioning process is to verify and document that the performance of facilities, systems, and assemblies installed as part of this project meet the project's defined objectives and criteria.
- B. This section outlines the general roles and responsibilities of the CxA, Owner, and General Contractor. Divisions 21, 22, 23, and 26 sections define roles and responsibilities applicable to Division 21, 22, 23, and 26 work.
- C. The CxA is an independent contractor retained directly by the Owner and will coordinate all Commissioning activities with the Owner's representative.
- D. Commissioning requires support from the contractors. The Commissioning Process does not relieve any contractor from their obligation to complete all portions of work in a satisfactory manner. Post contract/construction award, the Contractor shall not use any Commissioning responsibilities/obligations as justification for construction delays or requests for additional monies.
- E. The General Contractor is responsible for coordinating all Commissioning activities with their Sub-Contractors.

#### 1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Division 21 Section 21 0800 – Commissioning of Fire Suppression
- B. Division 22 Section 22 0800 – Commissioning of Plumbing Systems
- C. Division 23 Section 23 0800 – Commissioning of HVAC Systems
- D. Division 26 Section 26 0800 – Commissioning of Electrical Systems
- E. Individual Division 21, 22, 23, and 26 sections contain requirements related to the Commissioning process, if applicable for that Division.

#### 1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. *Acceptance*: A formal action, taken by a person with appropriate authority (which may/may not be contractually defined) to declare that some aspect of the project meets defined requirements, thus permitting subsequent activities to proceed. The Owner's Representative shall be responsible for evaluating acceptable criteria.
- B. *Commissioning Process or Commissioning (Cx)*: A quality focused process for enhancing the delivery of a project. The process focuses on verifying and documenting that the facility and all of

its systems and assemblies are planned, designed, installed, tested, operated, and maintained to meet the Owner's Requirements.

- C. *Commissioning Process Activity*: A component of the Commissioning Process.
- D. *Commissioning Authority (CxA)*: An entity identified by the Owner who plans, schedules, and coordinates the Commissioning team to implement the Commissioning Process.
- E. *Commissioning Field Report*: A written document that identifies the Commissioning activities completed during a visit to the project site. The report identifies significant findings, results, comments and questions that resulted from the visit. This is typically produced by the CxA per site visit.
- F. *Commissioning Photo Log*: A log of photographs that support the items identified in the Commissioning Issues Log. The photo log numbering corresponds to the issue numbers listed in the Cx issues log.
- G. *Commissioning Plan*: A document that outlines the organization, schedule, allocation of resources, and documentation requirements of the Commissioning Process. The Cx Plan will be developed by the CxA.
- H. *Commissioning Process Activities*: Components of the Commissioning Process.
- I. *Commissioning Progress Report*: A written document that details activities completed as part of the Commissioning Process and significant findings from those activities, and is continuously updated during the course of a project.
- J. *Commissioning Request for Information (RFI)*: Form used by the Commissioning Authority to request information from the design or construction team.
- K. *Commissioning Team*: The individuals and agencies who, through coordinated actions, are responsible for implementing the Commissioning Process. The Cx Team shall consist of: CxA, GC, MC, EC, TAB Contractor, Controls Contractor, Owner's Representative, A/E Representatives and equipment suppliers (as needed).
- L. *Commissioning Testing*: The evaluation and documentation of the equipment, assemblies, any building/equipment controls, and systems delivery and condition, installation, proper function according to the manufacturer's specifications and project documentation to meet the design criteria.
- M. *Construction Team*: The General Contractor, related sub-contractors, and other contractors working for the Owner during the Construction Phase.
- N. *Construction Documents*: This includes a wide range of documents, which will vary from project to project, and with the Owner's needs and regulations, laws, and jurisdictional requirements. Construction documents usually include the project manual (specifications), plans (drawings), and general terms and conditions of the contract.
- O. *Contract Documents*: This includes a wide range of documents, which will vary from project to project and with the owner's needs, regulations, laws, and jurisdictional requirements. Contract documents frequently include price agreements; construction management process; subcontractor agreements or requirements; requirements and procedures for submittals, changes, and other construction requirements; timeline for completion; and the construction documents.

- P. *Commissioning Issues Log*: A formal document, created and maintained by the CxA, and ongoing record of problems or concerns identified through/during the construction phases which deviate from the project's construction documents, applicable codes and/or normal construction industry practices and their resolution. Items on this issues log should be reviewed by the GC and corrected in a timely manner by the applicable trades and contractors.
- Q. *Coordination Drawings*: Drawings showing the work of all trades to illustrate that equipment can be installed in the space allocated without compromising equipment function or access for maintenance and replacement. These drawings graphically illustrate and dimension manufacturers' recommended maintenance clearances.
- R. *Design Review (Peer)*: An independent and objective technical review of the design of the project or a part thereof, conducted at specified stages of design completion by one or more qualified professionals, for the purpose of enhancing the quality of the design and to determine compliance with regulations, codes, or other standards administered by the Authority having Jurisdiction. The CxA may perform a Design Review during the early stages of design.
- S. *Design Review (Commissioning)*: A review of the design documents to determine compliance with the Owner's Requirements and/or Basis of Design, including coordination between systems and assemblies being Commissioned, features and access for testing, Commissioning and maintenance, and other reviews required by the Owner.
- T. *Facility Guide*: A basic building systems description and operating plan with general procedures and confirmed facility operating conditions, set points, schedules, and operating procedures for use by facility operations to properly operate the facility.
- U. *Final Commissioning Report*: A document that records the activities and results of the Commissioning Process and is developed from the final Commissioning Plan with all of its attached appendices.
- V. *Functional Performance Test (FPT)*: A written protocol that defines methods, personnel, and expectations, for tests conducted on components, equipment, assemblies, systems, and interfaces among systems. These documents shall be developed and provided by the CxA and shall require pre- approval by the Owner's Representative.
- W. *Pre-Functional Checklist (PFC)*: A form used by the installing contractors to verify that appropriate components are on-site, ready for installation, correctly installed, started up, tested and balanced, in compliance with the owner's project requirements, and is ready for Functional Performance Testing. These documents shall be developed and provided by the CxA and shall require pre-approval by the Owner's Representative.
- X. *Submittal Review*: A Commissioning review of the equipment submittals for relevant mechanical, electrical, plumbing and energy consuming equipment and systems.
- Y. *Test Procedure*: A written protocol that defines methods, personnel, and expectations for tests conducted on components, equipment, assemblies, systems, and interfaces among systems to verify compliance with the Owner's Project Requirements.

#### 1.4 ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES

- A. Commissioning Authority (CxA)
  - 1. Develop a Commissioning Plan outlining the organization, schedule, and documentation requirements of the Commissioning Process.

2. Coordinate and direct the Commissioning activities in a logical, sequential and efficient manner using consistent protocols and forms, centralized documentation, clear and regular communications with the Cx team, and frequently update project timelines and schedules for Cx activities.
3. The CxA is not responsible for the design concept, design criteria, compliance with codes, site safety, construction means and methods, review or approval of change orders, design or general construction scheduling, cost estimating, or construction management.
4. Review contract documents for completeness and quality.
5. Perform focused reviews of the design, drawings and specifications at various stages of development (during schematic design, design development and contract document phases).
6. Develop full Commissioning specifications for all Commissioned equipment (Owner may provide the specifications). Coordinate them with, and integrate into, the specifications of the architect and engineers.
  - a. The Commissioning specification will include:
    - 1) a detailed description of the responsibilities of all parties
    - 2) details of the Commissioning process
    - 3) reporting and documentation requirements, including formats
    - 4) alerts to coordination issues, deficiency resolution
    - 5) construction checklist and startup requirements
    - 6) subcontractors' Pre-Functional Checklists (PFC) Forms and responsibilities
    - 7) the Functional Performance Testing (FPT) Forms and process
    - 8) specific Functional Performance Test requirements, including testing conditions and acceptance criteria for each piece of equipment to be Commissioned
7. The CxA may assist with problem solving, non-conformance or deficiencies, but ultimately that responsibility resides with the General Contractor (GC) and the Architect/Engineer (A/E). The primary role of the CxA is to oversee the Commissioning process. This includes site observations of installation of Commissioned systems and equipment, development and coordination of the execution of a PFC and FPT testing plan and observation and documentation of performance that systems are functioning in accordance with the Owner's Requirements, design intent and in accordance with the Contract Documents. The Contractors will provide all tools and personnel to start, check-out and test equipment and systems, except as noted in this section.
8. Coordinate the Commissioning work and work with the GC to incorporate Commissioning activities into the master project schedule maintained by the GC.
9. Update and revise the Commissioning Plan as required.
10. Plan and conduct a Commissioning scoping meeting and other Commissioning meetings with the Cx team. The CxA will record meeting minutes for Cx meetings facilitated by the CxA and distribute them to all Cx Team members.
11. Request and review additional information required to perform Commissioning tasks, including installation, operations and maintenance (IOM) manuals and materials, contractor start-up and checkout procedures. Document results and incorporate into the Commissioning plan.
12. Review Contractor submittals applicable to systems being Commissioned, for compliance with the Owner's requirements and for coordination with the Commissioning Process. The CxA review provides information to the Design Team but is not a review for acceptance or rejection of the submitted equipment or system; acceptance or rejection of any submittal remains the responsibility of the Design Team.
13. Conduct periodic construction observations to verify that systems and equipment are installed consistently with Project's requirements. Document deficiencies and distribute to Cx Team members in a timely manner.
14. Attend selected planning and job-site meetings to obtain information on construction progress.

15. With necessary assistance and review from installing contractors, write and distribute the Pre-Functional Checklists and Functional Performance Test procedures for systems and equipment.
16. Approve Pre-Functional Checklists completed by GC by selected site observation visits and spot checking to confirm that systems and equipment are ready for Functional Performance Tests.
17. Review start-up and TAB reports to confirm included systems are ready for Functional Performance Testing.
18. Coordinate, witness and document Functional Performance Testing by installing contractors. Coordinate retesting as necessary until satisfactory performance is achieved per design specifications.
19. Coordinate, witness and document required seasonal or deferred Functional Performance Testing and any deficiency corrections required.
20. Review equipment warranties and confirm that they are project specific and clearly define the Owner's responsibilities if any.
21. Oversee and review the training of the Owner's operating personnel.
22. Review O&M manuals submitted by the GC.
23. Provide a final Commissioning report for review and acceptance by the Owner's Representative.
24. The CxA is not responsible for construction means and methods or for site safety and security.
25. The CxA will not authorize or approve construction cost amendments, changes to the construction schedule, or changes to the contract documents.
26. Participate in the TAB Field verification process using a sampling method. Document the verification using TAB FPTs.

B. General Contractor (GC) and Sub-Contractors

1. The GC is responsible for coordinating all Commissioning activities of the sub-contractors. Commissioning activities may be completed by the Mechanical Contractor (MC), Electrical Contractor (EC), Controls Contractor (CC), or Test and Balance (TAB) contractor, but the GC is ultimately responsible for completion of all Cx related tasks.
2. Facilitate the coordination of the Commissioning work by the CxA and incorporate Commissioning activities into the master schedule.
3. Furnish a copy of all construction documents, addenda, change orders, Requests for Information (RFIs), approved submittals, shop drawings, Architect's Supplemental Instructions (ASIs), and IOMs, related to Commissioned systems and equipment to the CxA.
4. In each purchase order or written subcontract, include any requirements for Commissioning.
5. Ensure that all sub-contractors execute their Commissioning responsibilities according to the Contract Documents, responsibilities and schedule.
6. The GC shall designate a staff member who will be knowledgeable and responsible for the construction of the Commissioned systems (typically the site superintendent) to be their active representative on the Commissioning team. This person shall attend the Commissioning scoping meeting and other necessary meetings scheduled by the CxA to facilitate the Commissioning process.
7. Each sub-contractor shall designate a staff member who will be knowledgeable and responsible for the construction of the Commissioned systems (typically the trade superintendent) to be their active representative on the Commissioning team. This person shall attend the Commissioning scoping meeting and other necessary meetings scheduled by the CxA to facilitate the Commissioning process.
8. Coordinate and share the issues identified on the Cx Issues Log with the appropriate trade sub-contractors. Respond in writing to the CxA and Owner's Representative with the contractor's response, appropriate trade responsible for the corrective action and anticipated completion date for the corrective action.



9. Follow up with the subcontractors as to the status of the corrective actions to the items on the Cx Issues Log, and update the CxA.
10. The GC's designated Cx team staff member shall personally examine, witness and verify that all issues are corrected and complete when the sub-contractor states they have "corrected" an item on the Cx Issues Log.
11. Notify the CxA one week in advance of all equipment start-ups and tests required by the Contract Documents.
12. Submit test results for tests required by the Contract Documents, including (but not limited to) duct leakage tests, hydronic system pressure tests, generator tests, etc. as applicable to the Commissioning scope.
13. Receive the Pre-Functional Checklist forms from the CxA. Create a "master" Pre-Functional Checklist document binder containing all checklists for the project that shall remain at the project site.
14. Coordinate and distribute copies of the Pre-Functional Checklists to all relevant subcontractors.
15. Notify the CxA when Pre-Functional Checklists are completed.
16. Remedy any deficiencies identified in the Pre-Functional Checklists and notify the CxA (in writing) that deficiencies have been addressed.
17. Notify the CxA when TAB activities will be taking place and have been completed. Provide the CxA with TAB report(s).
18. Participate in TAB verification, which may include repeating selected measurements contained in the TAB report(s).
19. Coordinate with subcontractors to ensure qualified technicians are available for performing the Functional Performance Test procedures under direction of the CxA.
20. Coordinate the training of Owner personnel.
21. Verify that subcontractors prepare and submit O&M manuals, according to the Contract Documents, including clarifying and updating the original sequences of operation to as-built conditions.
22. Ensure that subcontractors execute seasonal or deferred Functional Performance Testing, witnessed by the CxA, according to the specifications.
23. Ensure that subcontractors correct deficiencies and make necessary adjustments to O&M manuals and as-built drawings for applicable issues identified in any seasonal testing.
24. Gather and submit all project closeout documentation, including submittals, O&M manuals, as-built drawings, warranties, etc. to CxA for review.

C. Owner

1. Arrange for facility operating and maintenance personnel to attend various field Commissioning activities and field training sessions according to the Commissioning (Cx) Plan.
2. Provide final approval for the completion of the Commissioning requirements.
3. Coordinate site visits and meetings with the CxA.
4. Review and comment on Commissioning documentation such as the Cx plan, field reports, PFC & FPT Forms, and Cx Issue Logs.
5. Provide interpretations and clarifications of the Owner's Requirements.
6. Provide input and direction on Commissioning-related recommendations that arise from the Commissioning process which may enhance the operation of the building but are not included in the project documents and may be an additional project cost. If the Owner is in agreement with Commissioning recommendations, they are to direct the Design Team to review and issue the appropriate directive to add that scope and maintain the Design Team's responsibility for all construction documents.

D. Design Team (Architect/Engineer)

1. Perform normal submittal review, construction observation, as-built drawing preparation, O&M manual preparation, etc., as contracted with Owner.
2. Fulfill all obligations specified in the contract documents, including reviewing and approving submittals, conducting construction observation, issuing addenda and clarifications,

- responding to RFIs, issuing punchlists, and conducting substantial and final completion walkthroughs. Review and provide comments on all recommendations.
3. Provide any design narrative documentation requested by the CxA.
  4. Prepare and submit final as-built design intent documentation for inclusion in the Systems Manual.
  5. Review and approve the O&M manuals.
  6. Coordinate resolution of design non-conformance and design deficiencies identified during the project.
  7. Assist (along with the contractors) in clarifying the operation and control of Commissioned equipment in areas where the specifications, control drawings or equipment documentation is not sufficient for writing detailed testing procedures.
  8. Participate in the resolution of system deficiencies identified during Commissioning.
  9. Notify the CxA of substantive changes to the Contract Documents.
  10. Provide clarifications to Contract Documents as required.
  11. Review the Design Team Commissioning Issues Log and respond to all items in a timely manner. Update contract documents as required to address Commissioning items identified.
  12. Review Commissioning suggestions identified on the Design Team Commissioning Issues Log for impact to the design intent. If the design team is in agreement with the suggestion, they are to assist in reviewing the suggestion with the owner for their review and decision if it should be added to the project.
  13. The design team shall review all shop drawing and submittal comments from the CxA.

#### 1.5 SCOPE OF WORK

- A. Refer to Section 21 08 00 for listing of fire suppression systems to be Commissioned and requirements.
- B. Refer to Section 22 08 00 for listing of plumbing systems to be Commissioned and requirements.
- C. Refer to Section 23 08 00 for listing of HVAC systems to be Commissioned and requirements.
- D. Refer to Section 26 08 00 for listing of Electrical Systems to be Commissioned and requirements.

#### 1.6 COMMISSIONING DOCUMENTATION

- A. General
  1. Timely and accurate documentation of Commissioning activities is essential for the Commissioning process to be effective. To this end, all Commissioning activities conducted by the contractors shall be documented as outlined below and in Part 3 Execution of this specification.
  2. Contractor Commissioning responsibilities on Project Management Software include the following items:
    - a. Commissioning Schedule
    - b. Construction Issues
    - c. Pre-Functional Checklists
    - d. Functional Performance Test Forms
  3. The Architect, Engineers, GC, subcontractors, and owner will be responsible for responding within five business days of an inquiry being assigned to them.
    - a. The owner(s) or their designated responsible party will be one of the final designated personnel in the approval process that will sign off before an item can be closed out.
    - b. All of the aforementioned entities will be responsible for the same response time in the identified field punch software.

- c. The punch list and open Commissioning items will be tied to identified retention dollars that will not be paid until all open issues are resolved.
- d. Owner-Insite will be the designated software that will be used by all Cx agents and used for MEP items identified by the Cx agent and Owner.
- 4. The Pre-Functional Checklists shall be completed by each respective trade contractor involved with the installation of any Commissioned systems and equipment.
- 5. The Functional Performance Tests will be completed by the CxA as they witness the test(s) conducted by the contractors.
- 6. All Contractor Commissioning Documents prepared by the contractors will be fully completed in a neat and workmanlike manner so as to be fully legible. Documentation which, at the CxA's discretion, is incomplete or less than fully legible shall be deemed unacceptable.
- 7. Commissioning procedures and tests, which are rejected by the CxA due to incomplete, or illegible contractor documentation shall be repeated by the contractor and new Contractor Commissioning Documents shall be prepared to the Commissioning Team's satisfaction at no additional cost to the Owner.
- 8. Procedures deemed unacceptable by the Commissioning Team after being repeated due to inadequate documentation may be subject to completion by the CxA, at a cost to the contractor as outlined in item Section 3.8 "Cost of Re-Evaluation" below.
- 9. All Contractor Commissioning Documents shall be completed on the job-site concurrent with the activities being documented. Remedial documentation of Commissioning activities either off-site or after the procedures have been completed is unacceptable.
- 10. All Contractor Commissioning Documents will be submitted to the CxA for review and acceptance upon completion.

B. Contractor Commissioning Process Status Tracking

- 1. Contractors shall be responsible for monitoring the progress of their Commissioning activities. The contractor will update the status of meetings, issues, re-scheduling, checklists and tests.
- 2. The contractors shall regularly update and upload drawings or pictures as Commissioning activities are completed so as to provide a readily available report to CxA regarding current status of the contractors Commissioning activities.

C. Record Drawings

- 1. Contractors shall regularly update a 'redlined' set of record drawings showing Commissioned systems as work is being installed so that the drawings remain current with the field work, and as required in Division 01, 21, 22, 23, and 26 of the project specifications.
- 2. Redlining record drawings at the end of construction shall not be acceptable.
- 3. The Contractors up-to-date, in-progress redlines shall be kept on-site in the Contractor's field office and available for review by the Cx Team.

D. Access to Contractor Documentation

- 1. Contractors shall provide the CxA with access to shop drawings, coordination drawings, equipment cut-sheets, schematics, in-progress record drawings, manufacturers installation-operation-maintenance manuals, startup reports, etc. to assist the CxA in execution of the Cx process.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. The CxA shall receive a copy of all construction documents, project schedules, addenda, change orders, and appropriate approved submittals and shop drawings directly from the GC.
- B. The CxA shall disseminate written information and documents to all responsible parties relative to the nature and extent of the Cx communication.

- C. The CxA is primarily responsible to the Owner and, as such, shall regularly apprise the GC and the Owner of progress, pending problems and/or disputes, and shall provide regular status reports on progress with each system. Any potential change in the contractual and/or financial obligations of the owner (credits, change orders, schedule changes, etc.) shall be identified and quantified as soon as possible.
- D. The CxA shall coordinate the schedule of Commissioning activities with the construction schedule. It is possible that some procedures will be completed before the entire system is completed.

## 1.8 SCHEDULE

- A. Commissioning of systems shall proceed per the criteria established in the specific sections that follow, with activities to be performed on a timely basis. The CxA shall be available to respond promptly to avoid construction delays.
- B. Start-up and testing of systems may proceed prior to final completion of systems to expedite progress. However, testing and checkout services that are the primary responsibility of the contractor / vendor will not proceed in advance of their testing and checkout.
- C. Problems observed shall be addressed immediately, responsible parties notified, and actions to correct deficiencies coordinated in a timely manner.
- D. Contractor schedules and scheduling is the responsibility of the GC. The CxA shall provide Commissioning scheduling information to the GC for review and planning activities.

## 1.9 REFERENCE STANDARDS

- A. Industry standards and guidelines are a guide to the Commissioning process and are hereby incorporated and will be applied as appropriate. Reference standards and guidelines include, but are not limited, to the following:
- B. References:
  1. ASHRAE Standard 202-2013: Commissioning Process for Buildings and Systems
  2. ASHRAE Guideline 0-2005: The Commissioning Process
  3. ASHRAE Guideline 1.1-2007: HVAC&R Technical Requirements for The Commissioning Process
  4. ACG Commissioning Guideline (current version)
  5. NEBB Commissioning Standard (current version)
  6. BCxA Building Commissioning Handbook (current version)

## 2.0 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION

- A. "Certificate of Substantial Completion" will not be signed by the Dallas ISD unless the CxA and the Owner's Representative are in agreement that all Equipment and Systems to be Commissioned are installed and operational, and any open Cx Issues Log items have been identified as minor. Any open Cx Issues Log items shall be resolvable within 21 days.

## PART 2 - PRODUCTS

### 2.1 TEST EQUIPMENT

- A. All industry standard test equipment required for performing the specified tests shall be provided by the applicable contractor (as specified) and shall be approved by the CxA. Any necessary proprietary vendor specific test equipment shall be provided by that vendor or manufacturer.
- B. Any portable or hand-held setup / calibration devices required to initialize the control system shall be made available by the control vendor to the CxA (at no additional cost to the Owner or CxA).
- C. The instrumentation used in the Commissioning process shall meet the following standards:
  - 1. Be of sufficient quality and accuracy to test and/or measure system performance within the tolerances required.
  - 2. Be calibrated at the manufacturer's recommended intervals (typically within the previous 12 months) with calibration tags permanently affixed to the instrument
  - 3. Be maintained in good repair and operating condition throughout the duration of use on this project.
  - 4. Be immediately re-calibrated or repaired if dropped and/or damaged in any way during use on this project.

## PART 3 - EXECUTION

### 3.1 COMMISSIONING PLAN AND SCHEDULE

- A. The CxA shall generate a project specific Commissioning plan which identifies Cx tasks, roles and responsibilities for the Cx process. The CxA will submit a Cx schedule for the Commissioning process which shall be integrated into the construction schedule by the GC.

### 3.2 CONSTRUCTION OBSERVATION

- A. This is an additional and separate activity from that provided by the design team. Construction observation is required as part of the Commissioning and coordination process to be provided by the CxA. Field Observation reports will be maintained and distributed by the CxA to all Cx Team members.

### 3.3 COMMISSIONING ISSUES LOGS

- A. As part of the Commissioning process, all issues will be recorded on the Project Management Software. The PM Software will divide the issues as follows.
  - 1. Construction Commissioning Issues
    - a. This log is also a part of the Web-Based Project Management Software. It is a formal and ongoing record of problems or concerns pertaining to the installation of the Commissioned systems and equipment which identifies where the contractors have deviated from the OPR, contract documents, applicable codes or normal industry construction practices. It is the GC's responsibility to regularly login and retrieve this log from the Web-Based Project Management Software, follow up and review each item on the list with the appropriate trades, and respond to the CxA with feedback within 5 business days from the issuance of the log from the CxA.
    - b. Team members will be given access through the Web Based Project Management Software to comment on issues. This is where the GC should provide feedback which includes the following sections:
      - 1) Response/Action: This is the contractor's response to the issue identified by the CxA.

- 2) Trade: This identifies the specific contractor responsible for the correction of the issue. The issue will be assigned to that contractor or subcontractor.
- 3) Expected Completion Date: This is the date which the GC and subcontractor agree the issue will be resolved by. This provides information back to the CxA as to when items should be corrected by for spot checking the correction of issues.
- c. The GC shall provide feedback and updates to the construction Cx issues log to the CxA within 5 business days from its issuance from the CxA.
- d. The CxA will maintain the master cx long on the Web Based Project Management Software.

### 3.4 PRE-FUNCTIONAL CHECKLISTS

- A. The Commissioning Authority shall develop the Pre-Functional Checklists (PFCs) and distribute them to the GC for use by the sub-contractors.
- B. The sub-contractors shall complete the checklists and submit them to the GC as they are completed or uploaded to the Web Based Project Management Software.
- C. PFCs consist of a series of field observations and verification checks conducted by the contractors during the installation of Commissioned equipment to verify the following:
  - 1. Installed equipment matches the specifications and approved submittals
  - 2. Equipment is installed per the specifications, drawings and manufacturer's recommendations.
  - 3. Utility connections to equipment, such as electrical, steam, chilled water, etc. have been successfully completed.
  - 4. Equipment is ready for start-up per manufacturer's guidelines.
- D. Contractors should expect to complete one (1) PFC for each piece of equipment covered by the Commissioning process such as pumps, fans, air handling units, terminal units, control panels, and lighting control panels.
- E. PFCs for mechanical equipment will include verification of the safety devices intended to stop and/or prevent equipment operation unless minimum safety standards or conditions are met. These may include adequate oil pressure, proof-of-flow, non-freezing conditions, maximum static pressure, maximum head pressure, etc. The CxA shall observe the actual performance of safety shutoffs in a real or closely simulated condition of failure.
- F. Systems may include safety devices and components that control a variety of equipment operating as a system. Interlocks may be hard-wired or operate from software. Operation of these interlocks shall be verified by the CxA.
- G. Additional checklists will be required to verify installation of distribution systems such as piping, ductwork, electrical wire and conduit, etc. The number of required PFCs will vary from system to system, but will typically be limited to one form per system per floor or zone.
- H. The PFC used for this project will be finalized by the CxA after receipt of equipment Installation, Operation & Maintenance (IOM) Manuals from the Contractors.
- I. PFCs shall be completed by the contractor and maintained on-site per the requirements of this specification, Section 1.6 "Commissioning Documentation".

### 3.5 CONTRACTOR STARTUP TESTING

- A. The contractors shall conduct all startup testing as required by the specifications, equipment manufacturer, the manufacturer's installation, operations and maintenance manual or as necessary to verify all equipment is properly installed and fully operational.
- B. Startup testing shall be documented. Appropriate documentation shall be by the contractor and/or the manufacturer's representative or entity specified in the construction documents.
- C. The startup testing shall be documented using the contractors or manufacturer's standard forms and an electronic copy of the form shall be provided to the CxA or uploaded to the Web Based Project Management Software under the appropriate PFC.

### 3.6 TESTING AND BALANCING

- A. Testing, Adjusting, and Balance Contractor (TAB) Requirements
  1. Air and water balance shall be accomplished by an independent test and balance firm. The test and balance firm shall come back after the final balancing report is approved to work with the CxA and spot check this work to verify accuracy of results. Refer to Division 23 for acceptance criteria.
  2. Test and Balance contractor to provide the final balancing report to the CxA.
  3. The TAB contractor shall be responsible for successful completion and documentation of all TAB activities specified in the Division 23.
  4. Prior to the start of TAB activities, the TAB contractor shall submit a proposed TAB plan, procedures and documentation to the CxA and A/E for review. TAB procedures shall be submitted to allow sufficient time for CxA review and approval prior to the start of TAB activities.
  5. After this review, and prior to start of field work, the TAB contractor will attend one or more planning meetings as required with the Commissioning Team to review and discuss outstanding issues relating to TAB procedures and forms, discuss resolution of issues identified during the TAB contractor's plan review and field inspections, and to coordinate field work.
  6. Prior to the start of fieldwork, the TAB contractor shall issue a final set of TAB procedures and TAB forms which incorporate any comments received during the Commissioning Team review.
  7. The TAB contractor shall have at least one certified field technician on site whenever TAB work is being performed. The certified technician shall be responsible for the quality of the work of any non-certified technicians.
  8. The TAB contractor is responsible to notify the GC, who in turn shall notify the Commissioning Team, a minimum of two (2) weeks in advance of the time for start of TAB work to allow the CxA and A/E time to assess system readiness.
  9. The TAB contractor will work cooperatively with the CxA.
  10. The TAB contractor shall coordinate with the controls contractor to ensure that changes made to the control system during TAB (flow coefficients, duct areas, etc.) are archived and become the default or initial values for these parameters.
  11. The TAB contractor shall provide daily lists of issues and/or problems identified during TAB work to the GC, CxA and A/E for follow-up & resolution with the appropriate contractors.
  12. Participate in verification of the TAB report, which will consist of repeating any selected measurement contained in the TAB report where required by the CxA for verification or diagnostic purposes.
  13. A TAB Final Acceptance Inspection shall be conducted by the A/E, Owner's Representative and CxA and will include a field verification of at least 5% of the TAB contractor's field readings.
  14. The TAB contractor will provide technicians, equipment and instrumentation to support the field verification.
  15. Instruments used for the field verification shall be the same instruments (by model and serial number) that were used for the original TAB work.

16. The TAB Contractor shall provide test equipment calibration certifications to the Owner's Representative or the CxA upon request.

### 3.7 FUNCTIONAL PERFORMANCE TEST PROCEDURES

#### A. Scope

1. Functional Performance Test (FPT) procedures are executed after Commissioned equipment and systems have been installed, started-up, balanced and are fully operational. The goal of these procedures is to conclusively verify that Commissioned equipment, sub-systems and major systems operate and perform per the design intent, and the project specifications.
2. Equipment-level FPTs will be used to verify operation and capacity of selected equipment such as boilers, chillers cooling towers, pumps, exhaust fans, air handling units, etc.
3. System-level FPTs will verify the following aspects of system operation.
  - a. System operation under both normal and alternate operating conditions and modes.
  - b. Interactions between equipment and sub-systems.
  - c. Operation of safeties and interlocks.
  - d. Control system operation, response time, stability and tuning.
  - e. System response to abnormal and/or emergency conditions such as fire, equipment failure and power outages, and associated Alarms.
  - f. All control sequence of operation strategies, alarm generation and reporting shall also be reviewed and proper operation verified by the CxA.
  - g. The central work station graphics, point assignments, alarm messages, and logging functions shall be verified.

#### B. Functional Performance Test Forms

1. The FPTs used for this project will be created, utilized and finalized by the CxA after receipt of approved contractor submittals.

#### C. Contractor Requirements

1. The Cx team will, in a joint effort, coordinate and schedule FPT activities.
2. Scheduling of FPTs shall be contingent on notification from the affected contractor(s) to the GC and CxA that equipment and systems are ready for checkout.
3. Other prerequisites for execution of FPTs shall include the following:
  - a. All Contractor Startup Procedures and Cx Pre-Functional Checklists have been completed and documented.
  - b. TAB has been completed.
  - c. All Cx Issues Log items identified as affecting equipment or system performance or operations have been resolved.
4. Prior to claiming readiness for FPT, the Controls Contractor shall ensure that the following items are completed and documented:
  - a. Point-to-point checkouts have been verified and documentation has been submitted to the CxA.
  - b. Verify that network communication between all devices and systems is established
  - c. Sequence of Operation checkouts are completed.
  - d. Printed and annotated trend logs and alarm histories establishing acceptable operation including
    - 1) Stable control
    - 2) Recovery from upset/changes (e.g., from setback)
    - 3) Special and/or seasonal modes
    - 4) Emergency and alarm modes including loss/restoration of power
5. Execution of the FPTs will be conducted by the contractors providing and installing the equipment and systems being Commissioned and shall be witnessed by the CxA. The Controls Contractor shall verify/validate the BAS Sequences of Operations to the satisfaction of the CxA.



6. Typical activities during FPT execution will include the following:
  - a. Starting/stopping equipment
  - b. Energizing/de-energizing electrical distribution gear
  - c. Opening/closing valves and dampers
  - d. Manipulating BAS inputs, outputs and set points
  - e. Setup, collection and downloading of BAS trend data
  - f. Test all modes of operation (normal, failure, backup, emergency, etc.)
  - g. Confirmation of required alarms sent to BA
  - h. Written verification of equipment set-points (temperatures, flow rates, etc.)
7. The Contractor(s) shall maintain full responsibility for the facility, equipment and systems operated during the FPTs, maintain all guarantees and warranties, and shall repair any damage to the facility caused during the FPTs.
8. Contractors shall conduct seasonal FPTs as necessary. This includes performing FPTs on equipment during the season it is intended to operate (i.e. test cooling equipment during the peak cooling season and test heating equipment during the peak heating season, etc.). All seasonal FPTs shall be witnessed by the CxA.
9. Tools, test equipment and instrumentation required for completion of the FPTs shall be provided by the contractor. All instruments shall meet the requirements of Part 2 of this specification.
10. FPT acceptance shall confirm the performance of systems to the extent of the design intent. When a system is accepted, the Owner shall be assured that the system is complete, works as intended, is correctly documented, and operator training has been performed.

### 3.8 COST OF RE-EVALUATION

- A. The cost for Contractors to re-evaluate any Commissioning Procedures due to open issues shall be bore by the contractors.
- B. The CxA will be available for two attempts of the Functional Performance Tests (one initial and one re-try) with minimal follow-up where necessary (due to deficiencies, systems not ready, incomplete work, etc.) to try to accomplish each test as part of the contract. When additional work is required because systems are not ready or because they do not successfully pass the FPT after they have been indicated as ready, the contractor will be charged for the CxA's additional reasonable re-testing costs. Additional fees will be paid to the CxA by the Owner and shall be reimbursed by the Contractor.
- C. Any required re-testing by any contractor shall not be allowed as a justified reason for a claim of delay or for a time extension by the contractor or for a request for additional monies.

### 3.9 SOFTWARE DOCUMENTATION REVIEW

- A. Review detailed software documentation for all DDC control systems. This includes review of vendor documentation, their programming approach, and the specific software routines applied to this project. Discrepancies in programming approaches and/or sequences shall be reported and coordinated in order to provide the Owner with the most appropriate, simple, and straightforward approach to software routines.

### 3.10 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE (O&M) MANUALS

- A. The CxA shall review the draft form of the O&M manuals provided by the Division 21, 22, 23, and 26 contractors. The review process shall verify that O&M instructions meet specifications and are included for all equipment furnished by the contractor, and that the instructions and wiring

diagrams are project specific (edited where necessary) to the actual equipment provided for this project.

1. Published literature shall be specifically oriented to the provided equipment indicating required operation and maintenance procedures, parts lists, assembly/disassembly diagrams, and related information.
2. The contractor shall incorporate the standard technical literature into system specific formats for this facility as designed and as actually installed. The resulting O&M information shall be project and system specific, concise, to the point, and tailored specifically to this facility. The Commissioning Authority shall review and edit these documents as necessary for final corrections by the contractor.

B. The O&M manual review, and coordination efforts MUST be completed prior to Owner training sessions, as these documents are to be utilized in the training sessions.

C. In addition to the O&M manual requirements within specification Division 21, 22, 23, and 26, O&M manuals shall include at a minimum the following:

1. An equipment data sheet with the equipment name tag, model number, serial number and any other relevant information for the equipment.
2. A copy of the approved submittal, indicating the exact make and model of the equipment installed.
3. A copy of the manufacturer's IOM manual
4. A copy of all warranty's
  - a. If not included on warranty certificate, provide the start/end dates of warranty period, descriptions of what is and isn't covered and contact information for warranty claims.

### 3.11 RECORD DRAWINGS

A. The Commissioning Authority shall review the as-built contract documents to verify incorporation of both design changes and as-built construction details. Discrepancies noted shall be corrected by the appropriate party.

### 3.12 EXCLUSIONS

A. Responsibility for construction means and methods: The CxA is not responsible for construction means, methods, job safety, or any construction management functions on the job site.

B. Hands-on work by the CxA: The contractors shall provide all services requiring tools or the use of tools to start-up, test, adjust, or otherwise bring equipment and systems into a fully operational state. The CxA shall coordinate and observe these procedures (and may make minor adjustments), but shall not perform construction or technician services other than verification of testing, adjusting, balancing, and control functions.

**END OF SECTION 01 9100**

# PROJECT MANUAL



FOR

## ASBESTOS-CONTAINING BUILDING MATERIALS ABATEMENT

THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY  
3838 CROWN SHORE DRIVE  
DALLAS, TEXAS 75244

BENAS PROJECT No. BA-24-1700

VOLUME 1 OF 1



---

### *ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS*

324 CROOKED TREE COURT  
COPPELL, TEXAS 75019  
PHONE: 972/393-0128  
FAX: 972/393-0793  
INTERNET WEB SITE: [WWW.BENAS.COM](http://WWW.BENAS.COM)

### ASBESTOS CONSULTANTS

### LEAD-BASED PAINT CONSULTANTS

### IN-DOOR AIR QUALITY CONSULTANTS

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

September 13, 2024





**BENAS**

Environmental Services, Inc.

ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS AND ENGINEERS

**ASBESTOS ABATEMENT PROJECT DESIGN &  
TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS**

FOR:

**THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY  
3838 CROWN SHORE DRIVE  
DALLAS, TEXAS 75244**

PREPARED FOR:

**DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT (DISD)  
DALLAS ISD CONSTRUCTION SERVICES DIVISION  
LINUS D. WRIGHT DALLAS ISD ADMINISTRATION BUILDING  
9400 CENTRAL EXPRESSWAY, SUITE 800  
DALLAS, TEXAS 75231  
ATTENTION: MR. ZAFAR SYED, AECOM DESIGN MANAGER**

PREPARED BY:

**EPHRAIM N. OKOTCHA "EO"  
INDIVIDUAL ASBESTOS CONSULTANT12728  
TDSHS LICENSE NUMBER 10-5399**

**BENAS ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES, INC.  
ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS**

**POST OFFICE BOX 739  
COPPELL, TEXAS 75019  
PHONE: 972/393-0128  
FAX: 972/393-0793**

INTERNET WEB ADDRESS: [WWW.BENAS.COM](http://WWW.BENAS.COM)

EMAIL ADDRESS: [EO@BENAS.COM](mailto:EO@BENAS.COM).

2

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<b>EXECUTIVE SUMMARY</b> .....	V
	<b>TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS</b> .....	VII
	<b>SPECIAL CONDITIONS</b> .....	VII
<b>1.0</b>	<b>SCOPE OF WORK</b> .....	11
	<b>GENERAL OVERVIEW</b> .....	28
	<b>OBJECTIVES</b> .....	29
<b>2.0</b>	<b>CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES</b> .....	30
2.1	Coordination with Independent Laboratory .....	30
2.2	Notification .....	31
2.3	Materials and Equipment .....	31
2.4	Contractor's Effort .....	31
2.5	Personnel .....	31
	2.5.1 Supervisor .....	31
	2.5.2 Employee Conduct .....	32
2.6	Temporary Facilities and Controls .....	32
	2.6.1 Water for Construction .....	32
	2.6.2 Electricity for Construction .....	33
	2.6.3 Handling Materials .....	33
	2.6.4 Cleaning .....	33
	2.6.5 Barricades, Walkways and Work Barriers .....	33
	2.6.6 Signs .....	34
	2.6.7 Security .....	34
	2.6.8 Asbestos Waste Storage .....	34
	2.6.9 Restrooms .....	35
	2.6.10 Notifications/Permits/Signs/Labels/Posters .....	35
	2.6.11 Emergency Precaution .....	36
	2.6.12 Respiratory Protection .....	37
	2.6.13 Disposal Activities .....	38

## TABLE OF CONTENTS (Continue)

2.7	Execution .....	39
2.7.1	Pre-Asbestos Abatement Preparations .....	39
2.7.2	Utilities .....	39
2.7.3	Asbestos Removal.....	39
2.7.4	Final Asbestos Decontamination .....	40
2.7.5	Post-Abatement Submittals .....	40
3.0	<b>LABORATORY RESPONSIBILITIES</b> .....	41
3.1	Laboratory Duties.....	41
3.2	Authority of Laboratory .....	42
4.0	<b>OWNERS RESPONSIBILITIES</b> .....	42
4.1	Pre-Asbestos Abatement Preparations .....	42
4.2	Authority to Stop Work .....	43
5.0	<b>PROJECT COODINATION PROCEDURES (REHATCHED)</b> .....	43
5.1	Project Coordination.....	43
5.2	Special Reports.....	43
5.3	Reporting Unusual Events.....	43
5.4	Reporting Accidents .....	44
5.5	Contingency Plans .....	44
5.6	Emergency Numbers.....	44
5.7	Submittals .....	43
6.0	<b>OTHER</b> .....	45
	General Applicability of Codes, Regulations and Standards.....	45
	Applicable Publications .....	45

### ATTACHMENTS :

Laboratory Test Results and Analysis of Bulk Samples by Polarized Light Microscopy (**PLM**) and Chain-Of-Custody Forms.

Computer Aided Design Drawings for Abatement Work Areas with ACM Quantities.

Photographic Documentation of Representative Bulk Samples Collected and Analyzed.

## EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

The Dallas Independent School District (**DISD**) is seeking to remove asbestos-containing building materials (**ACM**) as specified. This abatement project involves the complete and total removal of all designated asbestos-containing building materials in and outside the buildings at this facility, which could impact scheduled renovation and/or demolition activities. The identified building materials which contain regulated asbestos at this facility include, but are not limited to friable ACM Thermal Systems Insulation (**TSI**) on Elbows and T-Fitting Mud Packs, as well as Pipe-Runs; friable ACM Spray-Applied Ceiling (**SAC**) Texture; friable ACM Wall Texture Joint Compound and Sheetrock Mud (**WTJC**); non-friable ACM Floor Tiles and Black Mastic (**FT/BM**); friable and non-friable ACM 1' X 1' Stock-On Ceiling Tiles and DOT Mastic (**DOT Mastic**); non-friable ACM Wood Cove-Base Sealant (**Cove-Base Sealant**).

Also detected and present in these buildings are non-friable ACM Caulking on Cabinet Works (**Caulking**); non-friable ACM Caulking on Interior Window Frames (**Caulking**); non-friable ACM Glazing on the Panes of Interior Window Glasses (**Glazing**); non-friable ACM Caulking on Interior Door Frames (**Caulking**); non-friable ACM Sink Putty Underneath a Hand Wash Basin (**Sink Putty**); non-friable ACM Black Mastic behind Chalk Boards (**BM**). Furthermore, non-friable ACM Black Transition Door Sealant is located on the bottom floor entrances to several doors; non-friable ACM Caulking on Exterior Window Frames (**Caulking**); non-friable ACM Glazing Compound on Exterior Window Glass Panes (**Glazing**); non-friable ACM Caulking on Exterior Door Frames; and non-friable ACM Exterior Building Joint Sealants located throughout the buildings at this facility.

The areas for specific asbestos abatement are described in the Scope of Work and the drawings contained in these technical specifications. The schedule for the execution of the removal project shall be contained in the abatement notifications which shall be filed with the Texas Department of State Health Services (**TDSHS**) prior to the start of any abatement work. Any abatement project to be performed for this facility shall be strictly conducted according to the start and stop dates contained in the notifications to the TDSHS and these specifications (**No Exceptions**).

Information available to BENAS indicates that all the buildings at this facility, including the administrative offices, as well as all other buildings at this facility may be scheduled for future renovation and/or demotion activities. All detected and designated ACM at these buildings, as well as others that may be located underneath concrete structures and fixtures which may impact any renovation and/or demolition work shall be removed prior to the renovation and/or demolition activities. **Any on-going renovation and/or demolition activities shall stop immediately if any suspect materials underneath the surface(s) are discovered; bulk samples of such suspect materials shall be collected and analyzed for the presence, or absence thereof asbestos fibers prior to the continuation of the renovation and/or demolition activities. No Exceptions.**

This project is considered to be asbestos abatement prior to building renovation and/or demolition work to meet current TDSHS notification requirements. Proper interpretation of the current National Emission Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants (**NESHAP**) regulations, as well as the current Texas Asbestos Health Protection Rules (**TAHPR**) must be observed for this distinction. BENAS Environmental Services, Inc. from Coppell, Texas, shall be the Owner's representative (**Consultant**) on this project. The testing laboratory (**industrial hygiene services**) selected by the Owner is also BENAS Environmental Services, Inc.

---

END OF SECTION



# TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS


## SPECIAL CONDITIONS

The construction general contractor (**GC**) and the chosen asbestos abatement contractor shall notify BENAS Environmental Services, Inc. (**BENAS**) if any areas including walls, ceilings, floors, rest rooms, custodial closets, chases and other mechanical areas not already included in the drawings and specifications are to be impacted in any form or manner prior to any activities that might disturb any ACM in any portion(s) in the buildings prior to and during the course of the renovation and/or demolition work. All renovation and/or demolition activities shall stop anytime suspected asbestos-containing building materials which may be located underneath surfaces are discovered. The consultant shall collect additional bulk samples of the suspected material(s) to rebut the presence of asbestos in that material. **No Exceptions.**

The chosen asbestos abatement contractor shall comply with all federal, state, and local regulations and rules which guide asbestos abatement in the State of Texas, including but are not limited to those detailed in these technical specifications, NESHAP, TAHPR, Occupational Safety and Health Administration (**OSHA**), Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (**TCEQ**), and National Institute for Occupational Health and Safety (**NIOSH**) Regulations; and all others. The following is required of the chosen asbestos abatement contractor for this project:

### **Multiple Mobilizations:**

The chosen abatement contractor shall provide "Alternate Pricing" (**Quotes**) for multiple mobilizations throughout the duration of this project. All renovation and/or demolition activities for the buildings at this facility shall be coordinated with the Building Owner (**District**), Dallas ISD Construction Services Division, the General Contractor (**GC**) executing the renovation and/or demolition of the buildings, including the roofs, the Architectural Firm, the project management firm – AECOM Program Management Services, and the Consultant (**BENAS**) at all times. **No Exceptions.**

Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO," License No: 10-5399 

## Waste Handling and Disposal

1. The chosen asbestos abatement contractor shall provide a “Closed Metal (**Steel**) Disposal Dumpster” on site everyday throughout the duration of the abatement project. This dumpster must be locked at the end of each workday such that there is no public access to asbestos waste stored in the dumpster.
2. Each dumpster shall be full prior to pick-up for disposal by the abatement contractor, or a subcontractor retained by the abatement contractor.
3. All disposal manifests shall be type-written such that all entries are legible through all copies of the waste disposal manifest document.
4. The manifest for each load of waste shall be signed by the Consultant, or the On-Site Project Manager retained by the Consultant on behalf of the Owner, prior to leaving the job site.
5. One copy of the document **(equivalent of the Green Copy)** shall remain with the Consultant or Project Manager prior to departure of the truck dumpster from the site.
6. Each load of waste that leaves the job site shall be taken straight to the approved asbestos disposal landfill selected by the abatement contractor as documented in the Notifications.
7. A copy of the receipt from the disposal landfill shall be returned to the Consultant or Project Manager next day (**Within 24-Hours**) immediately following disposal. No subsequent load of waste shall leave the job site (**School**) premises without the receipt of the previous load which documented proper disposal. **No Exceptions.**
8. All original copies of the waste disposal manifests shall be sent to the Owner during submittal of the ‘Close-Out Documents’ by the abatement contractor.
9. Failure to follow the above stipulated procedures shall be grounds for work stoppage and possible contract termination. **No Exceptions.**

Ephraim N. Okotcha “EO,” License No: 10-5399 *Ephraim Okotcha*

The abatement contractor shall protect all surfaces near or adjacent to all abatement work areas, especially the walls, floors, decks, and ceiling near the immediate work locations from any damages, including but are not limited to water and/or structural damages. Any damages to any surfaces shall be repaired and/or replaced by the abatement contractor at his/her own cost. **No Exceptions.**

## **OSHA Personal Compliance Monitoring:**

The selected abatement contractor shall conduct OSHA Mandatory Personal Compliance Air Monitoring on at least 25% of his workers every day, or a minimum of two samples per shift throughout the duration of the abatement project. If more than one crew or shift is performed simultaneously, a minimum of 25% of the workers in each crew or shift shall be monitored per OSHA regulations and these specifications. Abatement activities for the non-friable ACM Floor Tiles and Black Mastic, caulking on interior window frames, glazing compounds on interior window glass panes, caulking on cabinet works, sealant on wood cove-base, as well as sink putty may and can be conducted with the use of Half-Face Negative Pressure Demand Air-Purifying Respirators (**Half-Face Masks**). However, all workers shall don-on the Power Air Purifying Respirators (**PAPR**) during the removal of all friable ACM Thermal Systems Insulation , Spray-Applied Ceiling Texture, Wall Texture Joint Compound and Sheetrock Mud, as well as the 1' X 1' Stock-On Ceiling Tiles and DOT Mastic .The half-face respirator has a protection factor of ten (10); while that of the PAPR is 1,000. This means that the fiber concentration inside these respirators is reduced ten and one-thousand times, respectively, the outside fiber concentration. These respirators are adequate to protect the abatement workers against possible asbestos exposure throughout the duration of the abatement work.

The security of any section(s) of the building(s) and/or areas where abatement operations are in progress shall be the responsibility of the abatement contractor throughout the duration of the abatement work for that section of the facility. The contractor shall secure the building(s) and/or areas at the end of each work shift or day. Missing or stolen of on-site equipment, including those of the Owner, general contractor, the abatement contractor, the consultant, sub-contractors, or anyone else authorized to be on site, is not the responsibility of the building owner/manager, or the consultant. Personnel and visitors' safety during this abatement project shall be the responsibility of the abatement contractor. The contractor shall ensure that all persons, including all workers, the personnel of the Owner, architect, program management firm, consultant and/or air monitoring firm, and other authorized visitors entering or leaving the work areas during this project are safe. The contractor shall provide on-site security throughout the duration of this project if necessary in compliance with these specifications and the contract documents.

**Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO," License No: 10-5399**



All vehicles including those of the abatement contractor's personnel operated within the premises of the Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy facility shall be insured in accordance with the State of Texas Department of Public Safety (**DPS**) regulations and requirements. Proof of liability insurance and driver license shall be produced at the request of any authorized staff, especially those overseeing this project. **No Exceptions.** The use of foul language(s) of any type, in any setting, is forbidden of all persons within the premises of the Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy facility. Those affected include, but are not limited to the abatement contractor, his/her personnel, and/or subcontractor(s) retained by the abatement contractor, any visitors of the contractor and/or subcontractor(s). **No Exceptions.**

It is absolutely the responsibility of the abatement contractor to verify both quantities and/or assumed quantities of the ACM in all designated locations, and site conditions prior to bidding. The consultant does not guarantee the drawings to be fully accurate, and/or to scale. Failure to verify all quantities and site conditions SHALL NOT relieve the abatement contractor the obligation to complete this project as, and in the manner specified.

-----  
END OF SECTION

Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO," License No: 10-5399 *Ephraim Okotcha*

## 1.0 SCOPE OF WORK

The following is a "Scope of Work" to be performed on this project:

### THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY

#### 1. First Floor Area A – Containments #1 and 2:

Removal and proper disposal of approximately **25** linear feet of friable ACM Thermal Systems Insulation (TSI) in the Band Room Storage Space; approximately **13,450** square feet of friable ACM Spray Applied Ceiling (SAC) Texture; approximately **820** square feet of friable and non-friable ACM 1' X 1' Stock-On Ceiling Tiles and DOT Mastic (DOT Mastic); approximately **3,380** square feet of non-friable ACM Floor Tiles and Black Mastic (FT/BM); approximately **100** linear feet of non-friable ACM Wood Cove-Base Sealant (Sealant) around the bottom walls of the Auditorium Stage; approximately **4,600** linear feet of non-friable ACM Interior Windows Caulking and Glazing Compounds (Caulking and Glazing); approximately **484** linear feet of non-friable ACM Caulking on Interior Door Frames (Caulking); approximately **265** linear feet of non-friable ACM Caulking on Cabinets Works (Caulking); and approximately **12** linear feet of non-friable ACM Black Transition Door Strips (Black Transition Strips); located throughout the interior on the First Floor in Area A at the Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy Facility. All the ACM enumerated above shall be removed in two full containment work area enclosures (Containments 1 and 2) using wet methods with full negative pressure ventilation systems and full engineering controls (See Drawing – Figure 9).

Also, the abatement contractor shall remove and properly dispose approximately **4,600** linear feet of non-friable ACM Caulking and Glazing Compounds on Exterior Window Frames and Glass Panes (Caulking and Glazing); approximately **248** linear feet of non-friable ACM Caulking on Exterior Door Frames (Caulking); approximately **360** linear feet of non-friable ACM Exterior Building Sealant (Sealant); located throughout the exterior walls of the buildings at the Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy Facility. The ACM Caulking and Glazing Compounds described above shall be removed by the National Emissions Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutant (NESHAP) Methods. No containment work area enclosures shall be constructed or installed for NESHAP related work operations (See Drawing – Figure 9).

Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO," License No: 10-5399



## **2. First Floor Area B – Containments #3 and 4:**

Removal and proper disposal of approximately **2,485** square feet of friable ACM Spray Applied Ceiling (SAC) Texture; approximately **650** square feet of friable ACM Wall Texture Joint Compound and Sheetrock Mud (WTJC) from Suite 118A and 118B Executive Offices; approximately **246** square feet of non-friable ACM Floor Tiles and Black Mastic (FT/BM); approximately **9,776** linear feet of non-friable ACM Interior Windows Caulking and Glazing Compounds (Caulking and Glazing); approximately **654** linear feet of non-friable ACM Caulking on Interior Door Frames (Caulking); approximately **386** linear feet of non-friable ACM Caulking on Cabinets Works (Caulking); located throughout the interior on the First Floor in Area B at the Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy Facility. All the ACM enumerated above shall be removed in two full containment work area enclosures (Containments 3 and 4) using wet methods with full negative pressure ventilation systems and full engineering controls (See Drawing – Figure 10).

Also, the abatement contractor shall remove and properly dispose approximately **9,776** linear feet of non-friable ACM Caulking and Glazing Compounds on Exterior Window Frames and Glass Panes (Caulking and Glazing); approximately **144** linear feet of non-friable ACM Caulking on Exterior Door Frames (Caulking); located throughout the exterior walls of First Floor Area B at the Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy Facility. The ACM Caulking and Glazing Compounds described above shall be removed by the National Emissions Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutant (NESHAP) Methods. No containment work area enclosures shall be constructed or installed for NESHAP related work operations (See Drawing – Figure 10).

Ephraim N. Okotcha “EO,” License No: 10-5399 *Ephraim Okotcha*

### **3. First Floor Area C – Containments #5 and 6:**

Removal and proper disposal of approximately **30** linear feet of friable ACM Thermal Systems Insulation (TSI) in the Men's Rest Room Pipe Chase behind the Teacher's Lounge Room; approximately **19,732** square feet of friable ACM Spray Applied Ceiling (SAC) Texture; approximately **13,542** linear feet of non-friable ACM Interior Windows Caulking and Glazing Compounds (Caulking and Glazing); approximately **365** linear feet of non-friable ACM Caulking on Interior Door Frames (Caulking); approximately **457** linear feet of non-friable ACM Caulking on Cabinets Works (Caulking); and approximately **440** linear feet of non-friable ACM Wood Cove-Base Sealant (Sealant) around the bottom walls of the Boy's and Girl's Basket Ball Courts; throughout the interior on the First Floor in Area C at the Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy Facility. All the ACM enumerated above shall be removed in two full containment work area enclosures (Containments 5 and 6) using wet methods with full negative pressure ventilation systems and full engineering controls (See Drawing – Figure 11).

Also, the abatement contractor shall remove and properly dispose approximately **13,542** linear feet of non-friable ACM Caulking and Glazing Compounds on Exterior Window Frames and Glass Panes (Caulking and Glazing); approximately **120** linear feet of non-friable ACM Caulking on Exterior Door Frames (Caulking); located throughout the exterior walls of First Floor Area C at the Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy Facility. The ACM Caulking and Glazing Compounds described above shall be removed by the National Emissions Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutant (NESHAP) Methods. No containment work area enclosures shall be constructed or installed for NESHAP related work operations (See Drawing – Figure 11).

### **4. First Floor Area D – Containments #7 and 8:**


Removal and proper disposal of approximately **9,601** square feet of friable ACM Spray Applied Ceiling (SAC) Texture; approximately **4,254** linear feet of non-friable ACM Interior Windows Caulking and Glazing Compounds (Caulking and Glazing); and approximately **246** linear feet of non-friable ACM Caulking on Interior Door Frames (Caulking); throughout the interior on the First Floor in Area D at the Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy Facility.

All the ACM enumerated above shall be removed in two full containment work area enclosures (**Containments 7 and 8**) using wet methods with full negative pressure ventilation systems and full engineering controls (**See Drawing – Figure 12**).

Also, the abatement contractor shall remove and properly dispose **approximately 4,254 linear feet of non-friable ACM Caulking and Glazing Compounds on Exterior Window Frames and Glass Panes (Caulking and Glazing)**; **approximately 216 linear feet of non-friable ACM Caulking on Exterior Door Frames (Caulking)**; located throughout the exterior walls of First Floor Area D at the **Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy Facility**. The ACM Caulking and Glazing Compounds described above shall be removed by the National Emissions Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutant (**NESHAP**) Methods. No containment work area enclosures shall be constructed or installed for NESHAP related work operations (**See Drawing – Figure 12**).

## **5. Second Floor – Containments #9 -11:**

Removal and proper disposal of **approximately 5,892 square feet of friable ACM Spray Applied Ceiling (SAC) Texture**; **approximately 20,372 square feet of non-friable ACM Floor Tiles and Black Mastic (FT/BM)**; **approximately 2,880 square feet of non-friable ACM Black Mastic behind Chalk Boards (Black Mastic)**; **approximately 14,916 linear feet of non-friable ACM Interior Windows Caulking and Glazing Compounds (Caulking and Glazing)**; **approximately 620 linear feet of non-friable ACM Caulking on Interior Door Frames (Caulking)**; **approximately 1,167 linear feet of non-friable ACM Caulking on Cabinets Works (Caulking)**; **approximately 4 square feet of ACM Sink Putty**; and **approximately 38 linear feet of non-friable ACM Black Transition Door Strips (Black Transition Strips)**; located throughout the interior on the Second at the **Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy Facility**. All the ACM enumerated above shall be removed in three full containment work area enclosures (**Containments 9 through 11**) using wet methods with full negative pressure ventilation systems and full engineering controls (**See Drawing – Figure 13**).

Ephraim N. Okotcha “EO,” License No: 10-5399 



Also, the abatement contractor shall remove and properly dispose **approximately 14,916 linear feet of non-friable ACM Caulking and Glazing Compounds on Exterior Window Frames and Glass Panes (Caulking and Glazing)**; located throughout the exterior walls on the Second Floor at the Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy Facility. The ACM Caulking and Glazing Compounds described above shall be removed by the National Emissions Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutant **(NESHAP)** Methods. No containment work area enclosures shall be constructed or installed for NESHAP related work operations **(See Drawing – Figure 13)**.

## **6. Third Floor – Containment #12:**

Removal and proper disposal of **approximately 1,535 square feet of friable ACM Spray Applied Ceiling (SAC) Texture**; **approximately 6,355 square feet of non-friable ACM Floor Tiles and Black Mastic (FT/BM)**; **approximately 2,000 square feet of non-friable ACM Black Mastic behind Chalk Boards (Black Mastic)**; **approximately 6,296 linear feet of non-friable ACM Interior Windows Caulking and Glazing Compounds (Caulking and Glazing)**; **approximately 409 linear feet of non-friable ACM Caulking on Interior Door Frames (Caulking)**; **approximately 780 linear feet of non-friable ACM Caulking on Cabinets Works (Caulking)**; and **approximately 62 linear feet of non-friable ACM Black Transition Door Strips (Black Transition Strips)**; located throughout the interior on the Third Floor at the Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy Facility. All the ACM enumerated above shall be removed in one full containment work area enclosure **(Containment 12)** using wet methods with full negative pressure ventilation systems and full engineering controls **(See Drawing – Figure 14)**.

Ephraim N. Okotcha “EO,” License No: 10-5399

  
\_\_\_\_\_

Also, the abatement contractor shall remove and properly dispose **approximately 6,296 linear feet of non-friable ACM Caulking and Glazing Compounds on Exterior Window Frames and Glass Panes (Caulking and Glazing)**; located throughout the exterior walls on the Second Floor at the Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy Facility. The ACM Caulking and Glazing Compounds described above shall be removed by the National Emissions Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutant (NESHAP) Methods. No containment work area enclosures shall be constructed or installed for NESHAP related work operations (See Drawing – Figure 14).

## **7. Crawl Space Work Area – Containment #15:**

Removal and proper disposal of **approximately 4,890 linear feet of friable ACM Thermal Systems Insulation (TSI)**; **approximately 3,352 square feet of non-friable ACM Perimeter Wall Insulation and Black Mastic (Perimeter Wall Insulation)** in the Crawl Space Underneath all buildings at the Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy Facility. The ACM in Crawl Space can be removed in one full containment work area enclosure, with full negative pressure ventilation systems and wet methods. The abatement contractor may choose to conduct glove bag procedures for the Crawl Space work area; however, the entire Crawl Space shall be cleared with Transmission Electron Microscopic Sampling and Analysis. No Exceptions. (Figure 15).

All the ACM located in the interior surfaces of these buildings shall be removed in fifteen full containment work area enclosures using wet methods with full negative pressure ventilation systems and full engineering controls. Also, all NESHAP Methods and protocols shall be strictly adhered to for all exterior abatement operations (No Exceptions). Furthermore, the contractor shall construct approximately fifteen (Equal Number) of three-staged wet decontamination facilities, plus a bag-out chamber for each of the above-described containment work area enclosures for the interior abatement work. Ambient and personal air monitoring shall be conducted throughout the duration of the gross removal and detailed cleaning operations.

Ephraim N. Okotcha “EO,” License No: 10-5399 *Ephraim Okotcha*

Some of the abatement work can be conducted with the use of the half face negative pressure demand respirators, including the removal of ACM Floor Tiles and Black Mastic, Black Mastic behind Chalk Boards, Sealant underneath Wood Cove-Base, Caulking on Cabinet Works, Sink Putty underneath Hand-Wash Basin, Interior and Exterior Window Glass Glazing, Caulking on Interior and Exterior Window and Door Frames, and Black Mastic on Transition Door Strips. This respiration has a protection factor of ten **(10)**, which means that the fiber concentration inside the respirator **(Mask)** is reduced ten **(10)** times the outside fiber concentration.

However, the Power Air-Purifying Respirators **(PAPR)** shall be utilized during the removal of any friable and some non-friable ACM in the building interior, including the Thermal Systems Insulation, Spray-Applied Ceiling Texture, Wall Texture Joint Compound and Sheetrock Mud, and 1' X 1' Stock-On Tiles on the Walls and Ceiling in the interior of these buildings. This respiration has a protection factor of one-thousand **(1,000)** by NIOSH Standards, which means that the fiber concentration inside the respirator **(Mask)** is reduced one-thousand **(1,000)** times the outside fiber concentration. The asbestos abatement contractor shall conduct OSHA mandatory personal air monitoring for its workers each day throughout the duration of the abatement work. Historical exposure data shall not be permitted for the documentation of worker exposure for this project. **No Exceptions.**

-----  
END OF SECTION

**Each Full Containment Work Area Enclosure Shall Consist of:**

Two-layers of 6-mil fire-retardant polyethylene sheeting covering all the walls where and when necessary

Two-layers of 6-mil fire-retardant polyethylene sheeting covering the Ceiling where and when necessary

Two-layers of 6-mil fire-retardant polyethylene sheeting covering the floors where and when necessary

Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO", License No: 10-5399 *Ephraim Okotcha*


Two-layers of 6-mil fire-retardant polyethylene sheeting shall be utilized to construct a separate bag-out chamber attached to each containment work area enclosure

One layer of 6-mil fire-retardant polyethylene sheeting shall be utilized as critical barrier for all immovable objects and fixtures, holes, air conditioning ventilation units, including supply and return grills etc. for each containment work area enclosure.

As previously noted, a full 3-staged wet decontamination corridor shall be constructed for each full containment work area enclosure in the interior of these buildings **(See Drawings)**. The decontamination facility shall consist of an equipment room (**dirty room**), a shower room, a clean room, plus a bag-out chamber. Each compartment shall be separated by air locks. Each decontamination corridor shall be equipped with hot water, shampoo, soap, and other necessary amenities for proper workers' decontamination. All work areas shall be completely and adequately wetted down with amended water prior to the start of the preparation and construction of each containment work area. **No Exceptions.**

As many Air-Filtration Devices (**AFDs**) as necessary (**adequate number to be determined by the consultant**) shall be utilized in each containment work area enclosure during this abatement project **(See Drawings)**. The manometer reading for each containment work area shall be a minimum **-0.020** inch of water pressure differential. Each AFD shall be capable of exhausting air at 2,000 cubic feet per minute (**CFM**).

A minimum of four (**4**) air changes per hour is required from each operational AFD for this project. The contractor shall stop all abatement activities whenever the manometer reading is below **-0.020** inch of water pressure differential. The manometer equipment shall be calibrated each day prior to the start of any abatement operations. Should the contractor work more than one shift per day or at a time, all manometers shall be calibrated before the start of work for each shift. The electronic manometer equipment shall be equipped with a printer and programmed to print out the pressure readings every two minutes at a minimum.

Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO", License No: 10-5399 

One functional AFD unit shall be stationed as a stand-by unit in each containment work area enclosure at all times throughout the duration of the abatement project as an emergency backup unit. Also, one AFD unit shall be stationed inside each containment as a scrubber to ensure there are no dead-spaces within the contained work area. **No Exceptions.**

All removal work shall be done by hand scrapping. No mechanical equipment shall be utilized during this abatement project. Any methods other than those specified herein shall be with the approval of the building owner and the consultant. The consultant shall perform initial exposure assessment by background ambient air monitoring in each work area to determine initial respiratory protection requirements.

ACM waste generated during this abatement project shall be disposed of in an approved landfill, such as DFW Disposal Landfill in Lewisville, Texas. Each load of waste taken out of this facility during this project shall have a separate **Waste Disposal Manifest**. All double-bagged waste shall be labeled with the generator's name, address, telephone number and the contact person. The consultant or owner shall sign every waste manifest. The original copy from the landfill shall be delivered to the owner during final submittals with other close-out documents. **No Exceptions.**

The abatement contractor, his supervisors and workers must be licensed and certified by the TDSHS to perform asbestos abatement operations in the State of Texas, in accordance with all applicable federal, state, and local regulations and these specifications which guide the handling of asbestos abatement in the State of Texas. All licenses and certifications must be current. **No Exceptions.**

**All clearance air testing shall be by aggressive methods for this project. Project air samples collected throughout this project shall be analyzed by Phase Contrast Microscopy (PCM). All project air samples collected throughout this project shall be analyzed by a TDSHS licensed asbestos PCM laboratory. Clearance air samples collected for this project shall be analyzed by Transmission Electron Microscopy (TEM).**


Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO", License No: 10-5399 *Ephraim Okotcha*

**A minimum of five clearance air samples shall be collected and analyzed for each contained work area. No clearance air sample(s) collected and analyzed during this project shall contain fiber levels greater than 70 Structures in accordance with these specifications. Re-testing costs including the consultant's time and material expenses shall be at the expense of the abatement contractor. The consultant's time and material expenses shall not exceed \$105/Hour or \$840 for an eight-hour shift, per these specifications. The testing laboratories shall participate in an approved quality assurance quality control programs (QAQC), such as Proficiency Analytical Testing (PAT), or the Asbestos Analyst Registry (AAR) administered by the American Industrial Hygiene Association (AIHA).**

When the area is certified acceptable by the consultant in writing, the contractor may dismantle the containment work area enclosure in a manner to ensure no re-contamination occurs. The dismantled enclosure shall be disposed of as asbestos waste.

**\*\*\*REPEAT\*\*\***

*It is absolutely the responsibility of the abatement contractor to verify site conditions and all quantities. Failure to verify site conditions and all quantities shall not relieve the abatement contractor the obligation to complete this abatement work as specified.*

Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO", License No: 10-5399 

The following Glove-Bag Procedures shall be strictly adhered to at all times during this abatement project:

**Glove-Bag Procedures for Pipe Lagging Removal:**

A typical glove bag consists of between 3-12 mil-polyethylene or polyvinyl chloride (**PVC**) which is fitted with long sleeve gloves, a tool pouch, a small opening for water sprayers and HEPA vacuum nozzles.

Materials necessary to conduct a standard glove-bag operation include:

- a. A 3-12 mil Polyethylene sheeting or PVC Glove-bag
- b. A 2-3 gallon garden pump sprayer
- c. Smoke tubes with aspirator bulb
- d. Wire saw or Flexi-saw.
- e. HEPA-filtered vacuum cleaner.
- f. Tin snips, where aluminum jackets are present.
  
- g. A 4-6 mil polyethylene sheeting for drop cloth.
- h. Duct Tape (**approximately three (3) inches in width**)
- i. Dual cartridge respirators with high efficiency cartridges
- j. A wettable cloth or other patching materials
- k. Asbestos danger signs and labels
- l. Amended water (**surfactant**)
- m. Materials from re-insulation, where necessary
- n. Polyethylene disposal bags (**6-mil thick**) properly labeled per OSHA, EPA, and DOT Regulations
- o. Rags for clean-up work

A glove-bag operation typically requires two workers. A third worker is usually necessary to carry out certain important functions which include: providing supplies, keeping unwanted visitors out of the restricted work area, and sometimes to conduct both ambient air and OSHA personal compliance monitoring.

Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO", License No: 10-5399



All workers mentioned above must receive appropriate training to perform glove-bag operations, participate in the necessary respiratory protection and medical surveillance programs. All tools, materials and supplies needed for the glove-bag work should be brought into the work area. The work area must be demarcated with caution tapes and asbestos danger barrier tapes. Also, danger signs should be posted at the perimeter to restrict entry to the work area.

The heating ventilation and air conditioning (**HVAC**) for the immediate work area should be shot-off if possible. A remote decontamination facility should be installed as close to the glove-bag work area as possible. Emergency procedures should be implemented in the event the glove-bag ruptures. These procedures include wet wipe (**Cleaning**) all surfaces, HEPA vacuuming and employee wipe down in the immediate location before proceeding to the nearby decontamination unit. Glove-bag work should never be conducted if the pipe is heated up to temperatures of 150 degree-F and above, since typical polyethylene plastic will melt.

#### **Glove-bag Removal Procedures:**

1. Mix water with surfactant (**Usually Soap**) in the 2-3 gallon garden sprayer according to Manufacturer's directions.
2. Each worker should don-on high efficiency cartridge respirator which is approved for asbestos removal work. The respirator must be adequate to address the asbestos dust exposure levels expected within the immediate work area, with an aim not to exceed the permissible exposure limit (**PEL**) set by OSHA. The respirator must be fit-tested and checked for face-fit with each worker.
3. Each worker should don-on one disposable full-body Tyvek suit, with the hood over the respirator straps.
4. Check the area(s) or damage(s) to the pipe where the glove-bag work is to be performed. Wrap and secure the two ends of the area on the pipe that need to be removed, if TSI material is damaged, lagging and hanging. High asbestos dust exposure levels and contamination have often been the results of TSI material becoming loose due to the glove-bag work.

Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO", License No: 10-5399





5. Place one layer of 6-mil polyethylene sheeting on the floor under the area where the glove-bag work is to be performed, even if the insulation on the pipe is undamaged. Failure to locate a drop cloth has also resulted in numerous and severe exposure levels of airborne asbestos dust during a glove-bag operation.
6. Open the top of the glove-bag and cut down the sides to accommodate the size of the pipe with approximately two inches longer than the diameter of the pipe. This should permit movement within the glove-bag during gross removal work and detailed-cleaning of the pipe surfaces. Some bags have zippers or two-sided tape on top and straps at each end to facilitate glove-bag installation on the pipe.
7. Insert all the necessary tools required for work into the provided pouch inside the glove-bag. The tools that should be in the pouch include utility knives, wettable cloth, tin snips, wire-cutters, clean-up rags, flexi-saw, scrub or wire brush, and any other tool that a worker may need to perform work.
8. Cut out a Donut Shape with the inner diameter  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch smaller than the diameter of the pipe beneath the insulation. The outer diameter of the donut should be three inches longer than the diameter of the pipe insulation being removed. Also, cut a slit in each of the two donuts so they can be slipped around the pipe.
9. Place one strip of duct tape along the edge of the open top slit of the glove-bag for reinforcement. Place the glove-bag around the section of the pipe insulation to be removed and seal up at both ends, especially if the bag has two-sided tape.
10. Fold the flap back and tape it down with a strip of duct tape to provide adequate seal of the top of the glove-bag, with duct tape seal at the two ends of the glove-bag to the pipe.
11. Place the smoke tube and aspirator bulb into the water porthole inside the glove-bag. Squeeze the bulb to fill bag with smoke. Remove the tube and twist the water porthole closed. While holding the water porthole tightly, squeeze the glove-bag and look for leaking smoke, usually at the top and ends of the glove-bag. If leaks are found, they should be resealed and retested until the glove-bag is leak free.

12. Place the wand from the water sprayer through the water porthole. With duct tape, seal the water porthole tightly around the wand with no air leakage.
13. One worker shall place his hands into the long-sleeved gloves while the second worker directs the water sprayer at the site of the removal work. In the event the pipe is covered with aluminum jacket; the worker should use the wire cutter to cut any bands and tin snips to remove the aluminum jacket. Caution must be exercised not to cut the glove-bag with the sharp edges of the aluminum jacket, as well as other sharp objects.
14. The exposed insulation should be cut with the flexi-saw at each end of the section being removed. The second worker should continuously spray water on the TSI material being removed throughout the operation to reduce the incidence of high levels of air borne asbestos fibers.
15. With the two ends of the section cut, another cut should be made along the top side of the pipe from end to end using a utility knife. Water spraying by the second worker continues. Caution must be exercised so that the cutting or the utility knife did not puncture the glove-bag.
16. Gently lift the TSI material off the pipe and place it in the bottom of the glove-bag. With either the wire or scrub brush, thoroughly brush the surfaces of the pipe and wipe down the exposed pipes.
17. Wet the donut-shaped wettable cloth over the exposed ends of the remaining insulation on the pipe (**e.g., CP-11**).
18. Remove the water wand from the water porthole and replace with the nozzle of the HEPA vacuum cleaner. Turn on the vacuum cleaner until the glove-bag is collapsed. Remove the vacuum cleaner and twist the water porthole until it is closed, and seal up with duct tape.

Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO", License No: 10-5399 *Ephraim Okotcha*

19. Pull the tools through the glove from outside of the bag and away from the glove-bag. Tape over the twisted section of the glove arm and make a cut within the twisted section. The contaminated tools could be placed into the next glove-bag without cleaning or emptied into a bucket full of water. Any materials that cannot be cleaned and properly decontaminated should be disposed of as asbestos waste, including used rags, scrub brush, etc.
20. While the removed waste is located at the bottom of the glove-bag, twist the bag several times and tape over with duct tape. HEPA vacuum all surfaces and also suction air out of the glove-bag.
21. Slip a 6-mil asbestos marked disposal bag over the glove-bag, while the glove-bag is still attached to the pipe. Remove duct tape and open the top of the glove-bag and fold it down into the disposal bag. Also, remove the disposal Tyvek suit and place inside the glove-bag.
22. Twist the top of disposal bag until closed, fold over in gooseneck style and seal with duct tape, without the outermost bag labeled according to OSHA, EPA, and DOT regulations.
23. With a clean damp cloth rag, wipe the exterior of the respirator and replace it with an appropriate respirator container or bag, and leave the immediate work area.
24. All asbestos containing waste must be disposed of in EPA approved landfill in accordance with USEPA regulations. Air monitoring and project management shall be conducted by a qualified person throughout the duration of the glove-bag and clearance following the work completion.

**End of Glove-Bag Procedures.**

---

END OF SECTION

Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO", License No: 10-5399



**General Notes:**

The schedule for this abatement project shall be detailed in the notifications filed with the TDSHS. Work hours shall begin at 8:00 a.m. through 5:00 p.m. Monday through Friday, unless as otherwise ordered by the school district and/or the construction services division.

The chosen abatement contractor shall provide enough workers each day for the performance of the abatement work, in order to complete the project within the notification schedules to the TDSHS and these specifications.

Hours outside those mentioned above should be with the approval of the building Owner and the consultant.

The contractor shall provide his own OSHA mandatory personal compliance monitoring for his workers, in accordance with federal (**OSHA**) and TDSHS regulations, as well as these specifications.

***No Exceptions.***

BENAS may elect to perform OSHA personal compliance monitoring for the abatement contractor's personnel, if requested.

**For Contractor to Perform Own OSHA Monitoring, the following shall Apply:**

The contractor's air monitor technician to be utilized for the collection of personal air samples must be currently licensed and certified by the State of Texas (**TDSHS**). The contractor shall monitor a minimum of 25% of his workers every day or shift throughout this project duration, per OSHA regulations and these specifications. All previous day's air sample results shall be ready and posted at the entrance(s) into the decontamination chamber prior to the start of abatement activities each day throughout the duration of this project. No abatement activities shall commence without the previous day's results. ***No Exceptions.***

Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO", License No: 10-5399 *Ephraim Okotcha*

A copy of the previous day's air samples results shall be made available to the consultant each day before the start of abatement operations.

Calibration of the personal air sampling pumps shall be performed each day in the presence of the consultant.

Quality control protocol including blind recount, coefficient of variation for the PCM analyst shall be provided to the consultant each day prior to the start of abatement activities for that day. **No Exceptions.**

Historical exposure data **SHALL NOT** be allowed for the documentation of worker exposure throughout the duration of this abatement project, in accordance with these specifications and the contract documents.

-----

Contractor may use existing water and electricity from the site. A licensed electrician must supervise any and all electrical work that is required during the normal operation of the project. The work includes but is not limited to, insulating, or removing new or existing light fixtures and/or transformers; establishing temporary electrical service; or insulation of temporary lights. Also, the contractor shall provide all water hoses in OSHA approved connectors and accessories in order to provide water at the needed locations throughout the abatement project.

**NOTE:** If the owner is unable to provide electric power or water supply for this project, the contractor shall provide his/her own electric power by generators, etc. and adequate water supply for the abatement work.

Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO", License No: 10-5399

*Ephraim Okotcha*

**\*\* A mandatory pre-construction meeting shall be held at the project site location prior to the start of abatement activities. The chosen abatement contractor's competent person, On-Site Supervisor(s) shall be in attendance at this meeting. This meeting can be scheduled on the same day as the start date for this abatement work in accordance with the notification schedules filed with the TDSHS and these technical specifications.**

---

END OF SECTION

Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO", License No: 10-5399

*Ephraim Okotcha*

## GENERAL OVERVIEW

The purpose of this asbestos abatement project entails the complete removal of all designated friable and non-friable ACM in the interior and exterior surfaces, including the crawl space underneath the buildings located at the Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy facility. This abatement project involves the complete and total removal of all designated asbestos-containing building materials in and outside the buildings at this facility, which could impact scheduled renovation and/or demolition activities. The identified building materials which contain regulated asbestos at this facility include, but are not limited to friable ACM Thermal Systems Insulation (**TSI**) on Elbows and T-Fitting Mud Packs, as well as Pipe-Runs; friable ACM Spray-Applied Ceiling (**SAC**) Texture; friable ACM Wall Texture Joint Compound and Sheetrock Mud (**WTJC**); non-friable ACM Floor Tiles and Black Mastic (**FT/BM**); friable and non-friable ACM 1' X 1' Stock-On Ceiling Tiles and DOT Mastic (**DOT Mastic**); and non-friable ACM Wood Cove-Base Sealant (**Cove-Base Sealant**).

Also detected and present in these buildings are non-friable ACM Caulking on Cabinet Works (**Caulking**); non-friable ACM Caulking on Interior Window Frames (**Caulking**); non-friable ACM Glazing on the Panes of Interior Window Glasses (**Glazing**); non-friable ACM Caulking on Interior Door Frames (**Caulking**); non-friable ACM Sink Putty Underneath a Hand Wash Basin (**Sink Putty**); non-friable ACM Black Mastic behind Chalk Boards (**BM**). Furthermore, non-friable ACM Black Transition Door Sealant is located on the bottom floor entrances to several doors; non-friable ACM Caulking on Exterior Window Frames (**Caulking**); non-friable ACM Glazing Compound on Exterior Window Glass Panes (**Glazing**); non-friable ACM Caulking on Exterior Door Frames; and finally non-friable ACM Exterior Building Sealant (**Sealant**); located throughout the buildings at this facility.

All work shall be performed in compliance with these specifications, the United States Environmental Protection Agency (**USEPA**), and National Emissions Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants (**NESHAP**) Methods and Protocols. Also, Occupational Safety and Health Administration (**OSHA**), Texas Asbestos Health Protection Rules/Act (**TAHPR**), Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (**TCEQ**), and any other applicable federal, state, and local governmental regulatory agencies' requirements must be complied with. Furthermore, the recommendations of the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (**NIOSH**) with regards to respiratory protection program, the collection and analysis of air samples before, during and after the abatement work shall be strictly adhered to.

Finally, this project shall be completed strictly according to the detailed requirements of these specifications and the contract documents. In any event where the requirements of these specifications and contract documents are in conflict with applicable federal, state, or local regulations guiding the handling and abatement of ACM in the State of Texas, the most stringent requirements shall apply.

## **OBJECTIVES**

The objective of this project is to safely remove all designated friable and non-friable ACM in the interior and exterior, plus the crawl space underneath all buildings located at the Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy facility. The identified building materials which contain regulated asbestos at this facility include, but are not limited to friable ACM Thermal Systems Insulation (**TSI**) on Elbows and T-Fitting Mud Packs, as well as Pipe-Runs; friable ACM Spray-Applied Ceiling (**SAC**) Texture; friable ACM Wall Texture Joint Compound and Sheetrock Mud (**WTJC**); non-friable ACM Floor Tiles and Black Mastic (**FT/BM**); friable and non-friable ACM 1' X 1' Stock-On Ceiling Tiles and DOT Mastic (**DOT Mastic**); non-friable ACM Wood Cove-Base Sealant (**Cove-Base Sealant**).

Also detected and present in these buildings are non-friable ACM Caulking on Cabinet Works (**Caulking**); non-friable ACM Caulking on Interior Window Frames (**Caulking**); non-friable ACM Glazing on the Panes of Interior Window Glasses (**Glazing**); non-friable ACM Caulking on Interior Door Frames (**Caulking**); non-friable ACM Sink Putty Underneath a Hand Wash Basin (**Sink Putty**); non-friable ACM Black Mastic behind Chalk Boards (**BM**). Furthermore, non-friable ACM Black Transition Door Sealant is located on the bottom floor entrances to several doors; non-friable ACM Caulking on Exterior Window Frames (**Caulking**); non-friable ACM Glazing Compound on Exterior Window Glass Panes (**Glazing**); non-friable ACM Caulking on Exterior Door Frames; and finally non-friable ACM Exterior Building Sealant (**Sealant**); located throughout the buildings at this facility.

Effort shall be made to:

1. Remove all specified ACM from the above-described property interior areas.
2. Prevent any person or persons from inhaling asbestos fibers.
3. Prevent any asbestos contamination of adjacent work areas, and the general environment throughout the project duration.



4. Ensure all asbestos wastes are disposed of completely and properly and to provide the Owner with documentation indicating proper disposal.
5. Maintain a safe working environment throughout the duration of the project.
6. Accurately document all project activities.

## **2.0 CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES**

All abatement contractors are directed to carefully examine these specifications prior to bidding and before the start of abatement operations, as well as during the course of asbestos abatement activities to ensure that adequate resources are devoted to meet the approved schedules, contract documents, notifications, and these specifications. The chosen asbestos abatement contractor is responsible for carefully examining the site conditions and all quantities prior to the start of abatement work. Failure to verify all quantities and site conditions shall not relieve the contractor the obligation and responsibility to complete this abatement project as specified in the contract documents and these specifications.

### **2.1 Coordination with Independent Testing Laboratory**

- A. The asbestos abatement contractor shall fully cooperate with the independent testing laboratory **(Consultant)** personnel in providing access to all work locations.
- B. The contractor shall furnish incidental labor facilities to:
  - i) Provide access to all work locations to be tested and
  - ii) Facilitate inspections and testings.
- C. The contractor shall notify the testing laboratory sufficiently in advance of operations to allow for laboratory assignment of personnel and scheduling of tests.
- D. Payment for laboratory time if the work area is not ready for testing when scheduled shall be at the contractor's expense. Laboratory's time and materials expenses shall not exceed \$105.00 per hour, or \$840 for an eight-hour work shift.

## 2.2 Notification

The contractor is responsible for ensuring that proper notifications have been filed with all regulatory agencies having authority over proposed abatement work, including but are not limited to the city, county, state, and/or federal agencies, especially the TDSHS. The building Owner, the consultant and/or the abatement contractor can file the necessary notification schedules to the TDSHS; however, the Owner is responsible for the payment of notification fees to the TDSHS.

## 2.3 Materials and Equipment

The contractor shall provide all items, articles, materials, operations, or methods listed or mentioned, including all labor, materials, equipment, applicable permits and notifications, and all incidentals necessary and required for their use to complete the abatement work specified in the manner and time specified. The contractor shall supply all protective equipment (**protective clothing, respirators, cover glasses, steel toe boots, etc.**) for all personnel entering any area exposed to asbestos dusts, including the Owner, personnel of the testing laboratory and authorized visitors.

## 2.4 Contractor's Effort

The contractor shall provide all personnel; equipment, supplies and facilities necessary to complete this project as specified in the detailed Scope of Work for this project (**See Scope of Work**).

## 2.5 Personnel

### 2.5.1 Supervisor

- A. The on-site supervisor(s) must be currently licensed with the State of Texas Department of State Health Services to manage any asbestos abatement operations for this project.
- B. The supervisor(s) must be present at the project site 100% of the time during the active removal phase of this project. Also, the supervisor **SHALL** enter into the containment work area enclosure at least 25% of the time during active removal operations, in accordance with TDSHS regulations and these specifications.

## **2.5.2 Employee Conduct**

- A. Dallas ISD Policies and Procedures regarding Safety and Communications shall be in force at all times during this abatement project. Dallas ISD Safety Guidelines shall be strictly adhered to, throughout the duration of this project. Any employee whose conduct is offensive to the Owner or the consultant, or any employee apprehended on Owner-owned or controlled property with alcoholic beverage, or any form of controlled substance on his person, or is suspected of having consumed the same will be brought to the attention of the contractor's on-site supervisor. The supervisor shall take immediate action(s) appropriate to the circumstances. Such action(s) shall include but are not limited to dismissal from the premises.
  
- B. Any person found to be deliberately disposing of asbestos waste in any manner other than those outlined in these specifications, or who is recklessly exposing himself, fellow employees, or the general public to asbestos materials, or engaging in activities that are unnecessarily hazardous to himself, fellow employees, or the general public shall be brought to the attention of the contractor's supervisor. The supervisor shall take immediate action(s) appropriate to include but are not limited to dismissal from the premises.
  
- C. Smoking, eating, drinking or the application of cosmetics within the restricted work areas during active abatement operations are prohibited and shall not be permitted.

## **2.6 Temporary Facilities and Controls**

### **2.6.1 Water for Construction**

The Owner may provide water to be used during the abatement project. The contractor shall provide temporary facilities or other items required to properly transport the water to the location(s) where it is needed, including water hoses and airless sprayers where necessary. If the Owner is unable to provide water for construction or abatement operations, the contractor shall provide own water for all construction activities during this project in accordance with the contract documents and these specifications.

## 2.6.2 Electricity for Construction

The Owner may provide electric energy as required for all branches of the work, to operate equipment and to provide artificial lighting. The contractor shall provide temporary wiring and outlets as required. All electrical sources must be equipped with ground fault interrupter system (**GFI**). If the Owner is unable to provide electric energy (**power**) for construction or abatement operations, the contractor shall provide own electrical energy (**power**) for all construction activities during this project in accordance with the contract documents and these specifications. Any electrical work that is required during the normal operation of this project must be conducted and supervised by licensed electricians. The work includes but is not limited to insulating or removing new or existing light fixtures and/or transformers; establishing temporary electrical services; or insulation of temporary electrical fixtures.

## 2.6.3 Handling Materials

The contractor shall properly care for and protect materials and equipment at the job site. Placement of building materials and equipment at the site shall be subject to the approval by the Owner.

## 2.6.4 Cleaning

The contractor shall keep the premises clean at all times during the abatement operations. Upon completion of all abatement activities, the contractor shall ensure that the areas surrounding the project are in a neat and clean condition as approved by the Owner.

## 2.6.5 Barricades, Walkways and Work Area Barriers

### The Contractor Shall:

- 1) Maintain adequate barricades and enclosed walkways at all times to protect the workmen and the general public from injury.
- 2) Erect and maintain containment work areas with full three-stage wet decontamination facilities, which shall include an equipment room (**dirty room**), shower room and a clean room, plus a bag-out chamber.

The decontamination chambers shall be constructed with two layers of 6-mil fire-retardant resilient polyethylene sheeting barriers to prevent access to any asbestos dusts and/or materials at the work areas. Any barriers that may be visible to the general public shall be covered with 6-mil Black Polyethylene Sheeting. **No Exceptions.**

- 3) Upon completion of the abatement work at any and all location(s), the contractor shall remove all polyethylene sheeting barriers and all other items from the project site.

#### **2.6.6 Signs**

- A. No signs or advertisements shall be displayed without the approval of the Owner.
- B. The location of the signs if any, must be approved by the Owner and/or Consultant working for the Owner.

#### **2.6.7 Security**

**The Contractor shall provide adequate security to ensure that:**

1. Restricted asbestos abatement areas are not entered by unauthorized persons.
2. Unauthorized persons are prevented from access to any asbestos-containing waste materials.
- 4) Every person who enters any restricted asbestos abatement Work areas is logged in and out.

#### **2.6.8 Asbestos Waste Storage**

Asbestos waste must be removed daily from the abatement areas. Temporary on-site storage of waste near and/or within the immediate abatement areas will be permitted in containers secured from the general public (**truck, dumpster, etc.**). Asbestos wastes (**bags, drums, etc.**) shall not be stored in direct contact with the ground.

### **2.6.9 Restrooms**

The Owner's restroom facilities shall not be available for the abatement contractor's use for this project. The contractor shall provide own rest room throughout the duration of this project.

### **2.6.10 Notifications, Permits, Warning Signs, Labels and Posters**

**The Contractor shall perform the following tasks:**

- 1) Ensure proper notifications to the TDSHS and any other federal, regional, state, and/or local authorities having jurisdiction over the project within time frames specified by the individual authority.
- 2) The Owner is responsible for the payment of necessary notification fees to TDSHS.
- 3) Secure all the permits and exemptions required for the work, including disposal of asbestos in an approved landfill.
- 4) Provide the names, addresses and telephone numbers of approved waste disposal site(s). Provide signed copies of hazardous waste disposal manifests issued by the TCEQ which document proper waste disposal in the State of Texas and deliver original copies to the Owner during close-out following the completion of the abatement project.
- 5) Erect warning signs around the work areas, and also at every potential point of entry into the restricted work areas from the outside. The warning signs shall be a bright color so that they will be easily noticed. The size of the sign and the lettering shall be no less than OSHA requirements.
- 6) Label all plastic bags and drums utilized to transport contaminated material(s) to the landfill as required by regulations. Provide any signs, labels, warnings, and posted instructions that are necessary to protect, inform and warn the general public (people) of the hazards from asbestos exposure.

All signs shall be in English and Spanish Languages:

- a. Per OSHA Regulations: 29 CFR 1926.1101, warning signs shall Read:

**DANGER  
ASBESTOS  
CANCER AND LUNG DISEASE HAZARD  
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY  
RESPIRATORS AND PROTECTIVE CLOTHING ARE REQUIRED IN THIS AREA**

- b. Per OSHA Regulations: 29 CFR 1926.1101, warning signs shall Read:

**DANGER  
CONTAINS ASBESTOS FIBERS  
AVOID CREATING DUST  
CANCER AND LUNG DISEASE HAZARD**

- c. Per U.S. Department of Transportation, warning labels shall Read:

**R Q HAZARDOUS  
SUBSTANCES,  
SOLID, NOS,  
ORM-E, NA 9188  
(ASBESTOS)**

### 2.6.11 Emergency Precautions

- A. The Contractor shall establish emergency exits from the work area.
- B. The Contractor shall be prepared to administer first aid to injured personnel after decontamination from the exclusion zone. Seriously injured personnel shall be treated immediately or evacuated without decontamination. When an injury occurs, the Contractor shall stop work and implement fiber reduction techniques (**e.g., amended water spraying and hosing down**) until the injured person has been removed from the work area(s).

### 2.6.12 Respiratory Protection

The minimum respiratory protection requirements for this project are summarized as follows:

1. Air Purifying Respirators may be used (**negative pressure-demand half-face or full-face masks only**) where the concentration of fibers in the work area may reasonably be expected not to exceed 0.010 fibers per cubic centimeter of air (**0.010 f/cc**). The protection factor for the half-face mask shall be 10, in accordance with NIOSH, OSHA Standards and these specifications.
2. Powered Air Purifying Respirators (**PAPRs**) may be used where the concentration of fibers in the work area may reasonably be expected not to exceed 0.100 fibers per cubic centimeter of air (**0.100 f/cc**). The protection factor for the PAPR shall be 1,000, in accordance with NIOSH, OSHA Standards and these specifications.
3. Type "C" Positive Supplied Air or Self-Contained Breathing Apparatus (**SCBA**) air with continuous flow or pressure demand clasp must be used where fiber concentration in the work area can reasonably be expected to exceed 3.00 fibers per cubic centimeter of air (**3.00 f/cc**).

**NOTE:** The above-described respiratory protection is based on an eight-hour time-weighted average (**TWA**) or a ceiling concentration.



1. If any air samples collected during the abatement process have elevated fiber levels in excess of the limits permissible for the type of respirator being used, respiratory protection must be upgraded. All abatement activities shall be stopped until fiber concentration in that work area is brought down to acceptable levels. It is the responsibility of the contractor to secure enough and approved respiratory protective devices available to complete the abatement project on schedule for any foreseeable contingency.
2. If Type "C" Supplied Air or SCBA type Respirator is used, at least two spare units provided by the contractor shall be available at all times for use in the case of emergency, and/or by the Owner, Owner's Representative, or any other authorized personnel.

The Type "C" Respirator shall be worn with a belt to minimize the possibility of dislocating the facemask when the hose is snagged in the work area.

### **2.6.13 Disposal Activities**

- A. It is the responsibility of the contractor to determine current waste handling, transportation, and disposal regulations for the work site and for each waste disposal landfill. The contractor must comply fully with these regulations and all United States Department of Transportation (**USDOT**), State, Local and USEPA requirements, especially waste handling requirements stipulated by the TCEQ.
- B. All containers of asbestos wastes shall be decontaminated prior to loading onto the vehicle transporting the material to the landfill. Wastes shall be bagged inside the contained or restricted work area and placed in a second bag or drum, which must be decontaminated in the contamination-reduction zone (**the decontamination unit**) before transfer into the dumpster. Alternative methods shall be considered if shown as effective as this method.
- C. The contractor shall dispose of asbestos waste from this project in landfills approved by the TCEQ as authorized disposal facilities for asbestos. All double-bagged ACM waste must be marked with the "Originator's (**Owner**) name, address and telephone number. The contractor shall employ only a licensed asbestos transporter for this effort. Disposing or attempting to dispose of asbestos waste via sanitary sewers, city waste systems or by placing in unoccupied area is prohibited and will be grounds for immediate cessation of work under this contract until the material is recovered and disposed of correctly and disciplinary actions are taken.

- D. The contractor shall document actual disposal of the waste at the designated landfill by completing all asbestos waste disposal manifests and appropriate chains-of-custody and forwarding the originals to the Owner during close-out following the completion of the project.
- C. **Scaffolding:** Scaffolding as required to accomplish the specified work shall meet all applicable safety regulations, especially the OSHA standards.

## 2.7 Execution

### 2.7.1 Pre-Asbestos Abatement Preparations

- A. Prior to any abatement work in any area, the contractor shall seal-off the entire work area to anybody other than trained personnel and authorized visitor(s); erect signs around the perimeter in accordance with USEPA, NESHAP, OSHA, TDSHS and these specifications; and maintain a log of all people entering and exiting the workplace.
- B. Thoroughly decontaminate through wet cleaning and/or HEPA vacuuming all equipment and supplies used during the course of the abatement project.

### 2.7.2 Utilities

The contractor shall provide all necessary connections for temporary utilities in the workplace during the abatement work. Temporary electrical power shall be utilized in accordance with OSHA and Electrical Code for Wet Environment.

### 2.7.3 Asbestos Removal

- A. All ACM shall be removed according to the stipulations of these specifications.
- B. Immediately following removal, the wetted asbestos shall be packed into labeled six-mil plastic bags to prevent the material from drying. The excess air in the bags should be exhausted in the work area prior to sealing the bags.

Pack and seal all bagged materials in drums and/or containers which are also labeled or alternatively sealed in double bags of six-mil plastic. Thoroughly clean the exterior of the bags or sealed drums prior to loading onto the truck for transportation to the landfill. Alternative procedures must be approved in writing by the consultant before work starts.

- C. Disposal shall be in a landfill meeting USEPA, Department of Transportation (**DOT**), TDSHS and TCEQ requirements. The contractor shall not throw bags into the landfill in a manner that may cause the bags to burst open. If the bags cannot be taken out of the drums undamaged, then include the disposal of the drums with the bags. Ensure that the bags are not opened in the process.
- D. All used plastic, tapes, cleaning materials; clothing and filters shall be treated and disposed of as asbestos waste materials.

#### **2.7.4 Final Asbestos Decontamination**

After the removal of asbestos has been completed and before the removal of any barriers, the entire work area shall be thoroughly wet-cleaned and/or vacuumed with HEPA filtered vacuum cleaners. All equipment used in the work areas such as scaffolds, ladders, vacuum cleaners, masks, hard hats, etc., shall be thoroughly decontaminated through wet cleaning, HEPA vacuumed prior to removal from the work area.

After detailed cleaning has been completed, the consultant shall perform a visual inspection to ensure that all ACM and contaminated debris have been properly removed and the entire restricted work area is clean.

**NOTE:** It should be stated that abatement work area fiber levels are counted according to the recommended A-Counting Rules of the NIOSH 7400 Methods. These methods do not distinguish between asbestos and non-asbestos fibers.

When the Owner's representative (**Consultant**) certifies that the containment work area enclosure is acceptable in writing, the contractor may dismantle the remainder of the barricades. The tape barricades shall be disposed of as asbestos waste.

### 2.7.5 Post-Abatement Submittals

The contractor shall provide a final report which contains signed copies of the hazardous waste disposal manifests, OSHA mandatory personnel compliance air monitoring records, copies of required insurance certificates, and copies of the daily project logs. A copy of the contractor's final report shall be made available to the consultant and the building Owner.

## 3.0 LABORATORY RESPONSIBILITIES

Except as otherwise specified the Owner shall separately employ the services of an Independent Testing Laboratory (**Laboratory**) to perform sufficient ambient air monitoring to determine if the contractor is complying with the requirements of these specifications, as well as federal, state, and local regulations guiding asbestos handling and abatement in the State of Texas. Teaming arrangements between the abatement contractor and the testing laboratory are permitted in this circumstance, but separate employment by the Owner is required.

The laboratory shall perform air monitoring and testing during abatement work and cleaning operations. A Texas licensed asbestos PCM Laboratory shall analyze all the abatement work area samples.

1. The laboratory shall conduct air monitoring in accordance with the method prescribed by Section 1926.1101 of the OSHA regulations.

### 3.1 Laboratory Duties

- A. Cooperate with the Contractor; provide qualified personnel after due notice.
- B. Perform specified ambient air sampling and testing; comply with specified standards (**See Section 7.0**); and ascertain compliance of materials and work procedures with requirement of the contract documents and technical specifications.
- C. Promptly notify the contractor and the Owner of observed irregularities or deficiencies of work or products.

- D. Stop all abatement operations if gross negligence and irregularities are observed, or for non-compliance with regulated, recommended and/or applicable work practices and procedures, as well as these specifications.
  
- E. Promptly submit written report of each test and inspection; one copy to Owner and contractor. Each report shall include:
  - 1. Date Issued.
  
  - 2. Project title, number and building identification.
  
  - 3. Laboratory name, address, and telephone number(s).
  
  - 4. Name and signature of a laboratory inspector and/or microscopist.
  
  - 5. Date and time of sampling or inspection.
  
  - 6. Location of sample or test in the project.
  
  - 7. Type of inspection or test.
  
  - 8. Results of tests and compliance with Contract Documents.
  
- F. Perform additional tests as required by the Owner.

### **3.2 Authority of the Laboratory**

#### **The Laboratory is authorized to:**

- 1. Release, revoke, alter or enlarge on the requirements of the scope of work and applicable specifications;
  
- 2. Approve or accept any portions of the work.

## **4.0 OWNER'S REPRESENTATIVE (CONSULTANT)**

### **4.1 Pre-Asbestos Abatement Preparations**

The consultant shall inspect the work site prior to the commencement of abatement activities to document conditions which might adversely impact the contractor's ability to meet his obligations.

### **4.2 Authority to Stop Work**

The Owner or Owner's representative (**Consultant**) has the authority to stop the abatement work at any time he determines that conditions are not within the specifications and applicable regulations. The cessation of work shall continue until conditions have been corrected; and corrective steps have been taken to the satisfaction of the consultant. Standby time required to resolve violations shall be at the contractor's expense.

## **5.0 PROJECT COORDINATION AND PROCEDURES**

### **5.1 Project Coordination**

The contractor shall provide a full-time Superintendent who is experienced in administration and supervision of asbestos abatement projects including work practices, protective measures for building and personnel, and disposal procedures in the State of Texas. This person is the Competent Person as set forth in OSHA 29CFR 1926.1101 and is the contractor's representative responsible for compliance with all applicable federal, state, and local regulations and must meet the criteria for the TDSHS licensing requirements. Also, this person must have had a minimum of five (5) years of on-the-job experience and meet any additional requirements set forth in OSHA 29CFR 1926.1101 as amended June 29, 1998, or thereafter.

### **5.2 Special Reports**

Except as otherwise indicated, the superintendent shall submit special reports directly to the consultant within one-hour of occurrence requiring special attention with a copy to the building Owner and all others affected by the special occurrence.

### **5.3 Reporting Unusual Events**

When an event of unusual nature occurs at the site, the superintendent shall prepare and submit a special report listing the chain of events, persons participating, and response by contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. If such an event(s) is known or predictable in advance, the contractor's superintendent shall advise the consultant at the earliest possible time.

### **5.4 Reporting Accidents**

The superintendent shall prepare and submit reports to the consultant of accidents on site. Record and document data and action; and comply with industry standards. For this purpose, a significant accident is defined to include events where personal injury is sustained, or property loss of substance is sustained, or where the event posed a significant threat of loss or personal injury.

### **5.5 Contingency Plans**

The superintendent shall prepare contingency plans for emergencies including fire, accidents, power failure, or any other event that may require modification or abridgement of decontamination or work area isolation procedures. Include in the plan's specific procedures for decontamination or work area isolation. \*\* Note that nothing in these specifications shall impede existing safety or the pursuit of adequate medical attention in the event of an emergency.

### **5.6 Emergency Numbers**

The superintendent shall provide emergency numbers to the consultant during pre-construction meeting and post them in room of contractor's staging area; on heavy equipment and other approved locations as applicable. Telephone numbers and locations of emergency services including but are not limited to fire, ambulance, doctor, hospital, police, power-generating company, telephone company, and poison control center.

## 5.7 Submittals

Prior to the start of work, the superintendent shall submit the following to the consultant for review. No work shall begin until these submittals are reviewed and returned by Owner.

1. Contingency Plans for emergency actions
2. Telephone numbers and locations of emergency services
3. Notifications to be sent to entities at the work site
4. Copy of notifications filed with all appropriate authorities
5. Construction schedule and plan of action
6. Other abatement submittals

## 6.0 OTHER

### General Applicability of Codes, Regulations and Standards

Except to the extent that more explicit or stringent requirements are directly specified in the contract documents, all applicable codes, regulations, and standards have the same force and effect. They are also made a part of the contract documents by reference as if they are copied into it, or as if published copies are bound here with.

### Applicable Publications

The publications listed below form a part of these specifications by reference and are as if copied into it and the contract documents. The publications are referenced in text by basic designation only.

1. **Environmental Protection Agency (EPA):** Regulations for Asbestos (Code of Federal Regulations Title 40, Part 61).
2. **Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA):** Asbestos Regulations (Code of Federal Regulations Title: 29CFR, Part 1926.1101).
3. **National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH):** "Respiratory Protection....A Guide for the Employee"....

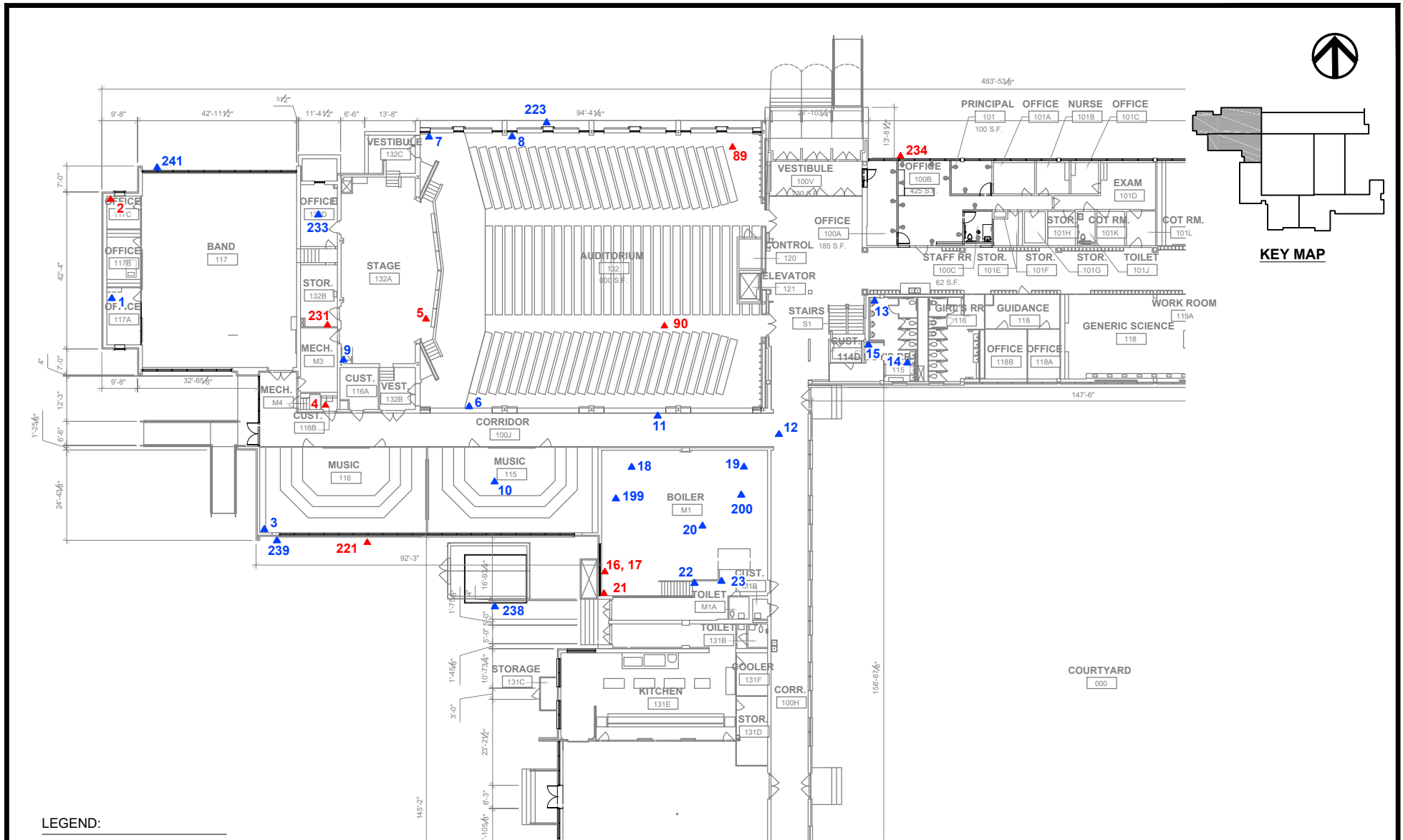


4. **American National Standards Institute (ANSI):** Z86.1-1973...Commodity Specification for Air...
5. **Code of Federal Regulations (CFR):**
  - a. **29 CFR 1926.1101**, Occupational Safety and Health Act (**OSHA**).
  - b. **20 CFR 1910.20, Subpart C**, General Safety and Health Provisions.
  - c. **40 CFR 61, A and B**; U.S. Environmental protection Agency Regulations for Asbestos.
  - d. **40 CFR 61, Part III**; National Emission Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants; Asbestos **NESHAP** Revision; Final Rule, November 20, 1990.
  - e. 34 CFR 61, Parts 230 and 231, Appendix B, Procedures for Containing and Removing Building Materials Containing Asbestos: Federal Register, Volume 45, NO. 182, Page 61961, September 17, 1980.
6. **Texas Department of State Health Services**, Division of Occupational Health, Texas Asbestos Health Protection Rules, May 29, 1998, Texas Civil Statutes, Article 4477-3a, Section 12.
7. Resilient Floor Covering Institute Recommended Work Practices for the Removal of Resilient Floor Coverings and Addenda, July 1990.
8. **Texas Commission on Environmental Quality**  
Municipal Solid Waste Division; 30 TAC 330.136(b) (3) pertaining to non-friable Asbestos-Containing Building materials 'Must go to an approved Landfill'.

**RESULTS OF LABORATORY TEST AND ANALYSIS OF BULK SAMPLES BY POLARIZED  
LIGHT MICROSCOPY AND CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY FORMS**

**COMPUTER AIDED DESIGN DRAWINGS (CADD) FOR THE ABATEMENT WORK AREAS  
WITH QUANTITIES OF THE ACM**

**PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION OF REPRESENTATIVE BULK SAMPLES COLLECTED  
AND ANALYZED**



LEVEL 1 - AREA A

FIGURE 1

LEGEND:  
 ▲ Non-ACM Sample  
 ▲ ACM Sample

**Comprehensive Asbestos-Containing Building Materials Investigation**

**Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy**  
 3838 Crown Shore Drive  
 Dallas, Texas 75244

**BENAS Project No.: BA-24-1700**



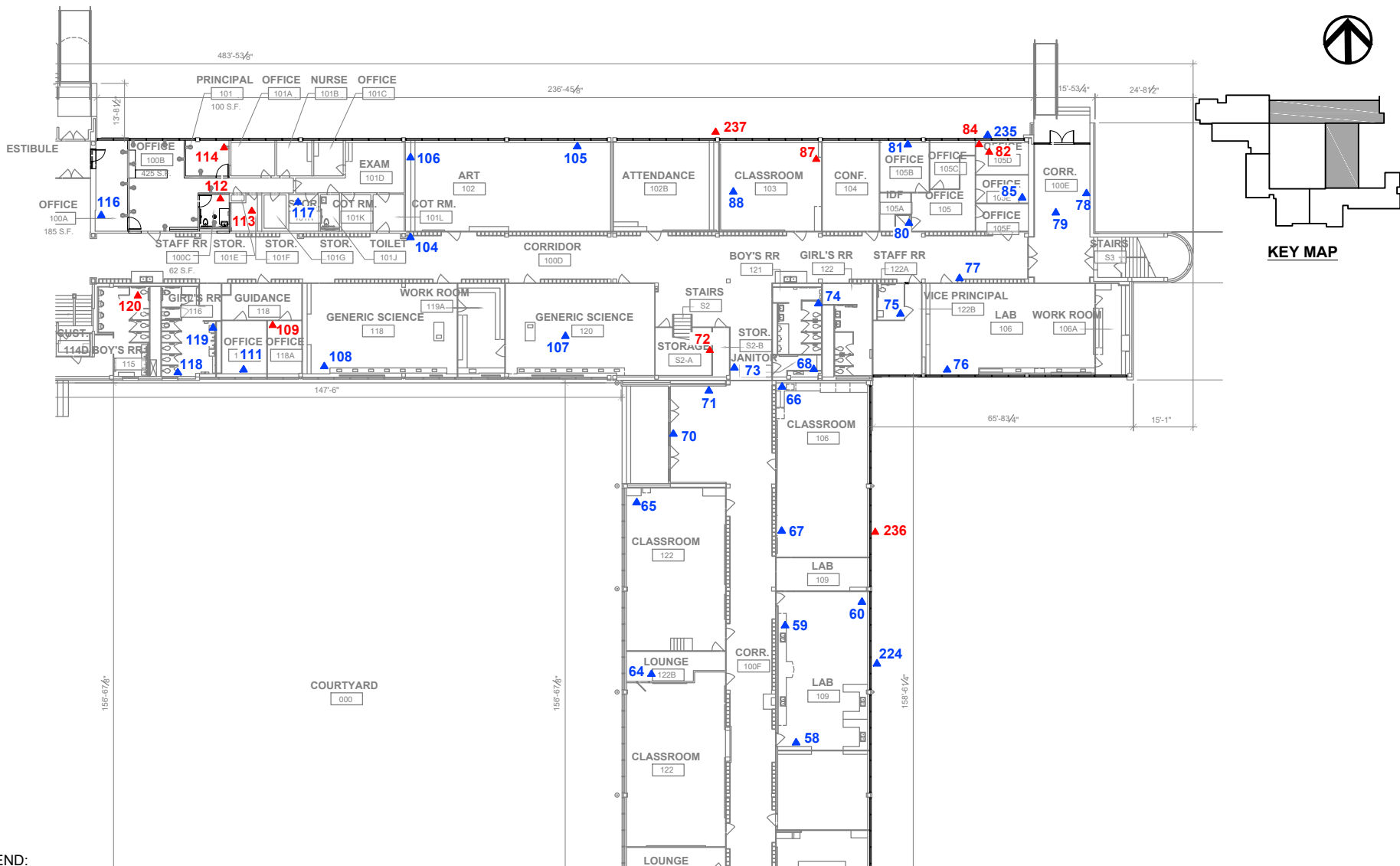
**ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS**  
 P.O. BOX 739  
 COPPELL, TEXAS 75019

PHONE: (972) 393-0128 FAX: (972) 393-0793

**APPROXIMATE SAMPLE LOCATIONS MAP**

Prepared for: Dallas Independent School District (DISD)  
 Attention: Mr. Zafar Syed, AECOM Design Manager

Prepared by: BENAS Environmental Services, Inc. 10-0173  
 Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" Texas Licensed Consultant:10-5399



**LEGEND:**

- ▲ Non-ACM Sample
- ▲ ACM Sample

**LEVEL 1 - AREA B**

**FIGURE 2**

**Comprehensive Asbestos-Containing Building Materials Investigation**

**Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy**  
**3838 Crown Shore Drive**  
**Dallas, Texas 75244**

**BENAS Project No.: BA-24-1700**



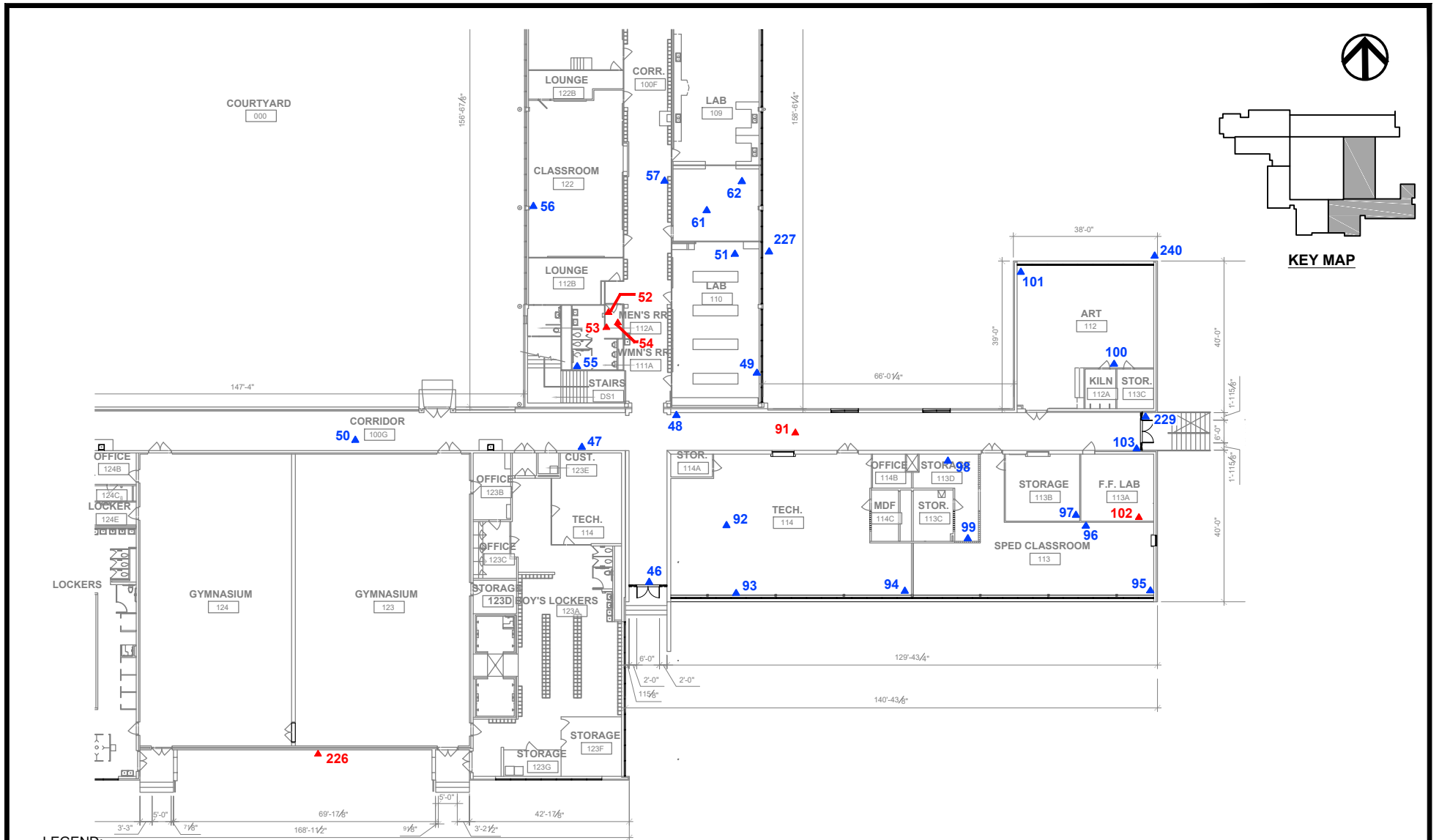
**ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS**  
**P.O. BOX 739**  
**COPPELL, TEXAS 75019**

PHONE: (972) 393-0128 FAX: (972) 393-0793

**APPROXIMATE SAMPLE LOCATIONS MAP**

Prepared for: **Dallas Independent School District (DISD)**  
 Attention: **Mr. Zafar Syed, AECOM Design Manager**

Prepared by: **BENAS Environmental Services, Inc. 10-0173**  
**Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" Texas Licensed Consultant:10-5399**



**LEGEND:**

- ▲ Non-ACM Sample
- ▲ ACM Sample

**LEVEL 1 - AREA C**

**FIGURE 3**

**Comprehensive Asbestos-Containing Building Materials Investigation**

**Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy**  
 3838 Crown Shore Drive  
 Dallas, Texas 75244

**BENAS Project No.: BA-24-1700**



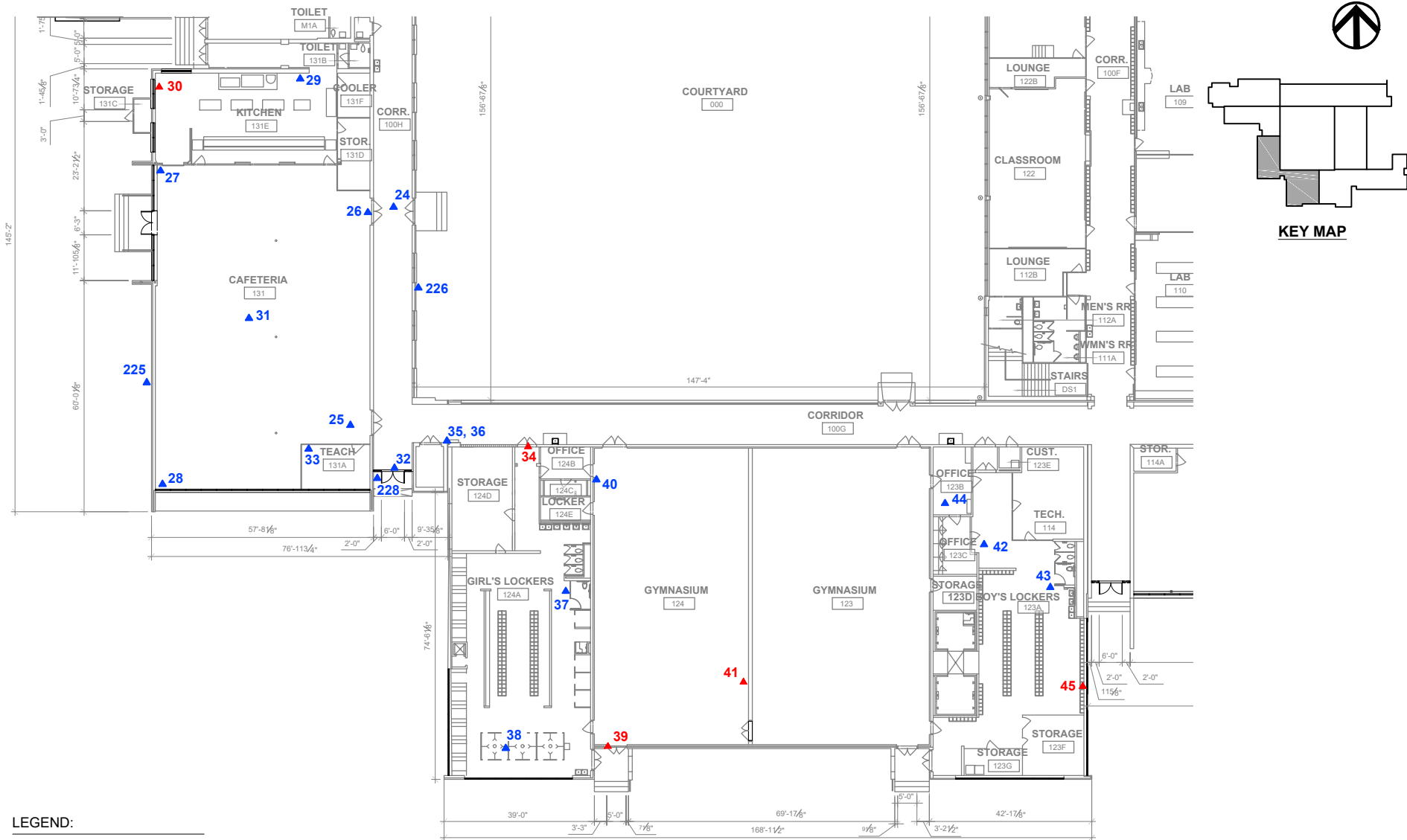
**ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS**  
 P.O. BOX 739  
 COPPELL, TEXAS 75019

PHONE: (972) 393-0128 FAX: (972) 393-0793

**APPROXIMATE SAMPLE LOCATIONS MAP**

Prepared for: Dallas Independent School District (DISD)  
 Attention: Mr. Zafar Syed, AECOM Design Manager

Prepared by: BENAS Environmental Services, Inc. 10-0173  
 Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" Texas Licensed Consultant:10-5399



**Comprehensive Asbestos-Containing Building Materials Investigation**

**Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy**  
**3838 Crown Shore Drive**  
**Dallas, Texas 75244**

**BENAS Project No.: BA-24-1700**



**ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS**  
**P.O. BOX 739**  
**COPPELL, TEXAS 75019**

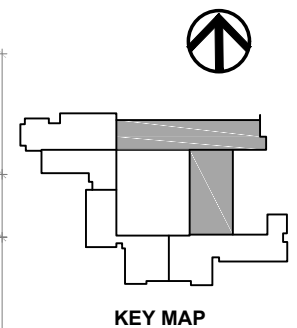
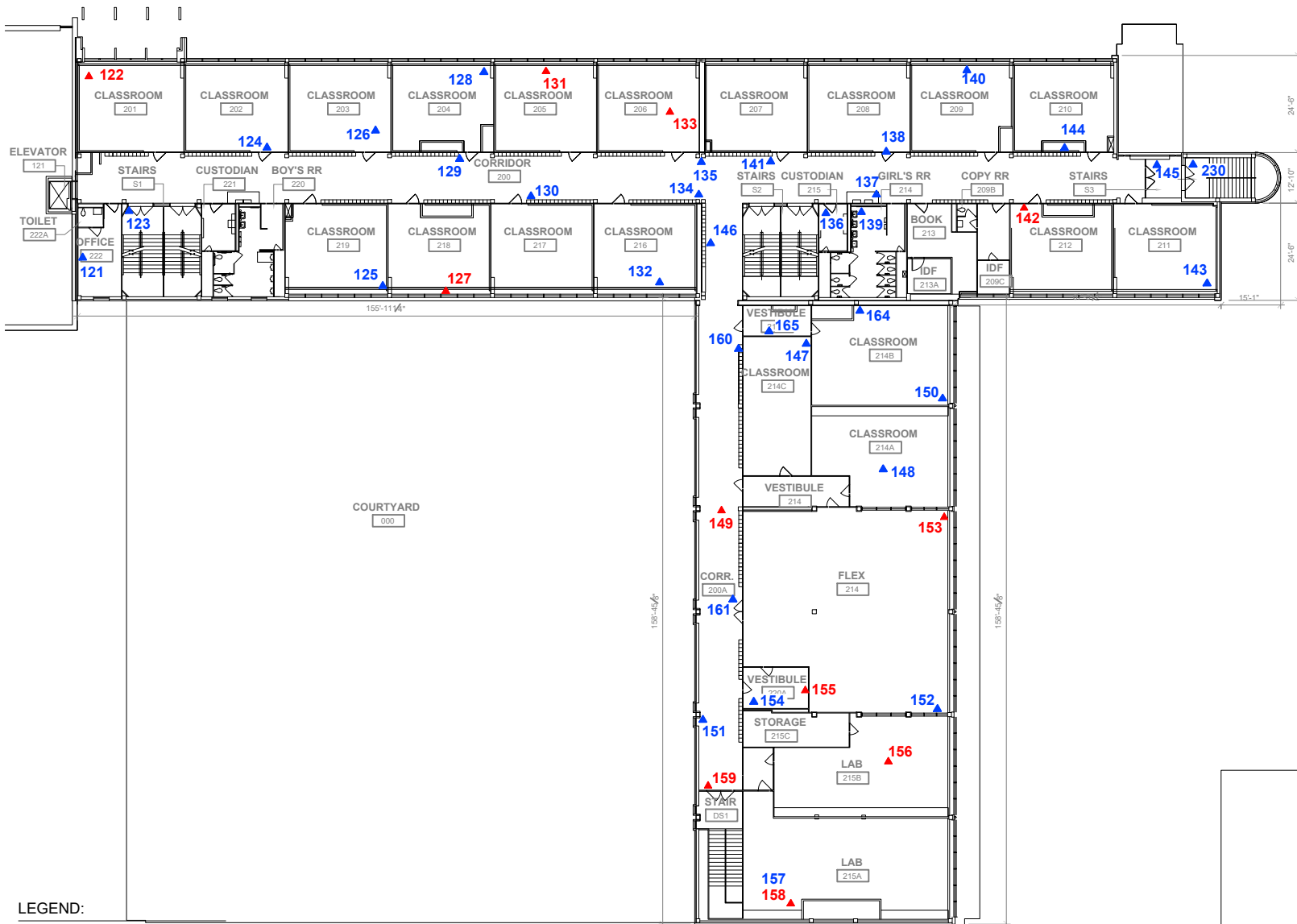
PHONE: (972) 393-0128 FAX: (972) 393-0793

**APPROXIMATE SAMPLE LOCATIONS MAP**

Prepared for: **Dallas Independent School District (DISD)**  
 Attention: **Mr. Zafar Syed, AECOM Design Manager**

Prepared by: **BENAS Environmental Services, Inc. 10-0173**  
**Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" Texas Licensed Consultant:10-5399**





**LEGEND:**

- ▲ Non-ACM Sample
- ▲ ACM Sample

**LEVEL 2**

**FIGURE 5**

**Comprehensive Asbestos-Containing Building Materials Investigation**

**Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy**  
 3838 Crown Shore Drive  
 Dallas, Texas 75244

**BENAS Project No.: BA-24-1700**



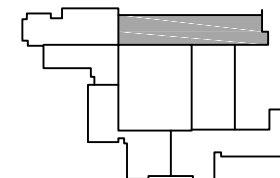
**ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS**  
 P.O. BOX 739  
 COPPELL, TEXAS 75019

PHONE: (972) 393-0128 FAX: (972) 393-0793

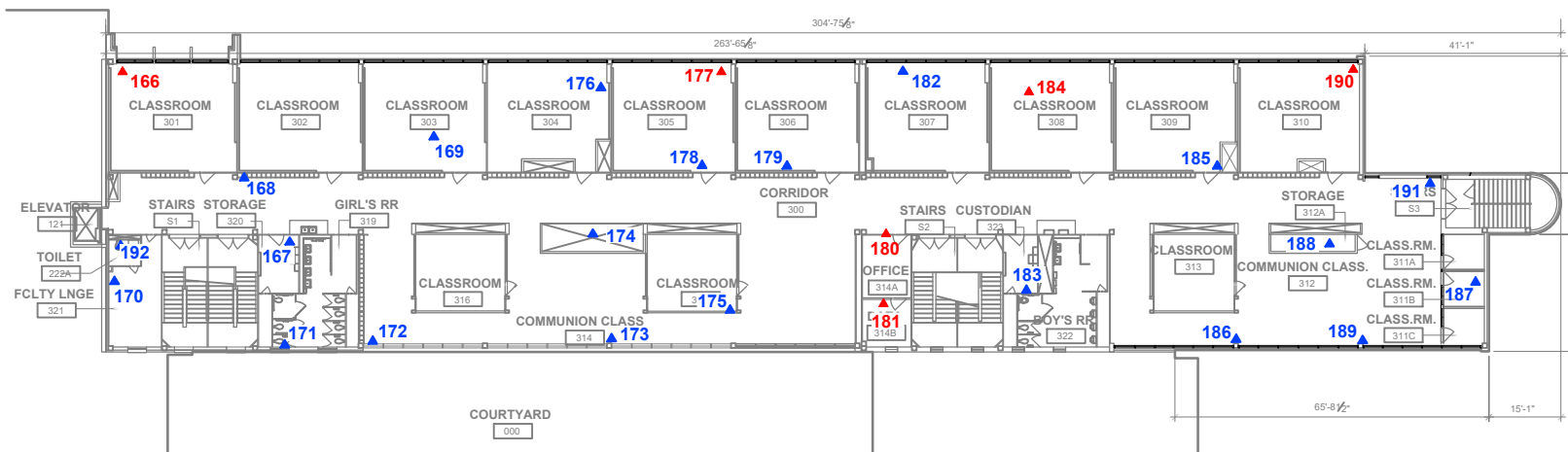
**APPROXIMATE SAMPLE LOCATIONS MAP**

Prepared for: Dallas Independent School District (DISD)  
 Attention: Mr. Zafar Syed, AECOM Design Manager

Prepared by: BENAS Environmental Services, Inc. 10-0173  
 Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" Texas Licensed Consultant:10-5399



KEY MAP



LEGEND:

- ▲ Non-ACM Sample
- ▲ ACM Sample

LEVEL 3

FIGURE 6

**Comprehensive Asbestos-Containing Building Materials Investigation**

**Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy  
3838 Crown Shore Drive  
Dallas, Texas 75244**

**BENAS Project No.: BA-24-1700**



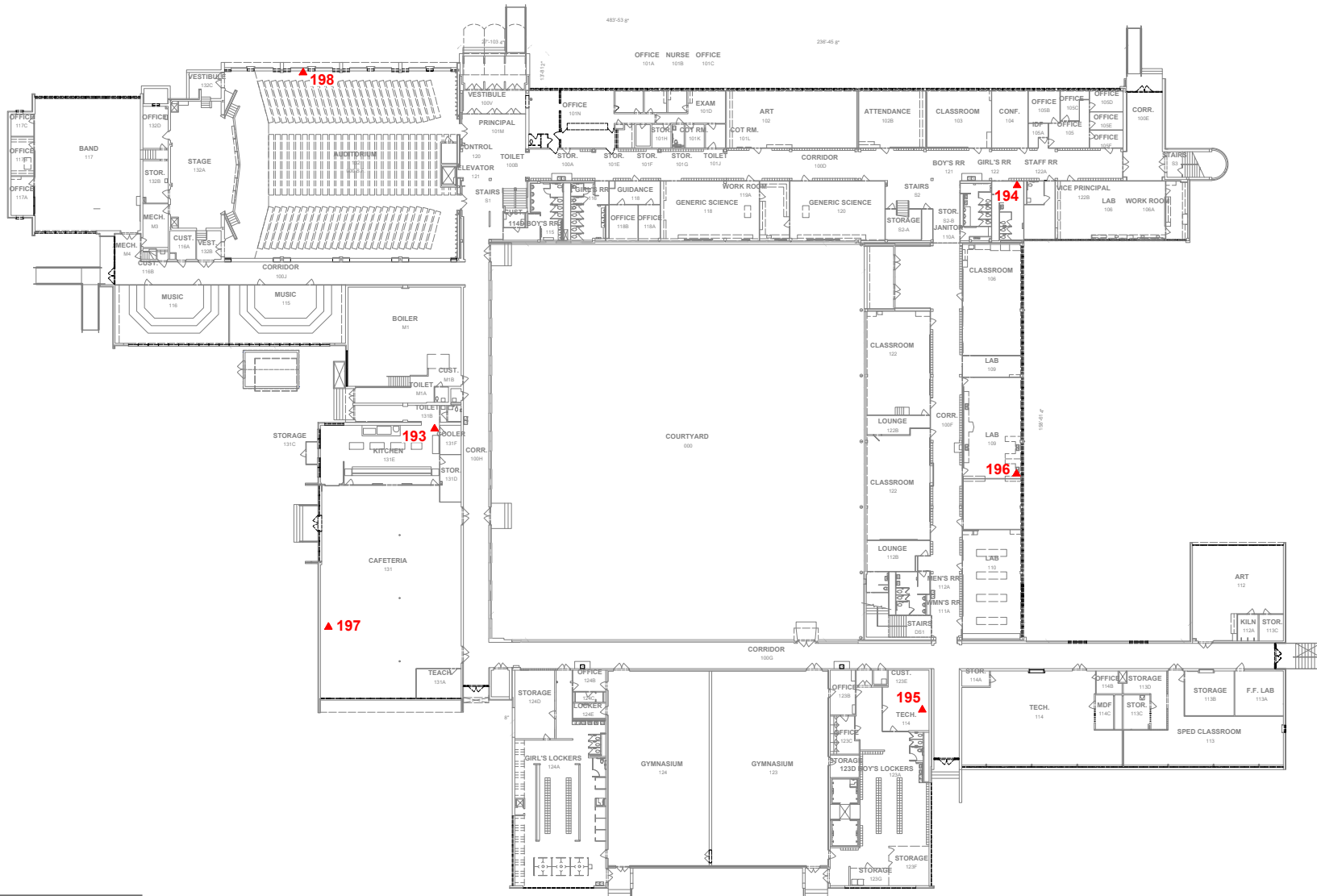
**ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS  
P.O. BOX 739  
COPPELL, TEXAS 75019**

PHONE: (972) 393-0128 FAX: (972) 393-0793

**APPROXIMATE SAMPLE LOCATIONS MAP**

Prepared for: Dallas Independent School District (DISD)  
Attention: Mr. Zafar Syed, AECOM Design Manager

Prepared by: BENAS Environmental Services, Inc. 10-0173  
Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" Texas Licensed Consultant:10-5399



**LEGEND:**

- ▲ Non-ACM Sample
- ▲ ACM Sample

**CRAWLSPACE**

**FIGURE 7**

**Comprehensive Asbestos-Containing Building Materials Investigation**

**Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy**  
 3838 Crown Shore Drive  
 Dallas, Texas 75244

**BENAS Project No.: BA-24-1700**



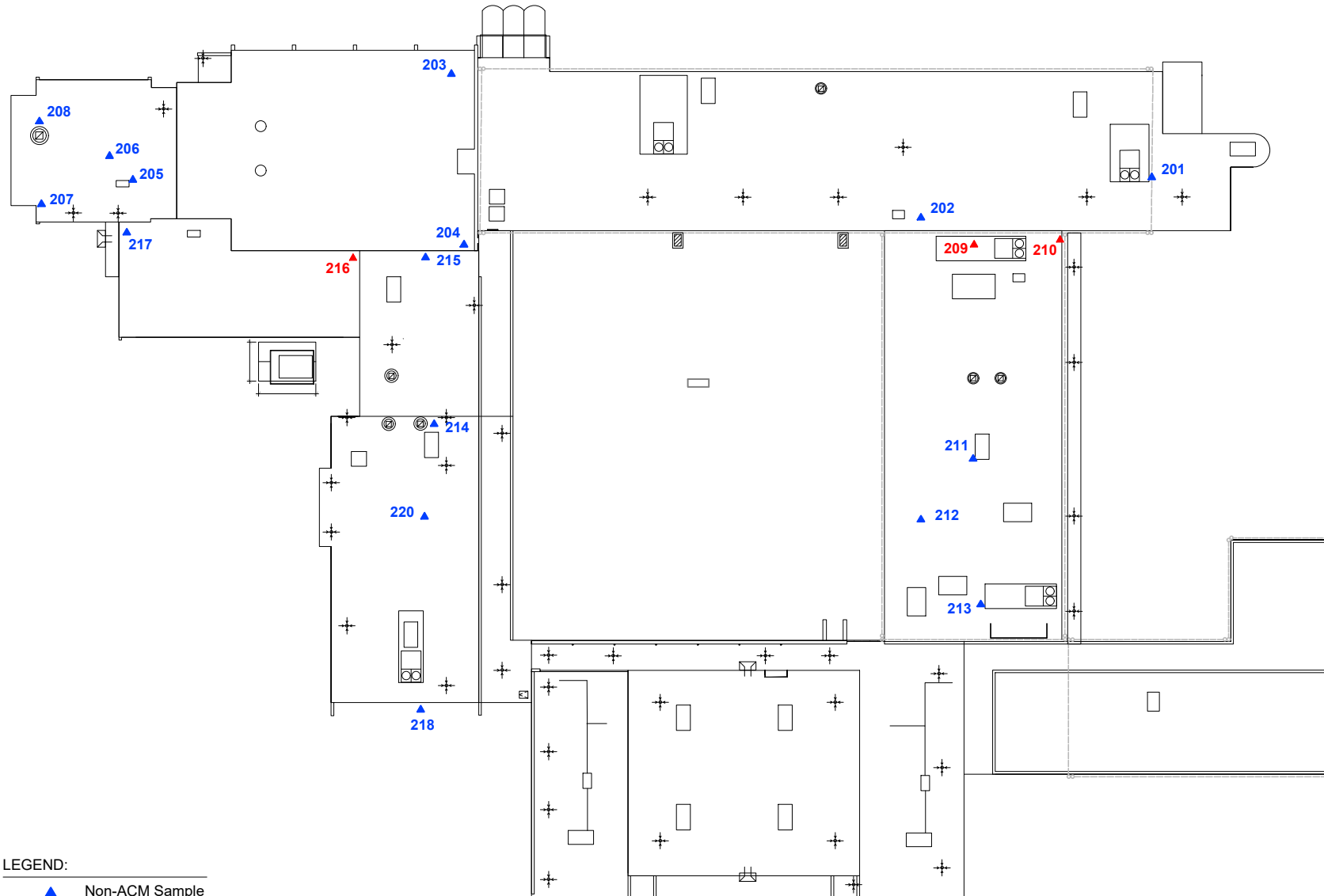
**ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS**  
 P.O. BOX 739  
 COPPELL, TEXAS 75019

PHONE: (972) 393-0128 FAX: (972) 393-0793

**APPROXIMATE SAMPLE LOCATIONS MAP**

Prepared for: Dallas Independent School District (DISD)  
 Attention: Mr. Zafar Syed, AECOM Design Manager

Prepared by: BENAS Environmental Services, Inc. 10-0173  
 Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" Texas Licensed Consultant:10-5399



LEGEND:

- ▲ Non-ACM Sample
- ▲ ACM Sample

ROOF

FIGURE 8

**Comprehensive Asbestos-Containing Building Materials Investigation**

**Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy**  
**3838 Crown Shore Drive**  
**Dallas, Texas 75244**

**BENAS Project No.: BA-24-1700**



**ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS**  
 P.O. BOX 739  
 COPPELL, TEXAS 75019

PHONE: (972) 393-0128 FAX: (972) 393-0793

**APPROXIMATE SAMPLE LOCATIONS MAP**

Prepared for: **Dallas Independent School District (DISD)**  
 Attention: **Mr. Zafar Syed, AECOM Design Manager**

Prepared by: **BENAS Environmental Services, Inc. 10-0173**  
**Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" Texas Licensed Consultant:10-5399**

## PLM REPORT SUMMARY



**Cates Laboratories**

1339 Motor Circle  
Dallas, Texas 75207 (214) 920-5006

NVLAP Lab No. 200569-0  
TDSHS License No. 30-0287

Client: BENAS Environmental Services, Inc.	Lab Job No.: PLM-38045
Project (Line 1): Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy	Set No.: 54654 - 54860
Project (Line 2): 3838 Crown Shore Dr., Dallas, TX	Report Date: 8/28/2024
Project No: BA-24-1700	Sample Date: 8/14/2024 - 8/23/2024
Identification: Asbestos, Bulk Sample Analysis	
Test Method: Polarized Light Microscopy/Dispersion Staining (PLM/DS) EPA Method 600/R-93/116	Page 1 of 19

On 8/15-23/2024, two-hundred thirty-three (233) bulk samples were submitted by Mr. Ephraim Okotcha of BENAS Environmental for asbestos analysis by PLM/DS. Copies of the lab data sheets are attached; additional information may be found therein. The results are summarized below:

Lab Sample No.	Client Field I.D.	Sample Description/Location	Asbestos Content
CL1284979	1	12" X 12" Floor Tiles & Mastic - Band Room, 1st Executive Office	None Detected - Floor Tile None Detected - Orange Mastic
<b>CL1284980</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>Interior Window Caulking - Band Room, 3rd Executive Office</b>	<b>3% Chrysotile</b>
CL1284981	3	Cabinet Works Caulking - Choir Room Southeast Corner	None Detected
<b>CL1284982</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>Black Transition Door Mastic &amp; Sealant - Hallway at MDF Room</b>	<b>5% Chrysotile</b>
<b>CL1284983</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>Brown 9" X 9" Floor Tiles &amp; Black Mastic - Auditorium Stage at Northeast Corner</b>	None Detected - Yellow Mastic <b>10% Chrysotile - Floor Tile</b> <b>5% Chrysotile - Black Mastic</b>
CL1284984	6	Return Air-Grill Seams Caulking - Auditorium near Double Doors at Southeast Entrance	None Detected
CL1284985	7	Wood Cove Base Caulking/Sealant - Auditorium Southwest Section near Windows	None Detected
CL1284986	8	Interior Brown Brick & Mortar - Auditorium Southwest Section near Windows	None Detected - Brick None Detected - Mortar
CL1284987	9	Plaster Ceiling - Auditorium Stage at Southeast Entrance	None Detected - Paint Layer None Detected - Plaster
CL1284988	10	White 2' X 2' Drop Ceiling Tiles - Orchestra Room 115 Center Section	None Detected
CL1284989	11	Green-ish Wall Ceramic Tiles & Grout - Hallway at Auditorium Window	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout None Detected - Thinset
CL1284990	12	Spray-applied Ceiling Residual on Concrete Deck - Hallway at Junction near Auditorium	None Detected
CL1284991	13	Plaster Wall - Boys' Restroom above Urinals	None Detected - Paint Layer None Detected - Plaster None Detected - Paint Texture None Detected - Joint Tape None Detected - Joint Compound None Detected - Paper None Detected - Wallboard Material

These samples were analyzed by layers. The overall percent asbestos for the sample is reported when relevant. The EPA considers a material to be asbestos containing only if it contains greater than one percent asbestos by Calibrated Visual Area Estimation (CVAE). EPA regulations also indicate that Regulated Asbestos Containing Materials (RACM) – materials that are friable or may become friable – be further analyzed by point counting when the results indicate less than ten percent asbestos by CVAE. CatesLab utilizes CVAE on a routine basis and does not include point counting unless specifically requested by the client. The results may not be reproduced except in full.

## PLM REPORT SUMMARY



**Cates Laboratories**

1339 Motor Circle  
Dallas, Texas 75207 (214) 920-5006

NVLAP Lab No. 200569-0  
TDSHS License No. 30-0287

Client: BENAS Environmental Services, Inc.	Lab Job No.: PLM-38045
Project (Line 1): Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy	Set No.: 54654 - 54860
Project (Line 2): 3838 Crown Shore Dr., Dallas, TX	Report Date: 8/28/2024
Project No: BA-24-1700	Sample Date: 8/14/2024 - 8/23/2024
Identification: Asbestos, Bulk Sample Analysis	
Test Method: Polarized Light Microscopy/Dispersion Staining (PLM/DS) EPA Method 600/R-93/116	Page 2 of 19

On 8/15-23/2024, two-hundred thirty-three (233) bulk samples were submitted by Mr. Ephraim Okotcha of BENAS Environmental for asbestos analysis by PLM/DS. Copies of the lab data sheets are attached; additional information may be found therein. The results are summarized below:

Lab Sample No.	Client Field I.D.	Sample Description/Location	Asbestos Content
CL1284992	14	Patterned Floor Ceramic Tiles & Grout - Boys' Restroom underneath Hand Wash Basin	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout
CL1284993	15	Patterned Floor Wall Tiles & Grout - Boys' Restroom Southwest at Wall Mirrors	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout
CL1284994	16	Interior Window Glass Glazing - Boiler/Sprinkler Room	2% Chrysotile
CL1284995	17	Interior Window Frame Caulking - Boiler/Sprinkler Room	2% Chrysotile
CL1284996	18	Gasket Insulation - Boiler/Sprinkler Room	None Detected
CL1284997	19	Gasket Insulation - Boiler/Sprinkler Room	None Detected
CL1284998	20	Gasket Insulation - Boiler/Sprinkler Room	None Detected
CL1284999	21	Interior Door Caulking - Boiler/Sprinkler Room at Double Doors Exit	3% Chrysotile
CL1285000	22	Interior CMU & Mortar - Boiler/Sprinkler Room inside Restroom	None Detected - CMU Block None Detected - Mortar
CL1285001	23	CMU Joint Sealant - Boiler/Sprinkler Room at Hallway Entrance Doorway	None Detected - White Sealant None Detected - Filler/Texture None Detected - CMU Block
CL1285002	24	Spray-applied Ceiling Residual on Concrete Deck - Hallway at Double Doors to Cafeteria & Courtyard	None Detected
CL1285003	25	White 2' X 2' Drop Ceiling Tiles - Cafeteria near Hallway Double Doors Entrance	None Detected
CL1285004	26	Under Layer Floor Float - Cafeteria near Hallway Double Doors Entrance	None Detected - Floor Tile None Detected - Orange Mastic None Detected - Leveling Compound
CL1285005	27	Terrazzo Flooring & Black Sealant - Cafeteria, Extreme Northeast Corner	None Detected - Terrazzo Flooring None Detected - Black Sealant
CL1285006	28	Terrazzo Flooring & Black Sealant - Cafeteria, Extreme Southeast Corner	None Detected - Terrazzo Flooring None Detected - Black Sealant

These samples were analyzed by layers. The overall percent asbestos for the sample is reported when relevant. The EPA considers a material to be asbestos containing only if it contains greater than one percent asbestos by Calibrated Visual Area Estimation (CVAE). EPA regulations also indicate that Regulated Asbestos Containing Materials (RACM) – materials that are friable or may become friable – be further analyzed by point counting when the results indicate less than ten percent asbestos by CVAE. CatesLab utilizes CVAE on a routine basis and does not include point counting unless specifically requested by the client. The results may not be reproduced except in full.

## PLM REPORT SUMMARY



**Cates Laboratories**

1339 Motor Circle  
Dallas, Texas 75207 (214) 920-5006

NVLAP Lab No. 200569-0  
TDSHS License No. 30-0287

Client: BENAS Environmental Services, Inc.	Lab Job No.: PLM-38045
Project (Line 1): Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy	Set No.: 54654 - 54860
Project (Line 2): 3838 Crown Shore Dr., Dallas, TX	Report Date: 8/28/2024
Project No: BA-24-1700	Sample Date: 8/14/2024 - 8/23/2024
Identification: Asbestos, Bulk Sample Analysis	
Test Method: Polarized Light Microscopy/Dispersion Staining (PLM/DS) EPA Method 600/R-93/116	Page 3 of 19

On 8/15-23/2024, two-hundred thirty-three (233) bulk samples were submitted by Mr. Ephraim Okotcha of BENAS Environmental for asbestos analysis by PLM/DS. Copies of the lab data sheets are attached; additional information may be found therein. The results are summarized below:

Lab Sample No.	Client Field I.D.	Sample Description/Location	Asbestos Content
CL1285007	29	Terrazzo Flooring & Black Sealant - Kitchen Area	None Detected - Terrazzo Flooring None Detected - Black Sealant
<b>CL1285008</b>	<b>30</b>	<b>Interior Window Frame Caulking - Kitchen Area at East Side Windows</b>	<b>2% Chrysotile</b>
CL1285009	31	Spray-applied Ceiling on Concrete Deck - Cafeteria at Center Section	None Detected
CL1285010	32	12" X 12" Floor Tiles & Mastic - Hallway near Mechanical Room	None Detected - Floor Tile None Detected - Orange Mastic
CL1285011	33	Wall Texture Joint Compound & Sheetrock Mud - Teachers' Work Station/Copy Room	None Detected - Paint Texture None Detected - Joint Tape None Detected - Joint Compound None Detected - Paper None Detected - Wallboard Material
<b>CL1285012</b>	<b>34</b>	<b>Black Transition Door Mastic &amp; Sealant - Hallway at Girls' Locker Room Double Doors Entrance</b>	<b>5% Chrysotile</b>
CL1285013	35	Pink-ish Wall Ceramic Tiles & Grout - Hallway between Storage & Girls' Locker Room	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout None Detected - Thinset
CL1285014	36	Building Demarcation Caulking/Sealant - Hallway between Storage & Girls' Locker Room	None Detected
CL1285015	37	Wall Texture Joint Compound & Sheetrock Mud - Girls' Locker Room near Water Fountain	None Detected - Paint Texture None Detected - Joint Compound None Detected - Paper None Detected - Wallboard Material
CL1285016	38	Shower Base Ceramic Tiles & Grout - Girls' Locker Room at Showers	None Detected
<b>CL1285017</b>	<b>39</b>	<b>Interior Door Caulking - Girls' Basketball Court at Back Double Doors Exit</b>	<b>3% Chrysotile</b>
CL1285018	40	Interior Red Brick & Mortar - Girls' Basketball Court at East Wall near Connecting Double Doors	None Detected - Brick None Detected - Mortar
<b>CL1285019</b>	<b>41</b>	<b>Wood Cove Base Caulking/Sealant - Girls Basketball Court at East Wall near Connecting Double Doors</b>	<b>3% Chrysotile</b>

These samples were analyzed by layers. The overall percent asbestos for the sample is reported when relevant. The EPA considers a material to be asbestos containing only if it contains greater than one percent asbestos by Calibrated Visual Area Estimation (CVAE). EPA regulations also indicate that Regulated Asbestos Containing Materials (RACM) – materials that are friable or may become friable – be further analyzed by point counting when the results indicate less than ten percent asbestos by CVAE. CatesLab utilizes CVAE on a routine basis and does not include point counting unless specifically requested by the client. The results may not be reproduced except in full.

## PLM REPORT SUMMARY



**Cates Laboratories**

1339 Motor Circle  
Dallas, Texas 75207 (214) 920-5006

NVLAP Lab No. 200569-0  
TDSHS License No. 30-0287

Client: BENAS Environmental Services, Inc.	Lab Job No.: PLM-38045
Project (Line 1): Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy	Set No.: 54654 - 54860
Project (Line 2): 3838 Crown Shore Dr., Dallas, TX	Report Date: 8/28/2024
Project No: BA-24-1700	Sample Date: 8/14/2024 - 8/23/2024
Identification: Asbestos, Bulk Sample Analysis	
Test Method: Polarized Light Microscopy/Dispersion Staining (PLM/DS) EPA Method 600/R-93/116	Page 4 of 19

On 8/15-23/2024, two-hundred thirty-three (233) bulk samples were submitted by Mr. Ephraim Okotcha of BENAS Environmental for asbestos analysis by PLM/DS. Copies of the lab data sheets are attached; additional information may be found therein. The results are summarized below:

Lab Sample No.	Client Field I.D.	Sample Description/Location	Asbestos Content
CL1285020	42	Spray-applied Ceiling on Concrete Deck - Boys' Locker Room near Coach's Office	None Detected
CL1285021	43	Green-ish Cove Base Ceramic Tiles & Grout - Boys' Locker Room at Wall Junction to Stalls	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout
CL1285022	44	12" X 12" Floor Tiles & Mastic - Boys' Locker Room in Coach's Office	None Detected - Floor Tile None Detected - Orange Mastic
<b>CL1285023</b>	<b>45</b>	<b>Interior Window Glass Glazing - Boys' Locker Room at Side Windows</b>	<b>2% Chrysotile</b>
CL1285237	46	12" X 12" Floor Tiles & Mastic - Hallway near Boys' Locker Room at Double Doors	None Detected - Floor Tile None Detected - Yellow Mastic
CL1285238	47	Building Demarcation Caulking/Sealant - Hallway at Building Demarcation near Custodian Closet	None Detected
CL1285239	48	Pink-ish Ceramic Cove Base & Grout - Hallway at Junction near Classroom 118	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout
CL1285240	49	Interior Window Glass Glazing - Classroom 118 at Back Window	<1% Chrysotile
CL1285241	50	Trowelled-on Texture on Ceiling Plaster Lath - Hallway between Boys' & Girls' Gymnasiums	None Detected - Paint Texture None Detected - Fireproofing None Detected - Plaster
CL1285242	51	12" X 12" Floor Tiles & Mastic - Classroom 188 Extreme Back Side at Teacher's Corner	None Detected - Floor Tile None Detected - Yellow Mastic
<b>CL1285243</b>	<b>52</b>	<b>TSI on T-Fittings &amp; Wrap - Pipe Chase, Teachers' Lounge Restroom</b>	None Detected - Cotton Wrap <b>10% Amosite - Insulation</b> <b>10% Chrysotile - Insulation</b>
<b>CL1285244</b>	<b>53</b>	<b>TSI on Pipe Runs &amp; Wrap - Pipe Chase, Teachers' Lounge Restroom</b>	None Detected - Cotton Wrap <b>10% Amosite - Insulation</b> <b>10% Chrysotile - Insulation</b>
<b>CL1285245</b>	<b>54</b>	<b>TSI on Elbows &amp; Wrap - Pipe Chase, Teachers' Lounge Restroom</b>	None Detected - Cotton Wrap <b>5% Amosite - Insulation</b> <b>5% Chrysotile - Insulation</b>

These samples were analyzed by layers. The overall percent asbestos for the sample is reported when relevant. The EPA considers a material to be asbestos containing only if it contains greater than one percent asbestos by Calibrated Visual Area Estimation (CVAE). EPA regulations also indicate that Regulated Asbestos Containing Materials (RACM) – materials that are friable or may become friable – be further analyzed by point counting when the results indicate less than ten percent asbestos by CVAE. CatesLab utilizes CVAE on a routine basis and does not include point counting unless specifically requested by the client. The results may not be reproduced except in full.



## PLM REPORT SUMMARY



**Cates Laboratories**

1339 Motor Circle  
Dallas, Texas 75207 (214) 920-5006

NVLAP Lab No. 200569-0  
TDSHS License No. 30-0287

Client: BENAS Environmental Services, Inc.	Lab Job No.: PLM-38045
Project (Line 1): Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy	Set No.: 54654 - 54860
Project (Line 2): 3838 Crown Shore Dr., Dallas, TX	Report Date: 8/28/2024
Project No: BA-24-1700	Sample Date: 8/14/2024 - 8/23/2024
Identification: Asbestos, Bulk Sample Analysis	
Test Method: Polarized Light Microscopy/Dispersion Staining (PLM/DS) EPA Method 600/R-93/116	Page 5 of 19

On 8/15-23/2024, two-hundred thirty-three (233) bulk samples were submitted by Mr. Ephraim Okotcha of BENAS Environmental for asbestos analysis by PLM/DS. Copies of the lab data sheets are attached; additional information may be found therein. The results are summarized below:

Lab Sample No.	Client Field I.D.	Sample Description/Location	Asbestos Content
CL1285246	55	Grey-ish Floor Ceramic Tiles & Grout - Ladies' Restroom Last Stall	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout None Detected - Thinset
CL1285247	56	Black Laboratory Countertop - Classroom 122 at Back Wall	None Detected
CL1285248	57	Student Locker Caulking - Outside Science Laboratory Room 109	None Detected
CL1285249	58	Black Sink Putty - Science Laboratory Room 109 East Wall underneath Sink	None Detected
CL1285250	59	Black Sink Putty - Science Laboratory Room 109 Front Wall underneath Sink	None Detected
CL1285251	60	White 12" X 12" Floor Tiles & Mastic - Science Laboratory 109 Storage Room at Center Section	None Detected - Floor Tile None Detected - Yellow Mastic None Detected - Leveling Compound
CL1285252	61	White 2' X 2' Drop Ceiling Tiles - Science Laboratory Storage Room Center Section	None Detected
CL1285253	62	Off-white 12" X 12" Floor Tiles & Mastic - Science Laboratory Storage Room Back Area	None Detected - Floor Tile None Detected - Yellow Mastic
CL1285254	63	White Plaster Wall - Hallway outside Classroom 122	None Detected - Paint Layer None Detected - Plaster Topcoat None Detected - Plaster
CL1285255	64	Wall Texture Joint Compound & Sheetrock Mud - Science Laboratory Classroom 121 Storage Room	None Detected - Paint Texture None Detected - Joint Tape None Detected - Joint Compound None Detected - Paper None Detected - Wallboard Material
CL1285256	65	Black Laboratory Countertop - Science Laboratory Classroom 121 Back at Countertop	None Detected

These samples were analyzed by layers. The overall percent asbestos for the sample is reported when relevant. The EPA considers a material to be asbestos containing only if it contains greater than one percent asbestos by Calibrated Visual Area Estimation (CVAE). EPA regulations also indicate that Regulated Asbestos Containing Materials (RACM) – materials that are friable or may become friable – be further analyzed by point counting when the results indicate less than ten percent asbestos by CVAE. CatesLab utilizes CVAE on a routine basis and does not include point counting unless specifically requested by the client. The results may not be reproduced except in full.

## PLM REPORT SUMMARY



**Cates Laboratories**  
 1339 Motor Circle  
 Dallas, Texas 75207 (214) 920-5006

NVLAP Lab No. 200569-0  
 TDSHS License No. 30-0287

Client: BENAS Environmental Services, Inc.	Lab Job No.: PLM-38045
Project (Line 1): Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy	Set No.: 54654 - 54860
Project (Line 2): 3838 Crown Shore Dr., Dallas, TX	Report Date: 8/28/2024
Project No: BA-24-1700	Sample Date: 8/14/2024 - 8/23/2024
Identification: Asbestos, Bulk Sample Analysis	
Test Method: Polarized Light Microscopy/Dispersion Staining (PLM/DS) EPA Method 600/R-93/116	Page 6 of 19

On 8/15-23/2024, two-hundred thirty-three (233) bulk samples were submitted by Mr. Ephraim Okotcha of BENAS Environmental for asbestos analysis by PLM/DS. Copies of the lab data sheets are attached; additional information may be found therein. The results are summarized below:

Lab Sample No.	Client Field I.D.	Sample Description/Location	Asbestos Content
CL1285257	66	Wall Texture Joint Compound & Sheetrock Mud - Science Laboratory Classroom 107 Extreme Front Corner	None Detected - Paint Texture None Detected - Joint Tape None Detected - Joint Compound None Detected - Paper None Detected - Wallboard Material
CL1285258	67	Black Sink Putty - Science Laboratory Classroom 107 near Front Entrance	None Detected
CL1285259	68	White Plaster Ceiling - Custodian/Electrical Room near Boys' Restroom	None Detected - Paint Layer None Detected - Plaster
CL1285260	69	Cove Base Ceramic Tiles & Grout - Custodian/Electrical Room near Boys' Restroom	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout
CL1285261	70	Interior Door Caulking - Double Doors Exit to Courtyard	<1% Chrysotile
CL1285262	71	Interior Light Brown Brick & Mortar - Hallway Junction near Building Demarcation	None Detected - Brick None Detected - Mortar
<b>CL1285263</b>	<b>72</b>	<b>Black Mastic on Metal Ductwork - Electrical Closet next to Stairs</b>	<b>5% Chrysotile</b>
CL1285264	73	Building Demarcation Caulking/Sealant - Hallway at Building Demarcation	None Detected
CL1285265	74	Patterned Wall Ceramic Tiles & Grout - Boys' Restroom near Hallway Junction	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout
CL1285266	75	Wall Texture Joint Compound & Sheetrock Mud - Assistant Principal's Office Restroom	None Detected - Paint Texture None Detected - Caulking
CL1285267	76	Mastic underneath Rubber Cove Base - Science Laboratory Room 106 near Front Entrance	None Detected - Cove Base None Detected - Yellow Mastic
CL1285268	77	Student Locker Caulking - Hallway outside Science Laboratory Room 106	None Detected
CL1285269	78	12" X 12" Floor Tiles & Mastic - Lobby Area & Storage Room	None Detected - Floor Tile None Detected - Yellow Mastic

These samples were analyzed by layers. The overall percent asbestos for the sample is reported when relevant. The EPA considers a material to be asbestos containing only if it contains greater than one percent asbestos by Calibrated Visual Area Estimation (CVAE). EPA regulations also indicate that Regulated Asbestos Containing Materials (RACM) – materials that are friable or may become friable – be further analyzed by point counting when the results indicate less than ten percent asbestos by CVAE. CatesLab utilizes CVAE on a routine basis and does not include point counting unless specifically requested by the client. The results may not be reproduced except in full.

## PLM REPORT SUMMARY



**Cates Laboratories**

1339 Motor Circle  
Dallas, Texas 75207 (214) 920-5006

NVLAP Lab No. 200569-0  
TDSHS License No. 30-0287

Client: BENAS Environmental Services, Inc.	Lab Job No.: PLM-38045
Project (Line 1): Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy	Set No.: 54654 - 54860
Project (Line 2): 3838 Crown Shore Dr., Dallas, TX	Report Date: 8/28/2024
Project No: BA-24-1700	Sample Date: 8/14/2024 - 8/23/2024
Identification: Asbestos, Bulk Sample Analysis	
Test Method: Polarized Light Microscopy/Dispersion Staining (PLM/DS) EPA Method 600/R-93/116	Page 7 of 19

On 8/15-23/2024, two-hundred thirty-three (233) bulk samples were submitted by Mr. Ephraim Okotcha of BENAS Environmental for asbestos analysis by PLM/DS. Copies of the lab data sheets are attached; additional information may be found therein. The results are summarized below:

Lab Sample No.	Client Field I.D.	Sample Description/Location	Asbestos Content
CL1285270	79	Spray-applied Ceiling Texture on Concrete Deck - Lobby Area & Storage Room, Center Section above Ceiling	None Detected
CL1285271	80	Carpet Glue/Mastic - MDF Room at Entrance Doorway	None Detected - Carpet None Detected - Yellow Mastic
CL1285272	81	Interior Window Glass Glazing - Executive Office next to MDF Room	<1% Chrysotile
<b>CL1285273</b>	<b>82</b>	<b>Cabinet Caulking - Executive Office Back Room at Cabinet Works</b>	<b>2% Chrysotile</b>
CL1285274	83	Wall Texture Joint Compound & Sheetrock Mud - Executive Office Conference Room near Doorway Entrance	None Detected - Paint Texture None Detected - Joint Tape None Detected - Joint Compound
<b>CL1285275</b>	<b>84</b>	<b>Interior Window Caulking - Executive Office Room at Window</b>	<b>2% Chrysotile</b>
CL1285276	85	Carpet Glue/Mastic - Executive Office Conference Room behind Chair	None Detected - Carpet None Detected - Yellow Mastic
CL1285277	86	White Plaster Wall - Executive Office Storage Room across Girls' Restroom	None Detected - Paint Texture None Detected - Plaster
<b>CL1285278</b>	<b>87</b>	<b>Cabinet Caulking - Classroom 103 at Front Cabinet Works</b>	<b>2% Chrysotile</b>
CL1285279	88	12" X 12" Floor Tiles & Mastic - Classroom 102, Near South Wall	None Detected - Floor Tile None Detected - Yellow Mastic
<b>CL1285280</b>	<b>89</b>	<b>Dark Brown 9" X 9" Floor Tiles &amp; Black Mastic - Auditorium at Northwest Section</b>	<b>3% Chrysotile - Floor Tile</b> <b>5% Chrysotile - Black Mastic</b>
<b>CL1285281</b>	<b>90</b>	<b>Dark Brown 9" X 9" Floor Tiles &amp; Black Mastic - Auditorium at Center East Section</b>	<b>3% Chrysotile - Floor Tile</b> <b>5% Chrysotile - Black Mastic</b> None Detected - Sheet Flooring None Detected - Fibrous Backing
<b>CL1286420</b>	<b>91</b>	<b>Spray-Applied Coating Texture on Concrete Deck - Hallway outside Classroom 114 above Drop Ceiling Tiles</b>	<b>3% Chrysotile</b>
CL1286421	92	Carpet Glue - Inside Classroom 114 Southwest Section	None Detected - Carpet None Detected - Yellow Mastic

These samples were analyzed by layers. The overall percent asbestos for the sample is reported when relevant. The EPA considers a material to be asbestos containing only if it contains greater than one percent asbestos by Calibrated Visual Area Estimation (CVAE). EPA regulations also indicate that Regulated Asbestos Containing Materials (RACM) – materials that are friable or may become friable – be further analyzed by point counting when the results indicate less than ten percent asbestos by CVAE. CatesLab utilizes CVAE on a routine basis and does not include point counting unless specifically requested by the client. The results may not be reproduced except in full.

## PLM REPORT SUMMARY



**Cates Laboratories**

1339 Motor Circle  
Dallas, Texas 75207 (214) 920-5006

NVLAP Lab No. 200569-0  
TDSHS License No. 30-0287

Client: BENAS Environmental Services, Inc.	Lab Job No.: PLM-38045
Project (Line 1): Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy	Set No.: 54654 - 54860
Project (Line 2): 3838 Crown Shore Dr., Dallas, TX	Report Date: 8/28/2024
Project No: BA-24-1700	Sample Date: 8/14/2024 - 8/23/2024
Identification: Asbestos, Bulk Sample Analysis	
Test Method: Polarized Light Microscopy/Dispersion Staining (PLM/DS) EPA Method 600/R-93/116	Page 8 of 19

On 8/15-23/2024, two-hundred thirty-three (233) bulk samples were submitted by Mr. Ephraim Okotcha of BENAS Environmental for asbestos analysis by PLM/DS. Copies of the lab data sheets are attached; additional information may be found therein. The results are summarized below:

Lab Sample No.	Client Field I.D.	Sample Description/Location	Asbestos Content
CL1286422	93	Interior Window Glass Glazing - Classroom 114 Southeast at Window Glass Panes	None Detected
CL1286423	94	Interior Window Caulking - Classroom 114 Northeast at Window Frame	None Detected
CL1286424	95	12" X 12" Floor Tiles & Mastic - Workroom 113 Extreme Northeast Corner	None Detected - Floor Tile None Detected - Yellow Mastic
CL1286425	96	Wall Texture Joint Compound & Sheetrock Mud - Workroom 113 Center West Section	None Detected - Paint Texture None Detected - Paper None Detected - Wallboard Material
CL1286426	97	Cabinet Caulking - Workroom 113 Front Storage Room	None Detected
CL1286427	98	Electrical Panel Caulking - Workroom 113 Side Storage Room	None Detected
CL1286428	99	Black Sink Putty - Workroom 113 underneath Hand Wash Basin	None Detected
CL1286429	100	Interior CMU & Mortar - Art Room 112 at Front Section	None Detected - Paint Layer None Detected - CMU Block None Detected - Mortar
CL1286430	101	Mastic underneath Rubber Cove Base - Art Room Extreme Southeast Corner	None Detected - Cove Base None Detected - Cream Mastic
<b>CL1286431</b>	<b>102</b>	<b>Spray-Applied Ceiling Texture on Concrete Deck - Classroom 113A Back Section</b>	<b>3% Chrysotile</b>
CL1286432	103	Interior Door Caulking - Hallway at Double Doors Exit near Art Room	None Detected
CL1286433	104	Student Locker Caulking - Hallway near Classroom 101 at Student Lockers	None Detected
CL1286434	105	White Plaster Wall - Science Room 101 Center Back Wall	None Detected - Paint Layer None Detected - Plaster Topcoat None Detected - Plaster
CL1286435	106	White 12" X 12" Floor Tiles & Mastic - Science Lab Room 101 Extreme South Side	None Detected - Floor Tile None Detected - Yellow Mastic

These samples were analyzed by layers. The overall percent asbestos for the sample is reported when relevant. The EPA considers a material to be asbestos containing only if it contains greater than one percent asbestos by Calibrated Visual Area Estimation (CVAE). EPA regulations also indicate that Regulated Asbestos Containing Materials (RACM) – materials that are friable or may become friable – be further analyzed by point counting when the results indicate less than ten percent asbestos by CVAE. CatesLab utilizes CVAE on a routine basis and does not include point counting unless specifically requested by the client. The results may not be reproduced except in full.

## PLM REPORT SUMMARY



**Cates Laboratories**

1339 Motor Circle  
Dallas, Texas 75207 (214) 920-5006

NVLAP Lab No. 200569-0  
TDSHS License No. 30-0287

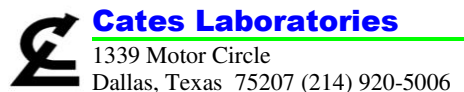
Client: BENAS Environmental Services, Inc.	Lab Job No.: PLM-38045
Project (Line 1): Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy	Set No.: 54654 - 54860
Project (Line 2): 3838 Crown Shore Dr., Dallas, TX	Report Date: 8/28/2024
Project No: BA-24-1700	Sample Date: 8/14/2024 - 8/23/2024
Identification: Asbestos, Bulk Sample Analysis	
Test Method: Polarized Light Microscopy/Dispersion Staining (PLM/DS) EPA Method 600/R-93/116	Page 9 of 19

On 8/15-23/2024, two-hundred thirty-three (233) bulk samples were submitted by Mr. Ephraim Okotcha of BENAS Environmental for asbestos analysis by PLM/DS. Copies of the lab data sheets are attached; additional information may be found therein. The results are summarized below:

Lab Sample No.	Client Field I.D.	Sample Description/Location	Asbestos Content
CL1286436	107	White 2' X 2' Drop Ceiling Tiles - Generic Science Classroom at Center Section	None Detected
CL1286437	108	Black Countertop - Generic Science Classroom 119 at Back Wall	None Detected
<b>CL1286438</b>	<b>109</b>	<b>Wall Texture, Joint Compound, &amp; Sheetrock Mud - Executive Back Office above Metal Cabinet Works</b>	<b>3% Chrysotile - Paint Texture</b> None Detected - Joint Tape <b>3% Chrysotile - Joint Compound</b> None Detected - Paper None Detected - Wallboard Material
CL1286439	110	Electrical Panel Caulking - Executive Office at Front Lobby Section	None Detected
CL1286440	111	Carpet Glue - Executive Back Office	None Detected - Carpet None Detected - Clear Adhesive
<b>CL1286441</b>	<b>112</b>	<b>Dark Brown 9" X 9" Floor Tiles &amp; Black Mastic - Main Office Closet near Corridor</b>	<b>3% Chrysotile - Floor Tile</b> <b>5% Chrysotile - Black Mastic</b>
<b>CL1286442</b>	<b>113</b>	<b>Spray-applied Ceiling Texture on Concrete Deck - Main Office Recreation Room at Lights</b>	<b>5% Chrysotile</b>
<b>CL1286443</b>	<b>114</b>	<b>Cabinet Caulking - Executive Office near Reception</b>	<b>2% Chrysotile</b>
CL1286444	115	White 2' X 2' Drop Ceiling Tiles - Main Office at Reception	None Detected
CL1286445	116	Yellow Floor Ceramic Tiles & Grout - Principal's Office Restroom at Corner Wall	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout
CL1286446	117	Plaster Ceiling - Main Office Storage Room	None Detected - Paint Layer None Detected - Plaster
CL1286447	118	Interior Window Glass Glazing - Girls' Restroom at Back Window Glass Pane	None Detected
CL1286448	119	Wall Ceramic Tiles & Grout - Girls' Restroom near Hand Wash Basin	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout
<b>CL1286449</b>	<b>120</b>	<b>Dark Brown 9" X 9" Floor Tiles &amp; Black Mastic - Boys' Restroom in Custodial Closet</b>	<b>3% Chrysotile - Floor Tile</b> <b>5% Chrysotile - Black Mastic</b>

These samples were analyzed by layers. The overall percent asbestos for the sample is reported when relevant. The EPA considers a material to be asbestos containing only if it contains greater than one percent asbestos by Calibrated Visual Area Estimation (CVAE). EPA regulations also indicate that Regulated Asbestos Containing Materials (RACM) – materials that are friable or may become friable – be further analyzed by point counting when the results indicate less than ten percent asbestos by CVAE. CatesLab utilizes CVAE on a routine basis and does not include point counting unless specifically requested by the client. The results may not be reproduced except in full.

## PLM REPORT SUMMARY



NVLAP Lab No. 200569-0  
TDSHS License No. 30-0287

Client: BENAS Environmental Services, Inc.	Lab Job No.: PLM-38045
Project (Line 1): Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy	Set No.: 54654 - 54860
Project (Line 2): 3838 Crown Shore Dr., Dallas, TX	Report Date: 8/28/2024
Project No: BA-24-1700	Sample Date: 8/14/2024 - 8/23/2024
Identification: Asbestos, Bulk Sample Analysis	
Test Method: Polarized Light Microscopy/Dispersion Staining (PLM/DS) EPA Method 600/R-93/116	Page 10 of 19

On 8/15-23/2024, two-hundred thirty-three (233) bulk samples were submitted by Mr. Ephraim Okotcha of BENAS Environmental for asbestos analysis by PLM/DS. Copies of the lab data sheets are attached; additional information may be found therein. The results are summarized below:

Lab Sample No.	Client Field I.D.	Sample Description/Location	Asbestos Content
CL1286450	121	Cove Base Ceramic Tiles & Grout - 2nd Floor, Assistant Principal's Office Middle Right Wall	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout
<b>CL1286451</b>	<b>122</b>	<b>Dark Brown 9" X 9" Floor Tiles &amp; Black Mastic - 2nd Floor, Classroom 201 at Teacher's Corner underneath Desk</b>	<b>3% Chrysotile - Floor Tile</b> <b>5% Chrysotile - Black Mastic</b>
CL1286452	123	Beige Wall Ceramic Tiles & Grout - 2nd Floor, Landing near Double Doors Entrance	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout
CL1286453	124	Interior Door Caulking - 2nd Floor, Classroom 202 at Entrance Door Frame	None Detected
CL1286454	125	Window Sill Ceramic Tiles & Grout - 2nd Floor, Classroom 219 Extreme Northwest Corner	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout
CL1286455	126	White 2' X 2' Drop Ceiling Tiles - 2nd Floor, Classroom 203 near Front Wall Chalkboard	None Detected
<b>CL1286456</b>	<b>127</b>	<b>Interior Window Glass Glazing - 2nd Floor, Classroom 218 at Back North Section</b>	<b>2% Chrysotile</b>
CL1286457	128	Plaster Wall - 2nd Floor, Classroom 204 Extreme Northeast Corner	None Detected - Paint Layer None Detected - Plaster
CL1286458	129	AC Return Grill Caulking - 2nd Floor, Hallway at Classroom 204 Entrance Doorway	None Detected
CL1286459	130	Student Locker Caulking - 2nd Floor, Hallway at Classroom 217 Entrance Doorway	None Detected
<b>CL1286460</b>	<b>131</b>	<b>Interior Window Caulking - 2nd Floor, Classroom 205 Middle Back Window at Frame</b>	<b>2% Chrysotile</b>
CL1286461	132	Cove Base Ceramic Tiles & Grout - 2nd Floor, Classroom 216 Back Wall Section	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout
<b>CL1286462</b>	<b>133</b>	<b>Dark Brown 9" X 9" Floor Tiles &amp; Black Mastic - 2nd Floor Classroom 206 near North Wall</b>	<b>3% Chrysotile - Floor Tile</b> <b>5% Chrysotile - Black Mastic</b>
CL1286463	134	Green-ish Column Ceramic Tiles & Grout - 2nd Floor Hallway Junction at Green Column	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout

These samples were analyzed by layers. The overall percent asbestos for the sample is reported when relevant. The EPA considers a material to be asbestos containing only if it contains greater than one percent asbestos by Calibrated Visual Area Estimation (CVAE). EPA regulations also indicate that Regulated Asbestos Containing Materials (RACM) – materials that are friable or may become friable – be further analyzed by point counting when the results indicate less than ten percent asbestos by CVAE. CatesLab utilizes CVAE on a routine basis and does not include point counting unless specifically requested by the client. The results may not be reproduced except in full.

## PLM REPORT SUMMARY



**Cates Laboratories**

1339 Motor Circle  
Dallas, Texas 75207 (214) 920-5006

NVLAP Lab No. 200569-0  
TDSHS License No. 30-0287

Client: BENAS Environmental Services, Inc.	Lab Job No.: PLM-38045
Project (Line 1): Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy	Set No.: 54654 - 54860
Project (Line 2): 3838 Crown Shore Dr., Dallas, TX	Report Date: 8/28/2024
Project No: BA-24-1700	Sample Date: 8/14/2024 - 8/23/2024
Identification: Asbestos, Bulk Sample Analysis	
Test Method: Polarized Light Microscopy/Dispersion Staining (PLM/DS) EPA Method 600/R-93/116	Page 11 of 19

On 8/15-23/2024, two-hundred thirty-three (233) bulk samples were submitted by Mr. Ephraim Okotcha of BENAS Environmental for asbestos analysis by PLM/DS. Copies of the lab data sheets are attached; additional information may be found therein. The results are summarized below:

Lab Sample No.	Client Field I.D.	Sample Description/Location	Asbestos Content
CL1286464	135	Building Demarcation Sealant - 2nd Floor, Hallway Junction at Wall Demarcation	None Detected
CL1286750	136	Plaster Ceiling - 2nd Floor, Custodial Closet near Stairs	None Detected - Paint Layer None Detected - Plaster
CL1286751	137	Green-ish Floor Ceramic Tiles & Grout - 2nd Floor, Hallway at Water Fountain near Girls' Restroom	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout
CL1286752	138	Interior Door Caulking - 2nd Floor, Classroom 208 at Entrance Door Frame	<1% Chrysotile
CL1286753	139	Patterned Wall Ceramic Tiles & Grout - 2nd Floor, Girls' Restroom near Hand Wash Basins	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout
CL1286754	140	Interior Wall Caulking - 2nd Floor, Classroom 209 at Back Center Window Frame	None Detected
CL1286755	141	Student Locker Caulking - 2nd Floor, Hallway near Classroom 207	None Detected
<b>CL1286756</b>	<b>142</b>	<b>Cabinet Caulking - 2nd Floor, Classroom 212 near Front Entrance Doorway</b>	<b>2% Chrysotile</b>
CL1286757	143	Cove Base Ceramic Tiles & Grout - 2nd Floor, Classroom 211 Back Wall at Teacher's Corner	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout
CL1286758	144	Mastic underneath Rubber Cove Base - 2nd Floor, Classroom 210 Front North Section at Wall	None Detected - Cove Base None Detected - Tan Mastic
CL1286759	145	Window Sill Ceramic Tiles & Grout - 2nd Floor, Hallway between Double Doors to 3rd Floor	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout
CL1286760	146	Black Mastic on Foam Insulation - 2nd Floor, Hallway at Junction near Building Demarcation	None Detected - Black Mastic/Wrap None Detected - Insulation
CL1286761	147	Wall Texture, Joint Compound, & Sheetrock Mud - 2nd Floor, Classroom 214C behind TV Stand	None Detected - Paint Texture None Detected - Joint Tape None Detected - Joint Compound None Detected - Paper None Detected - Wallboard Material

These samples were analyzed by layers. The overall percent asbestos for the sample is reported when relevant. The EPA considers a material to be asbestos containing only if it contains greater than one percent asbestos by Calibrated Visual Area Estimation (CVAE). EPA regulations also indicate that Regulated Asbestos Containing Materials (RACM) – materials that are friable or may become friable – be further analyzed by point counting when the results indicate less than ten percent asbestos by CVAE. CatesLab utilizes CVAE on a routine basis and does not include point counting unless specifically requested by the client. The results may not be reproduced except in full.

## PLM REPORT SUMMARY



**Cates Laboratories**

1339 Motor Circle  
Dallas, Texas 75207 (214) 920-5006

NVLAP Lab No. 200569-0  
TDSHS License No. 30-0287

Client: BENAS Environmental Services, Inc.	Lab Job No.: PLM-38045
Project (Line 1): Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy	Set No.: 54654 - 54860
Project (Line 2): 3838 Crown Shore Dr., Dallas, TX	Report Date: 8/28/2024
Project No: BA-24-1700	Sample Date: 8/14/2024 - 8/23/2024
Identification: Asbestos, Bulk Sample Analysis	
Test Method: Polarized Light Microscopy/Dispersion Staining (PLM/DS) EPA Method 600/R-93/116	Page 12 of 19

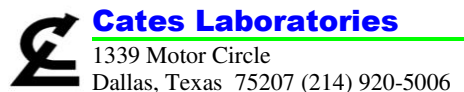
On 8/15-23/2024, two-hundred thirty-three (233) bulk samples were submitted by Mr. Ephraim Okotcha of BENAS Environmental for asbestos analysis by PLM/DS. Copies of the lab data sheets are attached; additional information may be found therein. The results are summarized below:

Lab Sample No.	Client Field I.D.	Sample Description/Location	Asbestos Content
CL1286762	148	2' X 2' Drop Ceiling Tiles - 2nd Floor, Classroom 214B Center Section	None Detected
<b>CL1286763</b>	<b>149</b>	<b>Spray-applied Ceiling Texture on Concrete Deck - 2nd Floor, Hallway near Vestibule/Classroom 214A</b>	<b>5% Chrysotile - Spray-Applied Texture</b> None Detected - Plaster None Detected - Insulation
CL1286764	150	Plaster Wall - 2nd Floor, Classroom behind Vestibule/Classroom 214A	None Detected - Paint Layer None Detected - Plaster
CL1286765	151	Interior Window Glass Glazing - 2nd Floor, Hallway across Back Student Lockers	<1% Chrysotile
CL1286766	152	Carpet Glue - 2nd Floor, Library Room Extreme Northwest Corner	None Detected - Carpet None Detected - Yellow Mastic
<b>CL1286767</b>	<b>153</b>	<b>Cabinet Caulking - 2nd Floor, Library Room Extreme Southeast Corner</b>	<b>2% Chrysotile</b>
CL1286768	154	Wall Texture, Joint Compound, & Sheetrock Mud - 2nd Floor, Vestibule 220A at Back Wall behind Drop Ceiling Tiles	None Detected - Paper None Detected - Wallboard Material
<b>CL1286769</b>	<b>155</b>	<b>Sink Putty - 2nd Floor, Vestibule 220A near Front Entrance underneath Sink</b>	<b>5% Chrysotile</b>
<b>CL1286770</b>	<b>156</b>	<b>Spray-applied Ceiling Texture on Concrete Deck - 2nd Floor, Laboratory Classroom 215A Back Section</b>	<b>5% Chrysotile - Spray-Applied Texture</b> None Detected - Plaster None Detected - Insulation
CL1286771	157	White TSI Wrap & White Mastic - 2nd Floor, Laboratory Classroom 215B East Wall	None Detected - Tan Mastic None Detected - Wrap None Detected - Insulation
<b>CL1286772</b>	<b>158</b>	<b>Plaster Wall - 2nd Floor, Laboratory Classroom 215B East Wall</b>	<b>5% Chrysotile - Spray-Applied Texture</b> None Detected - Plaster <b>5% Chrysotile - Spray-Applied Texture</b>
<b>CL1286773</b>	<b>159</b>	<b>Dark Brown 9" X 9" Floor Tiles &amp; Black Mastic - 2nd Floor, Hallway at Double Doors to Downstairs</b>	<b>3% Chrysotile - Floor Tile</b> <b>5% Chrysotile - Black Mastic</b>
CL1286774	160	Student Locker Caulking - 2nd Floor, Hallway at Student Lockers	None Detected

These samples were analyzed by layers. The overall percent asbestos for the sample is reported when relevant. The EPA considers a material to be asbestos containing only if it contains greater than one percent asbestos by Calibrated Visual Area Estimation (CVAE). EPA regulations also indicate that Regulated Asbestos Containing Materials (RACM) – materials that are friable or may become friable – be further analyzed by point counting when the results indicate less than ten percent asbestos by CVAE. CatesLab utilizes CVAE on a routine basis and does not include point counting unless specifically requested by the client. The results may not be reproduced except in full.



## PLM REPORT SUMMARY



NVLAP Lab No. 200569-0  
TDSHS License No. 30-0287

Client: BENAS Environmental Services, Inc.	Lab Job No.: PLM-38045
Project (Line 1): Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy	Set No.: 54654 - 54860
Project (Line 2): 3838 Crown Shore Dr., Dallas, TX	Report Date: 8/28/2024
Project No: BA-24-1700	Sample Date: 8/14/2024 - 8/23/2024
Identification: Asbestos, Bulk Sample Analysis	
Test Method: Polarized Light Microscopy/Dispersion Staining (PLM/DS) EPA Method 600/R-93/116	Page 13 of 19

On 8/15-23/2024, two-hundred thirty-three (233) bulk samples were submitted by Mr. Ephraim Okotcha of BENAS Environmental for asbestos analysis by PLM/DS. Copies of the lab data sheets are attached; additional information may be found therein. The results are summarized below:

Lab Sample No.	Client Field I.D.	Sample Description/Location	Asbestos Content
CL1286775	161	Interior Door Caulking - 2nd Floor, Hallway at Double Doors to Library Room	None Detected
CL1286776	162	Black Mastic on Foam Insulation - 2nd Floor, Hallway at Junction near Building Demarcation	None Detected - Black Mastic/Wrap None Detected - Insulation
CL1286777	163	Black Mastic on Foam Insulation - 2nd Floor, Hallway at Junction near Building Demarcation	None Detected - Black Mastic/Wrap None Detected - Insulation
CL1286778	164	Wall Texture, Joint Compound, & Sheetrock Mud - 2nd Floor, Classroom behind Vestibule/Classroom 214A	None Detected - Paint Texture None Detected - Joint Tape None Detected - Joint Compound None Detected - Paper None Detected - Wallboard Material
CL1286779	165	Mastic underneath Rubber Cove Base - 2nd Floor, Vestibule/Classroom 214A North Wall	None Detected - Cove Base None Detected - Cream Mastic
CL1287597	166	Dark Brown 9" X 9" Floor Tiles & Black Masti - 3rd Floor, Classroom 301 Extreme Southwest Corner	3% Chrysotile - Floor Tile 5% Chrysotile - Black Mastic
CL1287598	167	Plaster Wall - 3rd Floor, Storage Room 320 near Entrance Doorway	None Detected - Paint Layer None Detected - Plaster
CL1287599	168	Black Transition Door Mastic & Sealant - 3rd Floor Classroom 302, Center Section	None Detected
CL1287600	169	White 2' X 2' Drop Ceiling Tiles - 3rd Floor, Classroom 303 at Doorway Entrance	None Detected
CL1287601	170	Carpet Glue - 3rd Floor, Assistant Principal's Office near Restroom	None Detected - Carpet None Detected - Yellow Mastic
CL1287602	171	Patterned Wall Ceramic Tiles & Grout - 3rd Floor, Girls' Restroom, Last Stall	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout
CL1287603	172	Mastic underneath Rubber Cove Base - 3rd Floor, Communion Class at Wall Cabinet	None Detected - Cove Base None Detected - Cream Mastic
CL1287604	173	Interior Window Glass Glazing - 3rd Floor, Communion Class Center Window at Glass Pane	<1% Chrysotile

These samples were analyzed by layers. The overall percent asbestos for the sample is reported when relevant. The EPA considers a material to be asbestos containing only if it contains greater than one percent asbestos by Calibrated Visual Area Estimation (CVAE). EPA regulations also indicate that Regulated Asbestos Containing Materials (RACM) – materials that are friable or may become friable – be further analyzed by point counting when the results indicate less than ten percent asbestos by CVAE. CatesLab utilizes CVAE on a routine basis and does not include point counting unless specifically requested by the client. The results may not be reproduced except in full.

## PLM REPORT SUMMARY



**Cates Laboratories**

1339 Motor Circle  
Dallas, Texas 75207 (214) 920-5006

NVLAP Lab No. 200569-0  
TDSHS License No. 30-0287

Client: BENAS Environmental Services, Inc.	Lab Job No.: PLM-38045
Project (Line 1): Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy	Set No.: 54654 - 54860
Project (Line 2): 3838 Crown Shore Dr., Dallas, TX	Report Date: 8/28/2024
Project No: BA-24-1700	Sample Date: 8/14/2024 - 8/23/2024
Identification: Asbestos, Bulk Sample Analysis	
Test Method: Polarized Light Microscopy/Dispersion Staining (PLM/DS) EPA Method 600/R-93/116	Page 14 of 19

On 8/15-23/2024, two-hundred thirty-three (233) bulk samples were submitted by Mr. Ephraim Okotcha of BENAS Environmental for asbestos analysis by PLM/DS. Copies of the lab data sheets are attached; additional information may be found therein. The results are summarized below:

Lab Sample No.	Client Field I.D.	Sample Description/Location	Asbestos Content
CL1287605	174	TSI White Wrap & White Mastic - 3rd Floor, Storage Room 317 Center Section	None Detected - Wrap None Detected - Insulation
CL1287606	175	Wall Texture, Joint Compound, & Sheetrock Mud - 3rd Floor, Classroom 316, Magnolia Room	None Detected - Paint Texture None Detected - Joint Tape None Detected - Joint Compound None Detected - Paper None Detected - Wallboard Material
CL1287607	176	Cabinet Caulking - 3rd Floor, Classroom 304 Back Northwest Wall Section	None Detected - Paint/Caulking
<b>CL1287608</b>	<b>177</b>	<b>Interior Window Caulking - 3rd Floor, Classroom 304 Back Northwest Corner at Window Frame</b>	<b>3% Chrysotile - Caulking 1</b> None Detected - Caulking 2
CL1287609	178	Interior Door Caulking - 3rd Floor, Classroom 304 Front Entrance Door at Frame	None Detected - Caulk/Plaster
CL1287610	179	Cove Base Ceramic Tiles & Grout - 3rd Floor, Classroom 306 Front Wall underneath Chalkboard	None Detected - Ceramic Tile None Detected - Grout None Detected - Thinset
<b>CL1287611</b>	<b>180</b>	<b>Underlayer Brown 9" X 9" Floor Tiles &amp; Black Mastic - 3rd Floor, Office/IDF Room 314A at Door Entrance</b>	<b>3% Chrysotile - Floor Tile</b> <b>5% Chrysotile - Black Mastic</b>
<b>CL1287612</b>	<b>181</b>	<b>Spray-applied Ceiling Texture on Concrete Deck - 3rd Floor, Office/IDF Room 314A above Ceiling</b>	None Detected - Insulation/Texture <b>5% Chrysotile - Spray-Applied Tx</b>
CL1287613	182	Window Sill Ceramic Tiles & Grout - 3rd Floor, Classroom 307 Back Wall at Window Sill	None Detected - Ceramic Tile
CL1287614	183	Plaster Ceiling - 3rd Floor, Custodial Closet 323 Back Ceiling	None Detected - Paint Layer None Detected - Plaster
<b>CL1287615</b>	<b>184</b>	<b>Dark Brown 9" X 9" Floor Tiles &amp; Black Mastic - 3rd Floor, Classroom 308 South Side</b>	<b>3% Chrysotile - Floor Tile</b> <b>5% Chrysotile - Black Mastic</b>
CL1287616	185	Interior Door Caulking - 3rd Floor, Classroom 309 at Doorway Entrance	None Detected - Caulk/Plaster

These samples were analyzed by layers. The overall percent asbestos for the sample is reported when relevant. The EPA considers a material to be asbestos containing only if it contains greater than one percent asbestos by Calibrated Visual Area Estimation (CVAE). EPA regulations also indicate that Regulated Asbestos Containing Materials (RACM) – materials that are friable or may become friable – be further analyzed by point counting when the results indicate less than ten percent asbestos by CVAE. CatesLab utilizes CVAE on a routine basis and does not include point counting unless specifically requested by the client. The results may not be reproduced except in full.

## PLM REPORT SUMMARY



**Cates Laboratories**

1339 Motor Circle  
Dallas, Texas 75207 (214) 920-5006

NVLAP Lab No. 200569-0  
TDSHS License No. 30-0287

Client: BENAS Environmental Services, Inc.	Lab Job No.: PLM-38045
Project (Line 1): Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy	Set No.: 54654 - 54860
Project (Line 2): 3838 Crown Shore Dr., Dallas, TX	Report Date: 8/28/2024
Project No: BA-24-1700	Sample Date: 8/14/2024 - 8/23/2024
Identification: Asbestos, Bulk Sample Analysis	
Test Method: Polarized Light Microscopy/Dispersion Staining (PLM/DS) EPA Method 600/R-93/116	Page 15 of 19

On 8/15-23/2024, two-hundred thirty-three (233) bulk samples were submitted by Mr. Ephraim Okotcha of BENAS Environmental for asbestos analysis by PLM/DS. Copies of the lab data sheets are attached; additional information may be found therein. The results are summarized below:

Lab Sample No.	Client Field I.D.	Sample Description/Location	Asbestos Content
CL1287617	186	Wall Texture, Joint Compound, & Sheetrock Mud - 3rd Floor, Communion Class	None Detected - Paint Texture None Detected - Joint Tape None Detected - Joint Compound None Detected - Paper None Detected - Wallboard Material
CL1287618	187	White 2' X 2' Drop Ceiling Tiles - 3rd Floor, Classroom 311B, Elm Fork	None Detected
CL1287619	188	Carpet Glue - 3rd Floor, Storage Room 312A, Middle Section	None Detected - Carpet
CL1287620	189	Mastic underneath Rubber Cove Base - 3rd Floor, Communion Class near Classroom 312C	None Detected - Cove Base None Detected - Yellow Mastic
<b>CL1287621</b>	<b>190</b>	<b>Cabinet Caulking - 3rd Floor, Classroom 310 Back Northwest Corner at Cabinets</b>	<b>3% Chrysotile - Caulking 1</b> None Detected - Caulking 2
CL1287622	191	Interior Window Glass Glazing - 3rd Floor, Lobby Area near Double Doors to Downstairs	<1% Chrysotile
CL1287623	192	Ceiling Texture, Joint Compound, & Sheetrock Mud - 3rd Floor, Assistant Principal's Office Restroom	None Detected - Paint Layer None Detected - Paper None Detected - Wallboard Material
<b>CL1287624</b>	<b>193</b>	<b>TSI on Elbows - Crawl Space underneath All Buildings</b>	None Detected - Black Mastic None Detected - Wrap <b>15% Amosite - Insulation</b> <b>3% Chrysotile - Insulation</b>
<b>CL1287625</b>	<b>194</b>	<b>TSI on T-Fittings - Crawl Space underneath All Buildings</b>	None Detected - Black Mastic None Detected - Wrap <b>15% Amosite - Insulation</b> <b>3% Chrysotile - Insulation</b>
<b>CL1287626</b>	<b>195</b>	<b>TSI on Pipe Runs - Crawl Space underneath All Buildings</b>	None Detected - Black Mastic None Detected - Wrap <b>15% Amosite - Insulation</b> <b>3% Chrysotile - Insulation</b>
<b>CL1287627</b>	<b>196</b>	<b>Perimeter Wall Insulation &amp; Black Mastic - Crawl Space underneath All Buildings &amp; Perimeter Walls</b>	<b>25% Chrysotile - Blk. Mastic/Insulation</b>

These samples were analyzed by layers. The overall percent asbestos for the sample is reported when relevant. The EPA considers a material to be asbestos containing only if it contains greater than one percent asbestos by Calibrated Visual Area Estimation (CVAE). EPA regulations also indicate that Regulated Asbestos Containing Materials (RACM) – materials that are friable or may become friable – be further analyzed by point counting when the results indicate less than ten percent asbestos by CVAE. CatesLab utilizes CVAE on a routine basis and does not include point counting unless specifically requested by the client. The results may not be reproduced except in full.

## PLM REPORT SUMMARY



**Cates Laboratories**

1339 Motor Circle  
Dallas, Texas 75207 (214) 920-5006

NVLAP Lab No. 200569-0  
TDSHS License No. 30-0287

Client: BENAS Environmental Services, Inc.	Lab Job No.: PLM-38045
Project (Line 1): Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy	Set No.: 54654 - 54860
Project (Line 2): 3838 Crown Shore Dr., Dallas, TX	Report Date: 8/28/2024
Project No: BA-24-1700	Sample Date: 8/14/2024 - 8/23/2024
Identification: Asbestos, Bulk Sample Analysis	
Test Method: Polarized Light Microscopy/Dispersion Staining (PLM/DS) EPA Method 600/R-93/116	Page 16 of 19

On 8/15-23/2024, two-hundred thirty-three (233) bulk samples were submitted by Mr. Ephraim Okotcha of BENAS Environmental for asbestos analysis by PLM/DS. Copies of the lab data sheets are attached; additional information may be found therein. The results are summarized below:

Lab Sample No.	Client Field I.D.	Sample Description/Location	Asbestos Content
CL1287628	197	Perimeter Wall Insulation & Black Mastic - Crawl Space underneath All Buildings & Perimeter Walls	25% Chrysotile - Blk. Mastic/Insulation
CL1287629	198	Perimeter Wall Insulation & Black Mastic - Crawl Space underneath All Buildings & Perimeter Walls	25% Chrysotile - Blk. Mastic/Insulation
CL1287630	199	TSI White Wrap & White Mastic - Basement Boiler/Sprinkler Room	None Detected - Wrap None Detected - Insulation
CL1287631	200	TSI White Wrap & White Mastic - Basement Boiler/Sprinkler Room	None Detected - Wrap None Detected - Insulation
CL1288504	201	HVAC Base Black Mastic Sealant - Top Roofs of Buildings	None Detected - Black Sealant None Detected - Roofing Insulation
CL1288505	202	Exhaust Fan Base Black Sealant - Top Roofs of Buildings	None Detected - Black Sealant None Detected - Roofing Insulation
CL1288506	203	Roof Core Profile Sample & Black Mastic - Top Roofs of Buildings	None Detected - Roofing Membrane None Detected - Felt Backing None Detected - Roofing Foam
CL1288507	204	Roof Ridge Black Mastic Sealant - Top Roofs of Buildings	None Detected - Black Sealant
CL1288508	205	Building Metal Edge Sealant - Building Exterior on Roof	None Detected - Beige Sealant
CL1288509	206	Building Metal Edge Sealant - Building Exterior on Roof	None Detected - Beige Sealant
CL1288510	207	Drainage Ditch Black Mastic Sealant - Top Roofs of Buildings	None Detected - Silver Paint None Detected - Black Sealant
CL1288511	208	Roof Core Profile Sample & Black Mastic - Top Roofs of Buildings	None Detected - Roofing Membrane None Detected - Felt Backing None Detected - Roofing Foam
CL1288512	209	Exterior Window Caulking - Top Roofs of Buildings	2% Chrysotile
CL1288513	210	Exterior Window Glass Glazing - Top Roofs of Buildings	2% Chrysotile

These samples were analyzed by layers. The overall percent asbestos for the sample is reported when relevant. The EPA considers a material to be asbestos containing only if it contains greater than one percent asbestos by Calibrated Visual Area Estimation (CVAE). EPA regulations also indicate that Regulated Asbestos Containing Materials (RACM) – materials that are friable or may become friable – be further analyzed by point counting when the results indicate less than ten percent asbestos by CVAE. CatesLab utilizes CVAE on a routine basis and does not include point counting unless specifically requested by the client. The results may not be reproduced except in full.

## PLM REPORT SUMMARY



**Cates Laboratories**  
 1339 Motor Circle  
 Dallas, Texas 75207 (214) 920-5006

NVLAP Lab No. 200569-0  
 TDSHS License No. 30-0287

Client: BENAS Environmental Services, Inc.	Lab Job No.: PLM-38045
Project (Line 1): Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy	Set No.: 54654 - 54860
Project (Line 2): 3838 Crown Shore Dr., Dallas, TX	Report Date: 8/28/2024
Project No: BA-24-1700	Sample Date: 8/14/2024 - 8/23/2024
Identification: Asbestos, Bulk Sample Analysis	
Test Method: Polarized Light Microscopy/Dispersion Staining (PLM/DS) EPA Method 600/R-93/116	Page 17 of 19

On 8/15-23/2024, two-hundred thirty-three (233) bulk samples were submitted by Mr. Ephraim Okotcha of BENAS Environmental for asbestos analysis by PLM/DS. Copies of the lab data sheets are attached; additional information may be found therein. The results are summarized below:

Lab Sample No.	Client Field I.D.	Sample Description/Location	Asbestos Content
CL1288514	211	Roof Core Profile Sample & Black Mastic - Top Roofs of Buildings	None Detected - Roofing Membrane None Detected - Felt Backing None Detected - Roofing Foam
CL1288515	212	Exhaust Fan Base Black Sealant - Top Roofs of Buildings	None Detected - Black Sealant None Detected - Roofing Insulation None Detected - Roofing Foam
CL1288516	213	HVAC Base Black Mastic Sealant - Top Roofs of Buildings	None Detected - Black Sealant None Detected - Roofing Insulation
CL1288517	214	Roof Ridge Black Mastic Sealant - Top Roofs of Buildings	None Detected - Black Sealant None Detected - Roofing Insulation
CL1288518	215	Exterior Brown Brick & Mortar - Building Exterior on Roof	None Detected - Brick None Detected - Mortar
<b>CL1288519</b>	<b>216</b>	<b>Exterior Window Glass Glazing - Building Exterior on Roof</b>	<b>2% Chrysotile</b>
CL1288520	217	Exterior Brown Brick & Mortar - Building Exterior on Roof	None Detected - Brick None Detected - Mortar
CL1288521	218	Exterior Window Caulking - Building Exterior on Roof	<1% Chrysotile
CL1288522	219	Drainage Ditch Black Mastic Sealant - Top Roofs of Buildings	None Detected - Silver Paint None Detected - Black Sealant
CL1288523	220	Roof Core Profile Sample & Black Mastic - Top Roofs of Buildings	None Detected - Roofing Membrane None Detected - Felt Backing None Detected - Roofing Foam
<b>CL1288524</b>	<b>221</b>	<b>Exterior Window Caulking - Building Exterior</b>	<b>3% Chrysotile</b>
CL1288525	222	Exterior Brown Brick & Mortar - Building Exterior	None Detected - Brick None Detected - Mortar
CL1288526	223	Exterior Brown Brick & Mortar - Building Exterior	None Detected - Brick None Detected - Mortar
CL1288527	224	Exterior Brown Brick & Mortar - Building Exterior	None Detected - Brick None Detected - Mortar

These samples were analyzed by layers. The overall percent asbestos for the sample is reported when relevant. The EPA considers a material to be asbestos containing only if it contains greater than one percent asbestos by Calibrated Visual Area Estimation (CVAE). EPA regulations also indicate that Regulated Asbestos Containing Materials (RACM) – materials that are friable or may become friable – be further analyzed by point counting when the results indicate less than ten percent asbestos by CVAE. CatesLab utilizes CVAE on a routine basis and does not include point counting unless specifically requested by the client. The results may not be reproduced except in full.

## PLM REPORT SUMMARY



**Cates Laboratories**

1339 Motor Circle  
Dallas, Texas 75207 (214) 920-5006

NVLAP Lab No. 200569-0  
TDSHS License No. 30-0287

Client: BENAS Environmental Services, Inc.	Lab Job No.: PLM-38045
Project (Line 1): Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy	Set No.: 54654 - 54860
Project (Line 2): 3838 Crown Shore Dr., Dallas, TX	Report Date: 8/28/2024
Project No: BA-24-1700	Sample Date: 8/14/2024 - 8/23/2024
Identification: Asbestos, Bulk Sample Analysis	
Test Method: Polarized Light Microscopy/Dispersion Staining (PLM/DS) EPA Method 600/R-93/116	Page 18 of 19

On 8/15-23/2024, two-hundred thirty-three (233) bulk samples were submitted by Mr. Ephraim Okotcha of BENAS Environmental for asbestos analysis by PLM/DS. Copies of the lab data sheets are attached; additional information may be found therein. The results are summarized below:

Lab Sample No.	Client Field I.D.	Sample Description/Location	Asbestos Content
CL1288528	225	Exterior Brown Brick & Mortar - Building Exterior	None Detected - Brick None Detected - Mortar
<b>CL1288529</b>	<b>226</b>	<b>Exterior Window Caulking - Building Exterior</b>	<b>2% Chrysotile</b>
CL1288530	227	Exterior Window Glass Glazing - Building Exterior	<1% Chrysotile
CL1288531	228	Exterior Door Caulking - Building Exterior	None Detected
CL1288532	229	Exterior Door Caulking - Building Exterior	None Detected
CL1288533	230	Exterior Door Caulking - Building Exterior	None Detected
<b>CL1288534</b>	<b>231</b>	<b>1' X 1' Stick-on Ceiling Tiles &amp; Dot Mastic - Auditorium Storage Room behind Stage</b>	None Detected - Ceiling Tile <b>2% Chrysotile - Brown Mastic</b>
<b>CL1288535</b>	<b>232</b>	<b>1' X 1' Stick-on Ceiling Tiles &amp; Dot Mastic - Auditorium Storage Room behind Stage</b>	None Detected - Ceiling Tile <b>2% Chrysotile - Brown Mastic</b>
CL1288536	233	1' X 1' Stick-on Ceiling Tiles & Dot Mastic - Auditorium Office behind Stage	None Detected - Ceiling Tile None Detected - Yellow Mastic

These samples were analyzed by layers. The overall percent asbestos for the sample is reported when relevant. The EPA considers a material to be asbestos containing only if it contains greater than one percent asbestos by Calibrated Visual Area Estimation (CVAE). EPA regulations also indicate that Regulated Asbestos Containing Materials (RACM) – materials that are friable or may become friable – be further analyzed by point counting when the results indicate less than ten percent asbestos by CVAE. CatesLab utilizes CVAE on a routine basis and does not include point counting unless specifically requested by the client. The results may not be reproduced except in full.

# PLM REPORT SUMMARY



**Cates Laboratories**

1339 Motor Circle  
Dallas, Texas 75207 (214) 920-5006

NVLAP Lab No. 200569-0  
TDSHS License No. 30-0287

Client: BENAS Environmental Services, Inc.  
Project (Line 1): Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy  
Project (Line 2): 3838 Crown Shore Dr., Dallas, TX  
Project No: BA-24-1700  
Identification: Asbestos, Bulk Sample Analysis  
Test Method: Polarized Light Microscopy/Dispersion Staining (PLM/DS)  
EPA Method 600/R-93/116

Lab Job No.: PLM-38045  
Set No.: 54654 - 54860  
Report Date: 8/28/2024  
Sample Date: 8/14/2024 - 8/23/2024

Page 19 of 19

On 8/15-23/2024, two-hundred thirty-three (233) bulk samples were submitted by Mr. Ephraim Okotcha of BENAS Environmental for asbestos analysis by PLM/DS. Copies of the lab data sheets are attached; additional information may be found therein.

## STATEMENT OF LABORATORY ACCREDITATION

The samples were analyzed in general accordance with the procedures outlined in the U.S. EPA Interim Method for the Determination of Asbestos in Bulk Insulation Samples as found in 40 CFR, Part 763, Subpart E, Appendix E (formerly Subpart F, Appendix A), or the current U.S. EPA method (EPA Method 600/R-93/116) for the analysis of asbestos in building materials, by polarized light microscopy. The results of each bulk sample relate only to the material tested and the results shall not be used by the client to claim product certification, approval, or endorsement by NVLAP, NIST, or any agency of the Federal Government.

Specific questions concerning bulk sample results shall be directed to the Laboratory Director.

Analyst:

Curtis Grigg, Kathy Schosek,  
Kevin Bowman, Chris Munch,  
John R. Cates

Laboratory Director: John R. Cates, P.G.

Approved Signatory:



TESTING  
NVLAP LAB CODE 200569-0

## PLM REPORT SUMMARY



**Cates Laboratories**

1339 Motor Circle  
Dallas, Texas 75207 (214) 920-5006

NVLAP Lab No. 200569-0  
TDSHS License No. 30-0287

Client: BENAS Environmental Services, Inc.	Lab Job No.: PLM-38045
Project (Line 1): Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy	Set No.: 55219
Project (Line 2): 3838 Crown Shore Dr., Dallas, TX	Report Date: 9/23/2024
Project No: BA-24-1700	Sample Date: 9/20/2024
Identification: Asbestos, Bulk Sample Analysis	
Test Method: Polarized Light Microscopy/Dispersion Staining (PLM/DS) EPA Method 600/R-93/116	

On 9/20/2024, eight (8) bulk samples were submitted by Mr. Ephraim Okotcha of BENAS Environmental Services, Inc. for asbestos analysis by PLM/DS. Copies of the lab data sheets are attached; additional information may be found therein. The results are summarized below:

Lab Sample No.	Client Field I.D.	Sample Description/Location	Asbestos Content
CL1295620	234	Building Joint Sealant - Behind Down Spouts, Front near Main Entry at Principal's Office	2% Chrysotile - White Sealant
CL1295621	235	Concrete Joint Sealer - Front West End near DD	None Detected
CL1295622	236	Building Joint Sealant - Back Side outside Science Labs	2% Chrysotile - White Sealant
CL1295623	237	Building Joint Sealant - Front Middle Section	2% Chrysotile - White Sealant
CL1295624	238	Foundation Concrete Sealer - Outside Chiller Room	None Detected
CL1295625	239	Concrete Joint Sealer - Building Exterior	None Detected
CL1295626	240	Concrete Joint Sealer - Building Exterior	None Detected
CL1295627	241	Concrete Joint Sealer - Building Exterior	None Detected

These samples were analyzed by layers. The overall percent asbestos for the sample is reported when relevant. The EPA considers a material to be asbestos containing only if it contains greater than one percent asbestos by Calibrated Visual Area Estimation (CVAE). EPA regulations also indicate that Regulated Asbestos Containing Materials (RACM) – materials that are friable or may become friable – be further analyzed by point counting when the results indicate less than ten percent asbestos by CVAE. CatesLab utilizes CVAE on a routine basis and does not include point counting unless specifically requested by the client. The results may not be reproduced except in full.



# PLM REPORT SUMMARY



**Cates Laboratories**

1339 Motor Circle  
Dallas, Texas 75207 (214) 920-5006

NVLAP Lab No. 200569-0  
TDSHS License No. 30-0287

Client: BENAS Environmental Services, Inc.  
Project (Line 1): Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy  
Project (Line 2): 3838 Crown Shore Dr., Dallas, TX  
Project No: BA-24-1700  
Identification: Asbestos, Bulk Sample Analysis  
Test Method: Polarized Light Microscopy/Dispersion Staining (PLM/DS)  
EPA Method 600/R-93/116

Lab Job No.: PLM-38045  
Set No.: 55219  
Report Date: 9/23/2024  
Sample Date: 9/20/2024

On 9/20/2024, eight (8) bulk samples were submitted by Mr. Ephraim Okotcha of BENAS Environmental Services, Inc. for asbestos analysis by PLM/DS. Copies of the lab data sheets are attached; additional information may be found therein.

## STATEMENT OF LABORATORY ACCREDITATION

The samples were analyzed in general accordance with the procedures outlined in the U.S. EPA Interim Method for the Determination of Asbestos in Bulk Insulation Samples as found in 40 CFR, Part 763, Subpart E, Appendix E (formerly Subpart F, Appendix A), or the current U.S. EPA method (EPA Method 600/R-93/116) for the analysis of asbestos in building materials, by polarized light microscopy. The results of each bulk sample relate only to the material tested and the results shall not be used by the client to claim product certification, approval, or endorsement by NVLAP, NIST, or any agency of the Federal Government.

Specific questions concerning bulk sample results shall be directed to the Laboratory Director.

Analyst: Kathy Schosek

Laboratory Director: John R. Cates, P.G.

Approved Signatory:



TESTING  
NVLAP LAB CODE 200569-0

# BENAS ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES, INC.

ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

P. O. BOX 739

COPPELL, TEXAS 75019

1 of 18

PROJECT NO: BA-24-1700

PROJECT NAME Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy  
3838 Crown Shore Drive  
Dallas, Texas 75244

Sample Date:08/14/2024

2-Day Turn-Around Time

## ASBESTOS FIELD SAMPLE LOG

SPECIALISTS IN ASBESTOS, LEAD-BASED PAINT and PHASES I and II ENVIRONMENTAL REAL ESTATE ASSESSMENTS AND CONSULTING SERVICES

<u>SAMPLE NO.</u>	<u>SAMPLE LOCATION</u>	<u>MATERIAL DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>FRIABLE OR NON-FRIABLE</u>	<u>CONDITION</u>
1	Band Room, 1st Executive Office	12" X 12" Floor Tiles and Mastic	Non-Friable	Good
2	Bank Room, 3rd Executive Office	Interior Window Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
3	Choir Room Southeast Corner	Cabinet Works Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
4	Hallway @ MDF Room	Black Transition Door Mastic and Sealant	Non-Friable	Good
5	Auditorium Stage @ Northeast Corner	Brown 9" X 9' Floor Tiles and Black Mastic	Non-Friable	Good
6	Auditorium Near Double-Doors @ Southeast Entrance	Return Air-Grill Seams Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
7	Auditorium Southwest Section Near Windows	Wood Cove-Base Caulking/Sealant	Non-Friable	Good
8	Auditorium Southwest Section Near Windows	Interior Brown Brick and Mortar	Non-Friable	Good
9	Auditorium Stage @ Southeast Entrance	Plaster Ceiling	Non-Friable	Good
10	Orchestra Room 115 Center Section	White 2' X 2' Drop Ceiling Tiles	Friable	Good
11	Hallway @ Auditorium Window	Greenish Wall Ceramic Tiles and Grout	Non-Friable	Good
12	Hallway @ Junction Near Auditorium	Spray-Applied Ceiling (SAC) Residual on Concrete Deck	Friable	Good
13	Boy's Rest Room Above Urinals	Plaster Wall	Non-Friable	Good
14	Boy's Rest Room Underneath Hand-Wash Basins	Patterned Floor Ceramic Tiles and Grout	Non-Friable	Good
15	Boy's Rest Room Southwest @ Wall Mirrors	Patterned Wall Ceramic Tiles and Grout	Non-Friable	Good

CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY

SETUP BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/14/2024

LABORATORY CUSTODY

RETRIEVED BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/14/2024

RECEIVED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_

TRANSPORTED: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/14/2024

ANALYZED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_

# BENAS ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES, INC.

ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

P. O. BOX 739

COPPELL, TEXAS 75019

2 of 18

PROJECT NO: BA-24-1700

PROJECT NAME Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy  
3838 Crown Shore Drive  
Dallas, Texas 75244

Sample Date:08/14/2024

2-Day Turn-Around Time

## ASBESTOS FIELD SAMPLE LOG

SPECIALISTS IN ASBESTOS, LEAD-BASED PAINT and PHASES I and II ENVIRONMENTAL REAL ESTATE ASSESSMENTS AND CONSULTING SERVICES

<u>SAMPLE NO.</u>	<u>SAMPLE LOCATION</u>	<u>MATERIAL DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>FRIABLE OR NON-FRIABLE</u>	<u>CONDITION</u>
16	Boiler/Sprinkler Room	Interior Window Glass Glazing	Non-Friable	Good
17	Boiler/Sprinkler Room	Interior Window Frame Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
18	Boiler/Sprinkler Room	Gasket Insulation	Non-Friable	Good
19	Boiler/Sprinkler Room	Gasket Insulation	Non-Friable	Good
20	Boiler/Sprinkler Room	Gasket Insulation	Non-Friable	Good
21	Boiler/Sprinkler Room @ Double-Doors Exit	Interior Door Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
22	Boiler/Sprinkler Room Inside Rest Room	Interior Concrete Masonry Units (CMU) and Mortar	Non-Friable	Good
23	Boiler/Sprinkler Room @ Hallway Entrance Doorway	Concrete Masonry Units (CMU) Joint Sealant	Non-Friable	Good
24	Hallway @ Double-Doors to Cafeteria and Courtyard	Spray-Applied Ceiling (SAC) Residual on Concrete Deck	Friable	Good
25	Cafeteria Near Hallway Double-Doors Entrance	White 2' X 2' Drop Ceiling Tiles	Friable	Good
26	Cafeteria Near Hallway Double-Doors Entrance	Under-Layer Floor Float	Non-Friable	Good
27	Cafeteria, Extreme Northeast Corner	Terrazzo Flooring and Black Sealant	Non-Friable	Good
28	Cafeteria, Extreme Southeast Corner	Terrazzo Flooring and Black Sealant	Non-Friable	Good
29	Kitchen Area	Terrazzo Flooring and Black Sealant	Non-Friable	Good
30	Kitchen Area @ East Side Windows	Interior Window Frame Caulking	Non-Friable	Good

CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY

SETUP BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/14/2024

LABORATORY CUSTODY

RETRIEVED BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/14/2024

RECEIVED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_

TRANSPORTED: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/14/2024

ANALYZED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_

# BENAS ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES, INC.

ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

P. O. BOX 739

COPPELL, TEXAS 75019

3 of 18

**PROJECT NO:** BA-24-1700

**PROJECT NAME** Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy  
3838 Crown Shore Drive  
Dallas, Texas 75244

Sample Date:08/14/2024

2-Day Turn-Around Time

## ASBESTOS FIELD SAMPLE LOG

SPECIALISTS IN ASBESTOS, LEAD-BASED PAINT and PHASES I and II ENVIRONMENTAL REAL ESTATE ASSESSMENTS AND CONSULTING SERVICES

<u>SAMPLE NO.</u>	<u>SAMPLE LOCATION</u>	<u>MATERIAL DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>FRIABLE OR NON-FRIABLE</u>	<u>CONDITION</u>
31	Cafeteria @ Center Section	Spray-Applied Ceiling (SAC) on Concrete Deck	Friable	Good
32	Hallway Near Mechanical Room	12" X 12" Floor Tiles and Mastic	Non-Friable	Good
33	Teachers' Work Station/Copy Room	Wall Texture Joint Compound and Sheetrock Mud	Friable	Good
<b>34</b>	<b>Hallway @ Girl's Locker Room Double-Doors Entrance</b>	<b>Black Transition Door Mastic and Sealant</b>	<b>Non-Friable</b>	<b>Good</b>
35	Hallway Between Storage and Girl's Locker Room	Pinkish Wall Ceramic Tiles and Grout	Non-Friable	Good
36	Hallway Between Storage and Girl's Locker Room	Building Demarcation Caulking/Sealant	Non-Friable	Good
37	Girl's Locker Room Near Water Fountain	Wall Texture Joint Compound and Sheetrock Mud	Friable	Good
38	Girl's Locker Room @ Showers	Shower-Base Ceramic Tiles and Grout	Non-Friable	Good
<b>39</b>	<b>Girl's Basket Ball Court @ Back Double-Doors Exit</b>	<b>Interior Door Caulking</b>	<b>Non-Friable</b>	<b>Good</b>
40	Girl's Basket Ball Court @ East Wall Near Connecting Double-Doors	Interior Red Brick and Mortar	Non-Friable	Good
<b>41</b>	<b>Girl's Basket Ball Court @ East Wall Near Connecting Double-Doors</b>	<b>Wood Cove-Base Caulking/Sealant</b>	<b>Non-Friable</b>	<b>Good</b>
42	Boy's Locker Room Near Coach's Office	Spray-Applied Ceiling (SAC) on Concrete Deck	Friable	Good
43	Boy's Locker Room @ Wall Junction to Stalls	Greenish Cove-Base Ceramic Tiles and Grout	Non-Friable	Good
44	Boy's Locker Room in Coach's Office	12" X 12" Floor Tiles and Mastic	Non-Friable	Good
<b>45</b>	<b>Boy's Locker Room @ Side Windows</b>	<b>Interior Window Glass Glazing</b>	<b>Non-Friable</b>	<b>Good</b>

CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY

SETUP BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/14/2024

RETRIEVED BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/14/2024

TRANSPORTED: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/14/2024

LABORATORY CUSTODY

RECEIVED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_

ANALYZED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_

# BENAS ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES, INC.

ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

P. O. BOX 739

COPPELL, TEXAS 75019

4 of 18

PROJECT NO: BA-24-1700

PROJECT NAME Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy  
3838 Crown Shore Drive  
Dallas, Texas 75244

Sample Date:08/15/2024

2-Day Turn-Around Time

## ASBESTOS FIELD SAMPLE LOG

SPECIALISTS IN ASBESTOS, LEAD-BASED PAINT and PHASES I and II ENVIRONMENTAL REAL ESTATE ASSESSMENTS AND CONSULTING SERVICES

SAMPLE NO.	SAMPLE LOCATION	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	FRIABLE OR NON-FRIABLE	CONDITION
46	Hallway Near Boy's Locker Room @ Double-Doors	12" X 12" Floor Tiles and Mastic	Non-Friable	Good
47	Hallway @ Building Demarcation Near Custodian Closet	Building Demarcation Caulking/Sealant	Non-Friable	Good
48	Hallway @ Junction Nera Class Room 118	Pinkish Ceramic Cove-Base and Grout	Non-Friable	Good
49	Class Room 118 @ Back Window	Interior Window Glass Glazing	Non-Friable	Good
50	Hallway Between Boy's and Girl's Gymnasiums	Trowelled-On Texture on Ceiling Plaster Lath	Non-Friable	Good
51	Class Room 118 Extreme Back Side @ Teacher's Corner	12" X 12" Floor Tiles and Mastic	Non-Friable	Good
52	Pipe-Chase, Teachers' Lounge Rest Room	Thermal Systems Insulation (TSI) on T-Fittings and Wrap	Friable/Non-Friab	Good
53	Pipe-Chase, Teachers' Lounge Rest Room	Thermal Systems Insulation (TSI) on Pipe-Runs and Wrap	Friable/Non-Friab	Good
54	Pipe-Chase, Teachers' Lounge Rest Room	Thermal Systems Insulation (TSI) on Elbows and Wrap	Friable/Non-Friab	Good
55	Ladies Rest Room Last Stall	Greyish Floor Ceramic Tiles and Grout	Non-Friable	Good
56	Class Room 122 @ Back Wall	Black Laboratory Counter-Top	Non-Friable	Good
57	Outside Science Laboratory Room 109	Student Locker Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
58	Science Laboratory Room 109 East Wall Underneath Sink	Black Sink Putty	Non-Friable	Good
59	Science Laboratory Room 109 Front Wall Underneath Sink	Black Sink Putty	Non-Friable	Good
60	Science Laboratory 109 Storage Room @ Center Section	White 12" X 12" Floor Tiles and Mastic	Non-Friable	Good

CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY

SETUP BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/15/2024

LABORATORY CUSTODY

RETRIEVED BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/15/2024

RECEIVED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_

TRANSPORTED: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/15/2024

ANALYZED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_

# BENAS ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES, INC.

ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

P. O. BOX 739

COPPELL, TEXAS 75019

5 of 18

**PROJECT NO:** BA-24-1700

**PROJECT NAME** Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy  
3838 Crown Shore Drive  
Dallas, Texas 75244

Sample Date:08/15/2024

2-Day Turn-Around Time

## ASBESTOS FIELD SAMPLE LOG

**SPECIALISTS IN ASBESTOS, LEAD-BASED PAINT and PHASES I and II ENVIRONMENTAL REAL ESTATE ASSESSMENTS AND CONSULTING SERVICES**

<u>SAMPLE NO.</u>	<u>SAMPLE LOCATION</u>	<u>MATERIAL DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>FRIABLE OR NON-FRIABLE</u>	<u>CONDITION</u>
61	Science Laboratory Storage Room Center Section	White 2' X 2' Drop Ceiling Tiles	Friable	Good
62	Science Laboratory Storage Room Back Area	Off-White 12" X 12" Floor Tiles and Mastic	Non-Friable	Good
63	Hallway Outside Class Room 122	White Plaster Wall	Non-Friable	Good
64	Science Laboratory Class Room 121 Storage Room	Wall Texture Joint Compound and Sheetrock Mud	Friable	Good
65	Science Laboratory Class Room 121 Back @ Counter-Top	Black Laboratory Counter-Top	Non-Friable	Good
66	Science Laboratory Class Room 107 Extreme Front Corner	Wall Texture Joint Compound and Sheetrock Mud	Friable	Good
67	Science Laboratory Class Room 107 Near Front Entrance	Black Sink Putty	Non-Friable	Good
68	Custodian/Electrical Room Near Boy's Rest Room	White Plaster Ceiling	Non-Friable	Good
69	Custodian/Electrical Room Near Boy's Rest Room	Cove-Base Ceramic Tiles and Grout	Non-Friable	Good
70	Double-Doors Exit to Courtyard	Interior Door Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
71	Hallway Junction Near Building Demarcation	Interior Light Brown Brick and Mortar	Non-Friable	Good
<b>72</b>	<b>Electrical Closet Next to Stairs</b>	<b>Black Mastic on Metal Duct Work</b>	<b>Non-Friable</b>	<b>Good</b>
73	Hallway @ Building Demarcation	Building Demarcation Caulking/Sealant	Non-Friable	Good
74	Boy's Rest Room Near Hallway Junction	Patterned Wall Ceramic Tiles and Grout	Non-Friable	Good
75	Assistant Principal's Office Rest Room	Wall Texture Joint Compound and Sheetrock Mud	Friable	Good

**CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY**

SETUP BY: **Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/15/2024**

**LABORATORY CUSTODY**

RETRIEVED BY: **Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/15/2024**

RECEIVED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_

TRANSPORTED: **Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/15/2024**

ANALYZED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_

# BENAS ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES, INC.

ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

P. O. BOX 739

COPPELL, TEXAS 75019

6 of 18

PROJECT NO: BA-24-1700

PROJECT NAME Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy  
3838 Crown Shore Drive  
Dallas, Texas 75244

Sample Date:08/15/2024

2-Day Turn-Around Time

## ASBESTOS FIELD SAMPLE LOG

SPECIALISTS IN ASBESTOS, LEAD-BASED PAINT and PHASES I and II ENVIRONMENTAL REAL ESTATE ASSESSMENTS AND CONSULTING SERVICES

SAMPLE NO.	SAMPLE LOCATION	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	FRIABLE OR NON-FRIABLE	CONDITION
76	Science Laboratory Room 106 Near Front Entrance	Mastic Underneath Rubber Cove-Base	Non-Friable	Good
77	Hallway Outside Science Laboratory Room 106	Student Locker Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
78	Lobby Area and Storage Room	12" X 12" Floor Tiles and Mastic	Non-Friable	Good
79	Lobby Area and Storage Room, Center Section Above Ceiling	Spray-Applied Ceiling (SAC) Texture on Concrete Deck	Friable	Good
80	MDF Room @ Entrance Doorway	Carpet Glue/Mastic	Non-Friable	Good
81	Executive Office Next to MDF Room	Interior Window Glass Glazing	Non-Friable	Good
<b>82</b>	<b>Executive Office Back Room @ Cabinet Works</b>	<b>Cabinet Caulking</b>	<b>Non-Friable</b>	<b>Good</b>
83	Executive Office Conference Room Near Doorway Entrance	Wall Texture Joint Compound and Sheetrock Mud	Friable	Good
<b>84</b>	<b>Executive Office Room @ Window</b>	<b>Interior Window Caulking</b>	<b>Non-Friable</b>	<b>Good</b>
85	Executive Office Conference Room Behind Chair	Carpet Glue/Mastic	Non-Friable	Good
86	Executive Office Storage Room Across Girl's Rest Room	White Plaster Wall	Non-Friable	Good
<b>87</b>	<b>Class Room 103 @ Front Cabinet Works</b>	<b>Cabinet Caulking</b>	<b>Non-Friable</b>	<b>Good</b>
88	Class Room 102, Near South Wall	12" X 12" Floor Tiles and Mastic	Non-Friable	Good
<b>89</b>	<b>Auditorium @ Northwest Section</b>	<b>Dark-Brown 9" X 9" Floor Tiles and Black Mastic</b>	<b>Non-Friable</b>	<b>Good</b>
<b>90</b>	<b>Auditorium @ Center East Section</b>	<b>Dark-Brown 9" X 9" Floor Tiles and Black Mastic</b>	<b>Non-Friable</b>	<b>Good</b>

CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY

SETUP BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/15/2024

LABORATORY CUSTODY

RETRIEVED BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/15/2024

RECEIVED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_

TRANSPORTED: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/15/2024

ANALYZED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_

# BENAS ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES, INC.

ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

P. O. BOX 739

COPPELL, TEXAS 75019

7 of 18

**PROJECT NO:** BA-24-1700

**PROJECT NAME** Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy  
3838 Crown Shore Drive  
Dallas, Texas 75244

Sample Date:08/20/2024

2-Day Turn-Around Time

## ASBESTOS FIELD SAMPLE LOG

**SPECIALISTS IN ASBESTOS, LEAD-BASED PAINT and PHASES I and II ENVIRONMENTAL REAL ESTATE ASSESSMENTS AND CONSULTING SERVICES**

<b>SAMPLE NO.</b>	<b>SAMPLE LOCATION</b>	<b>MATERIAL DESCRIPTION</b>	<b>FRIABLE OR NON-FRIABLE</b>	<b>CONDITION</b>
91	Hallway Outside Class Room 114 Above Drop Ceiling Tiles	Spray-Applied Ceiling (SAC) Texture on Concrete Deck	Friable	Good
92	Inside Class Room 114 Southwest Section	Carpet Glue	Non-Friable	Good
93	Class Room 114 Southeast @ Window Glass Panes	Interior Window Glass Glazing	Non-Friable	Good
94	Class Room 114 Northeast @ Window Frame	Interior Window Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
95	Work Room 113 Extreme Northeast Corner	12" X 12" Floor Tiles and Mastic	Non-Friable	Good
96	Work Room 113 Center West Section	Wall Texture Joint Compound and Sheetrock Mud	Friable	Good
97	Work Room 113, Front Storage Room	Cabinet Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
98	Work Room 113 Side Storage Room	Electrical Panel Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
99	Work Room 113 Underneath Hand-Wash Basin	Black Sink Putty	Non-Friable	Good
100	Art Room 112 @ Front Section	Interior Concrete Masonry Units (CMU) and Mortar	Non-Friable	Good
101	Art Room Extreme Southeast Corner	Mastic Underneath Rubber Cove-Base	Non-Friable	Good
102	Class Room 113A Back Section	Spray-Applied Ceiling (SAC) Texture on Concrete Deck	Friable	Good
103	Hallway @ Double Doors Exit Near Art Room	Interior Door Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
104	Hallway Near Class Room 101 @ Student Lockers	Student Locker Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
105	Science Room 101 Center Back Wall	White Plaster Wall	Non-Friable	Good

**CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY**

SETUP BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/20/2024

LABORATORY CUSTODY

RETRIEVED BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/20/2024

RECEIVED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_

TRANSPORTED: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/20/2024

ANALYZED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_



# BENAS ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES, INC.

ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

P. O. BOX 739

COPPELL, TEXAS 75019

8 of 18

PROJECT NO: BA-24-1700

PROJECT NAME Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy  
3838 Crown Shore Drive  
Dallas, Texas 75244

Sample Date:08/20/2024

2-Day Turn-Around Time

## ASBESTOS FIELD SAMPLE LOG

SPECIALISTS IN ASBESTOS, LEAD-BASED PAINT and PHASES I and II ENVIRONMENTAL REAL ESTATE ASSESSMENTS AND CONSULTING SERVICES

SAMPLE NO.	SAMPLE LOCATION	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	FRIABLE OR NON-FRIABLE	CONDITION
106	Science Lab Room 101 Extreme South Side	White 12" X 12" Floor Tiles and Mastic	Non-Friable	Good
107	Generic Science Class Room @ Center Section	White 2' X 2' Drop Ceiling Tiles	Friable	Good
108	Generic Science Class Room 119 @ Back Wall	Black Counter-Top	Non-Friable	Good
<b>109</b>	<b>Executive Back Office Above Metal Cabinet Works</b>	<b>Wall Texture Joint Compound and Sheetrock Mud</b>	<b>Friable</b>	<b>Good</b>
110	Executive Office @ Front Lobby Section	Electrical Panel Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
111	Executive Back Office	Carpet Glue	Non-Friable	Good
<b>112</b>	<b>Main Office Closet Near Corridor</b>	<b>Dark-Brown 9" X 9" Floor Tiles and Black Mastic</b>	<b>Non-Friable</b>	<b>Good</b>
<b>113</b>	<b>Main Office Recreation Room @ Lights</b>	<b>Spray-Applied Ceiling (SAC) Texture on Concrete Deck</b>	<b>Friable</b>	<b>Good</b>
<b>114</b>	<b>Executive Office Near Reception</b>	<b>Cabinet Caulking</b>	<b>Non-Friable</b>	<b>Good</b>
115	Main Office @ Reception	White 2' X 2' Drop Ceiling Tiles	Friable	Good
116	Principal's Office Rest Room @ Corner Wall	Yellow Floor Ceramic Tiles and Grout	Non-Friable	Good
117	Main Office Storage Room	Plaster Ceiling	Non-Friable	Good
118	Girl's Rest Room @ Back Window Glass Pane	Interior Window Glass Glazing	Non-Friable	Good
119	Girl's Rest Room Near Hand-Wash Basin	Wall Ceramic Tiles and Grout	Non-Friable	Good
<b>120</b>	<b>Boy's Rest Room in Custodial Closet</b>	<b>Dark-Brown 9" X 9" Floor Tiles and Black Mastic</b>	<b>Non-Friable</b>	<b>Good</b>

CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY

SETUP BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/20/2024

LABORATORY CUSTODY

RETRIEVED BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/20/2024

RECEIVED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_

TRANSPORTED: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/20/2024

ANALYZED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_

# BENAS ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES, INC.

ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

P. O. BOX 739

COPPELL, TEXAS 75019

9 of 18

**PROJECT NO:** BA-24-1700

**PROJECT NAME** Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy  
3838 Crown Shore Drive  
Dallas, Texas 75244

Sample Date:08/20/2024

2-Day Turn-Around Time

## ASBESTOS FIELD SAMPLE LOG

SPECIALISTS IN ASBESTOS, LEAD-BASED PAINT and PHASES I and II ENVIRONMENTAL REAL ESTATE ASSESSMENTS AND CONSULTING SERVICES

<u>SAMPLE NO.</u>	<u>SAMPLE LOCATION</u>	<u>MATERIAL DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>FRIABLE OR NON-FRIABLE</u>	<u>CONDITION</u>
121	2nd Floor: Assistant Principal's Office Middle Right Wall	Cove-Base Ceramic Tiles and Grout	Non-Friable	Good
<b>122</b>	<b>2nd Floor: Class Room 201 @ Teacher's Corner Underneath Desk</b>	<b>Dark-Brown 9" X 9" Floor Tiles and Black Mastic</b>	<b>Non-Friable</b>	<b>Good</b>
123	2nd Floor: Landing Near Double-Doors Entrance	Beige Wall Ceramic Tiles and Grout	Non-Friable	Good
124	2nd Floor: Class Room 202 @ Entrance Door Frame	Interior Door Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
125	2nd Floor: Class Room 219 Extreme Northwest Corner	Window Sill Ceramic Tiles and Grout	Non-Friable	Good
126	2nd Floor: Class Room 203 Near Front Wall Chalk Board	White 2' X 2' Drop Ceiling Tiles	Friable	Good
<b>127</b>	<b>2nd Floor: Class Room 218 @ Back North Section</b>	<b>Interior Window Glass Glazing</b>	<b>Non-Friable</b>	<b>Good</b>
128	2nd Floor: Class Room 204 Extreme Northeast Corner	Plaster Wall	Non-Friable	Good
129	2nd Floor: Hallway @ Class Room 204 Entrance Doorway	A/C Return Grill Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
130	2nd Floor: Hallway @ Class Room 217 Entrance Doorway	Student Locker Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
<b>131</b>	<b>2nd Floor: Class Room 205 Middle Back Window @ Frame</b>	<b>Interior Window Caulking</b>	<b>Non-Friable</b>	<b>Good</b>
132	2nd Floor: Class Room 216 Back Wall Section	Cove-Base Ceramic Tiles and Grout	Non-Friable	Good
<b>133</b>	<b>2nd Floor: Class Room 206 Near North Wall</b>	<b>Dark-Brown 9" X 9" Floor Tiles and Black Mastic</b>	<b>Non-Friable</b>	<b>Good</b>
134	2nd Floor: Hallway Junction @ Green Column	Greenish Column Ceramic Tiles and Grout	Non-Friable	Good
135	2nd Floor: Hallway Junction @ Wall Demarcation	Building Demarcation Sealant	Non-Friable	Good

CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY

SETUP BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/20/2024

RETRIEVED BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/20/2024

TRANSPORTED: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/20/2024

LABORATORY CUSTODY

RECEIVED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_

ANALYZED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_

# BENAS ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES, INC.

ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

P. O. BOX 739

COPPELL, TEXAS 75019

10 of 18

PROJECT NO: BA-24-1700

PROJECT NAME Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy  
3838 Crown Shore Drive  
Dallas, Texas 75244

Sample Date:08/21/2024

2-Day Turn-Around Time

## ASBESTOS FIELD SAMPLE LOG

SPECIALISTS IN ASBESTOS, LEAD-BASED PAINT and PHASES I and II ENVIRONMENTAL REAL ESTATE ASSESSMENTS AND CONSULTING SERVICES

SAMPLE NO.	SAMPLE LOCATION	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	FRIABLE OR NON-FRIABLE	CONDITION
136	2nd Floor: Custodial Closet Near Stairs	Plaster Ceiling	Non-Friable	Good
137	2nd Floor: Hallway @ Water Fountain Near Girl's Rest Room	Greenish Floor Ceramic Tiles and Grout	Non-Friable	Good
138	2nd Floor: Class Room 208 @ Entrance Door Frame	Interior Door Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
139	2nd Floor: Girl's Rest Room Near Hand-Wash Basins	Patterned Wall Ceramic Tiles and Grout	Non-Friable	Good
140	2nd Floor: Class Room 209 @ Back Center Window Frame	Interior Window Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
141	2nd Floor: Hallway Near Class Room 207	Student Locker Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
<b>142</b>	<b>2nd Floor: Class Room 212 Near Front Entrance Doorway</b>	<b>Cabinet Caulking</b>	<b>Non-Friable</b>	<b>Good</b>
143	2nd Floor: Class Room 211 Back Wall @ Teacher's Corner	Cove-Base Ceramic Tiles and Grout	Non-Friable	Good
144	2nd Floor: Class Room 210 Front North Section @ Wall	Mastic Underneath Rubber Cove-Base	Non-Friable	Good
145	2nd Floor: Hallway Between Double Doors to 3rd Floor	Window Sill Ceramic Tiles and Grout	Non-Friable	Good
146	2nd Floor: Hallway @ Junction Near Building Demarcation	Black Mastic on Foam Insulation	Non-Friable	Good
147	2nd Floor: Class Room 214C Behind TV Stand	Wall Texture Joint Compound and Sheetrock Mud	Friable	Good
148	2nd Floor: Class Room 214B Center Section	2' X 2' Drop Ceiling Tiles	Friable	Good
<b>149</b>	<b>2nd Floor: Hallway Near Vestibule/Class Room 214A</b>	<b>Spray-Applied Ceiling (SAC) Texture on Concrete Deck</b>	<b>Friable</b>	<b>Good</b>
150	2nd Floor: Class Room Behind Vestibule/Class Room 214A	Plaster Wall	Non-Friable	Good

CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY

SETUP BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/21/2024

LABORATORY CUSTODY

RETRIEVED BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/21/2024

RECEIVED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_

TRANSPORTED: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/21/2024

ANALYZED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_

# BENAS ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES, INC.

ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

P. O. BOX 739

COPPELL, TEXAS 75019

11 of 18

PROJECT NO: BA-24-1700

PROJECT NAME Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy  
3838 Crown Shore Drive  
Dallas, Texas 75244

Sample Date:08/21/2024

2-Day Turn-Around Time

## ASBESTOS FIELD SAMPLE LOG

SPECIALISTS IN ASBESTOS, LEAD-BASED PAINT and PHASES I and II ENVIRONMENTAL REAL ESTATE ASSESSMENTS AND CONSULTING SERVICES

SAMPLE NO.	SAMPLE LOCATION	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	FRIABLE OR NON-FRIABLE	CONDITION
151	2nd Floor: Hallway Across Black Student Lockers	Interior Window Glass Glazing	Non-Friable	Good
152	2nd Floor: Library Room Extreme Northwest Corner	Carpet Glue	Non-Friable	Good
<b>153</b>	<b>2nd Floor: Library Room Extreme Southeast Corner</b>	<b>Cabinet Caulking</b>	<b>Non-Friable</b>	<b>Good</b>
154	2nd Floor: Vestibule 220A @ Back Wall Behind Drop Ceiling Tiles	Wall Texture Joint Compound and Sheetrock Mud	Friable	Good
<b>155</b>	<b>2nd Floor: Vestibule 220A Near Front Entrance Underneath Sink</b>	<b>Sink Putty</b>	<b>Non-Friable</b>	<b>Good</b>
<b>156</b>	<b>2nd Floor: Laboratory Class Room 215A Back Section</b>	<b>Spray-Applied Ceiling (SAC) Texture on Concrete Deck</b>	<b>Friable</b>	<b>Good</b>
157	2nd Floor: Laboratory Class Room 215B East Wall	White TSI Wrap and White Mastic	Non-Friable	Good
<b>158</b>	<b>2nd Floor: Laboratory Class Room 215B East Wall</b>	<b>Plaster Wall</b>	<b>Non-Friable</b>	<b>Good</b>
<b>159</b>	<b>2nd Floor: Hallway @ Double-Doors To Downstairs</b>	<b>Dark-Brown 9" X 9" Floor Tiles and Black Mastic</b>	<b>Non-Friable</b>	<b>Good</b>
160	2nd Floor: Hallway @ Student Lockers	Student Locker Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
161	2nd Floor: Hallway @ Double-Doors to Library Room	Interior Door Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
162	2nd Floor: Hallway @ Junction Near Building Demarcation	Black Mastic on Foam Insulation	Non-Friable	Good
163	2nd Floor: Hallway @ Junction Near Building Demarcation	Black Mastic on Foam Insulation	Non-Friable	Good
164	2nd Floor: Class Room Behind Vestibule/Class Room 214A	Wall Texture Joint Compound and Sheetrock Mud	Friable	Good
165	2nd Floor: Vestibule/Class Room 214A North Wall	Mastic Underneath Rubber Cove-Base	Non-Friable	Good

CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY

SETUP BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/21/2024

LABORATORY CUSTODY

RETRIEVED BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/21/2024

RECEIVED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_

TRANSPORTED: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/21/2024

ANALYZED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_

# BENAS ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES, INC.

ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

P. O. BOX 739

COPPELL, TEXAS 75019

12 of 18

PROJECT NO: BA-24-1700

PROJECT NAME Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy  
3838 Crown Shore Drive  
Dallas, Texas 75244

Sample Date:08/22/2024

2-Day Turn-Around Time

## ASBESTOS FIELD SAMPLE LOG

SPECIALISTS IN ASBESTOS, LEAD-BASED PAINT and PHASES I and II ENVIRONMENTAL REAL ESTATE ASSESSMENTS AND CONSULTING SERVICES

SAMPLE NO.	SAMPLE LOCATION	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	FRIABLE OR NON-FRIABLE	CONDITION
166	3rd Floor: Class Room 301 Extreme Southwest Corner	Dark Brown 9" X 9" Floor Tiles and Black Mastic	Non-Friable	Good
167	3rd Floor: Storage Room 320 Near Entrance Doorway	Plaster Wall	Non-Friable	Good
168	3rd Floor: Class Room 302, Center Section	Black Transition Door Mastic and Sealant	Non-Friable	Good
169	3rd Floor: Class Room 303 @ Doorway Entrance	White 2' X 2' Drop Ceiling Tiles	Friable	Good
170	3rd Floor: Assistant Principal's Office Near Rest Room	Carpet Glue	Non-Friable	Good
171	3rd Floor: Girl's Rest Room, Last Stall	Patterned Wall Ceramic Tiles and Grout	Non-Friable	Good
172	3rd Floor: Communion Class @ Wall Cabinet	Mastic Underneath Rubber Cove-Base	Non-Friable	Good
173	3rd Floor: Communion Class Center Window @ Glass Pane	Interior Window Glass Glazing	Non-Friable	Good
174	3rd Floor: Storage Room 317 Center Section	TSI White Wrap and White Mastic	Non-Friable	Good
175	3rd Floor: Class Room 316, Magnolia Room	Wall Texture Joint Compound and Sheetrock Mud	Friable	Good
176	3rd Floor: Class Room 304 Back Northwest Wall Section	Cabinet Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
177	3rd Floor: Class Room 304 Back Northwest Corner @ Window Frame	Interior Window Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
178	3rd Floor: Class Room 304 Front Entrance Door @ Frame	Interior Door Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
179	3rd Floor: Class Room 306 Front Wall Underneath Chalkboard	Cove-Base Ceramic Tiles and Grout	Non-Friable	Good
180	3rd Floor: Office/IDF Room 314A @ Door Entrance	Under-Layer Brown 9" X 9" Floor Tiles and Black Mastic	Non-Friable	Good

CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY

SETUP BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/22/2024

LABORATORY CUSTODY

RETRIEVED BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/22/2024

RECEIVED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_

TRANSPORTED: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/22/2024

ANALYZED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_

# BENAS ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES, INC.

ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

P. O. BOX 739

COPPELL, TEXAS 75019

13 of 18

**PROJECT NO:** BA-24-1700

**PROJECT NAME** Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy  
3838 Crown Shore Drive  
Dallas, Texas 75244

Sample Date:08/22/2024

2-Day Turn-Around Time

## ASBESTOS FIELD SAMPLE LOG

SPECIALISTS IN ASBESTOS, LEAD-BASED PAINT and PHASES I and II ENVIRONMENTAL REAL ESTATE ASSESSMENTS AND CONSULTING SERVICES

<u>SAMPLE NO.</u>	<u>SAMPLE LOCATION</u>	<u>MATERIAL DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>FRIABLE OR NON-FRIABLE</u>	<u>CONDITION</u>
181	3rd Floor: Office/IDF Room 314A Above Ceiling	Spray-Applied Ceiling Texture (SAC) on Concrete Deck	Friable	Good
182	3rd Floor: Class Room 307 Back Wall @ Window Sill	Window Sill Ceramic Tiles and Grout	Non-Friable	Good
183	3rd Floor: Custodial Closet 323 Back Ceiling	Plaster Ceiling	Non-Friable	Good
184	3rd Floor: Class Room 308 South Side	Dark Brown 9" X 9" Floor Tiles and Black Mastic	Non-Friable	Good
185	3rd Floor: Class Room 309 @ Doorway Entrance	Interior Door Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
186	3rd Floor: Communion Class	Wall Texture Joint Compound and Sheetrock Mud	Friable	Good
187	3rd Floor: Class Room 311B -Elm Fork	White 2' X 2' Drop Ceiling Tiles	Friable	Good
188	3rd Floor: Storage Room 312 A, Middle Section	Carpet Glue	Non-Friable	Good
189	3rd Floor: Communion Class Near Class Room 312C	Mastic Underneath Rubber Cove-Base	Non-Friable	Good
190	3rd Floor: Class Room 310 Back Northwest Corner @ Cabinets	Cabinet Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
191	3rd Floor: Lobby Area Near Double-Doors To Downstairs	Interior Window Glass Glazing	Non-Friable	Good
192	3rd Floor: Assistant Principal's Office Rest Room	Ceiling Texture Joint Compound and Sheetrock Mud	Friable	Good
193	Crawl Space Underneath All Buildings	Thermal Systems Insulation (TSI) on Elbows	Friable/Non-Friab	Good
194	Crawl Space Underneath All Buildings	Thermal Systems Insulation (TSI) on T-Fittings	Friable/Non-Friab	Good
195	Crawl Space Underneath All Buildings	Thermal Systems Insulation (TSI) on Pipe-Runs	Friable/Non-Friab	Good

CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY

SETUP BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/22/2024

LABORATORY CUSTODY

RETRIEVED BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/22/2024

RECEIVED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_

TRANSPORTED: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/22/2024

ANALYZED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_



# BENAS ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES, INC.

ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

P. O. BOX 739

COPPELL, TEXAS 75019

15 of 18

PROJECT NO: BA-24-1700

PROJECT NAME Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy  
3838 Crown Shore Drive  
Dallas, Texas 75244

Sample Date:08/23/2024

2-Day Turn-Around Time

## ASBESTOS FIELD SAMPLE LOG

SPECIALISTS IN ASBESTOS, LEAD-BASED PAINT and PHASES I and II ENVIRONMENTAL REAL ESTATE ASSESSMENTS AND CONSULTING SERVICES

<u>SAMPLE NO.</u>	<u>SAMPLE LOCATION</u>	<u>MATERIAL DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>FRIABLE OR NON-FRIABLE</u>	<u>CONDITION</u>
201	Top Roofs of Buildings	HVAV Base Black Mastic Sealant	Non-Friable	Good
202	Top Roofs of Buildings	Exhaust Fan-Base Black Sealant	Non-Friable	Good
203	Top Roofs of Buildings	Roof Core Profile Sample and Black Mastic	Non-Friable	Good
204	Top Roofs of Buildings	Roof Ridge Black Mastic Sealant	Non-Friable	Good
205	Building Exterior on Roof	Building Metal Edge-Sealant	Non-Friable	Good
206	Building Exterior on Roof	Building Metal Edge-Sealant	Non-Friable	Good
207	Top Roofs of Buildings	Drainage Ditch Black Mastic Sealant	Non-Friable	Good
208	Top Roofs of Buildings	Roof Core Profile Sample and Black Mastic	Non-Friable	Good
<b>209</b>	<b>Top Roofs of Buildings</b>	<b>Exterior Window Caulking</b>	<b>Non-Friable</b>	<b>Good</b>
<b>210</b>	<b>Top Roofs of Buildings</b>	<b>Exterior Window Glass Glazing</b>	<b>Non-Friable</b>	<b>Good</b>
211	Top Roofs of Buildings	Roof Core Profile Sample and Black Mastic	Non-Friable	Good
212	Top Roofs of Buildings	Exhaust Fan-Base Black Sealant	Non-Friable	Good
213	Top Roofs of Buildings	HVAV Base Black Mastic Sealant	Non-Friable	Good
214	Top Roofs of Buildings	Roof Ridge Black Mastic Sealant	Non-Friable	Good
215	Building Exterior on Roof	Exterior Brown Brick and Mortar	Non-Friable	Good

CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY

SETUP BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/23/2024

LABORATORY CUSTODY

RETRIEVED BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/23/2024

RECEIVED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_

TRANSPORTED: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/23/2024

ANALYZED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_



# BENAS ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES, INC.

ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

P. O. BOX 739

COPPELL, TEXAS 75019

16 of 18

PROJECT NO: BA-24-1700

PROJECT NAME Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy  
3838 Crown Shore Drive  
Dallas, Texas 75244

Sample Date:08/23/2024

2-Day Turn-Around Time

## ASBESTOS FIELD SAMPLE LOG

SPECIALISTS IN ASBESTOS, LEAD-BASED PAINT and PHASES I and II ENVIRONMENTAL REAL ESTATE ASSESSMENTS AND CONSULTING SERVICES

<u>SAMPLE NO.</u>	<u>SAMPLE LOCATION</u>	<u>MATERIAL DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>FRIABLE OR NON-FRIABLE</u>	<u>CONDITION</u>
216	Building Exterior on Roof	Exterior Window Glass Glazing	Non-Friable	Good
217	Building Exterior on Roof	Exterior Brown Brick and Mortar	Non-Friable	Good
218	Building Exterior on Roof	Exterior Window Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
219	Top Roofs of Buildings	Drainage Ditch Black Mastic Sealant	Non-Friable	Good
220	Top Roofs of Buildings	Roof Core Profile Sample and Black Mastic	Non-Friable	Good
221	Building Exterior	Exterior Window Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
222	Building Exterior	Exterior Brown Brick and Mortar	Non-Friable	Good
223	Building Exterior	Exterior Brown Brick and Mortar	Non-Friable	Good
224	Building Exterior	Exterior Brown Brick and Mortar	Non-Friable	Good
225	Building Exterior	Exterior Brown Brick and Mortar	Non-Friable	Good
226	Building Exterior	Exterior Window Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
227	Building Exterior	Exterior Window Glass Glazing	Non-Friable	Good
228	Building Exterior	Exterior Door Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
229	Building Exterior	Exterior Door Caulking	Non-Friable	Good
230	Building Exterior	Exterior Door Caulking	Non-Friable	Good

CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY

SETUP BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/23/2024

LABORATORY CUSTODY

RETRIEVED BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/23/2024

RECEIVED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_

TRANSPORTED: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/23/2024

ANALYZED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_



# BENAS ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES, INC.

ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTANTS

P. O. BOX 739

COPPELL, TEXAS 75019

18 of 18

PROJECT NO: BA-24-1700

PROJECT NAME Thomas C. Marsh Preparatory Academy

3838 Crown Shore Drive

Dallas, Texas 75244

Sample Date:09/20/2024

24-Hour Turn-Around Time

## ASBESTOS FIELD SAMPLE LOG

SPECIALISTS IN ASBESTOS, LEAD-BASED PAINT and PHASES I and II ENVIRONMENTAL REAL ESTATE ASSESSMENTS AND CONSULTING SERVICES

<u>SAMPLE NO.</u>	<u>SAMPLE LOCATION</u>	<u>MATERIAL DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>FRIABLE OR NON-FRIABLE</u>	<u>CONDITION</u>
234	Building Exterior, Front Near Pincipal's Office Behind Downspouts	Building Joint Sealant	Non-Friable	Good
235	Building Exterior, West End Near Double Doors	Concrete Joint Sealer	Non-Friable	Good
236	Building Exterior, Back Section @ Scieance Laboratory Rooms	Building Joint Sealant	Non-Friable	Good
237	Building Exterior, Front of Building at Middle Section	Building Joint Sealant	Non-Friable	Good
238	Building Exterior, Outside Chiller Room @ Center Section	Foundation Concrete Sealer	Non-Friable	Good
239	Building Exterior	Concrete Joint Sealer	Non-Friable	Good
240	Building Exterior	Concrete Joint Sealer	Non-Friable	Good
241	Building Exterior	Concrete Joint Sealer	Non-Friable	Good

CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY CHAIN-OF-CUSTODY

SETUP BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/23/2024

LABORATORY CUSTODY

RETRIEVED BY: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/23/2024

RECEIVED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_

TRANSPORTED: Signature: Ephraim N. Okotcha "EO" DATE/TIME: 08/23/2024

ANALYZED BY: \_\_\_\_\_ DATE/TIME: \_\_\_\_\_



1. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **NON-ACM 12" X12"** FLOOR TILES AND MASTIC LOCATED THROUGHOUT INTERIOR FLOOR SPACES IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



2. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM CAULKING** LOCATED ON INTERIOR WINDOW FRAMES THROUGHOUT THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



3. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM BLACK TRANSITION DOOR MASTIC AND SEALANT** LOCATED AT DOOR ENTRANCES IN VARIOUS AREAS IN THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



4. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM DARK BROWN 9" X 9" FLOOR TILES AND BLACK MASTIC** LOCATED IN VARIOUS AREAS THROUGHOUT INTERIOR FLOORS IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



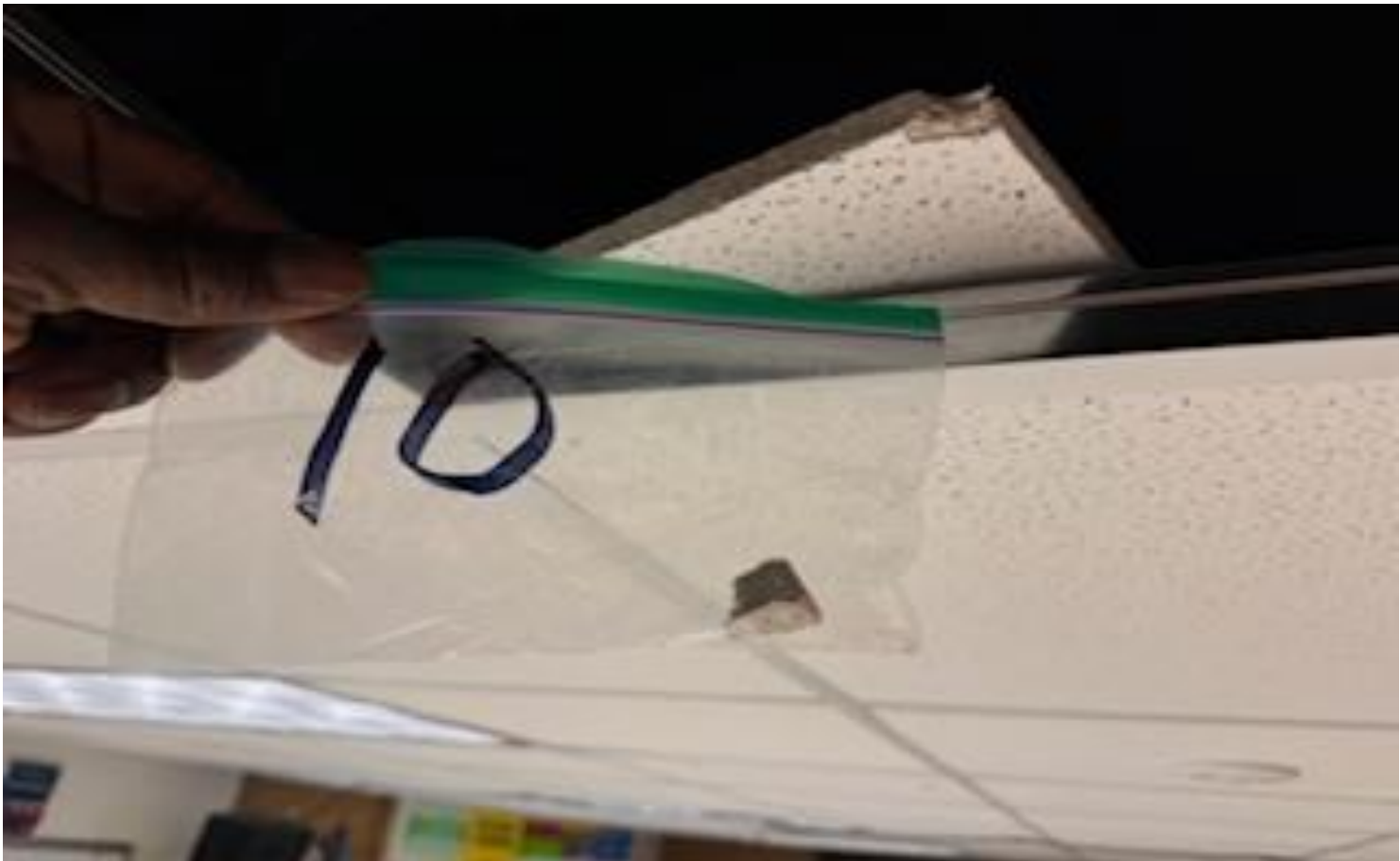
5. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM RETURN AIR-GRILL CAULKING LOCATED AT BACK ENTRANCE TO THE AUDITORIUM IN A BUILDING AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



6. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM INTERIOR BRICK AND MORTAR LOCATED IN VARIOUS AREAS THROUGHOUT THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



7. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM PLASTER CEILING LOCATED THROUGHOUT INTERIOR CEILING SURFACES IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



8. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM WHITE 2' X 2' DROP CEILING TILES LOCATED THROUGHOUT INTERIOR CEILING SURFACES IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



9. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM GREENISH WALL CERAMIC TILES AND GROUT LOCATED ON VARIOUS INTERIOR WALL SURFACES THROUGHOUT THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



10. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM PLASTER WALL LOCATED THROUGHOUT INTERIOR WALL SURFACES IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY

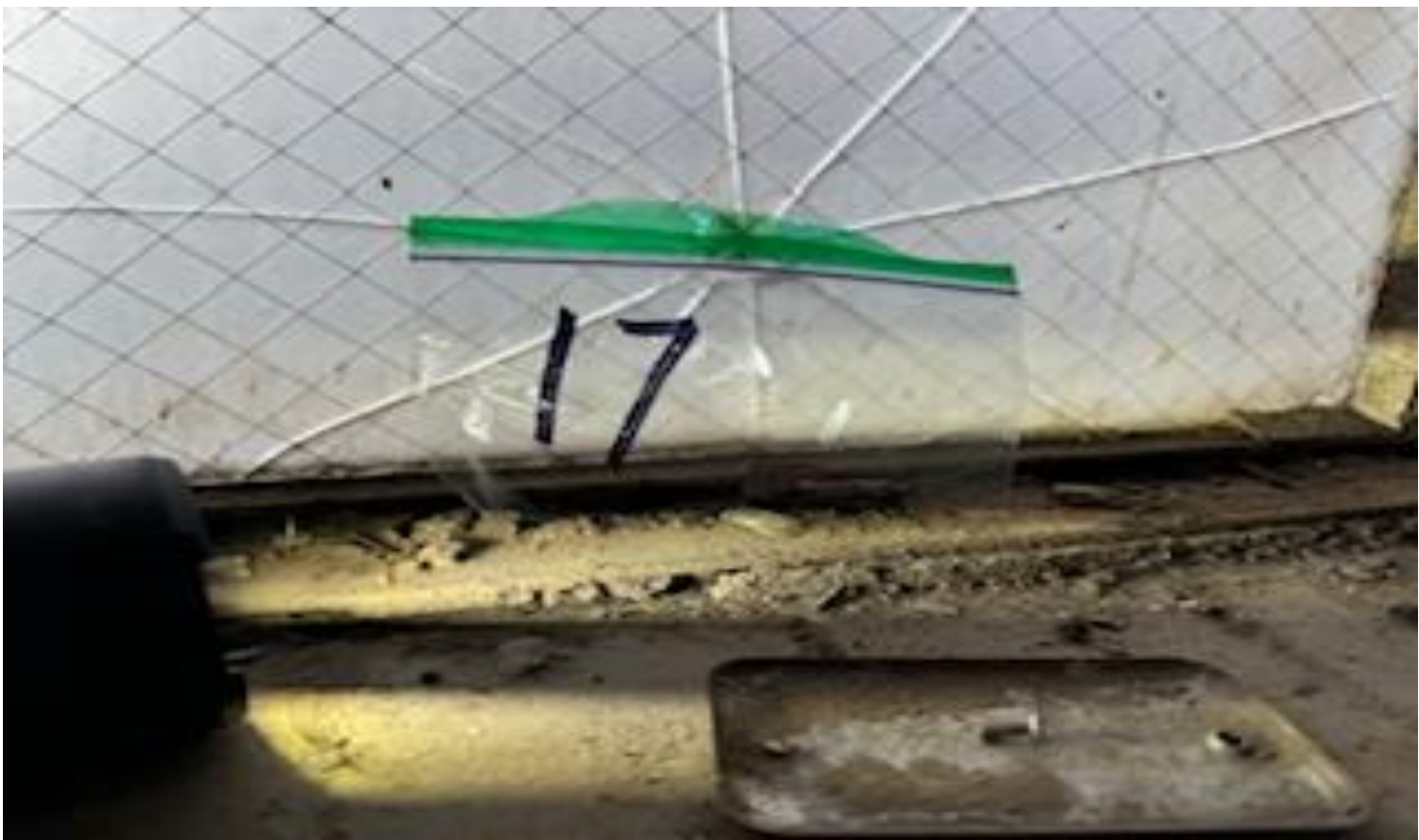




11. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **NON-ACM PATTERNED WALL CERAMIC TILES AND GROUT** LOCATED IN VARIOUS WET AREAS THROUGHOUT THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



12. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM WINDOW GLASS PANES GLAZING** LOCATED THROUGHOUT INTERIOR WINDOW SURFACES IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



13. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF ACM WINDOW CAULKING LOCATED THROUGHOUT INTERIOR WINDOW FRAMES IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



14. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM GASKET INSULATION LOCATED IN THE BASEMENT BOILER/SPRINKLER ROOM IN A BUILDING AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



15. VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **NON-ACM GASKET INSULATION** LOCATED IN THE **BASEMENT BOILER/SPRINKLER ROOM** IN A BUILDING AT **THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY**



16. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM DOOR CAULKING** LOCATED THROUGHOUT INTERIOR DOOR FRAMES IN BUILDINGS AT **THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY**



17. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS (CMU) AND MORTAR LOCATED THROUGHOUT INTERIOR WALL SURFACES IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



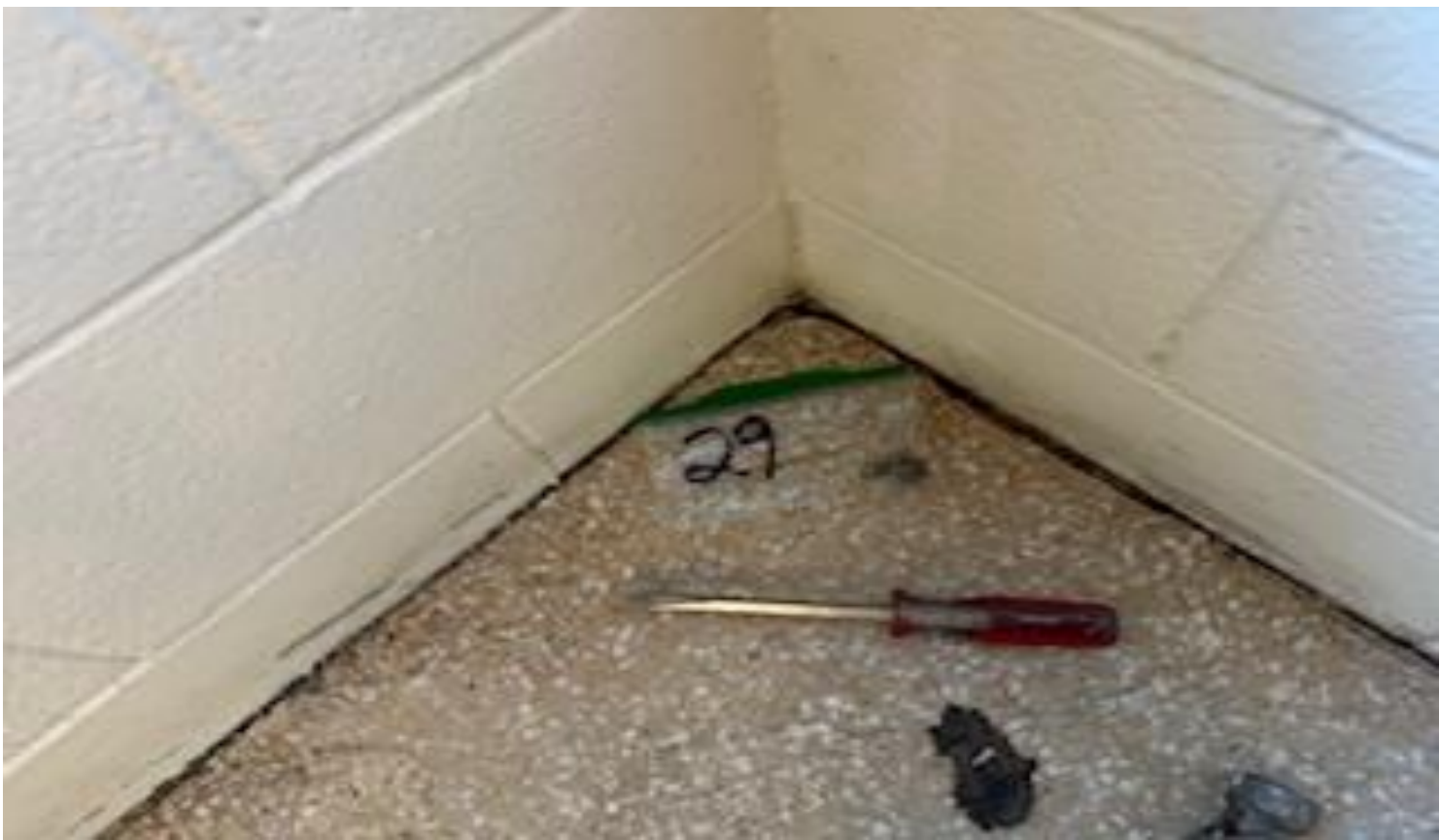
18. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM CMU AND MORTAR JOINT SEALANT LOCATED THROUGHOUT INTERIOR WALL SURFACES IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



19. VIEW OF REPRESENTATION (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM UNDER-LAYER FLOOR FLOAT LOCATED THROUGHOUT INTERIOR HALLWAY FLOORS IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



20. VIEW OF REPRESENTATION (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM TERRAZZO FLOORING LOCATED IN VARIOUS WET SURFACES THROUGHOUT THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



21. VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATION (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **NON-ACM TERRAZZO FLOORING** LOCATED IN **VARIOUS WET SURFACES THROUGHOUT THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY**



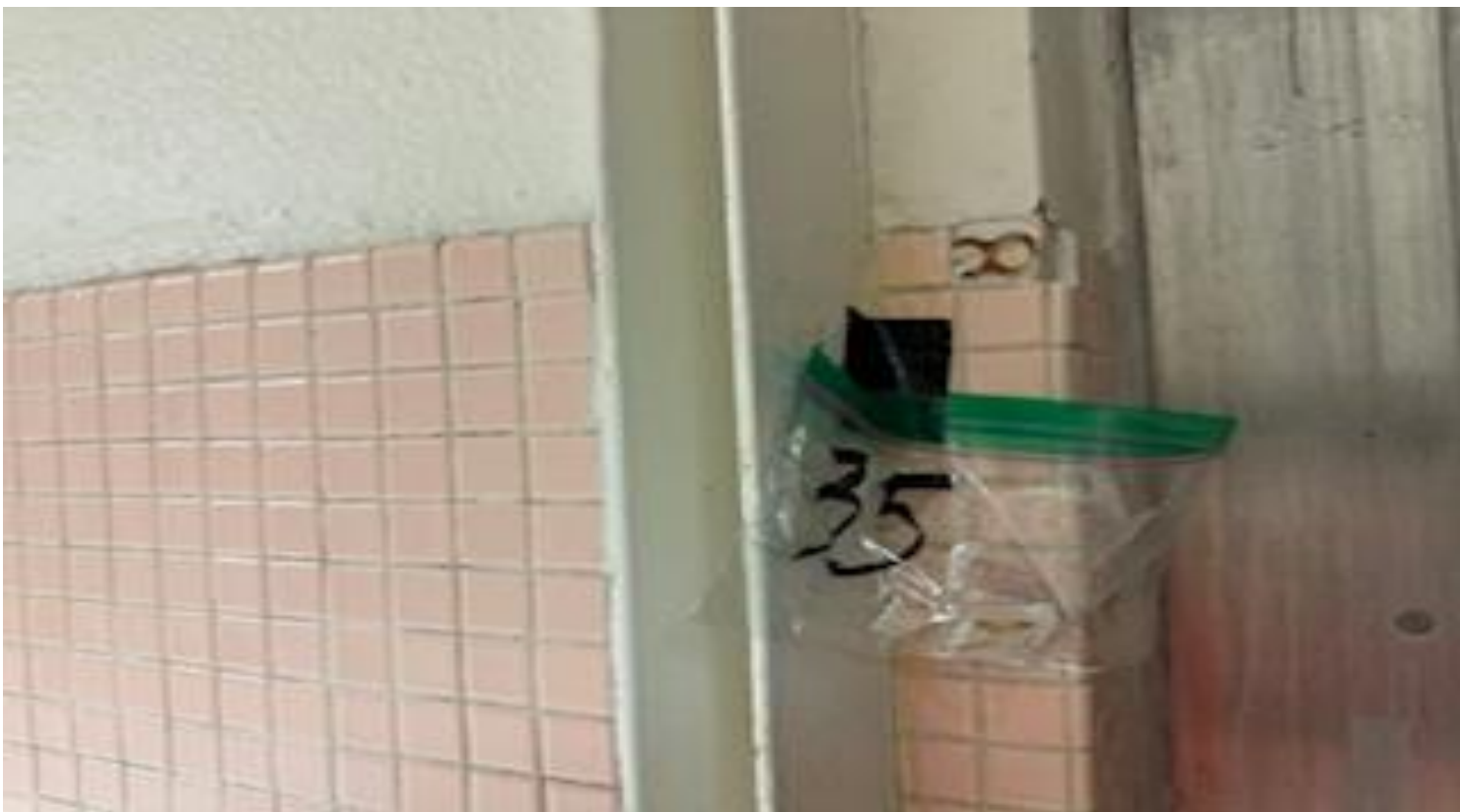
22. VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM WINDOW CAULKING** LOCATED **THROUGHOUT INTERIOR WINDOW FRAMES IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY**



23. VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **NON-ACM 12" X12" FLOOR TILES AND MASTIC** LOCATED THROUGHOUT INTERIOR FLOOR SPACES IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



24. VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM BLACK TRANSITION DOOR MASTIC AND SEALANT** LOCATED AT DOOR ENTRANCES IN VARIOUS AREAS IN THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



25. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM PINKISH WALL CERAMIC TILES AND GROUT LOCATED ON VARIOUS INTERIOR WALL SURFACES THROUGHOUT THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



26. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM BUILDING DEMARCATION SEALANT LOCATED ON VARIOUS INTERIOR WALL SURFACES THROUGHOUT THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY





27. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **NON-ACM SHOWER-BASE CERAMIC TILES AND GROUT** LOCATED IN THE GIRL'S LOCKER ROOM IN A BUILDING AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



28. VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM DOOR CAULKING** LOCATED THROUGHOUT INTERIOR DOOR FRAMES IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



29. VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **NON-ACM INTERIOR BRICK AND MORTAR** LOCATED IN VARIOUS AREAS THROUGHOUT THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



30. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM WOOD COVE-BASE CAULKING AND SEALANT** LOCATED IN BASKET BALL COURTS AND ELSEWHERE IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



31. VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **NON-ACM GREENISH COVE-BASE CERAMIC TILES AND GROUT** LOCATED THROUGHOUT THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



32. VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM INTERIOR WINDOW GLASS PANES CAULKING** LOCATED THROUGHOUT THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



33. VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM BUILDING DEMARCATION SEALANT LOCATED ON VARIOUS INTERIOR WALL SURFACES THROUGHOUT THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



34. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM TROWELLED-ON TEXTURE ON CEILING PLASTER LATH LOCATED ON VARIOUS CEILING SURFACES IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



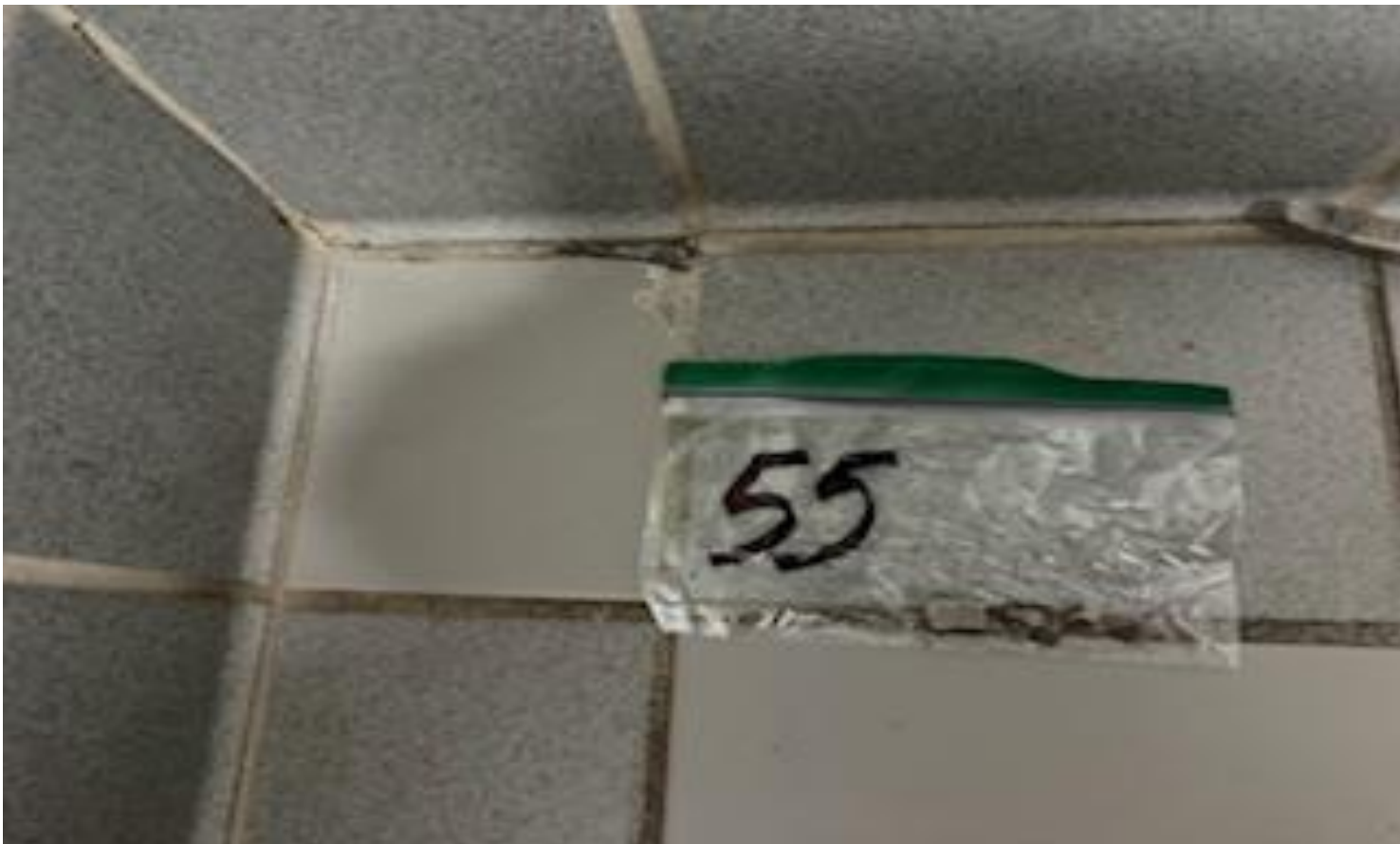
35. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM THERMAL SYSTEMS INSULATION (TSI)** ON T-FITTINGS LOCATED IN SOME AREAS IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



36. VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM THERMAL SYSTEMS INSULATION (TSI)** ON PIPE-RUNS LOCATED IN SOME AREAS IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



37. VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF ACM THERMAL SYSTEMS INSULATION (TSI) ON ELBOWS LOCATED IN SOME AREAS IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



38. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM FLOOR CERAMIC TILES AND GROUT LOCATED IN VARIOUS WET AREAS THROUGHOUT THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



39. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM BLACK LABORATORY COUNTER-TOPS LOCATED IN SCIENCE LABORATORY ROOMS THROUGHOUT THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



40. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM STUDENT LOCKERS CAULKING LOCATED THROUGHOUT THE HALLWAYS IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



41. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM BLACK SINK PUTTY LOCATED UNDERNEATH VARIOUS HAND-WASH BASINS THROUGHOUT THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



42. VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM PLASTER WALL LOCATED THROUGHOUT INTERIOR WALL SURFACES IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY





43. VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **NON-ACM PLASTER CEILING** LOCATED THROUGHOUT INTERIOR CEILING SURFACES IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



44. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM THERMAL BLACK MASTIC ON METAL DUCT WORK** LOCATED IN THE ELECTRICAL ROOM AND CRAWL SPACE UNDERNEATH BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



45. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM MASTIC UNDERNEATH RUBBER COVE-BASE LOCATED ON INTERIOR BOTTOM WALLS THROUGHOUT THE BUILDING AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



46. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM CARPET GLUE LOCATED IN VARIOUS EXECUTIVE OFFICE AND ELSEWHERE IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



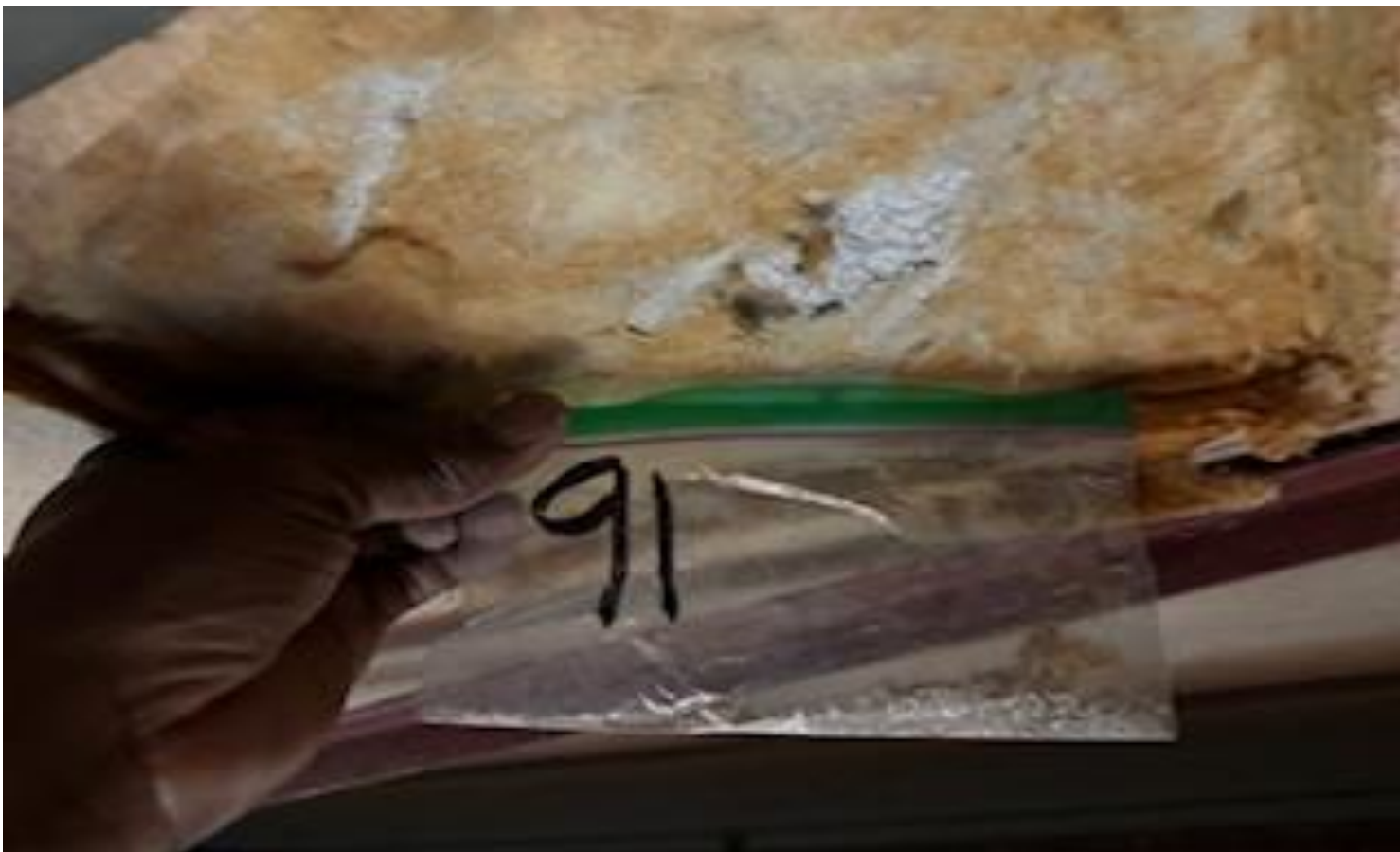
47 VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF ACM CAULKING ON CABINET WORKS LOCATED IN CLASS ROOMS AND ELSEWHERE THROUGHOUT THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



48 VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF ACM CAULKING ON CABINET WORKS LOCATED IN CLASS ROOMS AND ELSEWHERE THROUGHOUT THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



49. VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM DARK BROWN 9" X 9" FLOOR TILES AND BLACK MASTIC** LOCATED IN VARIOUS AREAS THROUGHOUT INTERIOR FLOORS IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



50. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM SPRAY-APPLIED CEILING (SAC) TEXTURE** LOCATED ON INTERIOR CEILING SURFACES THROUGHOUT THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



51 VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS (CMU) AND MORTAR LOCATED THROUGHOUT INTERIOR WALL SURFACES IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



52 VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM STUDENT LOCKERS CAULKING LOCATED THROUGHOUT THE HALLWAYS IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



53 VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM WALL TEXTURE JOINT COMPOUND AND SHEETROCK MUD** LOCATED IN THE EXECUTIVE SUITE 118 IN A BUILDING AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



54 VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM SPRAY-APPLIED CEILING (SAC) TEXTURE** LOCATED ON INTERIOR CEILING SURFACES THROUGHOUT THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



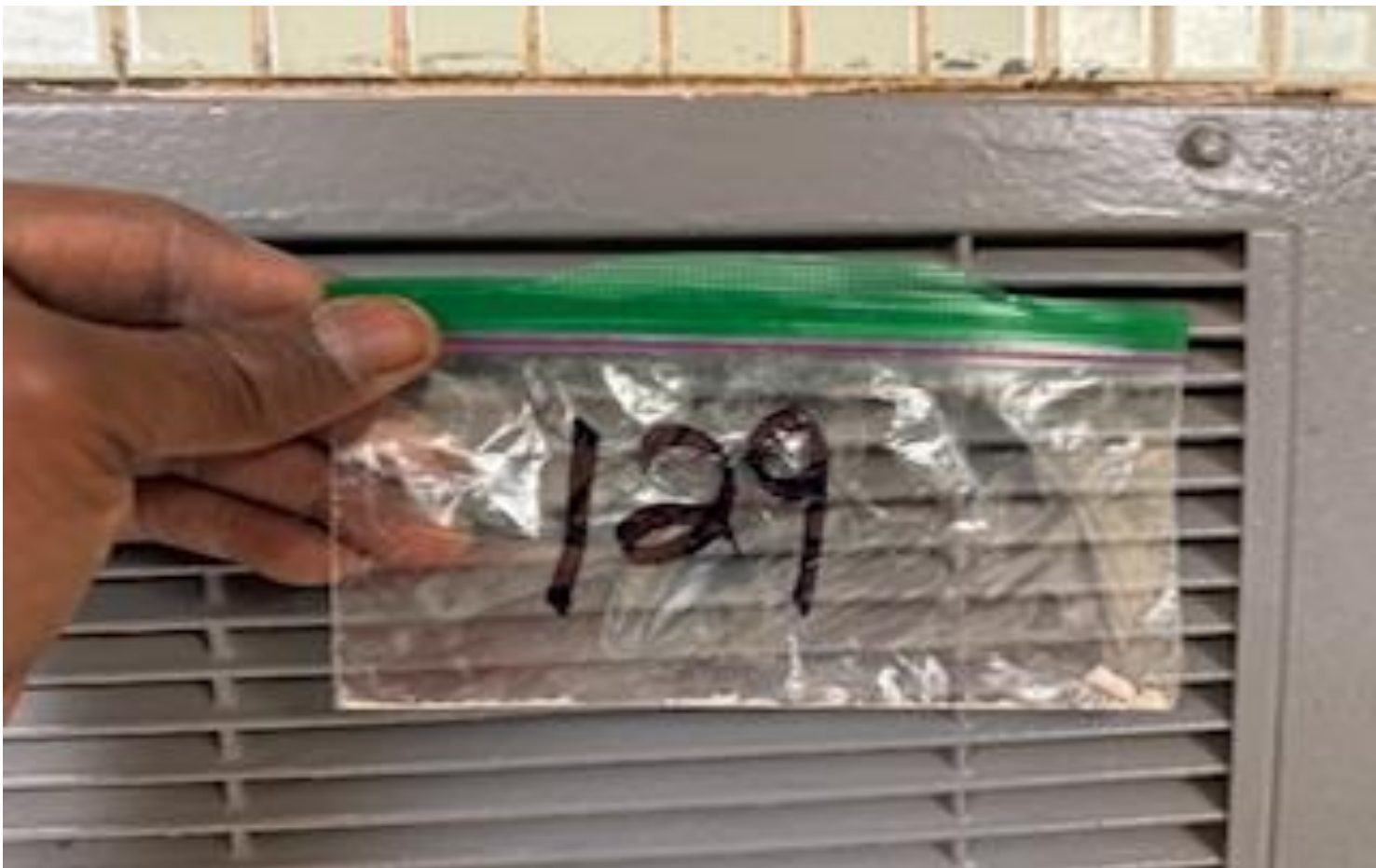
55. VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM 2 X 2' DROP CEILING TILES LOCATED THROUGHOUT INTERIOR CEILING SURFACES IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



56. VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM COVE-BASE CERAMIC TILES AND GROUT LOCATED THROUGHOUT THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



57. VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM DARK BROWN 9" X 9" FLOOR TILES AND BLACK MASTIC** LOCATED THROUGHOUT INTERIOR 2<sup>ND</sup> FLOOR SURFACES IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



58. VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **NON-ACM RETURN AIR-GRILL CAULKING** LOCATED AT BACK ENTRANCE TO THE AUDITORIUM IN A BUILDING AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY





59. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM INTERIOR WINDOW CAULKING** LOCATED THROUGHOUT THE INTERIOR 2<sup>ND</sup> FLOOR WALL SURFACES IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



60. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **NON-ACM GREEN COLUMN WALL CERAMIC TILES AND GROUT** LOCATED THROUGHOUT THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



61. VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM CABINET WORKS CAULKING** LOCATED IN CLASS ROOMS AND OTHER FUNCTIONAL SPACES ON THE 2<sup>ND</sup> FLOOR IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



62. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **NON-ACM WINDOW SILL CERAMIC TILES AND GROUT** LOCATED THROUGHOUT THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



63. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM BLACK MASTIC ON FOAM INSULATION LOCATED ABOVE CEILING ON THE 2<sup>ND</sup> FLOOR IN A BUILDING AT THE THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



64. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM WALL TEXTURE JOINT COMPOUND AND SHEETROCK MUD LOCATED IN SEVERAL AREAS THROUGHOUT THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



65 VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM SPRAY-APPLIED CEILING (SAC) TEXTURE** LOCATED ON INTERIOR 2<sup>ND</sup> FLOOR CEILING SURFACES IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



66 VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM WHITE SINK PUTTY** LOCATED IN THE VESTIBULE ON THE 2<sup>ND</sup> FLOOR IN A BUILDING AT THE THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



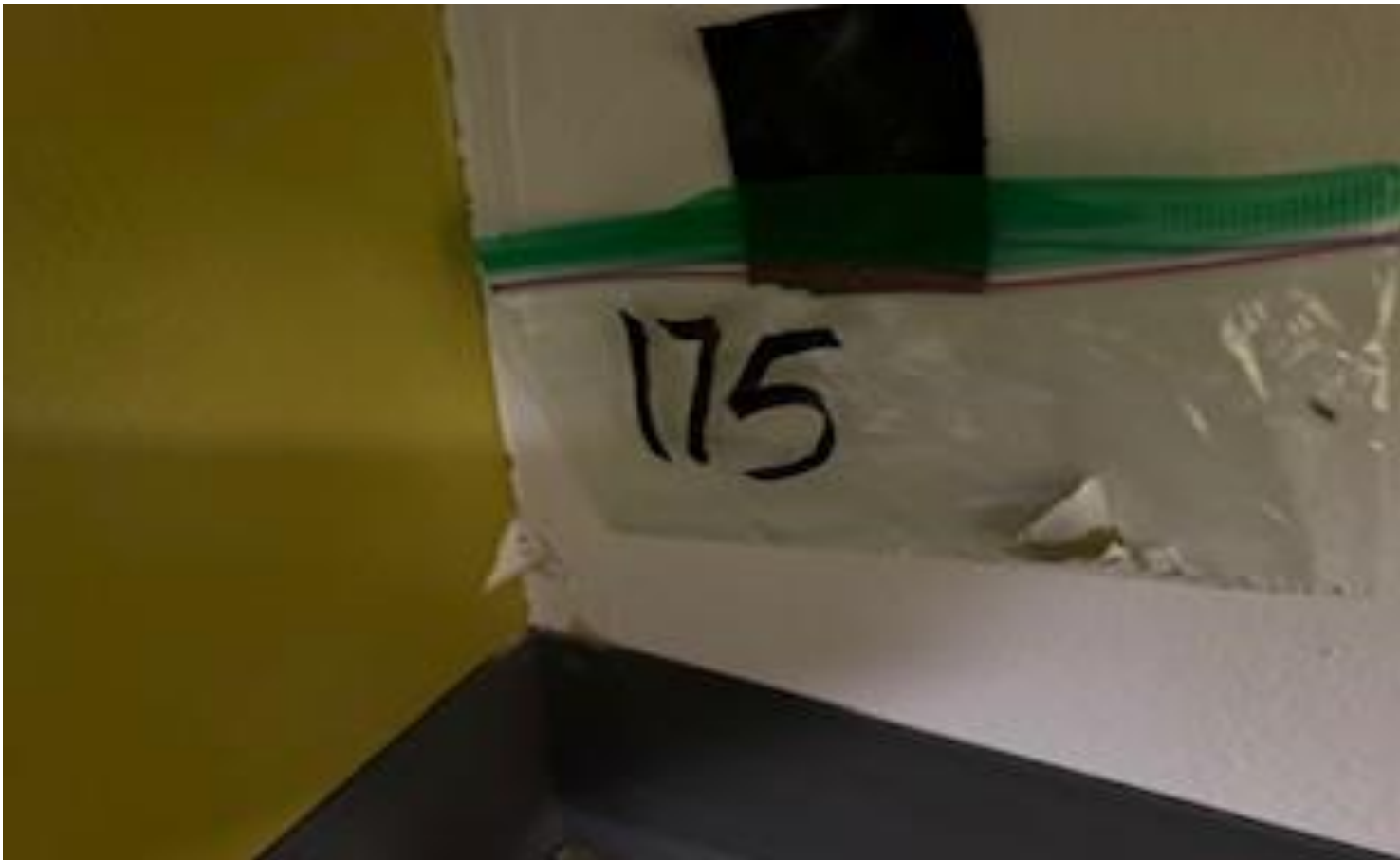
67. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM SAC-CONTAMINATED PLASTER WALL** LOCATED IN CLASS ROOM 215B ON THE 2<sup>ND</sup> FLOOR IN A BUILDING AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



68. VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM DARK BROWN 9" X 9" FLOOR TILES AND BLACK MASTIC** LOCATED CLASS ROOMS ON THE 3<sup>RD</sup> FLOOR SURFACES IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



69 VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) PHOTOGRAPHS OF NON-ACM TSI WHITE WRAP AND WHITE MASTIC LOCATED IN STORAGE ROOMS ON THE 3<sup>RD</sup> FLOOR IN BUILDINGS AT THE THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



70 VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM WALL TEXTURE JOINT COMPOUND AND SHEETROCK MUD LOCATED ON THE 3<sup>RD</sup> FLOOR IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



71 VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM INTERIOR WINDOW CAULKING** LOCATED THROUGHOUT THE INTERIOR 3<sup>RD</sup> FLOOR WALL SURFACES IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



72 VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM UNDER-LAYER 9" X 9" FLOOR TILES AND BLACK MASTIC** LOCATED CLASS ROOMS ON THE 3<sup>RD</sup> FLOOR SURFACES IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



73 VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM SPRAY-APPLIED CEILING (SAC) TEXTURE** LOCATED ON INTERIOR 3<sup>RD</sup> FLOOR CEILING IN BUILDING AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



74. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM CABINET WORKS CAULKING** LOCATED THROUGHOUT CLASS ROOMS ON THE 3<sup>RD</sup> FLOOR WALL SURFACES IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY





75. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **NON-ACM CEILING TEXTURE JOINT COMPOUND AND SHEETROCK MUD** LOCATED ON CEILING SURFACES ON THE 3<sup>RD</sup> FLOOR IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



76. VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM THERMAL SYSTEMS INSULATION (TSI) ON T-FITTINGS** LOCATED IN THE CRAWL SPACE UNDERNEATH ALL BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



77. VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM THERMAL SYSTEMS INSULATION (TSI)** ON PIPE-RUNS LOCATED IN THE CRAWL SPACE UNDERNEATH ALL BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



78. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM THERMAL WALL INSULATION** LOCATED ON PERIMETER WALLS IN THE CRAWL SPACE UNDERNEATH ALL BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



79. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM HVAC BASE MASTIC SEALANT LOCATED THROUGHOUT TOP ROOFS OF THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



80. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF NON-ACM ROOF CORE PROFILE SAMPLE LOCATED THROUGHOUT TOP ROOFS OF THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



81. VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **NON-ACM ROOF CORE PROFILE SAMPLE** LOCATED THROUGHOUT TOP ROOFS OF THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



82. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM EXTERIOR WINDOW CAULKING** LOCATED THROUGHOUT THE TOP ROOFS OF BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



83. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **NON-ACM ROOF RIDGE BLACK MASTIC SEALANT** LOCATED THROUGHOUT TOP ROOFS OF THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



84. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM EXTERIOR WINDOW CAULKING** LOCATED ON EXTERIOR WINDOW FRAMES THROUGHOUT THE BUILDING AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



85. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM 1' X 1' STOCK-ON CEILING TILES AND DOT MASTIC** LOCATED IN SOME AREAS IN BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



86. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM EXTERIOR BUILDING SEALANT** LOCATED AT EXTERIOR BUILDING PENETRATIONS THROUGHOUT THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



87. VIEW OF REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **NON-ACM EXTERIOR CONCRETE CAULKING** LOCATED AT EXTERIOR BUILDING PENETRATIONS THROUGHOUT THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



86. VIEW OF MORE REPRESENTATIVE (TYPICAL) SAMPLE OF **ACM EXTERIOR BUILDING SEALANT** LOCATED AT EXTERIOR BUILDING PENETRATIONS THROUGHOUT THE BUILDINGS AT THOMAS C. MARSH PREPARATORY ACADEMY



Texas Department of State Health Services

BENAS ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES INCORPORATED

*is certified to perform as an*

Asbestos Consultant Agency

*in the State of Texas and is hereby governed by the rights, privileges and responsibilities set forth in Texas Occupations Code, Chapter 1954 and Title 12, Texas Administrative Code, Chapter 295 relating to Texas Asbestos Health Protection, as long as this license is not suspended or revoked.*



*License Number: 100173*

*Expiration Date: 05/10/2022*

*Control Number: 97292*

*John Hellerstedt*  
**John Hellerstedt, M.D.,  
Commissioner of Health**

*(Void After Expiration Date)*

VOID IF ALTERED NON-TRANSFERABLE

SEE BACK





Texas Department of State Health Services

BENAS ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES INCORPORATED

*is certified to perform as an*

Asbestos Laboratory

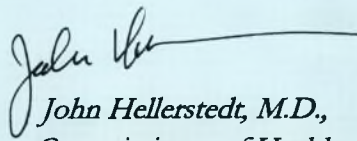
PCM

*in the State of Texas and is hereby governed by the rights, privileges and responsibilities set forth in Texas Occupations Code, Chapter 1954 and Title 12, Texas Administrative Code, Chapter 295 relating to Texas Asbestos Health Protection, as long as this license is not suspended or revoked.*

*License Number: 300148*

*Expiration Date: 06/13/2023*

*Control Number: 96544*

  
John Hellerstedt, M.D.,  
Commissioner of Health

*(Void After Expiration Date)*

VOID IF ALTERED NON-TRANSFERABLE

SEE BACK





## Texas Department of State Health Services

*BE IT KNOWN THAT*

**BENAS ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES INCORPORATED**

*is certified to perform as a*

**Lead Firm**


*in the State of Texas and is hereby governed by the rights, privileges and responsibilities set forth in Texas Occupations Code, Chapter 1955 and Title 25, Texas Administrative Code, Chapter 295 relating to Texas Environmental Lead Reduction, as long as this license is not suspended or revoked.*



**Certification Number: 2110696**

**Expiration Date: 01/20/2022**

**Control Number: 7149**

  
**John Hellerstedt, M.D.,  
Commissioner of Health**

**(Void After Expiration Date)**

VOID IF ALTERED NON-TRANSFERABLE

SEE BACK



## Franchise Tax Account Status

As of : 05/11/2021 12:28:08

This page is valid for most business transactions but is not sufficient for filings with the Secretary of State

### **BENAS ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES, INCORPORATED**

**Texas Taxpayer Number** 17525671248

**Mailing Address** PO BOX 739 COPPELL, TX 75019-0710

**Right to Transact Business in Texas** ACTIVE

**State of Formation** TX

**Effective SOS Registration Date** 11/10/1994

**Texas SOS File Number** 0133355700

**Registered Agent Name** EPHRAIM NGOZI OKOTCHA

**Registered Office Street Address** 13919 BROOKGREEN DR. DALLAS, TX 75240



Small Business Enterprise (SBE)  
BENAS Environmental Services, Inc.

## **BENAS Environmental Services, Inc.**

has filed with the Agency an Affidavit as defined by NCTRCA Small Business Enterprise (SBE) Policies & Procedures and is hereby certified to provide service(s) in the following areas:

**NAICS 541620: ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTING SERVICES**  
**NAICS 562910: REMEDIATION SERVICES**

This Certification commences May 17, 2021 and supersedes any registration or listing previously issued. This certification must be updated every two years by submission of an Annual Update Affidavit. At any time there is a change in ownership, control of the firm or operation, notification must be made immediately to the North Central Texas Regional Certification Agency for eligibility evaluation.

Certification Expiration: May 31, 2023  
Issued Date: May 17, 2021  
CERTIFICATION NO. BMSB71712N0523

---

Certification Administrator



Minority Business Enterprise (MBE)  
BENAS Environmental Services, Inc.

## **BENAS Environmental Services, Inc.**

has filed with the Agency an Affidavit as defined by NCTRCA Minority Business Enterprise (MBE) Policies & Procedures and is hereby certified to provide service(s) in the following areas:

**NAICS 541620: ENVIRONMENTAL CONSULTING SERVICES**  
**NAICS 562910: REMEDIATION SERVICES**

This Certification commences May 17, 2021 and supersedes any registration or listing previously issued. This certification must be updated every two years by submission of an Annual Update Affidavit. At any time there is a change in ownership, control of the firm or operation, notification must be made immediately to the North Central Texas Regional Certification Agency for eligibility evaluation.

Certification Expiration: May 31, 2023  
Issued Date: May 17, 2021  
CERTIFICATION NO. BMMB46892N0523

---

Certification Administrator

**CMBL/HUB Vendor Detail**

**Vendor ID / Vendor Number** 1752567124800 / 63935

**Vendor Name** BENAS ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES,

**Vendor Address** INCORPORATED P. O. BOX 739 COPPELL, TX 75019 USA

**County** DALLAS

**Contact** Pres./EPHRAIM OKOTCHA

**Phone/Fax** 972-393-0128 / 972-393-0793

**Email Address** [EO@BENAS.COM](mailto:EO@BENAS.COM)

**Website** <http://www.benas.com>

**Business Description** ENVIRONMENTAL ENGINEERING AND CONSULTING SERVICES, INDUSTRIAL HYGIENE SERVICES, ASBESTOS AND LEAD-BASED PAINT CONSULTANTS, INDOOR AIR QUALITY

**Business Category** [Architectural/Engineering And Surveying\\_\(05\)](#)

**Small Business** Y

**Service Disabled Veteran** No

**CMBL Status** Inactive ( F -Deleted for non-payment of annual fee )

**Date Removed From CMBL** 14-AUG-2004

**HUB Status** Active Bidder ( A-Approved; Active Texas certified HUB )

**HUB Expires** 21-FEB-2024

**HUB Eligibility** BL ( Black American )

**HUB Gender** M

Commodity items shown above are available for district(s)  
1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11,12,13,14,15,16,17,18,19,20,21,22,23,24,25

# **CATES' LICENSES AND CERTIFICATIONS**





[HOME \(index.html\)](#) [SERVICES](#) [PROJECTS](#) [QUALIFICATIONS](#) [OPPORTUNITIES](#) [CONTACT US](#)

## CERTIFICATIONS & ACCREDITATIONS

### NVLAP Accreditation



(assets/NVLAP\_Certificate\_2065644.pdf)  
Issued: 04/01/2018 Exp: 03/31/2019

### Historically Underutilized Business Certification



(assets/2015-Issued\_03/03/2015\_Exp\_03/03/2019\_2019\_HUB\_Cert-color.pdf)

### Small Business Enterprise Certification



(assets/SBE\_Certification\_2017-18.pdf)

### Disadvantaged Business Enterprise Certification - Texas



(assets/DBE\_Certification\_2017-18.pdf)

### Small Business Enterprise TxDOT Certification



(assets/Cates\_Laboratories\_SBE\_TxDOT.pdf)

### Women-Owned Business Enterprise Certification



(assets/WBE\_Certification\_2017-18.pdf)

### Disadvantaged Business Enterprise Certification - Florida



(assets/FL\_-\_DBE\_Certificate.pdf)

## LICENSES

### TDSHS - Asbestos Analysis License



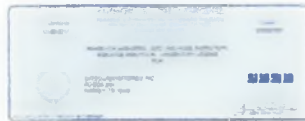
(assets/TDSHS\_Lab\_License\_2017-19.pdf)  
Exp. 04/07/2019

### TDSHS - Mold Analysis License



(assets/Mold\_Analysis\_License\_2017-19.pdf)  
Exp. 02/08/2019

### Virginia Lab License



(assets/VA\_Lab\_License\_2018.pdf)  
Exp. 11/30/2018

### Arizona Lab License



AZ0948

Cates Laboratories, Inc.  
Asbestos - Mold - Petrography

1339 Motor Circle  
Dallas, TX 75207

Phone 214-920-5006  
Fax 1-972-767-0167

admin@cateslab.com  
(mailto:admin@cateslab.com)

© Cates Laboratories, Inc.

**AHERA THREE-YEAR REINSPECTION**

For

**T.C MARSH MIDDLE SCHOOL  
3838 CROWN SHORE DRIVE  
DALLAS, TEXAS 75244**

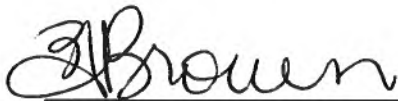
Prepared for

**DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
3700 ROSS AVENUE  
DALLAS, TEXAS 75204**

Prepared by

**DALLAS INDEPENDENT SCHOOL DISTRICT  
ENVIRONMENTAL SERVICES DEPARTMENT  
2419 COCKRELL AVENUE  
DALLAS, TEXAS 75215**

**MARCH 24, 2018**



---

Jennifer Brown  
AHERA Asbestos Management Planner  
TDSHS #205173

**T.C. MARSH MIDDLE SCHOOL**

**TRIENNIAL REINSPECTION REPORT**

**ASBESTOS CONTAINING HOMOGENEOUS AREAS**

**1. AREA 1E 1'x 1' CEILING TILE BUTTON MASTIC**

There is approximately 4,205 SF of asbestos containing ceiling tile button mastic in various areas throughout the facility. Some of the tile is under lay-in ceiling tile.

**2. AREA 1F RESIDUAL SPRAYED-ON CEILING MATERIAL**

There is approximately 69,560 SF of asbestos containing residual sprayed-on ceiling material in various locations of the facility. Some of the material is under lay-in ceiling tile.

**3. AREA 2B 9"x 9" FLOOR TILE AND MASTIC/MISC.**

There is approximately 31,210 SF of asbestos containing 9"x 9" floor tile and mastic in various rooms throughout the facility. Some of the tile is under carpet.

**4. AREA 4A & 4B CRAWL SPACE/TSI**

There is approximately 5,200 LF of asbestos containing thermal system insulation in the crawl space of the facility.

**5. AREA 8A AIR HANDLER UNITS/TSI.**

There is approximately 50 LF of asbestos containing thermal system insulation associated with various air handler units throughout the facility.

**6. AREA 10D MISCELLANEOUS RISERS/TSI.**

There is approximately 200 LF of asbestos containing thermal system insulation in various locations of the facility.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

ORIGINAL INSPECTION SUMMARY

SURVEY METHODOLOGY

REINSPECTION FINDINGS

CONCLUSIONS

APPENDICES

1. CERTIFICATES
2. APPROPRIATE FLOOR PLANS OR MAPS (IF APPLICABLE)

## INTRODUCTION

### General Information

An Asbestos Hazard Emergency Response Act (AHERA) three-year reinspection for T.C. Marsh Middle School has been completed. The reinspection survey performed for this report was conducted on March 24, 2018, by Ms. Jennifer Brown, an accredited AHERA Asbestos Inspector, and licensed by the Texas Department of State Health Services (TDSHS) as an Asbestos Management Planner (TDSHS# 205713).

### Purpose

The purpose of the AHERA three-year reinspection was to visually reinspect and identify all known/unknown friable and non-friable asbestos-containing building materials (ACBMs) and to reassess any changes in the condition of each material by an accredited asbestos inspector. This report meets the requirements of 40 CFR Section 763.85 of AHERA.

### Warranty

Environmental Services Department (ESD) warrants that the findings contained herein have been promulgated in general accordance with accepted professional practices at the time of its preparation as applied by professionals in the local community. Conditions may exist which could not be identified within the scope of the survey or which were not apparent during the site visit. This inspection covered only those areas that were exposed and/or physically accessible to the inspector.

No other warranties are implied or expressed.

## SURVEY METHODOLOGY

After reviewing existing documentation within the ESD, a walkthrough of the school building(s) was performed to reinspect and reassess the previously identified materials. For each area of the school building, ESD performed the following tasks:

- Visually reinspected and reassessed the condition of all friable known or assumed ACBMs.
- Visually inspected materials that were previously considered non-friable ACBMs and touched the material to determine whether it had become friable since the last reinspection.
- Identified any homogeneous areas with material that had become friable since the last reinspection.
- Reassessed the condition of friable ACBMs that were previously identified.

## REINSPECTION FINDINGS

AHERA regulations require condition assessments of all friable and non-friable material, known or assumed ACBMs. Presented below are the condition assessments for the known or assumed ACBMs at T.C. Marsh Middle School.

<b>TABLE 2 REINSPECTION FINDINGS</b>				
<b>Changes Y/N</b>	<b>Material Description</b>	<b>Material Location</b>	<b>Material Condition Assessment *</b>	<b>Remarks</b>
<b>Y</b>	9"x9" Floor tile w/ Mastic	Various locations throughout facility	Material is in good condition	Approximately 31,210 SF
<b>Y</b>	1'x 1' ceiling tile button mastic	Various locations throughout facility	Material is in good condition	Approximately 4,205SF
<b>N</b>	TSI & Fittings	Boiler room, Crawlspace, Chiller room, & Air Handlers	Material is in fair / good condition	Approximately 5,450 L/SF
<b>Y</b>	Residual Sprayed-On Ceiling Material	Various locations throughout facility	Material is in good condition	Approximately 69,560 SF

**Legend:**

Misc. - Miscellaneous Material  
 TSI - Thermal Systems Insulation Material  
 S - Surfacing Material  
 ACBMs-Asbestos Containing Building Materials  
 \* - Assessment Categories as listed in 40 CFR 763.88(b)

LF - Linear Feet  
 SF - Square Feet  
 NF - Non-friable  
 F - Friable  
 N/A - Not Applicable



AREA/ ROOM	(site plan) Page	Homo area	Change since last Reinsp.	Response Actions/ Renovations	Asbestos present?	FRI	L/SF	1ST LAYER	2ND LAYER	3RD LAYER	4TH LAYER	5TH LAYER	Hazard Assess	Damage type
HALL # 1	2	NA	YES	Abated Contract 2003	NO	NA	2500	12X12 Non- asbestos tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
105	2	NA	YES	Abated Contract 2003	NO	NA	675	12X12 Non- asbestos tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
104	2	NA	YES	Abated Contract 2003	NO	NA	325	12X12 Non- asbestos tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
Auditorium 130	2	2B	NO	* See below	YES	NO	325	carpet	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	HA-1	NA
Lounge 158	2	NA	YES	Floor tile abated in- house 5-08-02	NO	NO	200	12X12 non- asbestos tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
103	2	NA	YES	* See below	NO	NA	650	12X12 non- asbestos tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA

\* Indicates asbestos containing material

- RESPONSE ACTIONS
1. Continue periodic surveillance per AHERA regulations.
  2. Restrict access to qualified personnel.
  3. Repair and Encapsulate as needed.
  4. Remove when feasible.

AREA/ ROOM	(site plan) Page	Homo area	Change since last Reinsp.	Response Actions/ Renovations	Asbestos present?	FRI	L/SF	1ST LAYER	2ND LAYER	3RD LAYER	4TH LAYER	5TH LAYER	Hazard Assess	Damage type
102	2	NA	YES	floor tile abated in-house 9-22-02	NO	NA	920	12X12 non- asbestos floor tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
101	2	NA	YES	abated in-house 9-22-02	NO	NA	920	12X12 non- asbestos floor tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
177	2	NA	YES	abated in-house 9-22-02	NO	NA	200	12X12 non- asbestos floor tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
Nurse 173	2	NA	YES	Abated Summer 2003 Contract	NO	NA	170	12X12 Non- asbestos floor tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
173a	2	NA	YES	Abated Summer 2003 Contract	NO	NA	60	12X12 Non- asbestos floor tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
173b	2	NA	YES	Abated Summer 2003 Contract	NO	NA	60	12X12 Non- asbestos floor tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA

\* Indicates asbestos containing material

- RESPONSE ACTIONS**
1. Continue periodic surveillance per AHERA regulations.
  2. Restrict access to qualified personnel.
  3. Repair and Encapsulate as needed.
  4. Remove when feasible.

AREA/ ROOM	(site plan) Page	Homo area	Change since last Reinsp.	Response Actions/ Renovations	Asbestos present?	ERI	L/SF	1ST LAYER	2ND LAYER	3RD LAYER	4TH LAYER	5TH LAYER	Hazard Assess	Damage type
173c	2	NA	YES	Abated Summer 2003 Contract	NO	NA	60	12X12 Non- asbestos floor tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
173d vault	2	NA	YES	Abated Summer 2003 Contract	NO	NA	60	12X12 Non- asbestos floor tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
173e storage	2	NA	YES	Abated Summer 2003 Contract	NO	NA	60	12X12 Non- asbestos floor tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
Main Office 171	2	NA	YES	Abated Summer 2003 floor tile abated in-house 6-22-01	YES	NO	800	12X12 non- asbestos tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
170 Principal Office	2	NA	YES	Abated Summer 2003 floor tile abated in-house 6-22-01	YES	NO	275	12X12 non- asbestos tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
118	2	NA	YES	Abated Summer 2003 Contract	NO	NA	250	12X12 non- asbestos tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA

\* Indicates asbestos containing material

- RESPONSE ACTIONS
1. Continue periodic surveillance per AHERA regulations.
  2. Restrict access to qualified personnel.
  3. Repair and Encapsulate as needed.
  4. Remove when feasible.

AREA/ ROOM	(site plan) Page	Homo area	Change since last Reinsp.	Response Actions/ Renovations	Asbestos present?	FRI	L/SF	1ST LAYER	2ND LAYER	3RD LAYER	4TH LAYER	5TH LAYER	Hazard Assess	Damage type
118a	2	NA	YES	NA	NO	NA	115	12X12 non- asbestos tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
118b	2	NA	YES	Abated Summer 2003 Contract	NO	NA	115	12X12 non- asbestos tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
HALL # 4	2	NA	YES	Abated Summer 2003 Contract	NO	NA	2500	12X12 non- asbestos tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
107	2	NA	YES	Abated Summer 2003 Contract	NO	NA	650	12X12 non- asbestos tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
108	2	NA	YES	Abated Summer 2003 Contract	NO	NA	625	12X12 non- asbestos tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
109	2	NA	YES	Abated Summer 2003 Contract	NO	NA	1075	12X12 non- asbestos tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA

\* Indicates asbestos containing material

- RESPONSE ACTIONS
1. Continue periodic surveillance per AHERA regulations.
  2. Restrict access to qualified personnel.
  3. Repair and Encapsulate as needed.
  4. Remove when feasible.

AREA/ ROOM	(site plan) Page	Home area	Change since last Reinsp.	Response Actions/ Renovations	Asbestos present?	FRI	L/SF	1ST LAYER	2ND LAYER	3RD LAYER	4TH LAYER	5TH LAYER	Hazard Assess	Damage type
110	2	NA	YES	Abated Summer 2003 Contract	NO	NA	375	carpet	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
111	2	NA	YES	Abated Summer 2003 Contract	NO	NA	1100	12X12 non- asbestos tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
HALL # 2A	2	NA	YES	Abated Summer 2003 Contract	NO	NA	1100	12X12 non- asbestos tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
HALL # 2B	2	NA	NO	NA	NO	NA	1500	12X12 non- asbestos tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
HALL 5A	2	NA	NO	NA	NO	NA	1100	12X12 non- asbestos tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
HALL 5B	2	NA	NO	Abated Summer 2003 Contract	NO	NA	1100	12X12 non- asbestos tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA

\* Indicates asbestos containing material

- RESPONSE ACTIONS
1. Continue periodic surveillance per AHERA regulations.
  2. Restrict access to qualified personnel.
  3. Repair and Encapsulate as needed.
  4. Remove when feasible.

AREA/ ROOM	(site plan) Page	Home area	Change since last Reinsp.	Response Actions/ Renovations	Asbestos present?	FRI	L/SF	1ST LAYER	2ND LAYER	3RD LAYER	4TH LAYER	5TH LAYER	Hazard Assess	Damage type
Auditorium 130	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	*2500 of 8005	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
802	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NA	170	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
132	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	170	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
133	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	170	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
117 Band	2	NA	YES	floor tile abated in-house 5-08-01	NO	NA	2185	12X12 non- asbestos tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
118	2	NA	YES	floor tile abated in-house 5-08-01	NO	NA	135	12X12 non- asbestos tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA

\* Indicates asbestos containing material

- RESPONSE ACTIONS
1. Continue periodic surveillance per AHERA regulations.
  2. Restrict access to qualified personnel.
  3. Repair and Encapsulate as needed.
  4. Remove when feasible.

AREA/ ROOM	(site plan) Page	Homo area	Change since last Reinsp.	Response Actions/ Renovations	Asbestos present?	FRI	L/SF	1ST LAYER	2ND LAYER	3RD LAYER	4TH LAYER	5TH LAYER	Hazard Assess	Damage type
119	2	NA	YES	floor tile abated in-house 5-08-01	NO	NA	135	12X12 non- asbestos tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
801	2	NA	YES	floor tile abated in-house 5-08-01	NO	NA	70	12X12 non- asbestos tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
<b>FLOOR</b>														
<b>SECOND</b>														
HALL #7	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	2500	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-2	a few missing tiles in hall
211	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	660	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
210	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	660	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
212	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA

\* Indicates asbestos containing material

- RESPONSE ACTIONS**
1. Continue periodic surveillance per AHERA regulations.
  2. Restrict access to qualified personnel.
  3. Repair and Encapsulate as needed.
  4. Remove when feasible.

AREA/ ROOM	(site plan) Page	Home area	Change since last Reinsp.	Response Actions/ Renovations	Asbestos present?	FRI	L/SF	1ST LAYER	2ND LAYER	3RD LAYER	4TH LAYER	5TH LAYER	Hazard Assess	Damage type
256 storage	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	210	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
209	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
208	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
Book Room 213	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
207	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
206	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA

- RESPONSE ACTIONS
1. Continue periodic surveillance per AHERA regulations.
  2. Restrict access to qualified personnel.
  3. Repair and Encapsulate as needed.
  4. Remove when feasible.

\* Indicates asbestos containing material



AREA/ ROOM	(site plan) Page	Homo area	Change since last Reinsp.	Response Actions/ Renovations	Asbestos present?	FRI	L/SF	1ST LAYER	2ND LAYER	3RD LAYER	4TH LAYER	5TH LAYER	Hazard Assess	Damage type
216	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	650	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
217	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
205	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
204	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
218	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
219	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA

- RESPONSE ACTIONS
1. Continue periodic surveillance per AHERA regulations.
  2. Restrict access to qualified personnel.
  3. Repair and Encapsulate as needed.
  4. Remove when feasible.

\* Indicates asbestos containing material

AREA/ ROOM	(site plan) Page	Homo area	Change since last Reinsp.	Response Actions/ Renovations	Asbestos present?	FRI	L/SF	1ST LAYER	2ND LAYER	3RD LAYER	4TH LAYER	5TH LAYER	Hazard Assess	Damage type
203	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
202	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
201	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	660	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
250 Asst. Princ.	2	NA	YES	floor tile abated in-house 5-08-02	NO	NA	245	carpet	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
HALL # 8	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	2500	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-2	some damaged and missing tiles
214b	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	935	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA

\* Indicates asbestos containing material

10

- RESPONSE ACTIONS
1. Continue periodic surveillance per AHERA regulations.
  2. Restrict access to qualified personnel.
  3. Repair and Encapsulate as needed.
  4. Remove when feasible.

AREA/ ROOM	(site plan) Page	Homo area	Change since last Reinsp.	Response Actions/ Renovations	Asbestos present?	FRI	L/SF	1ST LAYER	2ND LAYER	3RD LAYER	4TH LAYER	5TH LAYER	Hazard Assess	Damage type
214	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	935	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
214a	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	935	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
230 Media	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	2615	carpet	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	HA-1	NA
231 work room	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	190	carpet	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	HA-1	NA
215	2	NA	YES	floor tile abated in house 1-24-95	NO	NA	2500	12X12 non- asbestos tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA
<b>THIRD FLOOR</b>														
HALL # 9	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	660	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA

- RESPONSE ACTIONS**
1. Continue periodic surveillance per AHERA regulations.
  2. Restrict access to qualified personnel.
  3. Repair and Encapsulate as needed.
  4. Remove when feasible.

\* Indicates asbestos containing material

AREA/ ROOM	(site plan) Page	Homo area	Change since last Reinsp.	Response Actions/ Rennoyations	Asbestos present?	FRI	L/SF	1ST LAYER	2ND LAYER	3RD LAYER	4TH LAYER	5TH LAYER	Hazard Assess	Damage type
311	2	2B	NO	* See below	YES	NO	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
312	2	2B	NO	* See below	YES	NO	660	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
310	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
309	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
308	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
307	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA

\* Indicates asbestos containing material

- RESPONSE ACTIONS
1. Continue periodic surveillance per AHERA regulations.
  2. Restrict access to qualified personnel.
  3. Repair and Encapsulate as needed.
  4. Remove when feasible.

AREA/ ROOM	(site plan) Page	Homo area	Change since last Reinsp.	Response Actions/ Renovations	Asbestos present?	FRI	L/SF	1ST LAYER	2ND LAYER	3RD LAYER	4TH LAYER	5TH LAYER	Hazard Assess	Damage type
314	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
306	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NA	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
315	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
316	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NA	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
305	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
317	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NA	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA

- RESPONSE ACTIONS
1. Continue periodic surveillance per AHERA regulations.
  2. Restrict access to qualified personnel.
  3. Repair and Encapsulate as needed.
  4. Remove when feasible.

\* Indicates asbestos containing material

AREA/ ROOM	(site plan) Page	Homo area	Change since last Reinsp.	Response Actions/ Renovations	Asbestos present?	FRI	L/SF	1ST LAYER	2ND LAYER	3RD LAYER	4TH LAYER	5TH LAYER	Hazard Assess	Damage type
304	2	2B	NO	* See below	YES	NO	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
303	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
318	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
303	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
302	2	2B	NO	* See Below	YES	NO	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA
301	2	2B	NO	* See below	YES	NO	635	* 9X9	* mastic	concrete	NA	NA	HA-1	NA

\* Indicates asbestos containing material

14

- RESPONSE ACTIONS
1. Continue periodic surveillance per AHERA regulations.
  2. Restrict access to qualified personnel.
  3. Repair and Encapsulate as needed.
  4. Remove when feasible.

AREA/ ROOM	(site plan) Page	Home area	Change since last Reinsp.	Response Actions/ Renovations	Asbestos present?	FRI	L/SF	1ST LAYER	2ND LAYER	3RD LAYER	4TH LAYER	5TH LAYER	Hazard Assess	Damage type
319	2	NA	YES	abated in-house 5-08-01	NO	NA	245	12X12 non- asbestos tile	mastic	concrete	NA	NA	NA	NA

\* Indicates asbestos containing material

- RESPONSE ACTIONS
1. Continue periodic surveillance per AHERA regulations.
  2. Restrict access to qualified personnel.
  3. Repair and Encapsulate as needed.
  4. Remove when feasible.

AREA/ROOM	(site plan) Page	Homo area	Change since last Reinsp.	Response Actions/Rennoations	Asbestos present?	FRI	L/SF	1ST LAYER	2ND LAYER	3RD LAYER	4TH LAYER	5TH LAYER	Hazard Assess	Damage type
12"X12" CEILING TILE GLUE	2	1E	NO	* See below	YES	NO	4,205	12"X12" Tiles	* asbestos containing mastic	stucco type material	wire mesh	NA	HA-1	NA
RESIDUAL SPRAYED-ON MATERIAL	2	1F	NO	* See below	YES	YES	69,560	K-13 non-asbestos material	* asbestos containing material	* mastic	concrete	NA	HA-1	NA
CRAWL SPACE	not shown	4A	YES	* See below	YES	YES	5,200	Black tar coating	Canvas Outer	* asbestos containing material	metal pipes and ducts	NA	HA-4	on-going age and moisture damage
AIR HANDLERS	2	8A	YES	* See below	YES	YES	50	Canvas Outer	* asbestos containing material	metal pipes	NA	NA	HA-3	on-going age and moisture damage
MISC. RISERS	2	10D	YES	* See below	YES	YES	200	Canvas Outer	* asbestos containing material	metal pipes	NA	NA	HA-3	on-going age and moisture damage

\* Indicates asbestos containing material

14

- RESPONSE ACTION:
1. Continue periodic surveillance per AHERA regulations.
  2. Restrict disturbance of material to qualified personnel.
  3. Repair and Encapsulate as needed.
  4. Remove when feasible.



## CONCLUSIONS

This inspection was based upon information found in the Management Plan for the school, and on ESD's visual assessment of the school. There is a possibility that ACBMs may exist which could not be identified within the scope of the survey or which were not apparent during the site visit. This reinspection covered only those areas that were exposed and/or physically accessible to the inspector.

Based on the information in the original management plan, subsequent reinspections, and this reinspection, six homogenous materials at T.C. Marsh Middle School are known or assumed to contain greater than 1-percent asbestos. These materials are:

- ◆ 9"x9" resilient floor tile with associated mastic located in various areas throughout the building.
- ◆ 1'x 1' ceiling tile button mastic.
- ◆ TSI on pipes located in chase and crawlspace throughout the building.
- ◆ Residual Sprayed-on Ceiling Material.
- ◆ Air handler unit with associated TSI.

The ACBMs were found to be in good condition and should continue to be maintained under an operations and maintenance (O&M) program until they are removed. ACBMs found in other areas should be assumed asbestos containing until sampling proves otherwise. The ACBMs appeared to present a low hazard to the subject property. However, material conditions may change suddenly or gradually.

**APPENDICES**

**APPENDIX 1**  
**CERTIFICATES & LICENSE**



Jennifer Brown



Asbestos certifies that Jennifer Brown has successfully completed and passed the exam given on the final day for the Environmental Training Program entitled: Asbestos Management Planner Refresher

Exam Date: 10/11/2017  
Certificate Number: 17113 2895

For more information, please contact:  
GEBCO Associates, LP  
Phone: 817-268-4006  
Fax: 817-268-6886  
Email: [info@www.gebco.org](mailto:info@www.gebco.org)

# GEBCO ASSOCIATES

in cooperation with

## THE UNIVERSITY OF NORTH TEXAS

certifies that

### Jennifer T. Brown

has successfully completed and passed the exam given on the final day for the Environmental Training Program entitled

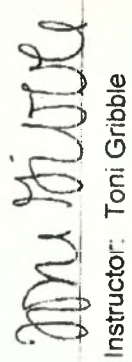
## Asbestos Management Planner Refresher

Conducted at Hurst, Texas on October 11, 2017

This is an EPA fully approved course for purpose of accreditation under Section 206 of TSCA, Title II. It covers topics listed in the NESHAP training requirement of 40 CFR, Part 61, subpart M.

  
Owner



  
Instructor: Toni Gribble

Date of Issue: 10/11/2017

Certificate Number: 17113 2895

Exam Date: 10/11/2017

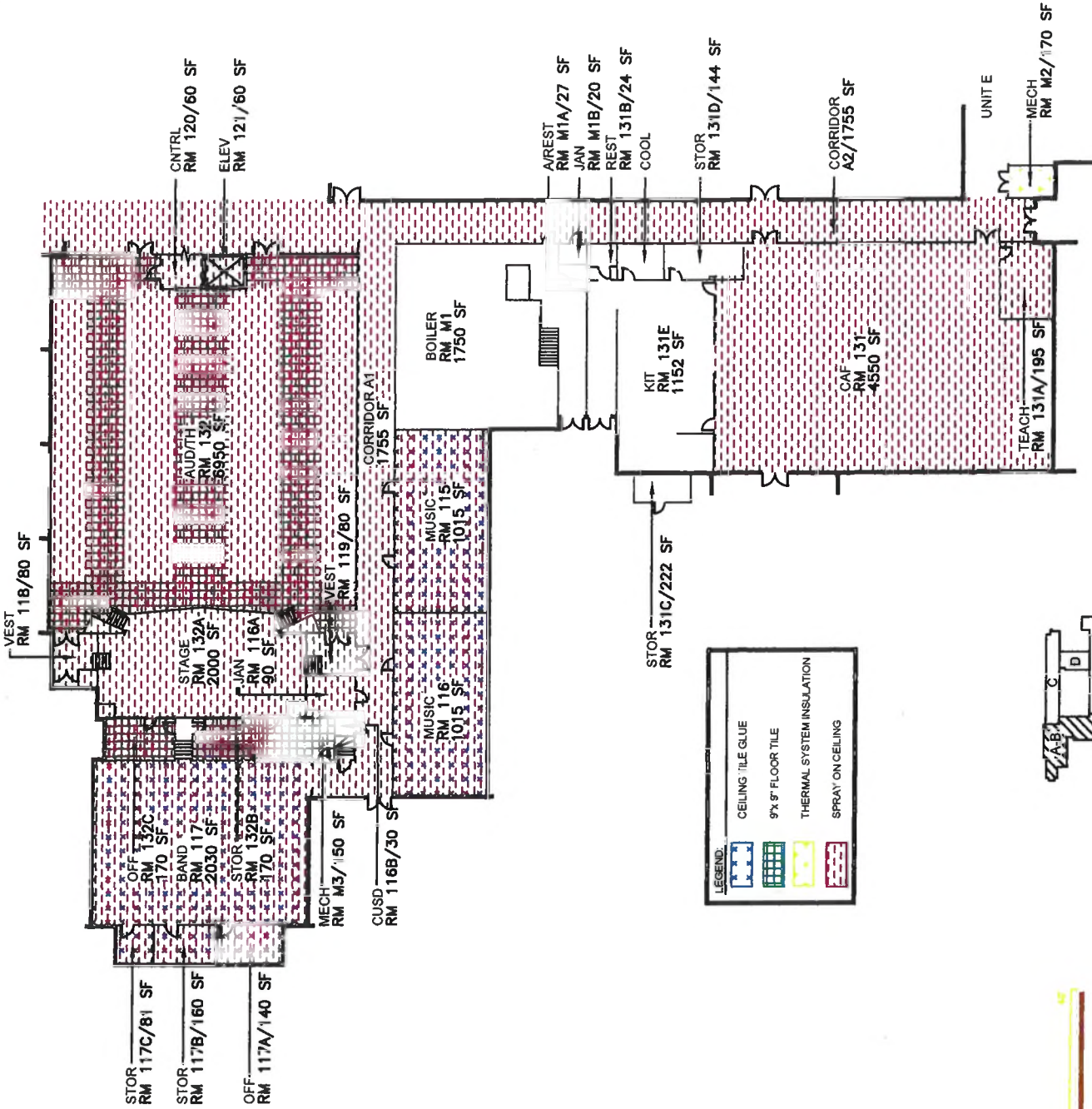
Certificate Expires: 10/11/2018

GEBCO's Training Programs are provided in cooperation with federal and state regulatory agencies, and fulfill all applicable requirements for accreditation. GEBCO is licensed for Asbestos Training under the Texas Asbestos Health Protection Rules.

GEBCO Associates, LP \* 815 Trailwood Dr, Suite 200 \* Hurst, TX 76053 \* (817)268-4006

JENNIFER T BROWN  
License No. 205713  
Control No. 96201  
Expiration Date: 5/18/2019





LEGEND:

	CEILING TILE GLUE
	9" x 9" FLOOR TILE
	THERMAL SYSTEM INSULATION
	SPRAY ON CEILING



KEY PLAN

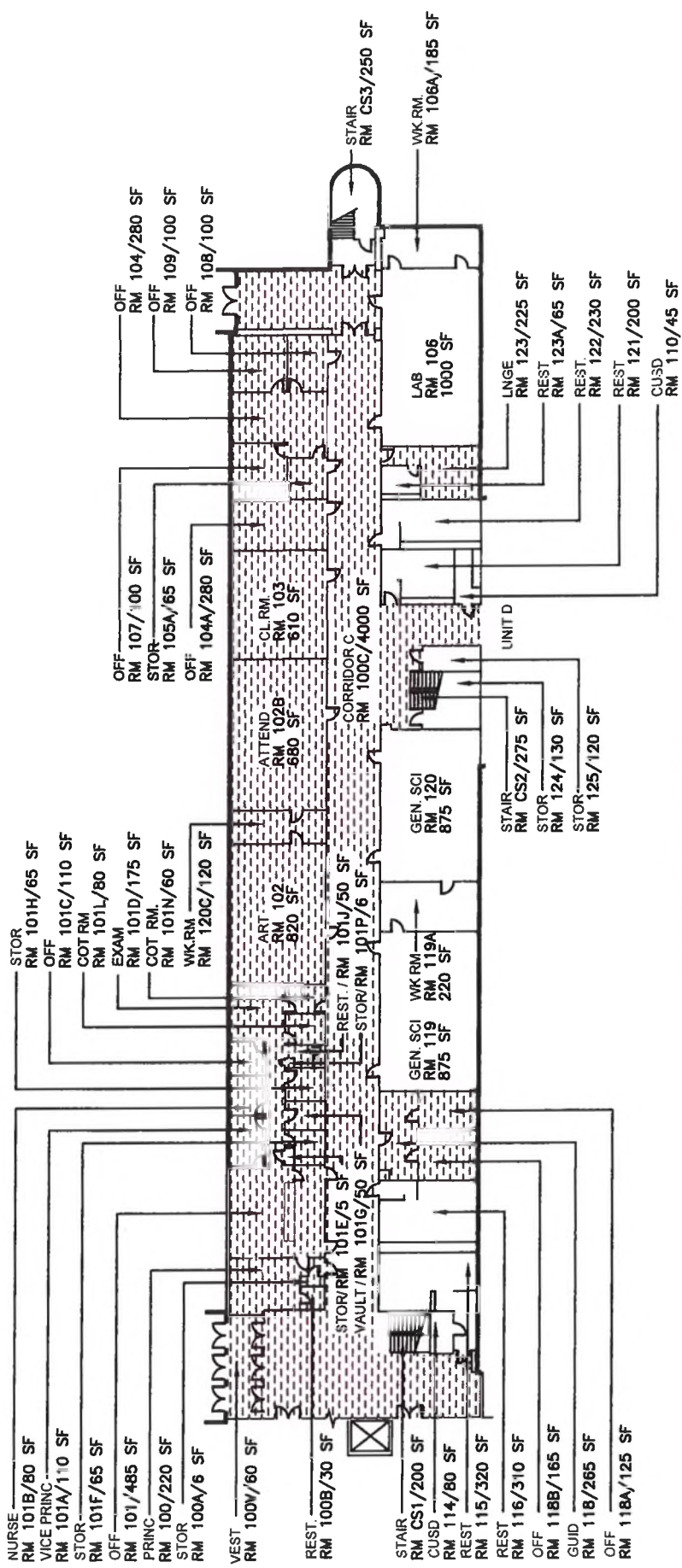


NORTH



THOMAS C. MARSH MIDDLE SCHOOL

FIRST FLOOR PLANS UNITS A & B



NURSE RM 101B/80 SF  
 VICE PRINC RM 101A/110 SF  
 STOR RM 101F/65 SF  
 OFF RM 101/485 SF  
 PRINC RM 100/220 SF  
 STOR RM 100A/6 SF  
 VEST RM 100V/80 SF  
 REST. RM 100B/30 SF  
 STAIR RM CS1/200 SF  
 CUSD RM 114/80 SF  
 REST RM 115/320 SF  
 REST RM 116/310 SF  
 OFF RM 118B/165 SF  
 GUID RM 118/265 SF  
 OFF RM 118A/125 SF

STOR RM 101H/65 SF  
 OFF RM 101C/110 SF  
 COTRM RM 101L/80 SF  
 EXAM RM 101D/175 SF  
 COT RM RM 101N/60 SF  
 WKRM RM 120C/120 SF  
 ART RM 102 820 SF  
 ATTEND RM 102B 680 SF  
 CLRM RM 103 610 SF  
 CORRIDOR C RM 100C/4000 SF  
 STAIR RM CS2/275 SF  
 STOR RM 124/130 SF  
 STOR RM 125/120 SF

OFF RM 107/100 SF  
 STOR RM 105A/65 SF  
 OFF RM 104A/280 SF  
 OFF RM 104/280 SF  
 OFF RM 109/100 SF  
 OFF RM 108/100 SF  
 LAB RM 106 1000 SF  
 WKRM RM 106A/185 SF  
 LNGE RM 123/225 SF  
 REST RM 123A/65 SF  
 REST. RM 122/230 SF  
 REST RM 121/200 SF  
 CUSD RM 110/45 SF

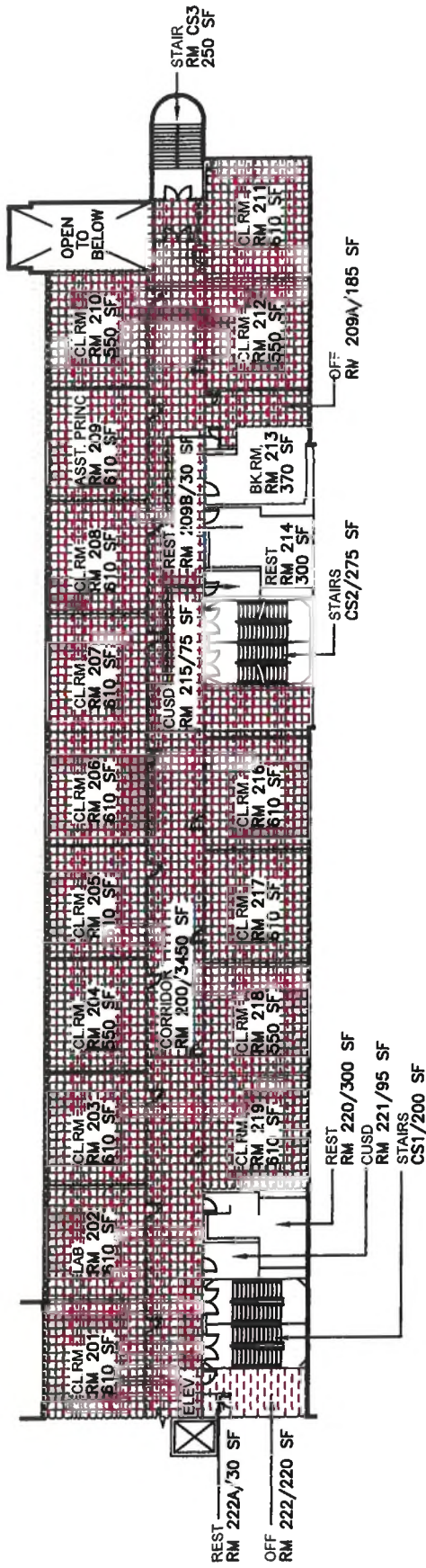
LEGEND:  
 SPRAY ON CEILING



THOMAS C. MARSH MIDDLE SCHOOL  
**FIRST FLOOR PLAN UNIT C**



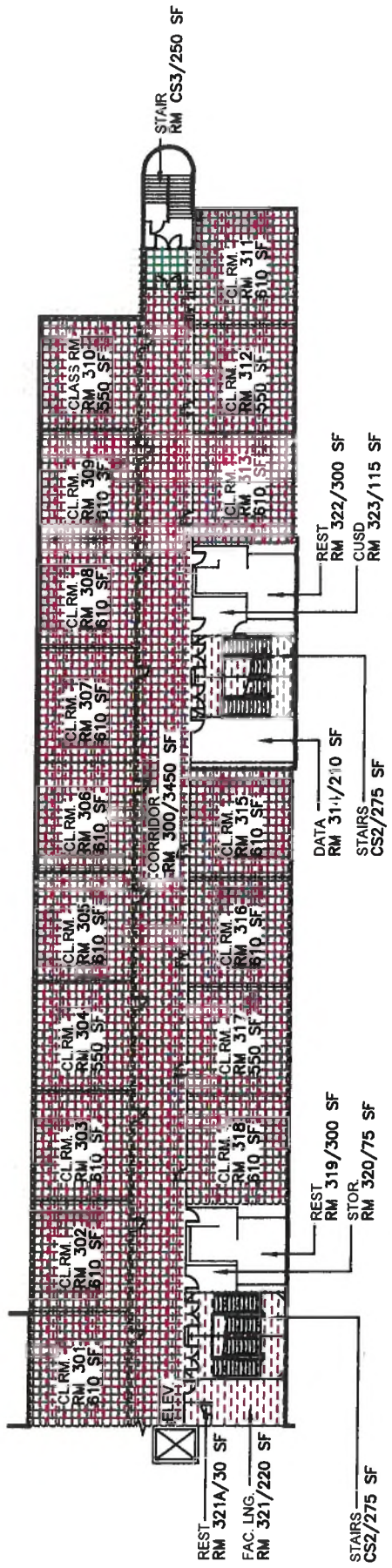
KEY PLAN



THOMAS C. MARSH MIDDLE SCHOOL  
**SECOND FLOOR PLAN UNIT C**



KEY PLAN

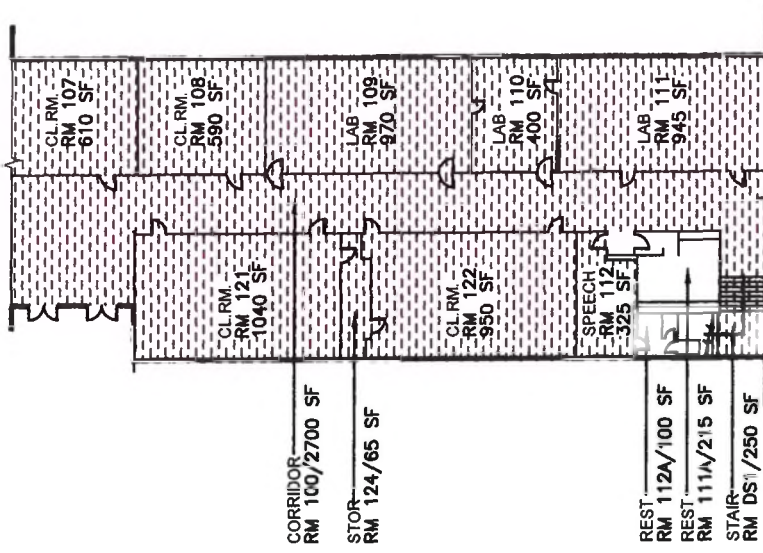


THOMAS C. MARSH MIDDLE SCHOOL  
**THIRD FLOOR PLAN UNIT C**



KEY PLAN

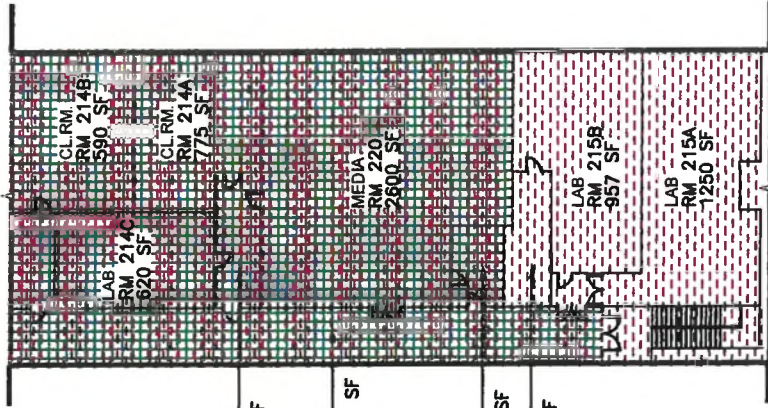




THOMAS C. MARSH MIDDLE SCHOOL  
**FIRST FLOOR PLAN UNIT D**



KEY PLAN



VEST  
RM 218/200 SF

CORRIDOR  
RM 200D/1716 SF

VEST  
RM 217/170F SF

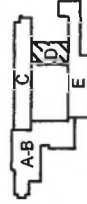
STOR  
RM 216/350 SF

LEGEND:

	9'x 9' FLOOR TILE
	SPRAY ON CEILING



THOMAS C. MARSH MIDDLE SCHOOL  
**SECOND FLOOR PLAN UNIT D**



KEY PLAN





---

**GEOTECHNICAL EXPLORATION**  
**on**

**NEW PARKING LOT**  
**Thomas C. Marsh Middle School**  
**3838 Crown Shore Drive**  
**Dallas, Texas**  
**ALPHA Report No. G100489**

Prepared for:

DISD 2008 - JACOBS  
3801 Herschel Avenue  
Dallas, Texas 75219  
Attention: Mr. Dan Young  
June 7, 2010

Prepared By:

ALPHA TESTING, INC.  
2209 Wisconsin Street, Suite 100  
Dallas, Texas 75229

---

June 7, 2010

**DISD 2008 - Jacobs**  
3801 Herschel Avenue  
Dallas, Texas 75219  
Attention: Mr. Dan Young

Re: Geotechnical Exploration  
**New Parking Lot**  
Thomas C. Marsh Middle School  
3838 Crown Shore Drive  
Dallas, Texas  
ALPHA Report No. G100489

Attached is the report of the geotechnical exploration performed for the project referenced above. This study was authorized using Purchase Order No. 378377 dated May 5, 2010 and performed in accordance with the ALPHA Proposal No. 26868-A dated April 14, 2010.

This report contains results of field explorations and laboratory testing and an engineering interpretation of these with respect to available project characteristics. The results and analyses were used to develop recommendations to aid design and construction of new pavement for a new parking lot.

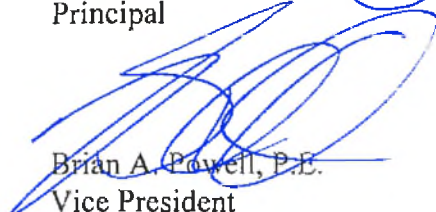
ALPHA TESTING, INC. appreciates the opportunity to be of service on this project. If we can be of further assistance, such as providing materials testing services during construction, please contact our office.

Sincerely,

**ALPHA TESTING, INC.**  
TBPE Firm No. 813



Theodore A. (Tony) Janish, P.E.  
Principal



Brian A. Powell, P.E.  
Vice President



TAJ/BAP/lf  
Copies: (3) Client



---

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

On

ALPHA REPORT NO. G100489

1.0	PURPOSE AND SCOPE .....	1
2.0	PROJECT CHARACTERISTICS .....	1
3.0	FIELD EXPLORATION.....	1
4.0	LABORATORY TESTS.....	2
5.0	GENERAL SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS.....	2
6.0	DESIGN RECOMMENDATIONS.....	3
6.1	Pavement.....	3
6.1.1	Asphalt Concrete Pavement.....	4
6.1.2	Portland-Cement Concrete (PCC) Pavement.....	5
6.2	Drainage.....	5
7.0	GENERAL CONSTRUCTION PROCEDURES AND RECOMMENDATIONS.....	6
7.1	Site Preparation and Grading.....	6
7.2	Fill Compaction.....	7
7.3	Groundwater.....	7
8.0	LIMITATIONS.....	7
APPENDIX		
A-1	Methods of Field Exploration Boring Location Plan – Figure 1	
B-1	Methods of Laboratory Testing Logs of Boring Key to Soil Symbols and Classifications	

---



## **1.0 PURPOSE AND SCOPE**

The purpose of this geotechnical exploration is to evaluate some of the physical and engineering properties of subsurface materials at the subject site with respect to formulation of appropriate geotechnical design parameters for the proposed pavement construction. The field exploration was accomplished by securing subsurface samples from a single test boring performed in the new parking lot area. Engineering analyses were performed from results of the field exploration and results of laboratory tests performed on representative samples.

Also included are general comments pertaining to reasonably anticipated construction problems and recommendations concerning earthwork and quality control testing during construction. This information can be used to evaluate subsurface conditions and to aid in ascertaining construction meets project specifications. Recommendations provided in this report were developed from information obtained in the test boring depicting subsurface conditions only at the specific boring location and at the particular time designated on the log. Subsurface conditions at other locations may differ from those observed at the boring location. The scope of work may not fully define the variability of subsurface materials that is present on the site.

The nature and extent of variations may not become evident until construction. If significant variations then appear evident, our office should be contacted to re-evaluate our recommendations after performing on-site observations and possibly other tests.

## **2.0 PROJECT CHARACTERISTICS**

It is proposed to construct a new parking lot at the Thomas C. Marsh Middle School located at 3838 Crown Shore Drive in Dallas, Texas. The proposed new parking lot is planned in the northeastern portion of the property. A site plan illustrating the general outline of the property is provided as Figure 1, the Boring Location Plan, in the Appendix of this report. At the time the field exploration was performed, the proposed parking lot area consisted of a grassy. cursory visual observations generally indicate the proposed parking lot area slopes downward generally from north to southeast with a maximum change in surface elevation of about 6 ft.

Present plans provide for construction of a new parking lot. New pavement will consist of either asphaltic concrete or Portland cement. For the purpose of this report, we have assumed cuts and fills of 2 ft or less to achieve final grade.

## **3.0 FIELD EXPLORATION**

Subsurface conditions on the site were explored by drilling a single test boring in general accordance with ASTM D 420 to a depth of about 7 ft using standard rotary drilling equipment. The approximate location of the test boring is shown on the Boring Location Plan, Figure 1, enclosed in the Appendix of this report. Details of drilling and sampling operations are briefly summarized in Methods of Field Exploration, Section A-1 of the Appendix.



Subsurface types encountered during the field exploration are presented on the Log of Boring sheet included in the Appendix of this report. The boring log contains our Field Technician's and Engineer's interpretation of conditions believed to exist between actual samples retrieved. Therefore, the boring log contains both factual and interpretive information. Lines delineating subsurface strata on the boring log are approximate and the actual transition between strata may be gradual.

#### **4.0 LABORATORY TESTS**

Selected samples of the subsurface materials were tested in the laboratory to evaluate their engineering properties as a basis in providing recommendations for pavement construction. A brief description of testing procedures used in the laboratory can be found in Methods of Laboratory Testing, Section B-1 of the Appendix. Individual test results are presented on the Log of Boring sheet enclosed in the Appendix.

#### **5.0 GENERAL SUBSURFACE CONDITIONS**

Subsurface materials encountered in the test boring generally consisted of clay fill to a depth of 2 ft below existing grade followed by native clay to the boring termination depth. Our assessment of fill is based on visual examination of the samples obtained. More detailed stratigraphic information is presented on the Log of Boring sheet attached to this report.

The clay soil materials encountered in the boring is considered relatively impermeable and is anticipated to have a slow response to water movement. Therefore, several days of observation will be required to evaluate actual groundwater levels within the depths explored. Also, the groundwater level at the site is anticipated to fluctuate seasonally depending on the amount of rainfall, prevailing weather conditions and subsurface drainage characteristics.

During field explorations, no free groundwater was noted on drilling tools or in the open borehole upon completion. However, it is common to detect seasonal groundwater from natural fractures within the clayey matrix (either natural or fill), particularly during or after periods of precipitation. If more detailed groundwater information is required, monitoring wells or piezometers can be installed.

Further details concerning subsurface materials and conditions encountered can be obtained from the Log of Boring sheet provided in the Appendix of this report.





## 6.0 DESIGN RECOMMENDATIONS

The following design recommendations were developed on the basis of the previously described Project Characteristics (Section 2.0) and General Subsurface Conditions (Section 5.0). If project criteria should change, including parking lot location, our office should conduct a review to determine if modifications to the recommendations are required. Further, it is recommended our office be provided with a copy of the final plans and specifications for review prior to construction.

### 6.1 Pavement

Clay fill and/or natural clay soils encountered at the boring, or similar materials used as engineered fill for grading the site could be encountered as subgrade material for the parking lot. These materials should be improved and prepared prior to construction of pavements. To permit correlation between information from test boring and actual subgrade conditions exposed during construction, a qualified Geotechnical Engineer should be retained to provide subgrade monitoring and testing during construction. If there is any change in project criteria, the recommendations contained in this report should be reviewed by our office.

Calculations used to determine the required pavement thickness are based only on the physical and engineering properties of the materials and conventional thickness determination procedures. Pavement joining the buildings should be constructed with a curb and the joint between the building and curb should be sealed. Related civil design factors such as subgrade drainage, shoulder support, cross-sectional configurations, surface elevations, reinforcing steel, joint design and environmental factors will significantly affect the service life and must be included in preparation of the construction drawings and specifications, but were not included in the scope of this study. Normal periodic maintenance will be required for all pavement to achieve the design life of the pavement system.

Both asphalt concrete and Portland cement concrete (PCC) pavement sections are provided in the sections below, but these types of pavement are not considered equal in performance. Over the life of the pavement, PCC sections would be expected to require less maintenance. In addition, Portland cement concrete pavement is recommended in areas subject to truck and dumpster traffic.

*Please note*, the recommended pavement sections provided below are considered the minimum necessary to provide satisfactory performance based on the expected traffic loading. In some cases, City minimum standards for pavement section construction may exceed those provided below.



### 6.1.1 Asphalt Concrete Pavement

After final subgrade elevation is achieved, the exposed surface of the pavement subgrade soil should be scarified to a depth of 6 inches and mixed with a minimum 7 percent hydrated lime (by dry soil weight) in conformance with TxDOT Standard Specifications Item 260. Assuming an in-place unit weight of 100 pcf for the pavement subgrade soils, this percentage of lime equates to about 32 lbs of lime per sq yard of treated subgrade. The actual amount of lime required should be confirmed by additional laboratory tests (ASTM C 977 Appendix XI) prior to construction. The soil-lime mixture should be compacted to at least 95 percent of standard Proctor maximum dry density (ASTM D 698) and within the range of 0 to 4 percentage points above the mixture's optimum moisture content. In all areas where hydrated lime is used to stabilize subgrade soil, routine Atterberg-limit tests should be performed to verify the resulting plasticity index of the soil-lime mixture is at/or below 15.

It is recommended lime stabilization extend at least 1 ft beyond the edge of the pavement to reduce effects of seasonal shrinking and swelling upon the extreme edges of pavement.

Lime stabilization of the pavement subgrade soil will not prevent normal seasonal movement of the underlying untreated materials. Pavement and other flatwork will have the same potential for movement as slabs constructed directly on the existing undisturbed soils. Therefore, good perimeter surface drainage with a minimum slope of 2 percent away from the pavement is recommended. The use of sand as a leveling course below pavement supported on expansive clays should be avoided. Normal maintenance of pavement should be expected over the life of the structures.

California Bearing Ratio (CBR) tests were not performed for this specific project, but our previous experience with similar soils indicates the CBR value for lime-stabilized soils could be about 10 whereas the CBR value for natural untreated clay soils could be about 3. Using the above values and assuming normal traffic for a 15-year project life, the following pavement sections are recommended:

1. In light-duty traffic areas (passenger vehicle parking and areas up to about 100,000 18-kip equivalent axle load repetitions), the pavement section can consist of at least 5 inches of asphaltic concrete. This section could be composed of 2 inches of surface course (TxDOT Standard Specifications Item 340 - Type D Surface Course) over 3 inches of base course (TxDOT Standard Specifications Item 340 - Type A or B Base Course) and overlying a lime-stabilized subgrade. .



2. In moderate-duty traffic areas (drive lanes, bus lanes, and areas up to about 300,000 18-kip equivalent axle load repetitions), the pavement section can consist of at least 6 inches of asphaltic concrete. This section could be composed of 2 inches of surface course (TxDOT Standard Specifications Item 340 – Type D Surface Course) over 4 inches of base course (TxDOT Standard Specifications Item 340 – Type A or B Base Course) and overlying a lime-stabilized subgrade.
3. The coarse aggregate in the surface course should be composed of angular crushed limestone rather than smooth gravel.

### 6.1.2 Portland-Cement Concrete (PCC) Pavement

Following subgrade preparation with lime as described in Section 6.1.1, pavement can then consist of 5 inches of adequately reinforced PCC in areas subjected exclusively to passenger vehicle traffic. A minimum of 6 inches PCC is recommended in drive lanes, fire lanes, bus areas, and areas subject to light volume truck traffic. A minimum of 7 inches of PCC is recommended for dumpster traffic areas or pavement subject to moderate volume truck traffic.

Portland-cement concrete should have a minimum compressive strength of 3,000 lbs per sq inch (psi) at 28 days in passenger vehicle areas and 3,500 psi in moderate-duty and truck traffic areas, including bus lanes and fire lanes. Concrete should be designed with  $5 \pm 1$  percent entrained air. Joints in concrete paving should not exceed 15 ft. Reinforcing steel should consist of No. 3 bars placed at 18 inches on-center in two directions.

Alternately, lime stabilization of the PCC pavement subgrade could be eliminated by increasing the respective PCC thickness for the sections presented above by 1 inch. Prior to construction of pavement on untreated clay subgrade soil, the exposed subgrade should be scarified to a depth of at least 6 inches and compacted to at least 95 percent of standard Proctor maximum dry density (ASTM D 698) and within the range of 1 percentage point below to 3 percentage points above the material's optimum moisture content.

## 6.2 Drainage

Adequate drainage should be provided to reduce seasonal variations in moisture content of subgrade soils. Final grades within 5 ft of the pavement should be adjusted to slope away from the pavement at a minimum slope of 2 percent. **Maintaining positive surface drainage throughout the life of the pavement is essential.**



## **7.0 GENERAL CONSTRUCTION PROCEDURES AND RECOMMENDATIONS**

Variations in subsurface conditions could be encountered during construction. To permit correlation from test boring data and actual subsurface conditions encountered during construction, it is recommended a registered Professional Engineering firm be retained to observe construction procedures and materials.

Some construction problems, particularly degree or magnitude, cannot be anticipated until the course of construction. The recommendations offered in the following paragraphs are intended not to limit or preclude other conceivable solutions, but rather to provide our observations based on our experience and understanding of the project characteristics and subsurface conditions encountered in the boring.

### **7.1 Site Preparation and Grading**

Clay fill with limestone was encountered at the surface at the boring location. Although not encountered at the boring, existing fills can contain debris (such as concrete, wood, trash) and other unsuitable materials, and these materials could be encountered during site grading or general excavation. The contract should contain provision for removal of debris and other unsuitable materials if encountered.

All areas supporting the new pavement and areas to receive new fill (if any) should be properly prepared.

After completion of the necessary excavating and prior to placing any required fill, the exposed soil subgrade should be carefully evaluated by probing and testing. Any undesirable material (organic material, wet, soft, or loose soil) still in place should be removed.

The exposed soil subgrade should be further evaluated by proof-rolling with a heavy pneumatic tired roller, loaded dump truck or similar equipment weighing approximately 10 tons to check for pockets of soft or loose material hidden beneath a thin crust of possibly better soil.

Proof-rolling procedures should be observed routinely by a Professional Engineer, or his designated representative.

Any undesirable material (organic material, wet, soft, or loose soil) exposed should be removed and replaced with well-compacted material as outlined in Section 7.2.

Prior to placement of any fill, the soil exposed subgrade should then be scarified to a minimum depth of 6 inches and recompacted as outlined in Section 7.2.



All excavations should be shielded, braced or cut at stable slopes in accordance with Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) requirements.

Slope stability analysis of embankments (natural or constructed) was not within the scope of this study.

Traffic of heavy equipment (including heavy compaction equipment) may create pumping and general deterioration of shallow soils. Therefore, some construction difficulties should be anticipated during periods when these soils are saturated.

### **7.2 Fill Compaction**

Clay soils should be compacted to a dry density between 95 and 100 percent of standard Proctor maximum dry density (ASTM D 698). The compacted moisture content of the clays during placement should be within the range of 0 to 4 percentage points above optimum. Clay materials used as fill should be processed to a maximum particle clod size of 6 inches prior to compaction.

Compaction should be accomplished by placing fill in about 8-inch thick loose lifts and compacting each lift to at least the specified minimum dry density. Field density and moisture content tests should be performed on each lift. Density tests should be performed at a frequency of 1 test per 5,000 sq ft of pavement. Utility trench backfill should be tested at a rate of one test per lift per each 300 lineal feet of trench.

### **7.3 Groundwater**

Groundwater seepage was not encountered at the boring locations. However, from our experience, shallow groundwater seepage could be encountered during general excavation at this site. The risk of encountering seepage is increased during or after periods of precipitation. Sump pit and pumping may be adequate to control seepage on a local basis.

## **8.0 LIMITATIONS**

Professional services provided in this geotechnical exploration were performed, findings obtained, and recommendations prepared in accordance with generally accepted geotechnical engineering principles and practices. The scope of services provided herein does not include an environmental assessment of the site or investigation for the presence or absence of hazardous materials in the soil, surface water or groundwater.

ALPHA TESTING, INC. is not responsible for conclusions, opinions or recommendations made by others based on this data. Information contained in this report is intended for exclusive use of the Client (and their design representatives) and design of specific structures outlined in Section 2.0. Recommendations presented in this report should not be used for design of any other structure except that specifically described in this report. Further, subsurface conditions can



---

change with passage of time. Recommendations contained herein are not considered applicable for an extended period of time after the completion date of this report. It is recommended our office be contacted for a review of the contents of this report for construction commencing more than one (1) year after completion of this report.

Recommendations provided in this report are based on our understanding of information provided by the Client about characteristics of the project. If the Client notes any deviation from the facts about project characteristics, our office should be contacted immediately since this may materially alter the recommendations. Further, ALPHA TESTING, INC. is not responsible for damages resulting from workmanship of designers or contractors and it is recommended the Owner retain qualified personnel, such as a Geotechnical Engineering firm, to verify construction is performed in accordance with plans and specifications.



---

# APPENDIX

---



---

## A-1 METHODS OF FIELD EXPLORATION

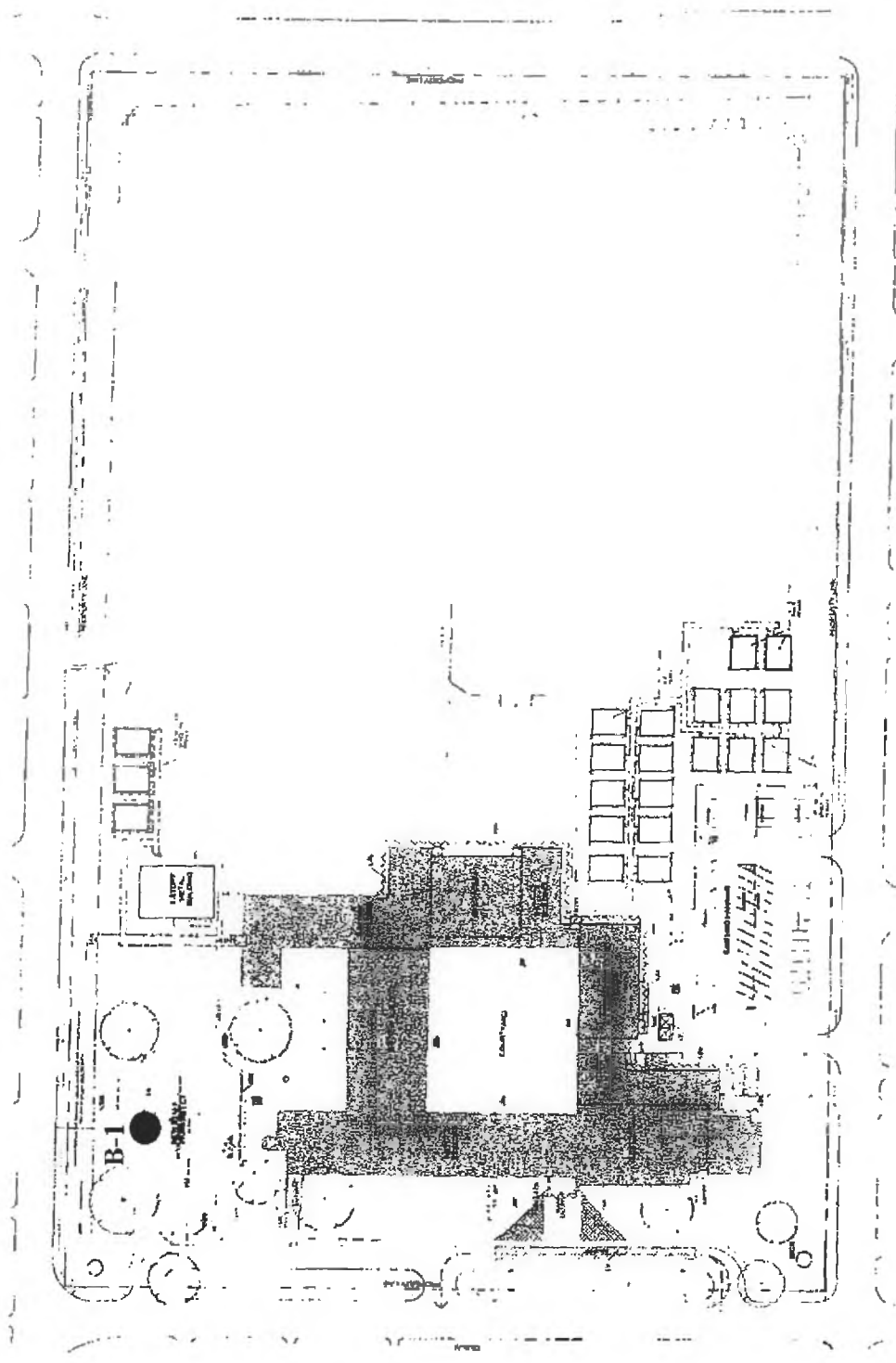
Using standard rotary drilling equipment, a single test boring was performed for this geotechnical exploration at the approximate location shown on the Boring Location Plan, Figure 1. The test boring location was staked by either pacing or taping and estimating right angles from landmarks which could be identified in the field and as shown on the site plan provided during this study. The location of test boring shown on the Boring Location Plan is considered accurate only to the degree implied by the method used to locate the boring.

Relatively undisturbed samples of the cohesive subsurface materials were obtained by hydraulically pressing 3-inch O.D. thin-wall sampling tubes into the underlying soils at selected depths (ASTM D 1587). These samples were removed from the sampling tubes in the field and examined visually. One representative portion of each sample was sealed in a plastic bag for use in future visual examinations and possible testing in the laboratory.

The boring log is included in the Appendix of this report. The log shows visual descriptions of subsurface strata encountered in the test boring using the Unified Soil Classification System. Sampling information, pertinent field data, and field observations are also included. Samples not consumed by testing will be retained in our laboratory for at least 30 days and then discarded unless the Client requests otherwise.

---





NOT TO SCALE

Boring Location Plan  
Figure 1



Geotechnical Exploration  
 New Parking Lot  
 Thomas C. Marsh Middle School  
 3838 Crown Shore Drive  
 Dallas, Texas  
 Alpha Project No. G100489  
 June 7, 2010



---

## **B-1 METHODS OF LABORATORY TESTING**

Representative samples were examined and classified by a qualified member of the Geotechnical Division and the boring log was edited as necessary. To aid in classifying the subsurface materials and to determine the general engineering characteristics, natural moisture content tests (ASTM D 2216) and Atterberg-limit tests (ASTM D 4318) were performed on selected samples. In addition, pocket-penetrometer tests and unconfined compression tests (ASTM D 2166) were conducted on selected soil samples to evaluate shear strength. Results of all laboratory tests described above are provided on the accompanying Log of Boring sheet.



WHERE IT ALL BEGINS

2209 Wisconsin Street  
 Suite 100  
 Dallas, Texas  
 75229  
 Phone: 972-620-8911  
 Fax: 972-241-5835  
 www.alphatesting.com

LOG OF BORING NO.: 1

Sheet 1 of 1

PROJECT NO.: G100489

Client: DISD 2008 - JACOBS

Location: DALLAS, TEXAS

Project: NEW PARKING LOT - THOMAS C. MARSH MIDDLE SCHOOL

Surface Elevation: \_\_\_\_\_

Start Date: 5/12/2010 End Date: 5/12/2010

West: \_\_\_\_\_

Drilling Method: CONTINUOUS FLIGHT AUGER



















North: \_\_\_\_\_

Hammer Drop (lbs / in): \_\_\_\_\_






Depth, feet	Graphic Log	GROUND WATER OBSERVATIONS		Sample Type	Recovery % RQD	TX Cone or Std. Pen. (blows/ft.in)	Pocket Penetrometer (tsf)	Unconfined Comp. Strength (tsf)	% Passing No. 200 Sieve	Unit Dry Weight (pcf)	Water Content, %	Liquid Limit	Plastic Limit	Plasticity Index
		▽ On Rods (ft):	_____ NONE											
		MATERIAL DESCRIPTION												
		Brown CLAY with limestone-FILL					4.0				19	64	26	38
		Dark Brown CLAY					3.0	2.8	88	31	81	31	50	
		Tan CLAY with limestone					4.5				22			
		TEST BORING TERMINATED AT 7 FT					4.5				23			
5														
10														
15														
20														

## KEY TO SOIL SYMBOLS AND CLASSIFICATIONS

### SOIL & ROCK SYMBOLS

	(CH), High Plasticity CLAY
	(CL), Low Plasticity CLAY
	(SC), CLAYEY SAND
	(SP), Poorly Graded SAND
	(SW), Well Graded SAND
	(SM), SILTY SAND
	(ML), SILT
	(MH), Elastic SILT
	LIMESTONE
	SHALE / MARL
	SANDSTONE
	(GP), Poorly Graded GRAVEL
	(GW), Well Graded GRAVEL
	(GC), CLAYEY GRAVEL
	(GM), SILTY GRAVEL
	(OL), ORGANIC SILT
	(OH), ORGANIC CLAY
	FILL

### SAMPLING SYMBOLS

	SHELBY TUBE (3" OD except where noted otherwise)
	SPLIT SPOON (2" OD except where noted otherwise)
	AUGER SAMPLE
	TEXAS CONE PENETRATION
	ROCK CORE (2" ID except where noted otherwise)

### RELATIVE DENSITY OF COHESIONLESS SOILS (blows/ft)

VERY LOOSE	0 TO 4
LOOSE	5 TO 10
MEDIUM	11 TO 30
DENSE	31 TO 50
VERY DENSE	OVER 50

### SHEAR STRENGTH OF COHESIVE SOILS (tsf)

VERY SOFT	LESS THAN 0.25
SOFT	0.25 TO 0.50
FIRM	0.50 TO 1.00
STIFF	1.00 TO 2.00
VERY STIFF	2.00 TO 4.00
HARD	OVER 4.00

### RELATIVE DEGREE OF PLASTICITY (PI)

LOW	4 TO 15
MEDIUM	16 TO 25
HIGH	26 TO 35
VERY HIGH	OVER 35

### RELATIVE PROPORTIONS (%)

TRACE	1 TO 10
LITTLE	11 TO 20
SOME	21 TO 35
AND	36 TO 50

### PARTICLE SIZE IDENTIFICATION (DIAMETER)

BOULDERS	8.0" OR LARGER
COBBLES	3.0" TO 8.0"
COARSE GRAVEL	0.75" TO 3.0"
FINE GRAVEL	5.0 mm TO 3.0"
COURSE SAND	2.0 mm TO 5.0 mm
MEDIUM SAND	0.4 mm TO 5.0 mm
FINE SAND	0.07 mm TO 0.4 mm
SILT	0.002 mm TO 0.07 mm
CLAY	LESS THAN 0.002 mm